This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

72
0

HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

THE GLOBE EDITION.

MORTE DARTHUR.

The Globe Edition.

MORTE DARTHUR

Sir Thomas Malory's Book
of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights
of the Round Table

The original edition of Caxton revised for modern use,

WITH AN INTRODUCTION,

BY

SIR EDWARD STRACHEY, BART.

SECOND EDITION.

London:
MACMILLAN AND CO.
1868

27272.3.40

HARVARD
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY
May 24, 1943

Oxford:

By T. Combe, M.A., E. B. Gardner, E. P. Hall, and H. Latham, M.A.

Printers to the University.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION

§ 1. THE ORIGIN AND MATTER OF THE BOOK. PAGE.

Caxton.—Malory.—The Book epic in plan.—Malory's use of the old romances.—His History.—The Sangreal.—His Geography.—Camelot.—Glastonbury.—Almesbury.—Joyous Gard.—Morality of the Book . vii

§ 2. THE TEXT AND ITS SEVERAL EDITIONS.

The edition of Caxton, 1485.—Those of Wynkyn de Worde, 1498 and 1529.—Of Copland, 1557.—Of East, without date.—Edition of 1634.—Of 1816.—Southey's edition of 1817.—Discovery of interpolations in that edition.—Mr. Wright's edition, 1858.—Character and object of the present edition xiv

§ 3. AN ESSAY ON CHIVALRY.

Origin of Chivalry.—Contest of Civilization with Barbarism.—The Chevalier and the Knight.—His education.—Amadis and Oriana.—The Black Prince.—Birth not essential to Knighthood.—The Lady.—Queen Philippa.—Decay of Chivalry.—Knights of Malta.—Modern Manners xix

THE BOOK OF KING ARTHUR.

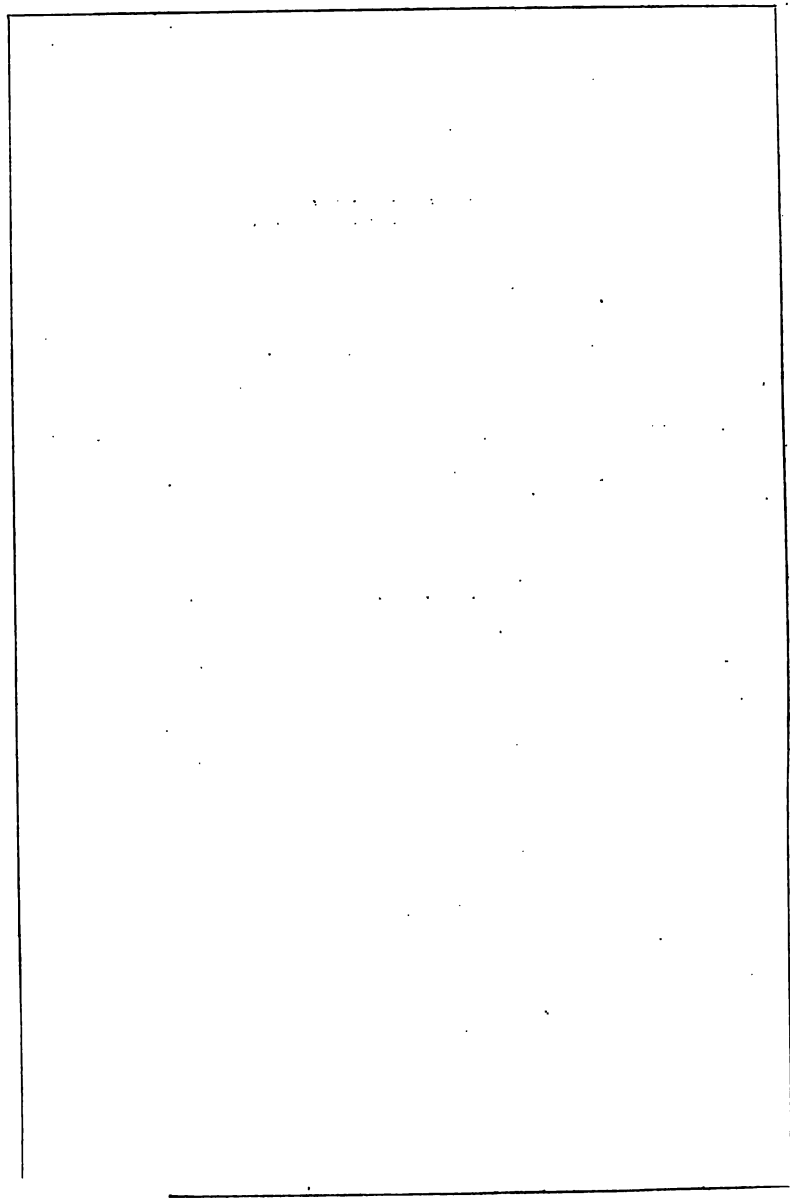
PREFACE OF WILLIAM CAXTON 1

THE TABLE OR RUBRYSSHE OF THE CONTENTS OF CHAPTERS . 3

THE BOOK OF KING ARTHUR, BOOKS I TO XXI . . . 25

NOTES 488

GLOSSARY 493



INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. The Origin and Matter of the Book.

We owe this our English Epic of Morte Arthur to Sir Thomas Malory, and to William Caxton the first English printer. Caxton's Preface shows (what indeed would have been certain from his appeal to the 'Knights of England' at the end of 'The Order of Chivalry') that however strongly he, 'William Caxton, simple person,' may have been urged to undertake the work by 'divers gentlemen of this realm of England,' he was not less moved by his own love and reverence for 'the noble acts of chivalry,' and his deep sense of his duty and responsibility in printing what he believed would be for the instruction and profit of his readers, 'of whatever estate or degree.' But to Sir Thomas Malory he gives all the honour of having provided him with the copy which he printed. I retain the more usual spelling of Sir Thomas Malory's name, though it is also written Malorye and Maleore. The last indeed is the form in the words with which he himself concludes his work; but as Caxton printed, and therefore knew, this no less than the other forms, and as even so late as the time of Marvell and Pym men of education did not keep to one way of writing their own names, we cannot infer that one is more correct than the others, though probably we may that Malory most nearly represents the pronunciation to us. Malory was an old Yorkshire name in Leland's time[1], and is mentioned in the next century in Burton's 'Description of Leicestershire[2];' but we have nothing but the name to connect Sir Thomas Malory with these families. Leland indeed, according to the 'Biographia Britannica,' says he was a Welchman[3]. From his own words we learn that he was a knight, and from his adding that he was 'a servant of Jesu both day and night,' as well as from the general tone of the book, it has been inferred that he was a priest. And he tells us that he ended his book in the ninth year of Edward the Fourth, or about fifteen years before Caxton

[1] 'There be 2 Lordshipps lyenge not very far from *Ripon* . . . . *Malory* hath *Hutton Coniers*. Thes Lands cam to their Aunciters by two Dowghtars, Heirs Generall of that *Coniers*. *Malory* hath another Place caullyd *Higbe Studly*, a litle from *Fontaines*.' Leland's Itinerary, viii. 2. p. 55. Hearne, 1712.

[2] 'In Kirby-Malory those [arms and pedigree] of the Malorys.' 'In Swinford arms and pedigrees of the Malorys.' Burton's Description of Leicestershire, 1622, Fol. Quoted by Oldys, The British Librarian, pp. 293, 297.

[3] Biographia Britannica, art. 'Caxton;' but no reference is given by which to verify the quotation.

finished printing it. It has been usual to assume that, because Caxton says that Sir Thomas Malory took his work 'out of certain books of French and reduced it into English,' he was a mere compiler and translator. But the book itself shows that he was its author—its 'maker,' as he would have called it. Notwithstanding his occasionally inartificial manner of connecting the materials drawn from the old romances—'in Welch many, and also in French, and some in English'—there is an epic unity and harmony, and a beginning, middle, and end, which, if they have come by chance and not of design, have come by that chance which only befalls an Homeric or a Shakspeare-like man. If we compare the first part of Malory's work with the old prose romance[1] which supplied the materials for it, we see at once how he has converted that prose into poetry, giving life and beauty to the coarse clods of earth, and transmuting by his art the legends which he yet faithfully preserves. For the long and repulsive narrative of Merlin's origin he substitutes a slight allusion to it; without disguising what he probably believed to be at least an half historical record of Arthur's birth, he gives a grace and dignity to the story by the charms of his mother's character, the finer touches of which are wanting in the original: and so through the whole of this part of the story. The plan of the book is properly epic. While the glory of Arthur as the head of the kingdoms no less than of the chivalry of Christendom is only in its early dawn, Merlin warns him that the seeds of death will spring up in all this fair promise through the sin of himself and of his queen. Still the fame and the honour of the king and his knights of the Round Table open continually into new and brighter forms, which seem above the reach of any adverse fate, till the coming of the Sancgreal, into the quest of which all the knights enter with that self-reliance which had become them so well in the field of worldly chivalry, but which would be of no avail now. They are now to be tried by other tests than those by which they had been proved as 'earthly knights and lovers,' tests which even Launcelot, Ector de Maris, Gawaine, and the other chiefest of the fellowship could not stand. The quest is achieved by the holy knights alone: two depart from this life to a higher, while Sir Bors, not quite spotless, yet forgiven and sanctified, the link between the earthly and the spiritual worlds, returns to aid in restoring the glory of the feasts and tournaments at Camelot and Westminster. But the curse is at work: the severance between good and evil which had been declared through the Sancgreal cannot be closed again; and the tragic end comes on, in spite of the efforts—touching from their very weakness—of Arthur and Launcelot to avert the woe, the one by vainly trying to resist temptation, the other by refusing to believe evil of his dearest friend. The black clouds open for a moment as the sun goes down; and we see Arthur in the barge which bears him to the Holy

[1] Merlin, or the Early History of King Arthur, edited by Henry B. Wheatley, for the Early English Text Society, 1865-8. This is a translation, contemporary with Malory's work, from the French which he doubtless used.

Isle; Guenever, the nun of Almesbury, living in fasting, prayers, and alms-deeds; and Launcelot with his fellowship, once knights but now hermit-priests, 'doing bodily all manner of service.'

Nor are the marks of harmony and unity less plain in the several characters than in the events of the story. Arthur is a true knight, sharing the characteristics of his nobler knights, yet he differs from them all in showing also that he is, and feels himself to be, a king; as when—with an imperiousness which reminds us of Froissart's story of Edward III refusing to listen to Sir Walter Manny's remonstrances on behalf of the burgesses of Calais—he tells Sir Launcelot that he 'takes no force whom he grieves,' or insists on his entering the lists against a tired knight whom he is not willing to see victorious over the whole field; or as when he sadly regrets that he cannot do battle for his wife, though he believes her innocent, but must be a rightful judge according to the laws. There are many others of the Round Table who are 'very perfect gentle knights,' yet we feel that Launcelot stands distinct among them all in the pre-eminence of his knightliness, notwithstanding his one great sin. Thus, to take one of many instances, who but Launcelot would have borne the taunts and the violence of Gawaine with his humble patience and ever-renewed efforts for a reconciliation, when he was leaving the realm, and when he was besieged in Joyous Gard. Modern critics of great name agree in censuring Sir Thomas Malory for departing from the old authorities who represented Gawaine as the very counterpart of Launcelot in knightly character: but I rather see a proof of Malory's art in giving us a new Gawaine with a strongly individual character of his own. Gawaine's regard for his mother's honour, his passion for Ettard, and his affection for his brothers, are savage impulses driving him to unknightly and unworthy deeds, yet he is far from being represented as a mere villain. If Malory depicts him thirsting to revenge upon Launcelot the unintentional killing of Gaheris and Gareth, he depicts also his long previous affection for Launcelot and his opposition to the hostility of his other brother, Mordred, against him; his devotion to his uncle Arthur; his hearty repentance towards Launcelot at the last; and his entreaty that he would 'see his tomb, and pray some prayer more or less for his soul.' Nor must we forget that it was by the prayer of those ladies for whom Gawaine had 'done battle in a rightwise quarrel,' that his ghost was permitted to give Arthur a last warning. Distinct again from the character of this fierce knight is that of the Saracen Palamides, whose unquestionable courage and skill in deeds of chivalry also want—though in another way than Gawaine's—the gentleness, the meekness, and the delicate sense of honour of the Christian knight. Sir Dinadan again, who can give and take hard knocks if need be, though he has no great bodily strength, and who is always bantering the good knights who know and esteem him with his humorous protests against love and arms, is a distinctly drawn character. So is Merlin; so are many others whose names I might recite. The dignity of queen Guenever towards her husband and her court is not less marked than her guilty passion

for Launcelot, and the unreasoning jealousy it excites in her. The wife-like simplicity of Igraine, the self-surrender beyond all limit, though from different impulses, of the two Elaines, the pertness of the damsel Linet, and the piety and self-sacrifice of Sir Percivale's sister, will occur to the reader among the distinctive characteristics of the different ladies and damsels who live and move, each in her own proper form, in the story. Sir Thomas Malory, as we know, found many of these men and women already existing in the old romances as he represents them to us; but we may believe that those earlier books were to him something of what the pages of Plutarch and Holinshed were to Shakspeare.

In the Introduction to Southey's edition of Morte Arthur the student will find an account of the principal early prose romances in which sources of Sir Thomas Malory's book have been found, and the English translation of one of these has been mentioned above; while the volumes of Ellis, Sir Walter Scott's 'Sir Tristrem,' and the publications of the Early English Text and the Camden Societies, and of Mr. Furnivall, supply specimens of the metrical romances of the like kind. But as they are only attractive to the antiquarian student, who requires the originals and not abstracts, I shall say no more of them here.

Nor shall I attempt to illustrate Malory's book by the ancient historical or legendary accounts of the British King Arthur. The most recent critics are disposed to prefer Gibbon's belief to Milton's scepticism as to the actual existence of Arthur: but of the history and the geography of the book before us we can only say that they are something

'Apart from place, withholding time,
But flattering the golden prime'

of the great hero of English romance. We cannot bring within any limits of history the events which here succeed each other, when the Lords and Commons of England, after the death of King Uther at St. Alban's, assembled at the greatest church of London, guided by the joint policy of the magician Merlin and the Christian bishop of Canterbury, and elected Arthur to the throne; when Arthur made Carlion, or Camelot, or both, his head-quarters in a war against Cornwall, Wales, and the North, in which he was victorious by help of the king of France; when he met the demand for tribute by the Roman emperor Lucius with a counter-claim to the empire for himself as the real representative of Constantine, held a parliament at York to make the necessary arrangements, crossed the sea from Sandwich to Barflete in Flanders, met the united forces of the Romans and Saracens in Burgundy, slew the emperor in a great battle, together with his allies, the sowdan of Syria, the king of Egypt, and the king of Ethiopia, sent their bodies to the Senate and Podestà of Rome as the only tribute he would pay, and then followed over the mountains through Lombardy and Tuscany to Rome, where he was crowned emperor by the Pope, 'sojourned there a time, established all his lands from Rome unto France, and gave lands and realms unto his servants and knights,' and so returned home to England, where he

seems thenceforth to have devoted himself wholly to his duties as the head of Christian knighthood.

There is indeed one point of the legendary history on which the reader may wish me to give some explanation:—What was the Sancgreal? Graal or greal (derived from *crater*) in the Romance language[1] signifies a drinking-vessel, a dish, or a tureen: and according to the romances of Le S. Graal, Lancelot du Lac, Perceforest, and Morte Arthur, the Sancgreal, or Holy Graal, was the dish which held the paschal lamb of the Last Supper. Joseph of Arimathea having gone into the house where the Supper had been eaten, took away the dish, and in it received the blood from the wounds of Jesus; and this dish, 'with part of the blood of our Lord,' he brought with him into England, and with it converted many heathens; and it was kept in a tower expressly built for it at Corbenicy. The romance of Merlin says that 'this vessel was brought to this said knight [Joseph of Arimathea] by our Lord Jesu Christ while he was in prison xl. winter, him to comfort,' but does not mention its earlier history. And notwithstanding the authority of Perceforest that the Sancgreal was preserved in England, it may still be seen in the cathedral of Genoa, there called Sacro Catino, with the same tradition as to its original uses as is given above. It was brought from Cæsarea in 1101, and is an hexagonal dish, of two palms width, long supposed to be of real emerald, which it resembles in colour and brilliancy.

The geography of Arthur's Roman war is very coherent; but that of the rest of the book it is often impossible to harmonise. The scene opens within a night's ride of the castle of Tintagil, the ruins of which may still be seen in Cornwall. Thence we pass to St. Alban's, to London, and to Carlion. This last is, no doubt, Caerleon-upon-Usk; but it seems through this, as in other romances, to be interchangeable in the author's mind with Carlisle, or (as written in its Anglo-Norman form) Cardoile, which latter in the History of Merlin is said to be in Wales, while elsewhere Wales and Cumberland are confounded in like manner. So of Camelot, where Arthur chiefly held his court, Caxton in his Preface speaks as though it were in Wales, probably meaning Caerleon, where the Roman amphitheatre is still called Arthur's Round Table. Malory himself, though at page 49 he seems to connect Camelot with Avelion, or Glastonbury, yet farther on, page 63, says that Camelot is Winchester, where, too, there is a Round Table, mentioned by Caxton, and still to be seen,—an oaken board with the knights' names on it. And yet at the time these authorities wrote Camelot itself existed in Somersetshire with its proper name, and with all the remains of an important town and fortress, and, doubtless, the traditions of Arthur which Leland found there, and which in great part at least remain to this day. Leland calls it Camallate or Camalat, 'sometime a famous town or castle, upon a very torre or hill, wonderfully

[1] Roquefort, Glossaire de Langue Romane, art. 'Graal:' where are also given the original passages from the first three romances named in the text.

enstrengthened of nature[1].' Four ditches and as many walls surrounded a central space of about thirty acres where foundations and remains of walls might be seen, and whence Roman pavements, urns, coins, and other relics have been found up to the present time. I find it called the Castle of Camellek in maps of the dates of 1575 and 1610, and in that of the 1727 edition of Camden's Magna Britannica, the text of which says 'the inhabitants call it King Arthur's Palace.' But soon after that date a learned antiquarian[2] writes that the name had been superseded by that of Cadbury Castle, which trilingual appellation may seem to indicate the Roman, British, and Saxon possessors by whom it was probably held in succession. The neighbouring villages which, according to Leland, bore 'the name of Camalat with an addition, as Queen-Camel,' still exist as Queen-Camel, or East Camel, and West Camel, and near by runs the river Camel, crossed by Arthur's Bridge. Arthur's Well still springs from the hill-side, and if Arthur's Hunting Causeway in the field below, Arthur's Round Table and Arthur's Palace within the camp, cannot still, as of old, be pointed out to the visitor, the peasant girl will still tell him that within that charmed circle they who look may see through golden gates a king sitting in the midst of his court. Drayton describes the river Ivel in Somersetshire as

> 'The nearest neighbouring flood to Arthur's ancient seat,
> Which made the Britaines name thro' all the world so great.
> Like Camelot what place was ever yet renown'd?
> Where, as at Caerleon, oft he kept the Table Round,
> Most famous for the sports at Pentecost so long,
> From whence all knightly deeds and brave atchievements sprong[3].'

Glastonbury—founded by Joseph of Arimathea, and his burial-place, though his body was vainly sought in Edward III's reign—still claims to possess the coffin of Arthur. It is said that Henry II found the bodies of Arthur and Guenever there, and that Guenever had yellow hair. Their skulls were afterwards taken for relics by Edward Longshanks and Eleanor.

Almesbury, where Guenever died a nun, is a town in Wiltshire, seven and a half miles from Salisbury, where may still be seen the ruins of its celebrated abbey. The name was originally Ambrosebury, then Ambresbury, and lastly Amesbury, as it is now spelt.

Joyous Gard, Launcelot's favourite castle, is sometimes identified with Berwick. Malory tells us that 'some men say it was Anwick, and some men say it was Bamborow.' Bamborow, or Bamborough, is in Northumberland, sixteen miles south-east of Berwick. The castle, founded in the middle of the sixth century, which is the supposed time of Arthur's reign, stands on a high rock projecting into the North Sea. It now contains a granary, hospital, and other endowments made for the poor in 1715 by Lord Crewe, bishop of Durham. Did he think of his

[1] Itinerary, ii. pp. 38, 39; Hearne, 1711.
[2] Somersetshire Illustrated, by John Strachey, MS. 1736. [3] Polyolbion, 3rd Song.

predecessor Launcelot, and his doles of 'flesh, fish, wine and ale, and twelve pence to any man and woman, come who would?'

The names of some other places in this book are given in the Glossary.

Lastly, the perplexed question of the morality of the book demands our notice. If it does not deserve the unqualified denunciation of the learned Ascham, it cannot be denied that Morte Arthur exhibits a picture of a society far lower than our own in morals, and depicts it with far less repugnance to its evil elements, on the part either of the author or his personages, than any good man would now feel. Still—with the exception of stories like those of the birth of Arthur and Galahad, which show not only another state of manners from our own, but also a really different standard of morals from any which we should now hold up—the writer does for the most part endeavour, though often in but an imperfect and confused manner, to distinguish between vice and virtue, and honestly to reprobate the former; and thus shows that his object is to recognise and support the nobler elements of the social state in which he lived, and to carry them towards new triumphs over the evil. And even where, as in the story of Tristram, there is palliation rather than reprobation of what Sir Walter Scott justly calls 'the extreme ingratitude and profligacy of the hero,' still the fact that such palliation, by representing King Mark as the most worthless of men, was thought necessary in the later, though not in the earlier, romance on the same subject, shows an upward progress in morals; while a real effort to distinguish virtue from vice is to be seen in the story of Launcelot, with his sincere though weak struggles against temptation, and his final penitence under the punishment of the woes which his guilt has brought on all dear to him as well as to himself. Or if we look at the picture which Chaucer's works give us of the co-existence in one mind—and that perhaps the noblest of its age—of the most virtuous Christian refinement and the most brutish animal coarseness, and then see how in the pages of Malory, inferior as we must hold him to be to Chaucer, the brutish vice has dwindled to half its former size, and is far more clearly seen to be vice, while the virtue, if not more elevated in itself, is more avowedly triumphant over the evil, we find the same upward progress. And I cannot doubt that it was helped on by this book, and that notwithstanding Ascham's condemnation of Morte Arthur, Caxton was right in believing that he was serving God and his countrymen by printing it; and that he justly estimated its probable effect when he says, 'Herein may be seen noble chivalry, courtesy, humanity, friendliness, hardiness, love, friendship, cowardice, murder, hate, virtue, sin. Do after the good, and leave the evil, and it shall bring you to good fame and renommée. . . . All is written for our doctrine, and for to beware that we fall not to vice nor sin, but to exercise and follow virtue, by which we may come and attain to good fame and renomme in this life, and after this short and transitory life to come unto everlasting bliss in heaven; the which He grant us that reigneth in heaven, the blessed Trinity. Amen.'

§ 2. The Text, and its several Editions.

The first edition of Le Morte Darthur was printed by Caxton at Westminster in 1485, as he tells us in the colophon. Two copies only are known: they are folio, black-letter, with wide margin, and among the finest specimens of Caxton's printing. One is in the library of the Earl of Jersey at Osterley; and the other in that of Earl Spencer at Althorp. The Osterley copy, which has the autograph 'Oxford' on the first leaf, was sold with the Harleian Library to Osborne the bookseller, and apparently bought of him for £5 5s. by Bryan Fairfax, who sold his library to Mr. Child, maternal ancestor of the Earl of Jersey[1]. It is perfect, except that it has no title-page, though, as the Proheme or Preface begins at the top of the recto of signature ij (not 'a ij' as Dibdin says), I infer that a title did exist on the leaf j, thus shown to be wanting. The Althorp copy, which was bought at Mr. Lloyd's sale in 1816 for £320, had eleven leaves deficient; but these were supplied by Mr. Whittaker in fac-simile from the Osterley copy with remarkable skill[2], though on collation with the original I have found some oversights.

The two next editions of Morte Arthur were printed by Wynkyn de Worde, the chief workman and successor of Caxton, in 1498 and 1529. Only one copy of each is known. That of 1498 is in the Althorp Library: it wants the Title and part of the Table of Contents, but contains the Preface, which is a reprint of that of Caxton, though it here follows instead of preceding the Table of Contents. This edition, which has numerous woodcuts, is not an exact reprint of Caxton's; there are differences of spelling and occasionally of a word; and the passage in the last chapter but one, beginning 'Oh ye mighty and pompous lords,' and ending with 'turn again to my matter,' which is not in Caxton's edition, appears here, as in all later editions[3]. The edition of 1529 is in the British Museum, and wants the Title, Preface, and part of the Table of Contents.

In 1557 the book was reprinted by William Copland, with the title of 'The story of the most noble and worthy kynge Arthur, the whiche was one of the worthyes chrysten, and also of his noble and valiaũte knyghtes of the rounde

[1] Dibdin's Typographical Antiquities, 1810, vol. i. pp. 242, 254.

[2] Dibdin's Supplement to the Bibliotheca Spenceriana, vol. ii. p. 213; or Ædes Althorpianæ, vol. vi. p. 213. I would here express my thanks to Earl Spencer for sending to the British Museum for my use his Caxton, and his unique copy of Wynkyn de Worde's first edition of Morte Arthur, as also for favouring me with details of information respecting the former; and to the Earl of Jersey for permitting me to examine his Caxton at Osterley.

[3] As the passage is worth preserving I have given it at the end of the volume, Note A, p. 488.

Table. Newly imprynted and corrected mccccclvij. ¶ Imprynted at London by Wyllyam Copland.' And on the title-page, above the last line, is a woodcut of St. George and the Dragon, of which that on the title-page of Southey's edition is a bad copy. A copy of this edition is in the British Museum, with a note that this is the only one with a title which the annotator has seen.

There is a folio edition by Thomas East, without date, in the British Museum; and there is said to be a quarto edition, also without date.

The next, and last black-letter, edition is that of 1634, which has been reprinted by Mr. Wright, and which contains the woodcut of the Round Table with Arthur in the middle and his knights around, a copy of which is familiar to many of us in one of the small editions of 1816. From the fact of an omission in this edition which exactly corresponds with a complete leaf in East's folio, Mr. Wright concludes that the one was printed from the other. Each succeeding edition departs more than the previous one from the original of Caxton; but if we compare this of 1634 with Caxton's, we find the variations almost infinite. Besides remodelling the preface, dividing the book into three parts, and modernising the spelling and many of the words, there are a number of more or less considerable variations and additions, of which Mr. Wright has given some of the more important in his notes, but which I estimate at above twenty thousand in the whole; and which have plainly arisen in the minor instances from the printer reading a sentence and then printing it from recollection, without farther reference to his 'copy,' but in the others from a desire to improve the original simplicity by what the editor calls 'a more eloquent and ornated style and phrase.'

No new edition seems to have been published till 1816, when two independent editions appeared, one in two, and the other in three 24mo. volumes. Both are modernised for popular use, and are probably the volumes through which most of us made our first acquaintance with King Arthur and his knights; but neither has any merit as to its editing.

In 1817 Messrs. Longmans & Co. published an edition in two volumes quarto, with an introduction and notes by Southey, who says, 'The present edition is a reprint with scrupulous exactness from the first edition by Caxton, in Earl Spencer's library[1].' As it appears from a note[2] that he had nothing to do with the superintendence of the press, which was undertaken by Mr. Upcott, he was probably unaware that eleven leaves were, as I have mentioned above, then wanting in the copy from which this reprint was made. These had not then been restored in fac-simile; for Earl Spencer's copy contains a note, signed by Messrs. Longmans and dated 1816, which gives a list of the pages then wanting; and, in fact, the substitutes for them which actually appear in Southey's edition differ widely from the restored, or the original, text. Thus in chapter xii. of the last book, besides the interpolation of the long passage 'O ye myghty and

[1] Vol. i. p. xxviii. [2] Ibid. p. lviii.

pompous lordes,' &c., which is not in Caxton, there are in the first eleven lines thirty-five variations of spelling and punctuation, besides the introduction of the words 'but continually mourned un—' and 'needfully as nature required,' which are not in Caxton, and the change of Caxton's 'on the tombe of kyng Arthur & quene Guenever' into 'on kynge Arthur's & quene Gwenever's tombe.' And thus throughout the pages in question—seventeen in number[1]—the spelling constantly, and words and even sentences occasionally, differ from the real text of Caxton[2].

When at page 113 of volume i. the editor introduces the words 'certayne cause' to complete the sense, he is careful to call attention, in a foot-note, to the fact that these words are not in the original, but taken from 'the second edition,' by which I presume he means that of 1498. But when he subsequently supplies seventeen pages which were also not in his original, he gives no hint of the fact; and his reticence has been so successful that for fifty years the interpolations have passed as genuine among learned critics, who have quoted from them passages wholly spurious as Caxton's genuine text. It was only last year that, in collating Earl Spencer's copy with the edition of Southey, I discovered that these passages—to which my attention was directed by Messrs. Longmans' note above mentioned—did not correspond with Caxton's text, as represented by Whittaker's restorations: and on afterwards collating them with the Osterley text itself I found the like result. It remained to trace them to their real sources. This has not been so easy as might be supposed, for though it was evident that Mr. Upcott must have had recourse to one or other of the existing editions, the interpolated passages in fact agree exactly with none of them. But a careful collation of the last four chapters of the book (which include more than half the interpolations, and may be taken as a fair specimen of the whole) with the old texts, leaves no doubt that, with the exception of the first thirty-six lines of chapter x, they were taken, like the two words mentioned above, from the first edition of Wynkyn de Worde, but with the spelling occasionally altered, and here and there a small word put in, left out, or changed. These alterations throw an ingenious disguise over the whole; but if we penetrate through this we find that in these four chapters there are only thirteen words differing from those in Wynkyn de Worde's first edition, and these unimportant; while in his second edition, and in those of Copland, and East, the variations from Mr. Upcott's text of the same chapters are respectively fifty-seven, fifty-six, and fifty in number, and many of them important in kind: and if we go to the edition of 1634 we find the differences still greater, except as to those thirty-six lines, which are supplied from this edition, as they were wanting in the other copy. But the colophon, or concluding paragraph of the book, Mr. Upcott could not take from any of

[1] The pages are vol. i. p. 167, line 18, to p. 169, line 17; p. 275, third line from bottom, to p. 279, line 5 from bottom; vol. ii. p. 202, line 13, to p. 204, line 14; p. 446, line 5, to end of 455.

[2] An account of these interpolations was given by me in the Athenæum of Sept. 7 and Dec. 10, 1867, and Feb. 10, 1868.

the editions which followed that of Caxton; for though Wynkyn de Worde might, and in fact did, supply at least one or two of the first words, the latter part of his colophon relates to his own edition, and departs widely from that of Caxton, while those in the later editions are still more unlike; and yet Mr. Upcott's colophon is a tolerable, though not an exact, representation of that of Caxton. But his other materials can be ascertained beyond a doubt. They are, the colophon as given by Ames, and repeated by Dibdin in a modernised and otherwise inexact form[1], and that which first appeared in the Catalogue of the Harleian Library[2], and was thence copied in the article on Caxton in the Biographia Britannica, and also in Herbert's Additions to Ames. The colophons of Ames and of the Harleian Catalogue have important variations from each other and from that of Caxton; and as Mr. Upcott adopts some portions of each which are not found either in the other, or in Caxton, we see the manner in which the paragraph in question was compounded. Each stone of the ingeniously fitted mosaic may be referred to the place from which it was taken. We cannot indeed choose positively between Ames and Dibdin, or among the Harleian Catalogue, the Biographia, and Herbert; but as the two paragraphs which are required in addition to that of Wynkyn de Worde are both found in Herbert's Ames, it seems most probable that Mr. Upcott had recourse to that work, though another combination would have served the purpose equally well. That the interpolated passages are not taken from the Osterley Caxton itself, even in the roughest and most careless manner, is quite evident[3].

Lastly, in 1858 Mr. Wright published an edition reprinted from that of 1634, with an introduction and notes of considerable interest.

The Early English Text Society promise us a reprint of the original Caxton which shall be free from the faults of that of Southey, which meanwhile is, except in the interpolated passages, a very faithful representation of that original for the purposes of the antiquarian and philologist; and whatever like interest there may be in the edition of 1634 is available in the reprint of Mr. Wright. But neither is readable with pleasure by any but the student, and the two modernised editions are out of print. What is wanted, therefore, is an edition for ordinary readers, and especially for boys, from whom the chief demand for this book will always come; and such an edition the present professes to be. It is a reprint of the original Caxton with the spelling modernised, and those few words which are unintelligibly obsolete replaced by others which, though not necessarily unknown to Caxton, are still in use, yet with all old forms retained which do not interfere with this requirement of being readable. For when, as indeed is oftenest the case, the context makes even an obsolete phrase probably, if not precisely, known,

[1] Typographical Antiquities, by Ames and Herbert, 1785, vol. i. p. 61; Ibid. enlarged by Dibdin, 1810, vol. i. p. 253. The 'Additions' are at the end of vol. iii. of Herbert's edition.

[2] Catalogus Bibl. Harleianæ, 1744, vol. iii. no. 372.

[3] See Note B at the end of the volume, p. 488.

I have left it in the text, and given its meaning in the Glossary, in which I have chiefly followed Roquefort, Halliwell, and Wright. In the Glossary I have also added a few geographical notes for those readers who may care for them. And for the like reason—of making the book readable—such phrases or passages as are not in accordance with modern manners have been also omitted or replaced by others which either actually occur or might have occurred in Caxton's text elsewhere. I say manners, not morals, because I do not profess to have remedied the moral defects of the book which I have already spoken of. Mr. Tennyson has shown us how we may deal best with this matter for modern uses, in so far as Sir Thomas Malory has himself failed to treat it rightly; and I do not believe that when we have excluded what is offensive to modern manners there will be found anything practically injurious to the morals of English boys, for whom I have chiefly undertaken this work, while there is much of moral worth which I know not where they can learn so well as from the ideals of magnanimity, courage, courtesy, reverence for women, gentleness, self-sacrifice, chastity, and other manly virtues, exhibited in these pages.

The omissions, not many, were essential to the publication of the book at all for popular reading; but if any one blames the other departures from the exact form of the original, I would ask him to judge from the specimens of the old type and spelling which I have given at the end of each book, and of the volume, whether a literal and verbal reproduction of the whole would not be simply unreadable except by students of old English. And if some departure from the original was necessary, it was reasonable to carry it so far as, though no farther than, my purpose required. And, subject to these conditions, the present volume is in fact a more accurate reproduction of Caxton's text than any other except that of Southey. I have, indeed, made use of Southey's text for this edition, having satisfied myself by collation with the Althorp and Osterley Caxtons that it is an accurate reprint excepting as to the passages above mentioned; and these have been taken by me, in like manner, from the only existing original.

There is no title-page, as I have already mentioned, to the Osterley or the Althorp Caxton, that which is given by several bibliographers being only an extract, not very critically selected, from Caxton's preface. But it is evident from Caxton's colophon that the real title or name of the book was LE MORTE DARTHUR, and he explains that it was so 'entitled' notwithstanding it treated of Arthur's birth, life, and acts as well as death, and also of the adventures of his knights of the Round Table. And the concluding words of Malory, 'Here is the end of the death of Arthur,' taken with their context, point to the same title. It was indeed before Malory's time, and has been ever since, the traditional title of this story. We have Mort Artus and Morte Arthure in the earlier times; Ascham, in Henry VIII's reign, calls this book La Morte d'Arthure; Tyrwhitt, Mort d'Arthur; and Walter Scott and Southey, Morte Arthur, which last probably many of us are familiar with as the old name which we heard from our own fathers.

§ 3. An Essay on Chivalry.

St. Augustine replied to the enquiry, What is time? by saying, 'I know when you do not ask me:' and a like answer suggests itself to us if we try to find an adequate reply to the question, What is Chivalry? For chivalry is one of those words, like love, duty, patriotism, loyalty, which make us feel their meaning, and the reality of what they mean, though their ideal and comprehensive character hinders us from readily putting it into the forms of a definition. When the alchemist in the Eastern tale compounds, with all the resources of his art, the universal solvent before the expectant eyes of his pupil, the pupil, seeing the mysterious fluid lie quietly in the crucible, exclaims, with not unreasonable doubt, 'O Sage, be not deceived: how can that which dissolves all things be itself contained in a ladle?' And how shall chivalry, sparkling and flashing everywhere as it runs through that great complicated tissue of human life which we call modern civilisation,—how shall chivalry, the humaniser of society, be brought within the limits of a definition?

Chivalry, indeed, exists for us in spirit rather than in outward and visible form. It no longer comes to us with the outward symbols of war-horse, and armour, and noble birth, and strength of arm, and high-flown protestations of love and gallantry; yet we never fail to know and feel its presence, silent and unobtrusive as it now is: we recognise the lady and the gentleman not less surely now than they did in old times; and we acknowledge their rights and their power over us now no less than then. And if the spirit of chivalry does live among us still, we may read its past history by its present light, and say in Spenser's words,—

> 'By infusion sweete
> Of thine own spirit which doth in me survive,
> I follow still the footing of thy feete,
> That with thy meaning so I may the rather meete.'

Let us then look back to those times when chivalry had an outward, visible form, and was embodied in its own proper institutions, with orders, and statutes, and courts of its own jurisdiction, and rituals, and customs, like those of other great social institutions and members of the body politic.

The deluge of the Teutonic nations which broke up the old Roman civilisation threatened for some centuries to overwhelm Europe with mere barbarism. We know now that the germs of a far higher and better civilisation were everywhere ready to open into life as soon as the fury of that deluge had spent itself; but for a long period the evil seemed mightier than the good. From time to time the

clear head, the noble heart and conscience, and the strong arm of an Alfred, a Charlemagne, or an Otho, might bring a temporary calm and order into the storm; but when the personal influences of such great men were withdrawn, society relapsed again and again into ever new anarchy, and war—at once the effect and the cause of anarchy—savage, cruel war became the business of all men throughout Europe. The selfish, the rapacious, and the unscrupulous fought for power, and plunder, and love of fighting; and while violence could only be resisted by violence, and each man had to defend himself, his family, and his possessions as best he could, with no effectual aid from law and government, there was a constant tendency to increasing barbarism and brutish, or worse than brutish, instead of human, existence.

But man differs from the brutes in this, that while he can fall lower than they, he can also rise higher, and that even the passions and the impulses which he has in common with them may be subdued, and refined, and modified, till they become the servants and instruments of his human life, and the means by which all that is properly spiritual in his being may be reflected and symbolised upon this earth in outward, visible form. The nobler races of men—the historical races, as they have been called—constantly show this aptitude for contending with these downward tendencies of our nature, and for advancing, through the conquest of them, to new and higher life.

And so it was in the Middle Ages. The Church was, no doubt, the great civiliser of the nations: still, whatever aid the State derived from the Church, it then, no less than now, had a position and processes of its own, by which it did its own work of civilisation too. And its first great work for controlling the universal anarchy of which I have spoken was the extension and firm establishment of that half-patriarchal, half-military organisation which we call the Feudal System. Every man who was not rich and powerful enough to be a lord became—willingly or unwillingly—a vassal; and all men, from the king downwards, were bound to each other for reciprocal service and protection—a service and protection partly military, but partly patriarchal, since they were rendered not by men strangers to each other except for what Mr. Carlyle calls 'the nexus of cash payment,' but united by ties of family, and neighbourhood, and clanship, and by the interests and sympathies that grow out of these. But the protector of his own vassals easily became the invader of the rights and ravages of the possessions of his neighbour and his vassals; and so the old evils of anarchy and violence grew afresh out of the remedy which had been devised to meet them. The 'monarchies sank into impotence; petty, lawless tyrants trampled all social order under foot,' says a recent historian of this period, 'and all attempts after scientific instruction and artistic pleasures were as effectually crushed by this state of general insecurity as the external well-being and material life of the people. This was a dark and stormy period for Europe, merciless, arbitrary, and violent. It is a sign of the prevailing feeling of misery and hopelessness that, when the first thousand years of our æra were drawing to their close, the people in every country in Europe

looked with certainty for the destruction of the world. Some squandered their wealth in riotous living, others bestowed it for the good of their souls on churches and convents; weeping multitudes lay day and night around the altars; some looked forward with dread, but most with secret hope, towards the burning of the earth and the falling in of heaven. Their actual condition was so miserable that the idea of destruction was relief, spite of all its horrors[1].'

The palliatives with which men tried to meet the evils of the times indicate the greatness of the evils, but also the moral feeling which was the promise of better things. Such was the so-called 'Peace of the King,' by which private wars were not to be entered on till forty days after the committal of the alleged crime which was to be avenged; and the 'Truce of God,' by which all these acts of private hostility were suspended from Thursday to Monday in each week. And at the Council of Cleremont, held by Urban II in November, 1095, a severe censure was pronounced against the licence of private war; the Truce of God was confirmed; women and priests were placed under the safeguard of the Church; and a protection of three years was extended to husbandmen and merchants, the defenceless victims of military rapine. We are reminded of the law of Moses, which provided Cities of Refuge for the man who accidentally and without malice killed his neighbour, but who could not look for protection from the vengeance of the family of the slain man except within those special safeguards. In each case there is the same unreasoning rage of the half-civilised man brought face to face with the demands of religion and civil law: and each is obliged to yield something to the other till the better cause has had time to prepare and strengthen itself for a more complete triumph.

Chivalry, then, was the offspring of the same spirit which dictated the Peace of the King, the Truce of God, and the decrees of the Council of Cleremont. Chivalry has another name—Knighthood—and the two are wanted to express all that we mean by either[2]. The chevalier was the soldier who rode the war-horse: he whose birth entitled him, and whose wealth gave him the means, to ride at the head of his vassals and retainers to the war: all ideas of lordship, and mastery, and outward dignity and power, are here embodied before us. But this 'chevalier,' this 'ritter,' or rider of the war-horse, was also to be a 'knecht,' or servant: 'He that will be chief among you, let him be your servant.' The knight was to obey, no less than to command; he was to exert his strength and power, not for selfish ends, but in the service of others; and especially in the service of the poor, the weak, and the oppressed, who could not help or defend themselves. It was, indeed, no new discovery in the world, that such are the duties of him who possesses power, and above all the power of the sword; and they who have tried to trace the origin

[1] Von Sybel's History of the Crusades, English Translation, p. 11.

[2] For this distinction I am indebted to my friend the Rev. F. D. Maurice, whose genius lights up every subject it approaches.

of chivalry to some particular place and time have had to go to the Germans of Tacitus, to the Crusaders, to the Saracens, to the Romans, the Greeks, the Trojans, the Hebrews, only to come to the conclusion that chivalry belongs in its spirit to man as man; though the form in which that spirit was clothed in Europe in the Middle Ages has an individuality of which some of the sources may be ascertained, and though from that time forward its power has been established, and extended, in a manner, and with a greatness unknown to the ancients.

In those days society was essentially military. In this our own time the main offices, interests, and occupations of the great body politic are non-military, and the army is but a small portion of the nation, specially trained for a minor, though indispensable, function therein. Peace, for its own sake, and for the sake of the objects which can only be obtained by the arts and with the opportunities of peace, is the end and aim of every civilised nation now; and war is only an occasional means to secure that end. But in the Middle Ages war was, or seemed to be, the chief end of life to the greater part of every nation, and especially to all who possessed rank, and wealth, and power, and were in fact the leaders of the nation. And therefore chivalry, the spirit which was to humanise those warriors, needed to be warlike too, and thus to sympathise with those to whom it addressed itself.

Much, too, of its special form it no doubt owed to that wonderful race of heroes, the Normans. The romantic love of adventure; the religious and the martial enthusiasm; the desire to revenge injuries, and to win wealth and power; the delight in arms and horses, in the luxury of dress, and in the exercises of hunting and hawking; the eloquence and sagacity in council; the patience with which when need was they could endure the inclemency of every climate, and the toil and abstinence of a military life; and the gentleness, the affability and the gallantry, which were the characteristics of the Norman race; these must have been more or less impressed on men's minds wherever the Norman sway or influence extended, from England to Sicily, and must have reproduced something of themselves in the social habits and manners of the times. When we read the description of William of the Iron Arm, the first Norman count of Apulia, so strong, so brave, so affable, so generous, and so sage above other men—a lion in battle, a lamb in society, and an angel in council—we are reminded of the heroes of chivalry in the days of its greatest refinement, the Black Prince, Sir John Chandos, and Sir Walter of Manny, as they still live in the pages of Froissart; or their counterparts in romance, King Arthur, Sir Launcelot, Amadis of Gaul, or Palmerin of England.

The Normans, the latest of the Teutonic races who descended, full of wild life, from their mountains and forests, upon the comparatively civilised plains of Europe, may have brought a newer and fresher feeling for those old manners and customs which Tacitus describes as characterising the Germans of his time, and which are with so much probability connected with the chivalry of the Middle Ages. In ancient Germany, and in Scandinavia, it was the custom for each youth, when he was of an age to bear arms, to be presented with a sword, a shield, and a lance, by

his father, or some near relation, in an assembly of the chiefs of the nation; and from that time he became a member of the commonwealth, and ranked as a citizen. He then entered the train of some chief, of whom he and his brother youths became the followers and companions, forming one brotherhood, though not without ranks and degrees, while a generous spirit of equality ran through all.

In ancient Germany, too, women were held in a peculiar reverence, beyond what was known in the other—and otherwise more civilized—nations of antiquity; and the presence of women in the hour of battle with their husbands, brothers, and fathers, was regarded by those warriors as an incentive to courage, and a pledge of victory, which (as they boasted) their Roman foes were unable to appeal to for themselves. And this old Teutonic reverence for women conspired with the new Christian reverence for the Virgin Mary as the type and representative at once of her sex and of the Church, to supply the purer and nobler elements of the gallantry which forms so large a part, not only of the romance, but of the actual history, of chivalry.

But Christianity exercised not only an indirect, but also a direct and avowed action upon the forms of chivalry, as they attained to their full proportions. Knighthood was certainly a feature and distinction of society before the days of Charlemagne, who in permitting the governor of Friesland to make knights by girding them with a sword, and giving them a blow, adds, 'as is the custom.' But no ritual of the Church as yet consecrated that custom. Charlemagne girt the sword on his son Louis the Good without religious ceremonies; and a century later the Saxon king of England, Edward the Elder, clothed Athelstan in a soldier's dress of scarlet, and girded him with a girdle ornamented with precious stones and a sword with sheath of gold, but without religious rites. But in the next century, in the reign of Edward the Confessor, we read that Hereward, a noble Anglo-Saxon youth, was knighted by the Abbot of Peterborough, with confession, absolution, and prayer that he might be a true knight. And this the historian describes as the custom of the English, as indeed it was, or soon became, that of all Europe; the Normans resisting the innovation longest, but at last adopting it with their wonted ardour. The candidate for knighthood confessed his sins on the eve of his consecration (for such it now was), and passed the night in prayer and fasting in the church: the godfathers, the bath, the white garment, and the tonsure (sometimes limited indeed to a single lock) were the symbols of the new and holy state of life to which he was now called: next morning he heard mass, offered his sword on the altar, where it was blessed by the priest; and he was created a knight—either by the priest of highest rank present, or by some knight, who, in virtue of his knighthood, was qualified to confer the sacred office he had himself received—in the name of God, of St. George, and of St. Michael the Archangel. He swore, and received the holy communion in confirmation of his oath, to fulfil the duties of his profession; to speak the truth; to maintain the right; to protect women, the poor, and the distressed; to practise courtesy; to pursue the infidels; to despise the

allurements of ease and safety, and to maintain his honour in every perilous adventure. And the Council of Cleremont, of which I have already spoken—as if in order to give the sanction of the Church in a still more formal and comprehensive manner to the whole system of chivalry—decreed that every person of noble birth, on attaining the age of twelve years, should take a solemn oath before the bishop of his diocese to defend to the uttermost the oppressed, the widow, and the orphans; that women of noble birth, both married and single, should enjoy his especial care; and that nothing should be wanting in him to render travelling safe, and to destroy tyranny.

Thus, as has been justly observed, all the humanities of chivalry were sanctioned by legal and ecclesiastical power: it was intended that they should be spread over the whole face of Christendom, in order to check the barbarism and ferocity of the times. While the form of chivalry was martial, its objects became to a great extent religious and social: from a mere military array chivalry obtained the name of the Order, the Holy Order, and a character of seriousness and solemnity was given to it; and it was accounted an honourable office above all offices, orders, and acts of the world, except the order of priesthood.

The education for knighthood usually began at a still earlier age than that mentioned in the Canons of Cleremont. The castles of the princes and nobles were the schools of those days, at least for the youth of their own class. Every feudal lord had his court, to which he drew the sons and daughters of the poorer gentry of his domains; and if he were a knight distinguished for his merits, his castle was also frequented by the children of men of equal rank and reputation with himself: for the prudent and careful father would often have some brother in arms whom he thought better fitted than himself to educate his children in the accomplishments and duties of his station. So, long after, Ben Jonson, looking back on those old times, and picturing them in their ideal aspect, says, that then

> 'Goodness gave the greatness,
> And greatness worship: every house became
> An academy of honour.'

And that this method of education

> 'By a line
> Of institution from our ancestors,
> Hath been deriv'd down to us, and receiv'd
> In a succession, for the noblest way
> Of breeding up our youth in letters, arms,
> Fair mien, discourses, civil exercises,
> And all the blazon of a gentleman.
> Where can he learn to vault, to ride, to fence,
> To move his body gracefuller, to speak
> His language purer, or to tune his mind
> Or manners more to the harmony of nature,
> Than in these nurseries of nobility?'

The boy of gentle birth, when he thus began his education, was called by the names of Childe, or Damoiseau, or Valet, said to be a contraction of Vassalet or little Vassal, and also Page, though this last name was originally appropriated to the youths of inferior rank. He usually entered the castle which was to be his school about the age of seven or eight. He was to learn modesty, obedience, and address in arms and horsemanship, and was duly exercised in the use of his weapons, beginning with such as were suited to his strength. He was instructed how to guide a horse with grace and dexterity, how to use the bow and the sword, and how to manage the lance,—an art which was taught him by making him ride against a wooden figure, which, if not struck in true knightly fashion, was so contrived as to turn round and give the awkward cavalier a blow with its wooden sword. He attended his lord in the chase, and learnt all its arts; he attended him also in many offices which we should now call menial, but which were then held to be the proper symbols of modesty and obedience for the youth of highest birth and rank. Thus the Black Prince was held to show the highest respect to the French king, his prisoner, by personal attendance on him. In the words of Froissart: 'The same day of the battle, at night, the prince made a supper in his lodging to the French king, and to the most part of the great lords that were prisoners . . . . and always the prince served before the king as humbly as he could, and would not sit at the king's board for any desire that the king could make; but he said he was not sufficient to sit at the table with so great a prince as the king was.'

And not the least important of the youth's duties were those towards the ladies of the house in which he lived. He was to wait on them rather as attending a sort of superior beings to whom adoration and obsequious service were due, than as ministering to the convenience of human creatures like himself. The most modest demeanour, the most profound respect, were to be observed in the presence of these fair idols. And as not only the youths, but the maidens—the damoiselles no less than the damoiseaux—were sent to the courts of the barons and their ladies for education, it would often happen that this veneration in which the boy was so early trained towards the ladies of maturer years, would find an object in some young maiden whose more suitable age might lead him, as he grew up, from mere boyish regard to that passionate and abiding devotion which was the duty of every true knight to his lady, and by the strength of which he held that all his power for good was to be maintained. Here is a description of the beginning of the loves of Amadis and Oriana, which is as charming as it is simple; and which, though we find it in the pages of a romance, we cannot doubt is a picture of actual life and manners. 'Oriana,' says the old book, 'was about ten years old, the fairest creature that ever was seen; wherefore she was called the one "without a peer". . . . The child of the sea (that is, Amadis) was now twelve years old, but in stature and size he seemed fifteen, and he served the queen; but, now that Oriana was there, the queen gave her the child of the sea, that he should serve her, and Oriana said that "it pleased her;" and that word which she said, the child kept in his heart, so that

he never lost it from his memory, and in all his life he was never weary of serving her, and his heart was surrendered to her; and this love lasted as long as they lasted, for as well as he loved her did she also love him. But the child of the sea, who knew nothing of her love, thought himself presumptuous to have placed his thoughts on her, and dared not speak to her; and she, who loved him in her heart, was careful not to speak more with him than with another; but their eyes delighted to reveal to the heart what was the thing on earth that they loved best. And now the time came that he thought he could take arms if he were knighted; and this he greatly desired, thinking that he would do such things that, if he lived, his mistress should esteem him.'

Such was the beginning of the loves of Amadis and Oriana, so famous in romance, and so generally held by knights and ladies to be a model for themselves. Constancy, such as that of Amadis, was a virtue of the true lover which those times of long inevitable separations and absences demanded in forms hardly known in our days; and in proportion was it insisted upon, and held in honour. So Spenser says:

'Young knight whatever, that dost arms profess,
And through long labours huntest after fame,
Beware of fraud, beware of fickleness,
In choice and change of thy dear loved dame;
Lest thou of her believe too lightly blame,
And rash misweening do thy heart remove;
For unto knight there is no greater shame,
Than lightness and inconstancy in love.'

The peerless Amadis passed with more than ordinary rapidity to the rank of knighthood. The youth more usually remained an esquire—the next step to that of page—till he was twenty. He attended the knight to whose person he was attached, dressed and undressed him, trained his horses, kept his arms bright and burnished, and did the honours of the household to the strangers who visited it; so that Spenser takes the squire as the type of such courtesy. Here is Chaucer's description of the squire:

'With him there was his son, a youngé squire,
A lover and a lusty bachelor,
With lockés curl'd as they were laid in press;
Of twenty years of age he was, I guess.
Of his statúre he was of even length,
And wonderly deliver, and great of strength;
And he had been some time in chevachie (military expeditions),
In Flanders, in Artois, and Picardie,
And borne him well, as of so little space,
In hope to standen in his lady's grace.
Embroider'd was he, as it were a mead
All full of freshé flowers, white and red;
Singing he was, or fluting, all the day;
He was as fresh as is the month of May;

Short was his gown, with sleevés long and wide:
Well could he sit on horse, and fairé ride;
He couldé songés make, and well indite,
Just, and eke dance, and well pourtray and write:
So hot he lovéd, that by nightertale
He slept no more than doth the nightingale.
Courteous he was; lowly and serviceable;
And carv'd before his father at the table.'

I have already spoken of the religious rites with which the esquire was admitted into the order of knighthood, and of the solemn and noble engagements into which he then entered. He had next to 'win his spurs,' as it was called; a phrase happily illustrated in the story of Edward III and the Black Prince, which Froissart thus relates:—

'This battle between Broy and Cressy, this Saturday, was right cruel and fell, and many a feat of arms done that came not to my knowledge. . . . In the morning, the day of the battle, certain Frenchmen and Almagnes perforce opened the archers of the prince's battle, [*division* as we should now say,] and came and fought with the men of arms, hand to hand. Then the second battle of the Englishmen came to succour the prince's battle, the which was time, for they had as then much ado. And they with the prince sent a messenger to the king, who was on a little windmill hill: then the knight said to the king, "Sir, the earl of Warwick, and the earl of Oxford, Sir Reynold Cobham, and other, such as lie about the prince your son, are fiercely fought withal, and are sore handled, wherefore they desire you that you and your battle will come and aid them, for if the Frenchmen increase, as they doubt they will, your son and they shall have much ado." Then the king said, "Is my son dead, or hurt, or on the earth felled?" "No, sir," quoth the knight, "but he is hardly matched, wherefore he hath need of your aid." "Well," said the king, "return to him, and to them that sent you hither, and say to them, that they send no more to me for any adventure that falleth, as long as my son is alive: and also say to them, that they suffer him this day to win his spurs; for, if God be pleased, I will this day's work be his, and the honour thereof, and to them that be about him." Then the knight returned again to them, and showed the king's words, the which greatly encouraged them, and repented in that they had sent to the king as they did.' Brave knights, to be 'greatly encouraged' by such stern though manly words. We are reminded of the not less brave and knightly demeanour of Sir Colin Halket and his men at Waterloo, when the Duke of Wellington rode up and asked how they were, and the general replied that two-thirds of the brigade were down, and the remainder so exhausted that the relief of fresh troops, for however short a time, was most desirable. But when the duke said that no relief was possible, that all depended on *them*, the answer which the officer made for himself and his men was, 'Enough, my lord, we stand here till the last man falls.'

Thenceforth the knight's career depended, he would not have said on himself, but on God and his lady: and if we may judge by the ordinary language of the

romances, his lady was often the object of actual adoration, little differing from that he would have addressed to the saints in the hour of danger or of triumph. Philosophic divines teach us that although the worship of the saints may become in practice a gross and degrading superstition, it has in it an element of true, and in itself ennobling, faith in ideals of humanity more or less perfectly revealed in human form: and so while we smile at the fictions of extravagant fancy in which the mediæval knight was wont to clothe his love, and his professions of love, for his mistress, we cannot reasonably doubt that in the main, and for that time of youthful imaginations rather than of sober reasonings, the knight was right. When I think of what society was, and what it would still be, without the humanizing influences of womanhood and ladyhood, and what it is by means of these, I say that the tree may be judged by its fruits, and that it is from a right noble stock, rightly and wisely cultivated in the main, in those old days, that we are still gathering such noble fruits. Much evil there was along with the good; and, what is worse, much confusion between good and evil. I need not tell the reader of chivalry romances, or of Mr. Tennyson's glorious reproductions of some of their incidents in modern form of thought as well as language, how painfully this confusion defaces many of the fairest characters and most interesting tales of chivalry, while the historical records of the times in which those romances were written and read, show that the actual state of morals and manners exhibited the like confusions of good and evil, in the ideals as well as in the conduct of life. But, as I have already observed, we see, at least in the romance before us, the good contending with, and mastering the evil, and this not least in the end of the story of the guilty loves of Guenever and Launcelot, the knight whose fame in romance perhaps surpasses that of Amadis, though even mediæval morality was obliged to censure the constancy of Launcelot's love, while it might unhesitatingly extol that of Amadis.

Mr. Tennyson has, I may assume, made every one familiar with the retirement of queen Guenever to the nunnery of Almesbury, and with the death of Arthur; and I venture for the completion of this sketch to show, though from the present volume, how the old story which the poet chiefly follows relates the death and draws the character of Launcelot. Launcelot, when he heard of those events, went to Almesbury, and after taking leave of the queen, resolved to follow her example; and became a hermit and penitent, taking up his abode in a forest where was an hermitage and a chapel that stood between two cliffs; and there he served God day and night with prayers and fastings. Thus he, and other knights who followed his example, 'endured great penance six years, and then Sir Launcelot took the habit of priesthood, and a twelvemonth he sang mass.' At the end of that time a vision directed him to take the body of queen Guenever, now dead at Almesbury, and bury her with king Arthur at Glastonbury. Then the story goes on:—'And when she was put in the earth Sir Launcelot swooned and lay long still, while the hermit came out and awaked him, and said, Ye be to blame, for ye displease God with

such manner of sorrow making. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, I trust I do not displease God, for He knoweth mine intent, for my sorrow was not, nor is not, for any rejoicing of sin, but my sorrow may never have end. For when I remember of her beauty, and of her noblesse, that was both with her king and with her; so when I saw his corpse and her corpse so lie together, truly mine heart would not serve to sustain my careful body. Also when I remember me how by my default, and mine orgule, and my pride, that they were both laid full low, that were peerless that ever was living of christian people, wit ye well, said Sir Launcelot, this remembered, of their kindness and mine unkindness, sank so to my heart, that all my natural strength failed me, so that I might not sustain myself.' The story goes on to say that there he wasted away, praying night and day at the tomb of the king and queen. He died, and was taken to his own castle of Joyous Gard to be buried. 'And right thus as they were at their service there came Sir Ector de Maris, that had seven year sought all England, Scotland, and Wales, seeking his brother Sir Launcelot. And when Sir Ector heard such noise and light in the quire of Joyous Gard he alight, and put his horse from him, and came into the quire, and there he saw men sing and weep. And all they knew Sir Ector, but he knew not them. Then went Sir Bors unto Sir Ector, and told him how there lay his brother Sir Launcelot dead. And then Sir Ector threw his shield, sword, and helm from him; and when he beheld Sir Launcelot's visage he fell down in a swoon; and when he awaked it were hard for any tongue to tell the doleful complaints that he made for his brother. Ah, Launcelot, he said, thou were head of all Christian knights! And now, I dare say, said Sir Ector, thou Sir Launcelot, there thou liest, that thou were never matched of earthly knight's hands; and thou were the courtiest knight that ever bare shield; and thou were the truest friend to thy lover that ever bestrode horse; and thou were the truest lover, of a sinful man, that ever loved woman; and thou were the kindest man that ever strake with sword; and thou were the goodliest person ever came among press of knights; and thou was the meekest man and the gentlest that ever ate in hall among ladies; and thou were the sternest knight to thy mortal foe that ever put spear in the rest.'

Let me compare with this Chaucer's description of the knight of his times:—

'A knight there was, and that a worthy[1] man,
That from the timé that he first began
To riden out, he loved chivalry,
Truth and honóur, freedom and courtesy.
Full worthy was he in his lordés war,
And thereto had he ridden, no man farre,
As well in Christendom as in Heatheness,
And ever honoured for his worthiness.
At Alisandre he was when it was won:
Full often-time he had the board begun

[1] Valiant.

Aboven allé natións in Prusse:[1]
In Lethowe had he reyséd[2], and in Russe,
No Christian man so oft, of his degree:
In Gernade at the siege eke had he be
Of Algesir, and ridden in Belmarie;
At Leyés was he, and at Satalie,
When they were won; and in the Greaté Sea
At many a noble army had he be.
At mortal battles had he been fifteen,
And foughten for our faith at Tramissene
In listés thriés, and aye slain his foe.
This ilké worthy knight had been also
Sometimé with the lord of Palathie
Against another heathen in Turkey;
And evermore he had a sovereign prize[3],
And though that he was worthy he was wise,
And of his port as meek as is a maid.
He never yet no villainy ne said
In all his life unto no manner wight:
He was a very perfect, gentle knight.'

In an age when all men, not of the clergy, were divided between the two classes of freemen or gentlemen, and serfs or villains, and the villains were in habits and in human culture little better than the domestic animals of which they shared the labours, the knight almost inevitably belonged to the class of free, or gentle, birth. Still, in theory always, and to a great extent in practice, it was not his birth, but his personal merit, which qualified him for knighthood. The personal merit would oftener exist, and still oftener come to light, where it had the advantages and aids of education and general social culture. But if it was recognised in the villain, or man of no rights of birth, he might be, and often was, knighted, and was thereby immediately enfranchised, and accounted a gentleman, in law no less than in name. Thus Froissart tells us of Sir Robert Sale, the governor of Norwich, that 'he was no gentleman born, but he had the grace to be reputed sage and valiant in arms, and for his valiantness King Edward made him knight.' He was governor during the popular insurrection of which Wat Tyler and Jack Straw were the London leaders; and he was invited to put himself at the head of one of the risings by men who urged upon him—'Sir Robert, ye are a knight and a man greatly beloved in this country, and renowned a valiant man; and though ye be thus, yet we know you well: ye be no gentleman born, but son to a villain, such as we be: therefore come you with us, and be our master, and we shall make you so great a lord that one quarter of England shall be under your obeisance.' He refused, and they killed him. The same king also knighted a man-at-arms, who had originally been a tailor, and who greatly distinguished himself under the name of Sir John Hacond,

[1] Having gone to find adventures in Prussia with the Teutonic knights who carried on war with the still Pagan Lithuania, he had been often placed at the head of the table above the like adventurers from other nations, in compliment to his especial merit.

[2] Ridden in arms. [3] Praise.

or Hawkwood. And the courtly as well as knightly Chaucer, who must more or less have reflected the feeling of the royal and noble personages among whom he lived, goes farther, and asserts that not only does virtue make the gentleman, but also baseness of mind the villain or churl:—

'But understand in thine intent,
That this is not mine intendement,
To clepen no wight in no age
Only gentle for his lineage;
But whoso that is virtuous,
And in his port nought outrageous,
Though he be not gentle born,
Thou may'st well see this in soth,
That he is gentle because he doth
As longeth to a gentleman;
Of them none other deem I can:
For certainly, withouten drede,
A churl is deemed by his deed,
Of high or low, as you may see,
Or of what kindred that he be.'

Akin to this recognition of gentleness of mind and manners, as that which made a gentleman, was the sense of brotherhood among knights and gentlemen, which led them to trust in each other's honour, even when they were fighting under the banners of hostile kings. The chronicles are full of the instances of such consideration of the English and French knights for each other in the wars between the two nations; and it is not without probability that to these and suchlike manifestations of the spirit of chivalry have been traced the courtesy and humanity which characterise modern warfare in a degree unknown to the ancients.

Much indeed of barbarism and cruelty there was in the usages of war in the best times of chivalry, even of the knights among themselves, and still more when they came, with passions infuriated by resistance, upon the people of lower rank than themselves. Edward III of England, and the knights whom he gathered round him, are held alike by contemporary historians and romance writers, and by those of modern times, to have best exhibited the characteristics of chivalry in its day of greatest refinement as well as splendour; yet no one can read the chronicles of even the admiring Froissart without seeing how much savage passion and cruelty was often mingled with their better dispositions: though we do see also that the cruelty was not because, but in spite of, their chivalry. Froissart laments bitterly the iniquity of the massacre by the Black Prince of the people of Limoges, men, women, and children, more than three thousand. And when Edward III, before him, intended, as would seem, to have treated the town of Calais in like manner, not only did the French knights who had offered to surrender declare that they would 'endure as much pain as knights ever did, rather than the poorest lad in the town should have any more evil than the greatest of us all'—showing that they made no selfish distinction between the noble and the villain—but the English

knights, headed by Sir Walter of Manny, that flower of knighthood, protested to the utmost against their king's purpose. And when he had yielded so far to their urgency as to say that he would be content with the lives of the six chief burgesses, Sir Walter of Manny again remonstrated, saying, 'Ah, noble king, for God's sake refrain your courage: ye have the name of sovereign noblesse; therefore now do not a thing that should blemish your renown, nor to give cause to some to speak of you villainy [to charge you with conduct unworthy of a knight and gentleman]; every man will say it is a great cruelty to put to death such honest persons, who by their own wills put themselves into your grace to save their company. Then the king wryed away from him, and commanded to send for the hangman, and said, "They of Calais had caused many of my men to be slain, wherefore these shall die in likewise."'

It needed a stronger influence than that of Sir Walter of Manny to save their lives: and this brings me to speak of the LADY of the mediæval times; the LADY, who was the counterpart of the KNIGHT, and without whom he could never have existed. Here, indeed, I meet a difficulty which reminds me of what Coleridge says of the female characters of Shakspeare, that their truth to nature, and therefore their beauty, consists in the absence of strongly marked features. It is impossible to read the poems, romances, or chronicles of the mediæval times, without feeling all through how important a part the lady plays everywhere; and yet it is far from easy to draw her from her retirement and bring distinctly before ourselves what she did, and get a picture of her as definite as we can do of the knight. Still I must try to trace the outlines of such a picture of one lady:—Philippa, queen of Edward III, whom Froissart calls 'the most gentle queen, most liberal, and most courteous that ever was queen in her days;' and who was the very type and representative of the lady, in the highest and best sense, in an age in which the ladies—such as the princess Blanche, the good queen Ann, the countess of Salisbury, Jane de Montfort, and the wife of Charles de Blois —were renowned for their gentle or their heroic characters.

When Isabel, queen of Edward II, visited Hainault with her son, afterwards Edward III, we are told that William, earl of Hainault, 'had four fair daughters, Margaret, Philippa, Jane, and Isabell: among whom the young Edward set most his love and company on Philippa; and also the young lady in all honour was more conversant with him than any of her sisters.' Queen Isabel had come to ask for aid against her enemies, and Froissart gives an account of the discussion between the earl and his council, who objected on prudential grounds to interfering with the quarrels of the English, and the earl's brother, Sir John Hainault, who maintained that 'all knights ought to aid to their powers all ladies and damsels chased out of their own countries, being without counsel or comfort.' The earl finally yielded, saying, 'My fair brother, God forbid that your good purpose should be broken or let. Therefore, in the name of God, I give you leave; and kissed him, straining him by the hand in sign of great love.' The whole passage is too long

to quote, but thus much gives a lively picture of the temper of the home and court in which the young Philippa was brought up.

Her marriage with Edward, then only fifteen years old, was agreed on, and sanctioned by the Pope. I am sorry to say that the chronicler gives no account of the lady's bridal outfit[1], except in the general terms, that 'there was devised and purveyed for their apparel, and for all things honourable that belonged to such a lady, who should be queen of England.' They were married, and she arrived in England and was crowned, 'with great justs, tourneys, dancing, carolling, and great feasts, the which endured the space of three weeks.' And then 'this young queen Philippa abode still in England, with small company of any persons of her own country, saving one who was named Walter of Manny, who was her carver, and after did so many great prowesses in divers places, that it were hard to make mention of them.' If we couple this statement, that she retained hardly any of her own people, with that which Froissart makes in reviewing her whole life, that 'she loved always her own nation where she was born,' we have pleasing thoughts suggested of the cheerful acceptance of new duties in a foreign land by the young wife; while, if I had space to describe in detail the noble life of Sir Walter of Manny, the reader would agree with me that his habitual presence in the English court must have done much to make both Edward and the Black Prince, as well as the rest of the princes and nobles, what they were, as knights and gentlemen.

The next glimpse we get of the queen is when she appears, accompanied with three hundred ladies and damsels 'of noble lineage, and apparelled accordingly, at the yearly feast at Windsor, in honour of the order and brotherhood of the Knights of the Blue Garter, there established on St. George's day.' Again, when the king of Scots had advanced to Newcastle, while king Edward lay before Calais, we see the queen arriving to meet the English army, and going from division to division, 'desiring them to do their devoir'—duty was then, as now, the English soldier's word—'to defend the honour of her lord the king of England, and, in the name of God, every man to be of good heart and courage; promising them that to her power she would remember them as well or better as though her lord the king were there personally. Then the queen departed from them, recommending them to God and St. George.' She does not seem, like some of the ladies of that generation, to have considered the field to be her place while the battle was going on; but after it was won she returned, and with her council made all necessary arrangements and plans. Shortly after she joined her husband while he lay before Calais, 'bringing many ladies and damsels with her, as well to accompany her, as to see their husbands, fathers, brethren, and other friends that lay at siege there before Calais, and had done a long time.' And I think we may attribute it as well

[1] It appears from Morte Arthur, p. 474, that London was the proper place to go to, 'to buy all manner of things that longed unto a wedding.'

to the general humanising influence of all those ladies, as to the personal persuasion of Philippa, that Calais did not suffer the same horrors of war as did Limoges at the hands of the Black Prince. To what I have already quoted from Froissart as to this story, I must now add what he tells us of Philippa, after Edward had refused to hear Sir Walter of Manny. 'Then the queen kneeled down, and sore weeping, said, "Ah, gentle sir, sith I passed the sea in great peril, I have desired nothing of you; therefore now I humbly require you, in the honour of the Son of the Virgin Mary, and for the love of me, that ye will take mercy of these six burgesses." The king beheld the queen, and stood still in a study a space, and then said, "Ah dame, I would ye had been as now in some other place; ye make such request to me that I cannot deny you; wherefore I give them to you, to do your pleasure with them."'

And lastly, as a counterpart to the picture I have already given you of the death of the knight of romance, here is the account of the death of her who was the lady of the brightest day of historical chivalry:—

'In the mean season there fell in England a heavy case and a common: howbeit it was right piteous for the king, his children, and all his realm; for the good queen of England—that so many good deeds had done in her time, and so many knights succoured, and ladies and damosels comforted, and had so largely departed of her goods to her people, and naturally loved always the nation of Haynault, the country where she was born—she fell sick in the castle of Windsor, the which sickness continued on her so long, that there was no remedy but death; and the good lady, when she knew that there was no remedy but death, she desired to speak with the king her husband, and when he was before her, she put out of her bed her right hand, and took the king by his right hand, who was right sorrowful at his heart. Then she said, "Sir, we have in peace, joy, and great prosperity, used all our time together: sir, now I pray you at our departing, that ye will grant me three desires." The king, right sorrowfully weeping, said, "Madam, desire what ye will, I grant it." The three requests of the dying woman were—that the king should pay all that she owed to any man; that he should fulfil all the promises she had made to the churches where she had "had her devotion," and that "it might please him to take none other sepulture, whensoever it should please God to call him out of this transitory life, but beside her in Westminster." The king, all weeping, said, "Madam, I grant all your desire." Then the good lady and queen made on her the sign of the cross, and commended the king her husband to God, and her youngest son Thomas, who was there beside her; and anon after she yielded up the spirit, which I believe surely the holy angels received with great joy up to heaven; for in all her life she did neither in thought nor deed thing to lose her soul, as far as any creature could know. Thus the good queen of England died in the year of our Lord 1369, in the vigil of our Lady, in the midst of August.'

We have all pictured to ourselves, again and again, how the lady sat in her bower with her embroidery and her missal or romance, and saw from her lattice

window her knight going from the castle with lance and pennon, hoping to meet his foe: how the minstrel recited in the castle hall the feats of arms of this or that hero in some distant battle-field; and how the matron or the maiden heard those feats, and thought with silent joy that it was her lord, her husband, or her lover, whose deeds were thus winning the praises of the troubadour, and the applause of the listening knights and squires. We have all seen in imagination the tournament, with the pomp and splendour of its mimic contests: contests which surpassed the Olympic and Corinthian games of classic antiquity, not only in their gorgeous show, but still more in the presence of the ladies, noble in birth, and fame, and beauty; whose scarf, or glove, the combatants wore as the token of that favour which was their highest incentive to distinguish themselves; and from whose hands the conqueror received the prize of skill and bravery; while the honourably vanquished might be sure that he would have the hardly less welcome lot of being cared for by the same ladies, who never shrank from this their acknowledged and well fulfilled duty of tending the wounded knight.

Perhaps too we have listened in fancy to the proceedings of the so-called Courts or Parliaments of Love, in which the ladies were wont to hear questions of gallantry gravely argued on both sides by poets pleading in verse, and then to give their judgments according to the logical and metaphysical rules which the schoolmen applied to theological enquiries. But I can now but remind my reader that such things were; and must hasten forward, leaving ungathered flowers that would make many a wreath and nosegay.

The golden age of chivalry was the period from about the middle of the eleventh to the end of the fourteenth century. We may say, with Gibbon, that the Crusades were at once a cause and an effect of chivalry. In the Crusades the spirit of knighthood, with all its characteristic features, actuated vast bodies of men of every rank and nation, and found a foe believed by all Christendom to be to it what the individual robber and plunderer was to the knight errant who went forth in his own country to defend or rescue the widow and orphan and their possessions, or the traveller along the road which passed the castle of some powerful though unworthy baron. The chivalry at home was kept alive, and raised to its highest energy, both in man and woman, by the chivalry in the Holy Land. It is in this period that the chief institutions of chivalry took their rise, or reached their full form; while their ruder features were gradually softened with the increasing refinement of the times, till they presented that aspect with which we find them in the days of Edward III and the Black Prince, as drawn by Froissart or Chaucer, or in the romances which were then written or remodelled out of older materials, and which show that even in the estimation of other nations the English court then afforded the pattern of knighthood for Christendom.

Thenceforward the outward forms of chivalry began to decay; very gradually indeed, and not without apparent resuscitations from time to time. But no real revival was possible; for the immortal spirit was seeking new habitations for itself,

more fitted to the new world which was succeeding to that of the Middle Ages. And perhaps Cervantes, by helping to tear up with his merciless satire the last remnants of an honest faith in the old forms of chivalry, did as real, though we cannot say as genial, a service to the cause of chivalry itself, as Spenser did in endeavouring to preserve its spirit by transferring it to the region of allegory. The last expiring token of the old spirit in the old forms which I have found, is in the records of the Knights of Malta—the Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem—when the news of the great earthquake in Sicily, in 1783, arrived at Malta. Then those poor feeble-minded sybarites remembered for a moment their manhood and their knighthood, and their vows as Hospitallers: they manned their galleys, and, with food and clothing and medicines, and the consolations of their faith, were speedily seen, in their half-military, half-priestly garb—the armour covered by the black robe with the white cross—at the bedsides of the wounded and the dying, as they lay amid the still tottering ruins of their devastated houses. In a very few years, in that same generation, the Order had passed away for ever: but it is pleasant to him who stands in the palace of the Grand Masters among the trophies of their former greatness, or treads the aisles of the cathedral of St. John, where every step is upon the emblazoned gravestone of a knight, to think of this, and not of any less worthy deed, as their last act.

'The knight's bones are dust,
And his good sword rust:
His soul is with the saints, I trust:'—

but he has left to us an imperishable and a rich inheritance, won for us by him. To him we owe our MANNERS—all that world of existence implied in the names LADY and GENTLEMAN. Through the Middle Ages it was 'Our Lady,' the Virgin mother, who embodied and represented to all men and women, from the prince to the peasant, their ideals of womanhood and ladyhood. In modern times St. Paul has been held to be the model of a gentleman; in whose acts and writings are found all the principles, maxims, and spirit of a character entirely chivalrous, in the amplest sense of the term: while one of our old dramatists has ventured, in words of touching tenderness and reverence, to point to a yet higher realisation of that ideal;—

'The best of men
That e'er wore earth about him, was a sufferer,
A soft, meek, patient, humble, tranquil spirit;
The first true gentleman that ever breathed.'

And it was the transference of these Christian ethics into the practice of common, daily, worldly life, in rude, half-barbarous times, which we owe to the knights and ladies of the Middle Ages; a transference effected slowly, and with much mixture of evil with the good: nor is the work nearly completed yet; but the worth of it can hardly be overrated.

There is not indeed all, but there is much, truth in the old motto, 'Manners

makyth man.' Manners, like laws, create a region and atmosphere of virtue within which all good more easily lives and grows, and evil finds it harder to maintain itself. How large a portion of the small, spontaneous kindnesses of hourly life, in which, after all, so much of our happiness consists, are not only unknown, but impossible, where habitual, unaffected politeness is wanting.

But manners are good, not only as affording a fairer field for the exercise of the higher virtues, but good in themselves. They are a real part of the beauty and grace of our human life. Courtesy, and self-possession, and deference and respect for others; modesty and gentleness towards all men, and recognition in all of the true gold of humanity, whether it bear the guinea stamp or no; love of truth and honour; and not only readiness, but eagerness to help the weak, and defend their cause against the strong; and all these irradiated and glorified, as often as may be, by that sentiment which

> 'Gives to every power a double power,
> Above their functions and their offices;'—

these are the things which make the lady and the gentleman.

And if it should seem as though the chivalry of our own times is reduced to something less noble than that of old, when men risked life, and things dearer than life, in defending the weak and attacking the oppressor in his strongholds—when the hardness of the actual fight against evil-doers was not exaggerated in the romances which pictured the knights contending with dragons and enchanters and giants—we must remember that our nineteenth century world is yet far from cleared of the monstrous powers of evil, which still oppress and devour the weak; and that a battle, not really less resolute, nor, if need be, less desperate, than those of old, is still carried on by those who, under the modest guise of common life, are fighting in the true spirit of chivalry—uniting the most adventurous enthusiasm with the most patient endurance, and both with the gentlest service of the poor, the weak, and the oppressed; and, what is most worthy of admiration, the service of the morally poor, and weak, and oppressed, who, but for such deliverers, must remain in a house of bondage darker than can be built or barred by earthly hands.

But whether we are content with the chivalry of manners, or aspire to a place in the brotherhood of the chivalry of action, our principles, our maxims, and our examples have come down to us as an inheritance from the past:—an inheritance common to all who care to claim it; and won for us by the old knights, fighting in the name of God and of their ladies[1].

[1] My principal authorities—whose words as well as facts I have frequently availed myself of—are Mills's History of Chivalry, which alone almost exhausts the subject; Gibbon's Decline and Fall; Godwin's Life of Chaucer; Scott's Essay on Chivalry; Lord Berners's Froissart; and Southey's Amadis of Gaul.

THE BOOK OF

KING ARTHUR

AND OF HIS NOBLE

KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE.

PREFACE OF WILLIAM CAXTON.

FTER that I had accomplished and ıed divers histories, as well of con- ılation as of other historial and dly acts of great conquerors and ːes, and also certain books of en- ɔles and doctrine, many noble and rs gentlemen of this realm of Eng- came and demanded me many and mes, wherefore that I have not do e and imprint the noble history of Saint Greal, and of the most re- ned Christian king, first and chief ıe three best Christian, and worthy, Arthur, which ought most to be ɛmbered amongst us Englishmen re all other Christian kings; for it otoriously known through the uni- ıl world, that there be nine worthy the best that ever were, that is to three Paynims, three Jews, and e Christian men. As for the Paynims, were tofore the Incarnation of ist, which were named, the first ːtor of Troy, of whom the history is ɹen both in ballad and in prose, the ɔnd Alexander the Great, and the d Julius Cæsar, Emperor of Rome, whom the histories be well known had. And as for the three Jews, ch also were tofore the incarnation ıur Lord, of whom the first was duke ıua which brought the children of ɹel into the land of behest, the second ɔid king of Jerusalem, and the third as Machabeus. Of these three the le rehearseth all their noble histories acts. And since the said incarna- ı have been three noble Christian ı, stalled and admitted through the universal world into the number of the nine best and worthy. Of whom was first the noble Arthur, whose noble acts I purpose to write in this present book here following. The second was Charle- main, or Charles the Great, of whom the history is had in many places, both in French and in English. And the third and last was Godfrey of Boloine, of whose acts and life I made a book unto the excellent prince and king of noble memory, king Edward the Fourth. The said noble gentlemen instantly re- quired me to imprint the history of the said noble king and conqueror king Arthur, and of his knights, with the history of the Saint Greal, and of the death and ending of the said Arthur; affirming that I ought rather to imprint his acts and noble feats, than of Godfrey of Boloine, or any of the other eight, considering that he was a man born within this realm, and king and em- peror of the same: and that there be in French divers and many noble volumes of his acts, and also of his knights. To whom I answered that divers men hold opinion that there was no such Arthur, and that all such books as been made of him, be but feigned and fables, because that some chronicles make of him no men- tion, nor remember him nothing, nor of his knights. Whereto they answered, and one in special said, that in him that should say or think that there was never such a king called Arthur, might well be aretted great folly and blindness. For he said that there were many evidences of the contrary. First ye may see his

sepulchre in the monastery of Glastingbury. And also in Policronicon, in the fifth book the sixth chapter, and in the seventh book the twenty-third chapter, where his body was buried, and after found, and translated into the said monastery. Ye shall see also in the history of Bochas in his book *De Casu Principum* part of his noble acts, and also of his fall. Also Galfridus in his British book recounteth his life: and in divers places of England many remembrances be yet of him, and shall remain perpetually, and also of his knights. First in the abbey of Westminster, at St. Edward's shrine, remaineth the print of his seal in red wax closed in beryl, in which is written, *Patricius Arthurus Britannie, Gallie, Germanie, Dacie, Imperator.* Item in the castle of Dover ye may see Gawaine's scull, and Cradok's mantle: at Winchester the Round Table: in other places Launcelot's sword and many other things. Then all these things considered, there can no man reasonably gainsay but that there was a king of this land named Arthur. For in all places, Christian and heathen, he is reputed and taken for one of the nine worthy, and the first of the three Christian men. And also, he is more spoken of beyond the sea, more books made of his noble acts, than there be in England, as well in Dutch, Italian, Spanish, and Greekish, as in French. And yet of record remain in witness of him in Wales, in the town of Camelot, the great stones and the marvellous works of iron lying under the ground, and royal vaults, which divers now living have seen. Wherefore it is a marvel why he is no more renowned in his own country, save only it accordeth to the Word of God, which saith that no man is accepted for a prophet in his own country. Then all these things aforesaid alleged, I could not well deny but that there was such a noble king named Arthur, and reputed one of the nine worthy, and first and chief of the Christian men. And many noble volumes be made of him and of his noble knights in French, which I have seen and read beyond the sea, not had in our maternal tongue Welsh be many and also in Fre some in English but no wh all. Wherefore, such as h been drawn out briefly into I have after the simple conr God hath sent to me, under tl and correction of all nob and gentlemen, enprised to a book of the noble historie said king Arthur, and of certa knights, after a copy unto me which copy Sir Thomas Mal take out of certain books of and reduced it into English. according to my copy, have it in print, to the intent that n may see and learn the noble chivalry, the gentle and virtuc that some knights used in th by which they came to honour, they that were vicious were puni oft put to shame and rebuke; hu seeching all noble lords and lac all other estates of what estate they been of, that shall see an this said book and work, tl take the good and honest acts remembrance, and to follow t Wherein they shall find man and pleasant histories, and n renowned acts of humanity, ness, and chivalry. For herein seen noble chivalry, courtesy, h friendliness, hardiness, love, fr cowardice, murder, hate, virt sin. Do after the good and l evil, and it shall bring you fame and renommee. And for the time this book shall be ple read in, but for to give faith a that all is true that is containe ye be at your liberty: but all i for our doctrine, and for to bew we fall not to vice nor sin, but cise and follow virtue, by the v may come and attain to goc and renown in this life, and a short and transitory life to co everlasting bliss in heaven; th He grant us that reigneth in the blessed Trinity. Amen.

n to proceed forth in this said
the which I direct unto all noble
s, lords and ladies, gentlemen or
women, that desire to read or hear
f the noble and joyous history of
eat conqueror and excellent king,
Arthur, sometime king of this
realm, then called Britain; I,
m Caxton, simple person, present
ook following, which I have en-
to imprint: and treateth of the
acts, feats of arms of chivalry,
ss, hardiness, humanity, love,
sy, and very gentleness, with
wonderful histories and adven-

And for to understand briefly
ontent of this volume, I have
l it into XXI Books, and every
chaptered, as hereafter shall by
grace follow. The First Book
treat how Uther Pendragon gat
ble conqueror king Arthur, and
neth xxviii chapters. The Second
reateth of Balin the noble knight,
ntaineth xix chapters. The Third
treateth of the marriage of king
r to queen Guenever, with other
s, and containeth xv chapters. The
1 Book, how Merlin was assotted,
war made to king Arthur, and
neth xxix chapters. The Fifth
treateth of the conquest of Lucius
nperor, and containeth xii chap-
The Sixth Book treateth of Sir
elot and Sir Lionel, and marvel-
dventures, and containeth xviii
rs. The Seventh Book treateth
ble knight called Sir Gareth, and
by Sir Kay Beaumains, and
neth xxxvi chapters. The Eighth
reateth of the birth of Sir Tristram
the noble knight, and of his acts, and containeth xli chapters. The Ninth Book treateth of a knight named by Sir Kay Le Cote male taille, and also of Sir Tristram, and containeth xliv chapters. The Tenth Book treateth of Sir Tristram, and other marvellous adventures, and containeth lxxxviii chapters. The Eleventh Book treateth of Sir Launcelot and Sir Galahad, and containeth xiv chapters. The Twelfth Book treateth of Sir Launcelot and his madness, and containeth xiv chapters. The Thirteenth Book treateth how Galahad came first to king Arthur's court, and the quest how the Sangreal was begun, and containeth xx chapters. The Fourteenth Book treateth of the quest of the Sangreal, and containeth x chapters. The Fifteenth Book treateth of Sir Launcelot, and containeth vi chapters. The Sixteenth Book treateth of Sir Bors and Sir Lionel his brother, and containeth xvii chapters. The Seventeenth Book treateth of the Sangreal, and containeth xxiii chapters. The Eighteenth Book treateth of Sir Launcelot and the queen, and containeth xxv chapters. The Nineteenth Book treateth of queen Guenever and Launcelot, and containeth xiii chapters. The Twentieth Book treateth of the piteous death of Arthur, and containeth xxii chapters. The Twenty-first Book treateth of his last departing, and how Sir Launcelot came to revenge his death, and containeth xiii chapters. The sum is twenty-one books, which contain the sum of five hundred and seven chapters, as more plainly shall follow hereafter.

The Table or Rubrysshe

of the

Content of Chapters.

Shortly of the First Book of King Arthur.

First how Uther Pendragon sent for the duke of Cornwall and Igraine his wife, and of their departing suddenly again. Chap. i.

How Uther Pendragon made war on the duke of Cornwall, and how by the means of Merlin he made the duchess his queen. Chap. ii.

Of the birth of king Arthur, and of his nouriture, and of the death of king Uther Pendragon; and how Arthur was chosen king; and of wonders and marvels of a sword that was taken out of a stone by the said Arthur. Chap. iii.

How king Arthur pulled out the sword divers times. Chap. iv.

How king Arthur was crowned and how he made officers. Chap. v.

How king Arthur held in Wales, at a Pentecost, a great feast, and what kings and lords came to his feast. Chap. vi.

Of the first war that king Arthur had, and how he won the field. Chap. vii.

How Merlin counselled king Arthur to send for king Ban and king Bors, and of their counsel taken for the war. Chap. viii.

Of a great tourney made by king Arthur and the two kings Ban and Bors, and how they went over the sea. Chap. ix.

How eleven kings gathered a great host against king Arthur. Chap. x.

Of a dream of the king with the hundred knights. Chap. xi.

How the eleven kings with their host fought against Arthur and his host, and many great feats of the war. Chap. xii.

Yet of the same battle. Chap. xiii.

Yet more of the same battle. Chap. xiv.

Yet more of the said battle, and how it was ended by Merlin. Chap. xv.

How king Arthur, king Ban, and king Bors rescued king Leodegrance, and other incidents. Chap. xvi.

How king Arthur rode to Carlion, and of his dream, and how he saw the questing beast. Chap. xvii.

How king Pellinore took Arthur's horse and followed the questing beast, and how Merlin met with Arthur. Chap. xviii.

How Ulfius appeached queen Igraine, Arthur's mother, of treason; and how a knight came and desired to have the death of his master revenged. Chap. xix.

How Griflet was made knight and justed with a knight. Chap. xx.

How twelve knights came from Rome and asked truage for this land of Arthur, and how Arthur fought with a knight. Chap. xxi.

How Merlin saved Arthur's life, and threw an enchantment upon king Pellinore, and made him to sleep. Chap. xxii.
How Arthur by the mean of Merlin got Excalibur his sword of the Lady of the Lake. Chap. xxiii.
How tidings came to Arthur that king Ryons had overcome eleven kings, and how he desired Arthur's beard to trim his mantle. Chap. xxiv.
How all the children were sent for that were born on May-day, and how Mordred was saved. Chap. xxv.

The Second Book.

Of a damsel which came girded with a sword, for to find a man of such virtue to draw it out of the scabbard. Chap. i.
How Balin, arrayed like a poor knight, pulled out the sword, which afterward was cause of his death. Chap. ii.
How the Lady of the Lake demanded the knight's head that had won the sword, or the maiden's head. Chap. iii.
How Merlin told the adventure of this damsel. Chap. iv.
How Balin was pursued by Sir Lanceor, knight of Ireland, and how he justed and slew him. Chap. v.
How a damsel which was love to Lanceor, slew herself for love, and how Balin met with his brother Balan. Chap. vi.
How a dwarf reproved Balin for the death of Lanceor, and how king Mark of Cornwall found them, and made a tomb over them. Chap. vii.
How Merlin prophesied that two the best knights of the world should fight there, which were Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram. Chap. viii.
How Balin and his brother, by the counsel of Merlin, took king Ryons and brought him to king Arthur. Chap. ix.
How king Arthur had a battle against Nero and king Lot of Orkney; and how king Lot was deceived by Merlin, and how twelve kings were slain. Chap. x.
Of the interment of twelve kings, and of the prophecy of Merlin how Balin should give the dolorous stroke. Chap. xi.
How a sorrowful knight came tofore Arthur, and how Balin fetched him, and how that knight was slain by a knight invisible. Chap. xii.
How Balin and the damsel met with a knight which was in like wise slain, and how the damsel bled for the custom of a castle. Chap. xiii.
How Balin met with that knight named Garlon at a feast, and there he slew him to have his blood to heal therewith the son of his host. Chap. xiv.
How Balin fought with king Pellam, and how his sword brake, and how he gat a spear, wherewith he smote the dolorous stroke. Chap. xv.
How Balin was delivered by Merlin, and saved a knight that would have slain himself for love. Chap. xvi.
How that knight slew his love, and a knight with her; and after how he slew himself with his own sword, and how Balin rode toward a castle where he lost his life. Chap. xvii.
How Balin met with his brother Balan, and how each of them slew other unknown, till they were wounded to death. Chap. xviii.
How Merlin buried them both in one tomb, and of Balin's sword. Chap. xix.

Here follow the Chapters of the Third Book.

How king Arthur took a wife, and wedded Guenever daughter to Leodegrance, king of the land of Cameliard, with whom he had the Round Table. Chap. i.
How the knights of the Round Table were ordained and their sieges blessed by the bishop of Canterbury. Chap. ii.
How a poor man riding upon a lean mare desired of king Arthur to make his son knight. Chap. iii.
How Sir Tor was known for son of king Pellinore, and how Gawaine was made knight. Chap. iv.
How at the feast of the wedding of king Arthur to Guenever, a white hart came into the hall, and thirty couple hounds, and how a brachet pinched the hart, which was taken away. Chap. v.
How Sir Gawaine rode for to fetch again the hart, and how two brethren fought each against other for the hart. Chap. vi.
How the hart was chased into a castle, and there slain; and how Gawaine slew a lady. Chap. vii.
How four knights fought against Sir Gawaine and Gaheris, and how they were overcome and their lives saved at the request of four ladies. Chap. viii.
How Sir Tor rode after the knight with the brachet, and of his adventure by the way. Chap. ix.
How Sir Tor found the brachet with a lady, and how a knight assailed him for the said brachet. Chap. x.
How Sir Tor overcame the knight, and how he lost his head at the request of a lady. Chap. xi.
How king Pellinore rode after the lady and the knight that led her away, and how a lady desired help of him, and how he fought with two knights for that lady, of whom he slew that one at the first stroke. Chap. xii.
How king Pellinore gat the lady, and brought her to Camelot to the court of king Arthur. Chap. xiii.
How on the way he heard two knights as he lay by night in a valley, and of other adventures. Chap. xiv.
How when he was come to Camelot he was sworn upon a book to tell the truth of his quest. Chap. xv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Fourth Book.

How Merlin was assotted, and doted on one of the ladies of the lake, and how he was shut in a rock under a stone, and there died. Chap. i.
How five kings came into this land to war against king Arthur, and what counsel Arthur had against them. Chap. ii.
How king Arthur had ado with them, and overthrew them, and slew the five kings, and made the remnant to flee. Chap. iii.
How the battle was finished or he came, and how the king founded an abbey where the battle was. Chap. iv.
How Sir Tor was made knight of the Round Table, and how Bagdemagus was displeased. Chap. v.
How king Arthur, king Uriens, and Sir Accolon of Gaul chased an hart, and of their marvellous adventure. Chap. vi.
How Arthur took upon him to fight, to be delivered out of prison, and also for to deliver twenty knights that were in prison. Chap. vii.
How Accolon found himself by a well, and he took upon him to do battle against Arthur. Chap. viii.
Of the battle between king Arthur and Accolon. Chap. ix.
How king Arthur's sword that he fought

with brake, and how he recovered of Accolon his own sword Excalibur, and overcame his enemy. Chap. x.
How Accolon confessed the treason of Morgan le fay, king Arthur's sister, and how she would have done slay him. Chap. xi.
How Arthur accorded the two brethren, and delivered the twenty knights, and how Sir Accolon died. Chap. xii.
How Morgan would have slain Sir Uriens her husband, and how Sir Ewain her son saved him. Chap. xiii.
How queen Morgan le fay made great sorrow for the death of Accolon, and how she stole away the scabbard from Arthur. Chap. xiv.
How Morgan le fay saved a knight that should have been drowned, and how king Arthur returned home again. Chap. xv.
How the damsel of the lake saved king Arthur from a mantle which should have burnt him. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewain met with twelve fair damsels, and how they complained on Sir Marhaus. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Marhaus justed with Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewain, and overthrew them both. Chap. xviii.
How Sir Marhaus, Sir Gawaine, and Sir Ewain met three damsels, and each of them took one. Chap. xix.
How a knight and a dwarf strove for a lady. Chap. xx.
How king Pelleas suffered himself to be taken prisoner because he would have a sight of his lady, and how Sir Gawaine promised him for to get to him the love of his lady. Chap. xxi.
How Sir Gawaine came to the lady Ettard, and how Sir Pelleas found them sleeping. Chap. xxii.
How Sir Pelleas loved no more Ettard, by the mean of the damsel of the lake, whom he loved ever after. Chap. xxiii.
How Sir Marhaus rode with the damsel, and how he came to the duke of the South Marches. Chap. xxiv.
How Sir Marhaus fought with the duke and his six sons, and made them to yield them. Chap. xxv.
How Sir Ewain rode with the damsel of sixty year of age, and how he gat the prize at tourneying. Chap. xxvi.
How Sir Ewain fought with two knights, and overcame them. Chap. xxvii.
How at the year's end all three knights with their three damsels met at the fountain. Chap. xxviii.

Of the Fifth Book the Chapters follow.

How twelve aged ambassadors of Rome came to king Arthur to demand truage for Britain. Chap. i.
How the kings and lords promised to king Arthur aid and help against the Romans. Chap. ii.
How king Arthur held a parliament at York, and how he ordained how the realm should be governed in his absence. Chap. iii.
How king Arthur being shipped, and lying in his cabin, had a marvellous dream, and of the exposition thereof. Chap. iv.
How a man of the country told to him of a marvellous giant, and how he fought and conquered him. Chap. v.
How king Arthur sent Sir Gawaine and other to Lucius, and how they were assailed and escaped with worship. Chap. vi.
How Lucius sent certain spies in a bushment, for to have taken his knights, being prisoners, and how they were letted. Chap. vii.
How a senator told to Lucius of their discomfiture, and also of the great battle between Arthur and Lucius. Chap. viii.
How Arthur, after he had achieved the battle against the Romans, entered into Almaine, and so into Italy. Chap. ix.
Of a battle done by Gawaine against

a Saracen, which after was yielden and became Christian. Chap. x.
How the Saracens came out of a wood for to rescue their beasts, and of a great battle. Chap. xi.
How Sir Gawaine returned to king Arthur with his prisoners, and how the king won a city, and how he was crowned emperor. Chap. xii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Sixth Book.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Lionel departed from the court for to seek adventures, and how Sir Lionel left him sleeping, and was taken. Chap. i.
How Sir Ector followed for to seek Sir Launcelot, and how he was taken by Sir Turquine. Chap. ii.
How four queens found Launcelot sleeping, and how by enchantment he was taken and led into a castle. Chap. iii.
How Sir Launcelot was delivered by the mean of a damsel. Chap. iv.
How a knight found Sir Launcelot, and how Sir Launcelot fought with the knight. Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot was received of king Bagdemagus's daughter, and he made his complaint to her father. Chap. vi.
How Sir Launcelot behaved him in a tournament, and how he met with Sir Turquine leading Sir Gaheris. Chap. vii.
How Sir Launcelot and Sir Turquine fought together. Chap. viii.
How Sir Turquine was slain, and how Sir Launcelot bad Sir Gaheris deliver all the prisoners. Chap. ix.
How Sir Launcelot rode with the damsel and slew a knight that distressed all ladies, and also a villain that kept a bridge. Chap. x.
How Sir Launcelot slew two giants, and made a castle free. Chap. xi.
How Sir Launcelot rode disguised in Sir Kay's harness, and how he smote down a knight. Chap. xii.
How Sir Launcelot jousted against four knights of the Round Table, and overthrew them. Chap. xiii.
How Sir Launcelot followed a brachet into a castle, where he found a dead knight, and how he after was required of a damsel to heal her brother. Chap. xiv.
How Sir Launcelot came into the Chapel Perilous, and gat there of a dead corpse a piece of the cloth and a sword. Chap. xv.
How Sir Launcelot, at the request of a lady, recovered a falcon, by which he was deceived. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Launcelot overtook a knight which chased his wife to have slain her, and how he said to him. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Launcelot came to king Arthur's court, and how there were recounted all his noble feats and acts. Chap. xviii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Seventh Book.

How Beaumains came to king Arthur's court, and demanded three petitions of king Arthur. Chap. i.
How Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine were wroth because Sir Kay mocked Beaumains, and of a damsel which desired a knight for to fight for a lady. Chap. ii.
How Beaumains desired the battle, and how it was granted to him, and how he desired to be made knight of Sir Launcelot. Chap. iii.
How Beaumains departed, and how he gat of Sir Kay a spear and a shield, and how he jusied and fought with Sir Launcelot. Chap. iv.

eaumains told to Sir Launcelot ame, and how he was dubbed t of Sir Launcelot, and after ook the damsel. Chap. v.
ir Beaumains fought and slew nights at a passage. Chap. vi.
aumains fought with the knight black lands, and fought with ll he fell down and died. Chap. vii.
e brother of the knight that was met with Beaumains, and fought Beaumains till he was yielden. Chap. viii.
ne damsel ever rebuked Beau-, and would not suffer him to her table, but called him kitchen Chap. ix.
ne third brother, called the red t, jousted and fought against nains, and how Beaumains over- him. Chap. x.
ir Beaumains suffered great re- of the damsel, and he suffered iently. Chap. xi.
ir Beaumains fought with Sir nt of inde, and made him to be n. Chap. xii.
goodly communication between ersant and Beaumains, and how ld him that his name was Sir h. Chap. xiii.
ne lady that was besieged had from her sister how she had ght a knight to fight for her, and battles he had achieved. Chap. xiv.
he damsel and Beaumains came siege, and came to a sycamore and there Beaumains blew an and then the knight of the red came to fight with him. Chap. xv.
e two knights met together, and eir talking, and how they began battle. Chap. xvi.
ter long fighting Beaumains over- the knight and would have slain but at the request of the lords ved his life, and made him to him to the lady. Chap. xvii.
ne knight yielded him, and how mains made him to go unto king Arthur's court, and to cry Sir Launcelot mercy. Chap. xviii.
How Beaumains came to the lady, and when he came to the castle the gates were closed against him, and of the words that the lady said to him. Chap. xix.
How Sir Beaumains rode after to rescue his dwarf, and came into the castle where he was. Chap. xx.
How Sir Gareth, otherwise called Beaumains, came to the presence of his lady, and how they took acquaintance, and of their love. Chap. xxi.
How at night came an armed knight, and fought with Sir Gareth, and he, sore hurt in the thigh, smote off the knight's head. Chap. xxii.
How the said knight came again the next night, and was beheaded again. And how at the feast of Pentecost all the knights that Sir Gareth had overcome came and yielded them to king Arthur. Chap. xxiii.
How king Arthur pardoned them, and demanded of them where Sir Gareth was. Chap. xxiv.
How the queen of Orkney came to this feast of Pentecost, and Sir Gawaine and his brethren came to ask her blessing. Chap. xxv.
How king Arthur sent for the lady Liones, and how she let cry a tourney at her castle, where as came many knights. Chap. xxvi.
How king Arthur went to the tournament with his knights, and how the lady received him worshipfully, and how the knights encountered. Chap. xxvii.
How the knights bare them in battle. Chap. xxviii.
Yet of the said tournament. Chap. xxix.
How Sir Gareth was espied by the heralds, and how he escaped out of the field. Chap xxx.
How Sir Gareth came to a castle where he was well lodged, and how he justed with a knight and slew him. Chap. xxxi.
How Sir Gareth fought with a knight that held within his castle thirty ladies, and how he slew him. Chap. xxxii.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Gareth fought each against other, and how they knew each other by the damsel Linet. Chap. xxxiii.
How Sir Gareth acknowledged that they loved each other to king Arthur, and of the appointment of their wedding. Chap. xxxiv.
Of the great royalty, and what officers were made at the feast of the wedding, and of the justs at the feast. Chap. xxxv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Eighth Book.

How Sir Tristram de Liones was born, and how his mother died at his birth, wherefore she named him Tristram. Chap. i.
How the step-mother of Sir Tristram had ordained poison for to have poisoned Sir Tristram. Chap. ii.
How Sir Tristram was sent into France, and had one to govern him named Gouvernail, and how he learned to harp, hawk, and hunt. Chap. iii.
How Sir Marhaus came out of Ireland for to ask truage of Cornwall, or else he would fight therefore. Chap. iv.
How Tristram enterprized the battle to fight for the truage of Cornwall, and how he was made knight. Chap. v.
How Sir Tristram arrived into the island for to furnish the battle with Sir Marhaus. Chap. vi.
How Sir Tristram fought against Sir Marhaus, and achieved his battle, and how Sir Marhaus fled to his ship. Chap. vii.
How Sir Marhaus, after that he was arrived in Ireland, died of the stroke that Tristram had given to him, and how Tristram was hurt. Chap. viii.
How Sir Tristram was put to the keeping of La Beale Isoud, for to be healed of his wound. Chap. ix.
How Sir Tristram won the degree at a tournament in Ireland, and there made Palamides to bear no harness in a year. Chap. x.
How the queen espied that Sir Tristram had slain her brother, Sir Marhaus, by his sword, and in what jeopardy he was. Chap. xi.
How Sir Tristram departed from the king and La Beale Isoud out of Ireland for to come into Cornwall. Chap. xii.
How Sir Tristram and king Mark hurt each other for the love of a knight's wife. Chap. xiii.
How Sir Tristram came to the lady, and how her husband fought with Sir Tristram. Chap. xiv.
How Sir Bleoberis demanded the fairest lady in king Mark's court, whom he took away, and how he was fought with. Chap. xv.
How Sir Tristram fought with two knights of the Round Table. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Bleoberis for a lady, and how the lady was put to choice to whom she would go. Chap. xvii.
How the lady forsook Sir Tristram and abode with Sir Bleoberis, and how she desired to go to her husband. Chap. xviii.
How king Mark sent Sir Tristram for La Beale Isoud toward Ireland, and how by fortune he arrived into England. Chap. xix.
How king Anguish of Ireland was summoned to come to king Arthur's court for treason. Chap. xx.
How Sir Tristram rescued a child from a knight, and how Gouvernail told him of king Anguish. Chap. xxi.
How Sir Tristram fought for Sir Anguish and overcame his adversary, and how his adversary would never yield him. Chap. xxii.
How Sir Blamor desired Tristram to slay him, and how Sir Tristram spared

him, and how they took appointment. Chap. xxiii.
How Sir Tristram demanded La Beale Isoud for king Mark, and how Sir Tristram and Isoud drank the love drink. Chap. xxiv.
How Sir Tristram and Isoud were in prison, and how he fought for her beauty, and smote off another lady's head. Chap. xxv.
How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Brennor, and at the last smote off his head. Chap. xxvi.
How Sir Galahad fought with Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram yielded him and promised to fellowship with Launcelot. Chap. xxvii.
How Sir Launcelot met with Sir Carados bearing away Sir Gawaine, and of the rescue of Sir Gawaine. Chap. xxviii.
Of the wedding of king Mark to La Beale Isoud, and of Bragwaine her maid, and of Palamides. Chap. xxix.
How Palamides demanded queen Isoud, and how Lambegus rode after to rescue her, and of the escape of Isoud. Chap. xxx.
How Sir Tristram rode after Palamides, and how he found him and fought with him, and by the mean of Isoud the battle ceased. Chap. xxxi.
How Sir Tristram brought queen Isoud home, and of the debate of king Mark and Sir Tristram. Chap. xxxii.
How Sir Lamorak justed with thirty knights, and Sir Tristram at the request of king Mark smote his horse down. Chap. xxxiii.
How Sir Lamorak sent an horn to king Mark in despite of Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram was driven into a chapel. Chap. xxxiv.
How Sir Tristram was holpen by his men, and of queen Isoud, which was put in a lazarcote, and how Tristram was hurt. Chap. xxxv.
How Sir Tristram served in war the king Howell of Britain and slew his adversary in the field. Chap. xxxvi.
How Sir Suppinabiles told Sir Tristram how he was defamed in the court of king Arthur, and of Sir Lamorak. Chap. xxxvii.
How Sir Tristram and his wife arrived in Wales, and how he met there with Sir Lamorak. Chap. xxxviii.
How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Nabon and overcame him, and made Sir Lamorak lord of the isle. Chap. xxxix.
How Sir Lamorak departed from Sir Tristram, and how he met with Sir Frol, and after with Sir Launcelot. Chap. xl.
How Sir Lamorak slew Sir Frol, and of the courteous fighting with Sir Belliance his brother. Chap. xli.

Here follow the Chapters of the Ninth Book.

How a young man came into the court of king Arthur, and how Sir Kay called him in scorn La Cote Male Taile. Chap. i.
How a damsel came unto the court and desired a knight to take on him an inquest, which La Cote Male Taile emprized. Chap. ii.
How La Cote Male Taile overthrew Sir Dagonet the king's fool, and of the rebuke that he had of the damsel. Chap. iii.
How La Cote Male Taile fought against an hundred knights, and how he escaped by the mean of a lady. Chap. iv.
How Sir Launcelot came to the court and heard of La Cote Male Taile, and how he followed after him, and how La Cote Male Taile was prisoner. Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot fought with six knights, and after with Sir Brian, and how he delivered the prisoners. Chap. vi.
How Sir Launcelot met with the damsel

named Maledisant, and named her the damsel Bienpensant. Chap. vii.
How La Cote Male Taile was taken prisoner, and after rescued by Sir Launcelot, and how Sir Launcelot overcame four brethren. Chap. viii.
How Sir Launcelot made La Cote Male Taile lord of the castle of Pendragon, and after was made knight of the Round Table. Chap. ix.
How La Beale Isoud sent letters unto Sir Tristram by her maid Bragwaine, and of divers adventures of Sir Tristram. Chap. x.
How Sir Tristram met with Sir Lamorak de Galis, and how they fought, and after accorded never to fight together. Chap. xi.
How Sir Palamides followed the questing beast, and how he smote down both Sir Tristram and Sir Lamorak with one spear. Chap. xii.
How Sir Lamorak met with Sir Meliagance, and fought together for the beauty of queen Guenever. Chap. xiii.
How Sir Meliagance told for what cause they fought, and how Sir Lamorak justed with king Arthur. Chap. xiv.
How Sir Kay met with Sir Tristram, and after of the shame spoken of the knights of Cornwall, and how they justed. Chap. xv.
How king Arthur was brought into the Forest Perilous, and how Sir Tristram saved his life. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Tristram came to La Beale Isoud, and how Kehydius began to love La Beale Isoud, and of a letter that Tristram found. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Tristram departed from Tintagil, and how he sorrowed, and was so long in a forest till he was out of his mind. Chap. xviii.
How Sir Tristram soused Dagonet in a well, and how Palamides sent a damsel to seek Tristram, and how Palamides met with king Mark. Chap. xix.
How it was noised how Sir Tristram was dead, and how La Beale Isoud would have slain herself. Chap. xx.
How king Mark found Sir T naked, and made him to b home to Tintagil, and how there known by a brachet. Ch
How king Mark, by the advic council, banished Sir Tristran Cornwall the term of ten yea Ch
How a damsel sought help to Launcelot against thirty knigl how Sir Tristram fought with Cha
How Sir Tristram and Sir T came to a lodging where th just with two knights. Cha
How Sir Tristram justed with and Sir Sagramor le Desiro how Sir Gawaine turned Sir T from Morgan le Fay. Ch
How Sir Tristram and Sir Gawai to have fought against the knights, but they durst not co Cha
How damsel Bragwaine found T sleeping by a well, and how livered letters to him from Beal Cha
How Sir Tristram had a fall of S mides, and how Launcelot ov two knights. Chap
How Sir Launcelot justed wit mides and overthrew him, ar he was assailed with twelve kı Cha
How Sir Tristram behaved him day of the tournament, and t had the prize. Ch
How Sir Tristram returned again Arthur's party, because he s Palamides on that party. Cha
How Sir Tristram found Palam a well, and brought him with his lodging. Cha
How Sir Tristram smote down lamides, and how he justed wi Arthur, and other feats. Chap
How Sir Launcelot hurt Sir T and how after Sir Tristram down Sir Palamides. Chap
How the prize of the third d given to Sir Launcelot, and Si celot gave it unto Sir Tristran Chaj

How Sir Palamides came to the castle where Sir Tristram was, and of the quest that Sir Launcelot and ten knights made for Sir Tristram. Chap. xxxvi.
How Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan were taken and put in prison. Chap. xxxvii.
How king Mark was sorry for the good renown of Sir Tristram: some of Arthur's knights justed with knights of Cornwall. Chap. xxxviii.
Of the treason of king Mark, and how Sir Gaheris smote him down, and Andred his cousin. Chap. xxxix.
How after that Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan had been long in prison they were delivered. Chap. xl.
How Sir Dinadan rescued a lady from Sir Breuse Saunce Pite, and how Sir Tristram received a shield of Morgan le Fay. Chap. xli.
How Sir Tristram took with him the shield, and also how he slew the paramour of Morgan le Fay. Chap. xlii.
How Morgan le Fay buried her paramour, and how Sir Tristram praised Sir Launcelot and his kin. Chap. xliii.
How Sir Tristram at a tournament bare the shield that Morgan le Fay had delivered him. Chap. xliv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Tenth Book.

How Sir Tristram justed and smote down king Arthur, because he told him not the cause why he bare that shield. Chap. i.
How Sir Tristram saved Sir Palamides' life, and how they promised to fight together within a fortnight. Chap. ii.
How Sir Tristram sought a strong knight that had smitten him down, and many other knights of the Round Table. Chap. iii.
How Sir Tristram smote down Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and Sir Dodinas le Savage. Chap. iv.
How Sir Tristram met at the perron with Sir Launcelot, and how they fought together unknown. Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot brought Sir Tristram to the court, and of the great joy that the king and other made for the coming of Sir Tristram. Chap. vi.
How for despite of Sir Tristram king Mark came with two knights into England, and how he slew one of the knights. Chap. vii.
How king Mark came to a fountain where he found Sir Lamorak complaining for the love of king Lot's wife. Chap. viii.
How king Mark, Sir Lamorak, and Sir Dinadan came to a castle, and how king Mark was known there. Chap. ix.
How Sir Berluse met with king Mark, and how Sir Dinadan took his part. Chap. x.
How king Mark mocked Sir Dinadan, and how they met with six knights of the Round Table. Chap. xi.
How the six knights sent Sir Dagonet to just with king Mark, and how king Mark refused him. Chap. xii.
How Sir Palamides by adventure met king Mark flying, and how he overthrew Dagonet and other knights. Chap. xiii.
How king Mark and Sir Dinadan heard Sir Palamides making great sorrow and mourning for La Beale Isoud. Chap. xiv.
How king Mark had slain Sir Amant wrongfully tofore king Arthur, and Sir Launcelot fetched king Mark to king Arthur. Chap. xv.
How Sir Dinadan told Sir Palamides of the battle between Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Lamorak justed with divers knights of the castle, wherein was Morgan le Fay. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Palamides would have justed

for Sir Lamorak with the knights of the castle. Chap. xviii.
How Sir Lamorak justed with Sir Palamides and hurt him grievously. Chap. xix.
How it was told Sir Launcelot that Dagonet chased king Mark, and how a knight overthrew him and six knights. Chap. xx.
How king Arthur let do cry a justs, and how Sir Lamorak came in and overthrew Sir Gawaine and many other. Chap. xxi.
How king Arthur made king Mark to be accorded with Sir Tristram, and how they departed toward Cornwall. Chap. xxii.
How Sir Percivale was made knight of king Arthur, and how a dumb maid spake, and brought him to the Round Table. Chap. xxiii.
How Sir Lamorak visited king Lot's wife, and how Sir Gaheris slew her which was his own mother. Chap. xxiv.
How Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred met with a knight fleeing, and how they both were overthrown, and of Sir Dinadan. Chap. xxv.
How king Arthur, the queen, and Launcelot received letters out of Cornwall, and of the answer again. Chap. xxvi.
How Sir Launcelot was wroth with the letter that he received from king Mark, and of Dinadan, which made a lay of king Mark. Chap. xxvii.
How Sir Tristram was hurt, and of a war made to king Mark; and of Sir Tristram, how he promised to rescue him. Chap. xxviii.
How Sir Tristram overcame the battle, and how Elias desired a man to fight body for body. Chap. xxix.
How Sir Elias and Sir Tristram fought together for the truage, and how Sir Tristram slew Elias in the field. Chap. xxx.
How at a great feast that king Mark made, an harper came and sang the lay that Dinadan had made. Chap. xxxi.
How king Mark slew by treason his brother Boudwin, for good service that he had done to him. Chap. xxxii.
How Anglides, Boudwin's wife, escaped with her young son, Alisander le Orphelin, and came to the castle of Arundel. Chap. xxxiii.
How Anglides gave the bloody doublet to Alisander her son the same day that he was made knight, and the charge withal. Chap. xxxiv.
How it was told to king Mark of Alisander, and how he would have slain Sir Sadok for saving of his life. Chap. xxxv.
How Sir Alisander wan the prize at a tournament, and of Morgan le Fay; and how he fought with Sir Malgrin and slew him. Chap. xxxvi.
How queen Morgan le Fay had Alisander in her castle, and how she healed his wounds. Chap. xxxvii.
How Alisander was delivered from the queen Morgan le Fay by the means of a damsel. Chap. xxxviii.
How Alisander met with Alice la Beale Pilgrim, and how he justed with two knights; and after of him and of Sir Mordred. Chap. xxxix.
How Sir Galahalt did do cry a justs in Surluse, and queen Guenever's knights should just against all that would come. Chap. xl.
How Sir Launcelot fought in the tournament, and how Sir Palamides did arms there for a damsel. Chap. xli.
How Sir Galahalt and Palamides fought together, and of Sir Dinadan and Sir Galahalt. Chap. xlii.
How Sir Archad appealed Sir Palamides of treason, and how Sir Palamides slew him. Chap. xliii.
Of the third day, and how Sir Palamides justed with Sir Lamorak, and other things. Chap. xliv.
Of the fourth day, and of many great feats of arms. Chap. xlv.
Of the fifth day, and how Sir Lamorak behaved him. Chap. xlvi.
How Sir Palamides fought with Corsabrin for a lady, and how Palamides slew Corsabrin. Chap. xlvii.

Of the sixth day, and what then was done. Chap. xlviii.
Of the seventh battle, and how Sir Launcelot, being disguised like a maid, smote down Sir Dinadan. Chap. xlix.
How by treason Sir Tristram was brought to a tournament for to have been slain, and how he was put in prison. Chap. l.
How king Mark let do counterfeit letters from the Pope, and how Sir Percivale delivered Sir Tristram out of prison. Chap. li.
How Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud came into England, and how Sir Launcelot brought them to Joyous Gard. Chap. lii.
How by the counsel of La Beale Isoud Sir Tristram rode armed, and how he met with Sir Palamides. Chap. liii.
Of Sir Palamides, and how he met with Sir Bleoberis and with Sir Ector, and of Sir Percivale. Chap. liv.
How Sir Tristram met with Sir Dinadan, and of their devices, and what he said to Sir Gawaine's brethren. Chap. lv.
How Sir Tristram smote down Sir Agravaine and Sir Gaheris, and how Sir Dinadan was sent for by La Beale Isoud. Chap. lvi.
How Sir Dinadan met with Sir Tristram, and with justing with Sir Palamides Sir Dinadan knew him. Chap. lvii.
How they approached the castle Lonazep, and of other devices of the death of Sir Lamorak. Chap. lviii.
How they came to Humber bank, and how they found a ship there, wherein lay the body of king Hermance. Chap. lix.
How Sir Tristram with his fellowship came and were with an host which after fought with Sir Tristram; and other matters. Chap. lx.
How Palamides went for to fight with two brethren for the death of king Hermance. Chap. lxi.
The copy of the letter written for to revenge the king's death, and how Sir Palamides fought for to have the battle. Chap. lxii.
Of the preparation of Sir Palamides and the two brethren that should fight with him. Chap. lxiii.
Of the battle between Sir Palamides and the two brethren, and how the two brethren were slain. Chap. lxiv.
How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides met Breuse Saunce Pite, and how Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud went unto Lonazep. Chap. lxv.
How Sir Palamides jusied with Sir Galihodin and after with Sir Gawaine, and smote them down. Chap. lxvi.
How Sir Tristram and his fellowship came unto the tournament of Lonazep; and of divers justs and matters. Chap. lxvii.
How Sir Tristram and his fellowship justed, and of the noble feats that they did in that tourneying. Chap. lxviii.
How Sir Tristram was unhorsed and smitten down by Sir Launcelot, and after that Sir Tristram smote down king Arthur. Chap. lxix.
How Sir Tristram changed his harness and it was all red, and how he demeaned him, and how Sir Palamides slew Launcelot's horse. Chap. lxx.
How Sir Launcelot said to Sir Palamides, and how the prize of that day was given unto Sir Palamides. Chap. lxxi.
How Sir Dinadan provoked Sir Tristram to do well. Chap. lxxii.
How king Arthur and Sir Launcelot came to see La Beale Isoud, and how Palamides smote down king Arthur. Chap. lxxiii.
How the second day Palamides forsook Sir Tristram, and went to the contrary part against him. Chap. lxxiv.
How Sir Tristram departed out of the field, and awaked Sir Dinadan, and changed his array into black. Chap. lxxv.
How Sir Palamides changed his shield and his armour for to hurt Sir Tristram, and how Sir Launcelot did to Sir Tristram. Chap. lxxvi.
How Sir Tristram departed with La

Beale Isoud, and how Sir Palamides followed and excused him. Chap. lxxvii.
How king Arthur and Sir Launcelot came into their pavilions as they sat at supper, and of Palamides. Chap. lxxviii.
How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides did the next day, and how king Arthur was unhorsed. Chap. lxxix.
How Sir Tristram turned to king Arthur's side, and how Sir Palamides would not. Chap. lxxx.
How Sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector reported to queen Guenever of the beauty of La Beale Isoud. Chap. lxxxi.
How Palamides complained by a well, and how Epinogris came and found him, and of their both sorrows. Chap. lxxxii.
How Sir Palamides brought to Sir Epinogris his lady, and how Sir Palamides and Sir Safire were assailed. Chap. lxxxiii.
How Sir Palamides and Sir Safire conducted Sir Epinogris to his castle, and of other adventures. Chap. lxxxiv.
How Sir Tristram made him ready to rescue Sir Palamides, but Sir Launcelot rescued him or he came. Chap. lxxxv.
How Sir Tristram and Sir Launcelot, with Palamides, came to Joyous Gard, and of Palamides and Sir Tristram. Chap. lxxxvi.
How there was a day set between Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides for to fight, and how Sir Tristram was hurt. Chap. lxxxvii.
How Sir Palamides kept his day to have foughten but Sir Tristram might not come, and other things. Chap. lxxxviii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Eleventh Book.

How Sir Launcelot rode on his adventure, and how he helped a dolorous lady from her pain, and how that he fought with a dragon. Chap. i.
How Sir Launcelot came to Pelles, and of the Sangreal, and how he begat Galahad on Elaine, king Pelles' daughter. Chap. ii.
How Sir Launcelot was displeased when he knew that he had been deceived, and how Galahad was born. Chap. iii.
How Sir Bors came to dame Elaine and saw Galahad, and how he was fed with the Sangreal. Chap. iv.
How Sir Bors made Sir Pedivere to yield him, and of marvellous adventures that he had, and how he achieved them. Chap. v.
How Sir Bors departed; and how Sir Launcelot was rebuked of the queen Guenever, and of his excuse. Chap. vi.
How dame Elaine, Galahad's mother, came in great estate to Camelot, and how Sir Launcelot behaved him there. Chap. vii.
How dame Brisen by enchantment brought Sir Launcelot to Elaine, and how queen Guenever rebuked him. Chap. viii.
How dame Elaine was commanded by queen Guenever to avoid the court, and how Sir Launcelot became mad. Chap. ix.
What sorrow queen Guenever made for Sir Launcelot, and how he was sought by knights of his kin. Chap. x.
How a servant of Sir Aglovale's was slain, and what vengeance Sir Aglovale and Sir Percivale did therefore. Chap. xi.
How Sir Percivale departed secretly from his brother, and how he loosed a knight bound with a chain; and of other things. Chap. xii.
How Sir Percivale met with Sir Ector, and how they fought long, and each had almost slain other. Chap. xiii.
How by miracle they were both made whole by the coming of the holy vessel of Sangreal. Chap. xiv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Twelfth Book.

ir Launcelot in his madness took ord and fought with a knight, fter lept into a bed. Chap. i.
ir Launcelot was carried in an -litter, and how Sir Launcelot ed Sir Bliaunt his host. Chap. ii.
ir Launcelot fought against a and slew him, and how he was and brought to an hermitage. Chap. iii.
r Launcelot was known by dame e, and was borne into a chamber, fter healed by the Sangreal. Chap. iv.
ir Launcelot, after that he was : and had his mind, he was ıed, and how that Elaine desired le for him. Chap. v.
ir Launcelot came into the Joy- sle, and there he named himself evalier Mal Fet. Chap. vi.
at tourneying in the Joyous Isle, ıow Sir Percivale and Sir Ector thither and Sir Percivale fought him. Chap. vii.
How each of them knew other, and of their courtesy; and how his brother Ector came unto him, and of their joy. Chap. viii.
How Sir Bors and Sir Lionel came to king Brandegore, and how Sir Bors took his son Heline le Blank, and of Sir Launcelot. Chap. ix.
How Sir Launcelot, with Sir Percivale and Sir Ector, came to the court, and of the great joy of him. Chap. x.
How La Beale Isoud counselled Sir Tristram to go unto the court to the great feast of Pentecost. Chap. xi.
How Sir Tristram departed unarmed and met with Sir Palamides, and how they smote each other, and how Palamides forbare him. Chap. xii.
How Sir Tristram gat him harness of a knight which was hurt, and how he overthrew Sir Palamides. Chap. xiii.
How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides fought long together, and after accorded; and how Sir Tristram made him to be christened. Chap. xiv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Thirteenth Book.

: the Vigil of the feast of Pente- ntered into the hall before king ır a damsel, and desired Sir celot for to come and dub a ıt, and how he went with her. Chap. i.
ıe letters were found written in ;iege Perilous, and of the mar- ıs adventure of the sword in a . Chap. ii.
;ir Gawaine assayed to draw he sword, and how an old man ght in Galahad. Chap. iii.
ıe old man brought Galahad to iege Perilous, and set him therein, ıow all the knights marvelled. Chap. iv.
king Arthur shewed the stone hoving on the water to Galahad, and how he drew out the sword. Chap. v.
How king Arthur had all the knights together for to just in the meadow beside Winchester or they departed. Chap. vi.
How the queen desired to see Galahad; and after all the knights were replenished with the holy Sangreal, and how all they avowed the enquest of the same. Chap. vii.
How great sorrow was made of the king and ladies for the departing of the knights, and how they departed. Chap. viii.
How Galahad gat him a shield, and how they sped that presumed to take down the said shield. Chap. ix.

How Galahad departed with the shield, and how king Evelake had received this shield of Joseph of Aramathye. Chap. x.
How Joseph made a cross on the white shield with his blood, and how Galahad was by a monk brought to a tomb. Chap. xi.
Of the marvel that Sir Galahad saw and heard in the tomb, and how he made Melias knight. Chap. xii.
Of the adventure that Melias had, and how Galahad revenged him, and how Melias was carried into an abbey. Chap. xiii.
How Galahad departed, and how he was commanded to go to the castle of maidens to destroy the wicked custom. Chap. xiv.
How Sir Galahad fought with the knights of the castle, and destroyed the wicked custom. Chap. xv.
How Sir Gawaine came to the abbey for to follow Galahad, and how he was shriven to a hermit. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Galahad met with Sir Launcelot and with Sir Percivale, and smote them down, and departed from them. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Launcelot, half sleeping and half waking, saw a sick man borne in a litter, and how he was healed with the Sangreal. Chap. xviii.
How a voice spake to Sir Launcelot, and how he found his horse and his helm borne away, and after went afoot. Chap. xix.
How Sir Launcelot was shriven, and what sorrow he made; and of good ensamples which were shewed to him. Chap. xx.

Here follow the Chapters of the Fourteenth Book.

How Sir Percivale came to a recluse and asked counsel, and how she told him that she was his aunt. Chap. i.
How Merlin likened the Round Table to the world, and how the knights that should achieve the Sangreal should be known. Chap. ii.
How Sir Percivale came into a monastery where he found king Evelake, which was an old man. Chap. iii.
How Sir Percivale saw many men of arms bearing a dead knight, and how he fought against them. Chap. iv.
How a yeoman desired him to get again an horse, and how Sir Percivale's hackney was slain, and how he gat an horse. Chap. v.
Of the great danger that Sir Percivale was in by his horse, and how he saw a serpent and a lion fight. Chap. vi.
Of the vision that Sir Percivale saw, and how his vision was expounded, and of his lion. Chap. vii.
How Sir Percivale saw a ship coming to him-ward, and how the lady of the ship told him of her disheritance. Chap. viii.
How Sir Percivale promised her help, and how he required her of love, and how he was saved from the fiend. Chap. ix.
How Sir Percivale for penance rove himself through the thigh; and how she was known for the devil. Chap. x.

followeth the Fifteenth Book, which is of Sir Launcelot.

· Launcelot came into a chapel, he found dead, in a white shirt, of religion of an hundred win- l. Chap. i.
ıd man, how men would have him, and it would not be; and ›ir Launcelot took the hair of ad man. Chap. ii.
ion that Sir Launcelot had, and ıe told it to an hermit, and l counsel of him. Chap. iii.
How the hermit expounded to Sir Launcelot his vision, and told him that Sir Galahad was his son. Chap. iv.
How Sir Launcelot justed with many knights, and he was taken. Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot told his vision unto a woman, and how she expounded it to him. Chap. vi.

Here follow the Chapters of the Sixteenth Book.

· Gawaine was nigh weary of est of Sangreal, and of his mar- › dream. Chap. i.
ision of Sir Ector, and how he with Sir Uwaine les Avoutres, orn brother. Chap. ii.
r Gawaine and Sir Ector came hermitage to be confessed, and hey told to the hermit their ›. Chap. iii.
· hermit expounded their vision. Chap. iv.
good counsel that the hermit o them. Chap. v.
· Bors met with an hermit, and ıe was confessed to him, and penance enjoined to him. Chap. vi.
r Bors was lodged with a lady, ›w he took on him for to fight t a champion for her land. Chap. vii.
sion which Sir Bors had that and how he fought and over- his adversary. Chap. viii.
· lady was restored to her lands e battle of Sir Bors, and of ·parting, and how he met Sir taken and beaten with thorns, and also of a maid which should have been dishonoured. Chap. ix.
How Sir Bors left to rescue his brother, and rescued the damsel; and how it was told him that Lionel was dead. Chap. x.
How Sir Bors told his dream to a priest which he had dreamed, and of the counsel that the priest gave to him. Chap. xi.
How the devil in a woman's likeness would have tempted Sir Bors, and how by God's grace he escaped. Chap. xii.
Of the holy communication of an abbot to Sir Bors, and how the abbot counselled him. Chap. xiii.
How Sir Bors met with his brother Sir Lionel, and how Sir Lionel would have slain Sir Bors. Chap. xiv.
How Sir Colgrevance fought against Sir Lionel for to save Sir Bors, and how the hermit was slain. Chap. xv.
How Sir Lionel slew Sir Colgrevance, and how after he would have slain Sir Bors. Chap. xvi.
How there came a voice which charged Sir Bors to touch not him, and of a cloud that came between them. Chap. xvii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Seventeenth Book.

How Sir Galahad fought at a tournament, and how he was known of Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector de Maris. Chap. i.

How Sir Galahad rode with a damsel, and came to the ship whereas Sir Bors and Sir Percivale were in. Chap. ii.

How Sir Galahad entered into the ship, and of a fair bed therein, with other marvellous things, and of a sword. Chap. iii.

Of the marvels of the sword and of the scabbard. Chap. iv.

How king Pelles was smitten through both thighs because he drew the sword, and other marvellous histories. Chap. v.

How Solomon took David's sword by the counsel of his wife, and of other matters marvellous. Chap. vi.

A wonderful tale of king Solomon and his wife. Chap. vii.

How Galahad and his fellows came to a castle, and how they were fought withal, and how they slew their adversaries, and other matters. Chap. viii.

How the three knights, with Percivale's sister, came into the waste forest, and of an hart and four lions and other things. Chap. ix.

How they were desired of a strange custom, the which they would not obey; and how they fought and slew many knights. Chap. x.

How Sir Percivale's sister bled a dish full of blood for to heal a lady; wherefore she died; and how that the body was put in a ship. Chap. xi.

How Galahad and Percivale found in a castle many tombs of maidens that had bled to death. Chap. xii.

How Sir Launcelot entered into the ship where Sir Percivale's sister lay dead; and how he met with Sir Galahad his son. Chap. xiii.

How a knight brought unto Sir Galahad an horse, and bad him come from his father Sir Launcelot. Chap. xiv.

How Sir Launcelot was tofore the door of the chamber wherein the holy Sangreal was. Chap. xv.

How Sir Launcelot had lain fourteen days and as many nights as a dead man, and other divers matters. Chap. xvi.

How Sir Launcelot returned towards Logris, and of other adventures which he saw in the way. Chap. xvii.

How Galahad came to king Mordrains, and of other matters and adventures. Chap. xviii.

How Sir Percivale and Sir Bors met with Sir Galahad, and how they came to the castle of Carbonek, and other matters. Chap. xix.

How Galahad and his fellows were fed of the holy Sangreal, and how our Lord appeared to them, and other things. Chap. xx.

How Galahad anointed with the blood of the spear the maimed king, and of other adventures. Chap. xxi.

How they were fed with the Sangreal while they were in prison, and how Galahad was made king. Chap. xxii.

Of the sorrow that Percivale and Bors made when Galahad was dead; and of Percivale how he died, and other matters. Chap. xxiii.

ere follow the Chapters of the Eighteenth Book.

r of king Arthur and the queen
the achievement of the San-
and how Launcelot fell to his
e again. Chap. i.
queen commanded Sir Launce-
void the court, and of the sor-
it Launcelot made.
Chap. ii.
a dinner that the queen made
vas a knight poisoned, which
lor laid on the queen.
Chap. iii.
Mador appeached the queen of
, and there was no knight
ight for her at the first time.
Chap. iv.
queen required Sir Bors to
or her, and how he granted
ondition; and how he warned
ncelot thereof. Chap. v.
the day Sir Bors made him
or to fight for the queen; and
ne should fight how another
ged him. Chap. vi.
Launcelot fought against Sir
for the queen, and how he
ne Sir Mador and discharged
en. Chap. vii.
truth was known by the
of the lake, and of divers
atters. Chap viii.
Launcelot rode to Astolat, and
l a sleeve to bear upon his
the request of a maid.
Chap. ix.
tourney began at Winchester,
at knights were at the justs,
er things. Chap. x.
Launcelot and Sir Lavaine
in the field against them of
thur's court, and how Launce-
hurt. Chap. xi.
Launcelot and Sir Lavaine
l out of the field, and in what
y Launcelot was. Chap. xii.
How Launcelot was brought to an hermit for to be healed of his wound, and of other matters. Chap. xiii.
How Sir Gawaine was lodged with the lord of Astolat, and there had knowledge that it was Sir Launcelot that bare the red sleeve. Chap. xiv.
Of the sorrow that Sir Bors had for the hurt of Launcelot; and of the anger that the queen had because Launcelot bore the sleeve. Chap. xv.
How Sir Bors sought Launcelot and found him in the hermitage, and of the lamentation between them.
Chap. xvi.
How Sir Launcelot armed him to assay if he might bear arms, and how his wound burst out again. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Bors returned and told tidings of Sir Launcelot, and of the tourney, and to whom the prize was given.
Chap. xviii.
Of the great lamentation of the fair maid of Astolat when Launcelot should depart, and how she died for his love. Chap. xix.
How the corpse of the maid of Astolat arrived tofore king Arthur, and of the burying, and how Sir Launcelot offered the mass-penny. Chap. xx.
Of great justs done all a Christmas, and of a great justs and tourney ordained by king Arthur, and of Sir Launcelot.
Chap. xxi.
How Launcelot after that he was hurt of a gentlewoman came to an hermit, and of other matters. Chap. xxii.
How Sir Launcelot behaved him at the justs, and other men also.
Chap. xxiii.
How king Arthur marvelled much of the justing in the field, and how he rode and found Sir Launcelot. Chap. xxiv.
How true love is likened to summer.
Chap. xxv.

Here follow the Chapters of the Nineteenth Book.

How queen Guenever rode on Maying with certain knights of the Round Table and clad all in green. Chap. i.
How Sir Meliagraunce took the queen and all her knights, which were sore hurt in fighting. Chap. ii.
How Sir Launcelot had word how the queen was taken, and how Sir Meliagraunce laid a bushment for Launcelot. Chap. iii.
How Sir Launcelot's horse was slain, and how Sir Launcelot rode in a cart for to rescue the queen. Chap. iv.
How Sir Meliagraunce required forgiveness of the queen, and how she appeased Sir Launcelot, and other matters. Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot came in the night to the queen, and how Sir Meliagraunce appeached the queen of treason. Chap. vi.
How Sir Launcelot answered for the queen, and waged battle against Sir Meliagraunce. And how Sir Launcelot was taken in a trap. Chap.
How Sir Launcelot was delivered ot prison by a lady, and took a w courser, and came for to keep his Chap.
How Sir Launcelot came the same that Sir Meliagraunce abode hin the field, and dressed him to battl Chap
How Sir Urre came into Arthur's c for to be healed of his wounds, how king Arthur would begin handle him. Chap
How king Arthur handled Sir Urre, after him many other knights of Round Table. Chap
How Sir Launcelot was commanded Arthur to handle his wounds, anon he was all whole, and how t thanked God. Chap.
How there was a party made of hundred knights against an hunc knights, and of other matters. Chap.

Here followeth the Book of the Piteous History which is the Morte or Death of king Arthur, and the Chapters the Twentieth Book.

How Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred were busy upon Sir Gawaine for to disclose the love between Sir Launcelot and queen Guenever. Chap. i.
How Sir Agravaine disclosed their love to king Arthur, and how king Arthur gave them licence to take him. Chap. ii.
How Sir Launcelot was espied in the queen's chamber, and how Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred came with twelve knights to slay him. Chap. iii.
How Sir Launcelot slew Sir Colgrevance, and armed him in his harness, and after slew Sir Agravaine twelve of his fellows. Chap.
How Sir Launcelot came to Sir I and told him how he had sped, in what adventure he had been, how he escaped. Chap
Of the counsel and advice which taken by Sir Launcelot and by friends for to save the queen. Chap.
How Sir Mordred rode hastily to king to tell him of the affray death of Sir Agravaine and the ot knights. Chap.

ir Launcelot and his kinsmen
d the queen from the fire, and
ıe slew many knights.
Chap. viii.
ıorrow and lamentation of king
r for the death of his nephews
ther good knights, and also for
een his wife. Chap. ix.
ıg Arthur at the request of Sir
ıne concluded to make war
t Sir Launcelot, and laid siege
castle called Joyous Gard.
Chap. x.
communication between king
r and Sir Launcelot, and how
Arthur reproved him. Chap. xi.
e cousins and kinsmen of Sir
elot excited him to go out to
, and how they made them
Chap. xii.
r Gawaine justed and smote
Sir Lionel, and how Sir Launce-
rsed king Arthur. Chap. xiii.
e pope sent down his bulls to
peace, and how Sir Launcelot
ht the queen to king Arthur.
Chap. xiv.
leliverance of the queen to the
by Sir Launcelot, and what lan-
guage Sir Gawaine had to Sir Launcelot. Chap. xv.
Of the communication between Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot, with much other language. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Launcelot departed from the king and from Joyous Gard over seaward, and what knights went with him. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Launcelot passed over the sea, and how he made great lords of the knights that went with him. Chap. xviii.
How king Arthur and Sir Gawaine made a great host ready to go over sea to make war on Sir Launcelot. Chap. xix.
What message Sir Gawaine sent to Sir Launcelot, and king Arthur laid siege to Benwick, and other matters. Chap. xx.
How Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot did battle together, and how Sir Gawaine was overthrown and hurt. Chap. xxi.
Of the sorrow that king Arthur made for the war, and of another battle where also Sir Gawaine had the worse. Chap. xxii.

ere follow the Chapters of the Twenty-first Book.

r Mordred presumed and took
m to be king of England, and
have married the queen, his
s wife. Chap. i.
er that king Arthur had tidings
urned and came to Dover, where
ordred met him to let his land-
nd of the death of Sir Gawaine.
Chap. ii.
er Sir Gawaine's ghost appeared
g Arthur, and warned him that
ould not fight that day.
Chap. iii.
r misadventure of an adder the
began, where Mordred was
and Arthur hurt to the death.
Chap. iv.
ng Arthur commanded to cast
his sword Excalibur into the water, and how he was delivered to ladies in a barge. Chap. v.
How Sir Bedivere found him on the morrow dead in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit. Chap. vi.
Of the opinion of some men of the death of king Arthur; and how queen Guenever made her a nun in Almesbury. Chap. vii.
How when Sir Launcelot heard of the death of king Arthur, and of Sir Gawaine, and other matters, came into England. Chap. viii.
How Sir Launcelot departed to seek the queen Guenever, and how he found her at Almesbury. Chap. ix.

How Sir Launcelot came to the hermitage where the archbishop of Canterbury was, and how he took the habit on him. Chap. x.

How Sir Launcelot went with his seven fellows to Almesbury, and found there queen Guenever dead, whom they brought to Glastonbury. Chap. xi.

How Sir Launcelot began to sic and after died, whose body was b to Joyous Gard for to be buried. Chap.

How Sir Ector found Sir Launcelot brother dead. And how Constar reigned next after Arthur, and of end of this Book. Chap.

Explicit the Table.

THE BOOK OF

KING ARTHUR

AND OF HIS NOBLE

KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE.

The First Book of King Arthur.

CHAP. I.

Uther Pendragon sent for the Cornwall and Igraine his wife, their departing suddenly again.

l in the days of Uther Pen- when he was king of all and so reigned, that there nighty duke in Cornwall that against him long time. And was named the duke of Tin- And so by means king Uther this duke, charging him to s wife with him, for she was fair lady, and a passing wise, name was called Igraine. So e duke and his wife were come king, by the means of great ey were accorded both: the d and loved this lady well, and them great cheer out of mea- desired to have had her love. was a passing good woman, ld not assent unto the king. n she told the duke her hus- d said, I suppose that we were that I should be dishonoured, e, husband, I counsel you that rt from hence suddenly, that ride all night to our own And in like wise as she said so arted, that neither the king nor none of his council were ware of their departing. All so soon as king Uther knew of their departing so suddenly, he was wonderly wroth. Then he called to him his privy council, and told them of the sudden departing of the duke and his wife. Then they advised the king to send for the duke and his wife by a great charge: and if he will not come at your summons, then may ye do your best; then have ye cause to make mighty war upon him. So that was done, and the messengers had their answers, and that was this, shortly, that neither he nor his wife would not come at him. Then was the king wonderly wroth. And then the king sent him plain word again, and bade him be ready and stuff him and garnish him, for within forty days he would fetch him out of the biggest castle that he hath. When the duke had this warning, anon he went and furnished and garnished two strong castles of his, of the which the one hight Tintagil and the other castle hight Terrabil. So his wife, dame Igraine, he put in the castle of Tintagil, and himself he put in the castle of Terrabil, the which had many issues and posterns out. Then in all haste came Uther with a great host, and laid a siege about the castle of Terrabil. And there he pight many

pavilions, and there was great war made on both parties, and much people slain. Then for pure anger and for great love of fair Igraine the king Uther fell sick. So came to the king Uther Sir Ulfius, a noble knight, and asked the king why he was sick. I shall tell thee, said the king; I am sick for anger and for love of fair Igraine, that I may not be whole. Well, my lord, said Sir Ulfius, I shall seek Merlin, and he shall do you remedy that your heart shall be pleased. So Ulfius departed, and by adventure he met Merlin in a beggar's array, and there Merlin asked Ulfius whom he sought? and he said he had little ado to tell him. Well, said Merlin, I know whom thou seekest, for thou seekest Merlin; therefore seek no further, for I am he, and if king Uther will well reward me, and be sworn unto me to fulfil my desire, that shall be his honour and profit more than mine, for I shall cause him to have all his desire. All this will I undertake, said Ulfius, that there shall be nothing reasonable but thou shalt have thy desire. Well, said Merlin, he shall have his intent and desire. And therefore, said Merlin, ride on your way, for I will not be long behind.

CHAP. II.

How Uther Pendragon made war on the duke of Cornwall, and how by the means of Merlin he made the duchess his queen.

THEN Ulfius was glad, and rode on more than a pace till that he came to Uther Pendragon, and told him he had met with Merlin. Where is he? said the king. Sir, said Ulfius, he will not dwell long. Therewithal Ulfius was ware where Merlin stood at the porch of the pavilion's door. And then Merlin was bound to come to the king. When king Uther saw him he said he was welcome. Sir, said Merlin, I know all your heart every deal; so ye will be sworn unto me, as ye be a true king anointed, to fulfil my desire, ye shall have your desire. Then the king was sworn upon the four Evangelists. Sir, said Merlin, this is my desire: after ye shall win Igraine ye shall have a child by her, and when that is born that it shall be delivered to me for to nourish there as I will have it; for it shall be your worship and the child's avail, as mickle as the child is worth. I will well, said the king, as thou wilt have it. Now make you ready, said Merlin: this night shall you see Igraine in the castle of Tintagil, and ye shall be like the duke her husband, Ulfius shall be like Sir Brastias, a knight of the duke's, and I will be like a knight that hight Sir Jordanus, a knight of the duke's. But wait ye make not many questions with her nor with her men, but say you are diseased, and so hie you to bed, and rise not on the morn till I come to you, for the castle of Tintagil is but ten mile hence. So this was done as they had devised. But the duke of Tintagil espied how the king rode from the siege of Terrabil, and therefore that night he issued out of the castle at a postern, for to have distressed the king's host. And so, through his own issue, the duke himself was slain or ever the king came at the castle of Tintagil. So after the death of the duke king Uther came to the castle, more than three hours after his death; and there he found Igraine. And or day came Merlin came to the king and bade him make him ready, and so he kissed the lady Igraine and departed in all haste. But when the lady heard tell of the duke her husband, and by all record he was dead or ever king Uther came to her, then she marvelled who that might be that came to her in likeness of her lord; so she mourned privily and held her peace. Then all the barons by one assent prayed the king of accord between the lady Igraine and him. The king gave them leave, for fain would he have been accorded with her. So the king put all the trust in Ulfius to entreat between them; so, by the entreat, at the last the king and she met together. Now will we do well, said Ulfius: our king is a lusty knight and wifeless, and my lady

s a passing fair lady; it were unto us all and it might please to make her his queen. Unto r were all well accorded, and to the king: and anon, like a ght, he assented thereto with l, and so in all haste they were in a morning with great mirth

ding Lot of Lothian and of then wedded Margawse that waine's mother: and king of the land of Garlot wedded All this was done at the request Uther. And the third sister, le Fay, was put to school in a and there she learned so much was a great clerk of nigro- And after she was wedded to ens of the land of Gore, that Ewaine's le Blanchemains

CHAP. III.

rth of king Arthur, and of his re; and of the death of king Pendragon; and how Arthur osen king; and of wonders and s of a sword that was taken out one by the said Arthur.

the time came that the queen hould bear a child. So it fell ıalf a year, as king Uther ı his queen, he asked her, ith she owed unto him, whose child that should be born: s she sore abashed to give Dismay you not, said the king, me the truth, and I shall love ɔetter, by the faith of my body. she, I shall tell you the truth. e night that my lord was dead, of his death, as his knights re- re came into my castle of Tin- ıan like my lord in speech and nce, and two knights with him ss of his two knights Brastias ans, and so I welcomed him as I welcome my lord: and thus, as nswer unto God, this child was . That is truth, said the king, as for it was I myself that came in the likeness, and therefore dismay you not, for I am father to the child. And there he told her all the cause how it was by Merlin's counsel. Then the Queen made great joy when she knew who was the father of her child. Soon came Merlin unto the king and said, Sir, ye must purvey you for the nourishing of your child. As thou wilt, said the king, be it. Well, said Merlin, I know a lord of yours in this land, that is a passing true man and a faithful, and he shall have the nourishing of your child, and his name is Sir Ector, and he is a lord of fair livelihood in many parts in England and Wales. And this lord, Sir Ector, let him be sent for, for to come and speak with you, and desire him yourself, as he loveth you, that he will put his own child to nourishing to another woman, and that his wife nourish yours. And when the child is born let it be delivered unto me at yonder privy postern unchristened. So like as Merlin devised it was done. And when Sir Ector was come he made affiance to the king for to nourish the child like as the king desired; and there the king granted Sir Ector great rewards. Then when the lady was delivered, the king commanded two knights and two ladies to take the child bound in a cloth of gold, and that ye deliver him to what poor man ye meet at the postern gate of the castle. So the child was delivered unto Merlin, and so he bare it forth unto Sir Ector, and made an holy man to christen him, and named him Arthur: and so Sir Ector's wife nourished him with her own breast.

Then within two years king Uther fell sick of a great malady. And in the meanwhile his enemies usurped upon him, and did a great battle upon his men, and slew many of his people. Sir, said Merlin, ye may not lie so as ye do, for ye must to the field, though ye ride on an horse-litter; for ye shall never have the better of your enemies but if your person be there, and then shall ye have the victory. So it was done as Merlin had devised, and they carried the king forth in a horse-litter

How Galahad departed with the shield, and how king Evelake had received this shield of Joseph of Aramathye. Chap. x.
How Joseph made a cross on the white shield with his blood, and how Galahad was by a monk brought to a tomb. Chap. xi.
Of the marvel that Sir Galahad saw and heard in the tomb, and how he made Melias knight. Chap. xii.
Of the adventure that Melias had, and how Galahad revenged him, and how Melias was carried into an abbey. Chap. xiii.
How Galahad departed, and how he was commanded to go to the castle of maidens to destroy the wicked custom. Chap. xiv.
How Sir Galahad fought with the knights of the castle, and destroyed the wicked custom. Chap. xv.
How Sir Gawaine came to the abbey for to follow Galahad, and how he was shriven to a hermit. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Galahad met with Sir Launcelot and with Sir Percivale, and smote them down, and departed from them. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Launcelot, half sleeping and half waking, saw a sick man borne in a litter, and how he was healed with the Sangreal. Chap. xviii.
How a voice spake to Sir Launcelot, and how he found his horse and his helm borne away, and after went afoot. Chap. xix.
How Sir Launcelot was shriven, and what sorrow he made; and of good ensamples which were shewed to him. Chap. xx.

Here follow the Chapters of the Fourteenth Book.

How Sir Percivale came to a recluse and asked counsel, and how she told him that she was his aunt. Chap. i.
How Merlin likened the Round Table to the world, and how the knights that should achieve the Sangreal should be known. Chap. ii.
How Sir Percivale came into a monastery where he found king Evelake, which was an old man. Chap. iii.
How Sir Percivale saw many men of arms bearing a dead knight, and how he fought against them. Chap. iv.
How a yeoman desired him to get again an horse, and how Sir Percivale's hackney was slain, and how he gat an horse. Chap. v.
Of the great danger that Sir Percivale was in by his horse, and how he saw a serpent and a lion fight. Chap. vi.
Of the vision that Sir Percivale saw, and how his vision was expounded, and of his lion. Chap. vii.
How Sir Percivale saw a ship coming to him-ward, and how the lady of the ship told him of her disheritance. Chap. viii.
How Sir Percivale promised her help, and how he required her of love, and how he was saved from the fiend. Chap. ix.
How Sir Percivale for penance rove himself through the thigh; and how she was known for the devil. Chap. x.

son and young Arthur that
ıished brother, and Sir Kay
night at Allhallowmas afore.
rode to the justs-ward Sir
st his sword, for he had left
er's lodging, and so he prayed
ur to ride for his sword. I
id Arthur, and rode fast after
and when he came home
ınd all were out to see
Then was Arthur wroth,
) himself, I will ride to the
and take the sword with
icketh in the stone, for my
· Kay shall not be without
s day. So when he came to
ıyard Sir Arthur alighted,
is horse to the stile, and so
o the tent, and found no
ere, for they were at the
ıd so he handled the sword
iles, and lightly and fiercely
ut of the stone, and took
nd rode his way till he came
ther Sir Kay, and delivered
word. And as soon as Sir
ıe sword he wist well it was
of the stone, and so he rode
r Sir Ector, and said: Sir, lo
sword of the stone; where-
be king of this land. When
ıeheld the sword he returned
ame to the church, and there
ed all three and went into
, and anon he made Sir Kay
on a book how he came to
. Sir, said Sir Kay, by my
rthur, for he brought it to
v gat ye this sword? said
to Arthur. Sir, I will tell
ı I came home for my bro-
d, I found nobody at home
me his sword, and so I
ıy brother Sir Kay should
ırdless, and so I came hither
d pulled it out of the stone
y pain. Found ye any knights
sword? said Sir Ector. Nay,
r. Now, said Sir Ector to
ınderstand ye must be king
l. Wherefore I, said Arthur,
hat cause? Sir, said Ector,
ll have it so: for there should
never man have drawn out this sword but he that shall be rightwise king of this land. Now let me see whether ye can put the sword there as it was, and pull it out again. That is no mastery, said Arthur: and so he put it into the stone. Therewith Sir Ector assayed to pull out the sword and failed.

CHAP. IV.

How king Arthur pulled out the sword divers times.

Now assay, said Sir Ector to Sir Kay. And anon he pulled at the sword with all his might, but it would not be. Now shall ye assay, said Sir Ector to Arthur. I will well, said Arthur, and pulled it out easily. And therewithal Sir Ector kneeled down to the earth, and Sir Kay. Alas, said Arthur, mine own dear father and brother, why kneel ye to me. Nay, nay, my lord Arthur, it is not so: I was never your father nor of your blood, but I wote well ye are of an higher blood than I wend ye were. And then Sir Ector told him all, how he was betaken him for to nourish him, and by whose commandment, and by Merlin's deliverance. Then Arthur made great dole when he understood that Sir Ector was not his father. Sir, said Ector unto Arthur, will ye be my good and gracious lord when ye are king? Else were I to blame, said Arthur, for ye are the man in the world that I am most beholding to, and my good lady and mother your wife, that as well as her own hath fostered me and kept. And if ever it be God's will that I be king, as ye say, ye shall desire of me what I may do, and I shall not fail you: God forbid I should fail you. Sir, said Sir Ector, I will ask no more of you but that you will make my son, your foster-brother Sir Kay, seneschal of all your lands. That shall be done, said Arthur, and more by the faith of my body, that never man shall have that office but he while he and I live. Therewithal they went unto the archbishop, and told him how the sword was achieved, and by

whom. And on Twelfth Day all the barons came thither, and to assay to take the sword who that would assay. But there afore them all there might none take it out but Arthur, wherefore there were many lords wroth, and said it was great shame unto them all and the realm, to be over governed with a boy of no high blood born. And so they fell out at that time that it was put off till Candlemas, and then all the barons should meet there again. But always the ten knights were ordained to watch the sword day and night, and so they set a pavilion over the stone and the sword, and five always watched. So at Candlemas many more great lords came thither for to have won the sword, but there might none prevail. And right as Arthur did at Christmas he did at Candlemas, and pulled out the sword easily, whereof the barons were sore aggrieved, and put it off in delay till the high feast of Easter. And as Arthur sped afore, so did he at Easter: yet there were some of the great lords had indignation that Arthur should be their king, and put it off in a delay till the feast of Pentecost. Then the archbishop of Canterbury by Merlin's providence let purvey then of the best knights that they might get, and such knights as king Uther Pendragon loved best and most trusted in his days, and such knights were put about Arthur, as Sir Baudwin of Britain, Sir Kay, Sir Ulfius, Sir Brastias. All these, with many other, were always about Arthur, day and night, till the feast of Pentecost.

CHAP. V.

How King Arthur was crowned, and how he made officers.

And at the feast of Pentecost all manner of men assayed to pull at the sword that would assay, but none might prevail but Arthur; and he pulled it out afore all the lords and commons that were there, wherefore all the commons cried at once, We will have Arthur unto our king; we will put him no more in delay, for we all see that it is God's will that he shall be our king, and who that holdeth against it we will slay him. And therewithal they kneeled down all at once, both rich and poor, and cried Arthur mercy, because they had delayed him so long. And Arthur forgave them, and took the sword between both his hands, and offered it upon the altar where the archbishop was, and so was he made knight of the best man that was there. And so anon was the coronation made, and there was he sworn unto his lords and the commons for to be a true king, to stand with true justice from thenceforth the days of this life. Also then he made all lords that held of the crown to come in, and to do service as they ought to do. And many complaints were made unto Sir Arthur of great wrongs that were done since the death of king Uther, of many lands that were bereaved lords, knights, ladies, and gentlemen. Wherefore king Arthur made the lands to be given again unto them that owned them. When this was done that the king had stablished all the countries about London, then he let make Sir Kay seneschal of England; and Sir Baudwin of Britain was made constable; and Sir Ulfius was made chamberlain; and Sir Brastias was made warden to wait upon the north from Trent forwards, for it was that time for the most part the king's enemies. But within few years after, Arthur won all the north, Scotland, and all that were under their obeisance. Also Wales, a part of it held against Arthur, but he overcame them all as he did the remnant through the noble prowess of himself and his knights of the Round Table.

CHAP. VI.

How king Arthur held in Wales at a Pentecost a great feast, and what kings and lords came to his feast.

Then the king removed into Wales, and let cry a great feast, that it should be holden at Pentecost, after the incoronation of him at the city of Carlion.

east came king Lot of Lothian
:ney with five hundred knights
Also there came to the feast
ıs of Gore with four hundred
ith him. Also there came to
king Nentres of Garloth with
lred knights with him. Also
: to the feast the king of Scot-
six hundred knights with him,
as but a young man. Also
e to the feast a king that was
king with the hundred knights,
l his men was passing well be-
points. Also there came the
Carados with five hundred
And king Arthur was glad of
ing, for he wend that all the
knights had come for great
for to have done him worship
st, wherefore the king made
and sent the kings and knights
ients. But the kings would
ive, but rebuked the messen-
ıefully, and said they had no
:ive no gifts of a beardless boy
come of low blood, and sent
they would have none of his
that they were come to give
with hard swords betwixt the
the shoulders: and therefore
thither, so they told to the mes-
lainly, for it was great shame
m to see such a boy to have
so noble a realm as this land
th this answer the messengers
and told to king Arthur this
Wherefore, by the advice of
ıs, he took him to a strong
h five hundred good men with
l all the kings aforesaid in
· laid a siege tofore him, but
ıur was well victualled. And
teen days there came Merlin
ıem into the city of Carlion.
the kings were passing glad of
nd asked him, For what cause
›oy Arthur made your king?
Merlin, I shall tell you the
›r he is king Uther Pendragon's
ı in wedlock of Igraine, the
fe of Tintagil. After the death
uke thirteen days king Uther
n wedded fair Igraine. And
who saith nay, he shall be king, and overcome all his enemies; and, or he die, he shall be long king of all England, and have under his obeisance Wales, Ireland, and Scotland, and more realms than I will now rehearse. Some of the kings had marvel of Merlin's words, and deemed well that it should be as he said: and some of them laughed him to scorn, as king Lot: and more other called him a witch. But then were they accorded with Merlin that king Arthur should come out and speak with the kings, and to come safe and go safe, such assurance was there made. So Merlin went unto king Arthur and told him how he had done, and bade him fear not, but come out boldly and speak with them, and spare them not, but answer them as their king and chieftain, for ye shall overcome them all whether they will or nill.

CHAP. VII.

Of the first war that king Arthur had, and how he won the field.

THEN king Arthur came out of his tower, and had under his gown a jesseraunt of double mail, and there went with him the archbishop of Canterbury, and Sir Baudwin of Britain, and Sir Kay, and Sir Brastias; these were the men of most worship that were with him. And when they were met there was no meekness, but stout words on both sides: but always king Arthur answered them, and said that he would make them to bow and he lived. Wherefore they departed with wrath, and king Arthur bade keep them well, and they bade the king keep him well. So the king returned him to the tower again, and armed him and all his knights. What will ye do? said Merlin to the kings; ye were better for to stint, for ye shall not here prevail though ye were ten so many. Be we well advised to be afraid of a dream-reader? said king Lot. With that Merlin vanished away, and came to king Arthur, and bade him set on them fiercely; and in the meanwhile there were three hundred

Here follow the Chapters of the Nineteenth Book.

How queen Guenever rode on Maying with certain knights of the Round Table and clad all in green. Chap. i.
How Sir Meliagraunce took the queen and all her knights, which were sore hurt in fighting. Chap. ii.
How Sir Launcelot had word how the queen was taken, and how Sir Meliagraunce laid a bushment for Launcelot. Chap. iii.
How Sir Launcelot's horse was slain, and how Sir Launcelot rode in a cart for to rescue the queen. Chap. iv.
How Sir Meliagraunce required forgiveness of the queen, and how she appeased Sir Launcelot, and other matters. Chap. v.
How Sir Launcelot came in the night to the queen, and how Sir Meliagraunce appeached the queen of treason. Chap. vi.
How Sir Launcelot answered for the queen, and waged battle against Sir Meliagraunce. And how Sir Launcelot was taken in a trap. Chap. vii.
How Sir Launcelot was delivered out of prison by a lady, and took a white courser, and came for to keep his day. Chap. viii.
How Sir Launcelot came the same time that Sir Meliagraunce abode him in the field, and dressed him to battle. Chap. ix.
How Sir Urre came into Arthur's court for to be healed of his wounds, and how king Arthur would begin to handle him. Chap. x.
How king Arthur handled Sir Urre, and after him many other knights of the Round Table. Chap. xi.
How Sir Launcelot was commanded by Arthur to handle his wounds, and anon he was all whole, and how they thanked God. Chap. xii.
How there was a party made of an hundred knights against an hundred knights, and of other matters. Chap. xiii.

Here followeth the Book of the Piteous History which is of the Morte or Death of king Arthur, and the Chapters of the Twentieth Book.

How Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred were busy upon Sir Gawaine for to disclose the love between Sir Launcelot and queen Guenever. Chap. i.
How Sir Agravaine disclosed their love to king Arthur, and how king Arthur gave them licence to take him. Chap. ii.
How Sir Launcelot was espied in the queen's chamber, and how Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred came with twelve knights to slay him. Chap. iii.
How Sir Launcelot slew Sir Colgrevance, and armed him in his harness, and after slew Sir Agravaine and twelve of his fellows. Chap. iv.
How Sir Launcelot came to Sir Bors and told him how he had sped, and in what adventure he had been, and how he escaped. Chap. v.
Of the counsel and advice which was taken by Sir Launcelot and by his friends for to save the queen. Chap. vi.
How Sir Mordred rode hastily to the king to tell him of the affray and death of Sir Agravaine and the other knights. Chap. vii.

How Sir Launcelot and his kinsmen rescued the queen from the fire, and how he slew many knights. Chap. viii.
Of the sorrow and lamentation of king Arthur for the death of his nephews and other good knights, and also for the queen his wife. Chap. ix.
How king Arthur at the request of Sir Gawaine concluded to make war against Sir Launcelot, and laid siege to his castle called Joyous Gard. Chap. x.
Of the communication between king Arthur and Sir Launcelot, and how king Arthur reproved him. Chap. xi.
How the cousins and kinsmen of Sir Launcelot excited him to go out to battle, and how they made them ready. Chap. xii.
How Sir Gawaine justed and smote down Sir Lionel, and how Sir Launcelot horsed king Arthur. Chap. xiii.
How the pope sent down his bulls to make peace, and how Sir Launcelot brought the queen to king Arthur. Chap. xiv.
Of the deliverance of the queen to the king by Sir Launcelot, and what language Sir Gawaine had to Sir Launcelot. Chap. xv.
Of the communication between Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot, with much other language. Chap. xvi.
How Sir Launcelot departed from the king and from Joyous Gard over seaward, and what knights went with him. Chap. xvii.
How Sir Launcelot passed over the sea, and how he made great lords of the knights that went with him. Chap. xviii.
How king Arthur and Sir Gawaine made a great host ready to go over sea to make war on Sir Launcelot. Chap. xix.
What message Sir Gawaine sent to Sir Launcelot, and king Arthur laid siege to Benwick, and other matters. Chap. xx.
How Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot did battle together, and how Sir Gawaine was overthrown and hurt. Chap. xxi.
Of the sorrow that king Arthur made for the war, and of another battle where also Sir Gawaine had the worse. Chap. xxii.

Here follow the Chapters of the Twenty-first Book.

How Sir Mordred presumed and took on him to be king of England, and would have married the queen, his uncle's wife. Chap. i.
How after that king Arthur had tidings he returned and came to Dover, where Sir Mordred met him to let his landing, and of the death of Sir Gawaine. Chap. ii.
How after Sir Gawaine's ghost appeared to king Arthur, and warned him that he should not fight that day. Chap. iii.
How by misadventure of an adder the battle began, where Mordred was slain, and Arthur hurt to the death. Chap. iv.
How king Arthur commanded to cast his sword Excalibur into the water, and how he was delivered to ladies in a barge. Chap. v.
How Sir Bedivere found him on the morrow dead in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit. Chap. vi.
Of the opinion of some men of the death of king Arthur; and how queen Guenever made her a nun in Almesbury. Chap. vii.
How when Sir Launcelot heard of the death of king Arthur, and of Sir Gawaine, and other matters, came into England. Chap. viii.
How Sir Launcelot departed to seek the queen Guenever, and how he found her at Almesbury. Chap. ix.

good men of the best that were with the kings that went straight unto king Arthur, and that comforted him greatly. Sir, said Merlin to Arthur, fight not with the sword that ye had by miracle, till that ye see ye go unto the worse; then draw it out and do your best. So forthwithal king Arthur set upon them in their lodging. And Sir Baudwin, Sir Kay, and Sir Brastias slew on the right hand and on the left hand that it was marvellous; and always king Arthur on horseback laid on with a sword, and did marvellous deeds of arms, that many of the kings had great joy of his deeds and hardiness. Then king Lot brake out on the back side, and the king with the hundred knights, and king Carados, and set on Arthur fiercely behind him. With that Sir Arthur turned with his knights and smote behind and before, and ever Sir Arthur was in the foremost press till his horse was slain underneath him. And therewith king Lot smote down king Arthur. With that his four knights received him, and set him on horseback. Then he drew his sword Excalibur, but it was so bright in his enemies' eyes, that it gave light like thirty torches. And therewith he put them on back, and slew much people. And then the commons of Carlion arose with clubs and staves, and slew many knights; but all the kings held them together with their knights that were left alive, and so fled and departed. And Merlin came unto Arthur, and counselled him to follow them no farther.

CHAP. VIII.

How Merlin counselled king Arthur to send for king Ban and king Bors, and of their counsel taken for the war.

So after the feast and tourney king Arthur drew him unto London, and so by the counsel of Merlin the king let call his barons to council. For Merlin had told the king that the six kings that made war upon him would in all haste be awroke on him and on his lands. Wherefore the king asked counsel at them all. They could no counsel give, but said they were big enough. Ye say well, said Arthur; I thank you for your good courage; but will ye all that love me speak with Merlin: ye know well that he hath done much for me, and he knoweth many things, and what he is afore you I would that ye prayed him heartily of his best advice. All the barons said they would pray him and desire him. So Merlin was sent for, and fair desired of all the barons to give them best counsel. I shall say you, said Merlin, I warn you all, your enemies are passing strong for you, and they are good men of arms as be on live, and by this time they have gotten to them four kings more, and a mighty duke; and unless that our king have more chivalry with him than he may make within the bounds of his own realm, and he fight with them in battle he shall be overcome and slain. What were best to do in this cause? said all the barons. I shall tell you, said Merlin, mine advice: There are two brethren beyond the sea, and they be kings both, and marvellous good men of their hands; and that one hight king Ban of Benwick, and that other hight king Bors of Gaul, that is France. And on these two kings warreth a mighty man of men, the king Claudas, and striveth with them for a castle; and great war is betwixt them: but this Claudas is so mighty of goods, whereof he getteth good knights, that he putteth these two kings the most part to the worse. Wherefore this is my counsel, that our king and sovereign lord send unto the kings Ban and Bors by two trusty knights with letters well devised, that if they will come and see king Arthur and his court, and so help him in his wars, that he will be sworn unto them to help them in their wars against king Claudas. Now what say ye unto this counsel? said Merlin. This is well counselled, said the king and all the barons. Right so in all haste there were ordained to go two knights on the message unto the two kings. So were there made letters in the pleasant wise

› king Arthur's desire.
stias were made the mes-
de forth well horsed and
ıd as the guise was that
passed the sea and rode
ity of Benwick. And
were eight knights who
nd at a straight passage
Ulfius and Brastias, and
ken them prisoners. So
ɜm that they might pass,
messengers unto king
sent from king Arthur.
the eight knights, ye shall
oners, for we be knights
ɜ. And therewith two of
their spears, and Ulfius
ressed their spears, and
with great might, and
hts brake their spears,
held, and bare the two
f their saddles to the
eft them lying, and rode
nd the other six knights
a passage to meet with
ıd so Ulfius and Brastias
vo down, and so passed
And at the fourth pas-
t two for two, and both
the earth: so there was
ght knights but he was
›ruised. And when they
ck it fortuned there were
n and Bors. And when
e kings that there were
ers, there were sent to
hts of worship, the one
lord of the country of
Sir Phariance a worship-
Anon they asked from
ame, and they said from
ing of England: so they
their arms, and made
of other. But anon as
wist they were messen-
r's, there was made no
orthwith they spake with
ıd welcomed them in the
ɜe, and said they were
unto them before all the
And therewith they kissed
d delivered them; and
ıd Bors understood the
letters, then were they more welcome than they were before. And after the haste of the letters they gave them this answer, that they would fulfil the desire of king Arthur's writing, and let Ulfius and Brastias tarry there as long as they would, they should have such cheer as might be made them in those marches. Then Ulfius and Brastias told the king of the adventure at their passages of the eight knights. Ha, ha, said Ban and Bors, they were my good friends. I would I had wist of them, they should not have escaped so. So Ulfius and Brastias had good cheer and great gifts as much as they might bear away, and had their answer by mouth and by writing, that those two kings would come unto Arthur in all the haste that they might.

So the two knights rode on afore, and passed the sea, and came to their lord and told him how they had sped, whereof king Arthur was passing glad. At what time suppose ye the two kings will be here? Sir, said they, afore Allhallowmas. Then the king let purvey for a great feast, and let cry a great justs. And by Allhallowmas the two kings were come over the sea with three hundred knights well arrayed both for the peace and for the war. And king Arthur met with them ten mile out of London, and there was great joy as could be thought or made. And on Allhallowmas at the great feast sat in the hall the three kings, and Sir Kay the seneschal served in the hall, and Sir Lucas the butler, that was duke Corneus's son, and Sir Griflet that was the son of Cardol, these three knights had the rule of all the service that served the kings. And anon as they had washed and risen, all knights that would just made them ready. By then they were ready on horseback there were seven hundred knights. And Arthur, Ban, and Bors, with the archbishop of Canterbury, and Sir Ector, Kay's father, they were in a place covered with cloth of gold, like an hall, with ladies and gentlewomen, for to behold who did best, and thereon to give judgment.

CHAP. IX.

Of a great tourney made by king Arthur and the two kings Ban and Bors, and how they went over the Sea.

And king Arthur and the two kings let part the seven hundred knights in two parties. And there were three hundred knights of the realm of Benwick and of Gaul turned on the other side. Then they dressed their shields, and began to couch their spears many good knights. So Griflet was the first that met with a knight, one Ladinas, and they met so eagerly that all men had wonder; and they so fought that their shields fell to pieces, and horse and man fell to the earth, and both the French knight and the English knight lay so long, that all men wend they had been dead. When Lucas the butler saw Griflet so lie, he horsed him again anon, and they two did marvellous deeds of arms with many bachelors. Also Sir Kay came out of an embushment with five knights with him, and they six smote other six down. But Sir Kay did that day marvellous deeds of arms, that there was none did so well as he that day. Then there came Ladinas and Grastian, two knights of France, and did passing well, that all men praised them. Then came there Sir Placidas, a good knight, and met with Sir Kay and smote him down, horse and man, wherefore Sir Griflet was wroth, and met with Sir Placidas so hard that horse and man fell to the earth. But when the five knights wist that Sir Kay had a fall they were wroth out of wit, and therewith each of them five bare down a knight. When king Arthur and the two kings saw them begin to wax wroth on both parts, they leapt on small hackneys, and let cry that all men should depart unto their lodging. And so they went home and unarmed them, and so to even-song and supper. And after the three kings went into a garden, and gave the prize unto Sir Kay, and to Lucas the butler, and unto Sir Griflet. And then they went unto council, and with them Gwenbaus, the brother unto Sir Ban and Bors, a wise clerk, and thither went Ulfius, and Brastias, and Merlin. And after they had been in council they went unto bed. And on the morn they heard mass, and to dinner, and so to their council, and made many arguments what were best to do. At the last they were concluded, that Merlin should go with a token of king Ban, (and that was a ring,) unto his men and king Bors's: and Gracian and Placidas should go again and keep their castles and their countries, as king Ban of Benwick and king Bors of Gaul had ordained them; and so they passed the sea and came to Benwick. And when the people saw king Ban's ring, and Gracian and Placidas, they were glad, and asked how the kings fared, and made great joy of their welfare and according. And according unto the sovereign lord's desire, the men of war made them ready in all haste possible, so that they were fifteen thousand on horse and foot, and they had great plenty of victual with them by Merlin's provision. But Gracian and Placidas were left to furnish and garnish the castles for dread of king Claudas. Right so Merlin passed the sea, well victualled both by water and by land. And when he came to the sea he sent home the footmen again, and took no more with him but ten thousand men on horseback, the most part men of arms, and so shipped and passed the sea into England, and landed at Dover: and through the wit of Merlin he led the host northward, the priviest way that could be thought, unto the forest of Bedegraine, and there in a valley he lodged them secretly.

Then rode Merlin unto king Arthur and the two kings and told them how he had sped, whereof they had great marvel, that man on earth might speed so soon, and go and come. So Merlin told them ten thousand were in the forest of Bedegraine, well armed at all points. Then was there no more to say, but to horseback went all the host

ıur had afore purveyed. So venty thousand he passed by nd day. But there was made ordinance afore by Merlin, that ould no man of war ride nor go ountry on this side Trent water, : had a token from king Arthur, ırough the king's enemies durst , as they did tofore, to espy.

CHAP. X.

ven kings gathered a great host against king Arthur.

;o within a little space the three ame unto the castle of Bede- and found there a passing fair ip and well beseen, whereof d great joy, and victual they none.

was the cause of the northern hat they were reared for the and rebuke that the six kings Carlion. And those six kings means gat unto them five other nd thus they began to gather ople, and how they sware that ıl nor woe they should not ch other till they had destroyed

And then they made an oath. ıt that began the oath was the Cambenet, that he would bring n five thousand men of arms, ich were ready on horseback. ware king Brandegoris of Strang- ıt he would bring five thousand ırms on horseback. Then sware ariance of Northumberland that d bring three thousand men of Then sware the king of the . knights, that was a passing an and a young, that he would ur thousand men on horseback. ıere swore king Lot, a passing night and Sir Gawaine's father, would bring five thousand men on horseback. Also there swore rience, that was Sir Gawaine's of the land of Gore, and he ring six thousand men of arms eback. Also there swore king f Cornwall, that he would bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Cradelmas to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Agwisance of Ireland, to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Nentres to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. Also there swore king Carados to bring five thousand men of arms on horseback. So their whole host was of clean men of arms on horseback fifty thousand; and afoot ten thousand of good mens' bodies. Then were they soon ready and mounted upon horse, and sent forth their fore-riders: for these eleven kings in their way laid siege unto the castle of Bedegraine; and so they departed and drew toward Arthur, and left few to abide at the siege, for the castle of Bedegraine was holden of king Arthur, and the men that were therein were Arthur's.

CHAP XI.

Of a dream of the king with the hundred knights.

So by Merlin's advice there were sent fore-riders to skim the country, and they met with the fore-riders of the north, and made them to tell which way the host came, and then they told it to Arthur, and by king Ban and Bors's counsel they let burn and destroy all the country afore them where they should ride.

The king with the hundred knights dreamed a wonder dream two nights afore the battle, that there blew a great wind, and blew down their castles and their towns, and after that came a water and bare it all away. All that heard of the dream said it was a token of great battle. Then, by counsel of Merlin, when they wist which way the eleven kings would ride and lodge that night, at midnight they set upon them, as they were in their pavilions. But the scout-watch by their host cried, Lords! at arms! for here be your enemies at your hand!

CHAP. XII.

How the eleven kings with their host fought against Arthur and his host, and many great feats of the war.

THEN king Arthur and king Ban and king Bors, with their good and trusty knights, set on them so fiercely that they made them overthrow their pavilions on their heads; but the eleven kings by manly prowess of arms took a fair field. But there was slain that morrow tide ten thousand good men's bodies. And so they had afore them a strong passage, yet were they fifty thousand of hardy men. Then it drew toward day. Now shall ye do by mine advice, said Merlin unto the three kings: I would that king Ban and king Bors with their fellowship of ten thousand men were put in a wood here beside in an embushment, and keep them privy, and that they be laid or the light of the day come, and that they stir nor till ye and your knights have fought with them long: and when it is daylight dress your battle even afore them and the passage, that they may see all your host, for then they will be the more hardy when they see you but about twenty thousand, and be the gladder to suffer you and your host to come over the passage. All the three kings and the whole barons said that Merlin said passingly well, and it was done anon as Merlin had devised. So on the morn, when either host saw other, the host of the north was well comforted. Then to Ulfius and Brastias were delivered three thousand men of arms, and they set on them fiercely in the passage, and slew on the right hand and on the left hand, that it was wonder to tell. When that the eleven knights saw that there was so few a fellowship did such deeds of arms, they were ashamed, and set on them again fiercely, and there was Sir Ulfius's horse slain under him, but he did marvellously well on foot. But the duke Eustace of Cambenet, and king Clariance of Northumberland, were alway grievous on Sir Ulfius. When Brastias saw his fellow fared so withal, he smote the duke with a spear, that horse and man fell down. That saw king Clariance, and returned to Brastias, and either smote other so that horse and man went to the earth, and so they lay long astonied, and their horses' knees brast to the hard bone. Then came Sir Kay the seneschal with six fellows with him, and did passing well. With that came the eleven kings, and there was Griflet put to the earth, horse and man, and Lucas the butler, horse and man, by king Brandegoris and king Idres and king Agwisance. Then waxed the meddle passing hard on both parties. When Sir Kay saw Griflet on foot he rode on king Nentres and smote him down, and led his horse to Sir Griflet and horsed him again. Also Sir Kay with the same spear smote down king Lot, and hurt him passing sore. That saw the king with the hundred knights, and ran unto Sir Kay and smote him down and took his horse, and gave him to king Lot, whereof he said gramercy. When Sir Griflet saw Sir Kay and Lucas the butler on foot, he took a sharp spear great and square and rode to Pinel, a good man of arms, and smote horse and man down, and then he took his horse and gave him unto Sir Kay. When king Lot saw king Nentres on foot he ran unto Melot de la Roche and smote him down horse and man, and gave king Nentres the horse and horsed him again. Also the king of the hundred knights saw king Idres on foot; then he ran unto Gwimiart de Bloi, and smote him down horse and man, and gave king Idres the horse and horsed him again; and king Lot smote down Clariance de la Forest Savage, and gave the horse unto duke Eustace. And so when they had horsed the kings again they drew them all eleven kings together, and said they would be revenged of the damage they had taken that day. The meanwhile came in Sir Ector with an eager countenance, and found Ulfius and Brastias on foot in great peril of death, that were foul bruised under the horse feet. Then king Arthur as a lion ran unto

adelment of North Wales, and
im through the left side, that
e and the king fell down; and
took the horse by the rein and
unto Ulfius, and said, Have this
ine old friend, for great need
)u of horse. Gramercy, said
Then Sir Arthur did so mar-
in arms that all men had

When the king with the hun-
ights saw king Cradelment on
ran unto Sir Ector, that was
sed, Sir Kay's father, and smote
d man down, and gave the horse
: king and horsed him again.
en king Arthur saw the king
Sir Ector's horse he was wroth,
1 his sword he smote the king
elm, that a quarter of the helm
:ld fell down, and the sword
lown unto the horse's neck,
ie king and the horse fell down
round. Then Sir Kay came to
ganore, seneschal with the king
undred knights, and smote him
rse and man, and led the horse
father Sir Ector: then Sir Ector
) a knight, hight Lardans, and
)rse and man down, and led the
ito Sir Brastias that great need
1 horse, and was greatly bruised.
rastias beheld Lucas the butler,
like a dead man under the
t, and ever Sir Griflet did mar-
for to rescue him, and there
ways fourteen knights on Sir
ien Brastias smote one of them
elm that it went to the teeth,
:ode to another and smote him
arm flew into the field. Then
to the third, and smote him on
lder that shoulder and arm flew
ield. And when Griflet saw
ie smote a knight on the tem-
t head and helm went to the
nd Griflet took the horse of
ht and led him unto Sir Lucas,
him mount upon the horse
enge his hurts. For Brastias
n a knight tofore, and horsed

CHAP. XIII.

Yet of the same battle.

THEN Lucas saw king Agwisance, that late had slain Moris de la Roche, and Lucas ran to him with a short spear that was great, that he gave him such a fall that the horse fell down to the earth. Also Lucas found there on foot Bloias de la Flandres and Sir Gwinas, two hardy knights, and in that woodness that Lucas was in he slew two bachelors, and horsed them again. Then waxed the battle passing hard on both parties, but Arthur was glad that his knights were horsed again, and then they fought together that the noise and sound rang by the water and the wood. Wherefore king Ban and king Bors made them ready and dressed their shields and harness, and they were so courageous that many knights shook and trembled for eagerness. All this while Lucas, and Gwinas, and Briant, and Bellias of Flanders, held strong meddle against six kings, that was king Lot, king Nentres, king Brandegoris, king Idres, king Uriens, and king Agwisance. So with the help of Sir Kay and of Sir Griflet they held these six kings hard, that unneth they had any power to defend them. But when Sir Arthur saw the battle would not be ended by no manner he fared wood as a lion, and steered his horse here and there, on the right hand and on the left hand, that he stinted not till he had slain twenty knights. Also he wounded king Lot sore on the shoulder, and made him to leave that ground, for Sir Kay and Griflet did with king Arthur there great deeds of arms. Then Ulfius, Brastias, and Sir Ector, encountered against the duke Eustace, and king Cradelment, and king Cradelmas, and king Clariance of Northumberland, and king Carados, and against the king with the hundred knights. So these knights encountered with these kings that they made them to avoid the ground. Then king Lot made great dole for his damages and his fellows, and said unto

the eleven kings, But if ye will do as I devise we shall be slain and destroyed: let me have the king with the hundred knights, and king Agwisance, and king Idres, and the duke of Cambenet, and we five kings will have fifteen thousand men of arms with us, and we will go apart while ye six kings hold the meddle with twelve thousand, and when we see that ye have foughten with them long then will we come on fiercely, and else shall we never match them, said king Lot, but by this mean. So they departed as they here devised, and six kings made their party strong against Arthur, and made great war long. In the meanwhile brake the embushment of king Ban and Bors, and Lionses and Phariance had the advant guard, and they two knights met with king Idres and his fellowship, and there began a great meddle of breaking of spears and smiting of swords with slaying of men and horses, and king Idres was near at discomfiture.

That saw Agwisance the king, and put Lionses and Phariance in point of death: for the duke of Cambenet came on withal with a great fellowship, so these two knights were in great danger of their lives that they were fain to return, but always they rescued themselves and their fellowship marvellously. When king Bors saw those knights put aback it grieved him sore; then he came on so fast that his fellowship seemed as black as Inde. When king Lot had espied king Bors he knew him well; then he said, O defend us from death and horrible maims, for I see well we be in great peril of death; for I see yonder a king, one of the most worshipfulest men, and one of the best knights of the world, is inclined unto his fellowship. What is he? said the king with the hundred knights. It is, said king Lot, king Bors of Gaul; I marvel how they came into this country without witting of us all. It was by Merlin's advice, said the knight. As for him, said king Carados, I will encounter with king Bors, if ye will rescue me when need is. Go on, said they all, we will do all that we may. Then king Carados and his host rode on a soft pace till that they came as nigh king Bors as a bow draught: then either battle let their horses run as fast as they might. And Bleoberis that was god-son unto king Bors he bare his chief standard, that was a passing good knight. Now shall we see, said king Bors, how these northern Britons can bear their arms. And king Bors encountered with a knight, and smote him throughout with a spear that he fell dead unto the earth, and after drew his sword and did marvellous deeds of arms, that all parties had great wonder thereof; and his knights failed not but did their part, and king Carados was smitten to the earth. With that came the king with the hundred knights and rescued king Carados mightily by force of arms, for he was a passing good knight of a king, and but a young man.

CHAP. XIV.

Yet more of the same battle.

By then came into field king Ban as fierce as a lion, with bands of green and thereupon gold. Ha, ha, said king Lot, we must be discomfited, for yonder I see the most valiant knight of the world, and the man of the most renown: for such two brethren as is king Ban and king Bors are not living, wherefore we must needs void or die; and but if we avoid manly and wisely there is but death. When king Ban came into the battle, he came in so fiercely that the strokes resounded again from the wood and the water; wherefore king Lot wept for pity and dole that he saw so many good knights take their end. But through the great force of king Ban they made both the northern battles that were parted to hurtle together for great dread, and the three kings with their knights slew on ever, that it was pity to behold that multitude of the people that fled. But king Lot and the king of the hundred knights and king Morganore gathered the people together passing knightly, and did great prowess

s, and held the battle all that day rd. When the king of the hundred s beheld the great damage that an did, he thrust unto him with his and smote him on high upon the great stroke, and astonied him sore. cing Ban was wroth with him, and ed on him fiercely: the other saw nd cast up his shield and spurred rse forward, but the stroke of an fell down and carved a cantel shield, and the sword slid down hauberk behind his back, and rough the trapping of steel, and rse even in two pieces, that the felt the earth. Then the king of ndred knights voided the horse , and with his sword he broched rse of king Ban through and h. With that king Ban voided from the dead horse, and then an smote at the other so eagerly ote him on the helm, that he fell earth. Also in that ire he felled Morganore, and there was great ter of good knights and much . By then came into the press rthur, and found king Ban stand- ong dead men and dead horses, g on foot as a wood lion, that came none nigh him as far as he reach with his sword but that he a grievous buffet; whereof king had great pity. And Arthur bloody that by his shield there no man know him, for all was and brains on his sword. And thur looked by him he saw a that was passing well horsed, erewith Sir Arthur ran to him note him on the helm that his went unto his teeth, and the sank down to the earth dead, on Arthur took the horse by the nd led him unto king Ban, and air brother have this horse, for e great need thereof, and me re- h sore of your great damage. It e soon revenged, said king Ban, trust mine use is not such but f them may sore repent this. I ell, said Arthur, for I see your full actual; nevertheless, I might not come at you at that time. But when king Ban was mounted on horse-back, then there began new battle the which was sore and hard, and passing great slaughter. And so through great force king Arthur, and king Ban, and king Bors made their knights a little to withdraw them. But always the eleven kings with their chivalry never turned back, and so withdrew them to a little wood, and so over a little river, and there they rested them, for on the night they might have no rest in the field. And then the eleven kings and knights put them on a heap all together, as men adread and out of all comfort. But there was no man might pass them, they held them so hard together, both behind and before, that king Arthur had marvel of their deeds of arms, and was passing wroth. Ah, Sir Arthur, said king Ban and king Bors, blame them not, for they do as good men ought to do. For by my faith, said king Ban, they are the best fighting men and knights of most prowess that ever I saw or heard speak of, and those eleven kings are men of great worship, and if they were belonging unto you there were no king under the heaven had such eleven knights, and of such worship. I may not love them, said Arthur, they would destroy me. That wot we well, said king Ban and king Bors, for they are your mortal enemies, and that hath been proved aforehand, and this day they have done their part, and that is great pity of their wilfulness.

Then all the eleven kings drew them together, and then said king Lot: Lords, ye must other ways than ye do, or else the great loss is behind: ye may see what people we have lost, and what good men we lose, because we wait always upon these footmen, and ever in saving of one of the footmen we lose ten horsemen for him; therefore this is mine advice, let us put our footmen from us, for it is near night, for the noble Arthur will not tarry on the foot-men, for they may save themselves, the wood is near hand. And when we horsemen be together, look every each

of you kings let make such ordinance that none break upon pain of death. And who that seeth any man dress him to flee, lightly that he be slain, for it is better that we slay a coward than through a coward all we to be slain. How say ye? said king Lot, answer me, all ye kings. It is well said, quoth king Nentres; so said the king of the hundred knights; the same said the king Carados, and king Uriens; so did king Idres, and king Brandegoris; and so did king Cradelmas, and the duke of Cambenet; the same said king Clariance, and king Agwisance;—and sware they would never fail other, neither for life nor for death. And whoso that fled, but did as they did, should be slain. Then they amended their harness, and righted their shields, and took new spears and set them on their thighs, and stood still as it had been a plump of wood.

CHAP. XV.

Yet more of the said battle, and how it was ended by Merlin.

When Sir Arthur and King Ban and Bors beheld them and all their knights, they praised them much for their noble cheer of chivalry, for the hardiest fighters that ever they heard or saw. With that there dressed them a forty noble knights, and said unto the three kings they would break their battle: these were their names: Lionses, Phariance, Ulfius, Brastias, Ector, Kay, Lucas the butler, Griflet la Fise de Dieu, Mariet de la Roche, Guynas de Bloy, Briant de la Forest Savage, Bellaus, Morians of the Castle of Maidens, Flannedrius of the Castle of Ladies, Annecians that was king Bors's godson, a noble knight, Ladinas de la Rouse, Emerause, Caulas, and Graciens le Castlein, one Bloise de la Case, and Sir Colgrevaunce de Gorre. All these knights rode on afore with spears on their thighs, and spurred their horses mightily as the horses might run. And the eleven kings with part of their knights rushed with their horses as fast as they might with their spears, and there they did on both partie vellous deeds of arms. So car the thick of the press Arthur, B Bors, and slew down right o hands, that their horses went i up to the fetlocks. But ever the kings and their host were ever visage of Arthur. Wherefore I Bors had great marvel, consider great slaughter that there was, the last they were driven aback little river. With that came M a great black horse, and sai Arthur: Thou hast never don thou not done enough? of thr thousand this day hast thou left but fifteen thousand, and it is say Ho! For God is wroth wi that thou wilt never have do yonder eleven kings at this ti not be overthrown, but and the on them any longer thy fortu turn and they shall increase. therefore withdraw you unto yo ing, and rest you as soon as y and reward your good knights wi and with silver, for they have served it; there may no riches dear for them, for of so few me have there were never men di of prowess than they have done for ye have matched this day w best fighters of the world. truth, said king Ban and Bors said Merlin, withdraw you wi list, for this three year I dare take they shall not dare you; then ye shall hear new tidings then Merlin said unto Arthur: eleven kings have more on har they are ware of, for the Sarac landed in their countries, mo forty thousand that burn and sl have laid siege at the castle V borow, and made great destr therefore dread you not this thr Also Sir, all the goods that be at this battle let it be searche when ye have it in your hands l given freely unto these two kings, Bors, that they may reward their withal; and that shall cause st to be of better will to do you se

Also ye be able to reward your ights of your own goods when- it liketh you. It is well said, Arthur, and as thou hast de- shall it be done. When it was d to Ban and Bors, they gave ds as freely to their knights as it en them.

Merlin took his leave of Arthur the two kings, for to go and see ter Bleise that dwelt in Northum- , and so he departed and came to ter, that was passing glad of his . And there he told how Arthur two kings had sped at the great and how it was ended, and told nes of every king and knight of that was there. And so Bleise the battle, word by word, as told him, how it began, and by and in likewise how it was and who had the worse. All the that were done in Arthur's days did his master Bleise do write. e did do write all the battles ry worthy knight did of Arthur's After this Merlin departed from ter and came to king Arthur, that the castle of Bedegraine, that was the castles that stood in the f Sherwood. And Merlin was ised that king Arthur knew him r he was all befurred in black ins, and a great pair of boots, ow and arrows, in a russet gown, ught wild geese in his hand, and on the morn after Candlemas ut king Arthur knew him not. d Merlin unto the king, will e me a gift? Wherefore said rthur should I give thee a gift, Sir, said Merlin, ye were better me a gift that is not in your than to lose great riches; for the same place where the great was, is great treasure hid in the Who told thee so, churl? said Merlin told me so, said he. lfius and Brastias knew him well , and smiled. Sir, said these two , it is Merlin that so speaketh u. Then king Arthur was greatly l, and had marvel of Merlin, and so had king Ban and king Bors, and so they had great disport at him.

So, in the mean while, there came a damsel which was an earl's daughter, and his name was Sanam, and her name was Lionors, a passing fair damsel, and so she came thither for to do homage, as other lords did after the great battle. And king Arthur set his love greatly upon her, and so did she upon him, and she bare a child and his name was Borre, that was after a good knight, and of the Table Round. Then there came word that the king Rience of North Wales made great war upon king Leodegrance of Cameliard, for the which thing Arthur was wroth, for he loved him well and hated king Rience, for he was always against him. So by ordinance of the three kings that was sent home to Benwick, all they would depart for dread of king Claudas; Phariance, and Antemes, and Gratian, and Lionses of Payarne, with the leaders of those that should keep the kings' lands.

CHAP. XVI.

How king Arthur, king Ban, and king Bors rescued king Leodegrance, and other incidents.

And then king Arthur and king Ban and king Bors departed with their fellowship, a twenty thousand, and came within six days into the country of Cameliard, and there rescued king Leodegrance and slew there much people of king Rience unto the number of ten thousand men, and put him to flight. And then had these three kings great cheer of king Leodegrance that thanked them of their great goodness, that they would revenge him of his enemies. And there had Arthur the first sight of Guenever, the king's daughter of Cameliard, and ever after he loved her. After they were wedded, as it telleth in the book. So, briefly to make an end, they took their leave to go into their own countries, for king Claudas did great destruction on their lands. Then said Arthur, I will go with you. Nay, said the kings, ye shall not at this

time, for ye have much to do yet in these lands, therefore we will depart, and with the great goods that we have gotten in these lands by your gifts, we shall wage good knights, and withstand the king Claudas's malice, for, by the grace of God, and we have need we will send to you for your succour; and if ye have need, send for us, and we will not tarry, by the faith of our bodies. It shall not, said Merlin, need that these two kings come again in the way of war: but I know well king Arthur may not be long from you, for within a year or two ye shall have great need, and then shall he revenge you on your enemies, as ye have done on his. For these eleven kings shall die all in a day, by the great might and prowess of arms of two valiant knights (as it telleth after) their names being Balin le Savage, and Balan his brother, which be marvellous good knights as be any living.

Now turn we to the eleven kings, that returned unto a city that hight Sorhaute, the which city was within king Uriens, and there they refreshed them as well as they might, and made leeches search their wounds, and sorrowed greatly for the death of their people. With that there came a messager and told how there was come into their lands people that were lawless as well as Saracens a forty thousand, and have burnt and slain all the people that they may come by without mercy and have laid siege on the castle of Wandesborow. Alas! said the eleven kings, here is sorrow on sorrow, and if we had not warred against Arthur as we had done, he would soon revenge us: as for king Leodegrance, he loveth king Arthur better than us, and as for king Rience he hath enough to do with king Leodegrance, for he hath laid siege unto him. So they consented together to keep all the marches of Cornwall, of Wales, and of the North. So first they put king Idres in the city of Nauntes in Britain with four thousand men of arms, to watch both the water and the land. Also they put in the city of Windesan king Nentres of Garlot with four thousand knights, to watch both on water and on land. Also they had of other men of war more than eight thousand, for to fortify all the fortresses in the marches of Cornwall. Also they put more knights in all the marches of Wales and Scotland with many good men of arms. And so they kept them together the space of three years, and ever allied them with mighty kings, and dukes, and lords. And to them fell king Rience of North Wales, the which was a mighty man of men, and Nero that was a mighty man of men. And all this while they furnished them and garnished them of good men of arms and victual, and of all manner of habiliment that pretendeth to the war, to avenge them for the battle of Bedegraine, as it telleth in the book of adventures following.

CHAP. XVII.

How king Arthur rode to Carlion, and of his dream, and how he saw the questing beast.

THEN after the departing of king Ban and of king Bors king Arthur rode unto Carlion. And thither came to him Lot's wife of Orkney, in manner of a messenger, but she was sent thither to espy the court of king Arthur; and she came richly beseen with her four sons, Gawaine, Gaheris, Agravaine, and Gareth, with many other knights and ladies, and she was a passing fair lady, wherefore the king cast great love unto her, and they were agreed, and she was his sister, on the mother side Igraine. So there she rested her a month, and at the last departed. Then the king dreamed a marvellous dream whereof he was sore adread. But all this time king Arthur knew not that king Lot's wife was his sister. Thus was the dream of Arthur. Him thought that there was come into this land griffons and serpents, and him thought they burnt and slew all the people in the land, and then him thought he fought with them, and they did him passing great harm and wounded him full sore, but at the last he slew them. When the king awaked he was passing heavy

ream, and so to put it out of
he made him ready with many
o ride on hunting. As soon as
ı the forest the king saw a great
e him. This hart will I chase,
Arthur, and so he spurred the
ł rode after long, and so by fine
he was like to have smitten the
the king had chased the hart so
t his horse had lost his breath,
down dead. Then a yeoman
he king another horse. So the
w the hart embushed and his
ad; he sat him down by a foun-
there he fell in great thoughts;
ıe sat so him thought he heard
of hounds, to the sum of thirty.
th that the king saw coming
ıim the strangest beast that ever
ır heard of; so the beast went
ell and drank, and the noise was
east's belly like unto the quest-
ırty couple hounds; but all the
ıe beast drank there was no
the beast's belly, and therewith
ıt departed with a great noise,
the king had great marvel. And
as in great thought, and there-
fell on sleep. Right so there
knight afoot unto Arthur, and
ight, full of thought and sleepy,
if thou sawest a strange beast
s way. Such one saw I, said
rthur, that is past two miles:
ould you with the beast? said

Sir, I have followed that beast
ıe, and have killed my horse; so
had another to follow my quest.
ı came one with the king's horse,
ın the knight saw the horse he
he king to give him the horse,
have followed this quest this
ıonth, and either I shall achieve
bleed of the best blood of my
Pellinore that time king followed
sting beast, and after his death
ımides followed it.

CHAP. XVIII.

ng Pellinore took Arthur's horse followed the questing beast, and Merlin met with Arthur.

night, said the king, leave that quest and suffer me to have it, and I will follow it another twelve month. Ah fool, said the knight unto Arthur, it is in vain thy desire, for it shall never be achieved but by me, or my next kin. Therewith he stert unto the king's horse, and mounted into the saddle, and said, Gramercy, this horse is mine own. Well, said the king, thou mayest take my horse by force, but and I might prove thee whether thou wert better on horseback or I. Well, said the knight, seek me here when thou wilt, and here nigh this well thou shalt find me; and so passed on his way. Then the king sat in a study, and bad his men fetch his horse as fast as ever they might. Right so came by him Merlin like a child of fourteen year of age, and saluted the king, and asked him why he was so pensive? I may well be pensive, said the king, for I have seen the marvellest sight that ever I saw. That know I well, said Merlin, as well as thyself, and of all thy thoughts; but thou art but a fool to take thought, for it will not amend thee. Also I know what thou art, and who was thy father, and of whom thou wert born; king Uther Pendragon was thy father, and had thee of Igraine. That is false, said king Arthur; how shouldest thou know it? for thou art not so old of years to know my father. Yes, said Merlin, I know it better than ye or any man living. I will not believe thee, said Arthur, and was wroth with the child. So departed Merlin; and came again in the likeness of an old man of fourscore years of age, whereof the king was right glad, for he seemed to be right wise.

Then said the old man, Why are ye so sad? I may well be heavy, said Arthur, for many things. Also here was a child, and told me many things that me seemeth he should not know, for he was not of age to know my father. Yes, said the old man, the child told you truth, and more would he have told you and ye would have suffered him. But ye have done a thing late that God is displeased with you,

and your sister shall have a child that shall destroy you and all the knights of your realm. What are ye, said Arthur, that tell me these tidings? I am Merlin, and I was he in the child's likeness. Ah, said king Arthur, ye are a marvellous man, but I marvel much of thy words that I must die in battle. Marvel not, said Merlin, for it is God's will your body to be punished for your foul deeds. But I may well be sorry, said Merlin, for I shall die a shameful death, to be put in the earth quick, and ye shall die a worshipful death. And as they talked this, came one with the king's horse, and so the king mounted on his horse and Merlin on another, and so rode unto Carlion. And anon the king asked Ector and Ulfius how he was born. And they told him that Uther Pendragon was his father, and queen Igraine his mother: then he said to Merlin, I will that my mother be sent for, that I may speak with her, and if she say so herself, then will I believe it. In all haste the queen was sent for, and she came and brought with her Morgan le Fay her daughter, that was as fair a lady as any might be. And the king welcomed Igraine in the best manner.

CHAP. XIX.

How Ulfius appeached queen Igraine, Arthur's mother, of treason: and how a knight came and desired to have the death of his master revenged.

RIGHT so came Ulfius and said openly, that the king and all might hear that were feasted that day, Ye are the falsest lady of the world, and the most traitress unto the king's person. Beware, said Arthur, what thou sayest; thou speakest a great word. I am well ware, said Sir Ulfius, what I speak, and here is my glove to prove it upon any man that will say the contrary, that this queen Igraine is causer of your great damage, and of your great war. For, and she would have uttered it in the life of king Uther Pendragon of the birth of you, ye had never had half the mortal wars that ye have had: most part of your barons of you knew never whose son ye were, whom ye were born. And she th you should have made it known in excusing of her worship and and in likewise to all the realm; fore I prove her false to God you and to all your realm, and w say the contrary I will prove it u body.

Then spake Igraine and said a woman, and I may not figl rather than I should be disho there would some good man ta quarrel. More she said, Merlin k well, and ye Sir Ulfius, how king came to me in the castle of Tint the likeness of my lord that wa three hours tofore. And after n was dead king Uther wedded me, his commandment when the chil born it was delivered unto Merli nourished by him, and so I sa child never after, nor wot not w his name, for I knew him nev And there Ulfius said to the Merlin is more to blame than ye. I wot, said the queen, that I a child by my lord king Uthe I wot not where he is become. Merlin took the king by the saying, This is your mother. therewith Sir Ector bare witness he nourished him by Uther's mandment. And, therewith king A took his mother queen Igraine i arms and kissed her and either upon other. And then the kin make a feast that lasted eight Then on a day there came int court a squire on horseback, le a knight before him wounded t death, and told him how there a knight in the forest had reare a pavilion by a well, and hath slai master, a good knight, his name Miles; wherefore I beseech you my master may be buried, and some knight may revenge my ma death. Then the noise was great o knight's death in the court, and man said his advice: then came G

is but a squire, and he was but of the age of king Arthur; so he it the king for all his service had done him to give him the knighthood.

CHAP. XX.

Griflet was made knight, and justed with a knight.

art full young and tender of id Arthur, for to take so high r on thee. Sir, said Griflet, I you make me knight. Sir, said it were great pity to lose Griflet, rill be a passing good man when age, abiding with you the term life. And if he adventure his ith yonder knight at the fountain great peril if ever he come again, s one of the best knights of the and the strongest man of arms. aid king Arthur. So at the desire let the king made him knight. aid Arthur unto Sir Griflet, since made you knight, thou must e a gift. What ye will, said Thou shalt promise me by the thy body, when thou hast justed e knight at the fountain, whether ye be on foot or on horseback, ght so ye shall come again unto hout making any more debate. romise you, said Griflet, as you Then took Griflet his horse in aste, and dressed his shield, and spear in his hand, and so he great wallop till he came to ntain, and thereby he saw a rich , and thereby under a cloth stood horse well saddled and bridled, a tree a shield of divers colours, reat spear. Then Griflet smote shield with the butt of his spear shield fell down to the ground. hat the knight came out of the and said, Fair knight, why ye down my shield? For I will h you, said Griflet. It is better not, said the knight, for ye are ng, and late made knight, and ight is nothing to mine. As for that, said Griflet, I will just with you. That is me loth, said the knight, but since I must needs I will dress me thereto: of whence be ye? said the knight. Sir, I am of Arthur's court. So the two knights ran together, that Griflet's spear all to-shivered, and therewithal he smote Griflet through the shield and the left side, and brake the spear, that the truncheon stack in his body, that horse and knight fell down.

CHAP. XXI.

How twelve knights came from Rome and asked truage for this land of Arthur, and how Arthur fought with a knight.

When the knight saw him lie so on the ground he alighted, and was passing heavy, for he wend he had slain him, and then he unlaced his helm and gat him wind, and so with the truncheon he set him on his horse and gat him wind, and so betook him to God, and said he had a mighty heart, and if he might live he would prove a passing good knight. And so Sir Griflet rode to the court, where great dole was made for him. But through good leeches he was healed and saved.

Right so came into the court twelve knights, and were aged men, and they came from the emperor of Rome, and they asked of Arthur truage for this realm, other else the emperor would destroy him and his land. Well, said king Arthur, ye are messagers, therefore may ye say what ye will, other else ye should die therefore. But this is mine answer; I owe the emperor no truage, nor none will I hold him; but on a fair field I shall give him my truage, that shall be with a sharp spear or else with a sharp sword, and that shall not be long, by my father's soul, Uther Pendragon. And therewith the messagers departed passingly wroth, and king Arthur as wroth, for in evil time came they then, for the king was passingly wroth for the hurt of Sir Griflet. And so he commanded a privyman of his chamber, that or it be day his best

horse and armour, with all that belongeth unto his person, be without the city or to-morrow day. Right so, or to-morrow day, he met with his man and his horse, and so mounted up, and dressed his shield, and took his spear, and bade his chamberlain tarry there till he came again.

And so Arthur rode a soft pace till it was day, and then was he aware of three churls chasing Merlin, and would have slain him. Then the king rode unto them and bade them, Flee churls! Then were they afeard when they saw a knight, and fled. O Merlin, said Arthur, here haddest thou been slain for all thy crafts, had I not been. Nay, said Merlin, not so, for I could save myself an I would, and thou art more near thy death than I am, for thou goest to the death-ward, and God be not thy friend. So as they went thus talking they came to the fountain, and the rich pavilion there by it. Then king Arthur was ware where sat a knight armed in a chair. Sir knight, said Arthur, for what cause abidest thou here, that there may no knight ride this way but if he just with thee, said the king: I rede thee leave that custom, said Arthur. This custom, said the knight, have I used and will use maugre who saith nay; and who is grieved with my custom let him amend it that will. I will amend it, said Arthur. I shall defend thee, said the knight. Anon he took his horse, and dressed his shield, and took a spear, and they met so hard either in other's shields that they all to-shivered their spears. Therewith Arthur anon pulled out his sword. Nay, not so, said the knight, it is fairer that we twain run more together with sharp spears. I will well, said Arthur, and I had any more spears. I have enow, said the knight. So there came a squire, and brought two good spears, and Arthur chose one and he another, so they spurred their horses, and came together with all their mights, that either brake their spears to their hands.. Then Arthur set hand on his sword. Nay, said the knight, ye shall do better; ye are a passing good juster as ever I met withal, and once for the love of the high order of knighthood let us just once again. I assent me, said Arthur. Anon there were brought two great spears, and every knight gat a spear, and therewith they ran together that Arthur's spear all to-shivered. But the other knight hit him so hard in midst of the shield that horse and man fell to the earth, and therewith Arthur was eager, and pulled out his sword, and said, I will assay thee, Sir knight, on foot, for I have lost the honour on horseback. I will be on horseback, said the knight. Then was Arthur wroth, and dressed his shield towards him with his sword drawn. When the knight saw that, he alight, for him thought no worship to have a knight at such avail, he to be on horseback, and he on foot, and so he alight and dressed his shield unto Arthur. And there began a strong battle with many great strokes, and so hewed with their swords that the cantels flew in the fields, and much blood they bled both, that all the place there as they fought was over-bled with blood, and thus they fought long, and rested them, and then they went to the battle again, and so hurtled together like two rams that either fell to the earth. So at the last they smote together, that both their swords met even together. But the sword of the knight smote king Arthur's sword in two pieces, wherefore he was heavy. Then said the knight unto Arthur, Thou art in my danger whether me list to save thee or slay thee, and but thou yield thee as overcome and recreant thou shalt die. As for death, said king Arthur, welcome be it when it cometh; but to yield me unto thee as recreant I had lever die than to be so shamed. And therewithal the king leapt unto Pellinore, and took him by the middle, and threw him down, and rased off his helmet. When the knight felt that he was adread, for he was a passing big man of might, and anon he brought Arthur under him, and rased off his helm, and would have smitten off his head.

CHAP. XXII.

rlin saved Arthur's life, and threw :hantment upon king Pellinore, and him to sleep.

EWITHAL came Merlin, and said, hold thy hand, for and thou slay ight thou puttest this realm in test damage that ever was realm: knight is a man of more wor- n thou wotest of. Why, who is l the knight. It is king Arthur. ould he have slain him for dread rath, and heaved up his sword, rewith Merlin cast an enchant- the knight, that he fell to the a great sleep. Then Merlin king Arthur, and rode forth on ght's horse. Alas, said Arthur, st thou done, Merlin? hast thou is good knight by thy crafts? ived not so worshipful a knight as; I had lever than the stint nd a year that he were onlive. not, said Merlin, for he is than ye, for he is but on sleep, l awake within three hours. I , said Merlin, what a knight he re had ye be slain had I not Also there liveth not a bigger han he is one, and he shall here- you right good service, and his Pellinore, and he shall have two it shall be passing good men; , they shall have no fellow of and of good living; and their hall be Percivale of Wales and e of Wales: and he shall tell name of your sister's son that e the destruction of all this

CHAP. XXIII.

thur by the mean of Merlin gat ibur his sword of the Lady of the

so the king and he departed, it until an hermit that was a an and a great leach. So the searched all his wounds and n good salves; so the king was there three days, and then were his wounds well amended that he might ride and go, and so departed. And as they rode, Arthur said, I have no sword. No force, said Merlin, hereby is a sword that shall be yours and I may. So they rode till they came to a lake, the which was a fair water and broad, and in the midst of the lake Arthur was ware of an arm clothed in white samite, that held a fair sword in that hand. Lo, said Merlin, yonder is that sword that I spake of. With that they saw a damsel going upon the lake: What damsel is that? said Arthur. That is the Lady of the lake, said Merlin; and within that lake is a rock, and therein is as fair a place as any on earth, and richly beseen, and this damsel will come to you anon, and then speak ye fair to her that she will give you that sword. Anon withal came the damsel unto Arthur and saluted him, and he her again. Damsel, said Arthur, what sword is that, that yonder the arm holdeth above the water? I would it were mine, for I have no sword. Sir Arthur king, said the damsel, that sword is mine, and if ye will give me a gift when I ask it you, ye shall have it. By my faith, said Arthur, I will give you what gift ye will ask. Well, said the damsel, go ye into yonder barge and row yourself to the sword, and take it and the scabbard with you, and I will ask my gift when I see my time. So Sir Arthur and Merlin alight, and tied their horses to two trees, and so they went into the ship, and when they came to the sword that the hand held, Sir Arthur took it up by the handles, and took it with him. And the arm and the hand went under the water; and so they came unto the land and rode forth. And then Sir Arthur saw a rich pavilion: What signifieth yonder pavilion? It is the knight's pavilion, said Merlin, that ye fought with last, Sir Pellinore, but he is out, he is not there; he hath ado with a knight of yours, that hight Egglame, and they have fought together, but at the last Egglame fled, and else he had been dead, and he hath chased him

even to Carlion, and we shall meet with him anon in the high way. That is well said, said Arthur, now have I a sword, now will I wage battle with him and be avenged on him. Sir, ye shall not so, said Merlin, for the knight is weary of fighting and chasing, so that ye shall have no worship to have ado with him; also he will not lightly be matched of one knight living; and therefore it is my counsel, let him pass, for he shall do you good service in short time, and his sons after his days. Also ye shall see that day in short space, ye shall be right glad to give him your sister to wed. When I see him, I will do as ye advise me, said Arthur. Then Sir Arthur looked on the sword, and liked it passing well. Whether liketh you better, said Merlin, the sword or the scabbard? Me liketh better the sword, said Arthur. Ye are more unwise, said Merlin, for the scabbard is worth ten of the sword, for while ye have the scabbard upon you ye shall never lose no blood, be ye never so sore wounded, therefore keep well the scabbard always with you. So they rode unto Carlion, and by the way they met with Sir Pellinore; but Merlin had done such a craft that Pellinore saw not Arthur, and he passed by without any words. I marvel, said Arthur, that the knight would not speak. Sir, said Merlin, he saw you not, for and he had seen you ye had not lightly departed. So they came unto Carlion, whereof his knights were passing glad. And when they heard of his adventures they marvelled that he would jeopard his person so alone. But all men of worship said it was merry to be under such a chieftain that would put his person in adventure as other poor knights did.

CHAP. XXIV.

How tidings came to Arthur that king Ryons had overcome eleven kings, and how he desired Arthur's beard to trim his mantle.

This meanwhile came a messager from king Ryons of North Wales, and king he was of all Ireland, and of Isles. And this was his message ing well king Arthur in this wise, saying that king Ryons h comfited and overcome eleven and every each of them did him h and that was this —they gave hi beards clean flayed off, as much a was; wherefore the messager ca king Arthur's beard. For king had trimmed a mantle with beards, and there lacked one p the mantle, wherefore he sent beard, or else he would enter i lands, and burn and slay, and leave till he have the head a beard. Well, said Arthur, tho said thy message, the which is th villainous and lewdest message th man heard sent unto a king: als mayest see my beard is full yo to make a trimming of it. E thou thy king this: I owe hir homage, nor none of mine elders; it be long he shall do me hom both his knees, or else he shall l head, by the faith of my body, fo the most shamefulest message th I heard speak of. I see well th met never yet with worshipful m tell him I will have his head wit do me homage. Then the m departed. Now is there any he Arthur, that knoweth king Then answered a knight that Naram, Sir, I know the king w is a passing good man of his h few be living, and a passing man; and, Sir, doubt ye not make war on you with a might sance. Well, said Arthur, I shall for him in short time.

CHAP. XXV.

How all the children were sent were born on May-day, and bo dred was saved.

Then king Arthur let send for children born on May-day of lo ladies, for Merlin told king Arthur that should destroy him should h on May-day, wherefore he sent fo

upon pain of death. And so there were found many lords' sons, and all were sent unto the king, and so was Mordred sent by king Lot's wife, and all were put in a ship to the sea, and some were four weeks old, and some less. And so by fortune the ship drove unto a castle, and was all to-riven, and destroyed the most part, save that Mordred was cast up, and a good man found him, and nourished him till he was fourteen year old, and then he brought him to the court, as it rehearseth afterward toward the end of the Death of Arthur. So many lords and barons of this realm were displeased, for their children were so lost, and many put the blame on Merlin more than on Arthur; so what for dread and for love they held their peace. But when the messager came to king Ryons then was he wood out of measure, and purveyed him for a great host, as it rehearseth after in the book of Balin le Savage that followeth next after, how by adventure Balin gat the sword.

Explicit liber primus. Incipit liber secundus.

Book the Second.

CHAP. I.

Of a damsel which came girt with a sword for to find a man of such virtue to draw it out of the scabbard.

After the death of Uther Pendragon reigned Arthur his son, the which had great war in his days for to get all England into his hand. For there were many kings within the realm of England, and in Wales, Scotland, and Cornwall. So it befel on a time when king Arthur was at London, there came a knight and told the king tidings how that the king Ryons of North Wales had reared a great number of people, and were entered into the land, and burnt and slew the king's true liege people. If this be true, said Arthur, it were great shame unto mine estate but that he were mightily withstood. It is truth, said the knight, for I saw the host myself. Well, said the king, let make a cry, that all the lords, knights, and gentlemen of arms, should draw unto a castle, called Camelot in those days, and there the king would let make a council general, and a great justs.

So when the king was come thither with all his baronage, and lodged as they seemed best, there was come a damsel the which was sent on message from the great lady Lile of Avelion. And when she came before king Arthur, she told from whom she came, and how she was sent on message unto him for these causes. Then she let her mantle fall that was richly furred; and then was she girt with a noble sword, whereof the king had marvel, and said, Damsel, for what cause are ye girt with that sword? it beseemeth you not. Now shall I tell you, said the damsel: this sword that I am girt withal doth me great sorrow and cumberance, for I may not be delivered of this sword but by a knight, but he must be a passing good man of his hands and of his deeds, and without villainy or treachery, and without treason. And if I may find such a knight that hath all these virtues, he may draw out this sword out of the sheath. For I have been at king Ryons'; it was told me there were passing good knights, and he and all his knights have assayed it, and none can speed. This is a great marvel, said Arthur; if this be sooth, I will myself assay to draw out the sword, not presuming upon myself that I am the best knight, but that

I will begin to draw at your sword in giving example to all the barons, that they shall assay every one after other when I have assayed it. Then Arthur took the sword by the sheath and by the girdle, and pulled at it eagerly, but the sword would not out. Sir, said the damsel, ye need not to pull half so hard, for he that shall pull it out, shall do it with little might. Ye say well, said Arthur: now assay ye, all my barons, but beware ye be not defiled with shame, treachery, nor guile. Then it will not avail, said the damsel, for he must be a clean knight without villainy, and of a gentle stock of father side and mother side. Most of all the barons of the Round Table that were there at that time assayed all by row, but there might none speed; wherefore the damsel made great sorrow out of measure, and said, Alas! I wend in this court had been the best knights, without treachery or treason. By my faith, saith Arthur, here are good knights as I deem any been in the world, but their grace is not to help you, wherefore I am displeased.

CHAP. II.

How Balin, arrayed like a poor knight, pulled out the sword, which afterward was cause of his death.

Then fell it so that time there was a poor knight with king Arthur, that had been prisoner with him half a year and more, for slaying of a knight the which was cousin unto king Arthur. The name of this knight was called Balin, and by good means of the barons he was delivered out of prison, for he was a good man named of his body, and he was born in Northumberland. And so he went privily into the court, and saw this adventure, whereof it raised his heart, and he would assay it as other knights did, but for he was poor and poorly arrayed he put him not far in press; but in his heart he was fully assured to do as well, if his grace happed him, as any knight that there was. And as the damsel took her leave of Arthur and of all the barons, so departing, this knight Balin called and said, Damsel, I pray you courtesy suffer me as well to these lords; though that I be clothed, in mine heart me seem fully assured as some of these c me seemeth in my heart to sp well. The damsel beheld t knight, and saw he was a lik but for of his poor arrayn thought he should be of no without villainy or treachery. she said unto the knight, Sir, i not to put me to more pain c for it seemeth not you to speec other have failed. Ah, fair da Balin, worthiness and good and good deeds are not all arrayment, but manhood and v hid within man's person, and worshipful knight is not know people, and therefore worship a ness is not in arrayment. Ye said the damsel, therefore ye sl to do what ye may. Then Balin sword by the girdle and sheath it out easily, and when he look sword it pleased him much. The king and all the barons grea that Balin had done that adver many knights had great despite Certes, said the damsel, this is good knight, and the best th found, and most of worship treason, treachery, or villainy, marvels shall he do. Now, g courteous knight, give me th again. Nay, said Balin, for th will I keep, but it be taken fro force. Well, said the damse not wise to keep the sword fro ye shall slay with the sword friend that ye have, and the ma most love in the world, and t shall be your destruction. I s the adventure, said Balin, that ordain me, but the sword ye have at this time, by the fai body. Ye shall repent it wit time, said the damsel, for I wc the sword more for your avail mine, for I am passing heavy sake; for ye will not believe th

ye your destruction, and that is pity. With that the damsel de- making great sorrow.

n after Balin sent for his horse s armour, and so would depart he court, and took his leave of Arthur. Nay, said the king, I e ye will not depart so lightly iis fellowship. I suppose that ye pleased that I have shewed you ness; blame me the less, for I was rmed against you, but I wend d not been such a knight as ye worship and prowess, and if ye ide in this court among my fel-, I shall so advance you as ye e pleased. God thank your high- aid Balin, for your bounty and is may no man praise half to the but at this time I must needs beseeching you alway of your race. Truly, said the king, I am roth for your departing: I pray r knight, that ye tarry not long, shall be right welcome to me and barons, and I shall amend all hat I have done against you. ank your great lordship, said nd therewith made him ready to

Then the most part of the of the Round Table said that id not this adventure all only by but by witchcraft.

CHAP. III.

e Lady of the lake demanded the t's head that had won the sword, maiden's head.

meanwhile that this knight was him ready to depart, there came e court a lady that hight the f the lake. And she came on ck, richly beseen, and saluted rthur; and there asked him a he promised her when she gave e sword. That is sooth, said a gift I promised you, but I rgotten the name of my sword gave me. The name of it, said r, is Excalibur, that is as much is Cut-steel. Ye say well, said y, ask what ye will and ye shall have it, and it lie in my power to give it. Well, said the lady, I ask the head of the knight that hath won the sword, or else the damsel's head that brought it; I take no force though I have both their heads, for he slew my brother, a good knight and a true, and that gentlewoman was causer of my father's death. Truly, said king Arthur, I may not grant neither of their heads with my worship, therefore ask what ye will else, and I shall fulfil your desire. I will ask none other thing, said the lady. When Balin was ready to depart he saw the Lady of the lake that by her means had slain Balin's mother, and he had sought her three years, and when it was told him that she asked his head of king Arthur he went to her straight and said, Evil be you found, ye would have my head and therefore ye shall lose yours. And with his sword lightly he smote off her head before king Arthur. Alas! for shame, said Arthur, why have you done so? ye have shamed me and all my court, for this was a lady that I was beholden to, and hither she came under my safe conduct; I shall never forgive you that trespass. Sir, said Balin, me forthinketh of your displeasure, for this same lady was the untruest lady living, and by enchantment and sorcery she hath been the destroyer of many good knights, and she was causer that my mother was burnt through her falsehood and treachery. What cause so ever ye had, said Arthur, ye should have forborne her in my presence; therefore, think not the contrary, ye shall repent it, for such another despite had I never in my court: therefore withdraw you out of my court in all haste that ye may. Then Balin took up the head of the lady, and bare it with him to his hostry, and there he met with his squire, that was sorry he had displeased king Arthur, and so they rode forth out of the town. Now, said Balin, we must part; take thou this head and bear it to my friends, and tell them how I have sped, and tell my friends in Northumberland that my most foe is dead. Also tell them how I am out of prison, and also

what adventure befel me at the getting of this sword. Alas, said the squire, ye are greatly to blame for to displease king Arthur. As for that, said Balin, I will hie me in all the haste that I may, to meet with king Ryons and destroy him, or else to die therefore; and if it may hap me to win him, then will king Arthur be my good and gracious lord. Where shall I meet with you? said the squire. In king Arthur's court, said Balin. So his squire and he departed at that time. Then king Arthur and all the court made great dole, and had shame of the death of the Lady of the lake. Then the king buried her richly.

CHAP. IV.

How Merlin told the adventure of this damsel.

At that time there was a knight the which was the king's son of Ireland, and his name was Lanceor, the which was an orgulous knight, and counted himself one of the best of the court, and he had great despite at Balin for the achieving of the sword, that any should be accounted more hardy, or of more prowess; and he asked king Arthur if he would give him leave to ride after Balin, and to revenge the despite that he had done. Do your best, said Arthur, I am right wroth with Balin, I would he were quit of the despite that he hath done to me and to my court. Then this Lanceor went to his hostry to make him ready. In the meanwhile came Merlin unto the court of king Arthur, and there was told him the adventure of the sword, and the death of the Lady of the lake. Now shall I say you, said Merlin, this same damsel that here standeth, that brought the sword unto your court, I shall tell you the cause of her coming, — she was the falsest damsel that liveth. Say not so, said they. She hath a brother, a passing good knight of prowess and a full true man, and this damsel loved another knight that held her to paramour, and this good knight her brother met with the knight that held her to paramour, and slew him by force of his
When this false damsel underst
she went to the lady Lile of
and besought her of help, to be
on her own brother. And so t
Lile of Avelion took her this sw
she brought with her, and to
should no man pull it out of th
but if he be one of the best k
this realm, and he should be ha
full of prowess, and with that s
should slay her brother. This
cause that the damsel came i
court. I know it as well as ye.
she had not come into this co
she came never in fellowship of
to do good, but alway great har
that knight that hath achieved t
shall be destroyed by that sword
which will be great damage, f
liveth not a knight of more
than he is, and he shall do unto
lord Arthur, great honour and k
and it is great pity he shall no
but a while, for of his strength ar
ness I know not his match livin

CHAP. V.

*How Balin was pursued by Sir
knight of Ireland, and how
and slew him.*

So the knight of Ireland arm
at all points, and dressed his s
his shoulder, and mounted upo
back, and took his spear in h
and rode after a great pace as
his horse might go, and within
space on a mountain he had a
Balin, and with a loud voice
Abide knight, for ye shall abide
ye will or nill, and the shield th
fore you shall not help. Whe
heard the noise he turned h
fiercely, and said, Fair knigh
will ye with me, will ye just w
Yea, said the Irish knight, t
come I after you. Peradventu
Balin, it had been better to hav
you at home, for many a man
to put his enemy to a rebuke,
it falleth to himself. Of what
ye sent from? said Balin. I a

he court of king Arthur, said the
of Ireland, that come hither for
enge the despite ye did this day
g Arthur and to his court. Well,
alin, I see well I must have ado
you, that me forthinketh for to
king Arthur, or any of his court;
our quarrel is full simple, said
unto me, for the lady that is
did me great damage, and else
I have been loth as any knight
iveth for to slay a lady. Make
ady, said the knight Lanceor, and
you unto me, for that one
abide in the field. Then they
heir spears, and came together as
as their horses might drive, and the
night smote Balin on the shield,
ll went shivers of his spear, and
hit him through the shield, and
uberk perished, and so pierced
h his body and the horse croup,
ion turned his horse fiercely and
ut his sword, and wist not that
slain him, and then he saw him
dead corpse.

CHAP. VI.

damsel, which was love to Lanceor, herself for love; and how Balin met his brother Balan.

N he looked by him, and was
f a damsel that came riding full
the horse might ride, on a fair
. And when she espied that
or was slain she made sorrow out
asure, and said, O Balin, two
thou hast slain and one heart,
vo hearts in one body, and two
thou hast lost. And therewith
ok the sword from her love that
ad, and fell to the ground in a
. And when she arose she made
dole out of measure, the which
grieved Balin passingly sore, and
it unto her for to have taken the
out of her hand, but she held it
he might not take it out of her
nless he should have hurt her,
ddenly she set the pommel to the
, and rove herself through the
When Balin espied her deeds, he
was passing heavy in his heart, and ashamed that so fair a damsel had destroyed herself for the love of his death. Alas, said Balin, me repenteth sore the death of this knight for the love of this damsel, for there was much true love betwixt them both. And for sorrow he might no longer hold him, but turned his horse and looked towards a great forest, and there he was ware, by the arms, of his brother Balan. And when they were met they put off their helms and kissed together, and wept for joy and pity. Then Balan said, I little wend to have met with you at this sudden adventure; I am right glad of your deliverance out of your dolorous prisonment, for a man told me in the castle of Four Stones that ye were delivered, and that man had seen you in the court of king Arthur, and therefore I came hither into this country, for here I supposed to find you. Anon the knight Balin told his brother of his adventure of the sword, and of the death of the Lady of the lake, and how king Arthur was displeased with him: Wherefore he sent this knight after me that lieth here dead; and the death of this damsel grieveth me sore. So doth it me, said Balan, but ye must take the adventure that God will ordain you. Truly, said Balin, I am right heavy that my lord Arthur is displeased with me, for he is the most worshipful knight that reigneth now on earth, and his love I will get or else I will put my life in adventure; for the king Ryons lieth at a siege at the castle Terrabil, and thither will we draw in all haste, to prove our worship and prowess upon him. I will well, said Balan, that we do, and we will help each other as brethren ought to do.

CHAP. VII.

How a dwarf reproved Balin for the death of Lanceor, and how king Mark of Cornwall found them, and made a tomb over them.

Now go we hence, said Balin, and well be we met. The meanwhile as they talked there came a dwarf from the city of Camelot on horseback, as

much as he might, and found the dead bodies, wherefore he made great dole, and pulled out his hair for sorrow, and said, Which of you knights have done this deed? Whereby askest thou it, said Balan. For I would wit it, said the dwarf. It was I, said Balin, that slew this knight in my defence, for hither came he to chase me, and either I must slay him or he me; and this damsel slew herself for his love, which repenteth me, and for her sake I shall owe all women the better love. Alas, said the dwarf, thou hast done great damage unto thyself, for this knight that is here dead was one of the most valiantest men that lived, and trust well, Balin, the kin of this knight will chase you through the world till they have slain you. As for that, said Balin, I fear not greatly, but I am right heavy that I have displeased my lord king Arthur for the death of this knight. So as they talked together there came a king of Cornwall riding, the which hight king Mark. And when he saw these two bodies dead, and understood how they were dead by the two knights above said, then made the king great sorrow for the true love that was betwixt them, and said, I will not depart till I have on this earth made a tomb. And there he pight his pavilions, and sought through all the country to find a tomb, and in a church they found one was fair and rich, and then the king let put them both in the earth, and put the tomb upon them, and wrote the names of them both on the tomb:—How here lieth Lanceor the king's son of Ireland that at his own request was slain by the hands of Balin, and how his lady Colombe slew herself with her love's sword for dole and sorrow.

CHAP. VIII.

How Merlin prophesied that two the best knights of the world should fight there, which were Sir Lancelot and Sir Tristram.

THE meanwhile as this was adoing, in came Merlin to king Mark, and seeing all his doing said, Here shall be same place the greatest battle two knights that was or ever sh and the truest lovers, and yet them shall slay other. And there wrote their names upon the tom letters of gold that should fight place, whose names were Launc Lake, and Tristram. Thou art vellous man, said king Mark Merlin, that speakest of such n thou art a rude man and an u to tell of such deeds; what name? said king Mark. At thi said Merlin, I will not tell, but time when Sir Tristram is taken w sovereign lady, then ye shall he know my name, and at that t shall hear tidings that shall not you. Then said Merlin to Balin hast done thyself great hurt, thou savedst not this lady that sl self, that might have saved her ar wouldest. By the faith of my said Balin, I might not save her, slew herself suddenly. Me rep said Merlin, because of the death lady thou shalt strike a stroke th dolorous that ever man struck, the stroke of our Lord, for tho hurt the truest knight and the most worship that now livetl through that stroke three kin shall be in great poverty, misei wretchedness, twelve year, an knight shall not be whole o wound many years. Then Merli his leave of Balin. And Balin sa wist it were sooth that ye say, I do such a perilous deed as that I slay myself to make thee a liar. with Merlin vanished away suc And then Balin and his brothe their leave of king Mark. Firs the king, tell me your name. Si Balan, ye may see he beareth swords, thereby ye may call hi knight with the two swords. A departed king Mark unto Cam king Arthur, and Balin took th to king Ryons: and as they together they met with Merlin dis but they knew him not, W

? said Merlin. We have little said the two knights, to tell ıt what is thy name? said Balin. time, said Merlin, I will not hee. It is evil seen, said the ghts, that thou art a true man u wilt not tell thy name. As said Merlin, be it as it be may, ell you wherefore ye ride this to meet king Ryons, but it will il you without ye have my Ah, said Balin, ye are Merlin: ɔe ruled by your counsel. Come Merlin, ye shall have great and look that ye do knightly, hall have great need. As for ı Balin, dread you not, we will we may.

CHAP. IX.

lin and his brother by the counsel rlin took king Ryons, and brought king Arthur.

Merlin lodged them in a wood leaves beside the highway, and the bridles of their horses and n to grass, and laid them down them till it was nigh midnight. ferlin bad them rise and make ady, for the king was nigh them, s stolen away from his host with core horses of his best knights, enty of them rode tofore, to ıe lady De Vance that the king ning. Which is the king? said Abide, said Merlin, here in a way ye shall meet with him; rewith he shewed Balin and his where he rode. Anon Balin brother met with the king, and him down, and wounded him and laid him to the ground, and ıey slew on the right hand and hand, and slew more than forty ıen; and the remnant fled. Then ıey again to king Ryons, and ıave slain him had he not yielded o their grace. Then said he thus: s full of prowess, slay me not, for ife ye may win, and by my death win nothing. Then said these ights, Ye say sooth and truth; and so laid him on an horse-litter. With that Merlin was vanished, and came to king Arthur aforehand, and told him how his most enemy was taken and discomfited. By whom? said king Arthur. By two knights, said Merlin, that would please your lordship, and to-morrow ye shall know what knights they are. Anon after came the knight with the two swords, and Balan his brother, and brought with them king Ryons of North Wales, and there delivered him to the porters, and charged them with him; and so they two returned again in the dawning of the day. King Arthur came then to king Ryons and said, Sir king ye are welcome: by what adventure come ye hither? Sir, said king Ryons, I came hither by an hard adventure. Who won you? said king Arthur. Sir, said the king, the knight with the two swords and his brother, which are two marvellous knights of prowess. I know them not, said Arthur, but much I am beholden to them. Ah, said Merlin, I shall tell you, it is Balin that achieved the sword, and his brother Balan, a good knight, there liveth not a better of prowess and of worthiness; and it shall be the greatest dole of him that ever I knew of knight, for he shall not long endure. Alas, said king Arthur, that is great pity, for I am much beholden unto him, and I have ill deserved it unto him for his kindness. Nay, said Merlin, he shall do much more for you, and that shall ye know in haste. But, Sir, are ye purveyed? said Merlin; for to-morn the host of Nero, king Ryons's brother, will set on you or noon with a great host, and therefore make you ready, for I will depart from you.

CHAP. X.

How king Arthur had a battle against Nero and king Lot of Orkney, and how king Lot was deceived by Merlin, and how twelve kings were slain.

THEN king Arthur made ready his host in ten battles, and Nero was ready in the field afore the castle

Terrabil with a great host, for he had ten battles, with many more people than Arthur had. Then Nero had the vaward with the most party of his people: and Merlin came to king Lot of the Isle of Orkney, and held him with a tale of prophecy till Nero and his people were destroyed. And there Sir Kay the seneschal did passingly well, that the days of his life the worship went never from him. And Sir Hervis de Revel did marvellous deeds with king Arthur, and king Arthur slew that day twenty knights and maimed forty. At that time came in the knight with the two swords, and his brother Balan, but they two did so marvellously that the king and all the knights marvelled of them, and all they that beheld them said they were sent from heaven as angels, or devils from hell: and king Arthur said himself they were the best knights that ever he saw, for they gave such strokes that all men had wonder of them. In the meanwhile came one to king Lot, and told him while he tarried there Nero was destroyed and slain with all his people. Alas, said king Lot, I am ashamed, for by my default there is many a worshipful man slain, for and we had been together there had been none host under the heaven that had been able for to have matched with us: this deceiver with his prophecy hath mocked me. All that did Merlin, for he knew well that if king Lot had been with his body there at the first battle, king Arthur had been slain and all his people destroyed. And well Merlin knew that one of the kings should be dead that day; and loth was Merlin that any of them both should be slain, but of the twain he had lever king Lot had been slain than king Arthur.

Now what is best to do? said king Lot of Orkney, whether is me better to treat with king Arthur or to fight, for the greater part of our people are slain and destroyed. Sir, said a knight, set on Arthur, for they are weary and forfoughten, and we be fresh. As for me, said king Lot, I would that every knight would do his part as I would do mine. And then they advanced banne smote together, and all to-shiver spears; and Arthur's knights, w help of the knight with the two and his brother Balan, put king I his host to the worse. But alw Lot held him in the foremost fro did marvellous deeds of arms, fo host was borne up by his hands, abode all knights. Alas, he mi endure, the which was great pity, worthy a knight as he was sh overmatched, that of late tim had been a knight of king A and wedded the sister of king and for the wrong king Arth him therefore king Lot held Arthur. So there was a knig was called the knight with the beast, and at that time his righ was called Pellinore, the which good man of prowess, and he s mighty stroke at king Lot as he with all his enemies, and he faile stroke, and he smote the horse' that he fell to the ground with kir and therewith anon Sir Pellinore him a great stroke through the he head unto the brows. And then host of Orkney fled for the d king Lot; and there were slair mothers' sons. But king Pellino the blame of the death of kir wherefore Sir Gawaine reveng death of his father the tenth ye he was made knight, and sle Pellinore with his own hands. there were slain at that battle kings on the side of king Lot wit and all were buried in the ch Saint Stephen's, in Camelot; a remnant of knights and of othe buried in a great rock.

CHAP. XI.

Of the interment of twelve kings, the prophecy of Merlin, and hou should give the dolorous stroke.

So at the interment came kin wife Morgause, with her fou Gawaine, Agravaine, Gaheris, a reth. Also there came thithe

Sir Ewaine's father, and Morgan
his wife, that was king Arthur's
All these came to the inter-
But of all these twelve kings king
let make the tomb of king Lot
richly, and made his tomb
own; and then king Arthur let
elve images of laton and copper,
er-gilt it with gold, in the
twelve kings, and each one of
eld a taper of wax that burnt
l night: and king Arthur was
sign of a figure standing above
ith a sword drawn in his hand:
the twelve figures had coun-
like unto men that were over-
All this made Merlin by his
aft; and there he told the king,
am dead these tapers shall burn
er; and soon after the adventures
Sangreal shall come among you
achieved. Also he told Arthur
lin the worshipful knight shall
e dolorous stroke, whereof shall
it vengeance. O where is Balin,
lan, and Pellinore? said king
As for Pellinore, said Merlin,
meet with you soon: and as
n, he will not be long from you:
other brother will depart; ye
e him no more. By my faith,
thur, they are two marvellous
and namely Balin passeth of
of any knight that ever I found,
h beholden am I unto him;
hat he would abide with me.
Merlin, look ye keep well the
l of Excalibur, for ye shall lose
d while ye have the scabbard
ou, though ye have as many
upon you as ye may have. So
r great trust Arthur betook the
l to Morgan le Fay his sister,
e loved another knight better
r husband king Uriens or king
and she would have had Arthur
ther slain, and therefore she let
nother scabbard like it by en-
nt, and gave the scabbard of
ır to her love. And the knight's
as called Accolon, that after had
ain king Arthur. After this
told unto king Arthur of the
prophecy that there should be a great battle beside Salisbury, and that Mordred his sister's son should be against him. Also he told him that Basdemegus was his cousin, and germain unto king Uriens.

CHAP. XII.

How a sorrowful knight came tofore king Arthur, and how Balin fetched him, and how that knight was slain by a knight invisible.

Within a day or two king Arthur was somewhat sick, and he let pitch his pavilion in a meadow, and there he laid him down on a pallet to sleep, but he might have no rest. Right so he heard a great noise of an horse, and therewith the king looked out at the porch of the pavilion, and saw a knight coming even by him making great dole. Abide, fair sir, said Arthur, and tell me wherefore thou makest this sorrow? Ye may little amend me, said the knight, and so passed forth to the castle of Meliot. Anon after there came Balin, and when he saw king Arthur he alight off his horse, and came to the king on foot, and saluted him. By my head, said Arthur, ye be welcome. Sir, right now came riding this way a knight making great mourn, for what cause I cannot tell, wherefore I would desire of you of your courtesy and of your gentleness to fetch again that knight either by force or else by his good-will. I will do more for your lordship than that, said Balin: and so he rode more than a pace, and found the knight with a damsel in a forest, and said, Sir knight, ye must come with me unto king Arthur, for to tell him of your sorrow. That will I not, said the knight, for it will scathe me greatly, and do you none avail. Sir, said Balin, I pray you make you ready, for ye must go with me, or else I must fight with you and bring you by force, and that were me loth to do. Will ye be my warrant, said the knight, and I go with you? Yea, said Balin, or else I will die therefore. And so he made him ready to go with Balin, and left the damsel still. And as they were even

afore king Arthur's pavilion there came one invisible, and smote this knight that went with Balin throughout the body with a spear. Alas, said the knight, I am slain under your conduct, with a knight called Garlon: therefore take my horse, that is better than your's, and ride to the damsel, and follow the quest that I was in as she will lead you, and revenge my death when ye may. That shall I do, said Balin, and that I make a vow unto knighthood. And so he departed from this knight with great sorrow. So king Arthur let bury this knight richly, and made a mention on his tomb how there was slain Herlews le Berbeus, and by whom the treachery was done,—the knight Garlon. But ever the damsel bare the truncheon of the spear with her that Sir Herlews was slain withal.

CHAP. XIII.

How Balin and the damsel met with a knight which was in likewise slain, and how the damsel bled for the custom of a castle.

So Balin and the damsel rode into a forest, and there met with a knight that had been on hunting, and that knight asked Balin for what cause he made so great sorrow. Me list not to tell you, said Balin. Now, said the knight, and I were armed as ye be I would fight with you. That should little need, said Balin; I am not afeard to tell you; and told him all the cause, how it was. Ah, said the knight, is this all: here I ensure you by the faith of my body never to depart from you while my life lasteth. And so they went to the hostry and armed them, and so rode forth with Balin. And as they came by an hermitage even by a churchyard, there came the knight Garlon invisible, and smote this knight, Perin de Mountbeliard, through the body with a spear. Alas, said the knight, I am slain by this traitor knight that rideth invisible. Alas, said Balin, it is not the first despite that he hath done me. And there the hermit and Balin buried the knight under a rich stone, tomb royal. And on the mon found letters of gold written, h Gawaine shall revenge his f death, king Lot, on the king Pel Anon after this Balin and the rode till they came to a castl there Balin alighted, and he a damsel wend to go into the And anon as Balin came with castle gate the portcullis fell dc his back, and there fell many mer the damsel, and would have sla When Balin saw that, he wa grieved, for he might not help th sel. And then he went up in tower, and lept over the walls ir ditch, and hurt him not; and a pulled out his sword, and woul foughten with them. And they a nay, they would not fight with h they did nothing but the old cus the castle, and told him how the was sick, and had lain many yea she might not be whole, but if s a dish of silver full of blood of and a king's daughter; and th the custom of this castle is tha shall no damsel pass this way, b she shall bleed of her blood in a dish full. Well, said Balin, sh bleed as much as she may bleed will not lose the life of her wh life lasteth. And so Balin made bleed by her good-will, but her helped not the lady. And so l she rested there all night, and ha right good cheer, and on the mo passed on their ways. And as it after in the Sangreal, that Sir vale's sister helped that lady w blood, whereof she died.

CHAP. XIV.

How Balin met with that knight Garlon at a feast, and there him, to have his blood to heal th the son of his host.

Then they rode three or fou and never met with adventure, a hap they were lodged with a gen that was a rich man and well a

they sat at their supper, Balin
ne complain grievously by him
air. What is this noise? said
Forsooth, said his host, I will
. I was but late at a justing, and
justed with a knight that is
unto king Pellam, and twice
him down; and then he pro-
) quit me on my best friend, and
ounded my son, that cannot be
ll I have of that knight's blood,
rideth alway invisible, but I
ot his name. Ah, said Balin,
that knight, his name is Garlon,
slain two knights of mine in
e manner, therefore I had rather
'ith that knight than all the
this realm, for the despite he
ne me. Well, said his host, I
l you, king Pellam of Listeneise
ıde cry in all this country a great
at shall be within these twenty
nd no knight may come there
e bring his wife with him, or his
nd that knight, your enemy and
'e shall see that day. Then I
you, said Balin, part of his
o heal your son withal. We
forward to-morrow, said his
So on the morn they rode all
ɔward Pellam, and they had fif-
ys' journey or they came thither;
t same day began the great feast.
they alight and stabled their
and went into the castle; but
host might not be let in because
no lady. Then Balin was well
l, and brought unto a chamber
armed him, and they brought
ɔes to his pleasure, and would
ıd Balin leave his sword behind
Nay, said Balin, that do I not,
is the custom of my country
t alway to keep his weapon with
ıd that custom will I keep, or
'ill depart as I came. Then they
m leave to wear his sword, and
ent unto the castle, and was set
knights of worship, and his lady
m. Soon Balin asked a knight,
not a knight in this court whose
Garlon? Yonder he goeth, said
ıt, he with the black face; he
is the marvellest knight that is now
living, for he destroyeth many good
knights, for he goeth invisible. Ah,
well, said Balin, is that he? Then
Balin advised him long:—If I slay him
here I shall not escape, and if I leave
him now peradventure I shall never
meet with him again at such a good time,
and much harm he will do and he live.
Therewith this Garlon espied that this
Balin beheld him, and then he came
and smote Balin on the face with the
back of his hand, and said, Knight, why
beholdest thou me so? for shame,
therefore, eat thy meat, and do that
thou came for. Thou sayest sooth, said
Balin, this is not the first despite that
thou hast done me, and therefore I will
do that I came for; and rose up fiercely,
and clave his head to the shoulders.
Give me the truncheon, said Balin to
his lady, wherewith he slew your knight.
Anon she gave it him, for alway she
bare the truncheon with her; and there-
with Balin smote him through the body,
and said openly, With that truncheon
thou hast slain a good knight, and now
it sticketh in thy body. And then Balin
called to him his host, saying, Now may
ye fetch blood enough to heal your son
withal.

CHAP. XV.

How Balin fought with king Pellam, and how his sword brake, and how he gat a spear wherewith he smote the dolorous stroke.

ANON all the knights arose from the
table for to set on Balin. And king
Pellam himself arose up fiercely, and
said, Knight, hast thou slain my brother?
thou shalt die therefore or thou depart.
Well, said Balin, do it yourself. Yes,
said king Pellam, there shall no man
have ado with thee but myself, for the
love of my brother. Then king Pellam
caught in his hand a grim weapon and
smote eagerly at Balin, but Balin put
the sword betwixt his head and the
stroke, and therewith his sword burst
in sunder. And when Balin was wea-
ponless he ran into a chamber for to

seek some weapon, and so from chamber to chamber, and no weapon he could find, and alway king Pellam after him. And at the last he entered into a chamber that was marvellously well dight and richly, and a bed arrayed with cloth of gold, the richest that might be thought, and one lying therein, and thereby stood a table of clean gold, with four pillars of silver that bare up the table, and upon the table stood a marvellous spear, strangely wrought. And when Balin saw that spear he gat it in his hand, and turned him to king Pellam, and smote him passingly sore with that spear, that king Pellam fell down in a swoon, and therewith the castle roof and walls brake and fell to the earth, and Balin fell down so that he might not stir foot nor hand. And so the most part of the castle that was fallen down through that dolorous stroke lay upon Pellam and Balin three days.

CHAP. XVI.

How Balin was delivered by Merlin, and saved a knight that would have slain himself for love.

THEN Merlin came thither and took up Balin, and gat him a good horse, for his was dead, and bade him ride out of that country. I would have my damsel, said Balin. Lo, said Merlin, where she lieth dead. And king Pellam lay so many years sore wounded, and might never be whole, till Galahad, the haut prince, healed him in the quest of the Sangreal; for in that place was part of the blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, that Joseph of Arimathea brought into this land, and there himself lay in that rich bed. And that was the same spear that Longius smote our Lord to the heart; and king Pellam was nigh of Joseph's kin, and that was the most worshipful man that lived in those days, and great pity it was of his hurt, for that stroke turned to great dole, trouble, and grief.

Then departed Balin from Merlin, and said, In this world we meet never no more. So he rode forth through the fair countries and cities, and found the people dead, slain on every side. And all that were alive cried, O Balin, thou hast caused great damage in these countries; for the dolorous stroke thou gavest unto king Pellam three countries are destroyed, and doubt not but the vengeance will fall on thee at the last. When Balin was past those countries he was passing glad. So he rode eight days or he met with adventure. And at the last he came into a fair forest in a valley, and was ware of a tower, and there beside he saw a great horse of war tied to a tree, and there beside sat a fair knight on the ground and made great mourning; and he was a likely man and a well made. Balin said, God save you, why be ye so heavy? tell me, and I will amend it and I may to my power. Sir knight, said he again, thou doest me great grief, for I was in merry thoughts, and now thou puttest me to more pain. Balin went a little from him, and looked on his horse; then heard Balin him say thus: Ah, fair lady, why have ye broken my promise, for thou promisedst me to meet me here by noon, and I may curse thee that ever ye gave me this sword, for with this sword I slay myself,—and pulled it out; and therewith Balin start unto him, and took him by the hand. Let go my hand, said the knight, or else I shall slay thee. That shall not need, said Balin, for I shall promise you my help to get you your lady, and ye will tell me where she is. What is your name? said the knight. My name is Balin le Savage. Ah, sir, I know you well enough; ye are the knight with the two swords, and the man of most prowess of your hands living. What is your name? said Balin. My name is Garnish of the Mount, a poor man's son, but by my prowess and hardiness a duke hath made me knight, and gave me lands; his name is duke Hermel, and his daughter is she that I love, and she me as I deemed. How far is she hence? said Balin. But six mile, said the knight. Now ride we hence, said these two knights. So they

ore than a pace till they came to castle, well walled and ditched. into the castle, said Balin, and she be there. So he went in, rched from chamber to chamber, und her bed, but she was not then Balin looked into a fair arden, and under a laurel tree her lie upon a quilt of green and a knight with her, and under eads grass and herbs. When aw her with the foulest knight er he saw, and she a fair lady, alin went through all the cham- ain, and told the knight how he ier, as she had slept fast, and so t him in the place where she lay ?ping.

CHAP. XVII.

it knight slew his love and a knight her, and after how he slew himself his own sword, and how Balin rode d a castle where he lost his life.

when Garnish beheld her so for pure sorrow his mouth se burst out on bleeding, and s sword he smote off both their nd then he made sorrow out of e and said, Oh Balin, much sor- st thou brought unto me, for hou not shewn me that sight I have passed my sorrow. For- aid Balin, I did it to this intent should better thy courage, and might see and know her false- nd to cause you to leave love a lady: truly I did none other would ye did to me. Alas! said , now is my sorrow double that not endure: now have I slain most loved in all my life. And th suddenly he rove himself on n sword unto the hilts. When aw that, he dressed him thence- est folks would say he had slain nd so he rode forth, and within lays he came by a cross, and were letters of gold written that is not for any knight alone to ard this castle. Then saw he an old hoar gentleman coming toward him that said, Balin le Savage, thou passest thy bounds to come this way, therefore turn again and it will avail thee. And he vanished away anon; and so he heard an horn blow as it had been the death of a beast. That blast, said Balin, is blown for me, for I am the prize, yet am I not dead. Anon withal he saw an hundred ladies and many knights, that welcomed him with fair semblance, and made him passing good cheer unto his sight, and led him into the castle, and there was dancing and minstrelsy, and all manner of joy. Then the chief lady of the castle said, Knight with the two swords, ye must have ado with a knight hereby that keepeth an island, for there may no man pass this way but he must just or he pass. That is an unhappy custom, said Balin, that a knight may not pass this way but if he just. Ye shall not have ado but with one knight, said the lady. Well, said Balin, since I shall, thereto am I ready, but travelling men are oft weary, and their horses also; but though my horse be weary my heart is not weary. I would be fain there my death should be. Sir, said a knight to Balin, me thinketh your shield is not good, I will lend you a bigger: there- fore I pray you: and so he took the shield that was unknown and left his own, and so rode unto the island, and put him and his horse in a great boat, and when he came on the other side he met with a damsel, and she said, O knight Balin, why have ye left your own shield? alas! ye have put your self in great danger, for by your shield ye should have been known: it is great pity of you as ever was of knight, for of thy prowess and hardiness thou hast no fellow living. Me repenteth, said Balin, that ever I came within this country, but I may not turn now again for shame, and what adventure shall fall to me, be it life or death, I will take the adventure that shall come to me. And then he looked on his armour, and understood he was well armed, and therewith blessed him, and mounted upon his horse.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Balin met with his brother Balan, and how each of them slew other unknown, till they were wounded to death.

THEN afore him he saw come riding out of a castle a knight, and his horse trapped all red, and himself in the same colour. When this knight in the red beheld Balin, him thought it should be his brother Balin because of his two swords, but because he knew not his shield, he deemed it was not he. And so they aventred their spears, and came marvellously fast together, and they smote each other in the shields, but their spears and their course were so big that it bare down horse and man, that they lay both in a swoon. But Balin was bruised sore with the fall of his horse, for he was weary of travel. And Balan was the first that rose on foot and drew his sword, and went toward Balin, and he arose and went against him, but Balan smote Balin first, and he put up his shield, and smote him through the shield and cleft his helm. Then Balin smote him again with that unhappy sword, and well nigh had felled his brother Balan, and so they fought there together till their breaths failed. Then Balin looked up to the castle, and saw the towers stand full of ladies. So they went to battle again, and wounded each other dolefully, and then they breathed oft-times, and so went unto battle, that all the place there as they fought was blood red. And at that time there was none of them both but they had either smitten other seven great wounds, so that the least of them might have been the death of the mightiest giant in this world. Then they went to battle again so marvellously that doubt it was to hear of that battle for the great bloodshedding, and their hauberks unnailed, that naked they were on every side. At the last Balan, the younger brother, withdrew him a little and laid him down. Then said Balin le Savage, What knight art thou? for or now I found never no knight that matched me. My name is, said he, Balan, brother to the good knight Balin. Alas! said Balin, that ever I should see this day. And therewith he fell backward in a swoon. Then Balan went on all four feet and hands, and put off the helm of his brother, and might not know him by the visage it was so full hewen and bled; but when he awoke he said, O Balan, my brother, thou hast slain me and I thee, wherefore all the wide world shall speak of us both. Alas! said Balan, that ever I saw this day, that through mishap I might not know you, for I espied well your two swords, but because ye had another shield I deemed you had been another knight. Alas! said Balin, all that made an unhappy knight in the castle, for he caused me to leave mine own shield to our both's destruction, and if I might live I would destroy that castle for ill customs. That were well done, said Balan, for I had never grace to depart from them since that I came hither, for here it happed me to slay a knight that kept this island, and since might I never depart, and no more should ye brother, and ye might have slain me as ye have, and escaped yourself with the life. Right so came the lady of the tower with four knights and six ladies and six yeomen unto them, and there she heard how they made their moan either to other, and said, We came both out of one womb, and so shall we lye both in one pit. So Balan prayed the lady of her gentleness, for his true service that she would bury them both in that same place there the battle was done. And she granted them with weeping it should be done richly in the best manner. Now will ye send for a priest, that we may receive our sacrament and receive the blessed body of our Lord Jesus Christ. Yea, said the lady, it shall be done. And so she sent for a priest and gave them their rites. Now, said Balin, when we are buried in one tomb, and the mention made over us how two brethren slew each other, there will never good knight nor good man see our tomb but they

for our souls. And so all the ıd gentlewomen wept for pity. ıon Balan died, but Balin died he midnight after, and so were ied both, and the lady let make ın of Balan how he was there his brother's hands, but she t Balin's name.

CHAP. XIX.

'lin buried them both in one tomb, and of Balin's sword.

: morn came Merlin and let lin's name upon the tomb, with gold, That here lieth Balin le that was the knight with the rds, and he that smote the do- troke. Also Merlin let make ed, that there should never man in but he went out of his wit, celot de Lake fordid that bed his nobleness. And anon after s dead, Merlin took his sword : off the pommel, and set on pommel. So Merlin bad a ıat stood afore him to handle ırd, and he assayed, and he ot handle it. Then Merlin Why laugh ye? said the This is the cause, said Merlin: all never man handle this t the best knight of the world, shall be Sir Launcelot, or else his son, and Launcelot with d shall slay the man that in l he loved best, that shall be ine. All this he let write in the pommel of the sword. Then Merlin let make a bridge of iron and of steel into that island, and it was but half a foot broad, and there shall never man pass that bridge, nor have hardiness to go over, but if he were a passing good man and a good knight without treachery or villainy. Also the scabbard of Balin's sword Merlin left it on this side the island that Galahad should find it. Also Merlin let make by his subtilty that Balin's sword was put in a marble stone standing upright as great as a millstone, and the stone hoved always above the water, and did many years, and so by adventure it swam down the stream to the city of Camelot, that is in English Winchester. And that same day Galahad the haut prince came with king Arthur, and so Galahad brought with him the scabbard, and achieved the sword that was there in the marble stone hoving upon the water. And on Whitsunday he achieved the sword, as it is rehearsed in the book of the Sangreal. Soon after this was done Merlin came to king Arthur and told him of the dolorous stroke that Balin gave to king Pellam, and how Balin and Balan fought together the most marvellous battle that ever was heard of, and how they were buried both in one tomb. Alas! said king Arthur, this is the greatest pity that ever I heard tell of two knights, for in the world I know not such two knights. Thus endeth the tale of Balin and Balan, two brethren born in Northumberland, good knights.

Sequitur iii liber.

The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

How king Arthur took a wife, and wedded Guenevar daughter to Leodegrance, king of the land of Cameliard, with whom he had the Round Table.

In the beginning of Arthur, after he was chosen king by adventure and by grace,—for the most part of the barons knew not that he was Uther Pendragon's son, but as Merlin made it openly known,—many kings and lords made great war against him for that cause; but well Arthur overcame them all; for the most part of the days of his life he was ruled much by the counsel of Merlin. So it fell on a time king Arthur said unto Merlin, My barons will let me have no rest, but needs I must take a wife, and I will none take but by thy counsel and by thine advice. It is well done, said Merlin, that ye take a wife, for a man of your bounty and nobleness should not be without a wife. Now is there any that ye love more than another? Yea, said king Arthur, I love Guenever, the daughter of king Leodegrance, of the land of Cameliard, which Leodegrance holdeth in his house the Table Round, that ye told he had of my father, Uther. And this damsel is the most valiant and fairest lady that I know living, or yet that ever I could find. Sir, said Merlin, as of her beauty and fairness she is one of the fairest on live. But and ye loved her not so well as ye do, I could find you a damsel of beauty and of goodness that should like you and please you, and your heart were not set; but there as a man's heart is set, he will be loth to return. That is truth, said king Arthur. But Merlin warned the king covertly that Guenever was not wholesome for him to take to wife, for he warned him that Launcelot should love her, and she him again; and so he turned his the adventures of the Sangreal. Merlin desired of the king to ha with him that should enquire of ever, and so the king granted him Merlin went forth to king Leod of Cameliard, and told him of th of the king that he would have u wife Guenever his daughter. Th me, said king Leodegrance, th tidings that ever I heard, that so a king of prowess and nobles wed my daughter. And as f lands I will give him wist I it please him, but he hath lands e him needeth none, but I shall se a gift shall please him much mor shall give him the Table Rou which Uther Pendragon gave n when it is full complete there is dred knights and fifty. And as hundred good knights I have mys I lack fifty, for so many have be in my days. And so king Leod delivered his daughter Guenev Merlin, and the Table Round, w hundred knights, and so the freshly, with great royalty, w water and what by land, till th came nigh unto London.

CHAP. II.

How the knights of the Round Tal ordained, and their sieges blesse bishop of Canterbury.

When king Arthur heard coming of Guenever and the h knights with the Table Round king Arthur made great joy fo coming, and that rich presen said openly, This fair lady is welcome unto me, for I have lo long, and therefore there is so lief to me. And these knigh the Round Table please me mo right great riches. And in all ha

ordain for the marriage and the
n in the most honourablest
could be devised. Now Mer-
king Arthur, go thou and espy
this land fifty knights which
most prowess and worship.
hort time Merlin had found
ghts that should fulfil twenty
t knights, but no more he
d. Then the bishop of Can-
was fetched, and he blessed
s with great royalty and de-
nd there set the eight and
nights in their sieges. And
s was done Merlin said, Fair
ust all arise and come to king
r to do him homage; he will
better will to maintain you.
ıey arose and did their homage.
ı they were gone Merlin found
ege letters of gold that told the
ıames that had sitten therein.
ieges were void. And so anon
ıng Gawaine, and asked the
ft. Ask, said the king, and I
ıt it you. Sir, I ask that ye
me knight that same day ye
fair Guenever. I will do it
od will, said king Arthur, and
ou all the worship that I may,
by reason you are my nephew,
s son.

CHAP. III.

or man riding upon a lean mare king Arthur to make his son

WITHAL there came a poor man
ourt, and brought with him a
g man of eighteen year of age,
ın a lean mare. And the poor
l all men that he met, Where
d king Arthur? Yonder he is,
knights, wilt thou anything
? Yea, said the poor man,
I came hither. Anon as he
ore the king, he saluted him
O king Arthur, the flower of
ts and kings, I beseech Jesu
: Sir, it was told me that at
of your marriage ye would give
the gift that he would ask out,
ıat were unreasonable. That
is truth, said the king, such cries I let make, and that will I hold, so it impair not my realm nor mine estate. Ye say well and graciously, said the poor man: Sir, I ask nothing else but that ye will make my son here a knight. It is a great thing that thou askest of me: what is thy name? said the king to the poor man. Sir, my name is Aries the cowherd. Whether cometh this of thee or of thy son? said the king. Nay Sir, said Aries, this desire cometh of my son and not of me. For I shall tell you I have thirteen sons, and all they will fall to what labour I put them to, and will be right glad to do labour, but this child will do no labour for me, for anything that my wife or I may do, but always he will be shooting or casting darts, and glad for to see battles, and to behold knights; and always day and night he desireth of me to be made a knight. What is thy name? said the king unto the young man. Sir, my name is Tor. The king beheld him fast, and saw he was passingly well visaged and passingly well made of his years. Well, said king Arthur to Aries the cowherd, fetch all thy sons afore me that I may see them. And so the poor man did, and all were shapen much like the poor man: but Tor was not like none of them all in shape nor in countenance, for he was much more than any of them. Now, said king Arthur unto the cowherd, where is the sword that he shall be made knight withal? It is here, said Tor. Take it out of the sheath, said the king, and require me to make you a knight. Then Tor alight off his mare, and pulled out his sword, kneeling, and requiring the king that he would make him knight, and that he might be a knight of the Table Round. As for a knight I will make you; and therewith smote him in the neck with the sword, saying, Be ye a good knight, and so I pray to God so ye may be, and if ye be of prowess and of worthiness ye shall be a knight of the Table Round. Now Merlin, said Arthur, say whether this Tor shall be a good knight or no. Yea, sir, he ought to be a good knight,

for he is come of as good a man as any is on live, and of king's blood. How so, sir? said the king. I shall tell you, said Merlin: this poor man, Aries the cowherd, is not his father, he is nothing like to him, for king Pellinore is his father. I suppose nay, said the cowherd. Fetch thy wife afore me, said Merlin, and she shall not say nay. Anon, the wife was fetched, which was a fair house-wife, and there she answered Merlin full womanly. And there she told the king and Merlin that when she was a maid, and went to milk kine, There met with me a stern knight, and half by force he held me, and after that time was born my son Tor, and he took away from me my greyhound that I had that time with me, and said that he would keep the greyhound for my love. Ah, said the cowherd, I wend not this, but I may believe it well, for he had never no taches of me. Sir, said Tor to Merlin, dishonour not my mother. Sir, said Merlin, it is more for your worship than hurt, for your father is a good man and a king, and he may right well advance you and your mother, for ye were begotten or ever she was wedded. That is truth, said the wife. It is the less grief to me, said the cowherd.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Tor was known for son of king Pellinore, and how Gawaine was made knight.

So on the morn king Pellinore came to the court of king Arthur, which had great joy of him, and told him of Tor, how he was his son, and how he had made him knight at the request of the cowherd. When king Pellinore beheld Tor he pleased him much. So the king made Gawaine knight, but Tor was the first he made at the feast. What is the cause, said king Arthur, that there be two places void in the sieges? Sir, said Merlin, there shall no man sit in those places but they that shall be of most worship. But in the Siege Perilous there shall no man sit therein but one, and if there be any so hardy to do it he shall be destroyed, and he that shall sit there shall have no fellow. An with Merlin took king Pellinor hand, and in the one hand next sieges and the Siege Perilous he open audience, This is your pl best ye are worthy to sit therei that is here. Thereat sat Sir (in great envy, and told Gah brother, Yonder knight is put worship, the which grieveth me he slew our father king Lot, th will slay him, said Gawaine, sword that was sent me that is trenchant. Ye shall not so, s heris, at this time; for at this ti but a squire, and when I ar knight I will be avenged on hi therefore brother it is best ye s another time, that we may have of the court, for and we did should trouble this high feast. well, said Gawaine, as ye will.

CHAP. V.

How at the feast of the wedding Arthur to Guenever, a white h into the hall, and thirty couple and how a brachet pinched t which was taken away.

THEN was the high feast mad and the king was wedded at (unto Dame Guenever in the ch Saint Stephen's, with great sol And as every man was set after gree, Merlin went to all the kni the Round Table, and bad them that none of them remove, For see a strange and a marvellous ture. Right so as they sat ther running in a white hart into t and a white brachet next him, an couple of black running hound after with a great cry, and the ha about the Table Round. As he other boards, the white brachet by the haunch and pulled out where through the hart lept a gr and overthrew a knight that sa board side, and therewith the arose and took up the brachet, went forth out of the hall, and t horse and rode his way with the

o anon came in a lady on a ılfrey, and cried aloud to king Sir, suffer me not to have this for the brachet was mine that ght led away. I may not do h, said the king. With this ne a knight riding all armed on horse, and took the lady away ı with force, and ever she cried le great dole. When she was e king was glad, for she made oise. Nay, said Merlin, ye may e these adventures so lightly, for ventures must be brought again it would be disworship to you our feast. I will, said the king, e done by your advice. Then, lin, let call Sir Gawaine, for he ng again the white hart. Also, ust let call Sir Tor, for he must ain the brachet and the knight, slay him. Also let call king , for he must bring again the the knight, or else slay him. se three knights shall do mar- ıdventures or they come again. ere they called all three as it h afore, and every each of them charge, and armed them surely. Gawaine had the first request, efore we will begin at him.

CHAP. VI.

Gawaine rode for to fetch again rt, and how two brethren fought gainst other for the hart.

ıWAINE rode more than a pace, eris his brother rode with him of a squire, to do him service. ey rode they saw two knights horseback passing sore, so Sir and his brother rode betwixt ıd asked them for what cause ght so. The one knight an- ınd said: We fight for a simple for we two be two brethren, l begotten of one man and of ıan. Alas! said Sir Gawaine, ye so? Sir, said the elder, me a white hart this way this ı many hounds chased him, and brachet was alway next him, and we understood it was adventure made for the high feast of king Arthur, and therefore I would have gone after to have won me worship; and here my younger brother said he would go after the hart, for he was a better knight than I; and for this cause we fell at debate, and so we thought to prove which of us both was better knight. This is a simple cause, said Sir Gawaine; strange men ye should debate withal, and not brother with brother; therefore but if ye will do by my counsel I will have ado with you—that is, ye shall yield you unto me, and that ye go unto king Arthur and yield you unto his grace. Sir knight, said the two brethren, we are for-foughten, and much blood have we lost through our wilfulness, and therefore we would be loth to have ado with you. Then do as I will have you, said Sir Gawaine. We will agree to fulfil your will; but by whom shall we say that we be thither sent? Ye may say, by the knight that followeth the quest of the hart that was white. Now what is your name? said Sir Gawaine. Sorlouse of the Forest, said the elder. And my name is, said the younger, Brian of the Forest. And so they departed and went to the king's court, and Sir Gawaine on his quest. And as Gawaine followed the hart by the cry of the hounds, even afore him there was a great river, and the hart swam over; and as Sir Gawaine would follow after there stood a knight over the other side, and said, Sir knight, come not over after this hart, but if thou wilt just with me. I will not fail as for that, said Sir Gawaine, to follow the quest that I am in, and so made his horse to swim over the water, and anon they gat their spears and ran together full hard, but Sir Gawaine smote him off his horse, and then he turned his horse and bad him yield him. Nay, said the knight, not so, though thou have the better of me on horseback: I pray thee, valiant knight, alight afoot, and match we together with swords. What is your name? said Sir Gawaine. Allardin of the Isles, said the other. Then either dressed their

shields and smote together, but Sir Gawaine smote him so hard through the helm that it went to the brains, and the knight fell down dead. Ah! said Gaheris, that was a mighty stroke of a young knight.

CHAP. VII.

How the hart was chased into a castle, and there slain, and how Gawaine slew a lady.

THEN Gawaine and Gaheris rode more than a pace after the white hart, and let slip at the hart three couple of greyhounds, and so they chased the hart into a castle, and in the chief place of the castle they slew the hart: Sir Gawaine and Gaheris followed after. Right so there came a knight out of a chamber with a sword drawn in his hand and slew two of the greyhounds, even in the sight of Sir Gawaine, and the remnant he chased them with his sword out of the castle. And when he came again, he said, O my white hart, me repenteth that thou art dead, for my sovereign lady gave thee to me, and evil have I kept thee, and thy death shall be dear bought and I live. And anon he went into his chamber and armed him, and came out fiercely, and there met he with Sir Gawaine. Why have ye slain my hounds, said Sir Gawaine, for they did but their kind, and lever I had ye had wroken your anger upon me than upon a dumb beast. Thou sayst truth, said the knight, I have avenged me on thy hounds, and so I will on thee or thou go. Then Sir Gawaine alight afoot, and dressed his shield, and they stroke together mightily, and clave their shields, and stoned their helms, and brake their hauberks that the blood ran down to their feet. At the last Sir Gawaine smote the knight so hard that he fell to the earth; and then he cried mercy and yielded him, and besought him as he was a knight and gentleman to save his life. Thou shalt die, said Sir Gawaine, for slaying of my hounds. I will make amends, said the *knight, unto my power.* Sir Gawaine *would no mercy have,* but unlaced his helm to have striken off his head so came his lady out of a cl and fell over him, and so he sm her head by misadventure. Ala Gaheris, that is foul and sha done; that shame shall never fro Also, ye should give mercy unt that ask mercy; for a knight v mercy is without worship. Sir G was so astonied at the death of t lady that he wist not what he di said unto the knight, Arise, I w thee mercy. Nay, nay, said the I care for no mercy now, for th slain my love and my lady that best of all earthly things. Me re it, said Sir Gawaine, for I thou strike unto thee. But now tho go unto king Arthur, and tell thine adventures, and how th overcome by the knight that v the quest of the white hart. I t force, said the knight, whether I die. But so for dread of death h to go unto king Arthur: and h him to bear one greyhound bef on his horse, and another behir What is your name, said Sir G or we part? My name is, said the Ablamor of the Marsh. So he d toward Camelot.

CHAP. VIII.

How four knights fought against waine and Gaheris, and how th overcome, and their lives saved request of four ladies.

AND Sir Gawaine went into the and made him ready to lie th night, and would have unarme What will ye do? said Gaheris, unarm you in this country? y think ye have many enemies here. had not sooner said that wo there came four knights well arm assailed Sir Gawaine hard, and sa him, Thou new made knight, th shamed thy knighthood, for a without mercy is dishonoured. thou hast slain a fair lady to th shame to the world's end, and thou not thou shalt have great

or thou depart from us. And
ith one of them smote Sir Ga-
ı great stroke, that nigh he fell to
th, and Gaheris smote him again
nd so they were on the one side
the other, that Sir Gawaine and
s were in jeopardy of their lives;
ıe with a bow, an archer, smote
waine through the arm that it
him wonderly sore. And as
ihould have been slain, there
four ladies and besought the
; of grace for Sir Gawaine. And
at the request of the ladies they
ir Gawaine and Gaheris their
ınd made them to yield them as
:rs. Then Gawaine and Gaheris
great dole. Alas! said Sir Ga-
mine arm grieveth me sore, I am
be maimed; and so made his
ınt piteously. Early on the mor-
ıere came to Sir Gawaine one of
ır ladies that had heard all his
ınt, and said, Sir knight, what
Not good, said he. It is your
:fault, said the lady, for ye have
passing foul deed in the slaying
lady, the which will be great
y unto you. But be ye not of king
's kin? said the lady. Yes, truly,
r Gawaine. What is your name?
ıe lady, ye must tell it me or ye
My name is Gawaine, the king
Orkney's son, and my mother is
rthur's sister. Ah, then are ye
r unto king Arthur, said the lady,
shall so speak for you that ye
ave conduct to go to king Arthur
love. And so she departed and
e four knights how their prisoner
ıg Arthur's nephew, and his name
Gawaine, king Lot's son of Ork-
And they gave him the hart's
ıecause it was in his quest. Then
hey delivered Sir Gawaine under
'omise, that he should bare the
ıdy with him in this manner: the
f her was hanged about his neck,
e whole body of her lay before
ı his horse mane. Right so rode
ih unto Camelot. And anon as
s come, Merlin desired *of king*
· *that Sir Gawaine should* be
sworn to tell of all his adventures, and how he slew the lady, and how he would give no mercy unto the knight, where through the lady was slain. Then the king and the queen were greatly displeased with Sir Gawaine for the slaying of the lady. And there by ordinance of the queen there was set a quest of ladies on Sir Gawaine, and they judged him for ever while he lived to be with all ladies, and to fight for their quarrels; and that ever he should be courteous, and never to refuse mercy to him that asketh mercy. Thus was Gawaine sworn upon the four Evangelists that he should never be against lady nor gentlewoman, but if he fought for a lady and his adversary fought for another. And thus endeth the adventure of Sir Gawaine, that he did at the marriage of king Arthur. Amen.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Tor rode after the knight with the brachet, and of his adventure by the way.

When Sir Tor was ready he mounted upon his horse's back, and rode after the knight with the brachet. So as he rode he met with a dwarf suddenly that smote his horse on the head with a staff, that he went backward his spear's length. Why dost thou so? said Sir Tor. For thou shalt not pass this way, but if thou just with yonder knights of the pavilions. Then was Sir Tor ware where two pavilions were, and great spears stood out, and two shields hung on trees by the pavilions. I may not tarry, said Sir Tor, for I am in a quest that I must needs follow. Thou shalt not pass, said the dwarf; and therewithal he blew his horn. Then there came one armed on horseback, and dressed his shield, and came fast toward Tor, and he dressed him against him, and so ran together that Sir Tor bare him from his horse. And anon the knight yielded him to his mercy: But, sir, I have a fellow in yonder pavilion that will have ado with you anon. He shall be welcome, said Sir Tor. Then was he ware of another

knight coming with great force, and each of them dressed to other that marvel it was to see: but the knight smote Sir Tor a great stroke in the midst of the shield that his spear all to-shivered, and Sir Tor smote him through the shield so low that it went through the side of the knight, but the stroke slew him not. And therewith Sir Tor alight and smote him on the helm a great stroke, and therewith the knight yielded him, and besought him of mercy. I will well, said Sir Tor; but thou and thy fellow must go unto king Arthur, and yield you prisoners unto him. By whom shall we say are we thither sent? Ye shall say by the knight that went in the quest of the knight that went with the brachet. Now what be your two names? said Sir Tor. My name is, said the one, Sir Felot of Langduk. And my name is, said the other, Sir Petipase of Winchelsea. Now go ye forth, said Sir Tor, and God speed you and me. Then came the dwarf and said unto Sir Tor: I pray you give me a gift. I will well, said Sir Tor: ask. I ask no more, said the dwarf, but that ye will suffer me to do you service, for I will serve no more recreant knights. Take an horse, said Sir Tor, and ride on with me. I wot ye ride after the knight with the white brachet, and I shall bring you where he is, said the dwarf. And so they rode throughout a forest, and at the last they were ware of two pavilions even by a priory, with two shields, and the one shield was renewed with white, and the other shield was red.

CHAP. X.

How Sir Tor found the brachet with a lady, and how a knight assailed him for the said brachet.

THEREWITH Sir Tor alighted and gave the dwarf his glaive, and so came to the white pavilion, and saw three damsels lie in it on one pallet sleeping. And so he went to the other pavilion, and there he found a lady lying sleeping therein. But there was the white brachet, that bayed at her fast, and therewith the lady awoke and went out of the pavilion, and all her damsels. But anon as Sir Tor espied the white brachet he took her by force, and took her to the dwarf. What, will ye so, said the lady, take my brachet from me? Yea, said Sir Tor, this brachet have I sought from king Arthur's court hither. Well, said the lady, knight, ye shall not go far with her but that ye shall be met, and grieved. I shall abide what adventure that cometh, by the grace of God, and so mounted upon his horse and passed on his way toward Camelot; but it was so near night he might not pass but little farther. Know ye any lodging? said Tor. I know none, said the dwarf, but here beside is an hermitage, and there ye must take lodging as ye find. And within awhile they came to the hermitage and took lodging; and was there grass, oats, and bread, for their horses; soon it was sped, and full hard was their supper; but there they rested them all the night till on the morn, and heard a mass devoutly, and took their leave of the hermit, and Sir Tor prayed the hermit to pray for him. He said he would, and betook him to God: and so he mounted on horseback, and rode towards Camelot a long while. With that they heard a knight call loud that came after them, and he said, Knight, abide and yield my brachet that thou tookest from my lady. Sir Tor returned again and beheld him how he was a seemly knight and well horsed, and well armed at all points; then Sir Tor dressed his shield, and took his spear in his hands, and the other came fiercely upon him and smote both horse and man to the earth. Anon they arose lightly and drew their swords as eagerly as lions, and put their shields afore them, and smote through the shields, and the cantels fell off of both parts. Also they hewed their helms, that the hot blood ran out, and the thick mails of their hauberks they carved and rove in sunder, that the hot blood ran to the earth, and both they had many wounds and were passing weary. But Sir Tor espied that

knight fainted, and then he upon him, and doubled his nd made him go to the earth e side. Then Sir Tor bad him That will I not, said Abelleus, ife lasteth and the soul is with- ly, unless that thou wilt give rachet. That will I not do, Tor, for it was my quest again thy brachet, thee, or

CHAP. XI.

Tor overcame the knight, and lost his head at the request of

iat came a damsel riding on is fast as she might drive and a loud voice unto Sir Tor. l ye with me? said Sir Tor. hee, said the damsel, for king ove, give me a gift; I require e knight, as thou art a gentle- w, said Sir Tor, ask a gift, give it you. Gramercy, said l, Now, I ask the head of the it Abelleus, for he is the most s knight that liveth, and the urderer. I am loth, said Sir hat gift I have given you; iake amends in that he hath unto you. Now, said the e may not, for he slew mine ier afore mine own eyes, that tter knight than he, and he grace; and I kneeled half an him in the mire for to save er's life, that had done him ge, but fought with him by of arms, and so for all that he struck off his head; where- juire thee, as thou art a true give me my gift, or else I ie thee in all the court of king for he is the falsest knight d a great destroyer of good Then when Abelleus heard as more afeard, and yielded sked mercy. I may not now, or, but if I should be found ıy promise, for while I would n you to mercy ye would none ask, but if ye had the brachet again that was my quest. And therewith he took off his helm, and he arose and fled, and Sir Tor after him, and smote off his head quite. Now, sir, said the damsel, it is near night; I pray you come and lodge with me here at my place, it is here fast by. I will well, said Sir Tor; for his horse and he had fared evil since they departed from Camelot, and so he rode with her, and had passing good cheer with her; and she had a passing fair old knight to her husband that made him passing good cheer, and well eased both his horse and him. And on the morn he heard his mass, and brake his fast, and took his leave of the knight and of the lady, that besought him to tell them his name. Truly, he said, my name is Sir Tor, that late was made knight, and this was the first quest of arms that ever I did, to bring again that this knight Abelleus took away from king Arthur's court. O fair knight, said the lady and her husband, and ye come here in our marches, come and see our poor lodging, and it shall be always at your commandment. So Sir Tor departed, and came to Camelot on the third day by noon. And the king and the queen and all the court was passing fain of his coming, and made great joy that he was come again; for he went from the court with little succour, but as king Pellinore his father gave him an old courser, and king Arthur gave him armour and a sword, and else had he none other succour, but rode so forth himself alone. And then the king and the queen by Merlin's advice made him to swear to tell of his adventures, and so he told and made proofs of his deeds as it is afore rehearsed, wherefore the king and the queen made great joy. Nay, nay, said Merlin, these be but jests to that he shall do; he shall prove a noble knight of prowess, as good as any is living, and gentle and courteous, and of good parts, and passing true of his promise, and never shall outrage. Where through Merlin's words king Arthur gave him an earldom of lands that fell

unto him. And here endeth the quest of Sir Tor, king Pellinore's son.

CHAP. XII.

How king Pellinore rode after the lady and the knight that led her away, and how a lady desired help of him, and how he fought with two knights for that lady, of whom he slew the one at the first stroke.

THEN king Pellinore armed him and mounted upon his horse, and rode more than a pace after the lady that the knight led away. And as he rode in a forest, he saw in a valley a damsel sit by a well, and a wounded knight in her arms, and Pellinore saluted her. And when she was ware of him, she cried over loud, Help me knight, for Christ's sake, king Pellinore! And he would not tarry he was so eager in his quest, and ever she cried an hundred times after help. When she saw he would not abide, she prayed unto God to send him as much need of help as she had, and that he might feel it or he died. So as the book telleth, the knight died that there was wounded, wherefore the lady for pure sorrow slew herself with his sword. As king Pellinore rode in that valley he met with a poor man, a labourer: Sawest thou not, said Pellinore, a knight riding and leading away a lady? Yea, said the poor man, I saw that knight, and the lady that made great dole. And yonder beneath in a valley there shall ye see two pavilions, and one of the knights of the pavilions challenged that lady of that knight, and said she was his cousin near, wherefore he should lead her no farther. And so they waged battle in that quarrel; the one said he would have her by force, and the other said he would have the rule of her because he was her kinsman, and would lead her to her kin. For this quarrel I left them fighting, and if ye will ride a pace ye shall find them fighting, and the lady was beleft with *the two squires in the* pavilions. I thank *thee, said king Pellinore.* Then he rode a wallop till that he had s two pavilions, and the two ing. Anon he rode unto and saw the lady that w and said, Fair lady, ye r me unto the court of king knight, said the two squi with her, yonder are two fight for this lady, go thith them, and be agreed wit then ye may have her at y Ye say well, said king Pe anon he rode betwixt th parted them, and asked th why that they fought. Sir the one, I shall tell you. T kinswoman nigh, mine aun and when I heard her com was with him maugre her battle to fight with him. said the other, whose nam lake of Wentland, and th by my prowess of arms Arthur's court. That is said king Pellinore, for ye denly there as we were at t and took away this lady might him ready, and the my quest for to bring h you both, or else the one o in the field; therefore the with me, or I will die for promised it king Arthur. fore fight ye no more, for shall have no part of her and if ye list to fight for h me, and I will defend her. the knights, make you re shall assail you with all And as king Pellinore wo his horse from them, Sir H his horse through with a said: Now art thou on foo are. When king Pellinore e horse was slain, lightly h his horse and pulled out hi put his shield afore him Knight, keep well thy he shalt have a buffet for th my horse. So king Pellin such a stroke upon the h clave the head down to th he fell to the earth dead.

:HAP. XIII.

'llinore gat the lady and to Camelot to the court of

e turned him to the other was sore wounded. But the other's buffet he would kneeled down and said, sin, the lady, with you at and I require you, as ye ght, put her to no shame What, said king Pellinore, ht for her? No, sir, said will not fight with such a ness as ye be. Well, said ay well, I promise you she villainy by me, as I am but now me lacketh an ellinore, but I will have orse. Ye shall not need, ht, for I shall give you s shall please you, so that with me, for it is near well, said king Pellinore, ou all night. And there im right good cheer, and best with passing good d merry rest that night. norrow he heard a mass, d then was brought him rser, and king Pellinore's n him. Now, what shall aid the knight, inasmuch y cousin at your desire of Sir, I shall tell you; my Pellinore, of the Isles, and Table Round. Now I am knight, that such a noble ve the rule of my cousin. your name? said Pellinore, ll me. Sir, my name is Logurs, and this lady my Nimue, and the knight the other pavilion is my , a passing good knight, is Brian of the Isles, and to do wrong, and full loth ny man, but if he be sore that for shame he may t is marvel, said Pellinore, t have ado with me. Sir, he will not have ado with no man but if it be at his request. Bring him to the court, said Pellinore, one of these days. Sir, we will come together. And ye shall be welcome, said king Pellinore, to the court of king Arthur, and greatly allowed for your coming. And so he departed with the lady, and brought her to Camelot. So as they rode in a valley it was full of stones, and there the lady's horse stumbled and threw her down, wherewith her arm was sore bruised, and near she swooned for pain. Alas! sir, said the lady, mine arm is out of joint, where through I must needs rest me. Ye shall well, said king Pellinore. And so he alighted under a fair tree where was fair grass, and he put his horse thereto, and so laid him under the tree and slept till it was nigh night. And when he awoke he would have ridden. Sir, said the lady, it is so dark that ye may as well ride backward as forward. So they abode still and made there their lodging. Then Sir Pellinore put off his armour; then a little afore midnight they heard the trotting of an horse. Be ye still, said king Pellinore, for we shall hear of some adventure.

CHAP. XIV.

How on the way king Pellinore heard two knights, as he lay by night in a valley, and of other adventures.

And therewith he armed him. So right even afore him there met two knights, the one came from Camelot and the other from the north, and either saluted other. What tidings at Camelot? said the one. By my head, said the other, there have I been, and espied the court of king Arthur, and there is such a fellowship they may never be broken, and well nigh all the world holdeth with Arthur, for there is the flower of chivalry. Now for this cause I am riding into the north to tell our chieftains of the fellowship that is withholden with king Arthur. As for that, said the other knight, I have brought a remedy with me, that is the greatest

poison that ever ye heard speak of, and to Camelot will I with it, for we have a friend right nigh king Arthur, and well cherished, that shall poison king Arthur, for so he hath promised our chieftains, and received great gifts for to do it. Beware, said the other knight, of Merlin, for he knoweth all things by the devil's craft. Therefore will I not let it, said the knight. And so they departed in sunder. Anon after Pellinore made him ready, and his lady, and rode toward Camelot. And as they came by the well there as the wounded knight was and the lady, there he found the knight, and the lady eaten with lions or wild beasts all save the head, wherefore he made great sorrow, and wept passing sore, and said: Alas, her life might I have saved, but I was so fierce in my quest therefore I would not abide. Wherefore make ye such dole, said the lady. I wot not, said Pellinore, but my heart mourneth sore for the death of her, for she was a passing fair lady and a young. Now will ye do by mine advice, said the lady, take this knight and let him be buried in an hermitage, and then take the lady's head and bear it with you unto Arthur. So king Pellinore took this dead knight on his shoulders and brought him to the hermitage, and charged the hermit with the corpse, that service should be done for the soul; and take his harness for your pain. It shall be done, said the hermit, as I will answer unto God.

CHAP. XV.

How when king Pellinore was come to Camelot he was sworn upon a book to tell truth of his quest.

And therewith they departed and came there as the head of the lady lay with a fair yellow hair, that grieved king Pellinore passingly sore when he looked on it, for much he cast his heart on the visage. And so by noon they came to Camelot. And the king and the queen were passing fain of his coming to the court. And there he was made to swear upon the four Evangelists to tell the truth of his quest from the one to the other. Ah, Sir Pellinore, said queen Guenever, ye were greatly to blame that ye saved not this lady's life. Madam, said Pellinore, ye were greatly to blame and ye would not save your own life and ye might; but saving your pleasure, I was so furious in my quest that I would not abide, and that repenteth me, and shall the days of my life. Truly, said Merlin, ye ought sore to repent it, for the lady was your own daughter, and that knight that was dead was her love, and should have wedded her, and he was a right good knight of a young man, and would have proved a good man, and to this court was he coming, and his name was Sir Miles of the lands, and a knight came behind him and slew him with a spear, and his name is Loraine le Savage, a false knight and a coward; and she for great sorrow and dole slew herself with his sword, and her name was Elcine. And because ye would not abide and help her, ye shall see your best friend fail you when ye be in the greatest distress that ever ye were or shall be. And that penance God hath ordained you for that deed, that he that ye shall most trust to of any man alive, he shall leave you there as ye shall be slain. Me forthinketh, said king Pellinore, that this shall betide, but God may well forde destiny.

Thus when the quest was done of the white hart, the which followed Sir Gawaine; and the quest of the brachet followed of Sir Tor, Pellinore's son; and the quest of the lady that the knight took away, the which king Pellinore at that time followed; then the king stablished all his knights, and them that were of lands not rich he gave them lands, and charged them never to do outrage, nor murder, and always to flee treason. Also, by no mean to be cruel, but to give mercy unto him that asketh mercy, upon pain of forfeiture of their worship and lordship of king Arthur for evermore; and alway to do ladies, damsels, and gentlewomen succour upon pain of death. Also, that no

ıke no battles in a wrongful
for no law, nor for world's
Unto this were all the knights

sworn of the Table Round, both old and young. And every year were they sworn at the high feast of Pentecost.

Explicit the weddynge of kynge Arthur.
Sequitur quartus liber.

The Fourth Book.

CHAP. I.

rlin was assotted and doted on one ladies of the lake, and how he was in a rock under a stone, and there

fter these quests of Sir Gawaine, , and king Pellinore, it fell so that fell in a dotage on the damsel ng Pellinore brought to court, ² was one of the damsels of the hat hight Nimue. But Merlin let her have no rest, but always ıld be with her. And ever she Merlin good cheer till she had of him all manner thing that ired; and he was assotted upon ıt he might not be from her. a time he told king Arthur ² should not dure long, but for crafts he should be put in the uick, and so he told the king things that should befall, but he warned the king to keep well ord and the scabbard, for he told ow the sword and the scabbard be stolen by a woman from him e most trusted. Also he told rthur that he should miss him: had ye lever than all your lands ² me again. Ah, said the king, e know of your adventure, purvey ınd put away by your crafts that enture. Nay, said Merlin, it ıt be. So he departed from the And within awhile the damsel lake departed, and Merlin went r evermore wheresoever she went. t times Merlin would have had her privily away by his subtle crafts: then she made him to swear that he should never do none enchantment upon her if he would have his will. And so he sware: so she and Merlin went over the sea unto the land of Benwick, where as king Ban was king that had great war against king Claudas, and there Merlin spake with king Ban's wife, a fair lady and a good, and her name was Elaine, and there he saw young Launcelot. There the queen made great sorrow for the mortal war that king Claudas made on her lord and on her lands. Take none heaviness, said Merlin, for this same child within this twenty year shall revenge you on king Claudas, that all christendom shall speak of it: and this same child shall be the man of most worship of the world, and his first name is Galahad, that know I well, said Merlin, and since ye have confirmed him, Launcelot. That is truth, said the queen, his first name was Galahad. O, Merlin, said the queen, shall I live to see my son such a man of prowess? Yea, lady, on my peril ye shall see it, and live many winters after. And so, soon after the lady and Merlin departed; and by the way Merlin shewed her many wonders, and came into Cornwall. And always Merlin lay about the lady to have her love, and she was ever passing weary of him, and fain would have been delivered of him, for she was afeard of him because he was a devil's son, and she could not put him away by no means.

And so on a time it happed that Merlin shewed to her in a rock whereas

was a great wonder, and wrought by enchantment, that went under a great stone. So by her subtle working, she made Merlin to go under that stone to let her wit of the marvels there, but she wrought so there for him that he came never out for all the craft that he could do. And so she departed and left Merlin.

CHAP. II.

How five kings came into this land to war against king Arthur, and what counsel Arthur had against them.

And as king Arthur rode to Camelot, and held there a great feast with mirth and joy, so soon after he returned unto Cardoile, and there came unto Arthur new tidings that the king of Denmark, and the king of Ireland that was his brother, and the king of the Vale, and the king of Soleise, and the king of the Isle of Longtainse, all these five kings with a great host were entered into the land of king Arthur, and burnt and slew clean afore them both cities and castles, that it was pity to hear. Alas, said Arthur, yet had I never rest one month since I was crowned king of this land. Now shall I never rest till I meet with those kings in a fair field, that I make mine avow; for my true liege people shall not be destroyed in my default, go with me who will, and abide who that will. Then the king let write unto king Pellinore, and prayed him in all haste to make him ready with such people as he might lightliest rear, and hie him after in all haste. All the barons were privily wroth that the king would depart so suddenly: but the king by no mean would abide, but made writing unto them that were not there, and bad them hie after him, such as were not at that time in the court. Then the king came to queen Guenever, and said, Lady, make you ready, for ye shall go with me, for I may not long miss you, ye shall cause me to be the more hardy, what adventure so befall me: I will not wit my lady to be in no jeopardy. Sir, said she, I am at your commandment, and shall be ready what time so ye be ready. So on the morn the
the queen departed with such f
as they had, and came into t
into a forest beside Humber,
lodged them. When the word a
came to the five kings ab
that king Arthur was beside
in a forest, there was a knight
unto one of the five kings, t
them this counsel: Ye know
Sir Arthur hath the flower of c
the world with him, as it is p
the great battle he did with t
kings; and therefore hie unto h
and day till that we be nigh
the longer he tarrieth the b
is, and we ever the weaker; a
so courageous of himself, th
come to the field with little pe
therefore let us set upon him
and we shall slay down of hi
there shall none escape.

CHAP. III.

How king Arthur had ado with overthrew them, and slew the and made the remnant to flee.

Unto this counsel these fi
assented, and so they passed f
their host through North W
came upon Arthur by night,
upon his host as the king
knights were in their pavilion
Arthur was unarmed, and had
to rest with his queen Guenev
said Sir Kay, it is not good
unarmed: we shall have no n
Sir Gawaine and Sir Griflet, th
a little pavilion by the king
that they heard a great noise, a
cried treason, treason! Alas,
Arthur, we are betrayed! Un
fellows! then he cried. So t
armed anon at all points. Th
there a wounded knight unto t
and said, Sir, save yourself and
the queen, for our host is destro
much people of ours slain.
the king and the queen and t
knights took their horses, and
ward Humber to pass over it,
water was so rough that th

to pass over. Now may ye
said king Arthur, whether ye
ide and take the adventure on
e, for and ye be taken they will
u. It were me lever, said the
to die in the water than to fall
enemies' hands, and there be
And as they stood so talking,
saw the five kings coming on
ck by themselves alone, with
ears in their hands even toward
Lo, said Sir Kay, yonder be the
gs, let us go to them and match
That were folly, said Sir Gawaine,
are but four and they be five.
truth, said Sir Griflet. No force,
Kay, I will undertake for two of
nd then may ye three undertake
other three. And therewithal
let his horse run as fast as he
and struck one of them through
ld and the body a fathom, that
g fell to the earth stark dead.
w Sir Gawaine and ran unto
king so hard that he smote him
the body. And therewithal king
ran to another, and smote him
the body with a spear, that he
he earth dead. Then Sir Griflet
o the fourth king, and gave him
fall that his neck brake. Anon
y ran unto the fifth king, and
im so hard on the helm that the
clave the helm and the head to
h. That was well stricken, said
thur, and worshipfully hast thou
thy promise, therefore I shall
thee while that I live. And
thal they set the queen in a
nto Humber, but always queen
er praised Sir Kay for his deeds,
d, What lady that ye love, and
you not again, she were greatly
ie; and among ladies, said the
I shall bear your noble fame, for
e a great word, and fulfilled it
fully. And therewith the queen
d. Then the king and the three
rode into the forest, for there
pposed to hear of them that were
; and there king Arthur found
st part of his people, and told
l how the five kings were dead.—
And therefore let us hold us together till it be day, and when their host have espied that their chieftains be slain, they will make such dole that they shall no more help themselves. And right so as the king said, so it was; for when they found the five kings dead, they made such dole that they fell from their horses. Therewithal came king Arthur but with a few people, and slew on the left hand and on the right hand, that well nigh there escaped no man, but all were slain to the number of thirty thousand. And when the battle was all ended, the king kneeled down and thanked God meekly. And then he sent for the queen, and soon she was come, and she made great joy of the overcoming of that battle.

CHAP. IV.

How the battle was finished or king Pellinore came, and how king Arthur founded an abbey where the battle was.

THEREWITHAL came one to king Arthur, and told him that king Pellinore was within three mile with a great host; and he said, Go unto him, and let him understand how we have sped. So within awhile king Pellinore came with a great host, and saluted the people and the king: and there was great joy made on every side. Then the king let search how much people of his party there was slain: and there were found but little past two hundred men slain, and eight knights of the Table Round in their pavilions. Then the king let rear and devise in the same place there as the battle was done a fair abbey, and endowed it with great livelihood, and let call it the Abbey of La Beale Adventure. But when some of them came into their countries whereof the five kings were kings, and told them how they were slain, there was made great dole. And when all king Arthur's enemies, as the king of North Wales, and the kings of the North, wist of the battle they were passing heavy. And so the king returned to Camelot in haste. And when he was come to Camelot he called king

Pellinore unto him, and said, Ye understand well, that we have lost eight knights of the best of the Table Round, and by your advice we will choose eight again of the best we may find in this court. Sir, said Pellinore, I shall counsel you after my conceit the best; there are in your court full noble knights both of old and young, and therefore by mine advice ye shall choose half of the old and half of the young. Which be the old? said king Arthur. Sir, said king Pellinore, me seemeth that king Uriens that hath wedded your sister Morgan le Fay, and the king of the Lake, and Sir Hervise de Revel, a noble knight, and Sir Galagars the fourth. This is well devised, said king Arthur, and right so shall it be. Now, which are the four young knights? said Arthur. Sir, said Pellinore, the first is Sir Gawaine your nephew, that is as good a knight of his time as any is in this land; and the second, as me seemeth, is Sir Griflet le Fise de Dieu, that is a good knight, and full desirous in arms, and who may see him live he shall prove a good knight; and the third as me seemeth is well to be one of the knights of the Round Table, Sir Kay the seneschal, for many times he hath done full worshipfully, and now at your last battle he did full honourably for to undertake to slay two kings. By my head, said king Arthur, he is best worthy to be a knight of the Round Table of any that ye have rehearsed, and he had done no more prowess in his life days.

CHAP. V.

How Sir Tor was made knight of the Round Table, and how Bagdemagus was displeased.

Now, said king Pellinore, I shall put to you two knights, and ye shall choose which is most worthy, that is Sir Bagdemagus, and Sir Tor, my son. But because Sir Tor is my son I may not praise him, but else, and he were not my son, I durst say that of his age there is not in this land a better knight then he *is, nor of better conditions, and loth to do any wrong, and loth* to take any wrong. By my head, said A is a passing good knight, a spake of this day, that wot I the king, for I have seen hin but he saith little, and he d more, for I know none in all t and he were as well born on his side as he is on your side, th him of prowess and of might; fore I will have him at this leave Sir Bagdemagus till anot So when they were so chose assent of all the barons, so found in their sieges every knigh that here are rehearsed. And they set in their sieges, whereo demagus was wonderly wroth, Tor was advanced afore him, a fore suddenly he departed from and took his squire with him, long in a forest till they came t and there alight and said hi devoutly. The meanwhile h found written upon the cross, demagus should never return court again till he had won a body of the Round Table, body Lo, sir, said his squire, here I fin of you, therefore I counsel y again to the court. That shal said Bagdemagus, till men spe great worship, and that I be be a knight of the Round Tab so he rode forth. And ther way he found a branch of an that was the sign of the Sang no knight found such token were a good liver. So as S magus rode to see many adve happed him to come to the r as the lady of the lake had p under a stone, and there he h make great dole; whereof Si magus would have holpen h went unto the great stone, ar so heavy that an hundred m not lift it up. When Merlin was there, he bad leave his la all was in vain, for he might holpen but by her that put hi And so Sir Bagdemagus depa did many adventures, and pro a full good knight, and came

urt, and was made knight of
und Table. So on the morn
ell new tidings and other ad-
s.

CHAP. VI.

ng Arthur, king Uriens, and Sir lon of Gaul chased an hart, and of marvellous adventures.

r it befel that Arthur and many knights rode on hunting into a orest, and it happed king Arthur, riens, and Sir Accolon of Gaul d a great hart, for they three ell horsed, and so they chased so it within awhile they three were en mile from their fellowship. the last they chased so sore that w their horses underneath them. were they all three on foot, and ey saw the hart afore them pass- ary and enbushed. What will said king Arthur, we are hard Let us go on foot, said king till we may meet with some . Then were they ware of the it lay on a great water bank, and et biting on his throat, and more ounds came after. Then king blew the prise and dight the hart. he king looked about the world, w afore him in a great water a ip, all apparelled with silk down water, and the ship came right em, and landed on the sands. Arthur went to the bank and in, and saw none earthly crea- rein. Sirs, said the king, come and let us see what is in this So they went in all three, and it richly behanged with cloth of By then it was dark night, and ddenly were about them an hun- orches set upon all the sides of p boards, and it gave great light; erewithal there came out twelve nsels and saluted king Arthur on nees, and called him by his name, id he was right welcome, and ieer as they had he should have best. The king thanked them Therewithal *they led the king* and his two fellows into a fair chamber, and there was a cloth laid richly beseen of all that longed unto a table, and there were they served of all wines and meats that they could think; of that the king had great marvel, for he fared never better in his life as for one supper. And so when they had supped at their leisure, king Arthur was led into a chamber, a richer beseen chamber saw he never none; and so was king Uriens served, and led into such another chamber; and Sir Accolon was led into the third chamber, passing richly and well beseen: and so were they laid in their beds easily. And anon they fell on sleep, and slept marvellously sore all that night. And on the morrow king Uriens was in Camelot with his wife, Morgan le Fay. And when he awoke he had great marvel how he came there, for on the even afore he was two days' journey from Camelot. And when king Arthur awoke he found himself in a dark prison, hearing about him many complaints of woful knights.

CHAP. VII.

How Arthur took upon him to fight to be delivered out of prison, and also for to deliver twenty knights that were in prison.

WHAT are ye that so complain? said king Arthur. We be here twenty knights prisoners, said they, and some of us have lain here seven year, and some more and some less. For what cause? said Arthur. We shall tell you, said the knights; This lord of this castle his name is Sir Damas, and he is the falsest knight that liveth, and full of treason, and a very coward as any liveth, and he hath a younger brother, a good knight of prowess, his name is Sir Ontzlake, and this traitor Damas, the elder brother, will give him no part of his livelihood but as Sir Ontzlake keepeth through prowess of his hands, and so he keepeth from him a full fair manor and a rich, and therein Sir Ontzlake dwelleth worshipfully and is well beloved of all people. And this Sir Damas our master is as evil

beloved, for he is without mercy, and he is a coward, and great war hath been betwixt them both, but Ontzlake hath ever the better, and ever he proffereth Sir Damas to fight for the livelihood, body for body; but if he will not do it to find a knight to fight for him. Unto that Sir Damas hath granted to find a knight, but he is so evil beloved and hated, that there is never a knight will fight for him. And when Damas saw this, that there was never a knight would fight for him, he hath daily lain await with many knights with him and taken all the knights in this country to see and espy their adventures: he hath taken them by force and brought them to his prison. And so he took us severally as we rode on our adventures, and many good knights have died in this prison for hunger, to the number of eighteen knights: and if any of us all that here is or hath been, would have fought with his brother Ontzlake he would have delivered us, but for because this Damas is so false and so full of treason, we would never fight for him to die for it. And we be so lean with hunger that hardly we may stand on our feet. God deliver you for his mercy, said Arthur. Anon therewithal there came a damsel unto Arthur, and asked him, What cheer? I cannot say, said he. Sir, said she, and ye will fight for my lord, ye shall be delivered out of prison, and else ye escape never with life. Now, said Arthur, that is hard, yet had I lever to fight with a knight than to die in prison: with this, said Arthur, that I may be delivered and all these prisoners I will do the battle. Yes, said the damsel. I am ready, said Arthur, and I had horse and armour. Ye shall lack none, said the damsel. Me seemeth, damsel, that I should have seen you in the court of Arthur. Nay, said the damsel, I came never there, I am the lord's daughter of this castle. Yet was she false, for she was one of the damsels of Morgan le Fay. Anon she went *unto Sir Damas, and* told him how he *would do battle for him*, and so he sent for Arthur. And when he c was well coloured, and well n his limbs, that all knights th him said it were pity that such a should die in prison. So Sir Dan he were agreed that he shoul for him upon this covenant, t other knights should be deliver unto that was Sir Damas swor Arthur, and also to do the battl uttermost. And with that twenty knights were brought out dark prison into the hall and de And so they all abode to s battle.

CHAP. VIII.

How Accolon found himself by a w be took upon him to do battle Arthur.

Now turn we unto Accolon o that when he awoke he found by a deep well side, within half a great peril of death. And ther out of that fountain a pipe of silv out of that pipe ran water all c in a stone of marble. When Sir lon saw this he blessed him an Jesu save my lord king Arthu king Uriens, for these damsels ship have betrayed us. The devils and no women, and if escape this misadventure, I shall all where I may find these false c that use enchantments.

Right with that there came a with a great mouth and a flat no saluted Sir Accolon, and said l came from queen Morgan le Fa she greeteth you well, and bidde be of strong heart, for ye shall f morn with a knight at the h prime, and therefore she hath se here Excalibur Arthur's sword, a scabbard, and she biddeth you love her, that ye do the battle uttermost without any mercy, lik had promised her when ye spa gether in private: and what dam bringeth her the knight's head shall fight withal, she will mak queen. Now I understand yo said Accolon: I shall hold that

d her, now I have the sword: w ye my lady queen Morgan le Right late, said the dwarf. Then n took him in his arms, and said, nend me unto my lady queen, her all shall be done that I have d her, and else I will die for it. suppose, said Accolon, she hath l these crafts and enchantments battle. Ye may well believe it, dwarf. Right so there came a nd a lady with six squires, and Sir Accolon and prayed him for and come and rest him at his And so Accolon mounted upon orse, and went with the knight ir manor by a priory, and there passing good cheer. Then Sir sent unto his brother Sir Ontz- d bade make him ready by to the hour of prime, and to be eld to fight with a good knight, had found a good knight that dy to do battle at all points. his word came unto Sir Ontz- was passing heavy, for he was d a little tofore through both s with a spear, and made great t as he was wounded he would ken the battle on hand. So it at that time, by the means an le Fay, Accolon was with zlake lodged; and when he that battle, and how Ontzlake unded, he said he would fight , because Morgan le Fay had n Excalibur and the sheath for with the knight on the morn; the cause Sir Accolon took the n hand. Then Sir Ontzlake was glad, and thanked Sir Accolon his heart that he would do so or him. And therewithal Sir e sent word unto his brother Sir that he had a knight that for uld be ready in the field by the prime. So on the morn Sir was armed and well horsed, and Sir Damas, When shall we to ? Sir, said Sir Damas, ye shall ss; and so Arthur heard a mass. en mass was done there came a n a great horse, and asked Sir Damas if his knight were ready, for our knight is ready in the field. Then Sir Arthur mounted upon horseback, and there were all the knights and commons of that country; and so by all advices there were chosen twelve good men of the country for to wait upon the two knights. And right as Arthur was upon horseback there came a damsel from Morgan le Fay, and brought unto Sir Arthur a sword like unto Excalibur, and the scabbard, and said unto Arthur, Morgan le Fay sendeth you here your sword for great love. And he thanked her, and wend it had been so, but she was false, for the sword and the scabbard was counterfeit, and brittle, and false.

CHAP. IX.

Of the battle between king Arthur and Accolon.

And then they dressed them on both parts of the field, and let their horses run so fast that either smote other in the midst of the shield with their spears' head, that both horse and man went to the earth; and then they started up both, and pulled out their swords. The mean while that they were thus at the battle, came the damsel of the lake into the field, that put Merlin under the stone, and she came thither for love of king Arthur, for she knew how Morgan le Fay had so ordained that king Arthur should have been slain that day, and therefore she came to save his life. And so they went eagerly to the battle, and gave many great strokes. But alway king Arthur's sword bit not like Accolon's sword, but for the most part every stroke that Accolon gave wounded he sore Arthur, that it was marvel he stood; and alway his blood fell from him fast. When Arthur beheld the ground so sore be-bled he was dismayed, and then he deemed treason, that his sword was changed; for his sword bit not steel as it was wont to do, therefore he dread him sore to be dead, for ever him seemed that the sword in Accolon's hand was Excalibur, for at every stroke that Sir Accolon struck he drew blood on Arthur. Now

knight, said Accolon unto Arthur, keep thee well from me: but Arthur answered not again, and gave him such a buffet on the helm that he made him to stoop, nigh falling down to the earth. Then Sir Accolon withdrew him a little, and came on with Excalibur on high, and smote Sir Arthur such a buffet that he fell nigh to the earth. Then were they wroth both, and gave each other many sore strokes, but always Sir Arthur lost so much blood that it was marvel he stood on his feet, but he was so full of knighthood that knightly he endured the pain. And Sir Accolon lost not a deal of blood, therefore he waxed passing light, and Sir Arthur was passing feeble, and wend verily to have died; but for all that he made countenance as though he might endure, and held Accolon as short as he might. But Accolon was so bold because of Excalibur that he waxed passing hardy. But all men that beheld him said they never saw knight fight so well as Arthur did, considering the blood that he bled. So was all the people sorry for him, but the two brethren would not accord; then always they fought together as fierce knights, and Sir Arthur withdrew him a little for to rest him, and Sir Accolon called him to battle, and said, It is no time for me to suffer thee to rest. And therewith he came fiercely upon Arthur, and Sir Arthur was wroth for the blood that he had lost, and smote Accolon on high upon the helm so mightily that he made him nigh to fall to the earth; and therewith Arthur's sword brast at the cross, and fell in the grass among the blood, and the pommel and the sure handles he held in his hands. When Sir Arthur saw that, he was in great fear to die, but always he held up his shield, and lost no ground, nor bated no cheer.

CHAP. X.

How king Arthur's sword that he fought with brake, and how he recovered of Accolon his own sword Excalibur, and overcame his enemy.

THEN *Sir Accolon* began with words of treason, and said, Knight overcome, and mayest not e also thou art weaponless, and lost much of thy blood, and loth to slay thee, therefore yi me as recreant. Nay, said S I may not so, for I have pron the battle to the uttermost b of my body while me lastet and therefore I had lever t honour than to live with sha it were possible for me to d dred times I had lever to die yield me to thee; for thou weapon I shall lack no worsl thou slay me weaponless th thy shame. Well, said Acco the shame I will not spare: thee from me, for thou art l man. And therewith Accolo such a stroke that he fell n earth, and would have had have cried him mercy. But pressed unto Accolon with and gave him with the pom hand such a buffet that he strides aback. When the da lake beheld Arthur, how full his body was, and the false t was wrought for him to hav slain, she had great pity that knight and such a man c should be destroyed. And a stroke Sir Accolon struck h stroke, that by the damsel' ment the sword Excalibur Accolon's hand to the earth; withal Sir Arthur lightly leap got it in his hand, and fort knew that it was his sword and said, Thou hast been fr too long, and much damage done me. And therewith he scabbard hanging by his sid denly he start to him, and scabbard from him, and anc from him as far as he migh O knight, said Arthur, this thou done me great damage sword; now are ye come death, for I shall not warra ye shall as well be rewarde sword or ever we depart, as

me, for much pain have ye to endure, and much blood st. And therewith Sir Arthur ı him with all his might and m to the earth, and then his helm, and gave him such on the head that the blood at his ears, his nose, and his Now will I slay thee, said Slay me ye may well, said and it please you, for ye are night that ever I found, and I hat God is with you: but for d to do this battle to the ut- aid Accolon, and never to be while I lived, therefore shall I d me with my mouth, but God ny body what he will. Then remembered him, and thought have seen this knight. Now ıid Arthur, or I will slay thee, ountry art thou, and of what ir knight, said Sir Accolon, he court of king Arthur, and is Accolon of Gaul. Then ır more dismayed than he was d; for then he remembered is sister Morgan le Fay, and nchantment of the ship. O ıt, said he, I pray you tell gave you this sword, and by had it.

CHAP. XI.

olon confessed the treason of le Fay, king Arthur's sister, w she would have done slay

Sir Accolon bethought him, Woe worth this sword, for by I gotten my death. It may said the king. Now Sir, said on, I will tell you: This sword ı in my keeping the most part welvemonth, and Morgan le g Uriens' wife, sent it me by a dwarf, to this intent that slay king Arthur her brother. all understand king Arthur is in the world that she most ecause he is most of worship rowess *of any of her blood.* Also, she loveth me out of measure as paramour, and I her again. And if she might bring about to slay Arthur by her crafts, she would slay her husband king Uriens lightly, and then had she me devised to be king in this land, and so to reign, and she to be my queen; but that is now done, said Sir Accolon, for I am sure of my death. Well, said king Arthur, I feel by you ye would have been king in this land. It had been great damage for to have destroyed your lord, said Arthur. It is truth, said Sir Accolon, but now I have told you truth, wherefore I pray you tell me of whence ye are, and of what court? O Accolon, said king Arthur, now I let thee wit that I am king Arthur to whom thou hast done great damage. When Accolon heard that he cried aloud, Fair sweet lord, have mercy on me, for I knew you not. O Sir Accolon, said king Arthur, mercy shalt thou have, because I feel by thy words at this time thou knewest not my person. But I understand well by thy words that thou hast agreed to the death of my person, and therefore thou art a traitor; but I blame thee the less, for my sister Morgan le Fay by her false crafts made thee to agree and consent to her false lusts, but I shall be sore avenged upon her and I live, that all Christendom shall speak of it. God knoweth I have honoured her and worshipped her more than all my kin, and more have I trusted her than mine own wife, and all my kin after. Then Sir Arthur called the keepers of the field, and said, Sirs, come hither, for here are we two knights that have fought unto a great damage unto us both, and like each one of us to have slain other, if it had happed so; and had any of us known other, here had been no battle, nor stroke stricken. Then all aloud cried Sir Accolon unto all the knights and men that were then there gathered together, and said to them in this manner: O lords, this noble knight that I have fought withal, the which me sore repenteth, is the most man of prowess, of manhood, and of worship

in the world, for it is himself king Arthur, our alther liege lord, and with mishap and with misadventure have I done this battle with the king and lord that I am holden withal.

CHAP. XII.

How Arthur accorded the two brethren, and delivered the twenty knights, and how Sir Accolon died.

THEN all the people fell down on their knees, and cried king Arthur mercy. Mercy shall ye have, said Arthur: here may ye see what adventures befall oft time of errant knights, how that I have fought with a knight of mine own unto my great damage and his both. But sirs, because I am sore hurt, and he both, and I had great need of a little rest, ye shall understand the opinion betwixt you two brethren: As to thee, Sir Damas, for whom I have been champion, and won the field of this knight, yet will I judge because ye Sir Damas are called an orgulous knight, and full of villainy, and not worth of prowess of your deeds, therefore I will that ye give unto your brother all the whole manor with the appurtenance, under this form, that Sir Ontzlake hold the manor of you, and yearly to give you a palfrey to ride upon, for that will become you better to ride on than upon a courser. Also I charge thee, Sir Damas, upon pain of death, that thou never distress no knights errant that ride on their adventure. And also that thou restore these twenty knights that thou hast long kept prisoners of all their harness that they be content for, and if any of them come to my court and complain of thee, by my head thou shalt die therefore. Also, Sir Ontzlake, as to you, because ye are named a good knight, and full of prowess, and true and gentle in all your deeds, this shall be your charge: I will give you that in all goodly haste ye come unto me and my court, and ye shall be a knight of mine, and if your deeds be thereafter I shall so prefer you, by the grace of Go ye shall in short time be in e to live as worshipfully as your Sir Damas.—God thank your la of your goodness and of your bou I shall be from henceforth at a at your commandment: for, S Sir Ontzlake, I was hurt but la an adventurous knight through t thighs, which grieved me sore, had I done this battle wit Would, said Arthur, it had b for then had not I been hurt a I shall tell you the cause why had not been hurt as I am hac been mine own sword that wa from me by treason; and this was ordained aforehand to hav me, and so it was brought purpose by false treason, and t enchantment. Alas, said Sir O that is great pity, that ever so man as ye are of your dee prowess, that any man or woma find in their hearts to work any against you. I shall reward the Arthur, in short time by the g God. Now tell me, said Arthu far am I from Camelot? Sir, two days' journey therefrom. I fain be at some place of worshi Sir Arthur, that I might re Sir, said Sir Ontzlake, hereby is abbey of your elders' foundati Nuns, but three mile hence. king took his leave of all the and mounted upon horseback, Accolon with him. And whe were come to the abbey, he le leeches and search his wound Accolon's both, but Sir Accolo within four days, for he had t much blood that he might not li king Arthur was well recovere when Accolon was dead he let se on an horse-bier with six knight Camelot, and said, Bear him sister Morgan le Fay, and say send her him to a present, and t that I have my sword Excalibu the scabbard. So they departe the body.

CHAP. XIII.

organ would have slain Sir Uriens usband, and how Sir Uwaine her aved him.

mean while Morgan le Fay had ing Arthur had been dead. So y she espied king Uriens lay in sleeping, then she called unto naiden of her counsel, and said: h me my lord's sword, for I saw etter time to slay him than now. am, said the damsel, and ye slay , ye can never escape. Care not d Morgan le Fay, for now I see e in the which it is best to do it, refore hie thee fast, and fetch sword. Then the damsel de- and found Sir Uwaine sleeping bed in another chamber, so she to Sir Uwaine, and awaked him, d him, Arise, and wait on my ur mother, for she will slay the ur father sleeping in his bed, for o fetch his sword. Well, said ine, go on your way, and let me non the damsel brought Morgan rd with quaking hands, and she took the sword, and pulled it l went boldly unto the bed-side, aited how and where she might n best. And as she lift up the o smite, Sir Uwaine lept unto her, and caught her by the hand, l, Ah, fiend, what wilt thou do? u wert not my mother, with this should smite off thy head. Ah, Uwaine, men say that Merlin otten of a devil, but I may say ly devil bare me. Oh fair son , have mercy upon me; I was with a devil, wherefore I cry rcy; I will never more do so; e my worship and discover me n this covenant, said Sir Uwaine, orgive it you, so ye will never t to do such deeds. Nay, son, , and that I make you assurance.

CHAP. XIV.

en Morgan le Fay made great sor- or the death of Accolon, and how le away the scabbard from Arthur.

came tidings unto Morgan le Fay that Accolon was dead, and his body brought unto the church, and how king Arthur had his sword again. But when queen Morgan wist that Accolon was dead she was so sorrowful that near her heart to burst. But because she would not it were known, outward she kept her countenance, and made no semblance of sorrow. But well she wist, and she abode till her brother Arthur came thither, there should no gold go for her life.

Then she went unto queen Guenever, and asked her leave to ride into the country. Ye may abide, said queen Guenever, till your brother the king come home. I may not, said Morgan le Fay, for I have such hasty tidings that I may not tarry. Well, said Guenever, ye may depart when ye will. So early on the morn, or it was day, she took her horse and rode all that day, and most part of the night, and on the morn by noon she came to the same abbey of nuns, whereas lay king Arthur, and she, knowing he was there, asked where he was: and they answered how he had laid him in his bed to sleep, for he had had but little rest these three nights. Well, said she, I charge you that none of you awake him till I do. And then she alight off her horse, and thought for to steal away Excalibur his sword, and so she went straight unto his chamber, and no man durst disobey her commandment, and there she found Arthur asleep in his bed, and Excalibur in his right hand naked. When she saw that, she was passing heavy that she might not come by the sword without she had awaked him, and then she wist well she had been dead. Then she took the scabbard, and went her way on horseback. When the king awoke and missed his scabbard, he was wroth, and he asked who had been there, and they said his sister queen Morgan had been there, and had put the scabbard under her mantle, and was gone. Alas, said Arthur, falsely have ye watched me. Sir, said they all, we durst not disobey your sister's commandment. Ah, said

the king, let fetch the best horse that may be found, and bid Sir Ontzlake arm him in all haste, and take another good horse and ride with me. So anon the king and Ontzlake were well armed, and rode after this lady; and so they came by a cross, and found a cowherd, and they asked the poor man if there came any lady late riding that way. Sir, said this poor man, right late came a lady riding with a forty horses, and to yonder forest she rode. Then they spurred their horses and followed fast, and within awhile Arthur had a sight of Morgan le Fay; then he chased as fast as he might. When she espied him following her, she rode a greater pace through the forest till she came to a plain. And when she saw she might not escape, she rode unto a lake thereby, and said, Whatsoever becometh of me, my brother shall not have this scabbard. And then she let throw the scabbard in the deepest of the water, so it sank, for it was heavy of gold and precious stones. Then she rode into a valley where many great stones were, and when she saw that she must be overtaken, she shaped herself, horse and man, by enchantment, unto a great marble stone. Anon withal came Sir Arthur and Sir Ontzlake, whereas the king might not know his sister and her men, and one knight from another. Ah, said the king, here may ye see the vengeance of God, and now am I sorry that this misadventure is befallen. And then he looked for the scabbard, but it would not be found. So he returned to the abbey there he came from. So when Arthur was gone she turned all into the likeness as she and they were before, and said, Sirs, now may we go where we will.

CHAP. XV.

How Morgan le Fay saved a knight that should have been drowned, and how king Arthur returned home again.

THEN said Morgan, Saw ye Arthur my brother? Yea, said her knights, right well, and that ye should ha found and we might have stirred fr one stead, for by his warlike coun nance he would have caused us to ha fled. I believe you, said Morgan. An after as she rode she met a knig leading another knight on his ho before him, bound hand and foot blin fold, to have drowned him in a fou tain. When she saw this knight bound, she asked him, What will ye with that knight? Lady, said he, I w drown him. For what cause? she aske For I found him with my wife, and s shall have the same death anon. Th were pity, said Morgan le Fay: no what say ye, knight, is it truth that h saith of you? she said to the knig that should be drowned. Nay tru madam, he saith not right of me. whence be ye? said Morgan le Fay, an of what country? I am of the court king Arthur, and my name is Manasse cousin unto Accolon of Gaul. Ye sa well, said she, and for the love of hi ye shall be delivered, and ye shall ha your adversary in the same case y be in. So Manassen was loosed an the other knight bound. And ano Manassen unarmed him, and armed hi self in his harness, and so mounted o horseback, and the knight afore hi and so threw him into the fountain an drowned him. And then he rode unt Morgan again, and asked her if sh would anything unto king Arthur. Te him that I rescued thee not for the lov of him but for the love of Accolon, an tell him I fear him not while I can make me and them that be with me in likeness of stones; and let him wit I can do much more when I see my time. And so she departed into the country of Gore, and there was she richly received, and made her castles and towns passing strong, for always she drad much king Arthur. When the king had well rested him at the abbey he rode unto Camelot, and found his queen and his barons right glad of his coming. And when they heard of his strange adventures as is afore rehearsed, they all had marvel of the falsehood of Morgan le Fay: many

shed her burnt. Then came
o the court and told the king
nture. Well, said the king,
d sister, I shall so be avenged
I live, that all christendom
of it. So on the morn there
sel from Morgan to the king,
rought with her the richest
ever was seen in that court,
set as full of precious stones
it stand by another, and there
ichest stones that ever the
And the damsel said, Your
leth you this mantle, and
hat ye should take this
and in what thing she hath
ou she will amend it at your
re. When the king beheld
it pleased him much, but he
tle.

CHAP. XVI.

'amsel of the lake saved king from a mantle which should ut him.

at came the damsel of the
he king, and said, Sir, I must
you in private. Say on, said
what ye will. Sir, said the
t not on you this mantle till
n more, and in no wise let it
on you, nor on no knight of
ye command the bringer
put it upon her. Well, said
ur, it shall be done as ye
e. And then he said unto
l that came from his sister,
is mantle that ye have brought
ee it upon you. Sir, said she,
beseem me to wear a king's
By my head, said Arthur, ye
it or it come on my back, or
that here is. And so the
it to be put upon her, and
she fell down dead, and
spake word after, and burnt
Then was the king wonderly
re than he was toforehand,
to king Uriens, My sister your
vay about to betray me, and
either ye, or my nephew your
counsel with her to have me
destroyed; but as for you, said the king to king Uriens, I deem not greatly that ye be of her counsel, for Accolon confessed to me by his own mouth, that she would have destroyed you as well as me, therefore I hold you excused; but as for your son Sir Uwaine, I hold him suspected, therefore I charge you put him out of my court. So Sir Uwaine was discharged. And when Sir Gawaine wist that, he made him ready to go with him, and said: Who so banisheth my cousin german shall banish me. So they two departed and rode into a great forest. And so they came to an abbey of monks, and there were well lodged. But when the king wist that Sir Gawaine was departed from the court there was made great sorrow among all the estates. Now, said Gaheris, Gawaine's brother, we have lost two good knights for the love of one. So on the morn they heard their masses in the abbey, and so they rode forth till they came to a great forest; then was Sir Gawaine ware in a valley by a turret, of twelve fair damsels, and two knights armed on great horses, and the damsels went to and fro by a tree. And then was Sir Gawaine ware how there hung a white shield on that tree, and ever as the damsels came by it they spit upon it, and some threw mire upon the shield.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwaine met with twelve fair damsels, and how they complained on Sir Marbaus.

THEN Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwaine went and saluted them, and asked why they did that despite to the shield. Sirs, said the damsels, we shall tell you. There is a knight in this country that owneth this white shield, and he is a passing good man of his hands, but he hateth all ladies and gentlewomen, and therefore we do all this despite to the shield. I shall say you, said Sir Gawaine, it beseemeth evil a good knight to despise all ladies and gentlewomen, and peradventure though he hate you he hath some cause, and peradventure he

loveth in some other places ladies and gentlewomen, and to be loved again, and he be such a man of prowess as ye speak of. Now what is his name? Sir, said they, his name is Marhaus, the king's son of Ireland. I know him well, said Sir Uwaine, he is a passing good knight as any is on live, for I saw him once proved at a justs where many knights were gathered, and that time there might no man withstand him. Ah! said Sir Gawaine, damsels, methinketh ye are to blame, for it is to suppose he that hung that shield there he will not be long therefrom, and then may those knights match him on horseback, and that is more your worship than thus; for I will abide no longer to see a knight's shield dishonoured. And therewith Sir Uwaine and Gawaine departed a little from them, and then were they ware where Sir Marhaus came riding on a great horse straight towards them. And when the twelve damsels saw Sir Marhaus they fled into the turret as they were wild, so that some of them fell by the way. Then the one of the knights of the tower dressed his shield, and said on high, Sir Marhaus, defend thee. And so they ran together that the knight brake his spear on Marhaus, and Sir Marhaus smote him so hard that he brake his neck and the horse's back. That saw the other knight of the turret, and dressed him toward Marhaus, and they met so eagerly together that the knight of the turret was soon smitten down, horse and man, stark dead.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Marhaus justed with Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwaine, and overthrew them both.

And then Sir Marhaus rode unto his shield, and saw how it was defouled, and said, Of this despite I am a part avenged, but for her love that gave me this white shield I shall wear thee, and hang mine where thou wast: and so he hanged it about his neck. Then he rode straight unto Sir Gawaine and to Sir Uwaine, and asked them what they did there. They answered him th came from king Arthur's cour see adventures. Well, said M here am I ready, an adventurou that will fulfil any adventure will desire. And so departe them to fetch his range. Let said Sir Uwaine unto Sir Gawa he is a passing good knight a living: I would not by my will of us were matched with him said Sir Gawaine, not so; it wer to us were he not assayed, v never so good a knight. Well, Uwaine, I will assay him afore I am more weaker than ye, an smite me down then may ye reve So these two knights came togetl great random, that Sir Uwaine sm Marhaus that his spear brast i on the shield, and Sir Marhau him so sore that horse and man to the earth, and hurt Sir Uwain left side. Then Sir Marhaus tu horse and rode toward Gawai his spear. And when Sir Gawa that, he dressed his shield, a aventred their spears, and the together with all the might horses, that either knight smot so hard in the midst of their shi Sir Gawaine's spear brake, but S haus's spear held; and therew Gawaine and his horse rushed the earth. And lightly Sir G rose upon his feet, and pulled sword, and dressed him toward S haus on foot. And Sir Marha that, and pulled out his sword, an to come to Sir Gawaine on ho Sir knight, said Sir Gawaine, a foot, or else I will slay thy Gramercy, said Sir Marhaus, gentleness, ye teach me courtes is not for one knight to be on f the other on horseback. And th Sir Marhaus set his spear agains and alighted, and tied his hor tree, and dressed his shield, an came unto other eagerly, and together with their swords th shields flew in cantels, and they their helms and their hauber

d either other. But Sir Gafro it passed nine of the clock ever stronger and stronger, till it o the hour of noon, and thrice ht was increased. All this espied haus, and had great wonder how it increased, and so they wounded assing sore. And then when it st noon, and when it drew toven-song, Sir Gawaine's strength and waxed passing faint, that s he might dure any longer, Marhaus was then bigger and Sir knight, said Sir Marhaus, well felt that ye are a passing ight, and a marvellous man of s ever I felt any, while it lasteth, r quarrels are not great, and e it were pity to do you hurt, el ye are passing feeble. Ah, Gawaine, gentle knight, ye say d that I should say. And thereey took off their helms and either other, and there they swore toeither to love other as brethren. r Marhaus prayed Sir Gawaine with him that night. And so ok their horses and rode toward haus's house. And as they rode vay, Sir knight, said Sir Gawaine, narvel that so valiant a man as ove no ladies nor damsels. Sir, Marhaus, they name me wrongose that give me that name, but ot it be the damsels of the turret name me, and other such as they w shall I tell you for what cause them. For they be sorceresses hanters many of them, and be a never so good of his body and prowess as man may be, they ke him a stark coward to have er of him, and this is the prinuse that I hate them; and to ladies and gentlewomen I owe ice as a knight ought to do. As k rehearseth in French, there any knights that overmatched vaine, for all the thrice-might had: Sir Launcelot de Lake, stram, Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir e, Sir Pelleas, and Sir Marhaus, x knights had the better of Sir Gawaine. Then within a little while they came to Sir Marhaus's place, which was in a little priory, and there they alight, and ladies and damsels unarmed them and hastily looked to their hurts, for they were all three hurt. And so they had all three good lodging with Sir Marhaus, and good cheer: for when he wist that they were king Arthur's sister's sons, he made them all the cheer that lay in his power. And so they sojourned there a seven nights, and were well eased of their wounds, and at the last departed. Now, said Sir Marhaus, we will not part so lightly, for I will bring you through the forest: and rode day by day well a seven days or they found any adventure. At the last they came into a great forest, that was named the country and forest of Arroy, and the country of strange adventures. In this country, said Sir Marhaus, came never knight since it was christened, but he found strange adventures. And so they rode and came into a deep valley full of stones, and thereby they saw a fair stream of water; above thereby was the head of the stream, a fair fountain, and three damsels sitting thereby. And then they rode to them, and either saluted other, and the eldest had a garland of gold about her head, and she was threescore winter of age or more, and her hair was white under the garland. The second damsel was of thirty winter of age, with a circlet of gold about her head. The third damsel was but fifteen year of age, and a garland of flowers about her head. When these knights had so beheld them, they asked them the cause why they sat at that fountain. We be here, said the damsels, for this cause, if we may see any errant knights, to teach them unto strange adventures, and ye be three knights that seek adventures, and we be three damsels, and therefore each one of you must choose one of us. And when ye have done so we will lead you unto three high ways, and there each of you shall choose a way, and his damsel with him. And this day twelvemonth ye must meet here again, and God send

you your lives, and thereto ye must plight your troth. This is well said, said Sir Marhaus.

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir Marhaus, Sir Gawaine, and Sir Uwaine met three damsels, and each of them took one.

Now shall every each of us choose a damsel. I shall tell you, said Sir Uwaine: I am the youngest and most weakest of you both, therefore I will have the eldest damsel, for she hath seen much and can help me best when I have need, for I have most need of help of you both. Now, said Sir Marhaus, I will have the damsel of thirty winter age, for she fallest best to me. Well, said Sir Gawaine, I thank you, for ye have left me the youngest and the fairest, and she is most liefest to me. Then every damsel took her knight by the reins of his bridle, and brought them to the three ways, and there was their oath made to meet at the fountain that day twelvemonth and they were living, and so they kissed and departed, and every each knight set his lady behind him. And Sir Uwaine took the way that lay west, and Sir Marhaus took the way that lay south, and Sir Gawaine took the way that lay north.

Now will we begin at Sir Gawaine that held that way till he came unto a fair manor, where dwelled an old knight and a good householder, and there Sir Gawaine asked the knight if he knew any adventures in that country. I shall shew you some to-morn, said the old knight, and that marvellous. So on the morn they rode into the forest of adventures till they came to a lawn, and thereby they found a cross, and as they stood and hoved there came by them the fairest knight and the seemliest man that ever they saw, making the greatest dole that ever man made. And then he was ware of Sir Gawaine, and saluted him, and prayed God to send him much worship. As to that, said Sir Gawaine, Gramercy! Also, I pray to God that he send you honour and worship. Ah, said the knight, I may lay that aside, for sorrow and shame cometh after worship.

CHAP. XX.

How a knight and a dwarf strov lady.

And therewith he passed unto t side of the lawn. And on the oth Sir Gawaine saw ten knights that still, and made them ready witl shields and spears against thi knight that came by Sir Gawaine. this one knight aventred a great and one of the ten knights encou with him, but this woful knight him so hard that he fell over his tail. So this same dolorous served them all, that at the leas he smote down horse and man, a he did with one spear. And so they were all ten on foot they w that one knight, and he stood ston and suffered them to pull him do his horse, and bound him hand an and tied him under the horse bell so led him with them. Oh, said S waine, this is a doleful sight, to s yonder knight so to be entreated, seemeth by the knight that he su them to bind him so, for he mak resistance. No, said his host, truth, for and he would they al too weak so to do him. Sir, sa damsel unto Sir Gawaine, me seer were your worship to help that dc knight, for me thinketh he is one best knights that ever I saw. I do for him, said Sir Gawaine, seemeth that he will have no Then said the damsel, me seem have no lust to help him. Thus a talked they saw a knight on that side of the lawn, all armed sa head. And on the other side came a dwarf on horseback all save the head, with a great mou a short nose. And when the came nigh he said, Where is th should meet us here? and there she came forth out of the wood. then they began to strive for the for the knight said he would ha

: dwarf said he would have her.
: do well? said the dwarf; yonder
ight at the cross, let us put it
on him, and as he deemeth so
be. I will well, said the knight;
they went all three unto Sir Ga-
and told him wherefore they
Well sirs, said he, will ye put
ter into my hand? Yea, they
h. Now, damsel, said Sir Ga-
e shall stand betwixt them both,
ther ye list better to go to, he
ve you. And when she was set
i them both she left the knight
it to the dwarf. And the dwarf
r and went his way singing,
e knight went his way with
ourning. Then came there two
all armed, and cried on high,
vaine, knight of king Arthur,
iee ready in all haste and just
e. So they ran together that
ell down. And then on foot
ew their swords and did full
. In the meanwhile the other
went to the damsel and asked
y she abode with that knight,
/e would abide with me, I will
faithful knight. And with you
e, said the damsel, for with Sir
e I may not find in mine heart
ith him: for now here was one
discomfited ten knights, and at
he was cowardly led away; and
e let us two go our way whilst
ht. And Sir Gawaine fought
at other knight long, but at the
y accorded both. And then the
prayed Sir Gawaine to lodge
m that night. So as Sir Ga-
vent with this knight he asked
hat knight is he in this country
ote down the ten knights? For
e had done so manfully, he suf-
em to bind him hand and foot,
led him away. Ah! said the
that is the best knight I trow in
ld, and the most man of prowess,
hath been served so as he was
re than ten times, and his name
r Pelleas, and he loveth a great
this country, and her name is
And so when he loved her there
was cried in this country a great justs three days: and all the knights of this country were there and gentlewomen; and who that proved him the best knight should have a passing good sword and a circlet of gold, and the circlet the knight should give it to the fairest lady that was at the justs. And this knight, Sir Pelleas, was the best knight that was there, and there were five hundred knights, but there was never man that ever Sir Pelleas met withal, but he struck him down, or else from his horse. And every day of three days he struck down twenty knights, therefore they gave him the prize. And forthwithal he went there as the lady Ettard was, and gave her the circlet, and said openly she was the fairest lady that there was, and that would he prove upon any knight that would say nay.

CHAP. XXI.

How king Pelleas suffered himself to be taken prisoner because he would have a sight of his lady, and how Sir Gawaine promised him for to get to him the love of his lady.

And so he chose her for his sovereign lady, and never to love other but her. But she was so proud that she had scorn of him, and said she would never love him, though he would die for her. Wherefore all ladies and gentlewomen had scorn of her that she was so proud, for there were fairer than she, and there was none that was there but and Sir Pelleas would have proffered them love, they would have loved him for his noble prowess. And so this knight promised the lady Ettard to follow her into this country, and never to leave her till she loved him. And thus he is here the most part nigh her, and lodged by a priory, and every week she sendeth knights to fight with him. And when he hath put them to the worse, then will he suffer them wilfully to take him prisoner, because he would have a sight of this lady. And alway she doth him great despite, for sometimes she maketh

her knights to tie him to his horse tail, and some to bind him under the horse belly. Thus in the most shamefullest wise that she can think he is brought to her. And all she doth it for to cause him to leave this country, and to leave his loving. But all this cannot make him to leave, for and he would have fought on foot he might have had the better of the ten knights as well on foot as on horseback. Alas! said Sir Gawaine, it is great pity of him, and after this night I will seek him to-morrow in this forest, to do him all the help that I can. So on the morn Sir Gawaine took his leave of his host Sir Carados, and rode into the forest. And at the last he met with Sir Pelleas making great moan out of measure, so each of them saluted other, and asked him why he made such sorrow. And as it is above rehearsed, Sir Pelleas told Sir Gawaine: But alway I suffer her knights to fare so with me as ye saw yesterday, in trust at the last to win her love, for she knoweth well all her knights should not lightly win me and me list to fight with them to the uttermost. Wherefore I loved her not so sore I had lever die an hundred times, and I might die so oft, rather than I would suffer that despite; but I trust she will have pity upon me at the last, for love causeth many a good knight to suffer to have his intent, but, alas! I am unfortunate. And therewith he made so great dole and sorrow that unnethe he might hold him on horseback. Now, said Sir Gawaine, leave your mourning, and I shall promise you by the faith of my body, to do all that lieth in my power to get you the love of your lady, and thereto I will plight you my troth. Ah, said Sir Pelleas, of what court are ye? tell me, I pray you, my good friend. And then Sir Gawaine said, I am of the court of king Arthur, and his sister's son, and king Lot of Orkney was my father, and my name is Sir Gawaine. And then he said, My name is Sir Pelleas, born in the Isles, and of many isles I am lord, and never have I loved lady nor damsel till now in an unhappy time; and Sir knight, since ye are so nigh cousin unto king Arthur, and a king's son, therefore betray me not but help me, for I may never come by her but by some good knight, for she is in a strong castle here fast by within this four mile, and over all this country she is lady of. And so I may never come to her presence but as I suffer her knights to take me, and but if I did so that I might have a sight of her, I had been dead long or this time, and yet fair word had I never of her, but when I am brought tofore her she rebuketh me in the foulest manner. And then they take my horse and harness, and put me out of the gates, and she will not suffer me to eat nor drink, and always I offer me to be her prisoner, but that she will not suffer me, for I would desire no more what pains soever I had, so that I might have a sight of her daily. Well, said Sir Gawaine, all this shall I amend, and ye will do as I shall devise. I will have your horse and your armour, and so will I ride to her castle, and tell her that I have slain you, and so shall I come within her to cause her to cherish me, and then shall I do my true part that ye shall not fail to have the love of her.

CHAP. XXII.

How Sir Gawaine came to the lady Ettard, and how Sir Pelleas found them sleeping.

And therewith Sir Gawaine plight his troth unto Sir Pelleas to be true and faithful unto him. So each one plight their troth to other, and so they changed horses and harness, and Sir Gawaine departed and came to the castle whereas stood the pavilions of this lady without the gate. And as soon as Ettard had espied Sir Gawaine she fled in toward the castle. Sir Gawaine spake on high, and bad her abide, for he was not Sir Pelleas: I am another knight that hath slain Sir Pelleas. Do off your helm, said the lady Ettard, that I may see your visage. And so when she saw that it was not Sir Pelleas she made him alight, and led him unto her castle, and asked him faithfully whether he had slain Sir Pelleas. And

l her yea, and told her his name was waine of the court of king Arthur, is sister's son. Truly, said she, ; great pity, for he was a passing night of his body, but of all men e I hated him most, for I could be quit of him. And for ye have im I shall be your lady, and to do ng that may please you. So she Sir Gawaine good cheer. Then waine said that he loved a lady, y no mean she would love him. to blame, said Ettard, and she ot love you, for ye that be so well man, and such a man of prowess, is no lady in the world too good ou. Will ye, said Sir Gawaine, se me to do all that ye may, by ith of your body, to get me the f my lady? Yea, sir, said she, and promise you by the faith of my Now, said Sir Gawaine, it is lf that I love so well, therefore I ou hold your promise. I may oose, said the lady Ettard, but if uld be forsworn. And so she d him to fulfil all his desire.

t was then in the month of May ie and Sir Gawaine went out of the and supped in a pavilion, and in r pavilion she laid her damsels, the third pavilion she laid part of ights, for then she had no dread Pelleas. And there Sir Gawaine with her in that pavilion two days o nights. And on the third day morning early Sir Pelleas armed or he had never slept since Sir ne departed from him. For Sir ne had promised him, by the faith body, to come to him unto his n by that priory within the space y and a night. Then Sir Pelleas ed upon horseback, and came to avilions that stood without the and found in the first pavilion knights in three beds, and three s lying at their feet. Then went the second pavilion and found entlewomen lying in four beds. hen he went to the third pavilion und Sir Gawaine with his lady , and when he saw that his heart well nigh burst for sorrow, and said: Alas! that ever a knight should be found so false. And then he took his horse, and might not abide no longer for pure sorrow. And when he had ridden nigh half a mile, he turned again and thought to slay them both: and when he saw them both sleeping fast, unnethe he might hold him on horseback for sorrow, and said thus to himself, Though this knight be never so false I will never slay him sleeping; for I will never destroy the high order of knighthood. And therewith he departed again. And or he had ridden half a mile he returned again, and thought then to slay them both, making the greatest sorrow that ever man made. And when he came to the pavilions he tied his horse to a tree, and pulled out his sword naked in his hand, and went to them there as they lay, and yet he thought it were shame to slay them sleeping, and laid the naked sword overthwart both their throats, and so took his horse and rode his way. And when Sir Pelleas came to his pavilions he told his knights and his squires how he had sped, and said thus to them: For your true and good service ye have done me I shall give you all my goods, for I will go unto my bed, and never arise until I am dead. And when that I am dead I charge you that ye take the heart out of my body and bear it her betwixt two silver dishes, and tell her how I saw her with the false knight Sir Gawaine. Right so Sir Pelleas unarmed himself and went unto his bed, making marvellous dole and sorrow.

Then Sir Gawaine and Ettard awoke out of their sleep, and found the naked sword overthwart their throats. Then she knew well it was Sir Pelleas' sword. Alas! said she to Sir Gawaine, ye have betrayed me and Sir Pelleas both, for ye told me ye had slain him, and now I know well it is not so, he is on live. And if Sir Pelleas had been as uncourteous to you as ye have been to him, ye had been a dead knight: but ye have deceived me and betrayed me falsely, that all ladies and damsels may beware

by you and me. And therewith Sir Gawaine made him ready and went into the forest. So it happed then that the damsel of the lake Nimue met with a knight of Sir Pelleas, that went on his foot in the forest making great dole, and she asked him the cause. And so the woful knight told her how that his master and lord was betrayed through a knight and a lady, and how he will never arise out of his bed till he be dead. Bring me to him, said she, anon, and I will warrant his life, he shall not die for love, and she that hath caused him so to love she shall be in as evil plight as he is or it be long, for it is no joy of such a proud lady that will have no mercy of such a valiant knight. Anon that knight brought her unto him. And when she saw him lie in his bed, she thought she saw never so likely a knight: and therewith she threw an enchantment upon him, and he fell on sleep. And therewhile she rode unto the lady Ettard, and charged no man to awake him till she came again. So within two hours she brought the lady Ettard thither, and both ladies found him on sleep. Lo, said the damsel of the lake, ye ought to be ashamed for to murder such a knight. And therewith she threw such an enchantment upon her that she loved him sore, that well nigh she was out of her mind. Alas! said the lady Ettard, how is it befallen unto me that I love now him that I have most hated of any men alive. That is the righteous judgment of God, said the damsel. And then anon Sir Pelleas awaked, and looked upon Ettard. And when he saw her he knew her, and then he hated her more than any woman alive, and said: Away traitress, come never in my sight. And when she heard him say so, she wept and made great sorrow out of measure.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Pelleas loved no more Ettard by means of the damsel of the lake, whom he loved ever after.

Sir knight Pelleas, said the damsel of the lake, take your horse and co with me out of this country, and love a lady that shall love you. well, said Sir Pelleas, for this lad hath done me great despite and And there he told her the b and ending, and how he had never to have arisen till that he dead,—and now I hate her as ever I loved her. Thank me, damsel of the lake. Anon Sir armed him, and took his ho commanded his men to bring pavilions and his stuff where th of the lake would assign. So Ettard died for sorrow, and th of the lake rejoiced Sir Pelle loved together during their life

CHAP. XXIV.

How Sir Marhaus rode with the and how he came to the duke of Marches.

Now turn we unto Sir Marh rode with the damsel of thirt of age southward. And so th into a deep forest, and by fort were nighted, and rode long i way, and at the last they cam courtelage, and there they asked But the man of the courtelage w lodge them for no treaty th could treat. But thus much t man said: And ye will take th ture of your lodging, I shall b there ye shall be lodged. Wha ture is that that I shall have lodging? said Sir Marhaus. wit when ye come there, said t man. Sir, what adventure s bring me thither, I pray thee, Marhaus, for I am weary, my and my horse. So the good m and opened the gate, and w hour he brought him unto a fai And then the poor man called ter, and anon he was let into th and so told the lord how he him a knight errant and a dam would be lodged with him. in, said the lord, it may happen repent that they took their lodgi

Marhaus was let in with torch
d there was a goodly sight of
ien that welcomed him. And
iorse was led into the stable, and
the damsel were brought into
and there stood a mighty duke,
/ goodly men about him. Then
asked him what he hight, and
ence he came, and with whom
. Sir, said he, I am a knight
Arthur's, and knight of the
ound, and my name is Sir Mar-
l born I am in Ireland. And
l the duke to him, That me
nteth: the cause is this: for I
thy lord, nor none of thy fel-
he Table Round, and therefore
elf this night as well as thou
for as to-morn I and my six
ll match with you. Is there
y but that I must have ado
and your six sons at once?
Marhaus. No, said the duke,
ause I made mine avow, for Sir
slew my seven sons in a re-
therefore I made mine avow
e should never knight of king
court lodge with me, or come
I might have ado with him, but
ould have a revenging of my
th. What is your name? said
aus; I require you tell me, and
you. Wit ye well that I am
of South Marches. Ah, said
haus, I have heard say that
been a long time a great foe
lord Arthur and to his knights.
ill ye feel to-morn, said the
hall I have ado with you? said
ius. Yea, said the duke, thereof
I not choose, and therefore take
ur chamber, and ye shall have
o you belongeth. So Sir Mar-
rted, and was led to a chamber,
amsel was led unto her cham-
d on the morn the duke sent
Marhaus, and bad make him
And so Sir Marhaus arose and
m, and then there was a mass
e him, and he brake his fast,
ounted on horseback in the
the castle, there they should
attle. So there was the duke already on horseback, clean armed, and his six sons by him, and every each had a spear in his hand, and so they encountered, where as the duke and his two sons brake their spears upon him, but Sir Marhaus held up his spear and touched none of them.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Marhaus fought with the duke and his six sons, and made them to yield them.

THEN came the four sons by couples, and two of them brake their spears, and so did the other two. And all this while Sir Marhaus touched them not. Then Sir Marhaus ran to the duke, and smote him with his spear that horse and man fell to the earth. And so he served his sons. And then Sir Marhaus alight down, and bad the duke yield him or else he would slay him. And then some of his sons recovered, and would have set upon Sir Marhaus. Then Sir Marhaus said to the duke, Cease thy sons, or else I will do the uttermost to you all. When the duke saw he might not escape the death, he cried to his sons, and charged them to yield them to Sir Marhaus. And they kneeled all down and put the pommels of their swords to the knight, and so he received them. And then they holp up their father, and so by their common assent promised unto Sir Marhaus never to be foes unto king Arthur, and thereupon at Whitsuntide after, to come he and his sons, and put them in the king's grace. Then Sir Marhaus departed, and within two days his damsel brought him where as was a great tournament that the lady de Vawse had cried. And who that did best should have a rich circlet of gold worth a thousand besaunts. And there Sir Marhaus did so nobly that he was renowned, and had some time down forty knights, and so the circlet of gold was rewarded him. Then he departed from thence with great worship. And so within seven nights the damsel brought him to an earl's place, his name was the earl Fergus,

that after was Sir Tristram's knight. And this earl was but a young man, and late come into his lands, and there was a giant fast by him that hight Taulurd, and he had another brother in Cornwall that hight Taulas, that Sir Tristram slew when he was out of his mind. So this earl made his complaint unto Sir Marhaus, that there was a giant by him that destroyed all his lands, and how he durst nowhere ride nor go for him. Sir, said the knight, whether useth he to fight on horseback or on foot? Nay, said the earl, there may no horse bear him. Well, said Sir Marhaus, then will I fight with him on foot. So on the morn Sir Marhaus prayed the earl that one of his men might bring him whereas the giant was, and so he was, for he saw him sit under a tree of holly, and many clubs of iron and gisarms about him. So this knight dressed him to the giant, putting his shield afore him, and the giant took an iron club in his hand, and at the first stroke he clave Sir Marhaus's shield in two pieces. And there he was in great peril, for the giant was a wily fighter, but at the last Sir Marhaus smote off his right arm above the elbow. Then the giant fled, and the knight after him, and so he drove him into a water, but the giant was so high that he might not wade after him. And then Sir Marhaus made the earl Fergus's man to fetch him stones, and with those stones the knight gave the giant many sore knocks, till at the last he made him fall down into the water, and so was he there dead. Then Sir Marhaus went unto the giant's castle, and there he delivered twenty-four ladies and twelve knights out of the giant's prison, and there he had great riches without number, so that the days of his life he was never poor man. Then he returned to the earl Fergus, the which thanked him greatly and would have given him half his lands, but he would none take. So Sir Marhaus dwelled with the earl nigh half a year, for he was sore bruised *with the giant*, and at the last he took *his leave. And as he* rode by the way, *he met with Sir* Gawaine and Sir Uwaine, and so by adventure he met wit knights of king Arthur's court, t was Sir Sagramore le Desiro Osanna, Sir Dodinas le Savage, Felot of Listinoise; and there Si haus with one spear smote dow four knights, and hurt them so he departed to meet at his day af

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Uwaine rode with the da threescore years of age, and bou the prize at tourneying.

Now turn we unto Sir Uwain rode westward with his damsel o score winter of age, and she b him there as was a tournament ni march of Wales. And at that t ment Sir Uwaine smote down knights, therefore was given hi prize, and that was a gerfalco a white steed trapped with cl gold. So then Sir Uwaine did strange adventures by the me the old damsel, and so she b him unto a lady that was call lady of the Rock, the whic much courteous. So there w the country two knights that brethren, and they were calle perilous knights, the one hig Edward of the Red Castle, a other hight Sir Hue of the Red And these two brethren had dis the lady of the Rock of a bar lands by their extortion. And knight was lodged with this la made her complaint to him of the knights. Madam, said Sir Uwain are to blame, for they do again high order of knighthood and th that they made; and if it like you speak with them, because I am a of king Arthur's, and I will them with fairness; and if the not, I shall do battle with them, the defence of your right. Gra said the lady, and there as I m acquit you, God shall. So on the the two knights were sent for, th should come hither to speak wi lady of the Rock. And wit ye we

or they came with an hun-
But when this lady saw
s manner so big, she would
Sir Uwaine to go out to
no surety nor for no fair
ut she made him speak
over a tower. But finally
rethren would not be en-
answered that they would
they had. Well, said Sir
n will I fight with one of
rove that ye do this lady
at will we not, said they,
lo battle we two will fight
ight at once, and therefore
ght so we will be ready at
ye will assign. And if ye
ttle the lady shall have her
. Ye say well, said Sir
refore make you ready, so
ere tomorn in the defence
right.

HAP. XXVIII.

aine fought with two knights, id overcame them.

here agreement made on
that no treason should be
neither party. So then the
irted and made them ready.
ght Sir Uwaine had great
on the morn he arose
eard mass, and brake his
s he rode unto the plain
gates, where hoved the two
iding him. So they rode
sing sore, that Sir Edward
e brake their spears upon
And Sir Uwaine smote
that he fell over his horse,
spear brast not. And then
is horse and came upon Sir
erthrew him; but they soon
d dressed their shields and
vords, and bad Sir Uwaine
lo his battle to the utter-
t Sir Uwaine avoided his
nly, and put his shield
nd drew his sword, and
ssed together, and either
such strokes, *and there*
ethren wounded Sir Uwaine passing grievously, that the lady of the Rock wend he should have died. And thus they fought together five hours as men enraged out of reason. And at the last Sir Uwaine smote Sir Edward upon the helm such a stroke that his sword carved unto his collar-bone, and then Sir Hue abated his courage. But Sir Uwaine pressed fast to have slain him. That saw Sir Hue; he kneeled down and yielded him to Sir Uwaine. And he of his gentleness received his sword, and took him by the hand and went into the castle together. Then the lady of the Rock was passing glad, and the other brother made great sorrow for his brother's death. Then the lady was restored of all her lands, and Sir Hue was commanded to be at the court of king Arthur at the next feast of Pentecost. So Sir Uwaine dwelt with the lady nigh half a year, for it was long or he might be whole of his great hurts. And so when it drew nigh the term-day that Sir Gawaine, Sir Marhaus, and Sir Uwaine should meet at the cross way, then every knight drew him thither to hold his promise that they had made. And Sir Marhaus and Sir Uwaine brought their damsels with them, but Sir Gawaine had lost his damsel, as it is afore rehearsed.

CHAP. XXIX.

How at the year's end all three knights with their three damsels met at the fountain.

RIGHT so at the twelvemonth's end they met all three knights at the fountain, and their damsels. But the damsel that Sir Gawaine had could say but little worship of him. So they departed from the damsels and rode through a great forest, and there they met with a messager that came from king Arthur, that had sought them well nigh a twelvemonth throughout all England, Wales, and Scotland, and charged if ever he might find Sir Gawaine and Sir Uwaine, to bring them to the court again. And then were they all glad. And so prayed they Sir

Marhaus to ride with them to the king's court. And so within twelve days they came to Camelot; and the king was passing glad of their coming, and so was all the court. Then the king made them to swear upon a book to tell him all their adventures that had befallen them that twelvemonth, and so they did. And there was Sir Marhaus well known; for there were knights that he had matched aforetime, and he was named one of the best knights living. Against the feast of Pentecost came the damsel of the lake, and brought with her Sir Pelleas. And at that high feast there was great justing of knights, and of all the knights that were at that justs Sir Pelleas had the prize, and Sir Marhaus was named the next; but Sir Pelleas was so strong that there might but few knights sit him a buffet with a spear. And at that next feast Sir Pelleas and Sir Marhaus were made knights of the Table Round, for there were two sieges void, for two knights were slain that twelve and great joy had king Arthur Pelleas and of Sir Marhaus. But loved never after Sir Gawaine, bu spared him for the love of king But ofttimes at justs and tourn Sir Pelleas quit Sir Gawaine, fc rehearseth in the book of Frenc Sir Tristram many days after with Sir Marhaus in an islan there they did a great battle, bu last Sir Tristram slew him. Tristram was wounded that ha might recover, and lay at a n half a year. And Sir Pelleas worshipful knight, and was one four that achieved the Sangreal the damsel of the lake made means that never he had ado w Launcelot de Lake, for whe Launcelot was at any justs tournament she would not suff to be there that day, but if it the side of Sir Launcelot.

Explicit liber quartus. Incipit liber quintus.

The Fifth Book.

CHAP. I.

How twelve aged ambassadors of Rome came to king Arthur to demand truage for Britain.

When king Arthur had after long war rested, and held a royal feast and Table Round with his allies of kings, princes, and noble knights all of the Round Table, there came into his hall, he sitting in his throne royal, twelve ancient men, bearing each of them a branch of olive in token that they came as ambassadors and messagers from the emperor Lucius, which was called *at that time* Dictator or Procuror of *the Public Weal of* Rome. Which *said messagers, after* their entering and coming into the presence of ki thur, did to him their obeisa making to him reverence, and him in this wise: The high and emperor Lucius sendeth to the Britain greeting, commanding acknowledge him for thy lord, send him the truage due of this unto the empire, which thy fath other tofore thy predecessors ha as is of record, and thou as rel knowing him as thy sovereign, wi est and retainest contrary to the and decrees made by the nob worthy Julius Cesar, conqueror realm, and first emperor of And if thou refuse his deman commandment, know thou for

: shall make strong war against hy realms and lands, and shall : thee and thy subjects, that it ıe ensample perpetual unto all nd princes for to deny their truage at noble empire which domineth ıe universal world. Then when ad shewed the effect of their e, the king commanded them to .w them, and said he should take of council, and give to them an

Then some of the young hearing this their message would ın on them to have slain them, that it was a rebuke unto all ghts there being present to suffer) say so to the king. And anon ş commanded that none of them ain of death to missay them, nor n any harm, and commanded a to bring them to their lodging, that they have all that is neces- id requisite for them with the ser, and that no dainty be spared,

Romans be great lords, and their message please me not, r court, yet I must remember onour. After this the king let his lords and knights of the Table to council upon this and desired them to say their

Then Sir Cador of Corn- ıake first, and said, Sir, this : liketh me well, for we have lays rested us and have been id now I hope ye shall make war on the Romans, where I ıot we shall get honour. I be- ll, said Arthur, that this matter ı thee well, but these answers t be answered, for the demand ı me sore; for truly I will never truage to Rome, wherefore I u to counsel me. I have under- hat Belinus and Brenius, kings in, have had the empire in their ıany days, and also Constantine of queen Heleine, which is an ridence that we owe no tribute ıe, but of right we that be de- of them have right to claim the the empire.

CHAP. II.

How the kings and lords promised to king Arthur aid and help against the Romans.

Then answered king Anguish of Scotland, Sir, ye ought of right to be above all other kings, for unto you is none like nor pareil in all Christendom, of knighthood ne of dignity, and I counsel you never to obey the Romans, for when they reigned on us they distressed our elders, and put this land to great extortions and tallages, wherefore I make here mine avow to avenge me on them; and for to strengthen your quarrel I shall furnish twenty thousand good men of war, and wage them on my costs, which shall await on you with myself, when it shall please you. And the king of Little Britain granted him to the same thirty thousand; wherefore king Arthur thanked them. And then every man agreed to make war, and to aid after their power; that is to wit, the lord of West Wales promised to bring thirty thousand men, and Sir Uwaine, Sir Ider his son, with their cousins, promised to bring thirty thousand. Then Sir Launcelot with all other promised in likewise every man a great multitude. And when king Arthur understood their courages and good wills he thanked them heartily, and after let call the ambassadors to hear their answer. And in presence of all his lords and knights he said to them in this wise: I will that ye return unto your lord and Procuror of the Common Weal for the Romans, and say to him, Of his demand and commandment I set nothing, and that I know of no truage, ne tribute, that I owe to him, ne to none earthly prince, Christian ne heathen; but I pretend to have and occupy the sovereignty of the empire, wherein I am entitled by the right of my predecessors, sometime kings of this land; and say to him that I am deliberated, and fully concluded, to go with mine army with strength and power unto Rome by the grace of God to take possession in the empire, and subdue them that be rebel. Wherefore I command

him, and all them of Rome, that incontinent they make to me their homage, and to acknowledge me for their emperor and governor, upon pain that shall ensue. And then he commanded his treasurer to give them great and large gifts, and to pay all their expenses, and assigned Sir Cador to convey them out of the land. And so they took their leave and departed, and took their shipping at Sandwich, and passed forth by Flanders, Almain, the mountains, and all Italy, until they came unto Lucius. And after the reverence made, they made relation of their answer, like as ye tofore have heard. When the emperor Lucius had well understood their credence, he was sore moved as he had been all enraged, and said: I had supposed that Arthur would have obeyed to my commandment, and have served you himself, as him well beseemed or any other king to do. O sir, said one of the senators, let be such vain words, for we let you wit that I and my fellows were full sore afeard to behold his countenance; I fear me ye have made a rod for yourself, for he intendeth to be lord of this empire, which sore is to be doubted if he come, for he is all another man than ye ween, and holdeth the most noble court of the world; all other kings ne princes may not compare unto his noble maintenance. On new year's day we saw him in his estate, which was the royalest that ever we saw, for he was served at his table with nine kings and the noblest fellowship of other princes, lords, and knights, that be in the world, and every knight approved and like a lord, and holdeth Table Round: and in his person the most manly man that liveth, and is like to conquer all the world, for unto his courage it is too little: wherefore I advise you to keep well your marches and straits in the mountains; for certainly he is a lord to be doubted. Well, said Lucius, before Easter I suppose to pass the mountains and so forth into France, and there bereave him his lands with Genoese and other mighty warriors of Tuscany and Lombardy. And I shall send for them all that be subjects and allied to the empire of Rome to come to mine aid. And forthwith sent old wise knights unto these countries following: first, to Ambage and Arrage, to Alisandrie, to Inde, to Hermonie where as the river of Euphrates runneth into Asia, to Affrike, and Europe the large, to Ertaine and Elamie, to Arabie, Egypt, and to Damaske, to Damiete and Cayer, to Capdoce, to Tarce, Turkey, Pounce, and Pampoille, to Surrie, and Galacie. And all these were subject to Rome, and many more, as Greece, Cyprus, Macedone, Calabre, Cateland, Portingale, with many thousands of Spaniards. Thus all these kings, dukes, and admirals assembled about Rome with sixteen kings at once, with great multitude of people. When the emperor understood their coming, he made ready his Romans and all the people between him and Flanders. Also he had gotten with him fifty giants which had been born of fiends; and they were ordained to guard his person, and to break the front of the battle of king Arthur.

And thus he departed from Rome, and came down the mountains for to destroy the lands that king Arthur had conquered, and came to Cologne, and besieged a castle thereby, and won it soon, and stuffed it with two hundred Saracens or infidels, and after destroyed many fair countries which Arthur had won of king Claudas. And thus Lucius came with all his host which were spread out threescore mile in breadth, and commanded them to meet with him in Burgoyne, for he purposed to destroy the realm of Little Britain.

CHAP. III.

How king Arthur held a parliament at York, and how he ordained how the realm should be governed in his absence.

Now leave we of Lucius the emperor, and speak we of king Arthur, that commanded all them of his retinue to be ready at the utas of Hilary for to hold a parliament at York. And at

ament was concluded to arrest vy of the land, and to be ready teen days at Sandwich; and shewed to his army how he to conquer the empire which to have of right. And there ned two governors of this at is to say, Sir Bawdwin of or to counsel to the best, and tantine, son to Sir Cador of which after the death of as king of this realm. And esence of all his lords he re- e rule of the realm and Gue- queen unto them, wherefore celot was wroth, for he left ram with king Mark for the leale Isould. Then the queen made great sorrow for the of her lord and other, and in such wise that the ladies into her chamber. Thus the his great army departed, leav- ueen and realm in the govern- ir Bawdwin and Constantine. n he was on his horse he said high voice, If I die in this I will that Sir Constantine be r and king crowned of this next of my blood. And after and entered into the sea at with all his army, with a great of ships, galleys, cogges, and sailing on the sea.

CHAP. IV.

Arthur being shipped and lying cabin had a marvellous dream, the exposition thereof.

the king lay in his cabin in he fell in a slumbering, and a marvellous dream: him that a dreadful dragon did uch of his people, and he came of the west, and his head was l with azure, and his shoulders gold, his belly like mails of a is hue, his tail full of tatters, ull of fine sable, and his claws gold; and an hideous flame of out of his mouth, like as the water had flamed all of fire. After him seemed there came out of the orient a grimly boar all black in a cloud, and his paws as big as a post; he was rugged looking roughly, he was the foulest beast that ever man saw, he roared and romed so hideously that it were marvel to hear. Then the dreadful dragon advanced him, and came in the wind like a falcon, giving great strokes on the boar, and the boar hit him again with his grisly tusks that his breast was all bloody, and that the hot blood made all the sea red of his blood. Then the dragon flew away all on an height, and came down with such a swough, and smote the boar on the ridge, which was ten foot large from the head to the tail, and smote the boar all to powder, both flesh and bones, that it flittered all abroad on the sea. And therewith the king awoke anon and was sore abashed of this dream; and sent anon for a wise philosopher, commanding to tell him the signification of his dream. Sir, said the philosopher, the dragon that thou dreamedst of betokeneth thine own person that sailest here, and the colour of his wings be thy realms that thou hast won, and his tail which is all to-tattered signifieth the noble knights of the Round Table. And the boar that the dragon slew coming from the clouds, betokeneth some tyrant that tormenteth the people, or else thou art like to fight with some giant thyself, being horrible and abominable, whose peer ye saw never in your days; wherefore of this dreadful dream doubt thee nothing, but as a conqueror come forth thyself. Then after this soon they had sight of land, and sailed till they arrived at Barflete in Flanders, and when they were there he found many of his great lords ready as they had been commanded to await upon him.

CHAP. V.

How a man of the country told to him of a marvellous giant, and how he fought and conquered him.

THEN came to him an husbandman of the country, and told him how there

was in the country of Constantine, beside Britany, a great tyrant which had slain, murdered, and devoured much people of the country, and had been sustained seven year with the children of the commons of that land, insomuch, that all the children be all slain and destroyed, and now late he hath taken the duchess of Britany as she rode with her train, and hath led her to his lodging which is in a mountain, for to keep her to her life's end; and many people followed her, more than five hundred, but all they might not rescue her, but they left her shrieking and crying lamentably, wherefore I suppose that he hath slain her. She was wife unto thy cousin Sir Howell, whom we call full nigh of thy blood. Now as thou art a rightful king have pity on this lady, and revenge us all as thou art a noble conqueror. Alas! said king Arthur, this is a great mischief, I had lever than the best realm that I have that I had been a furlong way tofore him, for to have rescued that lady. Now fellow, said king Arthur, canst thou bring me there as this giant haunteth? Yea, Sir, said the good man, lo yonder where as thou seest those two great fires, there thou shalt find him, and more treasure than I suppose is in all France. When the king had understood this piteous case he returned into his tent.

Then he called unto him Sir Kay and Sir Bedivere, and commanded them secretly to make ready horse and harness for himself and them twain, for after even-song he would ride on pilgrimage with them two only unto Saint Michael's mount. And then anon he made him ready and armed him at all points, and took his horse and his shield. And so they three departed thence, and rode forth as fast as ever they might till that they came unto the foot of that mount. And there they alighted, and the king commanded them to tarry there, for he would himself go up into that mount. And so he ascended up into that hill till he came to a great fire, and there he found a careful widow wringing her hands and making great sorrow, sitting by a grave new made. And then king Arthur saluted her, and demanded of her wherefore she made such lamentation: to whom she answered and said, Sir knight, speak soft, for yonder is a devil: if he hear thee speak he will come and destroy thee; I hold thee unhappy; what dost thou here in this mountain? for if ye were such fifty as ye be, ye were not able to make resistance against this devil: here lieth a duchess dead, the which was the fairest of all the world, wife to Sir Howell duke of Britany; he hath murdered her. Dame, said the king, I come from the noble conqueror king Arthur, for to treat with that tyrant for his liege people. Fie upon such treaties, said the widow, he setteth not by the king, nor by no man else. But and if thou have brought Arthur's wife, dame Guenever, he shall be gladder than thou hadst given to him half France. Beware, approach him not too nigh, for he hath vanquished fifteen kings, and hath made him a coat full of precious stones, embroidered with their beards, which they sent him to have his love for salvation of their people at this last Christmas. And if thou wilt, speak with him at yonder great fire at supper. Well, said Arthur, I will accomplish my message for all your fearful words; and went forth by the crest of that hill, and saw where he sat at supper gnawing on a limb of a man, baking his broad limbs by the fire, and three fair damsels turning three spits, whereon were broached twelve young children late born, like young birds. When king Arthur beheld that piteous sight he had great compassion on them so that his heart bled for sorrow, and hailed him saying in this wise: He that all the world wieldeth, give thee short life and shameful death, and the devil have thy soul! Why hast thou murdered these young innocent children, and murdered this duchess? Therefore arise and dress thee, thou glutton; for this day shalt thou die of my hand. Then the glutton anon start up and took a great club in his hand, and smote at the king that his coronal

rth. And the king hit him
e carved his belly that his
lown to the ground. Then
ırew away his club, and
king in his arms that he
ribs. Then the three maid-
down and called to Christ
comfort of Arthur. And
weltered and wrung that he
ıile under and another time
so weltering and wallowing
lown the hill till they came
ırk, and ever as they so wel-
smote him with his dagger,
ıed they came to the place
two knights were and kept
se. Then when they saw the
the giant's arms they came
him. And then the king
Sir Kay to smite off the
and to set it upon a trun-
spear and bear it to Sir
l tell him that his enemy
nd after let this head be
ıarbican that all the people
behold it; and go ye two up
ain and fetch me my shield,
nd the club of iron. And
asure take ye it, for ye shall
oods out of number. So I
le and the club I desire no
was the fiercest giant that
ith, save one in the mount
hich I overcame, but this
and fiercer. Then the
ıed the club and the kirtle,
f the treasure they took to
and returned again to the
anon this was known
the country, wherefore the
and thanked the king. And
n, Give the thanks to God,
goods among you. And after
rthur said and commanded
owell that he should ordain
to be builded on the same
worship of Saint Michael.
morn the king removed
eat battle and came into
and in a valley, and there
heir tents. And the king
ıis dinner, there came in two
f whom the one was mar-
shal of France, and said to the king that the emperor was entered into France and had destroyed a great part, and was in Burgoyne, and had destroyed and made great slaughter of people, and burnt towns and boroughs; wherefore, if thou come not hastily, they must yield up their bodies and goods.

CHAP. VI.

How king Arthur sent Sir Gawaine and others to Lucius, and how they were assailed and escaped with worship.

THEN the king did do call Sir Gawaine, Sir Bors, Sir Lionel, and Sir Bedivere, and commanded them to go straight to Sir Lucius, and say ye to him that hastily he remove out of my land. And if he will not, bid him make him ready to battle, and not distress the poor people. Then anon these noble knights dressed them to horseback. And when they came to the green wood, they saw many pavilions set in a meadow, of silk of divers colours, beside a river, and the emperor's pavilion was in the middle with an eagle displayed above. To the which tent our knights rode toward, and ordained Sir Gawaine and Sir Bors to do the message, and left in a bushment Sir Lionel and Sir Bedivere. And then Sir Gawaine and Sir Bors did their message, and commanded Lucius in Arthur's name to avoid his land, or shortly to address him to battle. To whom Lucius answered and said: Ye shall return to your lord and say ye to him, that I shall subdue him and all his lands. Then Sir Gawaine was wroth, and said, I had lever than all France fight against thee. And so had I, said Sir Bors, lever than all Britany or Burgoyne. Then a knight named Sir Gainus, high cousin to the emperor, said, Lo, how these Britons be full of pride and boast, and they brag as though they bare up all the world. Then Sir Gawaine was sore grieved with these words, and pulled out his sword and smote off his head. And therewith turned their horses and rode over waters and through woods till they came to their bushment where as

Sir Lionel and Sir Bedivere were hoving. The Romans followed fast after on horseback and on foot over a champaign unto a wood; then Sir Bors turned his horse and saw a knight come fast on, whom he smote through the body with a spear, that he fell dead down to the earth. Then came Caliburn, one of the strongest of Pavie, and smote down many of Arthur's knights. And when Sir Bors saw him do so much harm, he addressed toward him, and smote him through the breast, that he fell down dead to the earth. Then Sir Feldenak thought to revenge the death of Gainus upon Sir Gawaine, but Sir Gawaine was ware thereof, and smote him on the head, which stroke stinted not till it came to his breast. And then he returned and came to his fellows in the bushment. And there was a recounter, for the bushment brake on the Romans, and slew and hewed down the Romans, and forced the Romans to flee and return; whom the noble knights chased unto their tents. Then the Romans gathered more people, and also footmen came on, and there was a new battle, and so much people that Sir Bors and Sir Berel were taken. But when Sir Gawaine saw that, he took with him Sir Idrus the good knight, and said he would never see king Arthur but if he rescued them, and pulled out Galatine his good sword, and followed them that led those two knights away, and he smote him that led Sir Bors, and took Sir Bors from him, and delivered him unto his fellows. And Sir Idrus in like wise rescued Sir Berel. Then began the battle to be great, that our knights were in great jeopardy, wherefore Sir Gawaine sent to king Arthur for succour, and that he hie him, for I am sore wounded, and that our prisoners may pay good out of number. And the messager came to the king, and told him his message. And anon the king did do assemble his army, but anon or he departed the prisoners were come, and Sir Gawaine and his fellows gat the field and put the *Romans to flight, and* after returned and *came with their fellowship* in such wise that no man of worship was lost of them, save that Sir Gawaine was sore hurt. Then the king did do ransack his wounds, and comforted him. And thus was the beginning of the first day's fighting of the Britons and Romans. And there were slain of the Romans more than ten thousand, and great joy and mirth was made that night in the host of king Arthur. And on the morn he sent all the prisoners into Paris, under the guard of Sir Launcelot, with many knights, and of Sir Cador.

CHAP. VII.

How Lucius sent certain spies in a bushment for to have taken his knights being prisoners, and how they were letted.

Now turn we to the emperor of Rome which espied that these prisoners should be sent to Paris, and anon he sent to lie in a bushment certain knights and princes with sixty thousand men for to rescue his knights and lords that were prisoners. And so on the morn as Sir Launcelot and Sir Cador, chieftains and governors of all them that conveyed the prisoners, as they should pass through a wood, Sir Launcelot sent certain knights to espy if any were in the woods to let them. And when the said knights came into the wood, anon they espied and saw the great enbushment, and returned and told Sir Launcelot that there lay in await for them threescore thousand Romans. And then Sir Launcelot with such knights as he had, and men of war to the number of ten thousand, put them in array, and met with them, and fought with them manly, and slew and cut to pieces many of the Romans, and slew many knights and admirals of the party of the Romans and Saracens: there was slain the king of Lyly and three great lords, Alakuke, Herawd, and Heringdale. But Sir Launcelot fought so nobly that no man might endure a stroke of his hand, but where he came he shewed his prowess and might, for he slew down right on every side. And the Romans and Sara-

from him as the sheep from
r from the lion, and put them
ode alive to flight. And so
fought that tidings came to
ur, and anon he made him
came to the battle, and saw
s how they had vanquished
: he embraced them knight
in his arms, and said: Ye
to bear all your honour and
ere was never king save my-
had so noble knights. Sir,
, there was none of us failed
of the prowess and manhood
celot were more than wonder
also of his cousins which did
any noble feats of war. And
ador told who of his knights
, as Sir Berel and other Sir
Sir Maurel, two good knights.
king wept, and dried his
a kerchief, and said, Your
d near hand destroyed you,
h ye had returned again
st no worship; for I call it
ghts to abide when they
tched. Nay, said Sir Laun-
the other, for once shamed
be recovered.

CHAP. VIII.

*tor told to Lucius of their dis-
, and also of the great battle
Arthur and Lucius.*

ve we king Arthur and his
hts which had won the field,
ought their prisoners to Paris,
ve of a senator which escaped
attle, and came to Lucius the
nd said to him, Sir emperor,
ee to withdraw thee: what
here? thou shalt win nothing
rches but great strokes out of
. For this day one of Arthur's
s worth in the battle an hun-
s. Fie on thee, said Lucius,
est cowardly, for thy words
more than all the loss that I
ay. And anon he sent forth
ich hight Sir *Leomie, with* a
, *and bad him hie him fast*
tofore, and he would follow hastily after. King Arthur was warned privily, and sent his people to Sessoyne, and took up the towns and castles from the Romans. Then the king commanded Sir Cador to take the rereward, and to take with him certain knights of the Round Table,—and Sir Launcelot, Sir Bors, Sir Kay, Sir Marrok, with Sir Marhaus, shall await on our person. Thus king Arthur distributed his host in divers parts, to the end that his enemies should not escape. When the emperor was entered into the vale of Sessoyne, he might see where king Arthur was embattled and his banner displayed: and he was beset round about with his enemies, that needs he must fight or yield him, for he might not flee, but said openly unto the Romans, Sirs, I admonish you that this day ye fight and acquit you as men, and remember how Rome domineth, and is chief and head over all the earth and universal world, and suffer not these Britons this day to abide against us. And therewith he did command his trumpets blow the bloody sounds, in such wise that the ground trembled and shook. Then the battles approached, and shove and shouted on both sides, and great strokes were smitten on both sides, many men overthrown, hurt, and slain; and great valiances, prowesses, and feats of war were that day shewed, which were over long to recount the noble feats of every man, for they should contain a whole volume. But in especial king Arthur rode in the battle, exhorting his knights to do well, and himself did as nobly with his hands as was possible a man to do; he drew out Excalibur his sword, and awaited ever where as the Romans were thickest and most grieved his people; and anon he addressed him on that part, and hewed and slew down right, and rescued his people, and he slew a great giant named Galapas, which was a man of an huge quantity and height, he shorted him and smote off both his legs by the knees, saying, Now art thou better of a size to deal with than thou were; and after smote off his head. There Sir Gawaine

fought nobly, and slew three admirals in that battle. And so did all the knights of the Round Table. Thus the battle between king Arthur and Lucius the emperor endured long. Lucius had on his side many Saracens which were slain. And thus the battle was great, and oftsides that one party was at a vantage, and anon at a disadvantage, which endured so long till at the last king Arthur espied where Lucius the emperor fought and did wonder with his own hands. And anon he rode to him, and either smote other fiercely: and at the last Lucius smote Arthur thwart the visage, and gave him a large wound. And when king Arthur felt himself hurt anon he smote him again with Excalibur, that it cleft his head from the summit of his head, and stinted not till it came to his breast. And then the emperor fell down dead, and there ended his life. And when it was known that the emperor was slain, anon all the Romans with all their host put them to flight; and king Arthur with all his knights followed the chase, and slew down right all them that they might attain. And thus was the victory given to king Arthur, and the triumph. And there were slain on the part of Lucius more than an hundred thousand. And after, king Arthur did do ransack the dead bodies, and did do bury them that were slain of his retinue, every man according to the state and degree that he was of. And them that were hurt he let the surgeons do search their hurts and wounds, and commanded to spare no salves nor medicines till they were whole.

Then the king rode straight to the place where the emperor Lucius lay dead, and with him he found slain the Sowdan of Surrey, the king of Egypt and the king of Ethiope, which were two noble kings, with seventeen other kings of divers regions, and also sixty senators of Rome, all noble men, whom the noble king Arthur did do balm and *gum with many* good gums aromatic, *and after did do cere* them in sixty fold *of cered cloth of Sendal*, and laid them in chests of lead, because they not chafe nor savour; and upon a bodies their shields with their an banners were set, to the end they be known of what country the And after, he found three senato were onlive, to whom he said, For your lives I will that ye take the bodies, and carry them with yo great Rome, and present them Potestate on my behalf, shewi my letters, and tell them that I person shall hastily be at Rome I suppose the Romans shall b how they shall demand any tri me. And I command you to sa ye shall come to Rome to the Po and all the Council and Senat I send to them these dead for the tribute that they ha manded. And if they be not with these, I shall pay more coming, for other tribute owe nor none other will I pay. A thinketh this sufficeth for Brita land, and all Almaine, with G And furthermore I charge say to them that I comman upon pain of their heads never mand tribute ne tax of me ne lands.

Then with this charge and co ment the three senators afore parted with all the said dead lying, the body of Lucius in covered with the arms of the all alone, and after alway two b kings in a chariot, and then the of the senators after them, and toward Rome, and shewed the tion and message to the Potest Senate, recounting the battle France, and how the field was l much people and innumerable Wherefore they advised them wise to move no more war that noble conqueror, Arthu his might and prowess is mos doubted, seeing the noble kin great multitude of knights of the Table, to whom none earthly may compare.

CHAP. IX.

ur, after he had achieved the gainst the Romans, entered into e, and so into Italy.

rn we unto king Arthur and knights, which, after the great hieved against the Romans, nto Loraine, Brabant, and and thence returned into high and so over the mountains ardy, and after into Tuscany, vas a city which in no wise ld themselves nor obey, where- Arthur besieged it, and lay it it, and gave many assaults r. And they within defended antly. Then, on a time, the d Sir Florence, a knight, and im they lacked victual, and m hence be great forests and ds, wherein be many of mine with much cattle: I will that e thee ready, and go thither g, and take with thee Sir Ga- nephew, Sir Wisshard, Sir r Cleremond, and the captain , with other, and bring with e beasts that ye there can get. n these knights made them d rode over holts and hills, forests and woods, till they a fair meadow full of fair nd grass. And there they m and their horses all that nd in the springing of the next morn Sir Gawaine took and stole away from his seek some adventures. And was ware of a man armed, is horse easily by a wood's is shield laced to his shoulder, a strong courser, without any g a page bearing a mighty he knight bare in his shield ons of gold in sable carbuncle of silver. When Sir Gawaine is gay knight he fewtred his rode straight to him, and de- im from whence that he was. r answered and said he was y, and demanded of Sir Ga- *What profferest thou proud* knight so boldly? Here gettest thou no prey: thou mayest prove what thou wilt, for thou shalt be my prisoner or thou depart. Then said Gawaine, Thou vauntest thee greatly, and speakest proud words; I counsel thee for all thy boast that thou make thee ready, and take thy gear to thee, tofore greater grief fall to thee.

CHAP. X.

Of a battle done by Gawaine against a Saracen, which after was yielden and became Christian.

THEN they took their spears, and ran each at other with all the might they had, and smote each other through their shields into their shoulders, wherefore anon they pulled out their swords, and smote great strokes, that the fire sprang out of their helms. Then Sir Gawaine was all abashed, and with Galatine, his good sword, he smote through shield and thick hauberk made of thick mails, and all to-rushed and brake the precious stones, and made him a large wound, that men might see both liver and lung. Then groaned that knight, and addressed him to Sir Gawaine, and with an awk stroke gave him a great wound, and cut a vein, which grieved Sir Gawaine sore, and he bled sore. Then the knight said to Sir Gawaine, Bind thy wound or thy bleeding change, for thou be-bleedest all thy horse and thy fair arms; for all the barbers of Britain can not stanch thy blood; for whosoever is hurt with this blade, he shall never be stanched of bleeding. Then answered Gawaine, It grieveth me but little; thy great words shall not fear me nor lessen my courage, but thou shalt suffer teen and sorrow or we depart: but tell me in haste who may stanch my bleeding? That may I do, said the knight, if I will, and so I will if thou wilt succour and aid me, that I may be christened and believe on God, and thereof I require thee of thy manhood, and it shall be great merit for thy soul. I grant, said Gawaine, so God help me, to accomplish all thy desire: but first tell me

what thou soughtest here thus alone, and of what land and liegiance thou art. Sir, he said, my name is Priamus, and a great prince is my father, and he hath been rebel unto Rome, and over ridden many of their lands. My father is lineally descended of Alexander and of Hector by right line. And duke Joshua and Maccabæus were of our lineage. I am right inheritor of Alexandria and Africa, and all the out isles, yet will I believe on thy Lord that thou believest on; and for thy labour I shall give thee treasure enough. I was so elate and haughty in my heart, that I thought no man my peer, nor to me semblable. I was sent into this war with seven-score knights, and now I have encountered with thee which hast given to me of fighting my fill; wherefore sir knight I pray thee to tell me what thou art? I am no knight, said Gawaine, I have been brought up in the guard-robe with the noble king Arthur many years, for to take heed to his armour and his other array, and to point his paltocks that belong to himself. At Yule last he made me yeoman, and gave to me horse and harness and an hundred pound in money: and if fortune be my friend I doubt not but to be well advanced and holpen by my liege lord. Ah, said Priamus, if his knaves be so keen and fierce, his knights be passing good. Now, for the king's love of heaven, whether thou be a knave or a knight, tell thou me thy name. By heaven, said Sir Gawaine, now will I say thee sooth: my name is Sir Gawaine, and known I am in his court and in his chamber, and one of the knights of the Round Table: he dubbed me a duke with his own hand. Therefore grudge not if this grace is to me fortuned; it is the goodness of God that lent to me my strength. Now am I better pleased, said Priamus, than if thou hadst given me all the province, and Paris the rich. I had lever to have been torn with wild horses, than any varlet had won *such praise*, or any page or pricker *should have had* prize on me. But *now, sir knight, I* warn thee that hereby is a duke of Loraine with all h and the noblest men of Dolph lords of Lombardy, with the ga Godard, and Saracens of So that numbered sixty thousand men of arms; wherefore, but if us hence, it will harm us both be sore hurt, never like to But take heed to my page tha horn blow, for if he do, there be here fast by an hundred good awaiting on my person, and take thee there shall no ransom ne silver acquit thee. Then waine rode over a water for him, and the knight followed h so rode forth till they came to lows which were in the meadow they had been all the night. Sir Wisshard was ware of Sir G and saw that he was hurt, he him sorrowfully weeping, and de of him who had so hurt him. waine told how he had fought w man, and each of them had hu and how he had salves to hea but I can tell you other tidin soon we shall have ado with ma mies. Then Sir Priamus and waine alighted, and let their graze in the meadow, and u them, and then the blood ran from their wounds. And Priam from his page a phial full of t waters that came out of Paradi with certain balm anointed their and washed them with that wa within an hour after they were whole as ever they were. An with a trumpet were they all ass to council, and there Priamus to them what lords and knights ha to rescue him, and that with they should be assailed with thousands, wherefore he counsell to withdraw them. Then Sir G said, it were great shame to t avoid without any strokes; whe advise to take our arms, and t us ready to meet with these S and misbelieving men, and wi help of God we shall overthrow and have a fair day on them. A

ihall abide still in this field to ost as a noble knight, and we orsake yonder fellows. Now, aus, cease your words, for I ye shall find in yonder woods ilous knights: they will put ts to call you on: they be out r, and ye are not past seven which be over few to fight nany. Nevertheless, said Sir we shall once encounter them hat they can do, and the best the victory.

CHAP. XI.

aracens came out of a wood for e their beasts, and of a great

ir Florence called to him Sir with an hundred knights, and h the herd of beasts. Then him seven hundred men of Sir Ferant of Spain on a fair e springing out of the woods, to Sir Florence, and asked him ed. Then Sir Florence took , and rode against him, and n in the forehead and brake bone. Then all the other ed, and thought to avenge the Sir Ferant, and smote in em, and there was great fight, y slain and laid down to nd Sir Florence with his hun- nts always kept the post, and anly. Then when Priamus knight perceived the great vent to Sir Gawaine and bad ie should go and succour his , which were sore bested with ies. Sir, grieve you not, said ne, for their honour shall be ihall not once move my horse ard but if I see more than for they be strong enough to m. And with that he saw an Sir Ethelwold and the duke nen come leaping out of a h many thousands, and Pri- ights, and came straight unto . Then Sir Gawaine *com- knights, and bad them not be* abashed, for all shall be ours. Then they began to gallop, and met with their enemies: there were men slain and overthrown on every side. Then thrust in among them the knights of the Table Round, and smote down to the earth all them that withstood them, insomuch that they made them to recoil and flee. Truly, said Sir Gawaine, this gladdeth my heart, for now be they less in number by twenty thousand. Then entered into the battle Jubance a giant, and fought and slew downright, and distressed many of our knights, among whom was slain Sir Gherard, a knight of Wales. Then our knights took heart to them, and slew many Saracens. And then came in Sir Priamus with his pennon, and rode with the knights of the Round Table, and fought so manfully that many of their enemies lost their lives. And there Sir Priamus slew the Marquis of Moises land. And Sir Gawaine with his fellows so quit them that they had the field, but in that fight was Sir Chestelaine, a child and ward of Sir Gawaine, slain, wherefore was much sorrow made, and his death was soon avenged. Thus was the battle ended, and many lords of Lombardy and Saracens left dead in the field.

Then Sir Florence and Sir Gawaine harboured surely their people, and took great plenty of cattle, of gold and silver and great treasure and riches, and returned unto king Arthur, which lay still at the siege. And when they came to the king they presented their prisoners, and recounted their adventures, and how they had vanquished their enemies.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Gawaine returned to king Arthur with his prisoners, and how the king won a city, and how he was crowned emperor.

Now thanked be God, said the noble king Arthur. But what manner man is he that standeth by himself? he seemeth no prisoner. Sir, said Gawaine, this is a good man of arms; he hath matched me, but he is yielden unto God and to me for to become Christian: had not

he been we should never have returned, wherefore I pray you that he may be baptized, for their liveth not a nobler man nor better knight of his hands. Then the king let him anon be christened, and did do call him his first name Priamus, and made him a duke and knight of the Table Round. And then anon the king let do cry assault to the city, and there was rearing of ladders, breaking of walls, and the ditch filled, that men with little pain might enter into the city. Then came out a duchess, and Clarisin the countess, with many ladies and damsels, and kneeling before king Arthur required him for the love of God to receive the city and not to take it by assault, for then should many guiltless be slain. Then the king availed his visor with a meek and noble countenance, and said, Madam, there shall none of my subjects misdo you nor your maidens, nor to none that to you belong, but the duke shall abide my judgment. Then anon the king commanded to leave the assault; and anon the duke's eldest son brought out the keys, and kneeling, delivered them to the king, and besought him of grace: and the king seized the town by assent of his lords, and took the duke and sent him to Dover, there for to abide prisoner the term of his life, and assigned certain rents for the dower of the duchess and for her children. Then he made lords to rule those lands, and laws, as a lord ought to do in his own country. And after he took his journey toward Rome, and sent Sir Floris and Sir Floridas tofore with five hundred men of arms, and they came to the city of Urbine, and laid there a bushment as them seemed most best for them, and rode tofore the town, where anon issued out much people and skirmished with the fore riders. Then brake out the bushment, and won the bridge, and after the town, and set upon the walls the king's banner. Then came the king upon a hill, and saw the city and his banner on the walls, by the which he knew that the city was won. And anon he sent and commanded that none of his liege men should misuse no lady, v maid: and when he came into he passed to the castle, and c them that were in sorrow, and there a captain, a knight of country. And when they of Mil that the same city was won, t to king Arthur great sums of and besought him as their lord pity on them, promising to be jects for ever, and yield to him and fealty for the lands of P and Pavia, Petersaint, and the Tremble, and to give him y million of gold all his lifetime. he rideth into Tuscany, and towns and castles, and waste his way that to him will no and so to Spolute and Viter from thence he rode into the Vicecount among the vines. A thence he sent to the senator whether they would know him lord. But soon after on a came unto king Arthur all the that were left on live, and the cardinals that then dwelled in and prayed him of peace, and p him full large, and besought governor to give licence for si for to assemble together all the and then to crown him empe crism, as it belongeth to so high I assent, said the king, like as devised, and at Christmas ther crowned, and to hold my Roun with my knights as me liketh then the senators made thing for his enthronization. And at appointed, as the romance tel came into Rome, and was crow peror by the Pope's hand with royalty that could be made, journed there a time, and est all his lands from Rome unto and gave lands and realms u servants and knights, to every ea his desert, in such wise that no plained, rich nor poor. And to Sir Priamus the duchy of L and he thanked him, and said would serve him the days of l and after made dukes and ea

very man rich. Then after this knights and lords and all the men of estate assembled them m, and said: Blessed be God, r is finished, and your conquest l, insomuch that we know none nor mighty that dare make war you: wherefore we beseech you n homeward and give us licence ome to our wives, from whom : been long, and to rest us, for urney is finished with honour ship. Then said the king, Ye n, and for to tempt God it is no and therefore make you ready and return we into England. Then was there trussing of harness and baggage, and great carriage. And after licence given, he returned and commanded that no man in pain of death should rob nor take victual, nor other thing by the way, but that he should pay therefore. And thus he came over the sea, and landed at Sandwich, against whom queen Guenever his wife came and met him: and he was nobly received of all his commons in every city and burgh, and great gifts presented to him at his home coming, to welcome him with.

endeth the fyfthe booke of the conqueste that kynge Arthur de agaynste Lucius the Emperoure of Rome, and here folowyth sixth book, which is of syr Launcelot du lake.

The Sixth Book.

CHAP. I.

r Launcelot and Sir Lionel de- from the court for to seek ad- es, and how Sir Lionel left him g, and was taken.

after that king Arthur was om Rome into England, then all hts of the Table Round resorted king, and made many justs and ents; and some there were that t knights which increased so in d worship that they passed all ows in prowess and noble deeds, was well proved on many. But al it was proved on Sir Launcelot ; for in all tournaments and d deeds of arms, both for life th, he passed all other knights, o time he was never overcome t were by treason or enchant- So Sir Launcelot increased so usly in worship and honour; he is the first knight that the book maketh mention of after king Arthur came from Rome. Wherefore queen Guenever had him in great favour above all other knights, and in certain he loved the queen again above all other ladies and damsels all his life, and for her he did many deeds of arms, and saved her from the fire through his noble chivalry. Thus Sir Launcelot rested him long with play and game. And then he thought himself to prove himself in strange adventures: then he bad his nephew Sir Lionel for to make him ready, for we two will seek adventures. So they mounted on their horses, armed at all rights, and rode into a deep forest, and so into a deep plain. And then the weather was hot about noon, and Sir Launcelot had great lust to sleep. Then Sir Lionel espied a great apple tree that stood by an hedge, and said, Brother, yonder is a fair shadow, there may we rest us and our horses. It is well said, fair brother, said Sir Launcelot, for this seven year I was not so sleepy as I am now. And so they there alighted, and tied their

horses unto sundry trees, and so Sir Launcelot laid him down under an apple tree, and his helm he laid under his head. And Sir Lionel waked while he slept. So Sir Launcelot was asleep passing fast. And in the meanwhile there came three knights riding, as fast fleeing as ever they might ride. And there followed them three but one knight. And when Sir Lionel saw him, him thought he saw never so great a knight nor so well faring a man, neither so well apparelled unto all rights. So within a while this strong knight had overtaken one of these knights, and there he smote him to the cold earth that he lay still. And then he rode unto the second knight, and smote him so that man and horse fell down. And then straight to the third knight he rode, and he smote him behind his horse tail a spear's length. And then he alight down, and reined his horse on the bridle, and bound all the three knights fast with the reins of their own bridles. When Sir Lionel saw him do thus, he thought to assay him, and made him ready, and stilly and privily he took his horse, and thought not for to awake Sir Launcelot. And when he was mounted upon his horse he overtook this strong knight and bad him turn: and the other smote Sir Lionel so hard that horse and man he bare to the earth, and so he alight down and bound him fast, and threw him overthwart his own horse, and so he served them all four, and rode with them away to his own castle. And when he came there, he made unarm them, and beat them with thorns all naked, and after put them in a deep prison where there were many more knights that made great dolour.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Ector followed for to seek Sir Launcelot, and how he was taken by Sir Turquine.

When Sir Ector de Maris wist that Sir Launcelot was past out of the court to seek adventures he was wroth with himself, and made him ready t
Sir Launcelot, and as he had
long in a great forest, he met
man that was like a forester.
fellow, said Sir Ector, knowest t
this country any adventures that l
nigh hand? Sir, said the forest
country know I well, and hereby
this mile is a strong manor, an
dyked, and by that manor, on t
hand, there is a fair ford for
to drink of, and over that ford
groweth a fair tree, and thereon h
many fair shields that wielded so
good knights: and at the hole
tree hangeth a bason of copp
laton, and strike upon that baso
the butt of thy spear thrice, an
after thou shalt hear new tiding
else hast thou the fairest grac
many a year had ever knight that
through this forest. Gramercy, s
Ector, and departed and came
tree, and saw many fair shield
among them he saw his brother's
Sir Lionel, and many more that h
that were his fellows of the Round
the which grieved his heart, and h
mised to revenge his brother.
anon Sir Ector beat on the bason
were wood, and then he gave his
drink at the ford: and there c
knight behind him and bad him
out of the water and make him
and Sir Ector anon turned him s
and in fewter cast his spear, and
the other knight a great buffet t
horse turned twice about. Thi
well done, said the strong knigh
knightly thou hast stricken me
therewith he rushed his horse
Ector and caught him under his
arm, and bare him clean out
saddle, and rode with him awa
his own hall, and threw him dc
the midst of the floor. The na
this knight was Sir Turquine. T
said unto Sir Ector, For thou has
this day more unto me than any
did these twelve years, now will I
thee thy life, so thou wilt be sw
be my prisoner all thy life days.
said Sir Ector, that will I never p

that I will do mine advantage.
repenteth, said Sir Turquine.
he made to unarm him, and
with thorns all naked, and after
own in a deep dungeon, where
nany of his fellows. But when
saw Sir Lionel, then made he
ow. Alas, brother, said Sir
ere is my brother Sir Laun-
air brother, I left him on sleep
t I from him went, under an
, and what is become of him I
l you. Alas, said the knights,
uncelot help us we may never
ed, for we know now no knight
le to match our master Tur-

CHAP. III.

*queens found Sir Launcelot
, and how by enchantment be
n and led into a castle.*

ave we these knights prisoners,
we of Sir Launcelot du Lake
under the apple tree sleeping.
it the noon there came by him
is of great estate; and, for the
e sun should not annoy them,
four knights about them and
th of green silk on four spears,
em and the sun, and the queens
ur white mules.
; they rode they heard by them
rse grimly neigh, and then were
of a sleeping knight that lay
under an apple tree; anon as
ens looked on his face they
t it was Sir Launcelot. Then
n for to strive for that knight;
said she would have him to

We shall not strive, said
e Fay, that was king Arthur's
hall put an enchantment upon
e shall not awake in six hours,
I will lead him away unto my
d when he is surely within
I shall take the enchantment
, and then let him choose
us he will have for his love.
chantment was cast upon Sir
, and then they laid him upon
, and bare him so on horse-
ixt two knights, and brought
him unto the castle Chariot, and there they laid him in a chamber cold, and at night they sent unto him a fair damsel with his supper ready dight. By that the enchantment was past, and when she came she saluted him, and asked him what cheer? I cannot say, fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, for I wot not how I came into this castle but it be by an enchantment. Sir, said she, ye must make good cheer, and if ye be such a knight as is said ye be, I shall tell you more tomorn by prime of the day. Gramercy, fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, of your good will I require you. And so she departed. And there he lay all that night without comfort of any body.

And on the morn early came these four queens, passingly well beseen, all they bidding him good morn, and he them again. Sir knight, the four queens said, thou must understand thou art our prisoner, and we here know thee well, that thou art Sir Launcelot du Lake, king Ban's son. And truly we understand your worthiness that thou art the noblest knight living; and, as we know well, there can no lady have thy love but one, and that is queen Guenever, and now thou shalt lose her for ever, and she thee, and therefore thee behoveth now to choose one of us four. I am the queen Morgan le Fay, queen of the land of Gore, and here is the queen of Northgalis, and the queen of Eastland, and the queen of the Outlsles; now choose ye one of us which thou wilt have to thy love, for thou mayst not choose or else in this prison to die. This is an hard case, said Sir Launcelot, that either I must die or else choose one of you, yet had I lever to die in this prison with worship, than to have one of you to my love maugre my head. And therefore ye be answered, for I will have none of you, for ye be false enchantresses. And as for my lady dame Guenever, were I at my liberty as I was, I would prove it on you or upon yours, that she is the truest lady unto her lord living. Well, said the queens, is this your answer, that you

fought nobly, and slew three admirals in that battle. And so did all the knights of the Round Table. Thus the battle between king Arthur and Lucius the emperor endured long. Lucius had on his side many Saracens which were slain. And thus the battle was great, and oftsides that one party was at a vantage, and anon at a disadvantage, which endured so long till at the last king Arthur espied where Lucius the emperor fought and did wonder with his own hands. And anon he rode to him, and either smote other fiercely: and at the last Lucius smote Arthur thwart the visage, and gave him a large wound. And when king Arthur felt himself hurt anon he smote him again with Excalibur, that it cleft his head from the summit of his head, and stinted not till it came to his breast. And then the emperor fell down dead, and there ended his life. And when it was known that the emperor was slain, anon all the Romans with all their host put them to flight; and king Arthur with all his knights followed the chase, and slew down right all them that they might attain. And thus was the victory given to king Arthur, and the triumph. And there were slain on the part of Lucius more than an hundred thousand. And after, king Arthur did do ransack the dead bodies, and did do bury them that were slain of his retinue, every man according to the state and degree that he was of. And them that were hurt he let the surgeons do search their hurts and wounds, and commanded to spare no salves nor medicines till they were whole.

Then the king rode straight to the place where the emperor Lucius lay dead, and with him he found slain the Sowdan of Surrey, the king of Egypt and the king of Ethiope, which were two noble kings, with seventeen other kings of divers regions, and also sixty senators of Rome, all noble men, whom the noble king Arthur did do balm and gum with many good gums aromatic, and after did do cere them in sixty fold of cered cloth of Sendal, and laid them in chests of lead, because they not chafe nor savour; and upon a bodies their shields with their ar banners were set, to the end they be known of what country the And after, he found three senato were onlive, to whom he said, For your lives I will that ye take thes bodies, and carry them with yo great Rome, and present them Potestate on my behalf, shewi my letters, and tell them that I person shall hastily be at Rome. I suppose the Romans shall b how they shall demand any trib me. And I command you to sa ye shall come to Rome to the Po and all the Council and Senat I send to them these dead for the tribute that they ha manded. And if they be not c with these, I shall pay more coming, for other tribute owe I nor none other will I pay. A thinketh this sufficeth for Britai land, and all Almaine, with Ge And furthermore I charge y say to them that I command upon pain of their heads never mand tribute ne tax of me ne lands.

Then with this charge and com ment the three senators aforesa parted with all the said dead lying, the body of Lucius in covered with the arms of the all alone, and after alway two bo kings in a chariot, and then the of the senators after them, and s toward Rome, and shewed thei tion and message to the Potesta Senate, recounting the battle d France, and how the field was lo much people and innumerable Wherefore they advised them wise to move no more war a that noble conqueror, Arthur his might and prowess is most doubted, seeing the noble king great multitude of knights of the Table, to whom none earthly may compare.

CHAP. IX.

ır, after he had achieved the ainst the Romans, entered into , and so into Italy.

n we unto king Arthur and nights, which, after the great ieved against the Romans, ıto Loraine, Brabant, and ınd thence returned into high and so over the mountains ardy, and after into Tuscany, as a city which in no wise l themselves nor obey, where- Arthur besieged it, and lay : it, and gave many assaults . And they within defended ntly. Then, on a time, the l Sir Florence, a knight, and m they lacked victual, and n hence be great forests and ls, wherein be many of mine ith much cattle: I will that thee ready, and go thither ; and take with thee Sir Ga- nephew, Sir Wisshard, Sir Cleremond, and the captain with other, and bring with beasts that ye there can get. these knights made them rode over holts and hills, ›rests and woods, till they a fair meadow full of fair ıd grass. And there they n and their horses all that ıd in the springing of the next morn Sir Gawaine took and stole away from his seek some adventures. And vas ware of a man armed, s horse easily by a wood's s shield laced to his shoulder, ı strong courser, without any ş a page bearing a mighty e knight bare in his shield ns of gold in sable carbuncle f silver. When Sir Gawaine gay knight he fewtred his rode straight to him, and de- n from whence that he was. answered and said he was ', and demanded of Sir Ga- hat profferest thou proud knight so boldly? Here gettest thou no prey: thou mayest prove what thou wilt, for thou shalt be my prisoner or thou depart. Then said Gawaine, Thou vauntest thee greatly, and speakest proud words; I counsel thee for all thy boast that thou make thee ready, and take thy gear to thee, tofore greater grief fall to thee.

CHAP. X.

Of a battle done by Gawaine against a Saracen, which after was yielden and became Christian.

THEN they took their spears, and ran each at other with all the might they had, and smote each other through their shields into their shoulders, wherefore anon they pulled out their swords, and smote great strokes, that the fire sprang out of their helms. Then Sir Gawaine was all abashed, and with Galatine, his good sword, he smote through shield and thick hauberk made of thick mails, and all to-rushed and brake the precious stones, and made him a large wound, that men might see both liver and lung. Then groaned that knight, and addressed him to Sir Gawaine, and with an awk stroke gave him a great wound, and cut a vein, which grieved Sir Gawaine sore, and he bled sore. Then the knight said to Sir Gawaine, Bind thy wound or thy bleeding change, for thou be-bleedest all thy horse and thy fair arms; for all the barbers of Britain can not stanch thy blood; for whosoever is hurt with this blade, he shall never be stanched of bleeding. Then answered Gawaine, It grieveth me but little; thy great words shall not fear me nor lessen my courage, but thou shalt suffer teen and sorrow or we depart: but tell me in haste who may stanch my bleeding? That may I do, said the knight, if I will, and so I will if thou wilt succour and aid me, that I may be christened and believe on God, and thereof I require thee of thy manhood, and it shall be great merit for thy soul. I grant, said Gawaine, so God help me, to accomplish all thy desire: but first tell me

sent unto Sir Launcelot three knights, with the four white shields.

And on the Tuesday they lodged them in a little leaved wood beside there the tournament should be. And there were scaffolds and holes that lords and ladies might behold and to give the prize. Then came into the field the king of Northgalis with eightscore helms. And then the three knights of Arthur stood by themselves. Then came into the field king Bagdemagus with fourscore of helms. And then they fewtred their spears, and came together with a great dash, and there were slain of knights, at the first recounter, twelve of king Bagdemagus's party, and six of the king of Northgalis' party, and king Bagdemagus's party was far set aback.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Launcelot behaved him in a tournament, and how he met with Sir Turquine leading away Sir Gaberis.

With that came Sir Launcelot du Lake, and he thrust in with his spear in the thickest of the press, and there he smote down with one spear five knights, and of four of them he brake their backs. And in that throng he smote down the king of Northgalis, and brake his thigh in that fall. All this doing of Sir Launcelot saw the three knights of Arthur. Yonder is a shrewd guest, said Sir Mador de la Porte, therefore have here once at him. So they encountered, and Sir Launcelot bare him down horse and man, so that his shoulder went out of joint. Now befalleth it to me to just, said Mordred, for Sir Mador hath a sore fall. Sir Launcelot was ware of him, and gat a great spear in his hand, and met him, and Sir Mordred brake a spear upon him, and Sir Launcelot gave him such a buffet that the bow of his saddle brake, and so he flew over his horse tail, that his helm went into the earth a foot and more, that nigh his neck was broken, and there he lay long in a swoon. Then came in Sir Gahalatine with a spear, and Launcelot against him, with all their strength that they might drive, that both their to-brast even to their hands, an they flung out with their sword gave many a grim stroke. Th Sir Launcelot wroth out of m and then he smote Sir Gahalat the helm, that his nose burst blood, and ears and mouth bot therewith his head hung low. therewith his horse ran away wit and he fell down to the earth.

Anon therewithal Sir Launcel a great spear in his hand, and, that great spear brake, he bare d the earth sixteen knights, some and man, and some the man a the horse, and there was none b he hit surely he bare none arm day. And then he gat anothe spear, and smote down twelve k and the most part of them never after. And then the knights of t of Northgalis would just no mo there the prize was given unt Bagdemagus. So either party d unto his own place, and Sir L lot rode forth with king Bagd unto his castle, and there he ha ing good cheer both with th and with his daughter, and the fered him great gifts. And morn he took his leave, and to Bagdemagus that he would go a his brother Sir Lionel, that we him when that he slept. So h his horse, and betaught them God. And there he said un king's daughter, If ye have n time of my service, I pray you have knowledge, and I shall you, as I am true knight.

And so Sir Launcelot depart by adventure he came into th forest where he was taken s And in the midst of an highway a damsel riding on a white palfr there either saluted other. Fair said Sir Launcelot, know ye country any adventures? Sir said that damsel, here are adv near hand, and thou durst prov Why should I not prove adve said Sir Launcelot; for that cau

ell, said she, thou seemest good knight, and if thou ith a good knight, I shall ıere is the best knight and : that ever thou found, so me what is thy name, and thou art. Damsel, as for my name, I take no great my name is Sir Launcelot ir, thou beseemest well, ıtures by that fall for thee, welleth a knight that will ıatched for no man that I ye overmatch him, and Sir Turquine. And, as I he hath in his prison of rt good knights threescore he hath won with his own when ye have done that e shall promise me as ye night for to go with me, ne and other damsels that l daily with a false knight. nt, damsel, and desire I will will bring me unto this w, fair knight, come on And so she brought him l, and unto the tree where sin. So Sir Launcelot let ık, and then he beat on the e butt of his spear so hard might till the bottom fell ıg he did so, but he saw ıen he rode endlong the manor nigh half an hour. s he ware of a great knight an horse afore him, and ıe horse there lay an armed l. And ever as they came r, Sir Launcelot thought he him; then Sir Launcelot at it was Sir Gaheris, Ga-her, a knight of the Table r fair damsel, said Sir Laun- yonder cometh a knight ıat is a fellow of mine, and unto Sir Gawaine. And at nning I promise you, by the , to rescue that knight; and ıaster sit better in the sad- liver all the prisoners that ıf danger, for I am sure that brethren of mine prisoners with him. By that time that either had seen other they gripped their spears unto them. Now fair knight, said Sir Launcelot, put that wounded knight off the horse, and let him rest awhile, and let us two prove our strengths. For as it is informed me, thou doest and hast done great despite and shame unto knights of the Round Table, and therefore now defend thee. And thou be of the Table Round, said Turquine, I defy thee and all thy fellowship. That is over much said, said Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Turquine fought together.

And then they put their spears in the rests, and came together with their horses as fast as they might run, and either smote other in the midst of their shields, that both their horses' backs brast under them, and the knights were both astonied, and as soon as they might avoid their horses they took their shields afore them, and drew out their swords, and came together eagerly, and either gave other many strong strokes, for there might neither shields nor harness hold their strokes. And so within awhile they had both grimly wounds, and bled passing grievously. Thus they fared two hours or more, trasing and rasing either other where they might hit any bare place. Then at the last they were breathless both, and stood leaning on their swords. Now fellow, said Sir Turquine, hold thy hand awhile, and tell me what I shall ask thee. Say on. Then Turquine said, Thou art the biggest man that ever I met withal, and the best breathed, and like one knight that I hate above all other knights; so be it that thou be not he I will lightly accord with thee, and for thy love I will deliver all the prisoners that I have, that is threescore and four, so thou wilt tell me thy name. And thou and I we will be fellows together, and never to fail the while that I live. It is well said, said Sir Launcelot, but sithen it is so

that I may have thy friendship, what knight is he that thou so hatest above all other? Faithfully, said Sir Turquine, his name is Sir Launcelot du Lake, for he slew my brother Sir Carados at the dolorous tower, that was one of the best knights on live; and therefore him I except of knights, for may I once meet with him the one of us shall make an end of other, I make mine avow. And for Sir Launcelot's sake I have slain an hundred good knights, and as many I have maimed all utterly that they might never after help themselves, and many have died in prison, and yet I have threescore and four, and all shall be delivered, so thou wilt tell me thy name, so it be that thou be not Sir Launcelot.

Now see I well, said Sir Launcelot, that such a man I might be that I might have peace; and such a man I might be that there should be war mortal betwixt us: and now sir knight, at thy request I will that thou wit and know that I am Launcelot du Lake, king Ban's son of Benwick, and very knight of the Table Round. And now I defy thee, do thy best. Ah, said Turquine, Launcelot, thou art unto me most welcome that ever was knight, for we shall never part till the one of us be dead. Then they hurtled together as two wild bulls, rashing and lashing with their shields and swords that sometimes they fell both over their noses. Thus they fought still two hours and more, and never would have rest, and Sir Turquine gave Sir Launcelot many wounds that all the ground there as they fought was all bespeckled with blood.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Turquine was slain, and how Sir Launcelot bade Sir Gaheris deliver all the prisoners.

THEN at the last Sir Turquine waxed faint, and gave somewhat aback, and bare his shield low for weariness. That espied Sir Launcelot and lept upon him fiercely and got him by the beaver of his helmet, him down on his knees, rased off his helm, and neck in sunder. And whe celot had done this he we damsel and said, Damsel, to go with you where y me, but I have no hors said she, take this wounc horse, and send him into and command him to del prisoners. So Sir Laur unto Gaheris, and praye to be aggrieved for to his horse. Nay, fair lord, heris, I will that ye take your own commandment, both saved me and my hor day I say ye are the best k world, for ye have slain thi sight the mightiest man a knight, except you, that e and sir, said Sir Gaheris, tell me your name? Sir, Sir Launcelot du Lake, th help you of right for ki sake, and in especial for Gawaine's sake, your own d and when that ye come wi manor I am sure ye shal many knights of the Roun I have seen many of their s know on yonder tree. Th shield, and Sir Brandel's shi Marhaus' shield, and Sir Gal and Sir Brian Listonoise's sh Aliduke's shield, with many am not now advised of, a two brethren's shields, Sir Maris and Sir Lionel; pray you greet them all fr say that I bid them take stuff as they find, and that my brethren go unto the abide me there till that I by the feast of Pentecost I be there, for at this time with this damsel for to sa mise. And so he departe heris, and Sir Gaheris we manor, and there he found porter keeping there many withal Sir Gaheris threw

nd, and took the keys
hastily he opened the
d there he let out all the
every man loosed other
. And when they saw
l they thanked him, for
at he was wounded.
aheris, it was Launcelot
vorshipfully with his own
it with mine own eyes.
eth you all well, and
haste you to the court,
ir Lionel and Ector de
veth you to abide him
That shall we not do,
n, we will find him and
So shall I, said Sir Kay,
come at the court, as I

Then all those knights
se where as the armour
they armed them, and
und his own horse, and
ed unto him. And when
ne, there came a forester
s laden with fat venison.
said, Here is good meat
meal, for we had not
good repast. And so
as roasted, baked, and
after supper some abode
ight, but Sir Lionel and
and Sir Kay rode after
o find him if they might.

CHAP. X.

elot rode with the damsel knight that distressed all lso a villain that kept a

unto Sir Launcelot that
damsel in a fair high
the damsel, here by this
knight that distresseth
gentlewomen, and at the
them or ill-useth them.
Launcelot, is he a thief
nd a ravisher of women?
ne unto the order of
d contrary to his oath,
it he liveth. But fair
l ride on afore yourself,
myself in covert, and if
that he trouble you or distress you, I shall be your rescue, and learn him to be ruled as a knight. So the maid rode on by the way a soft ambling pace. And within awhile came out that knight on horseback out of the wood, and his page with him, and there he put the damsel from her horse, and then she cried. With that came Launcelot as fast as he might, till he came to that knight, saying, Oh thou false knight and traitor unto knighthood, who did learn thee to distress ladies and gentlewomen? When the knight saw Sir Launcelot thus rebuking him, he answered not, but drew his sword and rode unto Sir Launcelot. And Sir Launcelot threw his spear from him, and drew out his sword, and strake him such a buffet on the helmet that he clave his head and neck unto the throat. Now hast thou thy payment that long thou hast deserved. That is truth, said the damsel, for like as Turquine watched to destroy knights, so did this knight attend to destroy and distress ladies, damsels, and gentlewomen, and his name was Sir Peris de Forest Savage. Now damsel, said Sir Launcelot, will ye any more service of me? Nay sir, she said, at this time; but Almighty Jesu preserve you whersoever ye ride or go, for the courtiest knight thou art and meekest unto all ladies and gentlewomen that now liveth. But one thing, sir knight, me thinketh ye lack, ye that are a knight wifeless, that ye will not love some maiden or gentlewoman, for I could never hear say that ever ye loved any of no manner degree, and that is great pity; but it is noised that ye love queen Guenever, and that she hath ordained by enchantment that ye shall never love none other but her, nor none other damsel nor lady shall rejoice you; wherefore many in this land, of high estate and low, make great sorrow. Fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, I may not warn people to speak of me what it pleaseth them: but for to be a wedded man I think it not, for then I must couch with her, and leave arms and tournaments, battles

and adventures. And as for to say for to take my pleasance with paramours, that will I refuse in principal for dread of God. For knights that be adulterous, or wanton, shall not be happy nor fortunate unto the wars, for either they shall be overcome with a simpler knight than they be themselves, or else they shall by mishap and their cursedness slay better men than they be themselves; and who that so useth shall be unhappy, and all thing is unhappy that is about them. And so Sir Launcelot and she departed.

And then he rode in a deep forest two days and more, and had strait lodging. So on the third day he rode over a long bridge, and there start upon him suddenly a passing foul churl, and he smote his horse on the nose that he turned about, and asked him why he rode over that bridge without his licence. Why should I not ride this way? said Sir Launcelot, I may not ride beside. Thou shalt not choose, said the churl, and lashed at him with a great club shod with iron. Then Sir Launcelot drew his sword, and put the stroke aback, and clave his head unto the breast. At the end of the bridge was a fair village, and all the people men and women cried on Sir Launcelot, and said, A worse deed diddest thou never for thyself, for thou hast slain the chief porter of our castle. Sir Launcelot let them say what they would, and straight he went into the castle; and when he came into the castle he alight, and tied his horse to a ring on the wall; and there he saw a fair green court, and thither he dressed himself, for there him thought was a fair place to fight in. So he looked about, and saw much people in doors and windows, that said, Fair knight thou art unhappy.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Launcelot slew two giants, and made a castle free.

Anon withal came there upon him two great giants, well armed all save the heads, with two horrible clubs i hands. Sir Launcelot put his afore him, and put the stroke a the one giant, and with his sw clave his head asunder. When low saw that, he ran away as h wood, for fear of the horrible s and Sir Launcelot after him with might, and smote him on the sh and clave him to the middle. T Launcelot went into the hall, an came afore him threescore ladi damsels, and all kneeled unto hi thanked God and him of their ance. For, sir, said they, the m of us have been here this sev their prisoners, and we have wor manner of silk works for our me we are all great gentlewomen bo blessed be the time, knight, th thou wert born; for thou hast d most worship that ever did kn the world, that will we bear reco we all pray you to tell us you that we may tell our friends w livered us out of prison. Fair d he said, my name is Sir Launc Lake. Ah, sir, said they all, we est thou be he, for else save you we deemed, there might never have the better of these two gia many fair knights have assayed here have ended, and many tim we wished after you, and the giants dread never knight bu Now may ye say, said Sir Lau unto your friends, how and wh delivered you, and greet them a me, and if that I come in any c marches, shew me such cheer as cause; and what treasure that i in this castle I give it you for a for your grievance: and the lord the owner of this castle I would received it as is right. Fair si they, the name of this castle is T and a duke owned it some time t wedded fair Igraine, and after her Uther Pendragon and gat Arthur. Well, said Sir Launc understand to whom this castle eth. And so he departed from and betaught them unto God. A

ɔd upon his horse, and rode strange and wild countries ɡh many waters and valleys, vas he lodged. And at the tune him happened against a ɔme to a fair courtelage, and found an old gentlewoman d him with a good will, and ıad good cheer for him and

And when time was, his ɡht him into a fair garret over ɔ his bed. There Sir Launce- ɔd him, and set his harness by vent to bed, and anon he fell

So soon after there came one ıck, and knocked at the gate aste. And when Sir Launce- this he arose up, and looked e window, and saw by the t three knights came riding one man, and all three lashed once with swords, and that ıt turned on them knightly defended him. Truly, said ɛlot, yonder one knight shall it were shame for me to see hts on one, and if he be slain ıer of his death. And there- ɔok his harness and went out ow by a sheet down to the ıts, and then Sir Launcelot igh, Turn you knights unto eave your fighting with that And then they all three left nd turned unto Sir Launcelot, began great battle, for they three, and strake many great Sir Launcelot, and assailed very side. Then Sir Kay im for to have holpen Sir

Nay, sir, said he, I will your help, therefore as ye my help let me alone with Kay for the pleasure of the ſered him for to do his will, ɔod aside. And then anon strokes Sir Launcelot had em to the earth.

ɛn they all three cried, Sir yield us unto you as man of chless. As to that, said Sir I will not take your yielding ıut so that ye yield you unto Sir Kay the seneschal, on that covenant I will save your lives and else not. Fair knight, said they, that were we loth to do; for as for Sir Kay we chased him hither, and had overcome him had not ye been; therefore to yield us unto him it were no reason. Well, as to that, said Sir Launcelot, advise you well, for ye may choose whether ye will die or live, for and ye be yielden it shall be unto Sir Kay. Fair knight, then they said, in saving our lives we will do as thou commandest us. Then shall ye, said Sir Launcelot, on Whitsunday next coming go unto the court of king Arthur, and there shall ye yield you unto queen Guenever, and put you all three in her grace and mercy, and say that Sir Kay sent you thither to be her prisoners. Sir, they said, it shall done by the faith of our bodies, and we be living. And there they swore, every knight upon his sword. And so Sir Launcelot suffered them so to depart. And then Sir Launcelot knocked at the gate with the pommel of his sword, and with that came his host, and in they entered, Sir Kay and he. Sir, said his host, I wend ye had been in your bed. So I was, said Sir Launcelot, but I arose and lept out at my window for to help an old fellow of mine. And so when they came nigh the light Sir Kay knew well that it was Sir Launcelot, and therewith he kneeled down and thanked him of all his kindness that he hath holpen him twice from the death. Sir, he said, I have done nothing but that I ought to do, and ye are welcome, and here shall ye repose you and take your rest. So when Sir Kay was unarmed he asked after meat, so there was meat fetched him, and he ate strongly. And when he had supped they went to their beds, and were lodged together in one bed. On the morn Sir Launcelot arose early, and left Sir Kay sleeping: and Sir Launcelot took Sir Kay's armour and his shield and armed him: and so he went to the stable and took his horse, and took his leave of his host, and so he departed. Then soon after arose Sir Kay and missed Sir Launcelot: and then he espied that he had

his armour and his horse. Now by my faith I know well that he will grieve some of the court of king Arthur: for on him knights will be bold, and deem that it is I, and that will beguile them: and because of his armour and shield I am sure I shall ride in peace. And then soon after departed Sir Kay, and thanked his host.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Launcelot rode disguised in Sir Kay's harness, and how he smote down a knight.

Now turn we unto Sir Launcelot that had ridden long in a great forest, and at the last he came into a low country full of fair rivers and meadows. And afore him he saw a long bridge, and three pavilions stood thereon of silk and sandal of divers hue. And without the pavilions hung three white shields on truncheons of spears, and great long spears stood upright by the pavilions, and at every pavilion's door stood three fresh squires, and so Sir Launcelot passed by them, and spake no word. When he was past the three knights said that it was the proud Kay, he weeneth no knight so good as he, and the contrary is ofttime proved. By my faith, said one of the knights, his name was Sir Gaunter, I will ride after him and assay him for all his pride, and ye may behold how that I speed. So this knight, Sir Gaunter, armed him, and hung his shield upon his shoulder and mounted upon a great horse, and gat his spear in his hand, and galloped after Sir Launcelot. And when he came nigh him, he cried, Abide thou proud knight Sir Kay, for thou shalt not pass quit. So Sir Launcelot turned him, and either fewtred their spears, and came together with all their mights, and Sir Gaunter's spear brake, but Sir Launcelot smote him down, horse and man. And when Sir Gaunter was at the earth his brethren said each one to other, Yonder knight is not Sir Kay, for he is bigger than he. I dare lay my head, said Sir Gilmere, yonder knight hath slain Sir Kay and hath taken his horse and harness. Whether it be so said Sir Raynold the third brother now go mount upon our hors rescue our brother Sir Gaunte pain of death. We all shall hav enough to match that knight, f me seemeth by his person it Launcelot, or Sir Tristam, or S leas the good knight. Then ano took their horses and overto Launcelot, and Sir Gilmere pu his spear and ran to Sir Launce Sir Launcelot smote him down lay in a swoon. Sir knight, s Raynold, thou art a strong man, I suppose, thou hast slain my tw thren, for the which riseth m sore against thee; and if I mig my worship I would not have a thee, but needs I must take part do; and therefore knight, he sai thyself. And so they hurtled t with all their mights, and all to-s both their spears. And then the their swords and lashed together Anon therewith arose Sir Gaunt came unto his brother Sir Gilme bad him arise and help we our Sir Raynold, that yonder marv matcheth yonder good knight. withal they lept on their hors hurtled unto Sir Launcelot. An he saw them come, he smote stroke unto Sir Raynold, that off his horse to the ground, and t struck to the other two brethren, two strokes he strake them down earth. With that Sir Raynold b start up with his head all bloo came straight unto Sir Launcelot. let be, said Sir Launcelot, I was from thee when thou wert made Sir Raynold, and also I know th a good knight, and loth I were thee. Gramercy, said Sir Rayn for your goodness; and I dare sa me and my brethren, we will loth to yield us unto you, with knew your name; for well we k are not Sir Kay. As for that be may, for ye shall yield you unt Guenever, and look that ye be w on Whitsunday, and yield you u

ers, and say that Sir Kay sent
› her. Then they swore it
e done. And so passed forth
ıcelot, and each one of the
helped each other as well as
ht.

CHAP. XIII.

Launcelot justed against four of the Round Table, and overbem.

Launcelot rode into a deep
ıd there by in a slade he saw
hts hoving under an oak, and
e of Arthur's court; one was
ur le Desirous, and Sir Ector de
ıd Sir Gawaine, and Sir Uwaine.
these four knights had espied
celot they wend by his arms it
ı Sir Kay. Now by my faith,
Sagramour, I will prove Sir
ight, and gat his spear in his
ı came toward Sir Launcelot.
h Sir Launcelot was ware, and
n well, and fewtred his spear
ıim, and smote Sir Sagramour
ıat horse and man fell both to
ı. Lo, my fellows, said Sir
ınder ye may see what a buffet
; that knight is much bigger
was Sir Kay. Now shall ye
t I may do to him. So Sir
ıt his spear in his hand and
toward Sir Launcelot, and
ıncelot smote him through
ld and shoulder that horse
ı went to the earth, and ever
r held. By my faith, said
ne, yonder is a strong knight,
n sure he hath slain Sir Kay;
e by his great strength it will
o match him. And therewithal
ne gat his spear in his hand
toward Sir Launcelot, and Sir
ıt knew him well, and so he
ı on the plain and gave him
uffet that he was astonied, that
wist not where he was. Now
ll, said Sir Gawaine, I must
r with that knight. Then he
ıis shield and gat a good spear
and, and Sir Launcelot knew
him well, and then they let run their horses with all their mights, and either knight smote other in midst of the shield. But Sir Gawaine's spear tobrast, and Sir Launcelot charged so sore upon him that his horse reversed up so down. And much sorrow had Sir Gawaine to avoid his horse, and so Sir Launcelot passed on a pace, and smiled, and said, God give him joy that this spear made, for there came never a better in my hand. Then the four knights went each one to other, and comforted each other. What say ye by this gest? said Sir Gawaine, that one spear hath felled us four. We command him unto the devil, they said all, for he is a man of great might. Ye may well say it, said Sir Gawaine, that he is a man of might, for I dare lay my head it is Sir Launcelot, I know it by his riding. Let him go, said Sir Gawaine, for when we come to the court then shall we wit. And then had they much sorrow to get their horses again.

CHAP. XIV.

How Sir Launcelot followed a brachet into a castle where he found a dead knight, and how he after was required of a damsel to heal her brother.

Now leave we there and speak of Sir Launcelot that rode a great while in a deep forest, where he saw a black brachet, seeking in manner as it had been in the track of an hurt deer, and therewith he rode after the brachet, and he saw lie on the ground a large track of blood. And then Sir Launcelot rode after. And ever the brachet looked behind her, and so she went through a great marsh, and ever Sir Launcelot followed. And then was he ware of an old manor, and thither ran the brachet, and so over the bridge. So Sir Launcelot rode over that bridge that was old and feeble; and when he came in midst of a great hall, there he saw lie a dead knight that was a seemly man, and that brachet licked his wounds. And therewithal came out a lady weeping

and wringing her hands, and she said, Oh knight, too much sorrow hast thou brought me. Why say ye so? said Sir Launcelot, I did never this knight no harm, for hither by track of blood this brachet brought me; and therefore fair lady be not displeased with me, for I am full sore aggrieved of your grievance. Truly sir, she said, I trow it be not ye that have slain my husband, for he that did that deed is sore wounded, and he is never likely to recover, that shall I ensure him. What was your husband's name? said Sir Launcelot. Sir, said she, his name was called Sir Gilbert, one of the best knights of the world, and he that hath slain him I know not his name. Now God send you better comfort, said Sir Launcelot. And so he departed and went into the forest again, and there he met with a damsel, the which knew him well, and she said aloud, Well be ye found, my lord; and now I require thee on thy knighthood help my brother that is sore wounded, and never stinteth bleeding, for this day fought he with Sir Gilbert and slew him in plain battle, and there was my brother sore wounded, and there is a lady a sorceress that dwelleth in a castle here beside, and this day she told me my brother's wounds should never be whole till I could find a knight that would go into the chapel perilous, and there he should find a sword and a bloody cloth that the wounded knight was lapped in, and a piece of that cloth and sword should heal my brother's wounds, so that his wounds were searched with the sword and the cloth. This is a marvellous thing, said Sir Launcelot, but what is your brother's name? Sir, said she, his name is Sir Meliot de Logres. That me repenteth, said Sir Launcelot, for he is a fellow of the Table Round, and to his help I will do my power. Then, sir, said she, follow even this high way, and it will bring you unto the chapel perilous, and here I shall abide till God send you here again, and but you speed I know no knight living that may achieve that adventure.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Launcelot came into the chapel perilous, and gat there of a dead corps a piece of the cloth and a sword.

RIGHT so Sir Launcelot departed, and when he came unto the chapel perilous he alight down, and tied his horse to a little gate. And as soon as he was within the churchyard he saw on the front of the chapel many fair rich shields turned up so down, and many of the shields Sir Launcelot had seen knights bear beforehand. With that he saw by him stand there a thirty great knights, more by a yard than any man that ever he had seen, and all those grinned and gnashed at Sir Launcelot. And when he saw their countenance he dread him sore, and so put his shield afore him, and took his sword in his hand ready unto battle; and they were all armed in black harness, ready with their shields and their swords drawn. And when Sir Launcelot would have gone throughout them, they scattered on every side of him, and gave him the way, and therewith he waxed all bold and entered into the chapel, and then he saw no light but a dim lamp burning, and then was he ware of a corpse covered with a cloth of silk. Then Sir Launcelot stooped down and cut a piece away of that cloth, and then it quaked under him as the earth had quaked a little; there withal he feared. And then he saw a fair sword lie by the dead knight, and that he gat in his hand and hied him out of the chapel. Anon as ever he was in the chapel-yard all the knights spake to him with a grimly voice, and said, Knight, Sir Launcelot, lay that sword from thee, or else thou shalt die. Whether I live or die, said Sir Launcelot, will no great word get it again, therefore fight for it and ye list. Then right so he passed throughout them, and beyond the chapel-yard there met him a fair damsel, and said, Sir Launcelot, leave that sword behind thee, or thou wilt die for it. I leave it not, said Sir Launcelot, for no

s. No, said she, and thou didst
t sword queen Guenever should
see. Then were I a fool and
leave this sword, said Sir Laun-
Now gentle knight, said the
I require thee to kiss me but
ſay, said Sir Launcelot, that
forbid. Well sir, said she, and
ddest kissed me thy life days
done, but now alas, she said,
st all my labour, for I ordained
pel for thy sake, and for Sir
. And once I had Sir Gawaine
ıy power, and at that time he
ith that knight that lieth there
yonder chapel, Sir Gilbert, and
ime he smote off the left hand
Gilbert. And Sir Launcelot
ll thee, I have loved thee this
ar, but there may no woman
y love but queen Guenever.
I may not rejoice thee to have
alive, I had kept no more joy
world but to have thy body
hen would I have balmed it and
l it, and so have kept it my life
l daily I should have kissed thee
e of queen Guenever. Ye say
d Sir Launcelot, God preserve
your subtil crafts. And there-
ıe took his horse and so de-
rom her. And as the book
ıen Sir Launcelot was departed
k such sorrow that she died
fourteen night, and her name
lawes the sorceress, lady of the
igramous. Anon Sir Launcelot
ı the damsel, Sir Meliot's sister.
en she saw him she clapped her
ıd wept for joy, and then they
to a castle thereby, where Sir
ıy. And anon as Sir Launcelot
he knew him, but he was pale
earth for bleeding. When Sir
ıaw Sir Launcelot, he kneeled
knees and cried on high: O lord
celot help me! Anon Sir Laun-
ıpt unto him, and touched his
with Sir Gilbert's sword, and
wiped his wounds with a part
oody cloth that Sir Gilbert was
in, and anon a wholer man in
was he never. And then there
was great joy between them, and they made Sir Launcelot all the cheer that they might, and so on the morn Sir Launcelot took his leave, and bad Sir Meliot hie him to the court of my lord Arthur, for it draweth nigh to the feast of Pentecost, and there, by the grace of God, ye shall find me. And therewith they departed.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Launcelot at the request of a lady recovered a falcon, by which he was deceived.

And so Sir Launcelot rode through many strange countries, over marshes and valleys, till by fortune he came to a fair castle, and as he passed beyond the castle him thought he heard two bells ring. And then was he ware of a falcon came flying over his head toward an high elm, and long lines about her feet, and as she flew unto the elm to take her perch, the lines overcast about a bough. And when she would have taken her flight she hung by the legs fast, and Sir Launcelot saw how she hung, and beheld the fair falcon perigot, and he was sorry for her. The meanwhile came a lady out of the castle, and cried on high, O Launcelot, Launcelot, as thou art flower of all knights help me to get my hawk, for and my hawk be lost my lord will destroy me; for I kept the hawk and she slipt from me, and if my lord my husband wit it, he is so hasty that he will slay me. What is your lord's name? said Sir Launcelot. Sir, she said, his name is Sir Phelot, a knight that longeth unto the king of Northgalis. Well, fair lady, since that ye know my name, and require me of knighthood to help you, I will do what I may to get your hawk, and yet truly I am an ill climber, and the tree is passing high, and few boughs to help me withal. And therewith Sir Launcelot alight, and tied his horse to the same tree, and prayed the lady to unarm him. And so when he was unarmed, he put off all his clothes unto his shirt and breeches, and with might

and force he climbed up to the falcon, and tied the lines to a great rotten branch, and threw the hawk down and it withal. Anon the lady gat the hawk in her hand, and therewithal came out Sir Phelot out of the groves suddenly, that was her husband, all armed, and with his naked sword in his hand, and said, O knight, Launcelot, now have I found thee as I would: and stood at the bole of the tree to slay him. Ah lady, said Sir Launcelot, why have ye betrayed me? She hath done, said Sir Phelot, but as I commanded her, and therefore there is none other boot but thine hour is come that thou must die. That were shame unto thee, said Sir Launcelot, thou an armed knight to slay a naked man by treason. Thou gettest none other grace, said Sir Phelot, and therefore help thyself and thou canst. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, that shall be thy shame, but since thou wilt do none other, take mine harness with thee, and hang my sword upon a bough that I may get it, and then do thy best to slay me and thou canst. Nay, nay, said Sir Phelot, for I know thee better than thou weenest, therefore thou gettest no weapon and I may keep you therefro. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that ever knight should die weaponless. And therewith he awaited above him and under him, and over his head he saw a rounspik, a big bough leafless, and therewith he brake it off by the body; and then he came lower, and awaited how his own horse stood, and suddenly he lept on the farther side of the horse from the knight. And then Sir Phelot lashed at him eagerly, weening to have slain him; but Sir Launcelot put away the stroke with the rounspik, and therewith he smote him on the one side of the head, that he fell down in a swoon to the ground. So then Sir Launcelot took his sword out of his hand, and struck his neck from the body. Then cried the lady, Alas, why hast thou slain my husband? I am not causer, said Sir Launcelot, for with falsehood ye would have had slain me with treason, and now it is fallen on you both. And then she swooned as though she would die. And therewithal Sir Launcelot gat all his armour as well as he might, and put it upon him, for dread of more resort, for he dread that the knight's castle was so nigh. And as soon as he might he took his horse and departed, and thanked God that he had escaped that adventure.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot overtook a knight which chased his wife to have slain her, and how he said to him.

So Sir Launcelot rode many wild ways, throughout marshes and many wild ways. And as he rode in a valley he saw a knight chasing a lady with a naked sword to have slain her. And by fortune, as this knight should have slain this lady, she cried on Sir Launcelot and prayed him to rescue her. When Sir Launcelot saw that mischief he took his horse and rode between them, saying, Knight, fie for shame, why wilt thou slay this lady? thou dost shame unto thee and all knights. What hast thou to do betwixt me and my wife? said the knight; I will slay her, mangre thy head. That shall ye not, said Sir Launcelot, for rather we two will have ado together. Sir Launcelot, said the knight, thou doest not thy part, for this lady hath betrayed me. It is not so, said the lady, truly he saith wrong on me, and because I love and cherish my cousin german, he is jealous betwixt him and me, and as I shall answer to God, there was never sin betwixt us. But, sir, said the lady, as thou art called the worshipfullest knight of the world, I require thee of true knighthood keep me and save me, for whatsoever ye say he will slay me, for he is without mercy. Have ye no doubt, said Launcelot, it shall not lie in his power. Sir, said the knight, in your sight I will be ruled as ye will have me. And so Sir Launcelot rode on the one side and she on the other: he had not ridden but a while but the knight bad Sir Launcelot turn him and look behind him and said,

ler come men of arms after us
And so Sir Launcelot turned
i thought no treason. And
ı was the knight and the lady
ide, and suddenly he swapped
ady's head. And when Sir
t had espied him what he had
said, and called him, Traitor
t shamed me for ever. And
Sir Launcelot alight off his
d pulled out his sword to slay
nd therewithal he fell flat to
ı, and gripped Sir Launcelot
ighs, and cried mercy. Fie on
i Sir Launcelot, thou shameful
thou mayest have no mercy,
efore arise and fight with me.
l the knight, I will never arise
rant me mercy. Now will I
ıee fair, said Launcelot: I will
e unto my shirt, and will have
ıpon me but my shirt, and my
ı my hand, and if thou canst
quit be thou for ever. Nay,
Pedivere, that will I never.
d Sir Launcelot, take this lady
head, and bear it upon thee,
: shalt thou swear upon my
› bear it alway upon thy back,
er to rest till thou come to
ıenever. Sir, said he, that will
the faith of my body. Now,
ncelot, tell me what is your
ir, my name is Pedivere. In
ul hour wert thou born, said
t. So Pedivere departed with
lady and the head, and found
n with king Arthur at Win-
ınd there he told all the truth.
t, said the queen, this is an hor-
d and a shameful, and a great
nto Sir Launcelot: but not-
ling his worship is not known
; countries. But this shall I
in penance: make ye as good
ye can, ye shall bear this lady
ı on horseback unto the Pope
, and of him receive your pe-
· your foul deeds, and ye shall
st one night there as ye do
and if ye go to any bed the
dy shall lie with you. This
re he made, and so departed,

and as it telleth in the French book, when he came to Rome the Pope bad him go again to queen Guenever, and in Rome was his lady buried by the Pope's commandment. And after this Sir Pedivere fell to great goodness, and was an holy man and an hermit.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Launcelot came to king Arthur's court, and how there were recounted all his noble feats and acts.

Now turn me unto Sir Launcelot du Lake, that came home two days afore the feast of Pentecost. And the king and all the court were passing fain of his coming. And when Sir Gawaine, Sir Uwaine, Sir Sagramour, Sir Ector de Maris, saw Sir Launcelot in Kay's armour, then they wist well it was he that smote them down all with one spear. Then there was laughing and smiling among them. And ever now and now came all the knights home that Sir Turquine had prisoners, and they all honoured and worshipped Sir Launcelot. When Sir Gaheris heard them speak, he said, I saw all the battle from the beginning to the ending, and there he told king Arthur all how it was, and how Sir Turquine was the strongest knight that ever he saw except Sir Launcelot: there were many knights bear him record, nigh threescore. Then Sir Kay told the king how Sir Launcelot had rescued him when he should have been slain, and how he made the knights yield them to me, and not to him. And there they were, all three, and bare record. And by my faith, said Sir Kay, because Sir Launcelot took my harness and left me his I rode in good peace, and no man would have ado with me. Anon therewithal came the three knights that fought with Sir Launcelot at the long bridge, and there they yielded them unto Sir Kay, and Sir Kay forsook them and said he fought never with them: But I shall ease your hearts, said Sir Kay, yonder is Sir Launcelot that overcame you. When they wist that, they were

glad. And then Sir Meliot de Logres came home, and told king Arthur how Sir Launcelot had saved him from the death. And all his deeds were known, how four queens, sorceresses, had him in prison, and how he was delivered by king Bagdemagus's daughter. Also there were told all the great deeds of arms that Sir Launcelot did betwixt the two kings, that is to say, the king of Northgalis and king Bagdemagus. All the truth Sir Gahalantine did tell, and Sir Mador de la Porte, a Mordred, for they were at tha tournament. Then came in th that knew Sir Launcelot when t wounded Sir Belleus at the p And there, at the request of Si celot, Sir Belleus was made kn the Round Table.

And so at that time Sir La had the greatest name of any kn the world, and most he was ho of high and low.

Explicit the noble tale of syr Launcelot du lake, whiche is t book. Here foloweth the tale of syr Gareth of Orkeney, th called Beaumayns by syr kay, and is the sebenth book.

The Sebenth Book.

CHAP. I.

How Beaumains came to king Arthur's court and demanded three petitions of king Arthur.

When Arthur held his Round Table most fully, it fortuned that he commanded that the high feast of Pentecost should be holden at a city and a castle, the which in those days was called Kink-Kenadon, upon the sands that marched nigh Wales. So ever the king had a custom that at the feast of Pentecost, in especial afore other feasts in the year, he would not go that day to meat until he had heard or seen of a great marvel. And for that custom all manner of strange adventures came before Arthur as at that feast before all other feasts. And so Sir Gawaine, a little tofore noon of the day of Pentecost, espied at a window three men upon horseback, and a dwarf on foot. And so the three men alight and the dwarf kept their horses, and one of the three men was *higher than* the other twain by a foot *and a half.* Then Sir Gawaine went *unto the king* and said, Sir, go to your meat, for here at the hand come adventures. So Arthur went u meat with many other kings. there were all the knights of the Table, save those that were p or slain at a recounter. Then high feast evermore they should filled the whole number of an h and fifty, for then was the Round fully complished. Right so can the hall two men well beseen and and upon their shoulders there the goodliest young man and the that ever they all saw, and he wa and long and broad in the sho and well visaged, and the faire the largest handed that ever ma but he fared as though he might nor bear himself, but if he leane their shoulders. Anon as Arth him there was made peace and and right so they went with him u high dais, without saying of any Then this much young man pull aback, and easily stretched up st saying, King Arthur, God you and all your fair fellowship, s especial the fellowship of the Round. And for this cause I am

pray you and require you to
hree gifts, and they shall not
onably asked, but that ye may
lly and honourably grant them
to you no great hurt nor
d the first done and gift I will
and the other two gifts I will
lay twelvemonth wheresoever
our high feast. Now ask, said
nd ye shall have your asking.
this is my petition for this
t ye will give me meat and
iciently for this twelvemonth,
at day I will ask mine other
My fair son, said Arthur,
, I counsel thee, for this is but
sking, for my heart giveth me
reatly that thou art come of
orship, and greatly my conceit
: but thou shalt prove a man
great worship. Sir, said he,
: as it may, I have asked that
Well, said the king, ye shall
: and drink enough, I never
that none, neither my friend
oe. But what is thy name
vit? I cannot tell you, said
is marvel, said the king, that
vest not thy name, and thou
oodliest young man that ever
Then the king betook him to
he steward, and charged him
ould give him of all manner
and drinks of the best, and
he had all manner of finding
he were a lord's son. That
: need, said Sir Kay, to do
upon him; for I dare under-
a villain born, and never will
n, for and he had come of
he would have asked of you
armour, but such as he is,
eth. And since he hath no
all give him a name that shall
ains, that is Fair-hands, and
itchen I shall bring him, and
shall have fat browis every
he shall be as fat by the
ith's end as a pork hog.
the two men departed, and
to Sir Kay, that scorned him
d him.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine were wroth because Sir Kay mocked Beaumains, and of a damsel which desired a knight for to fight for a lady.

THEREAT was Sir Gawaine wroth, and in especial Sir Launcelot bad Sir Kay leave his mocking, for I dare lay my head he shall prove a man of great worship. Let be, said Sir Kay, it may not be, by no reason, for as he is so hath he asked. Beware, said Sir Launcelot, so ye gave the good knight Brewnor, Sir Dinadan's brother, a name, and ye called him La Cote Male Taile, and that turned you to anger afterward. As for that, said Sir Kay, this shall never prove none such; for Sir Brewnor desired ever worship, and this desireth bread and drink, and broth; upon pain of my life he was fostered up in some abbey, and, howsoever it was, they failed meat and drink, and so hither he is come for his sustenance. And so Sir Kay bad get him a place and sit down to meat, so Beaumains went to the hall door, and set him down among boys and lads, and there he eat sadly. And then Sir Launcelot after meat bad him come to his chamber, and there he should have meat and drink enough. And so did Sir Gawaine: but he refused them all; he would do none other but as Sir Kay commanded him, for no proffer. But as touching Sir Gawaine, he had reason to proffer him lodging, meat, and drink, for that proffer came of his blood, for he was nearer kin to him than he wist. But that as Sir Launcelot did was of his great gentleness and courtesy. So thus he was put into the kitchen, and lay nightly as the boys of the kitchen did. And so he endured all that twelvemonth, and never displeased man nor child, but always he was meek and mild. But ever when that he saw any justing of knights, that would he see and he might. And ever Sir Launcelot would give him gold to spend, and clothes, and so did Sir Gawaine. And where were any masteries done thereat would he be, and there might none cast

bar nor stone to him by two yards. Then would Sir Kay say, How liketh you my boy of the kitchen? So it passed on till the feast of Whitsuntide. And at that time the king held it at Carlion in the most royalest wise that might be, like as he did yearly.

But the king would no meat eat upon the Whitsunday until he heard some adventures. Then came there a squire to the king and said, Sir, ye may go to your meat, for here cometh a damsel with some strange adventures. Then was the king glad, and set him down. Right so there came a damsel into the hall, and saluted the king, and prayed him of succour. For whom, said the king, what is the adventure? Sir, she said, I have a lady of great worship and renown, and she is besieged with a tyrant, so that she may not out of her castle. And because here are called the noblest knights of the world, I come to you to pray you of succour. What highteth your lady, and where dwelleth she? and who is he, and what is his name, that hath besieged her? Sir king, she said, as for my lady's name that shall not ye know for me as at this time, but I let you wit she is a lady of great worship, and of great lands. And as for the tyrant that besiegeth her and destroyeth her lands, he is called the red knight of the red lawns. I know him not, said the king. Sir, said Sir Gawaine, I know him well, for he is one of the perilousest knights of the world: men say that he hath seven men's strength, and from him I escaped once full hard with my life. Fair damsel, said the king, there be knights here would do their power to rescue your lady, but because ye will not tell her name, nor where she dwelleth, therefore none of my knights that be here now shall go with you by my will. Then must I speak further, said the damsel.

CHAP. III.

How Beaumains desired the battle, and how it was granted to him, and how he desired to be made knight of Sir Launcelot.

With these words came before the king Beaumains, while the damsel was there, and thus he said: Sir king, God thank you, I have been these twelvemonth in your kitchen, and have had my full sustenance, and now I will ask my two gifts that be behind. Ask upon my peril, said the king. Sir, this shall be my two gifts. First, that ye will grant me to have this adventure of the damsel, for it belongeth unto me. Thou shalt have it, said the king, I grant it thee. Then, sir, this is the other gift, that ye shall bid Launcelot du Lake make me knight, for of him I will be made knight, and else of none. And when I am past, I pray you let him ride after me, and make me knight when I require him. All this shall be done, said the king. Fie on thee, said the damsel, shall I have none but one that is your kitchen page. Then was she wroth, and took her horse and departed.

And with that there came one to Beaumains, and told him that his horse and armour was come for him, and there was the dwarf come with all thing that him needed in the richest manner. Thereat all the court had much marvel from whence came all that gear. So when he was armed there was none but few so goodly a man as he was. And right so he came into the hall and took his leave of King Arthur and Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot, and prayed that he would ride after him. And so departed and rode after the damsel.

CHAP. IV.

How Beaumains departed, and how he got of Sir Kay a spear and a shield, and how he justed and fought with Sir Launcelot.

But there went many after to behold how well he was horsed and trapped in cloth of gold, but he had neither shield nor spear. Then Sir Kay said openly in the hall, I will ride after my boy in the kitchen, to wit whether he will know me for his better. Said Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine, Yet abide

So Sir Kay made him ready
: his horse and his spear and
:r him. And right as Beau-
vertook the damsel, right so
r Kay, and said, Beaumains,
know ye not me? Then he
iis horse and knew it was
that had done him all the de-
'e have heard afore. Yea, said
ns, I know you for an ungentle
f the court, and therefore be-
me. Therewith Sir Kay put
: in the rest, and ran straight
ı, and Beaumains came as fast
ı with his sword in his hand;
ıe put away his spear with his
and with a foin thrust him
the side, that Sir Kay fell down
l been dead, and he alight down
Sir Kay's shield and his spear,
: upon his own horse and rode
All that saw Sir Launcelot,
lid the damsel. And then he
dwarf start upon Sir Kay's
d so he did. By that Sir Laun-
ıs come. Then he proffered
celot to just, and either made
ady, and came together so
hat either bare down other to
ı, and sore were they bruised.
r Launcelot arose and helped
n his horse. And then Beau-
ırew his shield from him, and
to fight with Sir Launcelot on
l so they rushed together like
racing, racing, and foining, to
ntenance of an hour, and Sir
ıt felt him so big that he mar-
f his strength, for he fought
e a giant than a knight, and
fighting was durable and pass-
ous. For Sir Launcelot had so
o with him that he dread him-
e shamed, and said, Beaumains,
so sore. your quarrel and mine
ɔ great but we may leave off.
hat is truth, said Beaumains,
th me good to feel your might,
my lord, I shewed not the
:.

CHAP. V.

How Beaumains told to Sir Launcelot his name, and how he was dubbed knight of Sir Launcelot, and after overtook the damsel.

WELL, said Sir Launcelot, for I promise you by the faith of my body I had as much to do as I might to save myself from you unshamed, and therefore have ye no doubt of none earthly knight. Hope ye so that I may any while stand a proved knight? said Beaumains. Yea, said Launcelot, do ye as ye have done, and I shall be your warrant. Then, I pray you, said Beaumains, give me the order of knighthood. Then must ye tell me your name, said Launcelot, and of what kin ye be born. Sir, so that ye will not discover me I shall, said Beaumains. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, and that I promise you by the faith of my body, until it be openly known. Then, Sir, he said, my name is Gareth, and brother unto Sir Gawaine, of father and mother. Ah! Sir, said Launcelot, I am more gladder of you than I was, for ever me thought ye should be of great blood, and that ye came not to the court neither for meat nor for drink. And then Sir Launcelot gave him the order of knighthood. And then Sir Gareth prayed him for to depart, and let him go. So Sir Launcelot departed from him and came to Sir Kay, and made him to be borne home upon his shield, and so he was healed hard with the life, and all men scorned Sir Kay, and in especial Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot said it was not his part to rebuke no young man, for full little knew he of what birth he is come, and for what cause he came to this court. And so we leave off Sir Kay and turn we unto Beaumains. When he had overtaken the damsel anon she said, What doest thou here? thou stinkest all of the kitchen, thy clothes be foul of the grease and tallow that thou gainedst in king Arthur's kitchen; weenest thou, said she, that I allow thee for yonder knight that thou killedst? Nay truly, for thou slewest him unhappily

and cowardly, therefore turn again foul kitchen page. I know thee well, for Sir Kay named thee Beaumains; what art thou but a lubber and a turner of spits, and a ladle washer? Damsel, said Beaumains, say to me what ye will, I will not go from you whatsoever ye say, for I have undertaken to king Arthur for to achieve your adventure, and so shall I finish it to the end, or I shall die therefore. Fie on thee, kitchen knave, wilt thou finish mine adventure? thou shalt anon be met withall, that thou wouldest not for all the broth that ever thou suppedst once look him in the face. I shall assay, said Beaumains. So thus as they rode in the wood, there came a man flying all that ever he might. Whither wilt thou? said Beaumains. O lord, he said, help me, for hereby in a slade are six thieves, that have taken my lord and bound him, so I am afeard lest they will slay him. Bring me thither, said Sir Beaumains. And so they rode together until they came there as was the knight bound, and then he rode unto them and struck one unto the death, and then another, and at the third stroke he slew the third thief: and then the other three fled. And he rode after them, and he overtook them, and then those three thieves turned again and assailed Beaumains hard, but at the last he slew them, and returned and unbound the knight. And the knight thanked him, and prayed him to ride with him to his castle there a little beside, and he should worshipfully reward him for his good deeds. Sir, said Beaumains, I will no reward have, I was this day made knight of noble Sir Launcelot, and therefore I will no reward have, but God reward me. And also I must follow this damsel. And when he came nigh her, she bad him ride from her, for thou smellest all of the kitchen; weenest thou that I have joy of thee? for all this deed thou hast done, is but mishapped thee; but thou shalt see a sight that shall make thee turn again, and that lightly. Then the same knight which was rescued of the thieves rode after that damsel, and prayed her to lodge with him all that night. And it was near night the damsel r him to his castle, and there great cheer. And at supper th set Sir Beaumains afore the Fie, fie, said she, sir knight, y courteous to set a kitchen p me, him beseemeth better t swine than to sit afore a dams parentage. Then the kni ashamed at her words, and up and set him at a side boar himself afore him. And so night they had good cheer a rest.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Beaumains fought and knights at a passage.

And on the morn the dams took their leave and thanked t and so departed, and rode on until they came to a great for there was a great river and passage, and there were n knights on the further side, to the passage. What sayest t the damsel, wilt thou matc knights, or turn again? Nay Beaumains, I will not turn a they were six more. And th he rushed into the water, a midst of the water either b spears upon other to their h then they drew their swords a eagerly at other. And at th Beaumains smote the other helm that his head stonied, a withal he fell down in the w there was he drowned. And spurred his horse upon the la the other knight fell upon brake his spear, and so they c swords and fought long toge the last Sir Beaumains clave and his head down to the shoul so he rode unto the damsel, her ride forth on her way. said, that ever a kitchen pag have that fortune to destroy doughty knights; thou weer hast done doughtily; that i for the first knight his horse

he was drowned in the never it was by thy force might. And the last knight thou camest behind him and thou slewest him. Damsel, ıains, ye may say what ye ith whomsoever I have ado ust to God to serve him or nd therefore I reck not what ıat I may win your lady. Fie, chen knave, thou shalt see t shall abate thy boast. Fair e me goodly language, and re is past, for what knights be I care not, nor I doubt Also, said she, I say it for yet mayest thou turn again orship, for and thou follow t but slain, for I see all that lost is but by misadventure, prowess of thy hands. Well, may say what ye will, but r ye go I will follow you. ıumains rode with that lady ng time, and ever she chid would not rest. And then to a black lawn, and there ck hawthorn, and thereon :k banner, and on the other ıung a black shield, and by it ck spear great and long, and ıck horse covered with silk, : stone fast by.

CHAP. VII.

aumains fought with the knight ıck lawns, and fought with him l down and died.

.t a knight all armed in black d his name was the knight of ıwn. Then the damsel, when ıt knight, she bade him flee alley, for his horse was not Gramercy, said Beaumains, ye would have me a coward. the black knight, when she him, spake and said, Damsel, rought this knight of king be your champion? Nay, said she, this is but a kitchen ıt was fed in king Arthur's alms. Why cometh he, said the knight, in such array? it is shame that he beareth you company. Sir, I cannot be delivered of him, said she, for with me he rideth maugre mine head; would that ye should put him from me, or else to slay him and ye may, for he is an unhappy knave, and unhappily he hath done this day; through mishap I saw him slay two knights at the passage of the water, and other deeds he did before right marvellous, and through unhappiness. That marvelleth me, said the black knight, that any man that is of worship will have ado with him. They know him not, said the damsel, and because he rideth with me they think he is some man of worship born. That may be, said the black knight, how be it as ye say that he be no man of worship, he is a full likely person, and full like to be a strong man; but thus much shall I grant you, said the black knight, I shall put him down upon one foot, and his horse and his harness he shall leave with me, for it were shame to me to do him any more harm. When Sir Beaumains heard him say thus, he said, Sir knight, thou art full liberal of my horse and my harness, I let thee wit it cost thee nought, and whether it liketh thee or not this lawn will I pass, maugre thine head, and horse nor harness gettest thou none of me, but if thou win them with thy hands; and therefore let see what thou canst do. Sayest thou that, said the black knight, now yield thy lady from thee, for it beseemeth never a kitchen page to ride with such a lady. Thou liest, said Beaumains, I am a gentleman born, and of more high lineage than thou, and that will I prove on thy body. Then in great wrath they departed with their horses, and came together as it had been the thunder; and the black knight's spear brake, and Beaumains thrust him through both his sides, and therewith his spear brake, and the truncheon left still in his side. But nevertheless the black knight drew his sword and smote many eager strokes and of great might, and hurt Beaumains full sore. But at the last the black knight within an hour and a half he

fell down off his horse in a swoon, and there he died. And then Beaumains saw him so well horsed and armed, then he alight down, and armed him in his armour, and so took his horse, and rode after the damsel. When she saw him come nigh, she said, Away, kitchen knave, out of the wind, for the smell of thy foul clothes grieveth me. Alas, she said, that ever such a knave as thou art should by mishap slay so good a knight as thou hast done, but all this is thine unhappiness. But hereby is one shall pay thee all thy payment, and therefore yet I counsel thee, flee. It may happen me, said Beaumains, to be beaten or slain, but I warn you, fair damsel, I will not flee away nor leave your company for all that ye can say, for ever ye say that they will kill me or beat me, but how soever it happeneth I escape, and they lie on the ground. And therefore it were as good for you to hold you still, thus all day rebuking me, for away will I not till I see the uttermost of this journey, or else I will be slain or truly beaten; therefore ride on your way, for follow you I will whatsoever happen.

CHAP. VIII.

How the brother of the knight that was slain met with Beaumains, and fought with Beaumains till he was yielden.

Thus as they rode together, they saw a knight come driving by them all in green, both his horse and his harness; and when he came nigh the damsel he asked her, Is that my brother the black knight that ye have brought with you? Nay, nay, said she, this unhappy kitchen knave hath slain your brother through unhappiness. Alas, said the green knight, that is great pity that so noble a knight as he was should so unhappily be slain, and namely of a knave's hand, as ye say that he is. Ah! traitor, said the green knight, thou shalt die for slaying of my brother, he was a full noble knight, and his name was Sir Percard. I defy thee, said Beaumains, for I let thee wit I slew him knightly, and not shamefully. Therewithall the green knight rode unto an horn green, and it hung upon a thorn, s he blew three deadly notes, a came two damsels and armed hin And then took he a great hor green shield and a green spe then they ran together with mights, and brake their spe their hands. And then they d swords, and gave many sad str either of them wounded othe And at the last at an overthw mains' horse struck the green horse upon the side, he fel earth. And then the greer avoided his horse lightly, an him upon foot. That saw Be and therewithal he alight, rushed together like two migh pions a long while, and sore t both. With that came the da said, My lord the green knight shame stand ye so long fight the kitchen knave? Alas, it that ever ye were made knigh such a lad match such a k the weed overgrew the corn. with the green knight was ed, and therewithal he gave stroke of might, and clave h through. When Beaumains shield cloven asunder he was ashamed of that stroke, and of guage; and then he gave hin buffet upon the helm that he fe knees: and so suddenly Beaumai him upon the ground grovelin then the green knight cried hir and yielded him unto Sir Be and prayed him to slay him is in vain, said Beaumains, shalt die, but if this damsel t with me pray me to save And therewithal he unlaced h like as he would slay him. I thee, false kitchen page, I w pray thee to save his life, for will be so much in thy danger shall he die, said Beaumains. hardy thou foul knave, said the that thou slay him. Alas, green knight, suffer me not to fair word may save me. Fair

een knight, save my life, and I
e thee the death of my brother,
er to become thy man, and
hts that hold of me for ever
you service. In the devil's
the damsel, that such a foul
nave should have thee and
hts' service. Sir knight, said
, all this availeth thee not, but
el speak with me for thy life.
withal he made a semblant
n. Let be, said the damsel,
knave, slay him not, for and
ou shall repent it. Damsel,
ains, your charge is to me a
nd at your commandment his
e saved, and else not. Then
knight with the green arms,
hee quit at this damsel's re-
I will not make her wroth; I
all that she chargeth me.
the green knight kneeled
l did him homage with his
hen said the damsel, Me re-
reen knight, of your damage,
ar brother's death the black
r of your help I had great
dread me sore to pass this
ay, dread you not, said the
ht, for ye shall lodge with
ight, and to morn I shall
hrough this forest. So they
horses and rode to his manor,
fast there beside.

CHAP. IX.

*'amsel ever rebuked Sir Beau-
nd would not suffer him to sit
ble, but called him kitchen boy.*

r she rebuked Beaumains, and
suffer him to sit at her table,
green knight took him and sat
le table. Marvel me thinketh,
reen knight to the damsel,
uke this noble knight as ye
arn you, damsel, he is a full
ht, and I know no knight
match him, therefore ye do
g to rebuke him, for he shall
ght good service, for what-
naketh himself ye shall prove
l that he is come of a noble
l of king's lineage. Fie, fie, said the damsel, it is shame for you to say of him such worship. Truly, said the green knight, it were shame for me to say of him any disworship, for he hath proved himself a better knight than I am, yet have I met with many knights in my days, and never or this time have I found no knight his match. And so that night they went unto rest, and all that night the green knight commanded thirty knights privily to watch Beaumains, for to keep him from all treason. And so on the morn they all arose, and heard their mass and brake their fast, and then they took their horses and rode on their way, and the green knight conveyed them through the forest, and there the green knight said, My lord Beaumains, I and these thirty knights shall be alway at your summons, both early and late, at your calling, and where that ever ye will send us. It is well said, said Beaumains; when that I call upon you ye must yield you unto king Arthur and all your knights. If that ye so command us, we shall be ready at all times, said the green knight. Fie, fie upon thee, said the damsel, that any good knights should be obedient unto a kitchen knave. So then departed the green knight and the damsel. And then she said unto Beaumains, Why followest thou me thou kitchen boy, cast away thy shield and thy spear and flee away, yet I counsel thee betimes or thou shall say right soon, Alas! For were thou as wight as ever was Wade, or Launcelot, Tristram, or the good knight Sir Lamorake, thou shalt not pass a pass here, that is called the pass perilous. Damsel, said Beaumains, who is afeard let him flee, for it were shame to turn again since I have ridden so long with you. Well, said the damsel, ye shall soon, whether ye will or not.

CHAP. X.

How the third brother, called the red knight, justed and fought against Beaumains, and how Beaumains overcame him.

So within a while they saw a tower as white as any snow, well matched all

about, and double diked. And over the tower-gate there hung a fifty shields of divers colours; and under that tower there was a fair meadow. And therein were many knights and squires to behold scaffolds and pavilions, for there upon the morn should be a great tournament; and the lord of the tower was in his castle, and looked out at a window, and saw a damsel, a dwarf, and a knight armed at all points. By my faith, said the lord, with that knight will I just, for I see that he is a knight errant. And so he armed him, and horsed him hastily. And when he was on horseback with his shield and his spear, it was all red, both his horse and his harness, and all that to him belonged. And when that he came nigh him he wend it had been his brother the black knight. And then he cried aloud, Brother what do ye in these marches? Nay, nay, said the damsel, it is not he; this is but a kitchen knave, that was brought up for alms in king Arthur's court. Nevertheless, said the red knight, I will speak with him or he depart. Ah, said the damsel, this knave hath killed thy brother, and Sir Kay named him Beaumains, and this horse and harness was thy brother's the black knight. Also I saw thy brother the green knight overcome of his hands. Now may ye be revenged upon him, for I may never be quit of him.

With this either knight departed in sunder, and they came together with all their might, and either of their horses fell to the earth, and they avoided their horses, and put their shields afore them, and drew their swords, and either gave other sad strokes, now here, now there, racing, tracing, foining, and hurling like two boars, the space of two hours. And then she cried on high to the red knight, Alas, thou noble red knight, think what worship hath followed thee, let never a kitchen knave endure thee so long as he doth. Then the red knight waxed wroth, and doubled his strokes, and hurt Beaumains wonderly sore, that the blood ran down to the ground, that it was wonder to see that strong battle. Yet at the last Sir B strake him to the earth, a would have slain the red knigh mercy, saying, Noble knight not, and I shall yield me to fifty knights with me that l commandment. And I forgiv the despite that thou hast do and the death of my brother knight. All this availeth no Beaumains, but if my damsel to save thy life. And the made semblant to strike off Let be, thou Beaumains, slay for he is a noble knight, a hardy upon thine head but him. Then Beaumains bad knight stand up, and thank t now of thy life. Then the r prayed him to see his castle, there all night. So the da granted him, and there they l cheer. But always the dam many foul words unto E whereof the red knight l marvel, and all that night knight made threescore k watch Beaumains, that he sh no shame nor villainy. And morn they heard mass, and the red knight came before l with his threescore knights, he proffered him his homage at all times, he and his knig him service. I thank you, s mains, but this ye shall grant I call upon you, to come afor king Arthur and yield you un be his knights. Sir, said the r I will be ready and my fell your summons. So Sir Beau parted and the damsel, and eve chiding him in the foullest ma

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Beaumains suffered bukes of the damsel, and be patiently.

Damsel, said Beaumains, y courteous so to rebuke me as me seemeth I have done you vice, and ever ye threaten me

h knights that we meet, but
ll your boast they lie in the
he mire, and therefore I pray
me no more: and when ye
aten or yielden as recreant,
e bid me go from you shame-
irst I let you wit I will not
n you, for I were worse than
I would depart from you all
that I win worship. Well,
right soon there shall meet
hall pay thee all thy wages,
the most man of worship
rld, except king Arthur. I
said Beaumains; the more
worship the more shall be
ip to have ado with him.
i they were ware where was
n a city rich and fair. And
em and the city a mile and
re was a fair meadow that
w mown, and therein were
ions fair to behold. Lo, said
, yonder is a lord that owneth
, and his custom is when the
fair to lie in this meadow to
tourney; and ever there be
i five hundred knights and
of arms, and there be all
games that any gentleman
. That goodly lord, said
, would I fain see. Thou
him time enough, said the
And so as she rode near she
pavilion where he was. Lo,
seest thou yonder pavilion,
of the colour of Inde, and all
thing that there is about, men
n, and horses trapped, shields
, all of the colour of Inde,
me is Sir Persant of Inde, the
liest knight that ever thou
on. It may well be, said
, but be he never so stout a
this field I shall abide till
him under his shield. Ah
she, thou were better flee be-
hy, said Beaumains, and he
knight as ye make him, he
et upon me with all his men,
five hundred knights. For
come no more but one at
all him not fail whilst my
life lasteth. Fie, fie, said the damsel, that ever such a dirty knave should blow such a boast. Damsel, he said, ye are to blame so to rebuke me, for I had lever do five battles than so to be rebuked; let him come, and then let him do his worst. Sir, she said, I marvel what thou art, and of what kin thou art come: boldly thou speakest, and boldly thou hast done, that have I seen: therefore I pray thee save thyself and thou mayest, for thy horse and thou have had great travail, and I dread we dwell over long from the siege, for it is but hence seven mile, and all perilous passages we are past, save all only this passage, and here I dread me sore lest ye shall catch some hurt, therefore I would ye were hence, that ye were not bruised nor hurt with this strong knight. But I let you wit this Sir Persant of Inde is nothing of might nor strength unto the knight that laid the siege about my lady. As for that, said Sir Beaumains, be it as it may; for since I am come so nigh this knight I will prove his might or I depart from him, and else I shall be shamed and I now withdraw me from him. And therefore, damsel, have ye no doubt by the grace of God I shall so deal with this knight, that within two hours after noon I shall deliver him, and then shall we come to the siege by day light. Oh mercy, marvel have I, said the damsel, what manner a man ye be, for it may never be otherwise but that ye be come of a noble blood, for so foul and shamefully did never woman rule a knight as I have done you, and ever courteously ye have suffered me, and that came never but of a gentle blood.

Damsel, said Beaumains, a knight may little do that may not suffer a damsel; for whatsoever ye said unto me I took none heed to your words, for the more ye said the more ye angered me, and my wrath I wreaked upon them that I had ado withal. And therefore all the missaying that ye missayed me furthered me in my battle, and caused me to think to shew and prove myself at the end what I was; for peradventure

though I had meat in king Arthur's kitchen, yet I might have had meat enough in other places; but all that I did it for to prove and to assay my friends, and that shall be known another day, and whether that I be a gentleman born or none, I let you wit, fair damsel, I have done you gentleman's service, and peradventure better service yet will I do or I depart from you. Alas, she said, fair Beaumains, forgive me all that I have missaid or done against thee. With all my heart, said he, I forgive it you, for ye did nothing but as ye should do, for all your evil words pleased me; and damsel, said Beaumains, since it liketh you to say thus fair to me, wit ye well it gladdeth mine heart greatly, and now me seemeth there is no knight living but I am able enough for him.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Beaumains fought with Sir Persant of Inde, and made him to be yielden.

With this Sir Persant of Inde had espied them as they hoved in the field, and knightly he sent to them whether he came in war or in peace. Say to thy lord, said Beaumains, I take no force, but whether as him list himself. So the messenger went again unto Sir Persant, and told him all his answer. Well, then will I have ado with him to the utterance. And so he purveyed him and rode against him. And Beaumains saw him and made him ready, and there they met with all that ever their horses might run, and brake their spears either in three pieces, and their horses rushed so together that both their horses fell dead to the earth, and lightly they avoided their horses, and put their shields afore them, and drew their swords, and gave many great strokes, that sometime they hurtled together that they fell groveling on the ground. Thus they fought two hours and more, that their shields and their hauberks were all forhewn, and in many places they were wounded. So at the last Sir Beaumains smote him through the side of the body, and then he drew him back here and th knightly maintained his battle lo And at the last, though him lo Beaumains smote Sir Persant ab the helm that he fell groveli earth, and then he lept upon h thwart, and unlaced his helm slain him. Then Sir Persant him and asked him mercy. W came the damsel, and prayed his life. I will well, for it w that this noble knight sho Gramercy, said Persant, gentl and damsel; for certainly no well it was ye that slew my bro black knight, at the black th was a full noble knight, hi was Sir Percard. Also, I am s ye are he that won mine other the green knight, his name was tolepe. Also, ye won my bro red knight Sir Perimones. A since ye have won these, this do for to please you; ye sh homage and fealty of me, and dred knights, to be always at yo mandment, to go and ride when command us. And so they w Sir Persant's pavilion, and d wine and eat spices. And a Sir Persant made him to rest bed until supper time, and afte to bed again. And so we le there till on the morn.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the goodly communication bet Persant and Beaumains, and told him that his name was Si

And so on the morn the dan Sir Beaumains heard mass an their fast, and so took their lea damsel, said Persant, whithers ye away leading this knight? said, this knight is going to t that besiegeth my sister in t dangerous. Ah, ah, said Pers is the knight of the red lawn, t is the most perilous knight that now living, and a man that is mercy, and men say that he ha men's strength. God save you

is, from that knight, for he
wrong to that lady, and that
, for she is one of the fairest
ie world, and me seemeth
amsel is her sister. Is not
Linet? said he. Yea, sir,
d my lady my sister's name
nes. Now shall I tell you,
sant, this red knight of the
th lain long at the siege, well
o years, and many times he
had her and he had would,
ngeth the time to this intent
Sir Launcelot du Lake to do
him, or Sir Tristram, or Sir
e Galis, or Sir Gawaine:
his tarrying so long at the
v, my lord Sir Persant of
the damsel Linet, I require
e will make this gentleman
ever he fight with the red
will with all my heart, said
and it please him to take
f knighthood of so simple a
am. Sir, said Beaumains,
u for your good will, for I
sped, for certainly the noble
Launcelot made me knight.
ersant, of a more renowned
ht ye not be made knight.
knights he may be called
ighthood: and so all the
that betwixt three knights
clearly knighthood, that is
du Lake, Sir Tristram de
d Sir Lamorak de Galis:
now the renown. There
other knights, as Sir Pala-
Saracen, and Sir Sasere his
lso Sir Bleoberis, and Sir
e Ganis his brother; also Sir
nis, and Sir Ector de Maris,
rcivale de Galis; these and
be noble knights, but there
at pass the three above said;
od speed you well, said Sir
r and ye may match the red
shall be called the fourth of
Sir, said Beaumains, I would
ood fame and of knighthood.
ou wit I came of good men,
say my father was a noble
o that ye will keep it in close,

and this damsel, I will tell you of what kin I am. We will not discover you, said they both, till ye command us, by the faith we owe unto God. Truly then, said he, my name is Gareth of Orkney, and king Lot was my father, and my mother is king Arthur's sister; her name is dame Morgawse, and Sir Gawaine is my brother, and Sir Agravaine, and Sir Gaheris, and I am the youngest of them all. And yet wot not king Arthur nor Sir Gawaine what I am.

CHAP. XIV.

How the lady that was besieged had word from her sister how she had brought a knight to fight for her, and what battles he had achieved.

So the book saith that the lady that was besieged had word of her sister's coming by the dwarf, and a knight with her, and how he had passed all the perilous passages. What manner a man is he? said the lady. He is a noble knight, truly, madam, said the dwarf, and but a young man, but he is as likely a man as ever ye saw any. What is he, said the lady, and of what kin is he come, and of whom was he made knight? Madam, said the dwarf, he is the king's son of Orkney, but his name I will not tell you as at this time; but wit ye well, of Sir Launcelot was he made knight, for of none other would he be made knight, and Sir Kay named him Beaumains. How escaped he, said the lady, from the brethren of Persant? Madam, he said, as a noble knight should. First, he slew two brethren at a passage of a water. Ah! said she, they were good knights, but they were murderers, the one hight Gherard de Breusse, and that other knight hight Sir Arnold de Breusse. Then, madam, he recountered with the black knight, and slew him in plain battle, and so he took his horse and his armour and fought with the green knight, and wan him in plain battle, and in likewise he served the red knight, and after in the same wise he served the blue knight, and wan him in plain battle. Then, said

the lady, he hath overcome Sir Persant of Inde, one of the noblest knights of the world. And the dwarf said, He hath won all the four brethren, and slain the black knight. And yet he did more tofore: he overthrew Sir Kay, and left him nigh dead upon the ground; also he did a great battle with Sir Launcelot, and there they departed on even hands: and then Sir Launcelot made him knight. Dwarf, said the lady, I am glad of these tidings, therefore go thou in an hermitage of mine here by, and there shalt thou bear with thee of my wine in two flaggons of silver, they are of two gallons, and also two cast of bread, with fat venison baked, and dainty fowls; and a cup of gold here I deliver thee, that is rich and precious, and bear all this to mine hermitage, and put it in the hermit's hands. And then go thou unto my sister and greet her well, and command me unto that gentle knight, and pray him to eat and to drink, and make him strong; and say ye him I thank him of his courtesy and goodness, that he would take upon him such labour for me that never did him bounty nor courtesy. Also pray him that he be of good heart and good courage, for he shall meet with a full noble knight, but he is neither of bounty, courtesy, nor gentleness, for he attendeth unto no thing but to murder, and that is the cause I cannot praise him nor love him. So this dwarf departed and came to Sir Persant, where he found the damsel Linet and Sir Beaumains, and there he told them all as ye have heard, and then they took their leave; but Sir Persant took an ambling hackney and conveyed them on their ways and then beleft them to God. And so within a little while they came to that hermitage, and there they drank the wine, and eat the venison and the fowls baken.

And so when they had repasted them well, the dwarf returned again with his vessel unto the castle again, and there met with him the red knight of the red lawns, and asked him from whence that he came, and where he had been. Sir, said the dwarf, been with my lady's sister of this and she hath been at king A court, and brought a knight wi Then I account her travail bu For though she had brought w Sir Launcelot, Sir Tristram, S morak, or Sir Gawaine, I would myself good enough for them may well be, said the dwarf, b knight hath passed all the p passages, and hath slain the knight, and other two more, an the green knight, the red knigl the blue knight. Then is he one c four that I have afore rehearsed. none of those, said the dwarf, bu a king's son. What is his name the red knight of the red lawn. will I not tell you, said the dwa Sir Kay upon scorn named him mains. I care not, said the knigh knight soever he be, for I shal deliver him; and if I ever mat he shall have a shameful death, as other have had. That were pit the dwarf, and it is marvel th make such shameful war upon knights.

CHAP. XV.

How the damsel and Beaumains c the siege, and came to a sycamo and there Beaumains blew a bo then the knight of the red lawns c fight with him.

Now leave we the knight an dwarf, and speak we of Beaumain all night lay in the hermitage, an the morn he and the damsel Line their mass, and brake their fast. then they took their horses an throughout a fair forest, and the came to a plain, and saw wher many pavilions and tents, and castle, and there was much smo great noise. And when they can the siege Sir Beaumains espied great trees, as he rode, how ther full goodly armed knights by th and their shields about their neck their swords, and gilt spurs upo heels, and so there hung nigh

ıamefully with full rich arms. Beaumains abated his coun- nd said, What meaneth this? aid the damsel, abate not your ıll this sight, for ye must en- ɔurself, or else ye be all shent, se knights came hither to this escue my sister dame Liones, the red knight of the red lawn ɔme them he put them to this leath, without mercy and pity. e same wise he will serve you uit you better. Now Jesu de- aid Sir Beaumains, from such s death and disgrace of arms, han I should so be farewithal, ather be slain manly in plain were ye better, said the dam- rust not in him is no cour- all goeth to the death or nurder; and that is pity, for ıll likely man, well made of a full noble knight of prowess, d of great lands and posses- uly, said Beaumains, he may good knight, but he useth customs, and it is marvel that th so long, that none of the hts of my lord Arthur have with him. And then they e dikes, and saw them double h full warlike walls, and e lodged many great lords walls, and there was great ninstrelsy, and the sea betid one side of the walls, where y ships and mariners' noise, and how.' And also, there y a sycamore tree, and there rn, the greatest that ever they n elephant's bone, and this the red lawn had hanged it that if there came any errant must blow that horn, and ıe make him ready, and come do battle. But Sir, I pray he damsel Linet, blow ye not ill it be high noon, for now t prime, and now encreaseth that, as men say, he hath 's strength. Ah, fie for shame, l, say ye never so more to me, ıe were as good a knight as ever was, I shall never fail him in his most might, for either I will win worship worshipfully, or die knightly in the field. And therewith he spurred his horse straight to the sycamore tree, and blew so the horn eagerly that all the siege and the castle rang thereof. And then there lept out knights out of their tents and pavilions, and they within the castle looked over the walls and out at windows. Then the red knight of the red lawns armed him hastily, and two barons set on his spurs upon his heels, and all was blood-red, his armour, spear, and shield. And an earl buckled his helm upon his head, and then they brought him a red spear and a red steed, and so he rode into a little vale under the castle, that all that were in the castle and at the siege might behold the battle.

CHAP. XVI.

How the two knights met together, and of their talking, and how they began their battle.

Sir, said the damsel Linet unto Sir Beaumains, look ye be glad and light, for yonder is your deadly enemy, and at yonder window is my lady my sister, dame Liones. Where? said Beaumains. Yonder, said the damsel, and pointed with her finger. That is truth, said Beaumains. She beseemeth afar the fairest lady that ever I looked upon, and truly, he said, I ask no better quarrel than now for to do battle, for truly she shall be my lady, and for her I will fight. And ever he looked up to the window with glad countenance. And the lady Liones made courtesy to him down to the earth, with holding up both their hands. With that the red knight of the red lawns called to Sir Beaumains, Leave, sir knight, thy looking, and behold me, I counsel thee, for I warn thee well she is my lady, and for her I have done many strong battles. If thou have so done, said Beaumains, me seemeth it was but waste labour, for she loveth none of thy fellowship, and thou to love that loveth not thee, is but great folly.

For and I understood that she were not glad of my coming I would be advised or I did battle for her. But I understand by the besieging of this castle, she may forbear thy fellowship. And therefore wit thou well, thou red knight of the red lawns, I love her, and will rescue her, or else to die. Sayest thou that, said the red knight, me seemeth thou ought of reason to beware by yonder knights that thou sawest hang upon yonder trees. Fie for shame, said Beaumains, that ever thou shouldest say or do so evil, for in that thou shamest thyself and knighthood, and thou mayest be sure there will no lady love thee that knoweth thy wicked customs. And now thou weenest that the sight of these hanged knights should fear me. Nay truly, not so, that shameful sight causeth me to have courage and hardiness against thee, more than I would have had against thee and thou were a well-ruled knight. Make thee ready, said the red knight of the red lawns, and talk no longer with me. Then Sir Beaumains bad the damsel go from him, and then they put their spears in their rests, and came together with all their might that they had both, and either smote other in the midst of their shields, that the breastplates, horse-girths, and cruppers brast, and fell to the earth both, and the reins of their bridles in their hands, and so they lay a great while sore astonied; and all they that were in the castle and in the siege wend their necks had been broken, and then many a stranger and other said the strange knight was a big man and a noble juster, for or now we saw never no knight match the red knight of the red lawns: thus they said, both within the castle and without. Then lightly they avoided their horses, and put their shields afore them, and drew their swords, and ran together like two fierce lions, and either gave other such buffets upon their helms that they reeled backward both two strides, and then they recovered both, and hewed great pieces of their harness and their shields, that a great part fell into the fields.

CHAP. XVII.

How after long fighting Beaum came the knight and would him, but at the request of th saved his life, and made hi him to the lady.

And then thus they fought past noon and never would s last they lacked wind both, they stood wagging and panting, blowing and bleedin that beheld them for the most for pity. So when they had re a while they went to battle a ing, racing, foining, as two bc at sometime they took the it had been two rams, and h gether that sometime they fe ing to the earth: and at some were so amazed that either to sword in stead of his own.

Thus they endured till even- that there was none that be might know whether was lik the battle; and their armou far hewn that men might see th sides, and in other places naked, but ever the naked p did defend. And the red kni wily knight of war, and his wi taught Sir Beaumains to be he abought it full sore ere he his fighting. And thus by them both, they granted eithe rest; and so they set them d two mole-hills there beside th place, and either of them u helm and took the cold wind, of their pages was fast by come when they called to un harness and to set them on their commandment. And then Beaumains' helm was off he l to the window, and there he fair lady dame Liones; and him such countenance that waxed light and jolly; and the bade the red knight of the make him ready, and let us do to the utterance. I will well knight. And then they lace helms, and their pages avo

pt together and fought freshly.
: red knight of the red lawns
him, and at an overthwart
ıim within the hand, that his
:ll out of his hand: and yet he
m another buffet on the helm
fell groveling to the earth, and
knight fell over him for to hold
wn. Then cried the maiden
ı high, O Sir Beaumains, where
ourage become! Alas, my lady
:r beholdeth thee, and she sob-
d weepeth, that maketh mine
ıeavy. When Sir Beaumains
er say so, he started up with a
ight and gat him upon his feet,
htly he lept to his sword and
it in his hand, and doubled his
ıto the red knight, and there
ught a new battle together. But
ımains then doubled his strokes,
ote so thick that he smote the
out of his hand, and then he
im upon the helm that he fell to
h, and Sir Beaumains fell upon
d unlaced his helm to have slain
d then he yielded him and asked
and said with a loud voice, O
night I yield me to thy mercy.
ir Beaumains bethought him
ıe knights that he had made
anged shamefully, and then he
may not with my worship save
, for the shameful deaths thou
ısed many full good knights to
r, said the red knight of the red
old your hand and ye shall know
es why I put them to so shame-
eath. Say on, said Sir Beau-
Sir, I loved once a lady, a fair
and she had her brother slain,
: said it was Sir Launcelot du
r else Sir Gawaine, and she
me as that I loved her heartily
would make her a promise by
ı of my knighthood, for to labour
arms until I met with one of
ıd all that I might overcome I
ut them unto a villainous death;
is the cause that I have put all
ights to death, and so I ensured
do all the villainy unto king
, knights, and that I should take
vengeance upon all these knights. And, Sir, now I will thee tell that every day my strength encreaseth till noon, and all this time have I seven men's strength.

CHAP. XVIII.

How the knight yielded him, and how Beaumains made him to go unto king Arthur's court, and to cry Sir Launcelot mercy.

THEN came there many earls, and barons, and noble knights, and prayed that knight to save his life, and take him to your prisoner: and all they fell upon their knees and prayed him of mercy, and that he would save his life, and, Sir, they all said, it were fairer of him to take homage and fealty, and let him hold his lands of you, than for to slay him: by his death ye shall have none advantage, and his misdeeds that be done may not be undone; and therefore he shall make amends to all parties, and we all will become your men, and do you homage and fealty. Fair lords, said Beaumains, wit you well I am full loth to slay this knight, nevertheless he hath done passing ill and shamefully. But insomuch all that he did was at a lady's request I blame him the less, and so for your sake I will release him, that he shall have his life upon this covenant, that he go within the castle and yield him there to the lady, and if she will forgive and quit him, I will well; with this that he make her amends of all the trespass he hath done against her and her lands. And also, when that is done, that ye go unto the court of king Arthur, and there that ye ask Sir Launcelot mercy, and Sir Gawaine, for the evil will ye have had against them. Sir, said the red knight of the red lawns, all this will I do as ye command, and certain assurance and sureties ye shall have. And so then when the assurance was made, he made his homage and fealty, and all those earls and barons with him. And then the maiden Linet came to Sir Beaumains and unarmed him, and searched his wounds, and stinted his blood, and in likewise she

did to the red knight of the red lawns. And there they sojourned ten days in their tents, and the red knight made his lords and servants to do all the pleasure that they might unto Sir Beaumains. And so within a while the red knight of the red lawns went unto the castle and put him in the lady Liones' grace, and so she received him upon sufficient surety; so all her hurts were well restored of all that she could complain. And then he departed unto the court of king Arthur, and there openly the red knight of the red lawns put him in the mercy of Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine, and there he told openly how he was overcome and by whom, and also he told all the battles from the beginning unto the ending. Mercy, said king Arthur and Sir Gawaine, we marvel much of what blood he is come, for he is a noble knight. Have ye no marvel, said Sir Launcelot, for ye shall right well wit that he is come of a full noble blood, and as for his might and hardiness there be but few now living that is so mighty as he is, and so noble of prowess. It seemeth by you, said king Arthur, that ye know his name, and from whence he is come, and of what blood he is. I suppose I do so, said Launcelot, or else I would not have given him the order of knighthood; but he gave me such charge at that time that I should never discover him until he required me, or else it be known openly by some other.

CHAP. XIX.

How Beaumains came to the lady, and when he came to the castle the gates were closed against him, and of the words that the lady said to him.

Now turn we unto Sir Beaumains, that desired of Linet that he might see her sister his lady. Sir, said she, I would fain ye saw her. Then Sir Beaumains all armed him, and took his horse and his spear, and rode straight unto the castle. And when he came to the gate he found there many men armed, and pulled up the drawbridge and drew the port close. Then marvelled he why they would not suffer him to And then he looked up to the w and there he saw the fair Lion said on high, Go thy way, Sir mains, for as yet thou shalt nc wholly my love, unto the time th be called one of the number of t thy knights. And therefore go in worship this twelvemonth, an thou shalt hear new tidings. Al lady, said Beaumains, I have r served that ye should shew n strangeness, and I had wend should have right good cheer wit and unto my power I have d thank, and well I am sure bought your love with part of t blood within my body. Fair co knight, said dame Liones, be n pleased nor over hasty; for wit your great travail nor good lov not be lost, for I consider you travail and labour, your boun your goodness, as me ought to d therefore go on your way, and lo ye be of good comfort, for all s for your worship and for the be perdy a twelvemonth will soon b and trust me, fair knight, I shall be you, and never to betray you, but death I shall love you and none And therewithal she turned her fr window; and Sir Beaumains rod ward from the castle, making gre and so he rode here and there, a not where he rode, till it was dark And then it happened him to c a poor man's house, and there l harboured all that night. But Sir mains had no rest, but wallow writhed for the love of the lady castle. And so upon the morr took his horse, and rode until u and then he came to a broad and thereby was a great lodge there he alight to sleep, and l head upon the shield, and beto horse to the dwarf, and comm him to watch all night. Nov we to the lady of the same cast thought much upon Beaumain then she called unto her Sir C more her brother, and prayed hin

as he loved her heartily, that ride after Sir Beaumains, and ye wait upon him till ye may sleeping, for I am sure in his he will alight down in some l lay him down to sleep: and have ye your wait upon him, e priviest manner ye can, take , and go ye your way with him ever ye may or Sir Beaumains For my sister Linet telleth me an tell of what kindred he is l what is his right name. And while I and my sister will ride : castle to await when ye bring the dwarf. And then when ye ught him unto your castle I him in examination myself: time I know what is his right l of what kindred he is come, never be merry at my heart. d Sir Gringamore, all this shall after your intent. And so he he other day and the night till ound Sir Beaumains lying by nd his head upon his shield, ep. And then when he saw Sir is fast on sleep, he came stilly ehind the dwarf, and plucked nder his arm, and so he rode h him as fast as ever he might wn castle. And this Sir Grin- arms were all black, and that longed. But ever as he rode dwarf toward his castle, he o his lord and prayed him of nd therewith awoke Sir Beau- d up he lept lightly, and saw Gringamore rode his way with , and so Sir Gringamore rode sight.

CHAP. XX.

Beaumains rode after to rescue arf, and came into the castle e was.

Sir Beaumains put on his helm l buckled his shield, and took : and rode after him all that ight ride, through marshes and l great dales, that many times and he plunged over the head in deep mires, for he knew not the way, but took the gainest way in that fury, that many times he was like to perish. And at the last him happened to come to a fair green way, and there he met with a poor man of the country whom he saluted, and asked him whether he met not with a knight upon a black horse and all black harness, and a little dwarf sitting behind him with heavy cheer. Sir, said this poor man, here by me came Sir Gringamore the knight, with such a dwarf mourning as ye say, and therefore I counsel you not follow him, for he is one of the most perilous knights of the world, and his castle is here nigh hand but two mile, therefore we advise you ride not after Sir Gringamore, but if ye owe him good will.

So leave we Sir Beaumains riding toward the castle, and speak we of Sir Gringamore and the dwarf. Anon as the dwarf was come to the castle, dame Liones and dame Linet her sister, asked the dwarf where was his master born, and of what lineage he was come? And but if thou tell me, said dame Liones, thou shalt never escape this castle, but ever here to be prisoner. As for that, said the dwarf, I fear not greatly to tell his name, and of what kin he is come. Wit ye well he is a king's son, and his mother is sister to king Arthur, and he is brother to the good knight Sir Gawaine, and his name is Sir Gareth of Orkney. And now I have told you his right name, I pray you, fair lady, let me go to my lord again, for he will never out of this country until that he have me again. And if he be angry he will do much harm or that he be stint, and work you wrack in this country. As for that threatening, said Sir Gringamore, be it as it be may, we will go to dinner. And so they washed and went to meat, and made them merry and well at ease, and because the lady Liones of the castle was there they made great joy. Truly madam, said Linet unto her sister, well may he be a king's son, for he hath many good taches on him, for he is courteous and mild, and the most suffer-

ing man that ever I met withall. For I dare say there was never gentlewoman reviled man in so foul manner as I have rebuked him; and at all times he gave me goodly and meek answers again. And as they sat thus talking, there came Sir Gareth in at the gate with an angry countenance, and his sword drawn in his hand, and cried aloud that all the castle might hear it, saying, Thou traitor Sir Gringamore, deliver me my dwarf again, or by the faith that I owe to the order of knighthood, I shall do thee all the harm that I can. Then Sir Gringamore looked out at a window and said, Sir Gareth of Orkney, leave thy boasting words, for thou gettest not thy dwarf again. Thou coward knight, said Sir Gareth, bring him with thee, and come and do battle with me, and win him and take him. So will I do, said Sir Gringamore, and me list, but for all thy great words thou gettest him not. Ah! fair brother, said dame Liones, I would he had his dwarf again, for I would he were not wroth, for now he hath told me all my desire I keep no more of the dwarf. And also, brother, he hath done much for me, and delivered me from the red knight of the red lawns, and therefore, brother, I owe him my service afore all knights living. And wit ye well that I love him before all other, and full fain I would speak with him. But in no wise I would that he wist what I were, but that I were another strange lady. Well, said Sir Gringamore, since I know now your will, I will obey now unto him. And right therewithall he went down unto Sir Gareth, and said, Sir, I cry you mercy, and all that I have misdone I will amend it at your will. And therefore I pray you that ye would alight, and take such cheer as I can make you in this castle. Shall I have my dwarf? said Sir Gareth. Yea, sir, and all the pleasure that I can make you; for as soon as your dwarf told me what ye were, and of what blood ye are come, and what noble deeds ye have done in these marches, then I repented of my deeds. And then Sir Gareth alight, and there came his dwarf a horse. O my fellow, said I have had many adventu sake. And so Sir Gring him by the hand, and led h hall where his own wife was

CHAP. XXI.

How Sir Gareth, otherwise mains, came to the presence and how they took acquaint their love.

And then came forth d arrayed like a princess, an made him passing good ch her again. And they had guage and lovely countenar And Sir Gareth thought Would that the lady of the ous were so fair as she were all manner of games dancing and singing. A more Sir Gareth beheld th more he loved her, and so in love that he was past hi reason. And forth toward went unto supper, and Sir G not eat for his love was so wist not where he was. All espied Sir Gringamore, an supper he called his sister d unto a chamber and said, I have well espied your cour tween you and this knight, a ter, that ye wit he is a full n and if ye can make him t I will do to him all the pl can, for and ye were better ye were well bestowed upo brother, said dame Liones, I well that the knight is goo he is of a noble house. N ing I will assay him better, am most beholding to him o man, for he hath had grea my love, and passed many passage. Right so Sir Gring unto Sir Gareth and said, S good cheer, for ye shall hav cause, for this lady my sis at all times, her worship sa ye well she loveth you as w

:ter if better may be. And I
said Sir Gareth, there lived
der man than I would be.
orship, said Sir Gringamore,
ıy promise; and as long as it
'e shall sojourn with me, and
hall be with us daily and
nake you all the cheer that
. will well, said Sir Gareth,
promised to be nigh this
; twelvemonth. And well I
ng Arthur and other noble
l find me where that I am
twelvemonth. For I shall
nd found, if that I be on live.
he noble knight Sir Gareth
the dame Liones, which he
loved, and kissed her many
either made great joy of
there she promised him her
nly to love him and none
lays of her life. Then this
Liones, by the assent of her
ld Sir Gareth all the truth
vas, and how she was the
that he did battle for, and
s lady of the castle perilous.
he told him how she caused
to take away his dwarf.

CHAP. XXII.

bt, came an armed knight and
ith Sir Gareth, and be, sore
e thigh, smote off the knight's

cause, to know the certainty
our name, and of what kin
ne. And then she let fetch
Linet the damsel, which had
ı him many dreary ways.
ir Gareth more gladder than
fore. And then they troth
other to love, and never to
ıeir life lasted. And at after
made clean avoidance, that
ınd lady should go unto his
Sir Gareth said plainly that
o no further than the hall,
ı places, he said, was con-
an errant knight to take his
nd so there were ordained
ıes, and thereon feather beds,
and there laid him down to sleep. And within awhile he looked afore him and perceived and saw come an armed knight, with many lights about him. And this knight had a long battle-axe in his hand, and made grim countenance to smite him. When Sir Gareth saw him come in that wise, he lept out of his bed, and gat in his hand his sword, and lept straight toward that knight. And when the knight saw Sir Gareth come so fiercely upon him, he smote him with a thrust through the thick of the thigh, that the wound was a shaftmon broad, and had cut a-two many veins and sinews. And therewithal Sir Gareth smote him upon the helm such a buffet that he fell groveling, and then he lept over him, and unlaced his helm, and smote off his head from the body. And then he bled so fast that he might not stand, but so he laid him down upon his bed, and there he swooned, and lay as he had been dead. Then dame Liones found him, and cried aloud, that her brother Sir Gringamore heard and came down. And when he saw Sir Gareth so shamefully wounded, he was sore displeased, and said, I am shamed that this noble knight is thus honoured. Sister, said Sir Gringamore, How may this be that ye be here, and this noble knight wounded? Brother, said dame Liones, I cannot tell you, for it was not done by me, nor by mine assent. For he is my lord, and I am his, and he must be my husband, therefore, brother, I will that ye wit I shame me not to be with him, nor to do him all the pleasure that I can. Sister, said Sir Gringamore, and I will that ye wit it, and Sir Gareth both, that it was never done by me nor by mine assent that this unhappy deed was done. And there they stanched his bleeding as well as they might. And great sorrow made Sir Gringamore and dame Liones. And forthwithal came dame Linet and took up the head in the sight of them all, and anointed it with an ointment there as it was smitten off, and in the same wise she did to the other part there as the head stuck, and

then she set it together, and it stuck as fast as ever it did. And the knight arose lightly up, and the damsel Linet put him in her chamber. All this saw Sir Gringamore and dame Liones, and so did Sir Gareth, and well he espied that it was the damsel Linet that rode with him through the perilous passages. Ah well, damsel, said Sir Gareth, I wend ye would not have done as ye have done. My lord Gareth, said the damsel Linet, all that I have done I will avow, and all that I have done shall be for your honour and worship, and to us all. And so within a while, Sir Gareth was nigh whole, and waxed light and jocund, and sang, danced, and gamed. And at night, because he was wounded afore, he laid his armour and his sword nigh his bed side.

CHAP. XXIII.

How the said knight came again the next night, and was beheaded again. And how at the feast of Pentecost all the knights that Sir Gareth had overcome came and yielded them to king Arthur.

Right as soon as Sir Gareth was in his bed he espied an armed knight coming toward the bed, and therewith he leaped lightly out, and they hurtled together with great ire and malice all about the hall, and there was great light as it had been the number of twenty torches both before and behind, so that Sir Gareth strained him so that his old wound burst out again bleeding, but he was hot and courageous, and took no keep, but with his great force he struck down that knight, and voided his helm and struck off his head. Then he hewed the head in an hundred pieces. And when he had done so, he took up all those pieces and threw them out at a window into the ditches of the castle; and by this done he was so faint that scarcely he might stand for bleeding. And then he fell in a deadly swoon in the floor. And then dame Liones found him, and cried so that Sir Gringamore heard. And when he came and found Sir Gareth in that plight, he made great sorrow, and there he awaked Sir Gareth, and gave him a drink lieved him wonderly well, but th that dame Liones made there tongue tell, for she so fared wit as she would have died. Right this damsel Linet before them she had fetched all the gobbe head that Sir Gareth had throv a window, and there she anoint as she had done tofore, and together again. Well, damse said Sir Gareth, I have not des this despite that ye do unto knight, she said, I have noth but I will avow, and all tha done shall be to your worship all. And then was Sir Gareth of his bleeding. But the lee that there was no man that life should heal him througho wound, but if they healed caused that stroke by enchantm

So leave we Sir Gareth th Sir Gringamore and his sisters, we unto king Arthur, that at feast of Pentecost held his f there came the green knight knights, and yielded them all u Arthur. And so there came knight, his brother, and yielde king Arthur, and threescore with him. Also there came knight, brother to them, with dred knights, and yielded th king Arthur. And the green name was Pertolepe, and knight's name was Perimones, blue knight's name was Sir P Inde. These three brethren t Arthur how they were overco knight that a damsel had with called him Beaumains. By n said the king, I marvel what k is, and of what lineage he is c was with me a twelvemonth, an and shamefully he was fostered, Kay in scorn named him Be So right as the king stood so with these three brethren the Sir Launcelot du Lake, and king that there was come a goo with six hundred knights wi Then the king went out of Ca

he feast, and there came to d, and saluted the king in a nner. What will ye? said r, and what is your errand? , my name is the red knight lawns, but my name is Sir id, sir, wit ye well here I am ı of a knight that is called for he won me in plain l for hand, and so did never but he that ever had the me this thirty winter, the manded to yield me to you l. Ye are welcome, said the : have been long a great foe to my court, and now I trust entreat you that ye shall be Sir, both I and these six ights shall always be at your o do you service as may powers. Truly, said king m much beholding unto that t hath so put his body in worship me and my court. thee, Ironside, that art called ght of the red lawns, thou art rilous knight. And if thou f me I shall worship thee and knight of the Table Round: hou must be no more a Sir, as to that I have pro- Sir Beaumains never more to ustoms, for all the shameful ıt I used I did at the request ıat I loved; and therefore I ıto Sir Launcelot, and unto ıe, and ask them forgiveness l will I had unto them, for ɔut to death was all only for Sir Launcelot and Sir Gaıey be here now, said the thee, now may ye say to t ye will. And then he wn unto Sir Launcelot and waine, and prayed them of of his enmity that ever he them.

CHAP. XXIV.

lrthur pardoned them, and de- them where Sir Gareth was.

odly they said all at once, e you, and we do, and pray you that ye will tell us where we may find Sir Beaumains. Fair lords, said Sir Ironside, I cannot tell you, for it is full hard to find him, for all such young knights as he is one, when they be in their adventures be never abiding in one place. But to say the worship that the red knight of the red lawns and Sir Persant and his brothers said of Beaumains it was marvel to hear. Well, my fair lords, said king Arthur, wit you well I shall do you honour for the love of Sir Beaumains, and as soon as ever I meet with him I shall make you all upon one day knights of the Table Round. And as to thee, Sir Persant of Inde, thou hast ever been called a full noble knight, and so have ever been thy three brethren called. But I marvel, said the king, that I hear not of the black knight your brother, he was a full noble knight. Sir, said Pertolepe the green knight, Sir Beaumains slew him in a recounter with his spear, his name was Sir Percard. That was great pity, said the king, and so said many knights. For these four brethren were full well known in the court of king Arthur for noble knights, for long time they had holden war against the knights of the Table Round. Then said Pertolepe the green knight unto the king: At a passage of the water of Mortaise there encountered Sir Beaumains with two brethren that ever for the most part kept that passage, and they were two deadly knights, and there he slew the eldest brother in the water, and smote him upon the head such a buffet that he fell down in the water and there he was drowned, and his name was Gherard le Breusse: and after he slew the other brother upon the land, and his name was Sir Arnold le Breusse.

CHAP. XXV.

How the queen of Orkney came to this feast of Pentecost, and Sir Gawaine and his brethren came to ask her blessing.

So then the king and they went to meat, and were served in the best manner. And as they sat at the meat, there

came in the queen of Orkney, with ladies and knights a great number. And then Sir Gawaine, Sir Agravaine and Gaheris arose and went to her, and saluted her upon their knees and asked her blessing: for in fifteen year they had not seen her. Then she spake on high to her brother king Arthur: Where have ye done my young son Sir Gareth. He was here amongst you a twelvemonth, and ye made a kitchen knave of him, the which is shame to you all. Alas, where have ye done my dear son that was my joy and bliss? Oh dear mother, said Sir Gawaine, I knew him not. Nor I, said the king, that now me repenteth, but thanked be God he is proved a worshipful knight as any is now living of his years, and I shall never be glad till I may find him. Ah brother, said the queen unto king Arthur, and to Sir Gawaine, and to all her sons, ye did yourself great shame when ye amongst you kept my son Gareth in the kitchen and fed him like a poor hog. Fair sister, said king Arthur, ye shall right well wit I knew him not, nor no more did Sir Gawaine nor his brethren. But since it is so that he is thus gone from us all, we must shape a remedy to find him. Also, sister, me seemeth ye might have done me to wit of his coming, and then, and I had not done well to him, ye might have blamed me. For when he came to this court he came leaning upon two men's shoulders, as though he might not have gone. And then he asked me three gifts, and one he asked the same day, that was that I would give him meat enough that twelvemonth. And the other two gifts he asked that day a twelvemonth, and that was that he might have the adventure of the damsel Linet, and the third was that Sir Launcelot should make him knight when he desired him. And so I granted him all his desire, and many in this court marvelled that he desired his sustenance for a twelvemonth, and thereby we deemed many of us that he was not come of a noble house. Sir, said the queen of Orkney unto king Arthur her brother, wit you well that I sent him unto you right well arm horsed, and worshipfully beseen body, and gold and silver ple spend. It may be, said the kin thereof saw we none, save tha day as he departed from us, l told me that there came a dwarf suddenly, and brought him armo a good horse, full well and rich seen, and thereat we had all marv whence that riches came, that we all that he was come of men of w Brother, said the queen, all that I believe, for ever since he was he was marvellously witted: an he was faithful and true of his p But I marvel, said she, that Sir I mock him and scorn him, and ga that name Beaumains: yet Sir K the queen, named him more righ than he wend; for I dare say, be on live, he is as fair an hand and well disposed as any is Sister, said Arthur, let this langu still, and by the grace of God h be found and he be within thes realms; and let all this pass, merry, for he is proved to be a worship, and that is my joy.

CHAP. XXVI.

How king Arthur sent for the lady and how she let cry a tourney castle, where as came many knigl

Then said Sir Gawaine an brethren unto Arthur, Sir, and give us leave we will go and se brother. Nay, said Sir Launcelo shall ye not need, and so sa Baudwin of Britain: for as by o vice the king shall send unto Liones a messager, and pray he she will come to the court in haste that she may, and doubt she will come, and then she ma you best counsel where ye sha him. This is well said of you, s king. So then goodly letters were and the messager sent forth, that and day he went till he came un castle perilous. And then th dame Liones was sent for there

ir Gringamore her brother
reth. And when she under-
nessage, she bad him ride on
nto king Arthur, and she
e after in all goodly haste.
she came to Sir Gringamore
· Gareth, she told them all
rthur had sent for her. That
f me, said Sir Gareth. Now
said dame Liones, what shall
in what manner I shall rule
lady and my love, said Sir
pray you in no manner of
aknown where I am, but well
mother is there and all my
d they will take upon them
; and I wot well that they
his, madam, I would ye said
l the king, when he question-
u of me: then may ye say,
advice, that, and it like his
, ye will do make a cry
feast of the Assumption of
that what knight there
n best, he shall weld you
r land. And if so be that
lded man, that his wife shall
gree and a coronal of gold,
stones of virtue to the value
nd pound, and a white jer-

Liones departed and came
thur, where she was nobly
d there she was sore ques-
he king, and of the queen
And she answered, where
was she could not tell.
uch she said unto Arthur;
let cry a tournament, that
ne before my castle at the
of our Lady, and the cry
is, that you my lord Arthur
re and your knights, and I
that my knights shall be
rs: and then I am sure ye
f Sir Gareth. This is well
d king Arthur: and so she
And the king and she made
ision for that tournament.
e Liones was come to the
ilion, that was the same
s her brother Sir Gringa-
, then she told him all how
she had done, and what promise she had made to king Arthur. Alas, said Sir Gareth, I have been so wounded by mishap sithen I came into this castle, that I shall not be able to do at that tournament like a knight, for I was never thoroughly whole since I was hurt. Be ye of good cheer, said the damsel Linet, for I undertake within these fifteen days for to make you whole, and as lusty as ever ye were. And then she laid an ointment and a salve to him as it pleased her, that he was never so fresh nor so lusty. Then said the damsel Linet: Send you unto Sir Persant of Inde, and summon him and his knights to be here with you as they have promised. Also, that ye send unto Sir Ironside, that is the red knight of the red lawns, and charge him that he be ready with you with his whole sum of knights, and then shall ye be able to match with king Arthur and his knights. So this was done, and all knights were sent for unto the castle perilous. And then the red knight answered and said unto dame Liones, and to Sir Gareth, Madam, and my lord Sir Gareth, ye shall understand that I have been at the court of king Arthur, and Sir Persant of Inde and his brethren, and there we have done our homage as ye commanded us. Also, Sir Ironside said, I have taken upon me with Sir Persant of Inde and his brethren to hold party against my lord Sir Launcelot and the knights of that court. And this have I done for the love of my lady dame Liones, and you my lord Sir Gareth. Ye have well done, said Sir Gareth. But wit you well ye shall be full sore matched with the most noble knights of the world, therefore we must purvey us of good knights, where we may get them. That is well said, said Sir Persant, and worshipfully. And so the cry was made in England, Wales, and Scotland, Ireland, and Cornwall, and in all the out isles, and in Britany, and in many countries; that at the feast of the Assumption of our Lady next coming, men should come to the castle perilous, beside the Isle of

Avilion, and there all the knights that there came should have the choice whether them list to be on the one party with the knights of the castle, or on the other party with king Arthur. And two months was to the day that the tournament should be. And so there came many good knights that were at large, and held them for the most part against king Arthur and his knights of the Round Table, and came on the side of them of the castle. For Sir Epinogrus was the first, and he was the king's son of Northumberland, and Sir Palamides the Saracen was another, and Sir Safere his brother, and Sir Sagwarides his brother, but they were christened, and Sir Malegrine another, and Sir Brian de les Isles, a noble knight, and Sir Grummore Gummursum, a good knight of Scotland, and Sir Carados of the dolorous tower, a noble knight, and Sir Turquin his brother, and Sir Arnold and Sir Gauter, two brethren, good knights of Cornwall: there came Sir Tristram de Liones, and with him Sir Dinadan the seneschal and Sir Sadok; but this Sir Tristram was not at that time knight of the Table Round, but he was one of the best knights of the world. And so all these noble knights accompanied them with the lady of the castle, and with the red knight of the red lawns, but as for Sir Gareth, he would not take upon him more but as other mean knights.

CHAP. XXVII.

How king Arthur went to the tournament with his knights, and how the lady received him worshipfully, and how the knights encountered.

And then there came with king Arthur Sir Gawaine, Agravaine and Gaheris, his brethren. And then his nephews Sir Uwaine le Blanchemains, and Sir Aglovale, Sir Tor, Sir Percivale de Galis, and Sir Lamorak de Galis. Then came Sir Launcelot du Lake with his brethren, nephews, and cousins, as Sir Lionel, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, and Sir Galihodin, Sir Galihud, and many more of Sir Laun and Sir Dinadan, Sir I Taile his brother, a goo Sir Sagramore, a good kr the most part of the l Also there came with king knights, the king of Irelar saunce, and the king of S Carados, and king Urien of Gore, and king Bagden son Sir Meliaganus, and the noble prince. All princes, earls, barons, an knights, as Sir Brandiles les Avoutres, and Sir Kay Sir Meliot de Logris, Si Winchelsea, Sir Godelak came with king Arthur, a that cannot be rehearsed.

Now leave we of the knights, and let us speak array that was made within about the castle for both lady dame Liones ordaine upon her part for her nob all manner of lodging an came by land and by wat lacked nothing for her l the other, but there was had for gold and silver fo and his knights. And th the harbingers from king harbour him and his kings barons, and knights. A Gareth prayed dame Lione knight of the red lawns, a and his brother, and Sir that in no wise there sh them tell his name, and n of him than of the leas there was; for he said, I known of neither more no at the beginning neither a

Then dame Liones sa Gareth, Sir, I will lend yo I would pray you as ye lo let me have it again wh nament is done, for that ri my beauty much more than And the virtue of my ring green it will turn to red, a it will turn in likeness to g is blue it will turn to liker

s white it will turn in likeness
ıd so it will do of all manner
. Also, who that beareth my
lose no blood, and for great
ll give you this ring. Gra-
d Sir Gareth, mine own lady,
ıg is passing meet for me, for
n all manner of likeness that I
ł that shall cause me that I
ɔe known. Then Sir Gringa-
: Sir Gareth a bay courser that
ɜing good horse: also he gave
armour and sure, and a noble
t some time Sir Gringamore's
ɲ upon an heathen tyrant.
hus every knight made him
that tournament. And king
as come two days tofore the
ɔn of our Lady. And there was
:r of royalty of all minstrelsy
t be found. Also there came
:never, and the queen of Ork-
Gareth's mother. And upon
nption day, when mass and
as done, there were heralds
pets commanded to blow to
And so there came out Sir
, the king's son of Northum-
·om the castle, and there en-
with him Sir Sagramore le
and either of them brake their
their hands. And then came
ımides out of the castle, and
ɔuntered with him Gawaine,
of them smote other so hard
the good knights and their
l to the earth. And then
f either party rescued their
And then came in Sir Sa-
ɔir Sagwarides, brethren unto
ıides, and there encountered
aine with Sir Safere, and Sir
encountered with Sir Sag-
So Sir Safere smote down
, Sir Gawaine's brother, and
arides, Sir Safere's brother,
wn Sir Gaheris. And Sir
a knight of the castle, en-
with Sir Uwaine le Blanche-
ł there Sir Uwaine gave Sir
a fall, that he had almost
s neck.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How the knights bare them in battle.

THEN Sir Brian de les Isles, and Grummore Grummorsum, knights of the castle, encountered with Sir Aglovale and Sir Tor, and Sir Tor smote down Sir Grummore Grummorsum to the earth. Then came in Sir Carados of the dolorous tower, and Sir Turquine, knights of the castle, and there encountered with them Sir Percivale de Galis and Sir Lamorak de Galis, that were two brethren, and there encountered Sir Percivale with Sir Carados, and either brake their spears unto their hands, and then Sir Turquine with Sir Lamorak, and either of them smote down other, horse and all, to the earth, and either parties rescued other and horsed them again. And Sir Arnold, and Sir Gauter, knights of the castle, encountered with Sir Brandiles and Sir Kay, and these four knights encountered mightily, and brake their spears to their hands. Then came in Sir Tristram, and Sir Saduk, and Sir Dinas, knights of the castle, and there encountered Sir Tristram with Sir Bedivere, and there Sir Bedivere was smitten to the earth, both horse and man: and Sir Saduk encountered with Sir Petipase, and there Sir Saduk was overthrown. And there Uwaine les Avoutres smote down Sir Dinas the seneschal. Then came in Sir Persant of Inde, a knight of the castle, and there encountered with him Sir Launcelot du Lake, and there he smote Sir Persant, horse and man, to the earth. Then came Sir Pertolope from the castle, and there encountered with him Sir Lionel, and there Sir Pertolope the green knight smote down Sir Lionel, brother to Sir Launcelot. All this was marked by noble heralds, who bare him best, and their names. And then came into the field Sir Perimones the red knight, Sir Persant's brother, that was a knight of the castle, and he encountered with Sir Ector de Maris, and either smote other so hard that both their horses and they fell to the earth. And then came in the red knight of the red lawns, and Sir Gareth, from the castle,

and there encountered with them Sir Bors de Ganis and Sir Bleoberis, and there the red knight and Sir Bors smote other so hard that their spears brast, and their horses fell groveling to the earth. Then Sir Bleoberis brake his spear upon Sir Gareth, but of that stroke Sir Bleoberis fell to the earth. When Sir Galihodin saw that, he bad Sir Gareth keep him, and Sir Gareth smote him to the earth. Then Sir Galihud gat a spear to avenge his brother, and in the same wise Sir Gareth served him, and Sir Dinadan and his brother La Cote Male Taile, and Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and Sir Dodinas le Savage; all these he bare down with one spear. When king Agwisance of Ireland saw Sir Gareth fare so he marvelled what he might be, that one time seemed green, and another time, at his again coming, he seemed blue. And thus at every course that he rode to and fro he changed his colour, so that there might neither king nor knight have ready cognisance of him. Then Sir Agwisance the king of Ireland encountered with Sir Gareth, and there Sir Gareth smote him from his horse, saddle and all. And then came king Carados of Scotland, and Sir Gareth smote him down, horse and man. And in the same wise he served king Uriens of the land of Gore. And then there came in Sir Bagdemagus, and Sir Gareth smote him down horse and man to the earth. And Bagdemagus's son Meliganus brake a spear upon Sir Gareth mightily and knightly. And then Sir Galahault the noble prince cried on high, Knight with the many colours, well hast thou justed; now make thee ready that I may just with thee. Sir Gareth heard him, and he gat a great spear, and so they encountered together, and there the prince brake his spear: but Sir Gareth smote him upon the left side of the helm, that he reeled here and there, and he had fallen down had not his men recovered him. Truly, said king Arthur, that knight with the many colours is a good knight. Wherefore the king called unto him Sir Launcelot, and prayed him to encounte knight. Sir, said Launcelot, find in my heart for to forbe this time, for he hath had tra this day, and when a good l so well upon some day, it knight's part to let him of h and, namely, when he seet hath done so great labour: venture, said Sir Launcelot, is here this day, and peradv best beloved with this lady be here, for I see well he p self and enforceth him to do and therefore, said Sir Laun me, this day he shall have t though it lay in my power from it, I would not.

CHAP. XXIX.

Yet of the said Tourna

THEN when this was d was drawing of swords; there began a sore tournan there did Sir Lamorak deeds of arms, and betwixt rak and Sir Ironside, that v knight of the red lawns, tl strong battle, and betwixt Si and Bleoberis was a strong Sir Gawaine and Sir Tristra there Sir Gawaine had the he pulled Sir Gawaine from and there he was long upo defouled. Then came in Sir and he smote Sir Turquine, and then came Sir Carados and both at once they assail he, as the most noblest kn world, worshipfully fought both, that all men wonde nobleness of Sir Launcelot. came in Sir Gareth and kn was Sir Launcelot that f those two perilous knights. Sir Gareth came with his and hurtled them in sund stroke would he smite to Sir That espied Sir Launcelot, it should be the good knight and then Sir Gareth rode her and smote on the right hand

that all the folk might well
: that he rode. And by fortune
th his brother Sir Gawaine,
he put Sir Gawaine to the
he put off his helm; and so
five or six knights of the
ble, that all men said he put
: most pain, and best he did

For when Sir Tristram be-
how he first justed and after
well with a sword, then he
Sir Ironside and to Sir Per-
de, and asked them by their
t manner a knight is yonder
t seemeth in so many divers
ruly, me seemeth, said Tris-
he putteth himself in great
e never ceaseth. Wot ye not
is? said Sir Ironside. No,
istram. Then shall ye know
s he that loveth the lady of
and she him again; and this
won me when I besieged the
is castle, and this is he that
ersant of Inde and his thee

What is his name, said Sir
and of what blood is he
le was called in the court of
ır Beaumains, but his name is
ı of Orkney, brother to Sir

By my head, said Sir Tris-
s a good knight, and a big
ms, and if he be young he
e a full noble knight. He is
ld, they all said; and of Sir
he was made knight. There-
mickle the better, said Tris-
d then Sir Tristram, Sir Iron-
ersant, and his brother, rode
or to help Sir Gareth, and
e were given many strong
And then Sir Gareth rode out
e side to amend his helm.
said his dwarf, Take me your
ye lose it not while that ye
nd so when he had drunk, he
ı helm, and eagerly took his
rode into the field, and left
ith his dwarf, and the dwarf
the ring was from him, for
st well he should be known.
ı when Sir Gareth was in
all folks saw him well and
plainly that he was in yellow colours, and there he rashed off helms, and pulled down knights, that king Arthur had marvel what knight he was, for the king saw by his hair that it was the same knight.

CHAP. XXX.

How Sir Gareth was espied by the heralds, and how he escaped out of the field.

But before he was in so many colours, and now he is but in one colour, that is yellow: now go, said king Arthur unto divers heralds, and ride about him, and espy what manner knight he is, for I have asked of many knights this day that be upon his party, and all say they know him not. And so an herald rode nigh Gareth as he could, and there he saw written about his helm in gold, This helm is Sir Gareth's of Orkney. Then the herald cried as he were wood, and many heralds with him, This is Sir Gareth of Orkney, in the yellow arms, that all kings and knights of Arthur's beheld him and awaited, and then they pressed all to behold him: and ever the heralds cried, This is Sir Gareth of Orkney, king Lot's son. And when Sir Gareth espied that he was discovered, then he doubled his strokes, and smote down Sir Sagramore, and his brother Sir Gawaine. O brother, said Sir Gawaine, I wend ye would not have stricken me. So when he heard him say so, he thrang here and there, and so with great pain he gat out of the press, and there he met with his dwarf. O boy, said Sir Gareth, thou hast beguiled me foul this day that thou kept my ring. Give it me anon again, that I may hide my body withal; and so he took it him. And then they all wist not where he was become; and Sir Gawaine had in manner espied where Sir Gareth rode, and then he rode after with all his might. That espied Sir Gareth, and rode lightly into the forest, that Sir Gawaine wist not where he was become. And when Sir Gareth wist that Sir Gawaine was past, he asked the dwarf of best counsel. Sir, said the dwarf, me seemeth it were best, now that ye are

escaped from spying, that ye send my lady dame Liones her ring. It is well advised, said Sir Gareth; now have it here, and bear it to her, and say that I recommend me unto her good grace, and say her I will come when I may, and I pray her to be true and faithful to me, as I will be to her. Sir, said the dwarf, it shall be done as ye command: and so he rode his way, and did his errand unto the lady. Then she said, Where is my knight Sir Gareth? Madam, said the dwarf, he bad me say that he would not be long from you. And so lightly the dwarf came again unto Sir Gareth, that would fain have had a lodging, for he had need to be reposed. And then fell there a thunder and a rain, as heaven and earth should go together. And Sir Gareth was not a little weary, for of all that day he had but little rest, neither his horse nor he. So this Sir Gareth rode so long in that forest until the night came. And ever it lightened and thundered, as it had been wood. At the last by fortune he came to a castle, and there he heard the waits upon the walls.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Sir Gareth came to a castle where he was well lodged, and how he justed with a knight and he slew him.

Then Sir Gareth rode unto the barbican of the castle, and prayed the porter fair to let him into the castle. The porter answered ungoodly again, and said, Thou gettest no lodging here. Fair sir, say not so, for I am a knight of king Arthur's, and pray the lord or the lady of this castle to give me harbour for the love of king Arthur. Then the porter went unto the duchess, and told her how there was a knight of king Arthur's would have harbour. Let him in, said the duchess, for I will see that knight, and for king Arthur's sake he shall not be harbourless. Then she went up into a tower over the gate, with great torch light. When Sir Gareth saw that torch light, he cried on high, Whether thou be lord or lady, giant or champion, I take no force, so that I
bour this night, and if it
must needs fight, spare m
when I have rested me, f
my horse be weary. Sir
the lady, thou speakest
boldly, but wit thou well
of this castle loveth not
nor none of his court, for
ever been against him,
thou were better not to
this castle. For and thou
night, thou must come i
form, that wheresoever t
lord, by lane, or by stre
yield thee to him as prisc
said Sir Gareth, what is y
what is his name? Sir, n
is the duke de la Rowse.
said Sir Gareth, I shall p
what place I meet your lor
me unto him and to his
with that I understand he
harm: and if I understanc
will I release myself and l
spear and with my sword.
said the duchess, and the
draw-bridge down. And
into the hall, and there l
his horse was led into a s
the hall he unarmed hi
Madam, I will not out of
night; and when it is day
who will have ado with
find me ready. Then wa
supper, and had many
Then Sir Gareth list wel
knightly he ate his meat,
there was many a fair lad
some of them said they
goodlier man, nor so w
Then they made him
cheer. And shortly wher
ped, his bed was made
rested him all night. And
he heard mass, and broke
took his leave at the du
them all, and thanked l
her lodging, and of his
And then she asked hi
Madam, said he, truly,
Gareth of Orkney, and s
me Beaumains. Then kn

e same knight that fought for iones. So Sir Gareth departed, e up into a mountain, and there a a knight, his name was Sir ine, and said to Sir Gareth, alt not pass this way, for either alt just with me, or be my pri- Then will I just, said Sir Gareth. they let their horses run, and r Gareth smote him throughout , and Sir Bendelaine rode forth astle there beside, and there died. Gareth would have rested him, came riding to Bendelaine's Then his knights and his ser- pied that it was he that had eir lord. Then they armed good men, and came out and Sir Gareth, and so he had r, but his sword, and put his fore him, and there they brake ars upon him, and they assailed ingly sore. But ever Sir Gareth l him as a knight.

CHAP. XXXII.

Gareth fought with a knight that within his castle thirty ladies, and slew him.

hen they saw that they might rcome him, they rode from him t their counsel to slay his horse, they came in upon Sir Gareth, h spears they slew his horse, n they assailed him hard. But e was on foot there was none fought but he gave him such a at he did never recover. So he m by one and one till they were , and there they fled, and Sir ook a good horse that was one , and rode his way. Then he reat pace till that he came to a nd there he heard much mourn- ladies and gentlewomen. So me by him a page: What noise said Sir Gareth, that I hear is castle? Sir knight, said the re be within this castle thirty nd all they be widows, for here ght that waiteth daily upon this d his name is the brown knight without pity, and he is the most perilous knight that now liveth. And, therefore, sir, said the page, I rede you flee. Nay, said Sir Gareth, I will not flee, though thou be afeard of him. And then the page saw where came the brown knight. Lo, said the page, yonder he cometh. Let me deal with him, said Sir Gareth. And when either of other had a sight, they let their horses run, and the brown knight brake his spear, and Sir Gareth smote him throughout the body, that he overthrew him to the ground stark dead. So Sir Gareth rode into the castle, and prayed the ladies that he might repose him. Alas, said the ladies, ye may not be lodged here. Make him good cheer, said the page, for this knight hath slain your enemy. Then they all made him good cheer as lay in their power. But wit ye well they made him good cheer, for they might none otherwise do, for they were but poor. And so on the morn he went to mass, and there he saw the thirty ladies kneel, and lay groveling upon divers tombs, making great dole and sorrow. Then Sir Gareth wist well that in the tombs lay their lords. Fair ladies, said Sir Gareth, ye must at the next feast of Pentecost be at the court of king Arthur, and say that I Sir Gareth sent you thither. We shall do this, said the ladies. So he departed, and by fortune he came to a mountain, and there he found a goodly knight that bad him, Abide Sir knight, and just with me. What are ye? said Sir Gareth. My name is, said he, the duke de la Rowse. Ah! Sir, ye are the same knight that I lodged once in your castle, and there I made promise unto your lady that I should yield me unto you. Ah! said the duke, art thou that proud knight that proffered to fight with my knights? therefore make thee ready, for I will have ado with thee. So they let their horses run, and there Sir Gareth smote the duke down from his horse. But the duke lightly avoided his horse, and dressed his shield, and drew his sword, and bad Sir Gareth alight and fight with him. So he did alight, and they did great battle together more than

an hour, and either hurt other full sore. At the last Sir Gareth gat the duke to the earth, and would have slain him, and then he yielded him to him. Then must ye go, said Sir Gareth, unto Sir Arthur my lord at the next feast, and say that I Sir Gareth of Orkney sent you unto him. It shall be done, said the duke, and I will do to you homage and fealty with an hundred knights with me, and all the days of my life to do you service where ye will command me.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Gareth fought each against other, and how they knew each other by the damsel Linet.

So the duke departed, and Sir Gareth stood there alone, and there he saw an armed knight coming toward him. Then Sir Gareth took the duke's shield and mounted upon horseback, and so without bidding they ran together as it had been the thunder. And there that knight hurt Sir Gareth under the side with his spear. And then they alight and drew their swords, and gave great strokes, that the blood trailed to the ground. And so they fought two hours. At the last there came the damsel Linet, that some men call the damsel Savage, and she came riding upon an ambling mule, and there she cried all on high, Sir Gawaine, Sir Gawaine, leave thy fighting with thy brother Sir Gareth. And when he heard her say so he threw away his shield and his sword, and ran to Sir Gareth and took him in his arms, and then kneeled down and asked him mercy. What are ye, said Sir Gareth, that right now were so strong and so mighty, and now so suddenly yield you to me? O Gareth, I am your brother Sir Gawaine, that for your sake have had great sorrow and labour. Then Sir Gareth unlaced his helm, and kneeled down to him and asked him mercy. Then they rose both, and embraced either other in their arms, and wept a great while or they might speak, and either of them gave other the prize of the battle. And there were many kind words between them. Ala brother, said Sir Gawaine ought of right to worship y were not my brother, for ye shipped king Arthur and all for ye have sent him more knights this twelvemonth th best of the Round Table hav cept Sir Launcelot. Then damsel Savage, that was the that rode with Sir Gareth and there she did stanch Si wounds and Sir Gawaine's. will ye do? said the damse me seemeth it were well Arthur had tidings of you your horses are so bruised may not bear. Now, fair d Sir Gawaine, I pray you my lord, mine uncle king A tell him what adventure is t here, and I suppose he will long. Then she took her lightly she came to king Arth but two miles thence, and had told him the tidings, th get him a palfrey. And wh upon his back he bad the ladies come after who that v there was saddling and bridlin horses, and princes' horses, ar him that soonest might be when the king came there as he saw Sir Gawaine and Sir upon a little hill side, and th avoided his horse. And wh nigh Sir Gareth he would h but he might not, and therew down in a swoon for gladnes they start unto their uncle, a him of his good grace to l comfort. Wit ye well the great joy, and many a piteous he made unto Sir Gareth, a wept as he had been a ch that came his mother the qu ney, dame Morgause, and wh Sir Gareth readily in the might not weep, but suddenl in a swoon, and lay there a like as she had been dead. Sir Gareth recomforted his such a wise that she reco

ood cheer. Then the king com- that all manner of knights that ıder his obeisance should make lging right there for the love of ıews. And so it was done, and ner of purveyance purveyed that ıcked nothing that might be of tame nor wild for gold or And then by the means of the Savage Sir Gawaine and Sir were healed of their wounds, ere they sojourned eight days. id king Arthur unto the damsel I marvel that your sister dame cometh not here to me, and in that she cometh not to visit her my nephew Sir Gareth, that d so much travail for her love. l, said the damsel Linet, ye must good grace hold her excused, knoweth not that my lord Sir is here. Go then for her, said thur, that we may be appointed best to be done, according unto ısure of my nephew. Sir, said ısel, that shall be done, and so unto her sister. And as lightly might she made her ready, came on the morn with her Sir Gringamore, and with her ıights. And so when she was he had all the cheer that might , both of the king and of many ngs and queens.

CHAP. XXXIV.

r Gareth acknowledged that they each other to king Arthur, and of pointment of their wedding.

among all these ladies she was the fairest and peerless. Then ir Gareth saw her, there was goodly look and goodly words, men of worship had joy to be- m. Then came king Arthur and ther kings, and dame Guenever queen of Orkney. And there g asked his nephew Sir Gareth he would have that lady to his My lord, wit you well that I love ve all ladies living. Now, fair id king Arthur, what say ye? Most noble king, said dame Liones, wit you well that my lord Sir Gareth is to me more lever to have and hold as my husband, than any king or prince that is christened, and if I may not have him I promise you I will never have none. For, my lord Arthur, said dame Liones, wit ye well he is my first love, and he shall be the last: and if ye will suffer him to have his will and free choice, I dare say he will have me. That is truth, said Sir Gareth, and I have not you and hold not you as my wife, there shall never lady nor gentlewoman re- joice me. What nephew, said the king, is the wind in that door! for wit ye well I would not for the stint of my crown to be causer to withdraw your hearts, and wit ye well ye cannot love so well but I shall rather increase it than distress it. And also ye shall have my love and my lordship in the utter- most wise that may lie in my power. And in the same wise said Sir Gareth's mother. Then was there made a pro- vision for the day of marriage, and by the king's advice it was provided that it should be at Michaelmas following, at Kinkenadon by the sea-side, for there is a plentiful country. And so it was cried in all the places through the realm. And then Sir Gareth sent his summons unto all these knights and ladies that he had won in battle tofore, that they should be at his day of marriage at Kinkenadon by the sands. And then dame Liones and the damsel Linet, with Sir Gringa- more, rode to their castle, and a goodly and a rich ring she gave to Sir Gareth, and he gave her another. And king Arthur gave her a rich bee of gold, and so she departed. And king Arthur and his fellowship rode toward Kinkenadon, and Sir Gareth brought his lady on the way, and so came to the king again and rode with him. Oh the great cheer that Sir Launcelot made of Sir Gareth and he of him: for there was never no knight that Sir Gareth loved so well as he did Sir Launcelot, and ever for the most part he would be in Sir Launce- lot's company: for after Sir Gareth had espied Sir Gawaine's conditions, he

withdrew himself from his brother Sir Gawaine's fellowship, for he was vengeable, and where he hated he would be avenged with murder, and that hated Sir Gareth.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the great royalty, and what officers were made at the feast of the wedding, and of the justs at the feast.

So it drew fast to Michaelmas, and thither came dame Liones the lady of the castle perilous and her sister dame Linet, with Sir Gringamore their brother with them: for he had the conduct of these ladies. And there they were lodged at the devise of king Arthur. And upon Michaelmas-day the bishop of Canterbury made the wedding betwixt Sir Gareth and the lady Liones with great solemnity. And king Arthur made Gaheris to wed the damsel Savage, that was dame Linet; and king Arthur made Sir Agravaine to wed dame Liones' niece, a fair lady, her name was dame Laurel. And so when this solemnization was done, then there came in the green knight Sir Pertolope with thirty knights, and there he did homage and fealty unto Sir Gareth, and these knights to hold of him for evermore. Also Sir Pertolope said, I pray you that at this feast I may be your chamberlain. With a good will, said Sir Gareth, sith it liketh you to take so simple an office. Then came in the red knight with threescore knights with him, and did to Sir Gareth homage and fealty, and all those knights to hold of him for evermore, and then this Sir Perimones prayed Sir Gareth to grant him to be his chief butler at that high feast. I will well, said Sir Gareth, that ye have this office and it were better. Then came in Sir Persant of Inde with an hundred knights with him, and there he did homage and fealty unto Sir Gareth, and all his knights should do him service, and hold their lands of him for ever; and there he prayed Sir Gareth to make him his sewer chief at the feast. I will well, said Sir Gareth, that ye have it and it were better. Then came in the duke de la Rowse with an hundred knights with him, and there he did homage and fealty unto Sir Gareth, and so to hold their lands of him for ever; and he required Sir Gareth that he might serve him of the wine that day at the feast. I will well, said Sir Gareth, and it were better. Then came in the red knight of the red lawns, that was Sir Ironside, and he brought with him three hundred knights, and there he did homage and fealty, and all these knights to hold their lands of him for ever, and then he asked Sir Gareth to be his carver. I will well, said Sir Gareth, and it please you. Then came into the court thirty ladies, and all they seemed widows, and those thirty ladies brought with them many fair gentlewomen; and all they kneeled down at once unto king Arthur and to Sir Gareth, and there all those ladies told the king how Sir Gareth had delivered them from the dolorous tower, and slew the brown knight without pity; and therefore we and our heirs for evermore will do homage unto Sir Gareth of Orkney. So then the kings and queens, princes, earls and barons, and many bold knights went unto meat, and well may ye wit that there was all manner of meat plenteously, all manner revels and games, with all manner of minstrelsy that was used in those days. Also there was great justs three days. But the king would not suffer Sir Gareth to just because of his new bride: for as the French book saith that dame Liones desired the king that none that were wedded should just at that feast. So the first day there justed Sir Lamorak de Galis, for he overthrew thirty knights, and did passing marvellously deeds of arms. And then king Arthur made Sir Persant of Inde and his two brethren knights of the Round Table, to their lives' end, and gave them great lands. Also the second day there justed Tristram best, and he overthrew forty knights, and did there marvellous deeds of arms. And there king Arthur made Ironside, that was the red knight the red lawns, a knight of the Tab

his life's end, and gave him
The third day there justed
ɔt du Lake, and he over-
nights and did many mar-
ls of arms, that all men
n him. And there king
e the duke de la Rowse a
.e Round Table to his life's
'e him great lands to spend.

But when these justs were done, Sir Lamorak and Sir Tristram departed suddenly and would not be known, for the which king Arthur and all the court were sore displeased. And so they held the court forty days with great solemnity. And this Sir Gareth was a noble knight, and a well ruled, and fair languaged.

ıth thıs tale of syr Gareth of Orkeney that wedded dame of the castel perylous. And also syr Gaheris wedded her ıame Lynet, that was called the damoysel saueage. And rauayne wedded dame Laurel a fayr lady, and grete and landes with grete rychesse gafe with them kyng Arthur, lly they myght lyue tyl their lyues ende.

weth the viii. book the which is the fırst book of Sir n de Lyones, & who was his fader & his moder, & hou he ne and fosteryd. And how he was made knyghte.

The Eighth Book.

CHAP. I.

ıistram de Liones was born, ›is mother died at his birth, she named him Tristram.

king that hight Meliodas,
ord and king of the country
nd this king Meliodas was
ght as any was that time
l by fortune he wedded king
r of Cornwall; and she was
beth, that was called both
ir. And at that time king
ıed, and he was whole king
Wales, and Scotland, and
her realms: howbeit there
kings that were lords of
ries, but all they held their
ıg Arthur. For in Wales
ngs, and in the north were
; and in *Cornwall and in*
re two kings; also in Ire-
land were two or three kings; and all were under the obeisance of king Arthur. So was the king of France, and the king of Britany, and all the lordships unto Rome. And the wife of this king Meliodas was a full meek lady, and well she loved her lord, and he her again, and the time came that she should bear a child, so there was great joy betwixt them. Then was there a lady in that country that had loved king Meliodas long, and by no mean she never could get his love, therefore she let ordain upon a day, as king Meliodas rode on hunting, for he was a great chaser, and there by an enchantment she made him chase an hart by himself alone till that he came to an old castle, and there anon he was taken prisoner by the lady that him loved. When Elizabeth king Meliodas missed, her lord, she was nigh out of her wit, and she took a gentlewoman

with her, and ran into the forest to seek her lord.

And when she was far in the forest she might no farther, for she began to travail fast of her child. And she had many grimly throws, and her gentlewoman holp her all that she might, and so by miracle of our Lady of heaven she was delivered with great pains. But she had taken such cold for the default of help that deep draughts of death took her, that needs she must die and depart out of this world, there was none other boot. And when this queen Elizabeth saw that there was none other boot, then she made great dole, and said unto her gentlewoman, When ye see my lord king Meliodas recommend me unto him, and tell him what pains I endure here for his love, and how I must die here for his sake, for default of good help, and let him wit that I am full sorry to depart out of this world from him, therefore pray him to be friend to my soul. Now let me see my little child for whom I have had all this sorrow. Aud when she saw him she said thus: Ah my little son, thou hast murdered thy mother, and therefore I suppose, thou that art a murderer so young, thou art full likely to be a manly man in thine age. And because I shall die of the birth of thee, I charge thee, gentlewoman, that thou beseech my lord king Meliodas, that when he is christened let call him Tristram, that is as much to say as a sorrowful birth. And therewith this queen gave up the ghost and died. Then the gentlewoman laid her under the shadow of a great tree, and then she lapped the child as well as she might for cold. Right so there came the barons, following after the queen, and when they saw that she was dead, and understood none other but the king was destroyed;

CHAP. II.

How the step-mother of Sir Tristram had ordained poison for to have poisoned Sir Tristram.

THEN certain of them would have slain the child, because they would have been lords of the country of
But then through the fair speech
gentlewoman, and by the mea
she made, the most part of the
would not assent thereto. An
they let carry home the dead
and much dole was made f
Then this meanwhile Merlin d
king Meliodas out of prison,
morn after his queen was dead
so when the king was come ho
most part of the barons made gr
But the sorrow that the king m
his queen that might no tong
So then the king let inter her
And after he let christen his
his wife had commanded afc
death. And then he let call hi
tram, the sorrowful born child.
the king Meliodas endured seve
without a wife, and all this ti
young Tristram was nourishe
Then it befel that king M
wedded king Howell's daug
Britany, and anon she had
of king Meliodas, then was sh
and wroth that her children shc
enjoy the country of Liones, w
this queen ordained for to poiso
Tristram. So she let poison to
into a piece of silver in the c
where as Tristram and her childi
together, unto that intent tha
Tristram was thirsty he shoul
that drink. And so it fell upo
the queen's son, as he was
chamber, espied the cup with
and he wend it had been gooc
and because the child was thi
took the cup with poison anc
freely, and therewithall sudde
child brast, and was dead. W
queen wist of the death of her
ye well that she was heavy.
the king understood nothing
treason. Notwithstanding the
would not leave this, but eft
ordain more poison, and put
cup. And by fortune king M
her husband found the cup wi
where was the poison, and he t
much thirsty took the cup for t
thereout. And as he would have

f, the queen espied him, and then
n unto him and pulled the cup
him suddenly. The king mar-
why she did so, and remembered
ow her son was suddenly slain
poison. And then he took her
e hand, and said, Thou false
ss, thou shalt tell me what man-
drink this is, or else I shall
ee. And therewith he pulled out
ord, and swore a great oath that
uld slay her but if she told him
Ah mercy my lord, said she,
shall tell you all. And then she
im why she would have slain
m, because her children should
is land. Well, said king Melio-
d therefore shall ye have the law.
o she was condemned by the
of the barons to be burnt, and
as there made a great fire. And
s she was at the fire to take her
ion young Tristram kneeled afore
Meliodas, and besought him to
im a boon. I will well, said the
gain. Then said young Tristram,
ne the life of thy queen, my step-
r. That is unrightfully asked,
ing Meliodas, for thou ought of
o hate her, for she would have
thee with that poison and she
have had her will; and for thy
ost is my cause that she should
Sir, said Tristram, as for that, I
h you of your mercy that ye will
it her, and as for my part God
it her, and I do, and so much it
your highness to grant me my
or God's love I require you hold
romise. Since it is so, said the
will that ye have her life. Then
e king, I give her to you, and go
he fire and take her and do with
hat ye will. So Sir Tristram
o the fire, and by the command-
f the king delivered her from the
But after that king Meliodas
never have ado with her as at
d board. But by the good means
ng Tristram he made the king
er accorded. But then the king
not suffer young Tristram to
o longer *in his court.*

CHAP. III.

How Sir Tristram was sent into France, and had one to govern him named Gouvernail, and how he learned to harp, hawk, and hunt.

And then he let ordain a gentleman that was well learned and taught; his name was Gouvernail; and then he sent young Tristram with Gouvernail into France, to learn the language, and nurture, and deeds of arms. And there was Tristram more than seven years. And then when he well could speak the language, and had learned all that he might learn in that country, then he came home to his father king Meliodas again. And so Tristram learned to be an harper passing all other, that there was none such called in no country, and so in harping and on instruments of music he applied him in his youth for to learn. And after as he growed in might and strength he laboured ever in hunting and in hawking, so that never gentleman more, that ever we heard tell of. And as the book saith, he began good measures of blowing of beasts of venery and beasts of chase, and all manner of vermains; and all these terms we have yet of hawking and hunting. And therefore the book of venery, of hawking, and hunting, is called the book of Sir Tristram. Wherefore, as me seemeth, all gentlemen that bear old arms ought of right to honour Sir Tristram for the goodly terms that gentlemen have and use, and shall to the day of doom, that thereby in a manner all men of worship may dissever a gentleman from a yeoman, and from a yeoman a villain. For he that gentle is will draw unto him gentle taches, and to follow the customs of noble gentlemen. Thus Sir Tristram endured in Cornwall until he was big and strong, of the age of nineteen years. And then the king Meliodas had great joy of Sir Tristram, and so had the queen his wife. For ever after in her life, because Sir Tristram saved her from the fire, she did never hate him more after, but loved him ever after, and gave Tristram many

great gifts; for every estate loved him where that he went.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Marhaus came out of Ireland for to ask truage of Cornwall, or else he would fight therefore.

THEN it befel that king Anguish of Ireland sent to king Mark of Cornwall for his truage, that Cornwall had paid many winters. And all that time king Mark was behind of the truage for seven years. And king Mark and his barons gave unto the messager of Ireland these words and answer, that they would none pay; and bad the messager go unto his king Anguish, and tell him we will pay him no truage, but tell your lord, and he will always have truage of us of Cornwall, bid him send a trusty knight of his land that will fight for his right, and we shall find another for to defend our right. With this answer the messagers departed into Ireland. And when king Anguish understood the answer of the messagers, he was wonderly wroth. And then he called unto him Sir Marhaus, the good knight, that was nobly proved, and a knight of the Table Round. And this Sir Marhaus was brother unto the queen of Ireland. Then the king said thus: Fair brother Sir Marhaus, I pray you go into Cornwall for my sake, and do battle for our truage that of right we ought to have, and whatsoever ye spend ye shall have sufficiently more than ye shall need. Sir, said Marhaus, wit ye well that I shall not be loth to do battle in the right of you and your land with the best knight of the Table Round, for I know them for the most part what be their deeds, and for to advance my deeds and to increase my worship, I will right gladly go unto this journey for our right.

So in all haste there was made purveyance for Sir Marhaus, and he had all things that to him needed, and so he departed out of Ireland, and arrived up in Cornwall, even fast by the castle of Tintagil. And when king Mark understood that he was there arrived to fight for Ireland, then made king Mark great sorrow when he understood that the good and noble knight Sir Marhaus was come. For they knew no knight that durst have ado with him. For at that time Sir Marhaus was called one of the famousest and renowned knights of the world.

And thus Sir Marhaus abode in the sea, and every day he sent unto king Mark for to pay the truage that was behind of seven year, or else to find a knight to fight with him for the truage. This manner of message Sir Marhaus sent daily unto king Mark. Then they of Cornwall let make cries in every place, that what knight would fight for to save the truage of Cornwall he should be rewarded so that he should fare the better the term of his life. Then some of the barons said to king Mark, and counselled him to send to the court of king Arthur for to seek Sir Launcelot du Lake, that was that time named for the marvellousest knight of all the world. Then there were some other barons that counselled the king not to do so, and said that it was labour in vain, because Sir Marhaus was a knight of the Round Table, therefore any of them will be loth to have ado with other, but if it were any knight at his own request would fight disguised and unknown. So the king and all his barons assented that it was no boot to seek any knight of the Round Table. This meanwhile came the language and the noise unto king Meliodas, how that Sir Marhaus abode battle fast by Tintagil, and how king Mark could find no manner knight to fight for him. When young Tristram heard of this he was wroth and sore ashamed that there durst no knight in Cornwall have ado with Sir Marhaus of Ireland.

CHAP. V.

How Tristram enterprized the battle to fight for the truage of Cornwall, and how he was made knight.

THEREWITHAL Sir Tristram went unto his father king Meliodas, and asked him

what was best to do for to re-
om Cornwall truage. For as
ieth, said Sir Tristram, it were
hat Sir Marhaus, the queen's
of Ireland, should go away,
iat he were fought withall. As
said Sir Meliodas, wit ye well
tram that Sir Marhaus is called
he best knights of the world,
ght of the Table Round, and
I know no knight in this
that is able to match with him.
id Sir Tristram, that I am not
ight: and if Sir Marhaus should
art into Ireland, may I never
rship, and I were made knight
l match him. And sir, said
, I pray you give me leave to
king Mark, and so ye be not
d of king Mark will I be made
I will well, said king Meliodas,
be ruled as your courage will

Sir Tristram thanked his father
And then he made him ready
into Cornwall. In the mean-
here came a messager with
of love from king Faramon
ice's daughter unto Sir Tris-
at were full piteous letters, and
were written many complaints
But Sir Tristram had no joy
letters, nor regard unto her.
e. sent him a little brachet
s passing fair. But when the
laughter understood that Tris-
uld not love her, as the book
e died for sorrow. And then
squire that brought the letter
brachet came again unto Sir
as after ye shall hear in the
this young Sir Tristram rode
uncle king Mark of Cornwall.
en he came there he heard say
re would no knight fight with
iaus. Then went Sir Tristram
uncle and said, Sir, if ye will
the order of knighthood I will
with Sir Marhaus. What are
the king, and from whence be
? Sir, said Tristram, I come
ig Meliodas that wedded your
nd a gentleman wit ye well
I am. King Mark beheld Sir Tristram, and saw that he was but a young man of age, but he was passingly well made and big. Fair sir, said the king, what is your name, and where were ye born? Sir, said he again, my name is Tristram, and in the country of Liones was I born. Ye say well, said the king, and if ye will do this battle I shall make you knight. Therefore I come to you, said Sir Tristram, and for none other cause. But then king Mark made him knight. And therewithal anon as he had made him knight, he sent a messager unto Sir Marhaus with letters that said that he had found a young knight ready for to take the battle to the uttermost. It may well be, said Sir Marhaus; but tell unto king Mark that I will not fight with no knight but if he be of blood royal, that is to say either king's son or queen's son, born of a prince or princess.

When king Mark understood that, he sent for Sir Tristram de Liones and told him what was the answer of Sir Marhaus. Then said Sir Tristram, Since that he sayeth so, let him wit that I am come of father's side and mother's side of as noble blood as he is. For, Sir, now shall ye know that I am king Meliodas' son, born of your own sister dame Elizabeth, that died in the forest in the birth of me. Yea! said king Mark, ye are welcome fair nephew to me. Then in all the haste the king let horse Sir Tristram and arm him in the best manner that might be had or gotten for gold or silver. And then king Mark sent unto Sir Marhaus, and did him to wit that a better born man than he was himself should fight with him, and his name is Sir Tristram de Liones, gotten of king Meliodas, and born of king Mark's sister. Then was Sir Marhaus glad and blithe that he should fight with such a gentleman. And so by the assent of king Mark and Sir Marhaus they let ordain that they should fight within an island nigh Sir Marhaus' ships; and so was Sir Tristram put into a vessel both his horse and he, and all that to him belonged

both for his body and for his horse. Sir Tristram lacked nothing. And when king Mark and his barons of Cornwall beheld how young Sir Tristram departed with such a carriage to fight for the right of Cornwall, there was neither man nor woman of worship but they wept to see and understand so young a knight to jeopard himself for their right.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Tristram arrived into the island for to furnish the battle with Sir Marhaus.

So to shorten this tale, when Sir Tristram was arrived within the island he looked to the further side, and there he saw at an anchor six ships nigh to the land, and under the shadow of the ships upon the land there hoved the noble knight Sir Marhaus of Ireland. Then Sir Tristram commanded his servant Gouvernail to bring his horse to the land, and dress his harness at all manner of rights. And then when he had so done he mounted upon his horse; and when he was in his saddle well apparelled, and his shield dressed upon his shoulder, Tristram asked Gouvernail, Where is this knight that I shall have ado withall? Sir, said Gouvernail, see ye him not? I wend ye had seen him, yonder he hoveth under the shadow of his ships upon horseback, with his spear in his hand, and his shield upon his shoulder. That is truth, said the noble knight Sir Tristram, now I see him well enough. Then he commanded his servant Gouvernail to go to his vessel again, and command me unto mine uncle king Mark, and pray him if that I be slain in this battle, for to inter my body as him seemeth best, and as for me let him wit that I will never yield me for cowardice; and if I be slain and flee not, then have they lost no truage for me; and if so be that I flee or yield me as recreant, bid mine uncle never bury me in christian burials. And upon thy life, said Sir Tristram to *Gouvernail, come* thou not nigh this *island till that thou* see me overcome or slain, or else that I win knight. So either departed fro sore weeping.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Tristram fought aga Marhaus and achieved his ba how Sir Marhaus fled to his Sh

And then Sir Marhaus perce Tristram, and said thus: Young Sir Tristram, what doest thou he sore repenteth of thy courage, thou well I have been assayed, best knights of this land ha assayed of my hands, and also matched with the best knights world, and therefore by my co turn again unto thy vessel. knight, and well proved knight, Tristram, thou shalt well wit I forsake thee in this quarrel, for thy sake made knight. And th well wit that I am a king's son, a queen, and such promise I ha at mine uncle's request and m seeking, that I shall fight w unto the uttermost, and delive wall from the old truage. And thou well, Sir Marhaus, that th greatest cause that thou courage have ado with you, for thou a one of the most renowned kn the world, and because of th and fame that thou hast, thou g courage to have ado with thee, f yet was I proved with good knig since I took the order of knighth day I am well pleased that I n ado with so good a knight as t And now wit thou well, Sir M that I cast me to get worship body, and if that I be not p trust I shall be worshipfully upon thy body, and to del country of Cornwall from all of truage from Ireland for ever. Sir Marhaus had heard him s he would, he said then thus Fair knight, since it is so th casteth to win worship of me, I wit worship mayest thou none me if thou mayest stand m

for I let thee wit for my noble proved and seen, king Arthur ıe knight of the Table Round. ıey began to feuter their spears, :y met so fiercely together that ıote either other down both ıd all. But Sir Marhaus smote tram a great wound in the side s spear, and then they avoided ıorses, and pulled out their and threw their shields afore nd then they lashed together as at were wild and courageous. ıen they had stricken so together ıen they left their strokes, and ıt their breathes and visors; and ıey saw that that might not pre-m, then they hurtled together ns to bear either other down. ıey fought still more than half a d either were wounded passing at the blood ran down freshly em upon the ground. By then stram waxed more fresher than rhaus, and better winded and and with a mighty stroke he ir Marhaus upon the helm such , that it went through his helm, rough the coif of steel, and ı the brain-pan, and the sword o fast in the helm and in his ın that Sir Tristram pulled thrice word or ever he might pull it out is head, and there Marhaus fell ın his knees, the edge of Tris- word left in his brain-pan. And y Sir Marhaus rose groveling, rew his sword and his shield im, and so ran to his ships and way, and Sir Tristram had ever ld and his sword. And when stram saw Sir Marhaus withdraw e said, Ah sir knight of the Table, why withdrawest thou hou doest thyself and thy kin hame, for I am but a young or now I was never proved, and han I should withdraw me from had rather be hewn in an hun-eces. Sir Marhaus answered no ut went his way sore groaning. ir knight, said Sir Tristram, I e thee thy *sword and thy shield* shall be mine, and thy shield shall I wear in all places where I ride on mine adventures, and in the sight of king Arthur and all the Round Table.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Marhaus, after he was arrived in Ireland, died of the stroke that Tristram had given him, and how Tristram was hurt.

Anon Sir Marhaus and his fellowship departed into Ireland. And as soon as he came to the king his brother he let search his wounds. And when his head was searched, a piece of Sir Tristram's sword was found therein, and might never be had out of his head for no surgeons, and so he died of Sir Tristram's sword, and that piece of the sword the queen his sister kept it for ever with her, for she thought to be revenged and she might.

Now turn we again unto Sir Tristram, that was sore wounded, and full sore bled, that he might not within a little while when he had taken cold scarcely stir him of his limbs. And then he set him down softly upon a little hill, and bled fast. Then anon came Gouvernail his man with his vessel, and the king and his barons came with procession against him, and when he was come to the land king Mark took him in his arms, and the king and Sir Dinas the Seneschal led Sir Tristram into the castle of Tintagil. And then was he searched in the best manner, and laid in his bed. And when king Mark saw his wounds he wept heartily, and so did all his lords. So God me help, said king Mark, I would not for all my lands that my nephew died. So Sir Tristram lay there a month and more, and ever he was like to die of that stroke that Sir Marhaus smote him first with the spear. For, as the French book saith, the spear's head was envenomed, that Sir Tristram might not be whole. Then was king Mark and all his barons passing heavy, for they deemed none other but that Sir Tristram should not recover. Then the king let send after all manner

of leeches and surgeons, both unto men and women, and there was none that would behote him the life. Then came there a lady that was a right wise lady, and she said plainly unto king Mark and to Sir Tristram and to all his barons, that he should never be whole, but if Sir Tristram went in the same country that the venom came from, and in that country should he be holpen or else never. Thus said the lady unto the king. When king Mark understood that, he let purvey for Sir Tristram a fair vessel, well victualled, and therein was put Sir Tristram and Gouvernail with him, and Sir Tristram took his harp with him, and so he was put into the sea to sail into Ireland, and so by good fortune he arrived up in Ireland, even fast by a castle where the king and the queen was; and at his arrival he sat and harped in his bed a merry lay, such one heard they never none in Ireland afore that time. And when it was told the king and the queen of such a knight that was such an harper, anon the king sent for him, and let search his wounds, and then asked him his name. Then he answered, I am of the country of Liones, and my name is Tramtrist, that thus was wounded in a battle as I fought for a lady's right. Truly, said king Anguish, ye shall have all the help in this land that ye may have here. But I let you wit in Cornwall I had a great loss as ever had king, for there I lost the best knight of the world, his name was Marhaus, a full noble knight, and knight of the Table Round; and there he told Sir Tristram wherefore Sir Marhaus was slain. Sir Tristram made semblant as he had been sorry, and better knew he how it was than the king.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Tristram was put to the keeping of La Beale Isoud for to be healed of his wound.

THEN the king for great favour made Tramtrist to be put in his daughter's ward and keeping, because she was a noble surgeon. And when she had searched him she found in the bottom of his wound that therein was poison, and so she healed him within a while, and therefore Tramtrist cast great love to La Beale Isoud, for she was at that time the fairest maid and lady of the world. And there Tramtrist learned her to harp, and she began to have a great fancy unto him. And at that time Sir Palamides the Saracen was in that country, and well cherished with the king and the queen. And every day Sir Palamides drew unto La Beale Isoud, and proffered her many gifts, for he loved her passingly well. All that espied Tramtrist, and full well knew he Sir Palamides for a noble knight and a mighty man. And wit ye well Sir Tramtrist had great despite at Sir Palamides, for La Beale Isoud told Tramtrist that Sir Palamides was in will to be christened for her sake. Thus was there great envy betwixt Tramtrist and Sir Palamides. Then it befel that King Anguish let cry a great justs and a great tournament for a lady which was called the lady of the lawns, and she was nigh cousin unto the king. And what man won her, three days after he should wed her, and have all her lands. This cry was made in England, Wales, Scotland, and also in France and in Britany. It befel upon a day La Beale Isoud came unto Sir Tramtrist and told him of this tournament. He answered and said, Fair lady, I am but a feeble knight, and but late I had been dead had not your good ladyship been. Now, fair lady, what would ye I should do in this matter? Well ye wot, my lady, that I may not just. Ah Tramtrist, said La Beale Isoud, why will ye not have ado at that tournament? well I wot Sir Palamides shall be there and to do what he may, and therefore Tramtrist I pray you for to be there, for else Sir Palamides is like to win the degree. Madam, said Tramtrist, as for that it may be so, for he is a proved knight, and I am but a young knight and late made, and the first battle that I did it mishapped me to be sore wounded as ye see. But and I wist ye would be my better lady, it

ırnament I will be, so that ye
p my counsel, and let no creature
ıowledge that I shall just but
, and such as ye will to keep
unsel; my poor person shall I
there for your sake, that perad-
Sir Palamides shall know when
come. Thereto, said La Beale
lo your best, and as I can, said
le Isoud, I shall purvey horse
ıour for you at my devise. As
so be it, said Sir Tramtrist, I
at your commandment. So at
of justs there came Sir Pala-
ith a black shield, and he over-
ıany knights, that all the people
rvel of him. For he put to the
ir Gawaine, Gaheris, Agravaine,
agus, Kay, Dodias le Savage,
ore le Desirous, Gumret le Petit,
flet le Fise de Dieu. All these
day Sir Palamides strake down
arth. And then all manner of
were adread of Sir Palamides,
ny called him the knight with
k shield. So that day Sir Pala-
ıad great worship. Then came
ıguish unto Tramtrist and asked
y he would not just. Sir, said
s but late hurt, and as yet I dare
venture me. Then came there
e squire that was sent from the
daughter of France unto Sir
ı. And when he had espied
ıtram he fell flat to his feet.
t espied La Beale Isoud, what
the squire made unto Sir Tris-
And therewith all suddenly Sir
ı ran unto his squire, whose
vas Hebes le Renoumes, and
him heartily in no wise to tell
e. Sir, said Hebes, I will not
your name but if ye command

CHAP. X.

r Tristram won the degree at a ıment in Ireland, and there made ıides to bear no harness in a

Sir Tristram asked him what
ı those countries. Sir, he said,
hither with Sir Gawaine for to
be made knight, and if it please you, of your hands that I may be made knight. Await upon me as to-morn, secretly, and in the field I shall make you a knight. Then had La Beale Isoud great suspicion unto Tramtrist that he was some man of worship proved, and therewith she comforted herself, and cast more love unto him than she had done tofore. And so on the morn Sir Palamides made him ready to come into the field as he did the first day. And there he smote down the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Scotland. Then had La Beale Isoud ordained and well arrayed Sir Tramtrist in white horse and harness. And right so she let put him out at a privy postern, and so he came into the field as it had been a bright angel. And anon Sir Palamides espied him, and therewith he feutered a spear unto Sir Tramtrist, and he again unto him. And there Sir Tristram smote down Sir Palamides unto the earth. And then there was a great noise of people: some said Sir Palamides had a fall, some said the knight with the black shield had a fall. And wit you well La Beale Isoud was passing glad. And then Sir Gawaine and his fellows nine had marvel what knight it might be that had smitten down Sir Palamides. Then would there none just with Tramtrist, but all that were there forsook him, most and least. Then Sir Tristram made Hebes a knight, and caused him to put himself forth, and did right well that day. So after Sir Hebes held him with Sir Tristram. And when Sir Palamides had received this fall, wit ye well he was sore ashamed: and as privily as he might he withdrew him out of the field. All that espied Sir Tristram, and lightly he rode after Sir Palamides, and overtook him, and bad him turn, for better he would assay him or ever he departed. Then Sir Palamides turned him, and either lashed at other with their swords. But at the first stroke Sir Tristram smote down Palamides, and gave him such a stroke upon the head that he fell to the earth. So then Tristram bad

yield him and do his commandment, or else he would slay him. When Sir Palamides beheld his countenance, he dread his buffets so that he granted all his askings. Well said, said Sir Tristram, this shall be your charge. First upon pain of your life that ye forsake my lady La Beale Isoud, and in no manner wise that ye draw not to her. Also this twelvemonth and a day that ye bear none armour nor none harness of war. Now promise me this, or here shalt thou die. Alas, said Palamides, for ever am I ashamed. Then he sware as Sir Tristram had commanded him. Then for despite and anger Sir Palamides cut off his harness and threw them away. And so Sir Tristram turned again to the castle where was La Beale Isoud, and by the way he met with a damsel that asked after Sir Launcelot, that won the Dolorous Gard worshipfully, and this damsel asked Sir Tristram what he was: for it was told her that it was he that smote down Sir Palamides, by whom the ten knights of king Arthur were smitten down. Then the damsel prayed Sir Tristram to tell her what he was, and whether that he were Sir Launcelot du Lake, for she deemed that there was no knight in the world might do such deeds of arms, but if it were Launcelot. Fair damsel, said Sir Tristram, wit ye well that I am not Sir Launcelot, for I was never of such prowess, but in God is all, that he may make me as good a knight as the good knight Sir Launcelot. Now, gentle knight, said she, put up thy visor. And when she beheld his visage she thought she saw never a better man's visage, nor a better faring knight. And then when the damsel knew certainly that he was not Sir Launcelot, then she took her leave and departed from him. And then Sir Tristram rode privily unto the postern where kept him La Beale Isoud, and there she made him good cheer, and thanked God of his good speed. So anon within a while the king and the queen understood that it was Tramtrist that smote down Sir Palamides; then was he much made *of more* than he was before.

CHAP. XI.

How the queen espied that Sir Tristram had slain her brother Sir Marhaus by his sword, and in what jeopardy he was.

Thus was Sir Tramtrist long there well cherished with the king and the queen, and namely with La Beale Isoud. So upon a day the queen and La Beale Isoud made a bath for Sir Tramtrist, and when he was in his bath the queen and Isoud her daughter roamed up and down in the chamber, and there whiles Gouvernail and Hebes attended upon Tramtrist, and the queen beheld his sword there as it lay upon his bed. And then by unhap the queen drew out his sword and beheld it a long while, and both they thought it a passing fair sword, but within a foot and an half of the point there was a great piece thereof out broken of the edge. And when the queen espied that gap in the sword, she remembered her of a piece of a sword that was found in the brain-pan of Sir Marhaus, the good knight that was her brother. Alas, then said she unto her daughter La Beale Isoud, this is the same traitor knight that slew my brother thine uncle. When Isoud heard her say so she was passing sore abashed, for passing well she loved Sir Tramtrist, and full well she knew the cruelness of her mother the queen. Anon therewithal the queen went unto her own chamber and sought her coffer, and there she took out the piece of the sword that was pulled out of Sir Marhaus' head after that he was dead. And then she ran with that piece of iron to the sword that lay upon the bed. And when she put that piece of steel and iron unto the sword, it was as meet as it might be when it was new broken. And then the queen griped that sword in her hand fiercely, and with all her might she ran straight upon Tramtrist where he sat in his bath, and there she had rived him through had not Sir Hebes gotten her in his arms, and pulled the sword from her, and else she had thrust

him through. Then when she was letted of her evil will, she ran to the king Anguish her husband, and said on her knees, Oh my lord, here have ye in your house that traitor knight that slew my brother and your servant, that noble knight Sir Marhaus. Who is that, said king Anguish, and where is he? Sir, she said, it is Sir Tramtrist, the same knight that my daughter healed. Alas, said the king, therefore am I right heavy, for he is a full noble knight as ever I saw in field. But I charge you, said the king to the queen, that ye have not ado with that knight, but let me deal with him. Then the king went into the chamber unto Sir Tramtrist, and then was he gone unto his chamber, and the king found him all ready armed to mount upon his horse. When the king saw him all ready armed to go unto horseback, the king said, Nay, Tramtrist, it will not avail to compare thee against me. But thus much I shall do for my worship and for thy love; in so much as thou art within my court, it were no worship for me to slay thee, therefore upon this condition I will give thee leave to depart from this court in safety, so thou wilt tell me who was thy father, and what is thy name, and if thou slew Sir Marhaus, my brother.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Tristram departed from the king and La Beale Isoud out of Ireland for to come into Cornwall.

Sir, said Tristram, now I shall tell you all the truth: my father's name is Meliodas, king of Liones, and my mother hight Elizabeth, that was sister unto king Mark of Cornwall; and my mother died of me in the forest, and because thereof she commanded or she died that when I were christened that they should christen me Tristram, and because I would not be known in this country I turned my name, and let me call Tramtrist; and for the truage of Cornwall I fought for mine uncle's sake, and for the right of Cornwall that he had possessed many years. And wit ye well, said Tristram unto the king, I did the battle for the love of mine uncle king Mark, and for the love of the country of Cornwall, and for to increase mine honour. For that same day that I fought with Sir Marhaus I was made knight, and never or then did I no battle with no knight, and from me he went alive, and left his shield and his sword behind. Truly, said the king, I may not say but ye did as a knight should, and it was your part to do for your quarrel, and to increase your worship as a knight should; howbeit I may not maintain you in this country with my worship, unless that I should displease my barons, and my wife, and her kin. Sir, said Tristram, I thank you of your good lordship that I have had with you here, and the great goodness my lady your daughter hath shewed me, and therefore, said Sir Tristram, it may so happen that ye shall win more by my life than by my death, for in the parts of England it may happen I may do you service at some season that ye shall be glad that ever ye shewed me your good lordship. With more I promise you as I am true knight, that in all places I shall be my lady your daughter's servant and knight in right and in wrong, and I shall never fail her never to do as much as a knight may do. Also I beseech your good grace that I may take my leave at my lady your daughter, and at all the barons and knights. I will well, said the king. Then Sir Tristram went unto La Beale Isoud and took his leave of her. And then he told her all, what he was, and how he had changed his name because he would not be known, and how a lady told him that he should never be whole till he came into this country where the poison was made:—Where through I was near my death, had not your ladyship been. Oh gentle knight, said La Beale Isoud, full wo am I of thy departing, for I saw never man that I owed so good will to. And therewithal she wept heartily. Madam, said Sir Tristram, ye shall understand that my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, son of

king Meliodas and of his queen. And I promise you faithfully that I shall be all the days of my life your knight. Gramercy, said La Beale Isoud, and I promise you there against that I shall not be married this seven years but by your assent, and to whom that ye will I shall be married, him will I have, and he will have me if ye will consent. And then Sir Tristram gave her a ring and she gave him another, and therewith he departed from her, leaving her making great dole and lamentation. And he straight went unto the court among all the barons, and there he took his leave at most and least, and openly he said among them all, Fair lords, now it is so that I must depart. If there be any man here that I have offended unto, or that any man be with me grieved, let complain him here afore me or that ever I depart, and I shall amend it unto my power. And if there be any that will proffer me wrong, or say of me wrong or shame behind my back, say it now or never, and here is my body to make it good, body against body. And all they stood still, there was not one that would say one word, yet were there some knights that were of the queen's blood, and of Sir Marhaus's blood, but they would not meddle with him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Tristram and king Mark hurt each other for the love of a knight's wife.

So Sir Tristram departed, and took the sea, and with good wind he arrived up at Tintagil in Cornwall. And when king Mark was whole in his prosperity there came tidings that Sir Tristram was arrived and whole of his wounds; thereof was king Mark passing glad, and so were all the barons. And when he saw his time, he rode unto his father king Meliodas, and there he had all the cheer that the king and the queen could make him. And then largely king Meliodas and his queen parted of their lands and goods to Sir Tristram. Then by the licence of king Meliodas his father he returned again unto the court of king Mark, and there he lived in great joy long time, until at the last there befel a jealousy and an unkindness between king Mark and Sir Tristram, for they loved both one lady, and she was an earl's wife, that hight Sir Segwarides. And this lady loved Sir Tristram passing well, and he loved her again, for she was a passing fair lady, and that espied Sir Tristram well. Then king Mark understood that, and was jealous, for king Mark loved her passingly well. So it fell upon a day, this lady sent a dwarf unto Sir Tristram, and bad him say that as he loved her that he would be with her the next day following. Also she charged you that ye come not to her but if ye be well armed, for her lover was called a good knight. Sir Tristram answered to the dwarf, Recommend me unto my lady, and tell her I will not fail but I will be with her the term that she hath set me. And with this answer the dwarf departed. And king Mark espied that the dwarf was with Sir Tristram, upon message from Sir Segwarides's wife; then king Mark sent for the dwarf. And when he was come he made the dwarf by force to tell him all, why and wherefore that he came on message to Sir Tristram. Now, said king Mark, go where thou wilt, and upon pain of death that thou say no word that thou spakest with me. So the dwarf departed from the king. And that same time that was set betwixt Sir Segwarides's wife and Sir Tristram, king Mark armed him, and made him ready, and took two knights of his council with him, and so he rode afore, for to abide by the way, to await upon Sir Tristram. And as Sir Tristram came riding upon his way, with his spear in his hand, king Mark came hurtling upon him with his two knights suddenly. And all three smote him with their spears, and king Mark hurt Sir Tristram on the breast right sore; and then Sir Tristram feutered his spear, and smote his uncle king Mark such a stroke that he rashed him to the earth, and bruised him that he lay still in a swoon, and it was long or he might

imself; and then he ran to the
ght, and oft to the other, and
hem to the cold earth, that
still. And therewithal Sir Tris-
de forth sore wounded to the
nd found her abiding him at
n.

CHAP. XIV.

*Tristram came to the lady, and
er husband fought with Sir Tris-*

there she welcomed him fair,
she let put up his horse in the
e, and then she unarmed him:
they supped lightly, and within
there came one that warned
her lord was near hand, with-
draft. So she made Sir Tris-
arise, and so he armed him, and
horse, and so departed. By
come Sir Segwarides, and when
that there had been a knight,
traitress, then he said, why hast
rayed me? And therewithal he
ut a sword, and said, But if thou
who hath been here, here thou
. Ah, my lord, mercy, said the
d held up her hands, saying,
not, and I shall tell you all who
n here. Tell anon, said Sir Seg-
to me all the truth. Anon for
e said, Here was Sir Tristram
, and by the way as he came to
d he was sore wounded. Ah,
e traitress, said Sir Segwarides,
s he become? Sir, she said, he
d, and departed on horseback,
hence half-a-mile. Ye say well,
warides. Then he armed him
nd gat his horse, and rode after
ram, that rode straightway unto
. And within a while he over-
Tristram, and then he bad him
se traitor knight, and Sir Tris-
on turned him against him.
rewithal Segwarides smote Sir
with a spear that it all to-
and then he swung out his
nd smote fast at Sir Tristram.
ht, said Sir Tristram, I counsel
t ye smite no more, howbeit,
wrongs that I have done you,
I will forbear you as long as I may.
Nay, said Segwarides, that shall not be,
for either thou shalt die or I. Then
Sir Tristram drew out his sword, and
hurtled his horse unto him fiercely, and
through the waist of the body he smote
Sir Segwarides that he fell to the earth
in a swoon. And so Sir Tristram de-
parted and left him there, and so he
rode unto Tintagil, and took his lodging
secretly, for he would not be known that
he was hurt. Also, Sir Segwarides's men
rode after their master, whom they found
lying in the field sore wounded, and
brought him home on his shield, and
there he lay long or that he were whole,
but at the last he recovered. Also king
Mark would not be aknown of, that Sir
Tristram and he had met that time.
And as for Sir Tristram, he wist not
that it had been king Mark that had
met with him. And so the king's assist-
ance came to Sir Tristram, to comfort
him as he lay sick in his bed. But as
long as king Mark lived he loved never
Sir Tristram after that: though there
was fair speech, love was there none.
And thus it passed many weeks and
days, and all was forgiven and for-
gotten. For Sir Segwarides durst not
have ado with Sir Tristram, because
of his noble prowess, and also because
he was nephew unto king Mark, there-
fore he let it over slip, for he that hath
a privy hurt is loth to have a shame
outward.

CHAP. XV.

*How Sir Bleoberis demanded the fairest
lady in king Mark's court, whom he
took away, and how he was fought
with.*

THEN it befel upon a day, that the
good knight Bleoberis de Ganis, brother
to Blamore de Ganis, and nigh cousin
unto the good knight Sir Launcelot
du Lake, — this Bleoberis came unto
the court of king Mark, and there he
asked of king Mark a boon, to give him
what gift he would ask in his court.
When the king heard him ask so, he
marvelled of his asking, but because he
was a knight of the Round Table, and

of a great renown, king Mark granted him his whole asking. Then, said Sir Bleoberis, I will have the fairest lady in your court that me list to choose. I may not say nay, said king Mark; now choose at your adventure. And so Sir Bleoberis did chose Sir Segwarides's wife, and took her by the hand, and so went his way with her, and so he took his horse and let set her behind his squire, and rode upon his way. When Sir Segwarides heard tell that his lady was gone with a knight of king Arthur's court, then anon he armed him, and rode after that knight for to rescue his lady. So when Bleoberis was gone with this lady, king Mark and all the court was wroth that she was away. Then were there certain ladies that knew that there was great love between Sir Tristram and her, and also that lady loved Sir Tristram above all other knights. Then there was one lady that rebuked Sir Tristram in the horriblest wise, and called him coward knight, that he would for shame of his knighthood see a lady so shamefully taken away from his uncle's court. But Sir Tristram answered her thus: Fair lady, it is not my part to have ado in such matters, while her lord and husband is present here. And if it had been that her lord had not been here in this court, then for the worship of this court peradventure I would have been her champion, and if so be Sir Segwarides speed not well, it may happen that I will speak with that good knight or ever he pass from this country. Then within awhile came one of Sir Segwarides's squires, and told in the court that Sir Segwarides was beaten sore and wounded to the point of death: as he would have rescued his lady Sir Bleoberis overthrew him, and sore hath wounded him. Then was king Mark heavy thereof, and all the court. When Sir Tristram heard of this he was ashamed and sore grieved. And then was he soon armed and on horseback, and Gouvernail his servant bare his shield and spear. And so as Sir Tristram rode fast he met with Sir Andret his cousin, that by the commandment of king Mark was sent to bring forth, and ever it lay in his power two knights of king Arthur's court, that rode by the country to seek their adventures. When Sir Tristram saw Sir Andret he asked him what tidings. Truly, said Sir Andret, there was never worse with me, for here by the commandment of king Mark I was sent to fetch two knigbts of king Arthur's court, and that one beat me and wounded me, and set nought by my message. Fair cousin, said Sir Tristram, ride on your way, and if I may meet them it may happen I shall revenge you. So Sir Andret rode into Cornwall, and Sir Tristram rode after the two knights, the which one hight Sagramore le Desirous, and that other hight Dodinas le Savage.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Tristram fought with two knights of the Round Table.

THEN within awhile Sir Tristram saw them afore him two likely knights. Sir, said Gouvernail unto his master, Sir, I would counsel you not to have ado with them, for they be two proved knights of Arthur's court. As for that, said Sir Tristram, have ye no doubt but I will have ado with them to encrease my worship, for it is many day sithen I did any deeds of arms. Do as ye list, said Gouvernail. And therewithal anon Sir Tristram asked them from whence they came, and whither they would, and what they did in those marches. Sir Sagramore looked upon Sir Tristram, and had scorn of his words, and asked him again, Fair knight, be ye a knight of Cornwall? Whereby ask ye it? said Sir Tristram. For it is seldom seen, said Sir Sagramore, that ye Cornish knights be valiant men of arms: for within these two hours there met us one of you Cornish knights, and great words he spake, and anon with little might he was laid to the earth. And, as I trow, said Sir Sagramore, ye shall have the same handsel that he had. Fair lords, said Sir Tristram, it may so happen that I may better withstand than he did, and whether ye will or nill I will have ado with you, because he was my

at ye beat. And therefore here best; and wit ye well but if you the better here upon this ne knight of Cornwall shall beat . When Sir Dodinas le Savage n say so, he gat a spear in his d said, Sir knight, keep well And then they departed, and rether as it had been thunder. Dodinas' spear brast in sunder, 'ristram smote him with a more at he smote him clean over the oup, that nigh he had broken When Sir Sagramore saw his ave such a fall he marvelled ght he might be, and he dressed r with all his might, and Sir against him, and they came as the thunder, and there Sir smote Sir Sagramore a strong at he bare his horse and him to ı, and in the falling he brake . When this was done Sir Tris- ed them, Fair knights, will ye ? Be there no bigger knights ourt of king Arthur? It is to ıe to say of us knights of Corn- onour, for it may happen a Cor- ght may match you. That is id Sir Sagramore, that have we ved; but I require thee, said Sir re, tell us your right name, by and truth that ye owe to the er of knighthood. Ye charge a great thing, said Sir Tris- d sithen ye list to wit it, ye shall d understand that my name is ram de Liones, king Meliodas' d nephew unto king Mark. ere they two knights fain that met with Sir Tristram, and so yed him to abide in their fel- Nay, said Sir Tristram, for I ve ado with one of your fellows, e is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis. ed you well, said Sir Sagra- ıd Dodinas. Sir Tristram de- and rode onward on his way, ı was he ware before him in a here rode Sir Bleoberis with varides's lady, that rode behind e upon a palfrey.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Bleoberis for a lady, and how the lady was put to choice to whom she would go.

THEN Sir Tristram rode more than a pace until that he had overtaken him. Then spake Sir Tristram: Abide, he said, knight of Arthur's court, bring again that lady, or deliver her to me. I will do neither, said Sir Bleoberis, for I dread no Cornish knight so sore that me list to deliver her. Why, said Sir Tristram, may not a Cornish knight do as well as another knight? This same day two knights of your court, within this three mile met with me, and or ever we departed they found a Cornish knight good enough for them both. What were their names? said Bleoberis. They told me, said Sir Tristram, that the one of them hight Sir Sagramore le Desirous, and the other hight Dodinas le Savage. Ah, said Sir Bleoberis, have ye met with them? Truly they were two good knights, and men of great worship, and if ye have beat them both ye must needs be a good knight: but if it so be that ye have beat them both, yet shall ye not fear me, but ye shall beat me or ever ye have this lady. Then defend you, said Sir Tristram. So they departed and came together like thunder, and either bare other down, horse and all, to the earth. Then they avoided their horses and lashed together eagerly with swords, and mightily, now tracing and traversing on the right hand and on the left hand more than two hours. And sometimes they rushed together with such a might that they lay both groveling on the ground. Then Sir Bleoberis de Ganis start aback, and said thus: Now, gentle good knight, a while hold your hands and let us speak together. Say what ye will, said Sir Tristram, and I will answer you. Sir, said Bleoberis, I would wit of whence ye be, and of whom ye be come, and what is your name? Truly, said Sir Tristram, I fear not to tell you my name: wit ye well I am king Meliodas' son, and my mother is king Mark's sister, and my

name is Sir Tristram de Liones, and king Mark is mine uncle. Truly, said Bleoberis, I am right glad of you, for ye are he that slew Marhaus, knight, hand for hand in an island for the truage of Cornwall; also ye overcame Sir Palamides the good knight at a tournament in an island, where ye beat Sir Gawaine and his nine fellows. Wit ye well, said Sir Tristram, that I am the same knight. Now I have told you my name, tell me yours with good will. Wit ye well that my name is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, and my brother hight Sir Blamor de Ganis, that is called a good knight, and we be sister's children unto my lord Sir Launcelot du Lake, that we call one of the best knights of the world. That is truth, said Sir Tristram; Sir Launcelot is called peerless of courtesy and of knighthood; and for his sake, said Sir Tristram, I will not with my good will fight no more with you, for the great love I have to Sir Launcelot du Lake. In good faith, said Bleoberis, as for me, I will be loth to fight with you. But since ye follow me here to have this lady, I shall proffer you kindness, courtesy, and gentleness, right here upon this ground. This lady shall be betwixt us both, and to whom that she will go, let him have her in peace. I will well, said Tristram, for, as I deem, she will leave you and come to me. Ye shall prove it anon, said Bleoberis.

CHAP. XVIII.

How the lady forsook Sir Tristram and abode with Sir Bleoberis, and how she desired to go to her husband.

So when she was set betwixt them both, she said these words unto Sir Tristram: Wit ye well, Sir Tristram de Liones, that but late thou was the man in the world that I most loved and trusted, and I wend thou haddest loved me again above all ladies. But when thou sawest this knight lead me away, thou madest no cheer to rescue me, but suffered my lord Sir Segwarides to ride after me, but until that time I wend thou haddest loved me, an fore now I will leave thee, an love thee more. And therewit went unto Sir Bleoberis. When S tram saw her do so, he was w wroth with that lady, and asha come to the court. Sir Tristram, Bleoberis, ye are in the defaul hear, by this lady's words, she this day, trusted you above all knights, and, as she saith, ye h ceived her; therefore, wit ye we may no man hold that will aw rather than ye should be hear pleased with me, I would ye l and she would abide with you said the lady, I will never go wi for he that I loved most I wend loved me. And therefore, Sir T she said, ride as thou came, for thou haddest overcome this kn ye were likely, with thee never have gone. And I shall pray thi so fair of his knighthood, that he pass this country he will lea the abbey where my lord Sir Seg lieth. Truly, said Bleoberis, I wit, good knight Sir Tristram, king Mark gave me the choice in this court, and so this lady li best, notwithstanding she is wed hath a lord, and I have fulfilled m she shall be sent unto her husban and in especial most for your s Tristram: and if she would go w I would ye had her. I thank y Sir Tristram, but for her love I ware what manner of lady I sh or trust. For had her lord Sir rides been away from the court I have been the first that should h lowed you, but since ye have refu as I am a true knight I shall he passingly well that I shall love c And so they took their leave o the other and departed. And Tristram rode unto Tintagil, a Bleoberis rode unto the abbey Sir Segwarides lay sore wound there he delivered his lady and d as a noble knight. And when S warides saw his lady he was comforted. And then she told h

n had done great battle with
is, and caused him to bring
These words pleased Sir
right well, that Sir Tristram
o much; and so that lady told
tle unto king Mark betwixt
m and Sir Bleoberis.

CHAP. XIX.

*Mark sent Sir Tristram for La
nd toward Ireland, and how
e be arrived into England.*

ıen this was done king Mark
s in his heart how he might
r Tristram. And then he
ı himself to send Sir Tristram
d for La Beale Isoud. For
n had so praised her beauty
oodness that king Mark said
ed her, whereupon he prayed
n to take his way into Ireland
message. And all this was
: intent to slay Sir Tristram.
nding, Sir Tristram would
the message for no danger
at might fall for the pleasure
le, but to go he made him
ıe most goodliest wise that
devised. For Sir Tristram
him the most goodliest
ıt he might find in the court,
vere arrayed after the guise
then used in the goodliest
So Sir Tristram departed and
sea with all his fellowship.
as he was in the broad sea,
took him and his fellowship
them back into the coast of
nd there they arrived fast by
nd full fain they were to take
And when they were landed
ım set up his pavilion upon
f Camelot, and there he let
ield upon the pavilion. And
came two knights of king
hat one was Sir Ector de
l Sir Morganor. And they
e shield and bad him come out
lion for to just, and he would
shall be answered, said Sir
nd ye will tarry a little while.
de him ready, and first he
smote down Sir Ector de Maris, and after he smote down Sir Morganor, all with one spear, and sore bruised them. And when they lay upon the earth they asked Sir Tristram what he was, and of what country he was knight. Fair lords, said Sir Tristram, wit ye well that I am of Cornwall. Alas, said Sir Ector, now am I ashamed that ever any Cornish knight should overcome me. And then for despite Sir Ector put off his armour from him, and went on foot, and would not ride.

CHAP. XX.

How king Anguish of Ireland was summoned to come unto king Arthur's court for treason.

THEN it fell that Sir Bleoberis and Sir Blamor de Ganis that were brethren, they had summoned the king Anguish of Ireland to come to Arthur's court, upon pain of forfeiture of king Arthur's good grace. And if the king of Ireland came not in at the day assigned and set, the king should lose his lands. So by it happened that at the day assigned, king Arthur neither Sir Launcelot might not be there for to give the judgment, for king Arthur was with Sir Launcelot at the castle Joyous Gard. And so king Arthur assigned king Carados and the king of Scots to be there that day as judges. So when the kings were at Camelot king Anguish of Ireland was come to know his accusers. Then was there Blamor de Ganis, and appealed the king of Ireland of treason, that he had slain a cousin of his in his court in Ireland by treason. The king was sore abashed of his accusation, for why? he was come at the summoning of king Arthur, and or that he came at Camelot he wist not wherefore he was sent after. And when the king heard Sir Blamor say his will, he understood full well there was none other remedy but to answer him knightly. For the custom was such in those days, that and any man were appealed of any treason or murder, he should fight body for body, or else to find another knight

for him. And all manner of murderers in those days were called treason. So when king Anguish understood his accusing he was passing heavy, for he knew Sir Blamor de Ganis that he was a noble knight, and of noble knights come. Then the king of Ireland was simply purveyed of his answer, therefore the judges gave him respite by the third day to give his answer. So the king departed unto his lodging. The mean while there came a lady by Sir Tristram's pavilion making great dole. What aileth you, said Sir Tristram, that ye make such dole? Ah, fair knight, said the lady, I am ashamed unless that some good knight help me, for a great lady of worship sent by me a fair child and a rich unto Sir Launcelot du Lake, and hereby there met with me a knight and threw me down from my palfrey, and took away the child from me. Well my lady, said Sir Tristram, and for my lord Sir Launcelot's sake I shall get you that child again, or else I shall be beaten for it. And so Sir Tristram took his horse, and asked the lady which way the knight rode. And then she told him. And he rode after him, and within a mile he overtook that knight. And then Sir Tristram bad him turn and give again the child.

CHAP. XXI.

How Sir Tristram rescued a child from a knight, and how Gouvernail told him of king Anguish.

The knight turned his horse, and he made him ready for to fight. And then Sir Tristram smote him with a sword such a buffet that he tumbled to the earth. And then he yielded him unto Sir Tristram. Then come thy way, said Sir Tristram, and bring the child to the lady again. So he took his horse meekly and rode with Sir Tristram, and then by the way Sir Tristram asked him his name. Then he said, My name is Breuse Saunce Pité. So when he had delivered that child to the lady he said, Sir, as in this the child is well remedied. Then Sir Tristram let him go again, that sore repented him after, for he was a great foe unto many good k king Arthur's court. Then Tristram was in his pavilion, G his man came and told him king Anguish of Ireland was ther, and he was put in great and there Gouvernail told Sir how king Anguish was summo appealed of murder. Truly, Tristram, these be the best tidi ever came to me this seven now shall the king of Ireland h of my help, for I dare say th knight in this country that i Arthur's court dare do battle Blamor de Ganis, and for to love of the king of Ireland I the battle upon me, and therefo vernail bring me, I charge the king. Then Gouvernail went u Anguish of Ireland and saluted The king welcomed him and as what he would. Sir, said Go here is a knight near hand that to speak with you: he bad m would do you service. What h he, said the king. Sir, he said, Tristram de Lionès, that for yo grace ye shewed him in yo will reward you in these c Come on fellow, said the king, anon, and shew me unto Sir T So the king took a little hack but few fellowship with him came unto Sir Tristram's pavilio when Sir Tristram saw the king unto him and would have hol stirrup. But the king lept fr horse lightly, and either halse in arms. My gracious lord, Tristram, gramercy of your grea nesses shewed unto me in your and lands: and at that time mised you to do my service a it lay in my power. And gentle said the king unto Sir Tristra have I great need of you; ne I so great need of no knight How so, my good lord? said s tram. I shall tell you, said the am summoned and appealed f country for the death of a kni was kin unto the good knight Si

erefore Sir Blamor de Ganis, o Sir Bleoberis, hath appealed ght with him, other to find a ı my stead. And well I wot, king, these that are come of 's blood, as Sir Launcelot and ıer, are passing good knights, l men for to win in battle as I know now living. Sir, said ram, for the good lordship ye ne in Ireland, and for my lady ıghter's sake, La Beale Isoud, ake the battle for you upon dition that ye shall grant me ıgs: that one is, that ye shall) me that ye are in the right, were never consenting to the death; Sir, then, said Sir Tris- ıen that I have done this battle, ive me grace that I speed, that give me a reward, what thing ıle that I will ask of you. Truly, king, ye shall have whatsoever ask. It is well said, said Sir ı.

CHAP. XXII.

- Tristram fought for Sir An- and overcame his adversary, and his adversary would never yield

make your answer that your ın is ready, for I shall die in ırrel rather than to be recreant. ıo doubt of you, said the king, l ye should have ado with Sir ot du Lake. Sir, said Sir Tris- for Sir Launcelot, he is called est knight of the world, and wit that the knights of his blood are en and dread shame; and as for ɔberis, brother to Sir Blamor, ıone battle with him, therefore y head it is no shame to call him knight. It is noised, said the at Blamor is the hardier knight. for that, let him be, he shall e refused, and as he were the ght that now beareth shield or So king Anguish departed unto ırados and the kings that were ne as judges, and told them had found his champion ready. And then by the commandments of the kings Sir Blamor de Ganis and Sir Tristram were sent for, to hear the charge. And when they were come before the judges, there were many kings and knights beheld Sir Tristram, and much speech they had of him because he slew Sir Marhaus the good knight, and because he forjusted Sir Palamides the good knight. So when they had taken their charge they withdrew them for to make them ready to do battle. Then said Sir Bleoberis to his brother Sir Blamor, Fair dear brother, remember of what kin we be come of, and what a man is Sir Launcelot du Lake, neither further nor nearer but brothers' children, and there was never none of our kin that ever was shamed in battle, and rather suffer death, brother, than to be shamed. Brother, said Blamor, have ye no doubt of me, for I shall never shame none of my blood, how be it I am sure that yonder knight is called a passing good knight, as of his time one of the world, yet shall I never yield me, nor say the loth word: well may he happen to smite me down with his great might of chivalry, but rather shall he slay me than I shall yield me as recreant. God speed you well, said Bleoberis, for ye shall find him the mightiest knight that ever ye had ado withall, for I know him, for I have had ado with him. God me speed, said Blamor de Ganis. And therewith he took his horse at the one end of the lists, and Sir Tristram at the other end of the lists, and so they feutred their spears and came together as it had been thunder, and there Sir Tristram through great might smote down Sir Blamor and his horse to the earth. Then anon Sir Blamor avoided his horse, and pulled out his sword and threw his shield afore him, and bad Sir Tristram alight; for though an horse hath failed me, I trust the earth will not fail me. And then Sir Tristram alight and dressed him unto battle, and there they lashed together strongly as racing and tracing, foining and dashing many sad strokes, that the kings and knights had great wonder

that they might stand, for ever they fought like wood men, so that there were never knights seen fight more fiercely than they did, for Sir Blamor was so hasty that he would have no rest, that all men wondered that they had breath to stand on their feet; and all the place was bloody that they fought in. And at the last, Sir Tristram smote Sir Blamor such a buffet upon the helm that he there fell down upon his side, and Sir Tristram stood and beheld him.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Blamor desired Tristram to slay him, and how Sir Tristram spared him, and how they took appointment.

THEN when Sir Blamor might speak, he said thus: Sir Tristram de Liones, I require thee, as thou art a noble knight, and the best knight that ever I found, that thou wilt slay me out, for I would not live to be made lord of all the earth, for I had lever die with worship than live with shame; and needs, Sir Tristram, thou must slay me, or else thou shalt never win the field, for I will never say the loth word. And therefore if thou dare slay me, slay me I require thee. When Sir Tristram heard him say so knightly, he wist not what to do with him; he remembering him of both parties; of what blood he was come, and for Sir Launcelot's sake he would be full loth to slay him, and in the other party in no wise he might not choose but he must make him to say the loth word, or else to slay him. Then Sir Tristram start aback, and went to the kings that were judges, and there he kneeled down before them, and besought them for their worships, and for king Arthur's, and Sir Launcelot's sake, that they would take this matter in their hands. For my fair lords, said Sir Tristram, it were shame and pity that this noble knight that yonder lieth should be slain, for ye hear well shamed will he not be, and I pray to God that he never be slain nor shamed for me. And as for the king for whom I fight for, I shall him, as I am his true champion knight in this field, that he w mercy upon this good knight. said king Anguish to Sir Tri will for your sake be ruled as have me. For I know you for knight. And therefore I will pray the kings that be here as j take it in their hands. And th that were judges called Sir Ble them, and asked him his advi lords, said Bleoberis, though my be beaten, and hath the worse might of arms, I dare say, tho Tristram hath beaten his body not beaten his heart, and I thank is not shamed this day. And rat he should be shamed I require y Bleoberis, let Sir Tristram slay h It shall not be so, said the kings part adversary, both the king champion, have pity of Sir E knighthood. My lords, said Bl I will right well as ye will.

Then the kings called the Ireland, and found him good an able. And then, by all their advi Tristram and Sir Bleoberis took Blamor, and the two brethren w corded with king Anguish, and and made friends for ever. A Sir Blamor and Sir Tristram kis gether, and there they made the that they would never none o two brethren fight with Sir T and Sir Tristram made the sam And for that gentle battle all th of Sir Launcelot loved Sir Trist ever.

Then king Anguish and Sir T took their leave, and sailed into with great nobleness and joy. S they were in Ireland the king l it known throughout all the lar and in what manner Sir Tristr done for him. Then the queen that there were made the most that they might. But the joy Beale Isoud made of Sir Tristra might no tongue tell, for of men she loved him most.

CHAP. XXIV.

r Tristram demanded La Beale for king Mark, and how Sir am and Isoud drank the love

upon a day king Anguish asked stram why he asked not his or whatsoever he had promised should have it without fail. l Sir Tristram, now is it time, ll that I will desire, that ye will La Beale Isoud your daughter, myself, but for mine uncle king hat shall have her to wife, for : I promised him. Alas, said ıg, I had lever than all the at I have ye would wed her . Sir, and I did, then were ed for ever in this world, and my promise. Therefore, said stram, I pray you hold your that ye promised me, for this lesire, that ye will give me La soud to go with me into Corn- r to be wedded to king Mark ncle. As for that, said king ı, ye shall have her with you, with her what it please you, or to say if that ye list to wed rself, that is to me levest: and ll give her unto king Mark your hat is in your choice.

› make a short conclusion, La soud was made ready to go with tram, and dame Bragwaine went r for her chief gentlewoman, any other. Then the queen, mother, gave to her and dame ine, her daughter's gentlewoman, › Gouvernail, a drink, and charged at what day king Mark should at same day they should give at drink, so that king Mark drink to La Beale Isoud; and id the queen, I undertake either ve other the days of their life. drink was given unto dame ine and unto Gouvernail. And on Sir Tristram took the sea Beale Isoud; and when they their cabin, it happed so that they were thirsty, and they saw a little flacket of gold stand by them, and it seemed by the colour and the taste that it was noble wine. Then Sir Tristram took the flacket in his hand, and said, Madam Isoud, here is the best drink that ever ye drank, that dame Bragwaine your maiden, and Gouvernail my servant, have kept for themselves. Then they laughed and made good cheer, and either drank to other freely, and they thought never drink that ever they drank to other was so sweet nor so good. But by that their drink was in their bodies, they loved either other so well that never their love departed for weal neither for woe. And thus it happed the love first betwixt Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, the which love never departed the days of their life. So then they sailed till by fortune they came nigh a castle that hight Pluere, and thereby arrived for to repose them, weening to them to have had good harbourage. But anon as Sir Tristram was within the castle they were taken prisoners, for the custom of the castle was such, who that rode by that castle, and brought any lady, he must needs fight with the lord, that hight Breunor. And if it were so that Breunor wan the field, then the knight stranger and his lady he put to death, what that ever they were; and if it were so that the strange knight wan the field of Sir Breunor, then should he die and his lady both. This custom was used many winters, for it was called the Castle Pluere, that is to say the weeping castle.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Tristram and Isoud were in prison, and how he fought for her beauty, and smote off another lady's head.

Thus as Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud were in prison, it happed a knight and a lady came unto them where they were, to cheer them. I have marvel, said Tristram unto the knight and the lady, what is the cause

the lord of this castle holdeth us in prison: it was never the custom of no place of worship that ever I came in, that when a knight and a lady asked harbour, and they to receive them, and after to destroy them that be his guests. Sir, said the knight, this is the old custom of this castle, that when a knight cometh here, he must needs fight with our lord, and he that is the weaker must lose his head. And when that is done, if his lady that he bringeth be fouler than our lord's wife, she must lose her head: and if she be fairer proved than is our lady, then shall the lady of this castle lose her head. Now, said Sir Tristram, this is a foul custom and a shameful. But one advantage have I, said Sir Tristram, I have a lady is fair enough, fairer saw I never in all my life days, and I doubt not for lack of beauty she shall not lose her head, and rather than I should lose my head I will fight for it on a fair field. Wherefore, sir knight, I pray you tell your lord that I will be ready as to-morn with my lady, and myself to battle, if it be so I may have my horse and mine armour. Sir, said that knight, I undertake that your desire shall be sped right well.

And then he said, Take your rest, and look that ye be up by times to make you ready and your lady, for ye shall want no thing that you behoveth. And therewith he departed, and on the morn betimes that same knight came to Sir Tristram and fetched him out and his lady, and brought him horse and armour that was his own, and bad him make him ready to the field, for all the estates and commons of that lordship were there ready to behold that battle and judgment. Then came Sir Breunor, the lord of that castle, with his lady in his hand muffled, and asked Sir Tristram where was his lady:—For and thy lady be fairer than mine, with thy sword smite off my lady's head, and if my lady be fairer than thine, with my sword I must strike off her head. And if I may win thee, yet shall thy lady be mine, and thou shalt lose thy head. Sir, said Tristram, this is a foul and horrible; and rather than I should lose her head, yet had lose my head. Nay, nay, said Si nor, the ladies shall be first together, and the one shall h judgment. Nay, I will not so, Tristram, for here is none that w righteous judgment. But I dou said Sir Tristram, my lady is fair thine, and that will I prove an good with my hand. And wh he be that will say the contrary prove it on his head. And th Sir Tristram shewed La Beale and turned her thrice about w naked sword in his hand. An Sir Breunor saw that, he did th wise turn his lady. But wh Breunor beheld La Beale Isou thought he never saw a fairer la then he dread his lady's head sh off. And so all the people tha there present gave judgment t Beale Isoud was the fairer lady, better made. How now, said S tram, me seemeth it were pity t lady should lose her head, but that thou and she of long tim used this wicked custom, and both there have many good knig ladies been destroyed, for that were no loss to destroy you Truly, said Sir Breunor, for to sooth, thy lady is fairer than mi that me sore repenteth. And sc the people privily say; for of all I saw none so fair, and ther thou wilt slay my lady, I doubt I shall slay thee and have th Thou shalt win her, said Sir T as dear as ever knight won la because of thine own judgment, wouldest have done to my lady she had been fouler, and becaus evil custom, give me thy lad Tristram. And therewithall S tram strode unto him and took from him, and with an awk st smote off her head clean. Well said Sir Breunor, now hast th me a despite.

CHAP. XXVI.

Tristram fought with Sir Breu- and at the last smote off his

take thy horse: since I am lady- rill win thy lady and I may. ney took their horses and came as it had been the thunder; and tram smote Sir Breunor clean horse, and lightly he rose up; ir Tristram came again by him t his horse throughout both the s, that his horse hurled here and d fell dead to the ground. And Breunor ran after to have slain ram, but Sir Tristram was light ble and voided his horse lightly. ever Sir Tristram might dress d and his sword, the other gave ee or four sad strokes. Then shed together like two boars, and traversing mightily and s two noble knights. For this nor was a proved knight, and n, or then, the death of many ights, that it was pity that he ong endured. Thus they fought, here and there nigh two hours, ier were wounded sore. Then ist Sir Breunor rushed upon Sir n, and took him in his arms, for ed much in his strength. Then Tristram called the strongest highest knight of the world, for called bigger than Sir Launcelot, Launcelot was better breathed. Sir Tristram thrust Sir Breunor roveling, and then he unlaced and strake off his head. And they that longed to the castle him and did him homage and raying him that he would abide ill a little while to fordo that stom. Sir Tristram granted The meanwhile one of the of the castle rode unto Sir , the haut prince, which Breunor's son, which was a night, and told him what mis- re his father had and his

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Galahad fought with Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram yielded him and promised to fellowship with Launcelot.

THEN came Sir Galahad and the king with the hundred knights with him, and this Sir Galahad proffered to fight with Sir Tristram hand for hand. And so they made them ready to go unto battle on horseback with great courage. Then Sir Galahad and Sir Tristram met together so hard that either bare other down, horse and all, to the earth. And then they avoided their horses as noble knights, and dressed their shields and drew their swords with ire and rancour, and they lashed together many sad strokes, and one while striking, another while foining, tracing and traversing as noble knights, thus they fought long, near half a day, and either were sore wounded. At the last Sir Tristram waxed light and big, and doubled his strokes, and drove Sir Galahad aback on the one side and on the other, so that he was like to have been slain. With that came the king with the hundred knights, and all that fellowship went fiercely upon Sir Tristram. When Sir Tristram saw them coming upon him, then he wist well he might not endure. Then as a wise knight of war, he said to Sir Galahad the haut prince, Sir, ye shew to me no knighthood, for to suffer all your men to have ado with me all at once, and as me seemeth ye be a noble knight of your hands, it is a great shame to you. Truly, said Sir Galahad, there is none other way but thou must yield thee to me, other else to die, said Sir Galahad to Sir Tristram. I will rather yield me to you than die, for that is more for the might of your men than for the might of your hands. And therewith Sir Tristram took his own sword by the point, and put the pommel in the hand of Sir Galahad. Therewithall came the king with the hundred knights, and hard began to assail Sir Tristram. Let be, said Sir Galahad, be

ye not so hardy to touch him, for I have given this knight his life. That is your shame, said the king with the hundred knights; hath he not slain your father and your mother? As for that, said Sir Galahad, I may not blame him greatly, for my father had him in prison, and enforced him to do battle with him, and my father had such a custom, that was a shameful custom, that what knight came there to ask harbour, his lady must needs die but if she were fairer than my mother, and if my father overcame that knight he must needs die. This was a shameful custom and usage, a knight for his harbour asking to have such harbourage. And for this custom I would never draw about him. Truly, said the king, this was a shameful custom. Yea, said Sir Galahad, so seemed me, and me seemed it had been great pity that this knight should have been slain, for I dare say he is the noblest man that beareth life, but if it were Sir Launcelot du Lake. Now fair knight, said Sir Galahad, I require thee tell me thy name, and of whence thou art, and whither thou wilt. Sir, he said, my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, and from king Mark of Cornwall I was sent on message unto king Anguish of Ireland, for to fetch his daughter to be his wife, and here she is ready to go with me into Cornwall, and her name is La Beale Isoud. And Sir Tristram, said Sir Galahad the haut prince, well be ye found in these marches, and so ye will promise me to go unto Sir Launcelot du Lake and accompany with him, ye shall go where ye will, and your fair lady with you. And I shall promise you never in all my days shall such customs be used in this castle as have been used. Sir, said Sir Tristram, now I let you wit I wend ye had been Sir Launcelot du Lake when I saw you first, and, therefore I dread you the more; and Sir, I promise you, said Sir Tristram, as soon as I may I will see Sir Launcelot and enfellowship me with him, for of all the knights of the world I most desire his fellowship.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Launcelot met with Sir bearing away Sir Gawaine, a rescue of Sir Gawaine.

And then Sir Tristram took l when he saw his time, and took And in the mean while word ca Sir Launcelot and to Sir Tristr Sir Carados the mighty king, t made like a giant, had fought Gawaine, and gave him such that he swooned in his saddle, a that he took him by the col pulled him out of his saddle, bound him to the saddle bow, rode his way with him towa castle. And as he rode, by Sir Launcelot met with Sir C and anon he knew Sir Gawai lay bound after him. Ah, s Launcelot unto Sir Gawain stands it with you? Never s said Sir Gawaine, unless that me, for without ye rescue me no knight that may, but either Sir Tristram. Wherefore Sir La was heavy of Sir Gawaine's And then Sir Launcelot bad Si dos, Lay down that knight, an with me. Thou art but a fo Sir Carados, for I will serve yo same wise. As for that, said Si celot, spare me not, for I warn will not spare thee. And then h Sir Gawaine hand and foot, threw him to the ground. And gat his spear of his Squire and d from Sir Launcelot to fetch his And so either met with other, an their spears to their hands, a they pulled out swords and together on horseback more t hour. And at the last Sir La smote Sir Carados such a buff the helm that it perched his br So then Sir Launcelot took Sir by the collar and pulled him u horse feet, and then he alight an off his helm and strake off h And then Sir Launcelot unbo Gawaine. So this same tale v to Sir Galahad and to Sir Tris

ye hear the nobleness that Sir Launcelot. Alas, said Sir and I had not this message in a this fair lady, truly I would it or I had found Sir Launce- n Sir Tristram and La Beale nt to the sea and came into , and there all the barons met

CHAP. XXIX.

lding of king Mark to La Beale nd of Bragwaine her maid, and mides.

non they were richly wedded at nobley. But ever, as the ook saith, Sir Tristram and La nd loved ever together.

vas there great justs and great g, and many lords and ladies nat feast, and Sir Tristram was sed of all other. Thus dured long, and after the feast was hin a little while after, by the two ladies that were with queen ey ordained for hate and envy y dame Bragwaine, that was nd lady unto La Beale Isoud, and ent into the forest for to fetch l there she was met, and bound hand to a tree, and so she was three days. And by fortune Sir s found dame Bragwaine and delivered her from the death, ght her to a nunnery there be recovered. When Isoud missed her maiden wit ye well right heavy as ever was any or of all earthly women she r best, the cause was for she h her out of her country.

o upon a day the queen Isoud nto the forest to put away her , and there she went herself well and made great moan. lenly there came Sir Palamides nd had heard all her complaint, Madame Isoud, and if ye will my boon I shall bring to you gwaine safe and sound. And was so glad of his proffer that unadvised she granted all his Well madam, said Sir Palamides, I trust to your promise, and if ye will abide here half an hour I shall bring her to you. I shall abide you, said La Beale Isoud. Then Sir Palamides rode forth his way to that nunnery, and lightly he came again with dame Bragwaine; but by her good will she would not have come again, because for love of the queen she stood in adventure of her life. Notwithstanding, half against her will, she went with Sir Palamides unto the queen. And when the queen saw her she was passing glad. Now madam, said Palamides, remember upon your promise, for I have fulfilled my promise. Sir Palamides, said the queen, I wot not what is your desire, but I will that ye wit howbeit I promised you largely I thought none evil, nor I warn you none ill will I do. Madam, said Sir Palamides, as at this time ye shall not know my desire, but before my lord your husband there shall ye know that I will have my desire that ye have promised me. And therewith the queen departed and rode home to the king, and Sir Palamides rode after her. And when Sir Palamides came before the king he said, Sir king, I require you as ye be a righteous king, that ye will judge me the right. Tell me the cause, said the king, and ye shall have right.

CHAP. XXX.

How Palamides demanded queen Isoud, and how Lambegus rode after to rescue her, and of the escape of Isoud.

Sir, said Palamides, I promised your queen Isoud to bring again dame Bragwaine that she had lost, upon this covenant, that she should grant me a boon that I would ask, and without grudging other advisement she granted me. What say ye, my lady? said the king. It is truly as he saith, said the queen, to say the sooth I promised him his asking for love and joy that I had to see her. Well madam, said the king, and if ye were hasty to grant him what boon he would ask, I will well that ye perform your promise. Then said Sir Palamides, I will that ye wit that I will have your

for him. And all manner of murderers in those days were called treason. So when king Anguish understood his accusing he was passing heavy, for he knew Sir Blamor de Ganis that he was a noble knight, and of noble knights come. Then the king of Ireland was simply purveyed of his answer, therefore the judges gave him respite by the third day to give his answer. So the king departed unto his lodging. The mean while there came a lady by Sir Tristram's pavilion making great dole. What aileth you, said Sir Tristram, that ye make such dole? Ah, fair knight, said the lady, I am ashamed unless that some good knight help me, for a great lady of worship sent by me a fair child and a rich unto Sir Launcelot du Lake, and hereby there met with me a knight and threw me down from my palfrey, and took away the child from me. Well my lady, said Sir Tristram, and for my lord Sir Launcelot's sake I shall get you that child again, or else I shall be beaten for it. And so Sir Tristram took his horse, and asked the lady which way the knight rode. And then she told him. And he rode after him, and within a mile he overtook that knight. And then Sir Tristram bad him turn and give again the child.

CHAP. XXI.

How Sir Tristram rescued a child from a knight, and how Gouvernail told him of king Anguish.

The knight turned his horse, and he made him ready for to fight. And then Sir Tristram smote him with a sword such a buffet that he tumbled to the earth. And then he yielded him unto Sir Tristram. Then come thy way, said Sir Tristram, and bring the child to the lady again. So he took his horse meekly and rode with Sir Tristram, and then by the way Sir Tristram asked him his name. Then he said, My name is Breuse Saunce Pité. So when he had delivered that child to the lady he said, Sir, as in this the child is well remedied. Then Sir Tristram let him go again, that sore repented him after, for he was a great foe unto many good kn king Arthur's court. Then w Tristram was in his pavilion, Go his man came and told him h king Anguish of Ireland was c ther, and he was put in great and there Gouvernail told Sir T how king Anguish was summor appealed of murder. Truly, s Tristram, these be the best tidi ever came to me this seven y now shall the king of Ireland ha of my help, for I dare say the knight in this country that is Arthur's court dare do battle w Blamor de Ganis, and for to love of the king of Ireland I w the battle upon me, and therefo vernail bring me, I charge thee, king. Then Gouvernail went un Anguish of Ireland and saluted h The king welcomed him and ask what he would. Sir, said Gou here is a knight near hand that to speak with you: he bad me would do you service. What k he, said the king. Sir, he said, Tristram de Lionès, that for yo grace ye shewed him in you will reward you in these co Come on fellow, said the king, v anon, and shew me unto Sir T So the king took a little hackn but few fellowship with him u came unto Sir Tristram's pavilio when Sir Tristram saw the king, unto him and would have hol stirrup. But the king lept fr horse lightly, and either halsed in arms. My gracious lord, s Tristram, gramercy of your great nesses shewed unto me in your r and lands: and at that time mised you to do my service an it lay in my power. And gentle said the king unto Sir Tristra have I great need of you; nev I so great need of no knight's How so, my good lord? said si tram. I shall tell you, said the k am summoned and appealed fr country for the death of a knig was kin unto the good knight Sir

refore Sir Blamor de Ganis,
Sir Bleoberis, hath appealed
ht with him, other to find a
my stead. And well I wot,
ding, these that are come of
s blood, as Sir Launcelot and
:r, are passing good knights,
men for to win in battle as
I know now living. Sir, said
am, for the good lordship ye
ie in Ireland, and for my lady
ghter's sake, La Beale Isoud,
ke the battle for you upon
ition that ye shall grant me
gs: that one is, that ye shall
me that ye are in the right,
were never consenting to the
leath; Sir, then, said Sir Tris-
n that I have done this battle,
ve me grace that I speed, that
give me a reward, what thing
e that I will ask of you. Truly,
ding, ye shall have whatsoever
sk. It is well said, said Sir

CHAP. XXII.

Tristram fought for Sir And overcame his adversary, and s adversary would never yield

nake your answer that your
is ready, for I shall die in
rel rather than to be recreant.
doubt of you, said the king,
ye should have ado with Sir
du Lake. Sir, said Sir Tris-
or Sir Launcelot, he is called
st knight of the world, and wit
at the knights of his blood are
a and dread shame; and as for
eris, brother to Sir Blamor,
ne battle with him, therefore
head it is no shame to call him
night. It is noised, said the
Blamor is the hardier knight.
or that, let him be, he shall
refused, and as he were the
ht that now beareth shield or
o king Anguish departed unto
ados and the kings that were
s as judges, and told them
ad found his champion ready.

And then by the commandments of the kings Sir Blamor de Ganis and Sir Tristram were sent for, to hear the charge. And when they were come before the judges, there were many kings and knights beheld Sir Tristram, and much speech they had of him because he slew Sir Marhaus the good knight, and because he forjusted Sir Palamides the good knight. So when they had taken their charge they withdrew them for to make them ready to do battle. Then said Sir Bleoberis to his brother Sir Blamor, Fair dear brother, remember of what kin we be come of, and what a man is Sir Launcelot du Lake, neither further nor nearer but brothers' children, and there was never none of our kin that ever was shamed in battle, and rather suffer death, brother, than to be shamed. Brother, said Blamor, have ye no doubt of me, for I shall never shame none of my blood, how be it I am sure that yonder knight is called a passing good knight, as of his time one of the world, yet shall I never yield me, nor say the loth word: well may he happen to smite me down with his great might of chivalry, but rather shall he slay me than I shall yield me as recreant. God speed you well, said Bleoberis, for ye shall find him the mightiest knight that ever ye had ado withall, for I know him, for I have had ado with him. God me speed, said Blamor de Ganis. And therewith he took his horse at the one end of the lists, and Sir Tristram at the other end of the lists, and so they feutred their spears and came together as it had been thunder, and there Sir Tristram through great might smote down Sir Blamor and his horse to the earth. Then anon Sir Blamor avoided his horse, and pulled out his sword and threw his shield afore him, and bad Sir Tristram alight; for though an horse hath failed me, I trust the earth will not fail me. And then Sir Tristram alight and dressed him unto battle, and there they lashed together strongly as racing and tracing, foining and dashing many sad strokes, that the kings and knights had great wonder

that they might stand, for ever they fought like wood men, so that there were never knights seen fight more fiercely than they did, for Sir Blamor was so hasty that he would have no rest, that all men wondered that they had breath to stand on their feet; and all the place was bloody that they fought in. And at the last, Sir Tristram smote Sir Blamor such a buffet upon the helm that he there fell down upon his side, and Sir Tristram stood and beheld him.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Blamor desired Tristram to slay him, and how Sir Tristram spared him, and how they took appointment.

THEN when Sir Blamor might speak, he said thus: Sir Tristram de Liones, I require thee, as thou art a noble knight, and the best knight that ever I found, that thou wilt slay me out, for I would not live to be made lord of all the earth, for I had lever die with worship than live with shame; and needs, Sir Tristram, thou must slay me, or else thou shalt never win the field, for I will never say the loth word. And therefore if thou dare slay me, slay me I require thee. When Sir Tristram heard him say so knightly, he wist not what to do with him; he remembering him of both parties; of what blood he was come, and for Sir Launcelot's sake he would be full loth to slay him, and in the other party in no wise he might not choose but he must make him to say the loth word, or else to slay him. Then Sir Tristram start aback, and went to the kings that were judges, and there he kneeled down before them, and besought them for their worships, and for king Arthur's, and Sir Launcelot's sake, that they would take this matter in their hands. For my fair lords, said Sir Tristram, it were shame and pity that this noble knight that yonder lieth should be slain, for ye hear well shamed will he not be, and I pray to God that he never be slain nor shamed for me. And as for the king for whom I fight for, I shall him, as I am his true champion knight in this field, that he w mercy upon this good knight. said king Anguish to Sir Tris will for your sake be ruled as have me. For I know you for knight. And therefore I will pray the kings that be here as ju take it in their hands. And th that were judges called Sir Bleo them, and asked him his advic lords, said Bleoberis, though my be beaten, and hath the worse t might of arms, I dare say, tho Tristram hath beaten his body not beaten his heart, and I thank is not shamed this day. And rat he should be shamed I require y Bleoberis, let Sir Tristram slay h It shall not be so, said the kings part adversary, both the king champion, have pity of Sir B knighthood. My lords, said Bl I will right well as ye will.

Then the kings called the Ireland, and found him good an able. And then, by all their advi Tristram and Sir Bleoberis took Blamor, and the two brethren w corded with king Anguish, and and made friends for ever. A Sir Blamor and Sir Tristram ki gether, and there they made the that they would never none o two brethren fight with Sir T and Sir Tristram made the sam And for that gentle battle all th of Sir Launcelot loved Sir Trist ever.

Then king Anguish and Sir T took their leave, and sailed into with great nobleness and joy. S they were in Ireland the king l it known throughout all the lan and in what manner Sir Tristr done for him. Then the queen that there were made the most that they might. But the joy t Beale Isoud made of Sir Tristra might no tongue tell, for of men she loved him most.

CHAP. XXIV.

'istram demanded La Beale king Mark, and how Sir and Isoud drank the love

ı a day king Anguish asked ı why he asked not his ıatsoever he had promised uld have it without fail. Tristram, now is it time, ıt I will desire, that ye will Beale Isoud your daughter, lf, but for mine uncle king ;hall have her to wife, for ›romised him. Alas, said had lever than all the have ye would wed her r, and I did, then were ır ever in this world, and promise. Therefore, said ı, I pray you hold your : ye promised me, for this , that ye will give me La to go with me into Corn- be wedded to king Mark As for that, said king shall have her with you, her what it please you, › say if that ye list to wed that is to me levest: and e her unto king Mark your ; in your choice.

ke a short conclusion, La was made ready to go with and dame Bragwaine went r her chief gentlewoman, other. Then the queen, ıer, gave to her and dame .er daughter's gentlewoman, ıvernail, a drink, and charged hat day king Mark should ıme day they should give rink, so that king Mark : to La Beale Isoud; and e queen, I undertake either :her the days of their life. ık was given unto dame nd unto Gouvernail. And ;ir Tristram took the sea le Isoud; and when they r cabin, it happed so that they were thirsty, and they saw a little flacket of gold stand by them, and it seemed by the colour and the taste that it was noble wine. Then Sir Tristram took the flacket in his hand, and said, Madam Isoud, here is the best drink that ever ye drank, that dame Bragwaine your maiden, and Gouvernail my servant, have kept for themselves. Then they laughed and made good cheer, and either drank to other freely, and they thought never drink that ever they drank to other was so sweet nor so good. But by that their drink was in their bodies, they loved either other so well that never their love departed for weal neither for woe. And thus it happed the love first betwixt Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, the which love never departed the days of their life. So then they sailed till by fortune they came nigh a castle that hight Pluere, and thereby arrived for to repose them, weening to them to have had good harbourage. But anon as Sir Tristram was within the castle they were taken prisoners, for the custom of the castle was such, who that rode by that castle, and brought any lady, he must needs fight with the lord, that hight Breunor. And if it were so that Breunor wan the field, then the knight stranger and his lady he put to death, what that ever they were; and if it were so that the strange knight wan the field of Sir Breunor, then should he die and his lady both. This custom was used many winters, for it was called the Castle Pluere, that is to say the weeping castle.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Tristram and Isoud were in prison, and how he fought for her beauty, and smote off another lady's head.

THUS as Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud were in prison, it happed a knight and a lady came unto them where they were, to cheer them. I have marvel, said Tristram unto the knight and the lady, what is the cause

the lord of this castle holdeth us in prison: it was never the custom of no place of worship that ever I came in, that when a knight and a lady asked harbour, and they to receive them, and after to destroy them that be his guests. Sir, said the knight, this is the old custom of this castle, that when a knight cometh here, he must needs fight with our lord, and he that is the weaker must lose his head. And when that is done, if his lady that he bringeth be fouler than our lord's wife, she must lose her head: and if she be fairer proved than is our lady, then shall the lady of this castle lose her head. Now, said Sir Tristram, this is a foul custom and a shameful. But one advantage have I, said Sir Tristram, I have a lady is fair enough, fairer saw I never in all my life days, and I doubt not for lack of beauty she shall not lose her head, and rather than I should lose my head I will fight for it on a fair field. Wherefore, sir knight, I pray you tell your lord that I will be ready as to-morn with my lady, and myself to battle, if it be so I may have my horse and mine armour. Sir, said that knight, I undertake that your desire shall be sped right well.

And then he said, Take your rest, and look that ye be up by times to make you ready and your lady, for ye shall want no thing that you behoveth. And therewith he departed, and on the morn betimes that same knight came to Sir Tristram and fetched him out and his lady, and brought him horse and armour that was his own, and bad him make him ready to the field, for all the estates and commons of that lordship were there ready to behold that battle and judgment. Then came Sir Breunor, the lord of that castle, with his lady in his hand muffled, and asked Sir Tristram where was his lady:—For and thy lady be fairer than mine, with thy sword smite off my lady's head, and if my lady be fairer than thine, with my sword I must strike off her head. And if I may win thee, yet shall thy lady be mine, and thou shalt lose thy head. Sir, said Tristram, this is a foul and horrible; and rather than n should lose her head, yet had lose my head. Nay, nay, said Si nor, the ladies shall be first together, and the one shall ha judgment. Nay, I will not so, s Tristram, for here is none that w righteous judgment. But I dou said Sir Tristram, my lady is fair thine, and that will I prove an good with my hand. And wh he be that will say the contrary prove it on his head. And th Sir Tristram shewed La Beale and turned her thrice about w naked sword in his hand. An Sir Breunor saw that, he did th wise turn his lady. But wh Breunor beheld La Beale Isou thought he never saw a fairer la then he dread his lady's head sh off. And so all the people th there present gave judgment t Beale Isoud was the fairer lady, better made. How now, said S tram, me seemeth it were pity t lady should lose her head, but that thou and she of long tin used this wicked custom, and both there have many good knig ladies been destroyed, for that were no loss to destroy you Truly, said Sir Breunor, for to sooth, thy lady is fairer than mi that me sore repenteth. And s the people privily say; for of all I saw none so fair, and ther thou wilt slay my lady, I doubt I shall slay thee and have th Thou shalt win her, said Sir T as dear as ever knight won la because of thine own judgment, wouldest have done to my lady she had been fouler, and becaus evil custom, give me thy lad Tristram. And therewithall S tram strode unto him and took l from him, and with an awk st smote off her head clean. Well said Sir Breunor, now hast th me a despite.

CHAP. XXVI.

*ristram fought with Sir Breu-
l at the last smote off his*

e thy horse: since I am lady-
win thy lady and I may.
took their horses and came
it had been the thunder; and
m smote Sir Breunor clean
orse, and lightly he rose up;
Tristram came again by him
is horse throughout both the
hat his horse hurled here and
ell dead to the ground. And
eunor ran after to have slain
n, but Sir Tristram was light
and voided his horse lightly.
er Sir Tristram might dress
nd his sword, the other gave
or four sad strokes. Then
d together like two boars,
d traversing mightily and
wo noble knights. For this
r was a proved knight, and
or then, the death of many
its, that it was pity that he
endured. Thus they fought,
e and there nigh two hours,
were wounded sore. Then
Sir Breunor rushed upon Sir
nd took him in his arms, for
much in his strength. Then
ristram called the strongest
hest knight of the world, for
ed bigger than Sir Launcelot,
uncelot was better breathed.
r Tristram thrust Sir Breunor
veling, and then he unlaced
d strake off his head. And
ey that longed to the castle
m and did him homage and
ing him that he would abide
a little while to fordo that
m. Sir Tristram granted
The meanwhile one of the
the castle rode unto Sir
the haut prince, the which
Breunor's son, which was a
ht, and told him what mis-
his father had and his

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Galahad fought with Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram yielded him and promised to fellowship with Launcelot.

THEN came Sir Galahad and the king with the hundred knights with him, and this Sir Galahad proffered to fight with Sir Tristram hand for hand. And so they made them ready to go unto battle on horseback with great courage. Then Sir Galahad and Sir Tristram met together so hard that either bare other down, horse and all, to the earth. And then they avoided their horses as noble knights, and dressed their shields and drew their swords with ire and rancour, and they lashed together many sad strokes, and one while striking, another while foining, tracing and traversing as noble knights, thus they fought long, near half a day, and either were sore wounded. At the last Sir Tristram waxed light and big, and doubled his strokes, and drove Sir Galahad aback on the one side and on the other, so that he was like to have been slain. With that came the king with the hundred knights, and all that fellowship went fiercely upon Sir Tristram. When Sir Tristram saw them coming upon him, then he wist well he might not endure. Then as a wise knight of war, he said to Sir Galahad the haut prince, Sir, ye shew to me no knighthood, for to suffer all your men to have ado with me all at once, and as me seemeth ye be a noble knight of your hands, it is a great shame to you. Truly, said Sir Galahad, there is none other way but thou must yield thee to me, other else to die, said Sir Galahad to Sir Tristram. I will rather yield me to you than die, for that is more for the might of your men than for the might of your hands. And therewith Sir Tristram took his own sword by the point, and put the pommel in the hand of Sir Galahad. Therewithall came the king with the hundred knights, and hard began to assail Sir Tristram. Let be, said Sir Galahad, be

ye not so hardy to touch him, for I have given this knight his life. That is your shame, said the king with the hundred knights; hath he not slain your father and your mother? As for that, said Sir Galahad, I may not blame him greatly, for my father had him in prison, and enforced him to do battle with him, and my father had such a custom, that was a shameful custom, that what knight came there to ask harbour, his lady must needs die but if she were fairer than my mother, and if my father overcame that knight he must needs die. This was a shameful custom and usage, a knight for his harbour asking to have such harbourage. And for this custom I would never draw about him. Truly, said the king, this was a shameful custom. Yea, said Sir Galahad, so seemed me, and me seemed it had been great pity that this knight should have been slain, for I dare say he is the noblest man that beareth life, but if it were Sir Launcelot du Lake. Now fair knight, said Sir Galahad, I require thee tell me thy name, and of whence thou art, and whither thou wilt. Sir, he said, my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, and from king Mark of Cornwall I was sent on message unto king Anguish of Ireland, for to fetch his daughter to be his wife, and here she is ready to go with me into Cornwall, and her name is La Beale Isoud. And Sir Tristram, said Sir Galahad the haut prince, well be ye found in these marches, and so ye will promise me to go unto Sir Launcelot du Lake and accompany with him, ye shall go where ye will, and your fair lady with you. And I shall promise you never in all my days shall such customs be used in this castle as have been used. Sir, said Sir Tristram, now I let you wit I wend ye had been Sir Launcelot du Lake when I saw you first, and, therefore I dread you the more; and Sir, I promise you, said Sir Tristram, as soon as I may I will see Sir Launcelot and enfellowship me with him, for of all the knights of the world *I most desire his fellowship.*

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Launcelot met with Sir bearing away Sir Gawaine, a rescue of Sir Gawaine.

And then Sir Tristram took when he saw his time, and took And in the mean while word c Sir Launcelot and to Sir Trist Sir Carados the mighty king, made like a giant, had fought Gawaine, and gave him such that he swooned in his saddle, that he took him by the co pulled him out of his saddle, bound him to the saddle bow rode his way with him tow castle. And as he rode, by Sir Launcelot met with Sir and anon he knew Sir Gawa lay bound after him. Ah, Launcelot unto Sir Gawain stands it with you? Never said Sir Gawaine, unless that me, for without ye rescue me no knight that may, but eithe Sir Tristram. Wherefore Sir L was heavy of Sir Gawaine's And then Sir Launcelot bad S dos, Lay down that knight, a with me. Thou art but a fo Sir Carados, for I will serve yo same wise. As for that, said S celot, spare me not, for I war will not spare thee. And then h Sir Gawaine hand and foot, threw him to the ground. And gat his spear of his Squire and from Sir Launcelot to fetch hi And so either met with other, a their spears to their hands, a they pulled out swords and together on horseback more hour. And at the last Sir L smote Sir Carados such a buf the helm that it perched his b So then Sir Launcelot took Sir by the collar and pulled him horse feet, and then he alight an off his helm and strake off h And then Sir Launcelot unb Gawaine. So this same tale to Sir Galahad and to Sir Tri

ye hear the nobleness that
Sir Launcelot. Alas, said Sir
and I had not this message in
ı this fair lady, truly I would
t or I had found Sir Launce-
n Sir Tristram and La Beale
nt to the sea and came into
and there all the barons met

CHAP. XXIX.

lding of king Mark to La Beale nd of Bragwaine her maid, and mides.

ıon they were richly wedded
.t nobley. But ever, as the
ok saith, Sir Tristram and La
ıd loved ever together.
as there great justs and great
, and many lords and ladies
at feast, and Sir Tristram was
ed of all other. Thus dured
long, and after the feast was
ıin a little while after, by the
wo ladies that were with queen
y ordained for hate and envy
/ dame Bragwaine, that was
d lady unto La Beale Isoud, and
ent into the forest for to fetch
there she was met, and bound
ınd to a tree, and so she was
hree days. And by fortune Sir
found dame Bragwaine and
delivered her from the death,
ght her to a nunnery there
be recovered. When Isoud
missed her maiden wit ye well
right heavy as ever was any
r of all earthly women she
best, the cause was for she
ı her out of her country.
upon a day the queen Isoud
to the forest to put away her
and there she went herself
/ell and made great moan.
enly there came Sir Palamides
l had heard all her complaint,
Madame Isoud, and if ye will
my boon I shall bring to you
gwaine safe and sound. And
was so glad of his proffer that
madvised she granted all his

*Well madam, said Sir Pala-*mides, I trust to your promise, and if ye will abide here half an hour I shall bring her to you. I shall abide you, said La Beale Isoud. Then Sir Palamides rode forth his way to that nunnery, and lightly he came again with dame Bragwaine; but by her good will she would not have come again, because for love of the queen she stood in adventure of her life. Notwithstanding, half against her will, she went with Sir Palamides unto the queen. And when the queen saw her she was passing glad. Now madam, said Palamides, remember upon your promise, for I have fulfilled my promise. Sir Palamides, said the queen, I wot not what is your desire, but I will that ye wit howbeit I promised you largely I thought none evil, nor I warn you none ill will I do. Madam, said Sir Palamides, as at this time ye shall not know my desire, but before my lord your husband there shall ye know that I will have my desire that ye have promised me. And therewith the queen departed and rode home to the king, and Sir Palamides rode after her. And when Sir Palamides came before the king he said, Sir king, I require you as ye be a righteous king, that ye will judge me the right. Tell me the cause, said the king, and ye shall have right.

CHAP. XXX.

How Palamides demanded queen Isoud, and how Lambegus rode after to rescue her, and of the escape of Isoud.

Sir, said Palamides, I promised your queen Isoud to bring again dame Bragwaine that she had lost, upon this covenant, that she should grant me a boon that I would ask, and without grudging other advisement she granted me. What say ye, my lady? said the king. It is truly as he saith, said the queen, to say the sooth I promised him his asking for love and joy that I had to see her. Well madam, said the king, and if ye were hasty to grant him what boon he would ask, I will well that ye perform your promise. Then said Sir Palamides, I will that ye wit that I will have your

queen to lead her and govern her where as me list. Therewith the king stood still, and bethought him of Sir Tristram, and deemed that he would rescue her. And then hastily the king answered, Take her with the adventures that shall fall of it, for Sir Palamides as I suppose thou wilt not keep her no while. As for that, said Sir Palamides, I dare right well abide the adventure. And so to make short tale, Sir Palamides took her by the hand and said, Madam, grudge not to go with me, for I desire nothing but your own promise. As for that, said the queen, I fear not greatly to go with thee, howbeit thou hast me at advantage upon my promise. For I doubt not I shall be worshipfully rescued from thee. As for that, said Sir Palamides, be it as it be may. So queen Isoud was set behind Palamides, and rode his way. Anon the king sent after Sir Tristram, but in no wise he could be found, for he was in the forest an hunting; for that was always his custom, but if he used arms, to chase and to hunt in the forests. Alas, said the king, now I am shamed for ever, that by mine own assent my lady and my queen shall be devoured. Then came forth a knight, his name was Lambegus, and he was a knight of Sir Tristram. My lord, said this knight, sith ye have trust in my lord Sir Tristram, wit ye well for his sake I will ride after your queen and rescue her, or else I shall be beaten. Gramercy, said the king, and I live, Sir Lambegus, I shall deserve it. And then Sir Lambegus armed him, and rode after as fast as he might. And then within awhile he overtook Sir Palamides: and then Sir Palamides left the queen. What art thou? said Sir Palamides, art thou Tristram? Nay, he said, I am his servant, and my name is Sir Lambegus. That me repenteth, said Sir Palamides, I had lever thou hadst been Sir Tristram. I believe you well, said Sir Lambegus, but when thou meetest with Sir Tristram thou shalt have thy hands full. And then they hurtled together and all to-brast their spears, and then they pulled out their swords and hewed on helms and hauberks. At the last Sir Palamides gave Sir Lambegus such a wound that he fell down like a dead knight to the earth. Then he looked after La Beale Isoud, and then she was gone he wist where. Wit ye well Sir Palamides was never so heavy. So the queen ran into the forest, and there she found a well, and therein she had thought to have drowned herself. And as good fortune would, there came a knight to her that had a castle thereby, his name was Sir Adtherp. And when he found the queen in that mischief he rescued her, and brought her to his castle. And when he wist what she was, he armed him and took his horse, and said he would be avenged upon Palamides, and so he rode till he met with him, and there Sir Palamides wounded him sore, and by force he made him to tell him the cause why he did battle with him, and how he had led the queen unto his castle. Now bring me there, said Palamides, or thou shalt die of my hands. Sir, said Sir Adtherp, I am so wounded I may not follow, but ride you this way, and it shall bring you into my castle, and there within is the queen. And then Sir Palamides rode still till he came to the castle, and at a window La Beale Isoud saw Sir Palamides, then she made the gates to be shut strongly. And when he saw he might not come within the castle, he put off his bridle and his saddle, and put his horse to pasture, and set himself down at the gate like a man that was out of his wit that recked not of himself.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Sir Tristram rode after Palamides, and how he found him and fought with him, and by the mean of Isoud the battle ceased.

Now turn we unto Sir Tristram, that when he was come home and wist La Beale Isoud was gone with Sir Palamides, wit ye well he was wroth out of measure. Alas, said Sir Tristram, I am this day shamed. Then he cried to Gou-

man, Haste thee that I were on horseback, for well I wot hath no might nor strength id Sir Palamides: alas, that een in his stead. So anon as ied and horsed Sir Tristram nail rode after into the forest, a while he found his knight ilmost wounded to the death, stram bare him to a forester, l him to keep him well. And le forth, and there he found) sore wounded, and he told e queen would have drowned he had not been, and how and love he had taken upon battle with Sir Palamides. ny lady? said Sir Tristram. ? knight, she is sure enough castle, and she can hold her Gramercy, said Sir Tristram, goodness. And so he rode ie nigh to that castle, and ristram saw where Sir Pala- t the gate sleeping, and his red fast afore him. Now go rnail, said Sir Tristram, and ake and make him ready. So rode unto him and said, Sir arise and take to thee thine ut he was in such a study rd not what Gouvernail said. iail came again and told Sir iat he slept, or else he was hou again, said Sir Tristram, m arise, and tell him that I mortal foe. So Gouvernail and put upon him the butt r, and said, Sir Palamides ready, for wit ye well Sir oveth yonder, and sendeth he is thy mortal foe. And Sir Palamides arose stilly ords, and gat his horse and and bridled him, and lightly in him, and gat his spear in id either feutred their spears, fast together; and there Sir mote down Sir Palamides rse tail. Then lightly Sir put his shield afore him is sword, and there began le on both parties, for both they fought for the love of one lady, and ever she lay on the walls and beheld them how they fought out of measure, and either were wounded passing sore, but Palamides was much sorer wounded. Thus they fought tracing and traversing more than two hours, that well nigh for dole and sorrow La Beale Isoud swooned. Alas, said she, that one I loved and yet do, and the other I love not, yet it were great pity that I should see Sir Palamides slain, for well I know by that time the end be done Sir Palamides is but a dead knight, and because he is not christened I would be loth that he should die a Saracen. And therewithal she came down and besought Sir Tristram to fight no more. Ah madam, said he, what mean you? will ye have me shamed? Well ye know I will be ruled by you. I will not your dishonour, said La Beale Isoud, but I would that ye would for my sake spare this unhappy Saracen Palamides. Madam, said Sir Tristram, I will leave fighting at this time for your sake.

Then she said to Sir Palamides: This shall be your charge, that thou shalt go out of this country while I am therein. I will obey your commandment, said Sir Palamides, the which is sore against my will. Then take thy way, said La Beale Isoud, unto the court of king Arthur, and there recommend me unto queen Guenever, and tell her that I send her word that there be within the land but four lovers, that is Sir Launcelot du Lake and queen Guenever, and Sir Tristram de Liones and queen Isoud.

CHAP. XXXII.

How Sir Tristram brought queen Isoud home, and of the debate of king Mark and Sir Tristram.

And so Sir Palamides departed with great heaviness. And Sir Tristram took the queen and brought her again to king Mark, and then was there made great joy of her home coming. Who was cherished but Sir Tristram! Then Sir Tristram let fetch Sir Lambegus his

knight from the forester's house, and it was long or he was whole, but at the last he was well recovered. Thus they lived with joy and play a long while. But ever Sir Andred, that was nigh cousin unto Sir Tristram, lay in a watch to wait betwixt Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, for to take them and slander them. So upon a day Sir Tristram talked with La Beale Isoud in a window, and that espied Sir Andred, and told it to the king. Then king Mark took a sword in his hand and came to Sir Tristram, and called him false traitor, and would have stricken him. But Sir Tristram was nigh him, and ran under his sword, and took it out of his hand. And then the king cried, Where are my knights and my men? I charge you slay this traitor. But at that time there was not one would move for his words. When Sir Tristram saw there was not one would be against him, he shook the sword to the king, and made countenance as though he would have stricken him. And then king Mark fled, and Sir Tristram followed him, and smote upon him five or six strokes flatling on the neck that he made him to fall upon the nose. And then Sir Tristram went his way and armed him, and took his horse and his man, and so he rode into that forest. And there upon a day Sir Tristram met with two brethren that were knights with king Mark, and there he strake off the head of the one, and wounded the other to the death, and he made him to bear his brother's head in his helm unto the king, and thirty more there he wounded. And when that knight came before the king to say his message, he there died afore the king and the queen. Then king Mark called his council unto him and asked advice of his barons what was best to do with Sir Tristram. Sir, said the barons, in especial Sir Dinas the seneschal, Sir, we will give you counsel for to send for Sir Tristram, for we will that ye wit many men will hold with Sir Tristram and he were hard bested. And sir, said Sir Dinas, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram is called peerless and matchless christian knight, and of his mig his hardiness we knew none so knight, but if it be Sir Launc Lake. And if he depart from you and go to king Arthur's court, well he will get him such friend that he will not set by your And therefore, sir, I counsel you him to your grace. I will well, s king, that he be sent for, that w be friends. Then the barons sent Tristram under a safe conduct. when Sir Tristram came to the k was welcome, and no rehears made, and there was game and And then the king and the quee on hunting, and Sir Tristram.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Sir Lamorak justed with knights, and Sir Tristram at re king Mark smote his horse down.

The king and the queen mad pavilions and their tents in tha beside a river, and there was dail ing and justing, for there were eve knights ready to just unto all the came in at that time. And there tune came Sir Lamorak de Ga Sir Driant, and there Sir Driant right well, but at the last he had Then Sir Lamorak proffered t And when he began he fared s the thirty knights that there w one of them but that he gave him and some of them were sore h marvel, said king Mark, what kni is that doth such deeds of arm said Sir Tristram, I know him noble knight as few now be livir his name is Sir Lamorak de Ga were great shame, said the king, should go thus away, unless tha of you met with him better. Sir, Tristram, me seemeth it were n ship for a noble man for to ha with him; and for because at th he hath done overmuch for an knight living, therefore, as me s it were great shame and villainy t him any more at this time, inson

his horse are weary both; for
is of arms that he hath done
', and they be well considered,
ough for Sir Launcelot du Lake.
ır that, said king Mark, I re-
ıu as ye love me and my lady
en La Beale Isoud, take your
ıd just with Sir Lamorak de
Sir, said Sir Tristram, ye bid me
ing that is against knighthood,
I I can deem that I shall give
ıll, for it is no mastery, for my
ıd I be fresh both, and so is not
e and he; and wit ye well that
take it for great unkindness, for
: good is loth to take another at
ıtage. But because I will not
e you, as ye require me so will
nd obey your commandment.
Sir Tristram armed him anon
ɔk his horse, and put him
ıd there Sir Lamorak met him
', and what with the might of
ı spear, and of Sir Tristram's
ir Lamorak's horse fell to the
ıd he sitting in the saddle. Then
lightly as he might he avoided
dle and his horse, and put his
fore him, and drew his sword.
n he bad Sir Tristram, Alight,
ight, and thou darest. Nay, said
tram, I will no more have ado
:e, for I have done to thee over-
nto my dishonour, and to thy
. As for that, said Sir Lamo-
an thee no thank: since thou
justed me on horseback, I re-
ee, and I beseech thee, and thou
Tristram, fight with me on foot.
ɔt so, said Sir Tristram; and wit
my name is Sir Tristram de
and well I know ye be Sir
k de Galis, and this that I have
you was against my will, but I
uired thereto; but to say that
ɔ at your request as at this time,
ave no more ado with you, for
meth of that I have done. As
shame, said Sir Lamorak, on
: or on mine, bear thou it and
lt, for though a mare's son hath
ıe, now a queen's son shall not
:; and therefore, and thou be

such a knight as men call thee, I require thee, alight, and fight with me. Sir Lamorak, said Sir Tristram, I understand your heart is great, and cause why ye have, to say the sooth: for it would grieve me and any knight should keep himself fresh and then to strike down a weary knight, for that knight nor horse was never formed that alway might stand or endure. And therefore, said Sir Tristram, I will not have ado with you, for me forthinketh of that I have done. As for that, said Sir Lamorak, I shall quit you and ever I see my time.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How Sir Lamorak sent an horn to king Mark in despite of Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram was driven into a chapel.

So he departed from him with Sir Driant, and by the way they met with a knight that was sent from Morgan le Fay unto king Arthur, and this knight had a fair horn harnessed with gold, and the horn had such a virtue that there might no lady nor gentlewoman drink of that horn but if she were true to her husband, and if she were false she should spill all the drink, and if she were true to her lord she might drink peaceably. And because of queen Guenever, and in the despite of Sir Launcelot, this horn was sent unto king Arthur, and by force Sir Lamorak made that knight to tell all the cause why he bare that horn. Now shalt thou bear this horn, said Lamorak unto king Mark, or else choose thou to die for it. For I tell thee plainly, in despite and reproof of Sir Tristram thou shalt bear that horn unto king Mark his uncle, and say thou to him that I sent it him for to assay his lady, and if she be true to him he shall prove her. So the knight went his way unto king Mark, and brought him that rich horn, and said that Sir Lamorak sent it him, and thereto he told him the virtue of that horn. Then the king made queen Isoud to drink thereof, and an hundred ladies, and there were but

four ladies of all those that drank clean. Alas, said king Mark, this is a great despite; and sware a great oath that she should be burnt, and the other ladies. Then the barons gathered them together, and said plainly, they would not have those ladies burnt for an horn made by sorcery, that came from as false a sorceress and witch as then was living. For that horn did never good, but caused strife and debate, and always in her days she had been an enemy to all true lovers. So there were many knights made their avow, if ever they met with Morgan le Fay that they would shew her short courtesy. Also Sir Tristram was passing wroth that Sir Lamorak sent that horn unto king Mark, for well he knew that it was done in the despite of him; and therefore he thought to quit Sir Lamorak. Then, always, Sir Tristram used to go to queen Isoud when he might, and ever Sir Andred his cousin watched him night and day, for to take him with La Beale Isoud. And so, upon a day, Sir Andred his cousin espied the hour and the time when Sir Tristram went to his lady. And then Sir Andred gat unto him twelve knights, and he set upon Sir Tristram secretly and suddenly, and there Sir Tristram was taken with La Beale Isoud, and then was he bound hand and foot, and so was he kept until the next day. And then by assent of king Mark, and of Sir Andred, and of some of the barons, Sir Tristram was led unto a chapel which stood upon the sea rocks, there for to take his judgment; and so he was led bound with forty knights. And when Sir Tristram saw there was none other remedy but needs that he must die, then said he, Fair lords, remember what I have done for the country of Cornwall, and in what jeopardy I have been in for the weal of you all. For when I fought for the truage of Cornwall with Sir Marhaus the good knight, I was promised for to be better rewarded, when ye all refused to take the battle; therefore, as ye be good gentle knights, see me not thus shamefully to die, for it is shame to all knighthood thus to see me die. For I dare well say, said Si tram, that I never yet met w knight but I was as good as better. Fie upon thee, said Sir A false traitor that thou art with thy ing, for all thy boast thou shalt d day. O Andred, Andred, said Si tram, thou shouldst be my kinsm now thou art to me full unfriend and there were no more but thou thou wouldst not put me to deatl said Sir Andred, and therewith h his sword and would have slai When Sir Tristram saw him mak countenance, he looked upon b hands that were fast bound unt knights, and suddenly he pulled both to him and unwrast his and then he lept unto his cousi dred and wrested his sword his hands, then he smote Sir A that he fell to the earth, and Tristram fought till he had kill knights. So then Sir Tristram g chapel and kept it mightily. Th cry was great, and the people dre unto Sir Andred, more than an hu When Sir Tristram saw the peopl unto him, he remembered that l naked, and shut fast the chapel and brake the bars of a window, he lept out and fell upon the crags sea. And so at that time Sir Andr none of his fellows might get to that time.

CHAP. XXXV.

How Sir Tristram was holpen by h and of queen Isoud which was p lazar-cote, and how Tristram wa

So when they were departed, G nail and Sir Lambegus, and Sir Ser de Lushon, that were Sir Tristram' sought their master. When they he was escaped, then they were g glad, and on the rocks they foun and with towels they pulled him u then Sir Tristram asked them wh Beale Isoud was, for he wend sl been had away of Andred's peopl said Gouvernail, she is put in a cote. Alas, said Sir Tristram, th full ungoodly place for such a fai

ıay she shall not be long there. e took his men, and went there a Beale Isoud, and fetched her l brought her into a forest to anor, and Sir Tristram there th her. So the good knight ıen go from him,—For at this ay not help you. So they de- save Gouvernail. And so upon Tristram went into the forest port him, and then it happened ell there on sleep. And there an that Sir Tristram afore hand his brother; and when this ound him he shot him through ler with an arrow, and Sir Tris- up and killed that man. And ıean while it was told king w Sir Tristram and La Beale e in that same manor, and as ver he might thither he came y knights to slay Sir Tristram. n he came there he found him l there he took La Beale Isoud h him, and kept her strait that ans never she might wit nor Tristram, nor he unto her. when Sir Tristram came to- old manor, he found the track ıorses, and thereby he wist his gone. And then Sir Tristram ıt sorrow, and endured with ı long time, for the arrow that ırt withall was envenomed. by the means of La Beale told a lady that was cousin ıe Bragwaine, and she came istram, and told him that he be whole by no means,—For La Beale Isoud may not help refore she biddeth you haste nny to king Howel, and there find his daughter Isoud la Mains, and she shall help thee. Tristram and Gouvernail gat ipping, and so sailed into And when king Howel wist vas Sir Tristram he was full im. Sir, he said, I am come country to have help of your for it is told me that there other may heal me but she. ithin a while she healed him.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How Sir Tristram served in war king Howel of Britanny and slew his adversary in the field.

THERE was an earl that hight Grip, and this earl made great war upon the king, and put the king to the worse, and besieged him. And on a time Sir Kehydius, that was son to king Howel, as he issued out he was sore wounded nigh to the death. Then Gouvernail went to the king and said, Sir, I counsel you to desire my lord, Sir Tristram, as in your need to help you. I will do by your counsel, said the king. And so he went unto Sir Tristram and prayed him in his wars for to help him, for my son Sir Kehydius may not go into the field. Sir, said Sir Tristram, I will go to the field, and do what I may. Then Sir Tristram issued out of the town with such fellowship as he might make, and did such deeds that all Britanny spake of him. And then at the last, by great might and force, he slew the earl Grip with his own hands, and more than an hundred knights he slew that day. And then Sir Tristram was received right worshipfully with procession. Then king Howel embraced him in his arms and said, Sir Tristram, all my kingdom I will resign to thee. God defend, said Sir Tristram, for I am beholden unto you for your daughter's sake to do for you. Then by the great means of king Howel and Kehydius his son, by great proffers there grew great love betwixt Isoud and Sir Tristram, for that lady was both good and fair, and a woman of noble blood and fame. And for because that Sir Tristram had such cheer and riches, and all other pleasance that he had, almost he had forsaken La Beale Isoud. And so upon a time Sir Tristram agreed to wed Isoud la Blanche Mains. And at the last they were wedded, and solemnly held their marriage.

And in the mean while there was a knight in Britanny, his name was Suppinabiles, and he came over the sea into England, and then he came unto

the court of king Arthur, and there he met with Sir Launcelot du Lake, and told him of the marriage of Sir Tristram. Then said Sir Launcelot, Fie upon him, untrue knight to his lady; that so noble a knight as Sir Tristram is, should be found to his first lady false, La Beale Isoud, queen of Cornwall. But say ye him this, said Sir Launcelot, that of all knights in the world I loved him most, and had most joy of him, and all was for his noble deeds; and let him wit the love between him and me is done for ever, and that I give him warning from this day forth as his mortal enemy.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Suppinabiles told Sir Tristram how he was defamed in the court of king Arthur, and of Sir Lamorak.

THEN departed Sir Suppinabiles unto Britanny again, and there he found Sir Tristram, and told him that he had been in king Arthur's court. Then said Sir Tristram, Heard ye any thing of me? Truly, said Sir Suppinabiles, there I heard Sir Launcelot speak of you great shame, and that ye be a false knight to your lady, and he bad me to do you to wit that he will be your mortal enemy in every place where he may meet you. That me repenteth, said Tristram, for of all knights I loved to be in his fellowship. So Sir Tristram made great moan, and was ashamed that noble knights should defame him for the sake of his lady. And in this mean while La Beale Isoud made a letter unto queen Guenever, complaining her of the untruth of Sir Tristram, and how he had wedded the king's daughter of Britanny. Queen Guenever sent her another letter, and bad her be of good cheer, for she should have joy after sorrow, for Sir Tristram was so noble a knight called, that by crafts of sorcery ladies would make such noble men to wed them, but in the end, queen Guenever said, it shall be thus, that he shall hate her, and love you better than ever he did tofore.

So leave we Sir Tristram in Britanny, and speak we of Sir Lamorak d that as he sailed his ship fell on and perished all, save Sir L and his squire, and there he mightily, and fishers of the Isle vage took him up, and his squ drowned, and the shipmen ha labour to save Sir Lamorak's all the comfort that they could d the lord of that isle hight Sir N Noire, a great mighty giant. A Sir Nabon hateth all the knights Arthur, and in no wise he wo them favor. And these fishers t Lamorak all the guise of Sir how there came never knight Arthur's but he destroyed him. the last battle that he did was s Nanowne le Petite, the which he a shameful death in despite o Arthur, for he was drawn liml That forthinketh me, said Sir rak, for that knight's death, for my cousin. And if I were at mi as well as ever I was, I would his death. Peace, said the fishe make here no words, for, or ye from hence, Sir Nabon must kn ye have been here, or else we die for your sake. So that I be said Lamorak, of my disease have taken in the sea, I will that him that I am a knight of king A for I was never afeard to de lord.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How Sir Tristram and his wife ar Wales, and how he met there Lamorak.

Now turn we unto Sir Tristra upon a day he took a little bar his wife Isoud la Blanch Main Sir Kehydius her brother, to pla in the coasts. And when the from the land, there was a win them into the coast of Wales up Isle of Servage, where as was Sir rak, and there the barge all and there dame Isoud was hurt, well as they might they gat i forest, and there by a well he s warides and a damsel. And the

ther. Sir, said Segwarides, I
a for Sir Tristram de Liones,
in the world that I have the
se to hate, because ye departed
between me and my wife; but
t, said Segwarides, I will never
oble knight for a light lady,
fore I pray you be my friend,
l be yours unto my power, for
ell ye are hard bested in this
d we shall have enough to do
us to succour other. And then
arides brought Sir Tristram
dy thereby that was born in
, and she told him all the
that valley, and how there
er knight there but he were
isoner or slain. Wit you well
said Sir Tristram, that I slew
aus, and delivered Cornwall
truage of Ireland, and I am he
ered the king of Ireland from
or de Ganis, and I am he that
Palamides, and wit ye well, I
ristram de Liones, that by the
God shall deliver this woful
ervage. So Sir Tristram was
d; then one told him there
ight of king Arthur's that was
on the rocks. What is his
id Sir Tristram. We wot not,
fishers, but he keepeth it no
ut that he is a knight of king
and by the mighty lord of this
etteth nought by. I pray you,
Tristram, and ye may bring
er that I may see him; and if
y of the knights of Arthur's I
w him. Then the lady prayed
rs to bring him to her place.
he morrow they brought him
n a fisher's raiment. And as
Sir Tristram saw him he smiled
n and knew him well, but he
t Sir Tristram. Fair knight,
Tristram, me seemeth by your
have been diseased but late,
me thinketh I should know you
e. I will well, said Sir Lamo-
t ye have seen me and met
. Fair sir, said Sir Tristram,
your name. Upon a covenant
ll you, said Sir Lamorak, that is, that ye will tell me whether ye be lord of this island or no, that is called Nabon le Noire. For sooth, said Sir Tristram, I am not he, nor I hold not of him, I am his foe as well ye be, and so shall I be found or I depart out of this isle. Well, said Sir Lamorak, since ye have said so largely unto me, my name is Sir Lamorak de Galis, son unto king Pellinore. For sooth, I trow well, said Sir Tristram, for, and ye said other, I know the contrary. What are ye, said Sir Lamorak, that knoweth me? I am Sir Tristram de Liones. Ah, sir, remember ye not of the fall ye did give me once, and after ye refused me to fight on foot. That was not for fear I had of you, said Sir Tristram, but me shamed at that time to have more ado with you, for me seemed ye had enough; but, Sir Lamorak, for my kindness many ladies ye put to a reproof, when ye sent the horn from Morgan le Fay to king Mark, where as ye did this in despite of me. Well, said he, and it were to do again, so would I do, for I had lever strife and debate fell in king Mark's court rather than Arthur's court, for the honour of both courts be not alike. As to that, said Sir Tristram, I know well. But that that was done, it was for despite of me, but all your malice hurt not greatly. Therefore, said Sir Tristram, ye shall leave all your malice and so will I, and let us assay how we may win worship between you and me upon this giant Sir Nabon le Noire, that is lord of this island, to destroy him. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, now I understand your knighthood, it may not be false that all men say, for of your bounty, nobless, and worship, of all knights ye are peerless; and for courtesy and gentleness I shewed you ungentleness, and that now me repenteth.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Nabon and overcame him, and made Sir Lamorak lord of the isle.

In the mean time came word that Sir Nabon had made a cry that all the

people of that isle should be at his castle the fifth day after. And the same day the son of Nabon should be made knight, and all the knights of that valley and thereabout should be there to just, and all those of the realm of Logris should be there to just with them of North Wales; and thither came five hundred knights, and they of the country brought there Sir Lamorak, and Sir Tristram, and Sir Kehydius, and Sir Segwarides, for they durst none otherwise do. And then Sir Nabon lent Sir Lamorak horse and armour at Sir Lamorak's desire, and Sir Lamorak justed and did such deeds of arms that Nabon and all the people said there was never knight that ever they saw do such deeds of arms. For, as the French book saith, he forjusted all that were there, for the most part of five hundred knights, that none abode him in his saddle. Then Sir Nabon proffered to play with him his play:—For I saw never no knight do so much upon a day. I will well, said Sir Lamorak, play as I may, but I am weary and sore bruised: and there either gat a spear, but Nabon would not encounter with Sir Lamorak, but smote his horse in the forehead and so slew him, and then Sir Lamorak went on foot and turned his shield and drew his sword, and there began strong battle on foot. But Sir Lamorak was so sore bruised and short breathed, that he traced and traversed somewhat aback. Fair fellow, said Sir Nabon, hold thy hand, and I shall shew thee more courtesy than ever I shewed knight, because I have seen this day thy noble knighthood. And therefore stand thou by, and I will wit whether any of thy fellows will have ado with me. Then when Sir Tristram heard that, he stept forth and said, Nabon, lend me horse and sure armour, and I will have ado with thee. Well fellow, said Sir Nabon, go thou to yonder pavilion, and arm thee of the best thou findest there, and I shall play a marvellous play with thee. Then, said Sir Tristram, look ye play well, or else peradventure I shall learn you a new play. That is well said, fell Sir Nabon. So when Sir Trist armed as him liked best, a shielded and sworded, he dr him on foot, for well he knew Nabon would not abide a stro a spear, therefore he would knights' horses. Now fair fell Sir Nabon, let us play. So th fought long on foot, tracing versing, smiting and foining lo out any rest. At the last Sir prayed him to tell him his na Nabon, I tell thee my name is tram de Liones, a knight of C under king Mark. Thou art said Sir Nabon, for of all k have most desired to fight with with Sir Launcelot. So then th eagerly together, and Sir Tristr Sir Nabon, and so forthwith he his son and strake off his head then all the country said they hold of Sir Tristram. Nay, Tristram, I will not so: here is shipful knight Sir Lamorak d that for me he shall be lord country, for he hath done her deeds of arms. Nay, said Sir rak, I will not be lord of this for I have not deserved it as wel therefore give ye it where ye wi will none have. Well, said Si tram, since ye nor I will not hav us give it to him that hath not deserved it. Do as ye list, s Lamorak, for the gift is yours will none have and I had dese So it was given to Segwarides, fore he thanked him, and so lord, and worshipfully he did go And then Sir Segwarides deliv prisoners, and set good govern that valley; and so he return Cornwall, and told king Mark Beale Isoud how Sir Tristram vanced him to the Isle of Serva there he proclaimed in all Corn all the adventures of these two so was it openly known. But f was La Beale Isoud when sh tell that Sir Tristram was we Isoud La Blanche Mains.

CHAP. XL.

Lamorak departed from Sir n, and how he met with Sir nd after with Sir Launcelot.

ı we unto Sir Lamorak, that ard Arthur's court; and Sir and his wife and Kehydius ssel and sailed into Britanny ; Howel, where he was wel- ınd when he heard of these s they marvelled of his noble low turn we unto Sir Lamo- when he was departed from am, he rode out of the forest me to an hermitage. When t saw him he asked him from e came. Sir, said Sir Lamo- ıe from this valley. Sir, said t, thereof I greatly marvel, for ıty winter I saw never no ıss this country but he was n or villainously wounded, or a poor prisoner. Those ill said Sir Lamorak, are for- Sir Tristram slew your lord ı, and his son. Then was the ad, and all his brethren, for here was never such a tyrant hristian men,—and therefore, ermit, this valley and franchise ıold of Sir Tristram. So on ow Sir Lamorak departed. ıe rode he saw four knights ınst one, and that one knight him well, but at the last the ıts had him down. And then ırak went betwixt them, and m why they would slay that ht, and said it was shame ıst one. Thou shalt well wit, four knights, that he is false. your tale, said Sir Lamorak, I hear him also speak I will e say. Then said Lamorak, ıt, can ye not excuse you but e a false knight? Sir, said he, excuse me both with my words my hands, that I will make n one of the best of them, my ıis body. Then spake they all We will not jeopard our bodies e; but wit thou well, they said, and king Arthur were here himself, it should not lie in his power to save his life. That is too much said, said Sir Lamorak, but many speak behind a man more than they will say to his face. And because of your words, ye shall understand that I am one of the simplest of king Arthur's court: in the worship of my lord now do your best, and in despite of you I shall rescue him. And then they lashed all at once to Sir Lamorak; but anon at two strokes Sir Lamorak had slain two of them, and then the other two fled. So then Sir Lamorak turned again to that knight and asked him his name. Sir, he said, my name is Sir Frol of the Out Isles. Then he rode with Sir Lamorak and bare him company; and as they rode by the way they saw a seemly knight riding against them, and all in white. Ah, said Frol, yonder knight justed late with me, and smote me down, therefore I will just with him. Ye shall not do so, said Sir Lamorak, by my counsel, and ye will tell me your quarrel, whether ye justed at his request, or he at yours. Nay, said Sir Frol, I justed with him at my request. Sir, said Lamorak, then will I counsel you deal no more with him, for me seemeth by his countenance he should be a noble knight and no jester, for me thinketh he should be of the Table Round. Therefore I will not spare, said Sir Frol; and then he cried and said, Sir knight, make thee ready to just. That needeth not, said the knight, for I have no lust to just with thee. But yet they feutred their spears, and the white knight overthrew Sir Frol, and then he rode his way a soft pace. Then Sir Lamorak rode after him, and prayed him to tell him his name, For me seemeth ye should be of the fellowship of the Round Table. Upon a covenant, said he, I will tell you my name, so that ye will not discover my name, and also that ye will tell me yours. Then, said he, my name is Sir Lamorak de Galis. And my name is Sir Launcelot du Lake. Then they put up their swords, and kissed heartily together, and either made great joy of

other. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, and it please you I will do you service. God defend, said Sir Launcelot, that any of so noble blood as ye be should do me service. Then he said more, I am in a quest that I must do myself alone. Now God speed you, said Sir Lamorak, and so they departed. Then Sir Lamorak came to Sir Frol and horsed him again. What knight is that? said Sir Frol. Sir, said he, it is not for you to know, nor it is no point of my charge. Ye are the more uncourteous, said Sir Frol, and therefore I will depart from you. Ye may do as ye list, said Sir Lamorak, and yet by my company you have saved the fairest flower of your garland. So they departed.

CHAP. XLI.

How Sir Lamorak slew Sir Frol, and of the courteous fighting with Sir Belliance his brother.

THEN within two or three days Sir Lamorak found a knight at a well sleeping, and his lady sat with him and waked. Right so came Sir Gawaine and took the knight's lady, and set her up behind his squire. So Sir Lamorak rode after Sir Gawaine, and said, Sir Gawaine, turn again. And then said Sir Gawaine, What will ye do with me? for I am nephew to king Arthur. Sir, said he, for that cause I will spare you, else that lady should abide with me, or else ye should just with me. Then Sir Gawaine turned him and ran to him that owned the lady with his spear. But the knight with pure might smote down Sir Gawaine, and took his lady with him. All this Sir Lamorak saw, and said to himself, But I revenge my fellow, he will say of me dishonour in king Arthur's court. Then Sir Lamorak returned and proffered that knight to just. Sir, said he, I am ready. And so they came together with all their might, and there Sir Lamorak smote the knight through both sides, that he fell to the earth dead. Then the lady rode to that knight's brother that hight Sir Belliance le Orgulous, that dwelled fast thereby, and then she told hi his brother was slain. Alas, sai will be revenged. And so hors and armed him, and within a w overtook Sir Lamorak, and ba Turn, and leave that lady, for th I must play a new play, for the slain my brother Sir Frol, that better knight than ever were th might well be, said Sir Lamor this day in the field I was found t ter. So they rode together, and u other, and turned their shields an their swords, and fought migh noble knights proved by the sp two hours. So then Sir B prayed him to tell his name. S he, my name is Sir Lamorak de Ah, said Sir Belliance, thou art t in the world that I most hate slew my sons for thy sake, w saved thy life, and now thou ha my brother Sir Frol. Alas, how I be accorded with thee? theref fend thee, for thou shalt die: t none other remedy. Alas, said S morak, full well me ought to you, for ye are the man that mos done for me. And therewithal S morak kneeled down and besoug of grace. Arise, said Sir Bellia else there as thou kneelest I sha thee. That shall not need, sa Lamorak, for I will yield me you, not for fear of you, nor fo strength, but your goodness mak full loth to have ado with you; fore I require you, for God's sak for the honour of knighthood, f me all that I have offended unt Alas, said Belliance, leave thy kn or else I shall slay thee without Then they went again unto and either wounded other, that ground was bloody there as they f And at the last Belliance withdre aback and set him down softly u little hill, for he was so faint for ing that he might not stand. Sir Lamorak threw his shield up back, and asked him, What cheer? said Sir Belliance. Ah sir, yet shew you favour in your mal-eas

, Sir Belliance said, Sir Lamorak rt a fool, for and I had thee at dvantage as thou hast done me I slay thee, but thy gentleness is ɔd and large that I must needs : thee mine evil will. And then ımorak kneeled down and unfirst his umberere, and then his And then either kissed other with weeping tears. Then Sir Lamorak led Sir Belliance to an abbey fast by, and there Sir Lamorak would not depart from Belliance till he was whole. And then they swore together that none of them should never fight against other. So Sir Lamorak departed and went to the court of king Arthur.

Ieue we of sire Lamorak and of sir Tristram. And here begynneth the historye of La cote male tayle.

The Ninth Book.

CHAP. I.

young man came into the court of Arthur, and how Sir Kay called in scorn La Cote Male Taile.

the court of king Arthur there young man and bigly made, and richly beseen, and he desired to de knight of the king, but his ɜarment sat overthwartly, howwas rich cloth of gold. What is ıame? said king Arthur. Sir, :, my name is Breunor le Noire, ithin short space ye shall know am of good kin. It may well be, r Kay the seneschal, but in mock: shall be called La Cote Male that is as much as to say, the evil- coat. It is a great thing that ıkest, said the king; and for what wearest thou that rich coat? tell ɔr I can well think for some cause Sir, said he, I had a father a noble , and as he rode on hunting, upon t happed him to lay him down to And there came a knight that ɔen long his enemy. And when r he was fast on sleep, he all to- him; and this same coat had my on the same time, and that maketh at to sit so evil upon me, for the ; be on it as I found it, and never shall be amended for me. Thus to have my father's death in remembrance I wear this coat till I be revenged; and because ye are called the most noblest king in the world I come to you that ye should make me knight. Sir, said Sir Lamorak and Sir Gaheris, it were well done to make him knight, for him beseemeth well of person and of countenance, that he shall prove a good man, and a good knight and a mighty; for Sir, and ye be remembered, even such one was Sir Launcelot du Lake when he came first into this court, and full few of us knew from whence he came, and now he is proved the most man of worship in the world, and all your court and all your Round Table is by Sir Launcelot worshipped and amended more than by any knight now living. That is truth, said the king, and tomorrow at your request I shall make him knight. So on the morrow there was an hart found, and thither rode king Arthur with a company of his knights to slay the hart. And this young man that Sir Kay named La Cote Male Taile was there left behind with queen Guenever, and by sudden adventure there was an horrible lion kept in a strong tower of stone, and it happened that he at that time brake loose,

and came hurling afore the queen and her knights. And when the queen saw the lion, she cried, and fled, and prayed her knights to rescue her. And there was none of them all but twelve that abode, and all the other fled. Then said La Cote Male Taile, Now I see well that all coward knights be not dead: and therewithal he drew his sword and dressed him afore the lion. And that lion gaped wide, and came upon him ramping to have slain him. And he then smote him in the midst of the head such a mighty stroke that it clave his head in sunder, and dashed to the earth. Then was it told the queen how that the young man that Sir Kay named by scorn La Cote Male Taile had slain the lion. With that the king came home. And when the queen told him of that adventure he was well pleased, and said, Upon pain of mine head he shall prove a noble man, and a faithful knight, and true of his promise. Then the king forthwithal made him knight. Now Sir, said this young knight, I require you and all the knights of your court, that ye call me by none other name but La Cote Male Taile; insomuch as Sir Kay so hath named me, so will I be called. I assent me well thereto, said the king.

CHAP. II.

How a damsel came unto the court and desired a knight to take on him an inquest, which La Cote Male Taile emprized.

THEN that same day there came a damsel into the king's court, and she brought with her a great black shield, with a white hand in the midst holding a sword. Other picture was there none in that shield. When king Arthur saw her, he asked her from whence she came, and what she would. Sir, she said, I have ridden long and many a day with this shield many ways, and for this cause I am come to your court:—There was a good knight that owned this shield, and this knight had undertaken a great deed of arms to achieve it, and so it misfortuned him another strong knight met with him by sudden adventu there they fought long, and wounded other passing sore, an were so weary that they left that even hand. So this knight that this shield saw none other w he must die; and then he comm me to bear this shield to the c king Arthur, he requiring and p some good knight to take this and that he would fulfil the that he was in. Now what say this quest? said king Arthur. I any of you here that will take up to weld this shield? Then was th one that would speak one word. Sir Kay took the shield in his han knight, said the damsel, what i name? Wit ye well, said he, my is Sir Kay the seneschal, that where is known. Sir, said that d lay down that shield, for wit ye falleth not for you, for he must better knight than ye that shal this shield. Damsel, said Sir K ye well I took this shield in my by your leave for to behold it, that intent, but go wheresoeve wilt, for I will not go with you. the damsel stood still a great and beheld many of those k Then spake the knight La Cot Taile, Fair damsel, I will tal shield and that adventure upon n wist I should know whither w journey might be, for because I w day made knight I would take t venture upon me. What is you fair young man? said the dams name is, said he, La Cote Male Well mayest thou be called so, s damsel, the knight with the evil- coat, but and thou be so hardy upon thee to bear that shield follow me, wit thou well thy ski be as well hewn as thy coat. that, said La Cote Male Taile, am so hewn I will ask you no heal me withal. And forthwith came into the court two squir brought him great horses and mour and his spears, and anon armed, and took his leave. I wo

aid the king, that ye took
.t hard adventure. Sir, said
ıture is mine, and the first
ok upon me, and that will
tsoever come of me. Then
eparted, and La Cote Male
d first after. And within a
ertook the damsel. And
issaid him in the foullest

CHAP. III.

Male Taile overthrew Sir e king's fool, and of the re- bad of the damsel.

Kay ordained Sir Dagonet, s fool, to follow after La aile, and there Sir Kay or- ir Dagonet was horsed and bad him follow La Cote nd proffer him to just, and nd when he saw La Cote e cried and bad him make just. So Sir La Cote Male Sir Dagonet over his horse ı the damsel mocked La Taile, and said, Fie for art thou shamed in Ar- when they send a fool to ith thee, and specially at . Thus she rode long and within a while there came the good knight, and there h La Cote Male Taile, and oberis smote him so sore ınd all fell to the earth. ote Male Taile arose up ressed his shield and drew d would have done battle to , for he was wood wroth. leoberis de Ganis, as at this ıot fight upon foot. Then Maledisant rebuked him in nanner, and bad him, turn d. Ah damsel, he said, I mercy to missay me no rief is enough though ye more. I call myself never night when a mare's son nd also I count me never ight for a fall of Sir Bleo- us he rode with her two y fortune there came Sir Palamides and encountered with him, and he in the same wise served him as did Bleoberis toforehand. What dost thou here in my fellowship, said the damsel Maledisant, thou canst not sit no knight nor withstand him one buffet, but if it were Sir Dagonet. Ah fair damsel, I am not the worse to take a fall of Sir Palamides, and yet great disworship have I none, for neither Bleoberis nor yet Palamides would not fight with me on foot. As for that, said the damsel, wit thou well they have disdain and scorn to light off their horses to fight with such a mean knight as thou art. So in the meanwhile there came Sir Mordred, Sir Gawaine's brother, and so he fell in the fellowship with the damsel Maledisant. And then they came afore the castle Orgulous, and there was such a custom that there might no knight come by that castle but either he must just or be prisoner, or at the least to lose his horse and his harness. And there came out two knights against them, and Sir Mordred justed with the foremost, and that knight of the castle smote Sir Mordred down off his horse. And then anon La Cote Male Taile justed with that other, and either of them smote other down, horse and all to the earth. And when they avoided their horses, then either of them took other's horses. And then La Cote Male Taile rode into that knight that smote down Sir Mordred, and justed with him; and there Sir La Cote Male Taile hurt and wounded him passing sore, and put him from his horse as he had been dead. So he turned unto him that met him afore, and he took the flight toward the castle, and Sir La Cote Male Taile rode after him into the castle Orgulous, and there La Cote Male Taile slew him.

CHAP. IV.

How La Cote Male Taile fought against an hundred knights, and how he escaped by the mean of a lady.

And anon there came an hundred knights about him and assailed him; and when he saw his horse should be

slain he alight and voided his horse, and put the bridle under his feet, and so put him out of the gate. And when he had so done, he hurled in among them, and dressed his back unto a lady's chamber-wall, thinking himself that he had lever die there with worship than to abide the rebukes of the damsel Maledisant. And in the mean time as he stood and fought, that lady whose was the chamber, went out slily at her postern, and without the gates she found La Cote Male Taile's horse, and lightly she gat him by the bridle and tied him to the postern. And then she went unto her chamber slily again for to behold how that one knight fought against an hundred knights. And so when she had beheld him long, she went to a window behind his back and said, Thou knight thou fightest wonderly well, but for all that at the last thou must needs die, but and thou canst through thy mighty prowess win unto yonder postern, for there have I fastened thy horse to abide thee; but wit thou well thou must think on thy worship and think not to die, for thou mayest not win unto that postern without thou do nobly and mightily. When La Cote Male Taile heard her say so, he griped his sword in his hands, and put his shield fair afore him, and through the thickest press he thrulled through them. And when he came to the postern he found there ready four knights, and at two the first strokes he slew two of the knights, and the other fled, and so he won his horse and rode from them. And all as it was, it was rehearsed in king Arthur's court, how he slew twelve knights within the castle Orgulous. And so he rode on his way. And in the mean while the damsel said to Sir Mordred, I ween my foolish knight be either slain or taken prisoner. Then were they ware where he came riding. And when he was come unto them, he told all how he had sped, and escaped in despite of them all, and some of the best of them will tell no tales. Thou liest falsely, said the damsel, that dare I make good, but as a fool and a dastard to all knighthood they have let thee pass. That may ye prove, said La Cote Male Taile. With that she sent a courier of hers that rode alway with her, for to know the truth of this deed. And so he rode thither lightly, and asked how and in what manner that Sir La Cote Male Taile was escaped out of the castle. Then all the knights cursed him and said that he was fiend and no man; for he hath slain here twelve of our best knights, and we wend unto this day that it had been too much for Sir Launcelot du Lake, or for Sir Tristram de Liones. And in despite of us all he is departed from us, and maugre our heads.

With this answer the courier departed, and came to Maledisant his lady, and told her all how Sir La Cote Male Taile had sped at the castle Orgulous. Then she smote down her head, and said little. By my head, said Sir Mordred to the damsel, ye are greatly to blame so to rebuke him, for I warn you plainly he is a good knight, and I doubt not but he shall prove a noble knight, but as yet he may not sit sure on horseback: for he that shall be a good horseman it must come of usage and exercise. But when he cometh to the strokes of his sword he is then noble and mighty, and that saw Sir Bleoberis and Sir Palamides, for wit ye well they are wily men of arms, and anon they know when they see a young knight by his riding, how they are sure to give him a fall from his horse or a great buffet. But for the most part they will not light on foot with young knights, for they are wight and strongly armed. For in likewise Sir Launcelot du Lake when he was first made knight he was often put to the worse upon horseback, but ever upon foot he recovered his renown, and slew and defoiled many knights of the Round Table. And therefore the rebukes that Sir Launcelot did to many knights causeth them that be men of prowess to beware, for often I have seen the old proved knights rebuked and slain by them that were but young beginners. Thus they rode sure talking by the way together.

ve we off a while of this tale, we of Sir Launcelot du Lake.

CHAP. V.

ıncelot came to the court and La Cote Male Taile, and bow ed after him, and bow La Cote le was prisoner.

ıen he was come to the court rthur, then heard he tell of knight La Cote Male Taile, w the lion, and how he took the adventure of the black which was named at that hardiest adventure of the uly, said Sir Launcelot unto s fellows, it was shame to all nights to suffer such a young take such adventure upon s destruction: for I will that id Sir Launcelot, that that aledisant hath borne that ıy a day for to seek the d knights, and that was she se Sance Pité took that ı her, and after Tristram de cued that shield from him it to the damsel again. A e that time Sir Tristram ı my nephew Sir Blamor de quarrel that was betwixt the land and him. Then many ere sorry that Sir La Cote e was gone forth to that Truly, said Sir Launcelot, I ride after him. And with- ays Sir Launcelot overtook Male Taile. And then he n and the damsel Maledi- l when Sir Mordred saw lot then he left their fellow- l so Sir Launcelot rode with day, and ever that damsel ı Cote Male Taile, and then lot answered for him; then and rebuked Sir Launcelot. ın time Sir Tristram sent by ı letter unto Sir Launcelot im of the wedding of Isoud Mains, and passing cour- l gently Sir Tristram wrote Launcelot, ever beseeching is good friend, and unto La Beale Isoud of Cornwall, and that Sir Launcelot would excuse him if that ever he saw her. And within short time said Sir Tristram that he would speak with La Beale Isoud and with him right hastily. Then Sir Launcelot departed from the damsel and from Sir La Cote Male Taile, for to oversee that letter, and for to write another letter unto Sir Tristram de Liones. And in the mean while La Cote Male Taile rode with the damsel until they came unto a castle that hight Pendragon, and there were six knights stood afore him, and one of them proffered to just with La Cote Male Taile. And there La Cote Male Taile smote him over his horse croup. And then the five knights set upon him all at once with their spears, and there they smote La Cote Male Taile down, horse and man, and then they alight suddenly, and set their hands upon him all at once and took him prisoner, and so led him unto the castle and kept him as prisoner. And on the morn Sir Launcelot arose and delivered the damsel with letters unto Sir Tristram, and then he took his way after La Cote Male Taile, and by the way upon a bridge there was a knight proffered Sir Launcelot to just, and Sir Launcelot smote him down, and then they fought upon foot a noble battle together, and a mighty. And at the last Sir Launcelot smote him down groveling upon his hands and his knees; and then that knight yielded him, and Sir Launcelot received him fair. Sir, said the knight, I require thee tell me your name, for much my heart giveth unto you. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, as at this time I will not tell you my name, unless then that ye tell me your name. Certainly, said the knight, my name is Sir Nerovens, that was made knight of my lord Sir Launcelot du Lake. Ah, Nerovens de Lile, said Sir Launcelot, I am right glad that ye are proved a good knight, for now wit ye well my name is Sir Launcelot du Lake. Alas, said Nerovens de Lile, what have I done. And therewithall flatling he fell to his feet, and would have

kissed them, but Sir Launcelot would not let him; and then either made great joy of other. And then Sir Nerovens told Sir Launcelot that he should not go by the castle of Pendragon, For there is a lord, a mighty knight, and many knights with him, and this night I heard say that they took a knight prisoner yesterday that rode with a damsel, and they say he is a knight of the Round Table.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot fought with six knights, and after with Sir Brian, and how he delivered the prisoners.

Ah, said Sir Launcelot, that knight is my fellow, and him shall I rescue, or else I shall lose my life therefore. And therewithal he rode fast till he came before the castle of Pendragon, and anon therewithal there came six knights, and all made them ready to set upon Sir Launcelot at once. Then Sir Launcelot feutred his spear, and smote the foremost that he brake his back in sunder, and three of them hit and three failed. And then Sir Launcelot past through them, and lightly he turned in again, and smote another knight through the breast and throughout the back, and more than an ell, and therewithal his spear brake. So then all the remnant of the four knights drew their swords, and lashed at Sir Launcelot, and at every stroke Sir Launcelot bestowed so his strokes that at four strokes sundry they avoided their saddles, passing sore wounded, and forthwithal he rode hurling into that castle. And, anon the lord of the castle that was that time called Sir Brian de les isles, the which was a noble man, and a great enemy unto king Arthur, within awhile he was armed and upon horseback: and then they feutred their spears, and hurled together so strongly that both their horses rashed to the earth. And then they avoided their saddles, and dressed their shields, and drew their swords, and flung together as wood men, and there were many strokes given in a while. At the last Sir Launcelot gave to Sir Brian such a buffet kneeled upon his knees, and Launcelot rashed upon him, a great force he pulled him off h and when Sir Brian saw that h be slain, he yielded him, and pu his mercy and in his grace. Launcelot made him to delive prisoners that he had within h and therein Sir Launcelot foun thur's knights thirty, and fort and so he delivered them and rode his way. And anon as Male Taile was delivered he horse and his harness, and his Maledisant. The mean while rovens, that Sir Launcelot had withall afore at the bridge, h damsel after Sir Launcelot fo how he sped at the castle of Pe And then they within the cas velled what knight he was w Brian and his knights delivered prisoners. Have ye no marvel, damsel, for the best knight in th was here, and did this tourney, ye well, she said, it was Sir La Then was Sir Brian full glad, was his lady and all his knig such a man should win then when the damsel and La Co Taile understood that it was S celot du Lake that had ridd them in fellowship, and that membered her how she had him and called him coward, t she passing heavy.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Launcelot met with th named Maledisant, and bow l ber the damsel Bienpensant.

So then they took their ho rode forth a pace after Sir L And within two mile they overt and saluted him, and thanked the damsel cried Sir Launcelot her evil deed, and saying, Fo know the flower of all knigh parted even between Sir Trist you. For I have sought you Sir Launcelot, and Sir Tristra

thank God I have met with
ɔnce at Camelot, I met with
n, and there he rescued this
d with the white hand hold-
ɛd sword, which Sir Breuse
had taken away from me.
damsel, said Sir Launcelot,
ou my name? Sir, said she,
a damsel from a knight that
vithall at the bridge, and she
ur name was Sir Launcelot
Blame have she then, said
lot, but her lord Sir Nero-
told her. But damsel, said
lot, upon this covenant I will
ɔu, so that ye will not rebuke
Sir La Cote Male Taile no
he is a good knight, and I
ıe shall prove a noble knight,
sake, and pity that he should
ɜtroyed, I followed him to
n in this great need. Ah,
you, said the damsel, for
say unto you and to him
uked him never for no hate
l him, but for great love that
m: for ever I supposed that
n too young and too tender
ın him these adventures, and,
ɔy my will I would have
away for jealousy that I
life; for it may be no young
ɛed that shall achieve this
ɔ the end. Perdy, said Sir
it is well said, and where ye
the damsel Maledisant, I
ɔu the damsel Bienpensant.
ɛy rode forth a great while
came to the border of the
Surluse, and there they found
e with a strong bridge like a
And when Sir Launcelot and
at the bridge, there start
them of gentlemen and yeo-
that said, Fair lords, ye may
his bridge and this fortress
that black shield that I see
ı bear, and therefore there
ass but one of you at once;
ɔhoose which of you shall
in this bridge first. Then
lot proffered himself first to
n this bridge. Sir, said La Cote Male Taile, I beseech you let me enter first within this fortress, and if I may speed well I will send for you, and if it happen that I be slain, there it goeth. And if so be that I am a prisoner taken, then may ye rescue me. I am loth, said Sir Launcelot, to let you pass this passage. Sir, said La Cote Male Taile, I pray you let me put my body in this adventure. Now go your way, said Sir Launcelot, and Jesu be your speed. So he entered, and anon there met with him two brethren, the one hight Sir Plaine de Force, and the other hight Sir Plaine de Amours; and anon they met with Sir La Cote Male Taile, and first La Cote Male Taile smote down Sir Plaine de Force, and soon after he smote down Plaine de Amours, and then they dressed them to their shields and swords, and bad La Cote Male Taile alight, and so he did, and there was dashing and foining with swords, and so they began to assail full hard La Cote Male Taile, and many great wounds they gave him upon his head and upon his breast and upon his shoulders. And as he might ever among he gave sad strokes again. And then the two brethren traced and traversed for to be of both hands of Sir La Cote Male Taile, but he by fine force and knightly prowess gat them afore him. And then when he felt himself so wounded then he doubled his strokes and gave them so many wounds that he felled them to the earth, and would have slain them had they not yielded them. And right so Sir La Cote Male Taile took the best horse that there was of them three, and so rode forth his way to the other fortress and bridge, and there he met with the third brother, whose name was Sir Plenorius, a full noble knight, and there they justed together, and either smote other down horse and man to the earth. And then they avoided their horses, and dressed their shields, and drew their swords, and gave many sad strokes, and one while the one knight was afore on the bridge, and another while the other. And thus they fought two hours and more, and

never rested, and ever Sir Launcelot and the damsel beheld them. Alas, said the damsel, my knight fighteth passing sore and over long. Now may ye see, said Sir Launcelot, that he is a noble knight, for to consider his first battle, and his grievous wounds. And even forth with all so wounded as he is, it is great marvel that he may endure this long battle with that good knight.

CHAP. VIII.

How La Cote Male Taile was taken prisoner, and after rescued by Sir Launcelot, and how Sir Launcelot overcame four brethren.

THIS mean while Sir La Cote Male Taile sank right down upon the earth, what for-wounded and what for-bled he might not stand. Then the other knight had pity of him, and said, Fair young knight, dismay you not, for had ye been fresh when ye met with me, as I was, I well wot that I should not have endured so long as ye have done, and therefore for your noble deeds of arms I shall shew to you kindness and gentleness in all that I may. And forth withal this noble knight Sir Plenorius took him up in his arms, and led him into his tower. And then he commanded him the wine, and made to search him, and to stop his bleeding wounds. Sir, said La Cote Male Taile, withdraw you from me, and hie you to yonder bridge again, for there will meet you another manner knight than ever I was. Why, said Sir Plenorius, is there another manner knight behind of your fellowship? Yea, said La Cote Male Taile, there is a much better knight than I am. What is his name? said Plenorius. Ye shall not know for me, said La Cote Male Taile. Well, said the knight, he shall be encountered withal, whatsoever he be. Then Sir Plenorius heard a knight call that said, Sir Plenorius, where art thou? either thou must deliver me the prisoner that thou hast led unto thy tower, or else come and do battle with me. Then Sir Plenorius gat his horse, and came with a spear in his hand, galloping towards Sir Launcelot, and then they began to feutre their spears, and came together as thunder, and smote either other so mightily that their horses fell down under them. And then they avoided their horses, and pulled out their swords, and like two bulls they lashed together with great strokes and foins, but ever Sir Launcelot recovered ground upon him, and Sir Plenorius traced to have gone about him. But Sir Launcelot would not suffer that, but bare him backer and backer till he came nigh his tower gate. And then said Sir Launcelot, I know thee well for a good knight, but wit thou well thy life and death is in my hand, and therefore yield thee to me, and thy prisoner. The other answered no word, but strake mightily upon Sir Launcelot's helm, that fire sprang out of his eyen; then Sir Launcelot doubled his strokes so thick, and smote at him so mightily, that he made him kneel upon his knees, and therewith Sir Launcelot lept upon him and pulled him groveling down. Then Sir Plenorius yielded him, and his tower, and all his prisoners, at his will. And then Sir Launcelot received him, and took his troth, and then he rode to the other bridge, and there Sir Launcelot justed with other three of his brethren, the one hight Pillounes, and the other hight Pellogris, and the third Sir Pellandris. And first upon horseback Sir Launcelot smote them down, and afterward he beat them on foot, and made them to yield them unto him, and then he returned unto Sir Plenorius, and there he found in his prison king Carados of Scotland and many other knights, and all they were delivered. And then Sir La Cote Male Taile came to Sir Launcelot, and then Sir Launcelot would have given him all these fortresses and these bridges. Nay, said La Cote Male Taile, I will not have Sir Plenorius's livelihood: with that he will grant you, my lord Sir Launcelot, to come unto king Arthur's court, and to be his knight, and all his brethren, I will pray you, my lord, to let him have his livelihood. I will well, said Sir Launcelot,

t he will come to the court
ıur, and become his man,
ren five. And as for you,
, I will undertake, said Sir
the next feast, so there be
l, that ye shall be knight of
able. Sir, said Sir Pleno-
:xt feast of Pentecost I will
s court, and at that time I
l and ruled as king Arthur
ıave me. Then Sir Laun-
La Cote Male Tail reposed
ınto the time that Sir La
Taile was whole of his
:here they had merry cheer,
st, and many games, and
ıny fair ladies.

CHAP. IX.

ncelot made La Cote Male of the castle of Pendragon, was made knight of the le.

e mean while there came
:neschal, and Sir Brandiles,
y fellowshipped with them.
hin ten days then departed
; of king Arthur's court
fortresses. And as Sir
me by the castle of Pen-
: he put Sir Brian de les
: lands, because he would
old with king Arthur, and
of Pendragon, and all the
, he gave to Sir La Cote
And then Sir Launcelot
:rovens, that he made once
he made him to have all
ıt castle and of that coun-
Cote Male Taile. And so
Arthur's court all wholly
d at Pentecost next follow-
Sir Plenorius, and Sir La
'aile, called otherwise by
ınor le Noire, both made
: Table Round, and great
thur gave them; and there
loire wedded that damsel
And after she was called
but ever after for the
was called La Cote Male
: proved a passing noble
ighty, and many worship-
ful deeds he did after in his life, and Sir Plenorius proved a noble knight and full of prowess. And all the days of their life for the most part they awaited upon Sir Launcelot. And Sir Plenorius's brethren were ever knights of king Arthur. And also as the French book maketh mention, Sir La Cote Male Taile avenged his father's death.

CHAP. X.

How La Beale Isoud sent letters unto Sir Tristram by her maid Bragwaine, and of divers adventures of Sir Tristram.

Now leave we here Sir La Cote Male Taile, and turn we unto Sir Tristram de Liones that was in Britanny. When La Beale Isoud understood that he was wedded, she sent unto him by her maiden Bragwaine as piteous letters as could be thought and made, and her conclusion was, that, and it pleased Sir Tristram, that he would come to her court and bring with him Isoud la Blanche Mains, and they should be kept as well as she herself. Then Sir Tristram called unto him Sir Kehydius and asked him whether he would go with him into Cornwall secretly. He answered him that he was ready at all times. And then he let ordain privily a little vessel, and therein they went, Sir Tristram, Kehydius, dame Bragwaine, and Gouvernail Sir Tristram's squire. So when they were in the sea, a contrarious wind blew them on the coasts of North Wales, nigh the castle perilous. Then said Sir Tristram, Here shall ye abide me these ten days, and Gouvernail my squire with you. And if so be I come not again by that day, take the next way into Cornwall, for in this forest are many strange adventures as I have heard say, and some of them I cast me to prove or I depart: and when I may I shall hie me after you. Then Sir Tristram and Kehydius took their horses and departed from their fellowship. And so they rode within that forest a mile and more. And at the last Sir Tristram saw afore him a likely knight armed, sitting by a well, and a strong mighty horse passing nigh him tied to

an oak, and a man hoving and riding by him, leading an horse laden with spears. And this knight that sat at the well seemed by his countenance to be passing heavy. Then Sir Tristram rode near him and said, Fair knight, why sit ye so drooping? Ye seem to be a knight errant by your arms and harness, and therefore dress you to just with one of us or with both. Therewithal that knight made no words, but took his shield and buckled it about his neck, and lightly he took his horse and lept upon him. And then he took a great spear of his squire, and departed his way a furlong. Sir Kehydius asked leave of Sir Tristram to just first. Do your best, said Sir Tristram. So they met together, and there Sir Kehydius had a fall, and was sore wounded on high above the breast. Then Sir Tristram said, Knight, that is well justed, now make you ready unto me. I am ready, said the knight. And then that knight took a greater spear in his hand and encountered with Sir Tristram, and there by great force that knight smote down Sir Tristram from his horse, and he had a great fall. Then Sir Tristram was sore ashamed, and lightly he avoided his horse and put his shield afore his shoulder, and drew his sword. And then Sir Tristram required that knight of his knighthood to alight upon foot and fight with him. I will well, said the knight. And so he alight upon foot and avoided his horse, and cast his shield upon his shoulder, and drew his sword, and there they fought a long battle together full nigh two hours.

Then Sir Tristram said, Fair knight, hold thy hand, and tell me of whence thou art, and what is thy name. As for that, said the knight, I will be advised, but and thou wilt tell me thy name, peradventure I will tell thee mine.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Tristram met with Sir Lamorak de Galis, and how they fought, and after accorded never to fight together.

Now fair knight, he said, my name is Sir Tristram de Liones. Sir, s other knight, and my name is Sir rak de Galis. Ah Sir Lamorak, s Tristram, well be we met, and t thee now of the despite that tho me of the sending of the horn un Mark's court, to the intent to ha or dishonoured my lady the qu Beale Isoud. And therefore wi well, said Sir Tristram, the on shall die or we depart. Sir, s Lamorak, remember that we w gether in the isle of Servage, that time ye promised me great ship. Then Sir Tristram would no longer delays, but lashed at morak, and thus they fought lo either were weary of other. Th Tristram said to Sir Lamorak, In life met I never with such a that was so big and well b as ye be; therefore, said Sir tram, it were pity that any of u should here be mischieved. Sir, s Lamorak, for your renown and r will that ye have the worship battle, and therefore I will yi unto you. And therewith he to point of his sword to yield him. said Sir Tristram, ye shall not for I know well your proffers ar of your gentleness than for any dread ye have of me. And then Sir Tristram proffered him his and said, Sir Lamorak, as an ov knight I yield me unto you, as to of the most noble prowess that met withal. Nay, said Sir Lam will do you gentleness. I requi let us be sworn together that nev of us shall after this day have ad other. And there withal Sir T and Sir Lamorak sware that nev of them should fight against oth for weal nor for woe.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Palamides followed the beast, and he smote down both S tram and Sir Lamorak with on

And this mean while there c Palamides the good knight fo

east that had in shape a
erpent's head, and a body
haunches like a lion, and
art, and in his body there
oise as it had been the
/ couple of hounds quest-
a noise that beast made
e went. And this beast
Palamides followed, for it
s quest. And right so as
his beast it came by Sir
l soon after came Pala-
brief this matter he smote
stram and Sir Lamorak
ie spear, and so he de-
the beast Glatisant, that
questing beast, wherefore
ghts were passing wroth
nides would not fight on
a.

nay understand that be of
he was never formed that
ht stand, but some time
the worse by mal-fortune.
time the worse knight
er knight to a rebuke.
istram and Sir Lamorak
ius upon a shield betwixt
id led him to a forester's
here they gave him in
p him well, and with him
iree days. Then the two
their horses and at the
rted. And then said Sir
ir Lamorak, I require you
meet with Sir Palamides,
he shall find me at the
ere I met him, and there
im, shall prove whether
knight than I. And so
ed from other a sundry
Tristram rode nigh there
ehydius, and Sir Lamorak
e came to a chapel, and
his horse unto pasture.
ere came Sir Meliagaunce
g Bagdemagus's son, and
his horse to pasture, and
of Sir Lamorak, and then
ir Meliagaunce made his
e love that he had to
ver, and there he made a
aint. All this heard Sir Lamorak, and on the morn Sir Lamorak took his horse and rode unto the forest, and there he met two knights hoving under the wood shawe. Fair knights, said Sir Lamorak, what do ye hoving here and watching, and if ye be knights errant that will just, lo I am ready. Nay, sir knight, they said, not so, we abide not here for to just with you, but we lie here in await of a knight that slew our brother. What knight was that, said Sir Lamorak, that ye would fain meet withal. Sir, they said, it is Sir Launcelot that slew our brother, and if ever we may meet with him he shall not escape but we shall slay him. Ye take upon you a great charge, said Sir Lamorak, for Sir Launcelot is a noble proved knight. As for that we doubt not, for there is none of us but we are good enough for him. I will not believe that, said Sir Lamorak, for I heard never yet of no knight the days of my life but Sir Launcelot was too big for him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Lamorak met with Sir Meliagaunce, and how they fought together for the beauty of queen Guenever.

Right so as they stood talking thus, Sir Lamorak was ware how Sir Launcelot came riding straight toward them; then Sir Lamorak saluted him, and he him again. And then Sir Lamorak asked Sir Launcelot if there were any thing that he might do for him in these marches. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, not at this time, I thank you. Then either departed from other, and Sir Lamorak rode again there as he left the two knights, and then he found them hid in the leaved wood. Fie on you, said Sir Lamorak, false cowards, pity and shame it is that any of you should take the high order of knighthood. So Sir Lamorak departed from them, and within a while he met with Sir Meliagaunce, and then Sir Lamorak asked him why he loved queen Guenever as he did: For I was not far from you when ye made your complaint by the chapel. Did ye so, said Sir Melia-

gaunce, then will I abide by it: I love queen Guenever; what will ye with it? I will prove and make good that she is the fairest lady and most of beauty in the world. As to that, said Sir Lamorak, I say nay thereto, for queen Morgause of Orkney, mother to Sir Gawaine, and his mother is the fairest queen and lady that beareth the life. That is not so, said Sir Meliagaunce, and that will I prove with my hands upon thy body. Will ye so, said Sir Lamorak, and in a better quarrel keep I not to fight. Then they departed either from other in great wrath. And then they came riding together as it had been thunder, and either smote other so sore that their horses fell backward to the earth. And then they avoided their horses, and dressed their shields, and drew their swords. And then they hurtled together as wild boars, and thus they fought a great while. For Meliagaunce was a good man and of great might, but Sir Lamorak was hard big for him, and put him always aback; but either had wounded other sore. And as they stood thus fighting, by fortune came Sir Launcelot and Sir Bleoberis riding. And then Sir Launcelot rode betwixt them, and asked them for what cause they fought so together, and ye are both knights of king Arthur.

CHAP. XIV.

How Sir Meliagaunce told for what cause they fought, and how Sir Lamorak justed with king Arthur.

Sir, said Meliagaunce, I shall tell you for what cause we do this battle. I praised my lady queen Guenever, and said she was the fairest lady of the world, and Sir Lamorak said nay thereto, for he said queen Morgause of Orkney was fairer than she, and more of beauty. Ah Sir Lamorak, why sayest thou so? It is not thy part to dispraise thy princess that thou art under her obeisance and we all. And therewith he alight on foot, and said, For this quarrel make thee ready, for I will prove upon thee that queen Guenever is the fairest lady and most of bounty in the world. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, I am loth to have ado with you in this quarrel. For every man thinketh his own lady fairest; and though I praise the lady that I love most, ye should not be wroth. For though my lady queen Guenever be fairest in your eye, wit ye well queen Morgause of Orkney is fairest in mine eye, and so every knight thinketh his own lady fairest; and, wit ye well, Sir, ye are the man in the world, except Sir Tristram, that I am most lothest to have ado withal. But and ye will needs fight with me, I shall endure you as long as I may. Then spake Sir Bleoberis, and said, My lord Sir Launcelot, I wist you never so misadvised as ye are now. For Sir Lamorak saith you but reason and knightly. For I warn you I have a lady, and me thinketh that she is the fairest lady of the world. Were this a great reason that ye should be wroth with me for such language? And well ye wot that Sir Lamorak is as noble a knight as I know, and he hath owed you and us ever good will, and therefore I pray you be good friends. Then Sir Launcelot said unto Sir Lamorak: I pray you forgive me mine evil will; and if I was misadvised I will amend it. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, the amends is soon made betwixt you and me. And so Sir Launcelot and Sir Bleoberis departed. And Sir Meliagaunce and Sir Lamorak took their horses, and either departed from other. And within a while came king Arthur, and met with Sir Lamorak, and justed with him, and there he smote down Sir Lamorak, and wounded him sore with a spear, and so he rode from him, wherefore Sir Lamorak was wroth that he would not fight with him on foot; how be it that Sir Lamorak knew not king Arthur.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Kay met with Sir Tristram, and after of the shame spoken of the knights of Cornwall, and how they justed.

Now leave we of this tale, and speak we of Sir Tristram, that as he rode he

Sir Kay the seneschal, and
Kay asked Sir Tristram of
ıtry he was. He answered
ɜ of the country of Cornwall.
ll be, said Sir Kay, for yet
ever that ever good knight
of Cornwall. That is evil
id Sir Tristram, but and it
to tell me your name I re-
Sir, wit ye well, said Sir Kay,
me is Sir Kay the seneschal.
ır name? said Sir Tristram;
ɜ well that ye are named the
ıt knight of your tongue that
ıg, how be it ye are called a
ıt, but ye are called unfor-
l passing overthwart of your
nd thus they rode together
ıme to a bridge. And there
ght would not let them pass
them justed with him. And
ıight justed with Sir Kay,
that knight gave Sir Kay a
ame was Sir Tor, Sir Lamo-
ɔrother. And then they two
ıeir lodging, and there they
Brandiles; and Sir Tor came
n after.

they sat at supper, these four
ree of them spake all shame
knights. Sir Tristram heard
y said, and he said but little,
ıught the more; but at that
covered not his name. Upon
Sir Tristram took his horse
them upon their way; and
randiles proffered to just with
m, and Sir Tristram smote
horse and all, to the earth.
'or le Fise de Vayshoure en-
with Sir Tristram, and there
ım smote him down. And
de his way, and Sir Kay fol-
ı, but he would not of his

Then Sir Brandiles came to
and said, I would wit fain
at knight's name. Come on
said Sir Kay, and we shall
to tell us his name. So
together till they came nigh
then they were ware where
a well, and had put off his
rink at the well. And when
he saw them come, he laced on his helm lightly, and took his horse, and proffered them to just. Nay, said Sir Brandiles, we justed late enough with you; we come not in that intent. But for this we come, to require you of knighthood to tell us your name. My fair knights, since that is your desire, and to please you, ye shall wit that my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, nephew unto king Mark of Cornwall. In good time, said Sir Brandiles, and well ye be found; and wit ye well that we be right glad that we have found you, and we be of a fellowship that would be right glad of your company. For ye are the knight in the world that the noble fellowship of the Round Table most desireth to have the company of. I thank them, said Sir Tristram, of their great goodness; but as yet I feel well that I am unable to be of their fellowship. For I was never of such deeds of worthiness to be in the company of such a fellowship. Ah, said Sir Kay, and ye be Sir Tristram de Liones, ye are the man now called most of prowess, except Sir Launcelot du Lake. For he beareth not the life, christian ne heathen, that can find such another knight, to speak of his prowess, and of his hands, and his truth withal. For yet could there never creature say of him dishonour and make it good. Thus they talked a great while; and then they departed either from other, such ways as them seemed best.

CHAP. XVI.

How king Arthur was brought into the forest perilous, and how Sir Tristram saved his life.

Now shall ye hear what was the cause that king Arthur came into the forest perilous, that was in North Wales, by the means of a lady. Her name was Annowre, and this lady came to king Arthur at Cardiff, and she, by fair promise and fair behests, made king Arthur to ride with her into that forest perilous; and she was a great sorceress, and many days she had loved king Arthur, and therefore she came into that

country. So when the king was gone with her, many of his knights followed after king Arthur when they missed him, as Sir Launcelot, Brandiles, and many other. And when she had brought him to her tower, she desired him to love her. And then the king remembered him of his lady, and would not love her for no craft that she could do. Then every day she would make him ride into that forest with his own knights, to the intent to have had king Arthur slain. For when this lady Annowre saw that she might not have him at her will, then she laboured by false means to have destroyed king Arthur and slain. Then the Lady of the lake, that was alway friendly to king Arthur, she understood by her subtle crafts that king Arthur was like to be destroyed. And therefore this Lady of the lake, that hight Nimue, came into that forest to seek after Sir Launcelot du Lake, or Sir Tristram, for to help king Arthur; for as that same day this Lady of the lake knew well that king Arthur should be slain, unless that he had help of one of these two knights. And thus she rode up and down till she met with Sir Tristram, and anon as she saw him she knew him. O my lord Sir Tristram, she said, well be ye met, and blessed be the time that I have met with you; for this same day, and within these two hours, shall be done the foulest deed that ever was done in this land. O fair damsel, said Sir Tristram, may I amend it? Come on with me, she said, and that in all the haste ye may, for ye shall see the most worshipfullest knight of the world hard bested. Then said Sir Tristram, I am ready to help such a noble man. He is neither better nor worse, said the Lady of the lake, but the noble king Arthur himself. God defend, said Sir Tristram, that ever he should be in such distress. Then they rode together a great pace, until they came to a little turret or castle, and underneath that castle they saw a knight standing upon foot fighting with two knights; and so Sir Tristram beheld them, and at the last the two knights smote down the one knight, and that one of th laced his helm to have slain hin the lady Annowre gat king sword in her hand to have strie his head. And therewithal ca Tristram with all his might, Traitress, traitress, leave that anon there Sir Tristram sme of the knights through the bo he fell dead; and then he ra the other and smote his back der, and in the mean while th of the lake cried to king Let not that false lady escape. king Arthur overtook her, and v same sword he smote off her and the Lady of the lake took head, and hung it up by the her saddle bow. And then S tram horsed king Arthur, and ro with him, but he charged the the lake not to discover his nan that time. When the king was he thanked heartily Sir Tristra desired to wit his name; but h not tell him, but that he was knight adventurous. And so king Arthur fellowship till he m some of his knights. And within he met with Sir Ector de Maris, knew not king Arthur nor Sir T and he desired to just with one o Then Sir Tristram rode unto Sir and smote him from his horse when he had done so he came a the king, and said: My lord, yo one of your knights, he may be fellowship; and another day I deed that I have done for you, ye shall understand that I would service. Alas, said king Arthur, wit what ye are. Not at this tim Sir Tristram. So he departed, s king Arthur and Sir Ector togetl

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Tristram came to La Isoud, and how Kebydius began La Beale Isoud, and of a let Tristram found.

And then at a day set Sir T and Sir Lamorak met at the we

ok Kehydius at the forester's so they rode with him to ıere they left dame Bragouvernail, and so they sailed ıll all wholly together; and d information of dame Brag- they were landed they rode ınas the seneschal, a trusty · Tristram's. And so dame and Sir Dinas rode to the g Mark, and told the queen, ;oud, that Sir Tristram was that country. Then for very Beale Isoud swooned: and ight speak, she said, Gentle chal, help that I might speak : else my heart will brast. Dinas and dame Bragwaine · Tristram and Kehydius the court, unto a chamber Beale Isoud assigned it; and joy that was between La and Sir Tristram, there is ın tell it, nor heart think it, ite it. And, as the French h mention, at the first time ır Kehydius saw La Beale as so enamoured upon her r pure love he might never . And at the last, as ye ɔr the book be ended, Sir ed for the love of La Beale l then privily he wrote unto nd ballads of the most good- ɜre used in those days. And ealе Isoud understood his had pity of his complaint, ed she wrote another letter him withal. And Sir Tris- ll this while in a turret, at ndment of La Beale Isoud, he might she came unto Sir So on a day king Mark he chess under a chamber ıd at that time Sir Tristram ıydius were within the cham- g Mark, and as it mishapped ı found the letter that Ke- to La Beale Isoud; also he ıe letter that she wrote unto ınd at that same time La was in the same chamber. ristram came unto La Beale Isoud, and said; Madam, here is a letter that was sent unto you, and here is the letter that ye sent unto him that sent you that letter. Alas, madam, the good love that I have loved you, and many lands and riches have I forsaken for your love, and now ye are a traitress to me, the which doth me great pain. But as for thee, Sir Kehydius, I brought thee out of Britanny into this country, and thy father, king Howel, I won his lands; howbeit, I wedded thy sister, Isoud la Blanche Mains, for the goodness which she did to me: but wit thou well Sir Kehydius for this falsehood and treason thou hast done me, I will revenge it upon thee. And therewithal Sir Tristram drew out his sword, and said, Sir Kehydius keep thee, and then La Beale Isoud swooned to the earth. And when Sir Kehydius saw Sir Tristram come upon him, he saw none other boot, but lept out at a bay window, even over the head where sat king Mark playing at the chess. And when the king saw one come hurling over his head, he said, Fellow, what art thou, and what is the cause thou leapest out of that window? My lord the king, said Kehydius, it fortuned me that I was asleep in the window above your head, and as I slept I slumbered, and so I fell down. And thus Sir Kehydius excused him.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Tristram departed from Tintagil, and how he sorrowed, and was so long in a forest till he was out of his mind.

THEN Sir Tristram dread sore lest he were discovered unto the king that he was there, wherefore he drew him to the strength of the tower, and armed him in such armour as he had, for to fight with them that would withstand him. And so when Sir Tristram saw there was no resistance against him, he sent Gouvernail for his horse and for his spear, and knightly he rode forth out of the castle openly that was called the castle of Tintagil. And even at the gate he met with Gingalin, Sir Gawaine's

son. And anon Sir Gingalin put his spear in his rest, and ran upon Sir Tristram, and brake his spear, and Sir Tristram at that time had but a sword, and gave him such a buffet upon the helm that he fell down from his saddle, and his sword slid down and carved asunder his horse neck. And so Sir Tristram rode his way into the forest, and all this doing saw king Mark. And then he sent a squire unto the hurt knight, and commanded him to come to him, and so he did. And when king Mark wist that it was Sir Gingalin, he welcomed him, and gave him a horse, and asked him what knight it was that had encountered with him. Sir, said Sir Gingalin, I wot not what knight he was, but well I wot that he sigheth, and maketh great dole. Then Sir Tristram within a while met with a knight of his own, that hight Sir Fergus. And when he had met with him he made great sorrow, insomuch that he fell down off his horse in a swoon, and in such sorrow he was in three days and three nights. Then at the last Sir Tristram sent unto the court by Sir Fergus, for to ask what tidings. And so as he rode by the way he met with a damsel that came from Sir Palamides, to know and seek how Sir Tristram did. Then Sir Fergus told her how he was almost out of his mind. Alas, said the damsel, where shall I find him? In such a place, said Sir Fergus. Then Sir Fergus found queen Isoud sick in her bed, making the greatest dole that ever any earthly woman made. And when the damsel found Sir Tristram, she made great dole because she might not amend him; for the more she made of him the more was his pain. And at the last Sir Tristram took his horse and rode away from her. And then was it three days or that she could find him, and then she brought him meat and drink, but he would none. And then another time Sir Tristram escaped away from the damsel, and it happed him to ride by the same castle where Sir Palamides and Sir Tristram did battle when La Beale Isoud departed them. And there by fortune the damsel met with Sir
again, making the greatest
ever earthly creature made,
went to the lady of that ca
told her of the misadventur
Tristram. Alas, said the lad
castle, where is my lord Sir
Right here by your castle, said
sel. In good time, said the la
so nigh me: he shall have
drink of the best, and a harp
his whereupon he taught me,
goodly harping he beareth the
the world. So this lady and th
brought him meat and drink, b
little thereof. Then upon a
put his horse from him, and th
laced his armour, and then Sir
would go into the wilderness, a
down the trees and boughs; a
while, when he found the harp
lady sent him, then would he
play thereupon and weep toget
sometime when Sir Tristram w
wood, that the lady wist not
was, then would she sit her d
play upon that harp: then w
Tristram come to that harp and
thereto, and sometime he wo
himself. Thus he there endure
ter of a year. Then at the las
his way, and she wist not wher
become. And then was he na
waxed lean and poor of flesh, a
fell into the fellowship of herd
shepherds, and daily they wo
him of their meat and drink. A
he did any shrewd deed they wo
him with rods, and so they clip
with shears and made him like

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir Tristram soused Dago well, and how Palamides sent to seek Tristram, and how P met with king Mark.

And upon a day Sir Dagon Arthur's fool, came into Cornw two squires with him, and as t through that forest they came well where Sir Tristram was be, and the weather was hot, a

ink of that well, and in the their horses brake loose. r Tristram came unto them, soused Sir Dagonet in that ter his squires, and thereat shepherds, and forthwithal r their horses, and brought one by one, and right so, were, he made them leap up ir ways. Thus Sir Tristram re an half year naked, and : come in town nor village. while the damsel that Sir ent to seek Sir Tristram she Sir Palamides, and told him chief that Sir Tristram en- s, said Sir Palamides, it is hat ever so noble a knight o mischieved for the love of : nevertheless I will go and id comfort him and I may. e before that time La Beale ommanded Sir Kehydius out ry of Cornwall. So Sir Ke- rted with a dolorous heart. lventure he met with Sir and they enfellowshipped nd either complained to ir love, that they loved La . Now let us, said Sir Pala- Sir Tristram that loved her e, and let us prove whether ver him. So they rode into and three days and three would never take their lodg- r sought Sir Tristram. And by adventure they met with that was ridden from his ie. When they saw him, Sir new him, but Sir Kehydius ot. Ah, false king, said Sir t is pity thou hast thy life, a destroyer of all worship- and by thy mischief, and ce, thou hast destroyed that knight Sir Tristram de l therefore defend thee, said les, for thou shalt die this ere shame, said king Mark, are armed, and I am un- for that, said Sir Palamides, a remedy therefore. Here : with me, and thou shalt have his harness. Nay, said king Mark, I will not have ado with you, for cause have ye none to me. For all the misease that Sir Tristram hath was for a letter that he found; for, as to me, I did to him no displeasure, and I am full sorry for his disease and malady. So when the king had thus excused him, they were friends, and king Mark would have had them unto Tintagil, but Sir Palamides would not, but turned unto the realm of Logris, and Sir Kehydius said he would go into Britanny.

Now turn we unto Sir Dagonet again, then when he and his squires were upon horseback, he deemed that the shepherds had sent that fool to array them so because that they laughed at them, and so they rode unto the keepers of beasts, and all to beat them. Sir Tristram saw them beaten that were wont to give him meat and drink, then he ran thither and gat Sir Dagonet by the head, and gave him such a fall to the earth that he bruised him sore, so that he lay still. And then he wrast his sword out of his hand and therewith he ran to one of his squires and smote off his head, and the other fled. And so Sir Tristram took his way with that sword in his hand, running as he had been wild wood. Then Sir Dagonet rode to king Mark and told him how he had sped in that forest. And therefore, said Sir Dagonet, beware, king Mark, that thou come not about that well in the forest, for there is a fool naked, and that fool and I fool met together, and he had almost slain me. Ah, said king Mark, that is Sir Matto le Breune, that fell out of his wit because he lost his lady. For when Sir Gaheris smote down Sir Matto and won his lady of him, never since was he in his mind, and that was pity, for he was a good knight.

CHAP. XX.

How it was noised how Sir Tristram was dead, and how La Beale Isoud would have slain herself.

Then Sir Andred that was cousin unto Sir Tristram, made a lady that was

his paramour to say and noise it that she was with Sir Tristram or ever he died. And this tale she brought unto king Mark's court, that she buried him by a well, and that or he died he besought king Mark to make his cousin, Sir Andred, king of the country of Liones, of the which Sir Tristram was lord of. All this did Sir Andred because he would have had Sir Tristram's lands. And when king Mark heard tell that Sir Tristram was dead, he wept and made great dole. But when queen Isoud heard of these tidings, she made such sorrow that she was nigh out of her mind. And so upon a day she thought to slay herself, and never to live after Sir Tristram's death. And so upon a day La Beale Isoud gat a sword privily, and bare it into her garden, and there she pight the sword through a plum tree up to the hilts, so that it stack fast, and it stood breast high. And as she would have run upon the sword and to have slain herself, all this espied king Mark, how she kneeled down and said, Sweet Lord Jesu have mercy upon me, for I may not live after the death of Sir Tristram de Liones, for he was my first love, and he shall be the last. And with these words came king Mark and took her in his arms, and then he took up the sword, and bare her away with him into a strong tower, and there he made her to be kept, and watched her surely. And after that she lay long sick, nigh at the point of death. This mean while ran Sir Tristram naked in the forest with the sword in his hand, and so he came to an hermitage, and there he laid him down and slept, and in the mean while the hermit stale away his sword, and laid meat down by him. Thus was he kept there a ten days, and at the last he departed and came to the herdmen again. And there was a giant in that country that hight Tauleas, and for fear of Sir Tristram more than seven years he durst never much go at large, but for the most part he kept him in a sure castle of his own. And so this Tauleas heard tell that Sir Tristram was dead, by the noise of the court of king Mark. Then this Tauleas went daily at large. And so it happed upon a day he came to the herdmen wandering and lingering, and there he set him down to rest among them. The mean while there came a knight of Cornwall that led a lady with him, and his name was Sir Dinant. And when the giant saw him, he went from the herdmen and hid him under a tree, and so the knight came to the well, and there he alight to repose him. And as soon as he was from his horse, the giant Tauleas came betwixt this knight and his horse, and took the horse and lept upon him. So forthwith he rode unto Sir Dinant and took him by the collar, and pulled him afore him upon his horse, and there would have stricken off his head. Then the herdmen said unto Sir Tristram, Help yonder knight. Help ye him, said Sir Tristram. We dare not, said the herdmen. Then Sir Tristram was ware of the sword of the knight there as it lay, and so thither he ran, and took up the sword and strake off Sir Tauleas's head, and so he went his way to the herdmen again.

CHAP. XXI.

How king Mark found Sir Tristram naked, and made him to be borne home to Tintagil, and how he was there known by a bracbet.

THEN the knight took up the giant's head, and bare it with him unto king Mark, and told him what adventure betid him in the forest, and how a naked man rescued him from the grimly giant Tauleas. Where had ye this adventure? said king Mark. Forsooth, said Sir Dinant, at the fair fountain in your forest where many adventurous knights meet, and there is the mad man. Well, said king Mark, I will see that wild man. So within a day or two king Mark commanded his knights and his hunters, that they should be ready on the morn for to hunt, and on the morn he went unto that forest. And when the king came to that well, he found there lying by that well a fair naked

. sword by him. Then king and straked, and therewith ; came to him. And then commanded his knights to aked man with fairness, and to my castle. So they did fair, and cast mantles upon n, and so led him unto Tin- there they bathed him and ı, and gave him hot suppings, ıd brought him well to his ce. But all this while there ıture that knew Sir Tristram, ıan he was. So it fell upon the queen La Beale Isoud ch a man that ran naked in nd how the king had brought to the court. Then La l called unto her dame Brag- said, Come on with me, for see this man that my lord ɔm the forest the last day. ssed forth, and asked where k man. And then a squire ɛen that he was in the garden est, and reposing him against So when the queen looked ristram she was not remem- m. But ever she said unto waine, Me seemeth I should im heretofore in many places. ı as Sir Tristram saw her he well enough, and then he y his visage and wept. Then had always a little brachet ıat Sir Tristram gave her the ıat ever she came into Corn- ever would that brachet de- ıer, but if Sir Tristram was as was La Beale Isoud; and t was sent from the king's f France unto Sir Tristram ve. And anon as this little a savour of Sir Tristram, she n him, and licked his cheeks s, and then she whined and d she smelled at his feet and ds, and on all parts of his he might come to. Ah, my dame Bragwaine unto La d, alas, alas! said she, I ine own lord, Sir Tristram. ıpon Isoud fell down in a swoon, and so lay a great while; and when she might speak, she said, My lord Sir Tristram, blessed be God ye have your life; and now I am sure ye shall be discovered by this little brachet, for she will never leave you: and also I am sure as soon as my lord king Mark do know you, he will banish you out of the country of Cornwall, or else he will destroy you. Therefore mine own lord, grant king Mark his will, and then draw you unto the court of king Arthur, for there are ye beloved. And ever when I may I shall send unto you, and when ye list ye may come to me, and at all times early and late I will be at your commandment to live as poor a life as ever did queen or lady. O madam, said Sir Tristram, go from me, for mickle anger and danger have I escaped for your love.

CHAP. XXII.

How king Mark, by the advice of his council, banished Sir Tristram out of Cornwall the term of ten years.

THEN the queen departed, but the brachet would not from him. And therewithal came king Mark, and the brachet sat upon him, and bayed at them all. Therewithal Sir Andred spake and said, Sir, this is Sir Tristram, I see by the brachet. Nay, said the king, I cannot suppose that. So the king asked him upon his faith what he was, and what was his name. Truly, said he, my name is Sir Tristram de Lionesse, now do by me what ye list. Ah, said king Mark, me repenteth of your recovery. And then he let call his barons to judge Sir Tristram to death. Then many of his barons would not assent thereto, and in especial Sir Dinas the seneschal and Sir Fergus. And so by the advice of them all Sir Tristram was banished out of the country for ten year, and thereupon he took his oath upon a book before the king and his barons. And so he was made to depart out of the country of Cornwall, and there were many barons brought him into his ship, of the which

some were his friends, and some his foes. And in the mean while there came a knight of king Arthur's, his name was Dinadan, and his coming was to seek after Sir Tristram. Then they shewed him where he was armed at all points, going to the ship. Now, fair knight, said Sir Dinadan, or ye pass this court, that ye will just with me I require you. With a good will, said Sir Tristram, and these lords will give me leave. Then the barons granted thereto, and so they ran together, and there Sir Tristram gave Sir Dinadan a fall. And then he prayed Sir Tristram to give him leave to go in his fellowship. Ye shall be right welcome, said then Sir Tristram. And so they took their horses and rode to their ships together. And when Sir Tristram was in the sea, he said, Greet well king Mark and all mine enemies, and say them I will come again when I may. And well am I rewarded for the fighting with Sir Marhaus, and delivering all this country from servage, and well I am rewarded for the fetching and costs of La Beale Isoud out of Ireland, and the danger that I was in first and last, and by the way coming home what danger I had to bring again queen Isoud from the castle Pluere. And well am I rewarded when I fought with Sir Bleoberis for Sir Segwarides' wife. And well am I rewarded when I fought with Sir Blamor de Ganis for king Anguish, father unto La Beale Isoud. And well am I rewarded when I smote down the good knight Sir Lamorak de Galis at king Mark's request. And well am I rewarded when I fought with the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Northgalis, and both these would have put his land in servage, and by me they were put to a rebuke. And well am I rewarded for the slaying of Tauleas the mighty giant, and many more deeds have I done for him, and now have I my warison. And tell king Mark that many noble knights of the Table Round have spared the barons of this country for my sake. Also am I not well rewarded when I fought with the good knight Sir Palamides, and rescued queen Isoud from him. And at that time king Mark said afore all his barons, I should have been better rewarded. And forthwithal he took the sea.

CHAP. XXIII.

How a damsel sought help to help Sir Launcelot against thirty knights, and how Sir Tristram fought with them.

And at the next landing, fast by the sea, there met with Sir Tristram and with Sir Dinadan Sir Ector de Maris and Sir Bors de Ganis. And there Sir Ector justed with Sir Dinadan and he smote him and his horse down. And then Sir Tristram would have justed with Sir Bors, and Sir Bors said he would not just with no Cornish knights, for they are not called men of worship. And all this was done upon a bridge. And with this came Sir Bleoberis and Sir Driant, and Sir Bleoberis proffered to just with Sir Tristram, and there Sir Tristram smote down Sir Bleoberis. Then said Sir Bors de Ganis, I wist never Cornish knight of so great valour nor so valiant as that knight that beareth the trappours embroidered with crowns. And then Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan departed from them into a forest, and there met them a damsel that came for the love of Sir Launcelot to seek after some noble knights of king Arthur's court for to rescue Sir Launcelot. And so Sir Launcelot was ordained, for by the treason of queen Morgan le Fay to have slain Sir Launcelot, and for that cause she ordained thirty knights for to lie in a wait for Sir Launcelot, and this damsel knew this treason. And for this cause the damsel came for to seek noble knights to help Sir Launcelot. For that night, or the day after, Sir Launcelot should come where these thirty knights were. And so this damsel met with Sir Bors, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Ector, and Sir Driant, and there she told them all four of the treason of Morgan le Fay. And then they promised her that they would be nigh where Sir Launcelot should meet

hirty knights, and if so be on him we will do rescues as So the damsel departed, and ire the damsel met with Sir and with Sir Dinadan, and amsel told them all the trea- as ordained for Sir Launcelot. el, said Sir Tristram, bring same place where they should Sir Launcelot. Then said an, What will ye do? it is to fight with thirty knights, ou well I will not thereof, as one knight two or three is id they be men. But for to en knights, that will I never Fie for shame, said Sir lo but your part. Nay, said an, I will not thereof, but if l me your shield, for ye bear Cornwall, and for the cow- is named to the knights of by your shields ye be ever Nay, said Sir Tristram, I will from my shield for her sake it me. But one thing, said m, I promise thee Sir Dina- f thou wilt promise me to me, here I shall slay thee: re no more of thee but to knight, and if thy heart will hee, stand by and look upon iem. Sir, said Sir Dinadan, you to look upon and to do / to save myself, but I would met with you. So then thirty knights came fast our knights, and they were m, and either of other. And hirty knights let them pass ause, that they would not n if cause be that they had Sir Launcelot, and the four t them pass to this intent, would see and behold what do with Sir Launcelot. And ty knights past on, and came tram and Sir Dinadan. And istram cried on high, Lo here t against you for the love of lot. And there he slew two ear, and ten with his sword. ame in Sir Dinadan, and he did passing well. And so of the thirty knights there went but ten away, and they fled. All this battle saw Sir Bors de Ganis, and his three fellows. And then they saw well it was the same knight that justed with them at the bridge. Then they took their horses and rode unto Sir Tristram, and praised him, and thanked him of his good deeds, and they all desired Sir Tristram to go with them to their lodging. And he said nay, he would not go to no lodging. Then they all four knights prayed him to tell them his name. Fair lords, said Sir Tristram, as at this time I will not tell you my name.

CHAP. XXIV.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan came to a lodging where they must just with two knights.

THEN Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan rode forth their way till they came to the shepherds and to the herdmen, and there they asked them if they knew any lodging or harbour there nigh hand. Forsooth sirs, said the herdmen, hereby is good lodging in a castle, but there is such a custom that there shall no knight be harboured but if he just with two knights, and if he be but one knight he must just with two. And as ye be therein, soon shall ye be matched. There is shrewd harbour, said Sir Dinadan, lodge where ye will, for I will not lodge there. Fie for shame, said Sir Tristram, are ye not a knight of the Table Round, wherefore ye may not with your worship refuse your lodging. Not so, said the herdmen, for and ye be beaten and have the worse ye shall not be lodged there, and if ye beat them ye shall be well harboured. Ah, said Sir Dinadan, they are two sure knights. Then Sir Dinadan would not lodge there in no manner, but as Sir Tristram required him of his knighthood, and so they rode thither. And to make short tale, Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan smote them down both, and so they entered into the castle, and had good cheer as they could think or

devise. And when they were unarmed, and thought to be merry and in good rest, there came in at the gates Sir Palamides and Sir Gaheris, requiring to have the custom of the castle. What array is this? said Sir Dinadan, I would have my rest. That may not be, said Sir Tristram; now must we needs defend the custom of this castle, insomuch as we have the better of the lords of this castle, and therefore, said Sir Tristram, needs must ye make you ready. In the devil's name, said Sir Dinadan, came I into your company. And so they made them ready. And Sir Gaheris encountered with Sir Tristram, and Sir Gaheris had a fall, and Sir Palamides encountered with Sir Dinadan, and Sir Dinadan had a fall; then was it fall for fall. So then must they fight on foot. That would not Sir Dinadan, for he was so sore bruised of the fall that Sir Palamides gave him. Then Sir Tristram unlaced Sir Dinadan's helm, and prayed him to help him. I will not, said Sir Dinadan, for I am sore wounded of the thirty knights that we had but late ago to do withal. But ye fare, said Sir Dinadan unto Sir Tristram, as a mad man, and as a man that is out of his mind, that would cast himself away, and I may curse the time that ever I saw you. For in all the world are not two such knights that be so wood as is Sir Launcelot and ye Sir Tristram: for once I fell in the fellowship of Sir Launcelot as I have now done with you, and he set me a work that a quarter of a year I kept my bed. Defend me, said Sir Dinadan, from such two knights, and specially from your fellowship. Then, said Sir Tristram, I will fight with them both. Then Sir Tristram bad them come forth both, for I will fight with you. Then Sir Palamides and Sir Gaheris dressed them and smote at them both. Then Dinadan smote at Sir Gaheris a stroke or two, and turned from him. Nay, said Sir Palamides, it is too much shame for us two knights to fight with one. And then he did bid Sir Gaheris stand aside with that knight that hath no list to fight. Then they rode together and fought long, and at the last Sir Tristram doubled his strokes and drove Sir Palamides aback more than three strides. And then by one assent Sir Gaheris and Sir Dinadan went betwixt them and departed them in sunder. And then by assent of Sir Tristram, they would have lodged together. But Sir Dinadan would not lodge in that castle, and then he cursed the time that ever he came in their fellowship. And so he took his horse and his harness and departed. Then Sir Tristram prayed the lords of that castle to lend him a man to bring him to a lodging. And so they did, and overtook Sir Dinadan, and rode to their lodging two miles thence with a good man in a priory, and there they were well at ease. And that same night, Sir Bors, and Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Ector, and Sir Driant, abode still in the same place there as Sir Tristram fought with the thirty knights, and there they met with Sir Launcelot the same night, and had made promise to lodge with Sir Colgrevance the same night.

CHAP. XXV.

How Sir Tristram justed with Sir Kay and Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and how Sir Gawaine turned Sir Tristram from Morgan le Fay.

But anon as the noble knight Sir Launcelot heard of the shield of Cornwall, then wist he well that it was Sir Tristram that fought with his enemies. And then Sir Launcelot praised Sir Tristram, and called him the man of most worship in the world. So there was a knight in that priory that hight Pellinore, and he desired to wit the name of Sir Tristram, but in no wise he could not. And so Sir Tristram departed and left Sir Dinadan in the priory, for he was so weary and so sore bruised that he might not ride. Then this knight, Sir Pellinore, said to Sir Dinadan, Sithen that ye will not tell me that knight's name, I will ride after him and make him to tell me his name, or he shall die therefore. Beware, sir

d Sir Dinadan, for and ye
ye shall repent it. So that
r Pellinore, rode after Sir
and required him of justs.
Tristram smote him down,
ed him through the shoulder,
past on his way. And on the
following Sir Tristram met
ivants, and they told him that
made a great cry of tourna-
een king Carados of Scotland
ıg of North Wales, and either
against other at the Castle of
And these pursuivants sought
ıntry after the good knights,
ecial king Carados let make
· Sir Launcelot, and the king
ılis let seek after Sir Tristram

And at that time Sir Tris-
ght to be at that justs, and so
ıre they met with Sir Kay the
ınd Sir Sagramor le Desirous,
ay required Sir Tristram to
Sir Tristram in a manner re-
because he would not be hurt
d against the great justs that
before the Castle of Maidens,
ore he thought to repose him,
st him. And alway Sir Kay
knight of Cornwall, just with
e yield thee to me as recreant.
Tristram heard him say so,
to him, and then Sir Kay
n, and turned his back. Then
ım said, As I find thee shall I

Then Sir Kay turned with
and Sir Tristram smote Sir
ı, and so he rode forth. Then
nor le Desirous rode after Sir
ınd made him to just with him.
Sir Tristram smote down Sir
le Desirous from his horse,
his way, and the same day he
ı damsel that told him that he
n great worship of a knight
us, that did much harm in all
ry.

Sir Tristram heard her say so,
glad to go with her to win
So Sir Tristram rode with
el a six mile, and then met
awaine, and therewithal Sir
knew the damsel, that she was
a damsel of queen Morgan le Fay. Then Sir Gawaine understood that she led that knight to some mischief. Fair knight, said Sir Gawaine, whither ride you now with that damsel? Sir, said Sir Tristram, I wot not whither I shall ride, but as the damsel will lead me. Sir, said Sir Gawaine, ye shall not ride with her, for she and her lady did never good, but ill. And then Sir Gawaine pulled out his sword, and said, Damsel, but if thou tell me anon for what cause thou leadest this knight with thee, thou shalt die for it right anon. I know all your lady's treason and yours. Mercy, Sir Gawaine, she said, and if ye will save my life I will tell you. Say on, said Sir Gawaine, and thou shalt have thy life. Sir, she said, queen Morgan le Fay, my lady, hath ordained a thirty ladies to seek and espy after Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram, and by the trains of these ladies, who that may first meet with any of these two knights, they should turn them unto Morgan le Fay's castle, saying that they should do deeds of worship, and if any of those two knights came there, there be thirty knights lying and watching in a tower to wait upon Sir Launcelot, or upon Sir Tristram. Fie for shame, said Sir Gawaine, that ever such false treason should be wrought or used in a queen and a king's sister, and a king and queen's daughter.

CHAP. XXVI.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Gawaine rode to have fought against the thirty knights, but they durst not come out.

Sir, said Sir Gawaine, will ye stand with me, and we will see the malice of these thirty knights? Sir, said Sir Tristram, go ye to them and it please you, and ye shall see I will not fail you, for it is not long ago since I and a fellow met with thirty knights of that queen's fellowship; and God speed us so that we may win worship. So then Sir Gawaine and Sir Tristram rode toward the castle where Morgan le Fay was, and ever Sir Gawaine deemed well that he was Sir Tristram de Liones, because

he heard that two knights had slain and beaten thirty knights. And when they came afore the castle Sir Gawaine spake on high, and said, Queen Morgan le Fay, send out your knights that ye have laid in a watch for Sir Launcelot, and for Sir Tristram. Now, said Sir Gawaine, I know your false treason, and through all places where that I ride men shall know of your false treason. And now let see Sir Gawaine whether ye dare come out of your castle ye thirty knights. Then the queen spake and all the thirty knights at once, and said, Sir Gawaine, full well wotest thou what thou dost and sayest; for we know thee passing well; but all that thou speakest and dost thou sayest it upon pride of that good knight that is there with thee. For there be some of us that know full well the hands of that knight over all well, and wit thou well, Sir Gawaine, it is more for his sake than for thine that we will not come out of this castle. For wit ye well, Sir Gawaine, that knight that beareth the arms of Cornwall we know him, and what he is. Then Sir Gawaine and Sir Tristram departed, and rode on their ways a day or two together, and there by adventure they met with Sir Kay and Sir Sagramor le Desirous. And then they were glad of Sir Gawaine, and he of them, but they wist not what he was with the shield of Cornwall but by deeming. And thus they rode together a day or two. And then they were ware of Sir Breuse Sance Pité chasing a lady for to have slain her, for he had slain her lover before. Hold you all still, said Sir Gawaine, and shew none of you forth, and ye shall see me reward yonder false knight, for and he espy you he is so well horsed that he will escape away. And then Sir Gawaine rode betwixt Sir Breuse and the lady, and said, False knight, leave her and have ado with me. When Sir Breuse saw no more but Sir Gawaine he feutred his spear, and Sir Gawaine against him, and there Sir Breuse overthrew Sir Gawaine, and then he rode over him and overthwart him twenty times, to have destroyed him; and when Sir Tristram saw him do so villainous a deed, he hurled out against him. And when Sir Breuse saw him with the shield of Cornwall, he knew him well that it was Sir Tristram, and then he fled, and Sir Tristram followed after him. And Sir Breuse Sance Pité was so horsed that he went his way quite. And Sir Tristram followed him long, for he would fain have been avenged upon him. And so when he had long chased him he saw a fair well, and thither he rode to repose him, and tied his horse to a tree.

CHAP. XXVII.

How damsel Bragwaine found Tristram sleeping by a well, and how she delivered letters to him from La Beale Isoud.

And then he pulled off his helm, and washed his visage and his hands, and so he fell on sleep. In the mean while came a damsel that had sought Sir Tristram many ways and days within this land. And when she came to the well she looked upon him, and had forgotten him as in remembrance of Sir Tristram, but by his horse she knew him, that hight Passe-Brewel, that had been Sir Tristram's horse many years. For when he was mad in the forest, Sir Fergus kept him. So this lady dame Bragwaine abode still till he was awake. So when she saw him wake she saluted him, and he her again, for either knew other of old acquaintance. Then she told him how she had sought him long and broad, and there she told him how she had letters from queen La Beale Isoud. Then anon Sir Tristram read them, and wit ye well he was glad, for therein was many a piteous complaint. Then Sir Tristram said, Lady Bragwaine, ye shall ride with me till that tournament be done at the Castle of Maidens; and then shall ye bear letters and tidings with you. And then Sir Tristram took his horse and sought lodging, and there he met with a good ancient knight that prayed him to lodge with him. Right so came Gouvernail unto

Tristram, that was glad of that lady. this old knight's name was Sir Pelnes, and he told of the great tournat that should be at the Castle of idens. And there Sir Launcelot and rty-two knights of his blood had orned shields of Cornwall. And right there came one unto Sir Pellounes l told him that Sir Persides de Bloise s come home, and then that knight d up his hands and thanked God of coming home, and there Sir Pelmes told Sir Tristram that in two rs he had not seen his son Sir Peres. Sir, said Sir Tristram, I know r son well enough for a good knight. on a time Sir Tristram and Sir rsides came to their lodging both at ce, and so they unarmed them, and t upon them their clothing. And then ese two knights each welcomed other. d when Persides understood that Sir istram was of Cornwall, he said he was ce in Cornwall,—and there I jusied ore king Mark, and so it happed me : that time to overthrow ten knights, d then came to me Sir Tristram de ones and overthrew me, and took my dy from me, and that I shall never rget, but I shall remember me and er I see my time. Ah, said Sir Trisam, now I understand that ye hate Sir ristram. What deem ye, ween ye that ir Tristram is not able to withstand ur malice? Yes, said Sir Persides, I ow well that Sir Tristram is a noble ight, and a much better knight than yet shall I not owe him my good will. ight as they stood thus talking at a bay ndow of that castle, they saw many ights riding to and fro toward the rnament. And then was Sir Trisam ware of a likely knight riding on a great black horse, and a black vered shield. What knight is that, id Sir Tristram, with the black horse d the black shield? He seemeth to : a good knight. I know him well, id Sir Persides, he is one of the best ights of the world. Then is it Sir uncelot, said Sir Tristram. Nay, said r Persides, it is Sir Palamides, that is t unchristened.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Tristram had a fall of Sir Palamides, and how Launcelot overthrew two knights.

THEN they saw much people of the country salute Sir Palamides. And within a while after there came a squire of the castle that told Sir Pellounes, that was lord of that castle, that a knight with a black shield had smitten down thirteen knights. Fair brother, said Sir Tristram unto Sir Persides, let us cast upon us our cloaks, and let us go see the play. Not so, said Sir Persides, we will not go like knaves thither, but we will ride like men and good knights to withstand our enemies. So they armed them, and took their horses, and great spears, and thither they went, there as many knights assayed themselves before the tournament. And anon Sir Palamides saw Sir Persides, and then he sent a squire unto him, and said, Go thou to the yonder knight with a green shield and therein a lion of gold, and say to him I require him to just with me, and tell him that my name is Sir Palamides. When Sir Persides understood that request of Sir Palamides he made him ready. And there anon they met together, but Sir Persides had a fall. Then Sir Tristram dressed him to be revenged upon Sir Palamides. And that saw Sir Palamides, that was ready, and so was not Sir Tristram, and took him at advantage, and smote him over his horse tail when he had no spear in his rest. Then start up Sir Tristram, and took his horse lightly, and was wroth out of measure, and sore ashamed of that fall. Then Sir Tristram sent unto Sir Palamides by Gouvernail his squire, and prayed him to just with him at his request. Nay, said Sir Palamides, as at this time I will not just with that knight, for I know him better than he weeneth. And if he be wroth, he may right it to-morn at the Castle of Maidens, where he may see me and many other knights. With that came Sir Dinadan, and when he saw Sir Tris-

tram wroth he list not to jest. Lo, said Sir Dinadan, here may a man prove, be a man never so good yet may he have a fall, and he was never so wise but he might be overseen, and he rideth well that never fell. So Sir Tristram was passing wroth, and said to Sir Persides and Sir Dinadan, I will revenge me. Right so as they stood talking there, there came by Sir Tristram a likely knight, riding passing soberly and heavily, with a black shield. What knight is that? said Sir Tristram unto Sir Persides. I know him well, said Sir Persides, for his name is Sir Briant of North Wales: so he past on among other knights of North Wales. And there came in Sir Launcelot du Lake with a shield of the arms of Cornwall, and he sent a squire unto Sir Briant, and required him to just with him. Well, said Sir Briant, since I am required to just I will do what I may. And there Sir Launcelot smote down Sir Briant from his horse a great fall. And then Sir Tristram marvelled what knight he was that bare the shield of Cornwall. Whatsoever he be, said Sir Dinadan, I warrant you he is of king Ban's blood, the which be knights of the most noble prowess in the world, for to account so many for so many. Then there came two knights of Northgalis, the one hight Hew de la Montaine, and the other Sir Madok de la Montaine, and they challenged Sir Launcelot foot hot. Sir Launcelot not refusing them, but made him ready, with one spear he smote them down both over their horse croups, and so Sir Launcelot rode his way. By my faith, said Sir Tristram, he is a good knight that beareth the shield of Cornwall, and me seemeth he rideth in the best manner that ever I saw knight ride. Then the king of Northgalis rode unto Sir Palamides, and prayed him heartily for his sake to just with that knight that hath done us of Northgalis despite. Sir, said Sir Palamides, I am full loth to have ado with that knight, and cause why is for as to-morn the great tournament shall be, and therefore I will keep myself fresh by my will. Nay, said the king of Northgalis, I pray you require him of justs. Sir, said Sir Palamides, I will just at your request, and require that knight to just with me; and often I have seen a man have a fall at his own request.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Sir Launcelot justed with Palamides and overthrew him, and after he was assailed with twelve knights.

THEN Sir Palamides sent unto Sir Launcelot a squire, and required him of justs. Fair fellow, said Sir Launcelot, tell me thy lord's name. Sir, said the squire, my lord's name is Sir Palamides the good knight. In good hour, said Sir Launcelot, for there is no knight that I saw this seven years that I had lever have ado withal than with him. And so either knights made them ready with two great spears. Nay, said Sir Dinadan, ye shall see that Sir Palamides will quit him right well. It may be so, said Sir Tristram, but I undertake that knight with the shield of Cornwall shall give him a fall. I believe it not, said Sir Dinadan. Right so they spurred their horses, and feutred their spears, and either hit other, and Sir Palamides brake a spear upon Sir Launcelot, and he sat and moved not, but Sir Launcelot smote him so lightly that he made his horse to avoid the saddle, and the stroke brake his shield and the hauberk, and had he not fallen he had been slain. How now, said Sir Tristram, I wist well by the manner of their riding both that Sir Palamides should have a fall. Right so Sir Launcelot rode his way, and rode to a well to drink and to repose him, and they of Northgalis espied him whither he rode, and then there followed him twelve knights for to have mischieved him, for this cause, that upon the morn, at the tournament of the Castle of Maidens, that he should not win the victory. So they came upon Sir Launcelot suddenly and scarcely he might put upon him his helm and take his horse but they were in hands with him. And then Sir Laun-

his spear and rode through there he slew a knight, and spear in his body. Then he sword and smote upon the and upon the left hand, so a few strokes he had slain e knights, and the remnant he wounded them sore, all bide. Thus Sir Launcelot es- his enemies of North Wales, ıe rode forth on his way to a lodged him till on the morn, ld not the first day have ado nament, because of his great ınd on the first day he was Arthur, there as he was set ɔon a scaffold, to discern who worthy of his deeds. So Sir was with king Arthur, and the first day.

CHAP. XXX.

Tristram behaved him the first e tournament, and there he had

rn we unto Sir Tristram de ıt commanded Gouvernail his ordain him a black shield other remembrance therein. ir Persides and Sir Tristram rom their host Sir Pellounes ode early toward the tourna- then they drew them to king ide of Scotland: and anon gan the field, what of the orthgalis' part, and what of dos' part, and there began y. Then there was hurling g. Right so came in Sir Per- Sir Tristram, and so they did hey put the king of North- k. Then came in Sir Bleo- ınis and Sir Gaheris with them ılis, and then was Sir Persides wn and almost slain, for more horsemen went over him. For ris did great deeds of arms, ıheris failed him not. When m beheld them, and saw them leeds of arms, he marvelled were. Also Sir Tristram ıame that Sir Persides was so done to; and then he gat a great spear in his hand, and then he rode to Sir Gaheris and smote him down from his horse. And then was Bleoberis wroth, and gat a spear and rode against Sir Tristram in great ire, and there Sir Tristram met with him, and smote Sir Bleoberis from his horse. So then the king with the hundred knights was wroth, and he horsed Sir Bleoberis and Sir Gaheris again, and there began a great meddle; and ever Sir Tristram held them passing short, and ever Sir Bleoberis was passing busy upon Sir Tristram. And there came Sir Dinadan against Sir Tristram, and Sir Tristram gave him such a buffet that he swooned in his saddle. Then anon Sir Dinadan came to Sir Tristram, and said, Sir, I know thee better than thou weenest, but here I promise thee my troth I will never come against thee more, for I promise thee that sword of thine shall never come on my helm. With that came Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Tristram gave him such a buffet that down he laid his head: and then he caught him so sore by the helm that he pulled him under his horse feet. And then king Arthur blew to lodging. Then Sir Tristram departed to his pavilion, and Sir Dinadan rode with him. And Sir Persides and king Arthur then, and the kings upon both parties, marvelled what knight that was with the black shield. Many said their advice, and some knew him for Sir Tristram, and held their peace, and would nought say. So that first day king Arthur and all the kings and lords that were judges gave Sir Tristram the prize, how be it they knew him not, but named him the knight with the black shield.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Sir Tristram returned against king Arthur's party, because he saw Sir Palamides on that party.

THEN upon the morn Sir Palamides returned from the king of Northgalis, and rode to king Arthur's side, where

was king Carados, and the king of Ireland, and Sir Launcelot's kin, and Sir Gawaine's kin. So Sir Palamides sent the damsel unto Sir Tristram that he sent to seek him when he was out of his mind in the forest; and this damsel asked Sir Tristram what he was, and what was his name. As for that, said Sir Tristram, tell Sir Palamides he shall not wit as at this time, unto the time I have broken two spears upon him. But let him wit thus much, said Sir Tristram, that I am the same knight that he smote down in over evening at the tournament, and tell him plainly, on what part that Sir Palamides be I will be on the contrary part. Sir, said the damsel, ye shall understand that Sir Palamides will be on king Arthur's side, where the most noble knights of the world be. Then, said Sir Tristram, will I be with the king of Northgalis, because Sir Palamides will be on king Arthur's side, and else I would not but for his sake. So when king Arthur was come they blew unto the field, and then there began a great party, and so king Carados justed with the king with the hundred knights, and there king Carados had a fall; then there was hurling and rashing, and right so came in knights of king Arthur's, and they bare back the king of Northgalis' knights. Then Sir Tristram came in, and began so roughly and so bigly that there was none might withstand him, and thus Sir Tristram endured long. And at the last Sir Tristram fell among the fellowship of king Ban, and there fell upon him Sir Bors de Ganis, and Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Blamor de Ganis, and many other knights. And then Sir Tristram smote on the right hand and on the left hand, that all lords and ladies spake of his noble deeds. But at the last Sir Tristram should have had the worse had not the king with the hundred knights been. And then he came with his fellowship and rescued Sir Tristram, and brought him away from those knights that bare the shields of Cornwall. And then Sir Tristram saw another fellowship by themselves, and there were a forty knights together, and Sir Kay the seneschal was their governor. Then Sir Tristram rode in amongst them, and there he smote down Sir Kay from his horse, and there he fared among those knights like a grey hound among conies. Then Sir Launcelot found a knight that was sore wounded upon the head. Sir, said Sir Launcelot, who wounded you so sore? Sir, he said, a knight that beareth a black shield, and I may curse the time that ever I met with him, for he is a devil and no man. So Sir Launcelot departed from him, and thought to meet with Sir Tristram, and so he rode with his sword drawn in his hand to seek Sir Tristram, and then he espied him how he hurled here and there, and at every stroke Sir Tristram well nigh smote down a knight. O mercy, said the king, sith the time I bare arms saw I never no knight do so marvellous deeds of arms. And if I should set upon this knight, said Sir Launcelot to himself, I did shame to myself; and therewithal Sir Launcelot put up his sword. And then the king with the hundred knights and a hundred more of North Wales set upon the twenty of Sir Launcelot's kin: and they twenty knights held them ever together as wild swine, and none would fail other. And so when Sir Tristram beheld the noblesse of these twenty knights, he marvelled of their good deeds, for he saw by their fare and by their rule, that they had lever die than avoid the field. Now, said Sir Tristram, well may he be valiant and full of prowess that hath such a sort of noble knights unto his kin, and full like is he to be a noble man that is their leader and governor. He meant it by Sir Launcelot du Lake. So when Sir Tristram had beholden them long, he thought shame to see two hundred knights battering upon twenty knights. Then Sir Tristram rode unto the king with the hundred knights and said, Sir, leave your fighting with those twenty knights, for ye win no worship of them, ye be so many, and they so few; and wit ye well they will not out of the field, I see by their cheer and

ntenance; and worship get ye none ye slay them. Therefore leave your iting with them, for I to increase my rship I will ride to the twenty knights l help them with all my might and ver. Nay, said the king with the ndred knights, ye shall not do so. w I see your courage and courtesy rill withdraw my knights for your sure, for evermore a good knight ll favour another, and like will draw like.

CHAP. XXXII.

w Sir Tristram found Palamides by a well, and brought him with him to his lodging.

THUS the king with the hundred ights withdrew his knights. And all s while, and long tofore, Sir Launlot had watched upon Sir Tristram th a very purpose to have fellowipped with him. And then suddenly r Tristram, Sir Dinadan, and Gouverl his man, rode their way into the rest, that no man perceived where ey went. So then king Arthur blew to lodging, and gave the king of orthgalis the prize, because Sir Tristm was upon his side. Then Sir ncelot rode here and there, so wood lion that wanted his fill, because he d lost Sir Tristram, and so he rened unto king Arthur. And then in the field was a noise that with the d it might be heard two mile thence, w the lords and ladies cried, The ght with the black shield hath won field. Alas, said king Arthur, where is t knight become? It is shame to all se in the field so to let him escape ay from you; but with gentleness l courtesy ye might have brought unto me to the Castle of Maidens. en the noble king Arthur went unto knights, and comforted them in the t wise that he could, and said, My fellows be not dismayed, howbeit have lost the field this day. And ay were hurt and sore wounded, and ay were whole. My fellows, said g Arthur, look that ye be of good er, for to-morrow I will be in the field with you, and revenge you of your enemies.

So that night king Arthur and his knights reposed themselves. The damsel that came from La Beale Isoud unto Sir Tristram, all the while the tournament was a doing she was with queen Guenever, and ever the queen asked her for what cause she came into that country. Madam, she answered, I come for none other cause but from my lady La Beale Isoud to wit of your welfare. For in no wise she would not tell the queen that she came for Sir Tristram's sake. So this lady, dame Bragwaine, took her leave of queen Guenever, and she rode after Sir Tristram. And as she rode through the forest she heard a great cry, then she commanded her squire to go into that forest to wit what was that noise. And so he came to a well, and there he found a knight bound to a tree, crying as he had been wood, and his horse and his harness standing by him. And when he espied the squire, therewith he started and brake himself loose, and took his sword in his hand, and ran to have slain that squire. Then he took his horse and fled all that ever he might unto dame Bragwaine again, and told her of his adventure. Then she rode unto Sir Tristram's pavilion, and told Sir Tristram what adventure she had found in the forest. Alas, said Sir Tristram, upon my head there is some good knight at mischief. Then Sir Tristram took his horse and his sword and rode thither, and there he heard how the knight complained unto himself, and said, I, woeful knight, Sir Palamides, what misadventure befalleth me, that thus am defoiled with falsehood and treason, through Sir Bors and Sir Ector. Alas, he said, why live I so long! And then he gat his sword in his hands, and made many strange signs and tokens, and so through his raging he threw his sword into that fountain. Then Sir Palamides wailed and wrang his hands. And at the last, for pure sorrow, he ran into that fountain over his middle, and sought after his sword. Then Sir Tris-

tram saw that, and ran upon Sir Palamides, and held him in his arms fast. What art thou, said Sir Palamides, that holdeth me so? I am a man of this forest that would thee none harm. Alas, said Sir Palamides, I may never win worship where Sir Tristram is, for ever where he is and I be there then get I no worship, and if he be away for the most part I have the gree, unless that Sir Launcelot du Lake be there or Sir Lamorak. Then Sir Palamides said: Once in Ireland Sir Tristram put me to the worse, and another time in Cornwall, and in other places in this land. What would ye do, said Sir Tristram, and ye had Sir Tristram? I would fight with him, said Sir Palamides, and ease my heart upon him, and yet, to say the sooth, Sir Tristram is the gentlest knight in this world living. What will ye do? said Sir Tristram, will ye go with me to your lodging? Nay, said he, I will go to the king with the hundred knights, for he rescued me from Sir Bors de Ganis and Sir Ector, and else had I been slain traitourly. Sir Tristram said him such kind words that Sir Palamides went with him to his lodging. Then Gouvernail went tofore and charged dame Bragwaine to go out of the way to her lodging, and bid ye Sir Persides that he make him no quarrels. And so they rode together till they came to Sir Tristram's pavilion, and there Sir Palamides had all the cheer that might be had all that night. But in no wise Sir Palamides might not know what was Sir Tristram. And so after supper they went to rest, and Sir Tristram for great travail slept till it was day. And Sir Palamides might not sleep for anguish, and in the dawning of the day he took his horse privily and rode his way unto Sir Gaheris and to Sir Sagramor le Desirous, where they were in their pavilions, for they three were fellows at the beginning of the tournament. And then upon the morn the king blew unto the tournament upon the third day.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Sir Tristram smote down mides, and bow he justed Arthur, and other feats.

So the king of Northgalis king with the hundred knights, encountered with king Carados the king of Ireland, and there with the hundred knights smo king Carados, and the king o galis smote down the king of With that came in Sir Palami when he came he made great by his indented shield he known. So came in king Art did great deeds of arms toget put the king of Northgalis and with the hundred knights to th With this came in Sir Tristram black shield, and anon he just Sir Palamides, and there by fi Sir Tristram smote Sir Palami his horse croup. Then king cried, Knight with the blac make thee ready to me. And same wise Sir Tristram smc Arthur. And then by force Arthur's knights the king Palamides were horsed again king Arthur with a great eag gat a spear in his hand, and th the one side he smote Sir Tris his horse. Then foot-hot Sir P came upon Sir Tristram as he foot, to have over-ridden him. Tristram was ware of him, and stooped aside, and with great i him by the arm, and pulled hi from his horse. Then Sir P lightly arose, and then they da gether mightily with their sw many kings, queens, and lor and beheld them. And at the Tristram smote Sir Palamides helm three mighty strokes, and stroke that he gave him he sa this for Sir Tristram's sake. V Sir Palamides fell to the earth ing. And then came the king hundred knights and brought tram an horse, and so was h again. By then was Sir P

id with great ire he justed Tristram with his spear as it e rest, and gave him a great his spear. Then Sir Tristram is spear and gat him by the . his both hands, and pulled out of his saddle, and so he afore him the length of ten d then in the presence of them im fall at his adventure. Then im was ware of king Arthur ked sword in his hand, and spear Sir Tristram ran upon hur, and then king Arthur ode him, and with his sword a-two his spear, and there- Tristram was astonished, and rthur gave him three or four kes or he might get out his id at the last Sir Tristram word and assailed other pass-

With that the great press en Sir Tristram rode here and did his great pain, that eleven d knights of the blood of king was of Sir Launcelot's kin, ir Tristram smote down, that tates marvelled of his great d all cried upon the knight black shield.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Launcelot hurt Sir Tristram, and er Sir Tristram smote down les.

his cry was so large that Sir heard it. And then he gat a r in his hand, and came to- cry. Then Sir Launcelot knight with the black shield, ready to just with me. When am heard him say so, he gat n his hand, and either abashed r heads, and came together as nd Sir Tristram's spear brake and Sir Launcelot by mal-for- k Sir Tristram on the side a nd nigh to the death. But yet m avoided not his saddle, and pear brake: therewithal Sir that was wounded gat out his d he rashed to Sir Launcelot, and gave him three great strokes upon the helm that the fire spang there out, and Sir Launcelot abashed his head lowly toward his saddle-bow. And therewithal Sir Tristram departed from the field, for he felt him so wounded that he wend he should have died. And Sir Dinadan espied him, and followed him into the forest. Then Sir Launcelot abode and did many marvellous deeds. So when Sir Tristram was departed by the forest side, he alight, and unlaced his harness and refreshed his wound. Then wend Sir Dinadan that he should have died. Nay, nay, said Sir Tristram, Dinadan never dread thee, for I am heart whole, and of this wound I shall soon be whole by the mercy of God. By that Sir Dinadan was ware where came Sir Palamides riding straight upon them. And then Sir Tristram was ware that Sir Palamides came to have destroyed him. And so Sir Dinadan gave him warning and said, Sir Tristram, my lord, ye are so sore wounded that ye may not have ado with him, therefore I will ride against him and do to him what I may; and if I be slain ye may pray for my soul, and in the meanwhile ye may withdraw you and go into the castle, or into the forest, that he shall not meet with you. Sir Tristram smiled and said, I thank you, Sir Dinadan, of your good will, but ye shall wit that I am able to handle him. And then anon hastily he armed him and took his horse and gat a great spear in his hand, and said to Sir Dinadan, Adieu, and rode toward Sir Palamides a soft pace.

Then when Sir Palamides saw that, he made countenance to amend his horse; but he did it for this cause, for he abode Sir Gaheris that came after him. And when he was come, he rode toward Sir Tristram. Then Sir Tristram sent unto Sir Palamides and required him to just with him; and if he smote down Sir Palamides he would do no more to him; and if it so happened that Sir Palamides smote down Sir Tristram he bad him do his utterance. So they were accorded. Then they met together, and Sir Tristram smote down Sir

Palamides, that he had a grievous fall, so that he lay still as he had been dead. And then Sir Tristram ran upon Sir Gaheris, and he would not have justed, but whether he would or not Sir Tristram smote him over his horse croup, that he lay still as though he had been dead. And then Sir Tristram rode his way, and left Sir Persides' squire within the pavilions, and Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan rode to an old knight's place to lodge them. And that old knight had five sons at the tournament, for whom he prayed heartily for their coming home. And so, as the French book saith, they came home all five well beaten.

And when Sir Tristram departed into the forest, Sir Launcelot held alway the fight like hard as a man enraged that took no heed to himself, and wit ye well there was many a noble knight against him. And when king Arthur saw Sir Launcelot do so marvellous deeds of arms, he then armed him, and took his horse and armour, and rode into the field to help Sir Launcelot, and so many knights came in with king Arthur. And to make short tale, in conclusion, the king of Northgalis and the king of the hundred knights were put to the worse, and because Sir Launcelot abode and was the last in the field, the prize was given him. But Sir Launcelot would neither for king, queen, nor knight have the prize. But where the cry was cried through the field, Sir Launcelot, Sir Launcelot, hath won the field this day, Sir Launcelot let make another cry contrary, Sir Tristram hath won the field, for he began first, and last he hath endured, and so hath he done the first day, the second, and the third day.

CHAP. XXXV.

How the prize of the third day was given to Sir Launcelot, and Sir Launcelot gave it unto Sir Tristram.

THEN all the estates and degrees high and low said of Sir Launcelot great worship for the honour that he did unto Sir Tristram, and for that honour doing to Sir Tristram he was at that tir praised and renowned than if overthrown five hundred knigl all the people wholly for this ge first the estates both high and l after the commonalty, cried at c Launcelot hath won the field, wl say nay. Then was Sir Launcelc and ashamed, and so therewi rode to king Arthur. Alas, s king, we are all dismayed that S tram is thus departed from us. said king Arthur, he is one of blest knights that ever I saw ho or sword in hand, and the mo teyest knight in his fighting, for I I saw him, said king Arthur, v smote Sir Palamides upon hi thrice that he abashed his hel his strokes, and also he said, h stroke for Sir Tristram, and thr he said. Then king Arthur, Si celot, and Sir Dodinas le Sava their horses to seek Sir Tristr by the means of Sir Persides he l king Arthur where Sir Tristram his pavilion, but when they car Sir Tristram and Sir Dinada gone. Then king Arthur and Si celot were heavy, and returne to the Castle of Maidens makir dole for the hurt of Sir Tristr his sudden departing. Truly, s Arthur, I am more heavy that l meet with him than for all th that all my knights have had tournament. Right so came S heris and told to king Arthur Tristram had smitten down S mides, and it was at Sir Palamide request. Alas, said king Arth was great dishonour to Sir Pal inasmuch as Sir Tristram w wounded, and now may we all and knights, and men of wors that Sir Tristram may be called knight, and one of the best knig ever I saw the days of my life. will that ye all kings and knight said king Arthur, that I nev knight do so marvellously as done these three days, for he first that began, and that long

iis last day. And though he it was a manly adventure of knights: and when two noble inter needs must the one have like as God will suffer at that for me, said Sir Launcelot, lands that ever my father left d not have hurt Sir Tristram d known him at that time. rt him was for I saw not his if I had seen his black shield ot have meddled with him for ses, for late he did as much ever knight did, and that is n that he had ado with thirty nd no help save Sir Dinadan. thing shall I promise, said Sir , Sir Palamides shall repent it, unkindly dealing for to follow knight that I by mishap hurt Launcelot said all the wor- might be said by Sir Tristram. Arthur made a great feast to ould come.

us let we pass king Arthur, le we will turn unto Sir Pala- it, after he had a fall of Sir he was nigh hand enraged out for despite of Sir Tristram. e followed him by adventure. came by a river in his wood- ould have made his horse to over; and the horse failed id fell in the river, wherefore ides was adread lest he should drowned, and then he avoided nd swam to the land, and let go down by adventure.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Palamides came to the castle Sir Tristram was, and of the t Sir Launcelot and ten knights r Sir Tristram.

hen he came to the land he his harness, and sat roaring g as a man out of his mind. came a damsel even by Sir , that was sent from Sir Ga- his brother unto Sir Mordred, ck in the same place with that where Sir Tristram was. For, as the French book saith, Sir Persides hurt so Sir Mordred a ten days afore; and had it not been for the love of Sir Gawaine and his brother, Sir Persides had slain Sir Mordred. And so this damsel came by Sir Palamides, and she and he had language together, the which pleased neither of them: and so the damsel rode her ways till she came to the old knight's place, and there she told that old knight how she had met with the woodest knight by adventure that ever she met withal. What bare he in his shield? said Sir Tristram. It was indented with white and black, said the damsel. Ah, said Sir Tristram, that was Sir Palamides the good knight, for well I know him, said Sir Tristram, for one of the best knights living in this realm. Then that old knight took a little hackney, and rode for Sir Palamides, and brought him unto his own manor; and then full well knew Sir Tristram Sir Palamides, but he said but little, for at that time Sir Tristram was walking upon his feet, and well amended of his hurts, and always when Sir Palamides saw Sir Tristram he would behold him full marvellously. And ever him seemed that he had seen him. Then would he say to Sir Dinadan, And ever I may meet with Sir Tristram, he shall not escape my hands. I marvel, said Sir Dinadan, that ye boast behind Sir Tristram, for it is but late that he was in your hands, and ye in his hands; why would ye not hold him when ye had him? for I saw myself twice or thrice that ye gat but little worship of Sir Tristram. Then was Sir Palamides ashamed. So leave we them a little while in the castle with the old knight Sir Darras.

Now shall we speak of king Arthur, that said to Sir Launcelot, Had not ye been, we had not lost Sir Tristram, for he was here daily unto the time ye met with him, and in an evil time, said Arthur, ye encountered with him. My lord Arthur, said Launcelot, ye put upon me that I should be cause of his departure: truly it was against my will. But when men be hot in deeds of arms, often they hurt their friends as well as their foes;

and my lord, said Sir Launcelot, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram is a man that I am loth to offend, for he hath done for me more than ever I did for him as yet. But then Sir Launcelot made to bring forth a book, and then Sir Launcelot said, Here we are ten knights that will swear upon a book never to rest one night where we rest another, this twelvemonth, until that we find Sir Tristram. And as for me, said Sir Launcelot, I promise you upon this book that and I may meet with him, either by fairness or foulness I shall bring him to this court, or else I shall die therefore. And the names of these ten knights that had undertaken this quest were these following. First was Sir Launcelot; Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, and Bleoberis, and Sir Blamor de Ganis, and Lucan the butler, Sir Uwaine, Sir Galihud, Sir Lionel, and Galiodin. So these ten noble knights departed from the court of king Arthur; and so they rode upon their quest together until they came to a cross where departed four highways, and there departed the fellowship in four, to seek Sir Tristram. And as Sir Launcelot rode by adventure he met with dame Bragwaine, that was sent into that country to seek Sir Tristram, and she fled as fast as her palfrey might go. So Sir Launcelot met with her, and asked her why she fled. Ah, fair knight, said dame Bragwaine, I flee for dread of my life, for here followeth me Sir Breuse Sance Pité to slay me. Hold you nigh me, said Sir Launcelot. Then when Sir Launcelot saw Sir Breuse Sance Pité, Sir Launcelot cried unto him and said, False knight, destroyer of ladies and damsels, now thy last days be come. When Sir Breuse Sance Pité saw Sir Launcelot's shield he knew it well, for at that time he bare not the arms of Cornwall, but he bare his own shield. And then Sir Breuse fled, and Sir Launcelot followed after him. But Sir Breuse was so well horsed, that when him list to flee he might well flee, and also abide when him list. And *then* Sir Launcelot returned unto dame Bragwaine, and she thanked hin great labour.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Tristram, Sir Palamid Sir Dinadan were taken and prison.

Now will we speak of Sir Lu butler, that by fortune came ri the same place there as was Si tram, and in he came in non intent but to ask harbour. Th porter asked what was his nam your lord that my name is Sir the butler, a knight of the Round So the porter went unto Sir Darr of the place, and told him wh there to ask harbour. Nay, na Sir Daname, that was nephew u Darras, say him that he shall lodged here. But let him wit Sir Daname will meet with hin and bid him make him ready. Daname came forth on horseba there they met together with and Sir Lucan smote down Sir I over his horse croup, and then into that place, and Sir Lucan ro him, and asked after him many Then Sir Dinadan said to Sir Ti It is shame to see the lord's co this place defoiled. Abide, s Tristram, and I shall redress it in the mean while Sir Dinadan horseback, and he justed with the butler, and there Sir Lucan Dinadan through the thick of the and so he rode his way, and Si tram was wroth that Sir Dinad hurt, and followed after, and t to avenge him. And within a r overtook Sir Lucan and bade hin and so they met together, so t Tristram hurt Sir Lucan passin and gave him a fall. With tha Sir Uwaine, a gentle knight, and he saw Sir Lucan so hurt, he ca Tristram to just with him. Fair said Sir Tristram, tell me your require you. Sir knight, wit my name is Sir Uwaine le Fise Ureine. Ah, said Sir Tristram,

ıld not have ado with you at
Ye shall not so, said Sir
ut ye shall have ado with me.
Sir Tristram saw none other
rode against him, and over-
Uwaine, and hurt him in the
o he departed unto his lodging
nd when Sir Dinadan under-
t Sir Tristram had hurt Sir
would have ridden after Sir
have slain him, but Sir Tris-
d not suffer him.
r Uwaine let ordain an horse-
brought Sir Lucan to the
Ganis, and the castle thereby
castle of Ganis, of the which
eris was lord. And at that
Launcelot promised all his
meet in the quest of Sir Tris-
when Sir Tristram was come
ring, there came a damsel that
Darras that three of his sons
at that tournament, and two
wounded that they were never
p themselves, and all this was
ı noble knight that bare the
ld, and that was he that bare
Then came there one and
Darras that the same knight
n him that bare the black
hen Sir Darras went unto
ım's chamber, and there he
shield and shewed it to the
Ah, sir, said the damsel, that
e that slew your three sons.
ıout any tarrying Sir Darras
Tristram, and Sir Palamides,
inadan within a strong prison,
Sir Tristram was like to have
:at sickness, and every day Sir
would reprove Sir Tristram
te betwixt them. And ever
ım spake fair and said little.
Sir Palamides saw the falling
s of Sir Tristram then was he
him, and comforted him in all
wise he could. And, as the
ook saith, there came forty
) Sir Darras that were of his
and they would have slain Sir
and his two fellows, but Sir
ould not suffer that, but kept
prison, and meat and drink
they had. So Sir Tristram endured there great pain, for sickness had undertaken him, and that is the greatest pain a prisoner may have. For all the while a prisoner may have his health of body, he may endure under the mercy of God, and in hope of good deliverance; but when sickness toucheth a prisoner's body, then may a prisoner say all wealth is him bereft, and then he hath cause to wail and to weep. And so did Sir Tristram when sickness had undertaken him, for then he took such sorrow that he had almost slain himself.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How king Mark was sorry for the good renown of Sir Tristram: some of king Arthur's knights justed with knights of Cornwall.

Now will we speak, and leave Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan in prison, and speak we of other knights that sought after Sir Tristram many divers parts of this land. And some went into Cornwall, and by adventure Sir Gaheris, nephew unto king Arthur, came unto king Mark, and there he was well received, and sat at king Mark's own table and eat of his own mess. Then king Mark asked Sir Gaheris what tidings there were in the realm of Logris. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, the king reigneth as a noble knight, and now but late there was a great justs and tournament as ever I saw any in the realm of Logris, and the most noble knights were at that justs. But there was one knight that did marvellously three days, and he bare a black shield, and of all knights that ever I saw he proved the best knight. Then said king Mark, That was Sir Launcelot, or Sir Palamides the Paynim. Not so, said Sir Gaheris, for both Sir Launcelot and Sir Palamides were on the contrary part against the knight with the black shield. Then it was Sir Tristram, said the king. Yea, said Sir Gaheris. And therewith the king smote down his head, and in his heart he feared sore that Sir Tristram should get him such worship in the realm of

Logris, where through that he himself should not be able to withstand him. Thus Sir Gaheris had great cheer with king Mark, and with queen La Beale Isoud, the which was glad of Sir Gaheris' words; for well she wist by his deeds and manners that it was Sir Tristram. And then the king made a feast royal, and unto that feast came Sir Uwaine le Fise de Roy Ureine, and some folk called him Uwaine le Blanche Mains. And this Sir Uwaine challenged all the knights of Cornwall. Then was the king wood wroth that he had no knights to answer him. Then Sir Andred, nephew unto king Mark, lept up and said, I will encounter with Sir Uwaine. Then he went and armed him, and horsed him in the best manner. And there Sir Uwaine met with Sir Andred and smote him down, that he swooned on the earth. Then was king Mark sorry and wroth out of measure that he had no knight to revenge his nephew Sir Andred. So the king called unto him Sir Dinas the seneschal, and prayed him for his sake to take upon him to just with Sir Uwaine. Sir, said Sir Dinas, I am full loth to have ado with any knight of the Round Table. Yet, said the king, for my love take upon thee to just. So Sir Dinas made him ready, and anon they encountered together with great spears, but Sir Dinas was overthrown, horse and man, a great fall. Who was wroth but king Mark? Alas, he said, have I no knight that will encounter with yonder knight. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, for your sake I will just. So Sir Gaheris made him ready, and when he was armed he rode into the field. And when Sir Uwaine saw Sir Gaheris' shield, he rode unto him and said, Sir, ye do not your part; for, sir, the first time ye were made knight of the Round Table ye sware that ye should not have ado with your fellowship wittingly. And pardy Sir Gaheris, ye knew me well enough by my shield, and so do I know you by your shield, and though ye would break your oath I would not break mine, for there is not one here, nor ye, that shall think I am afraid of you, but I durst right well have ado with you, but we be sisters' sons. Then was Sir Gaheris ashamed. And so therewithal every knight went his way, and Sir Uwaine rode into the country. Then king Mark armed him and took his horse and his spear, with a squire with him. And then he rode afore Sir Uwaine, and suddenly at a gap he ran upon him as he that was not ware of him, and there he smote him almost through the body, and there left him. So within a while there came Sir Kay, and found Sir Uwaine, and asked him how he was hurt. I wot not, said Sir Uwaine, why, nor wherefore, but by treason I am sure I gat this hurt, for here came a knight suddenly upon me or that I was ware, and suddenly hurt me. Then there was come Sir Andred to seek king Mark. Thou traitor knight, said Sir Kay, and I wist it were thou that thus traitourly hast hurt this noble knight, thou shouldst never pass my hands. Sir, said Sir Andred, I did never hurt him, and that I will report me to himself. Fie on you, false knights, said Sir Kay, for ye of Cornwall are nought worth. So Sir Kay made carry Sir Uwaine to the abbey of the black cross, and there he was healed. And then Sir Gaheris took his leave of king Mark. But or he departed he said, Sir king, ye did a foul shame unto you and your court when ye banished Sir Tristram out of this country, for ye needed not to have doubted no knight and he had been here. And so he departed.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the treason of king Mark, and how Sir Gaheris smote him down and Andred his cousin.

THEN there came Sir Kay the seneschal unto king Mark, and there he had good cheer shewing outward. Now fair lords, said he, will ye prove any adventures in the forest of Morris, in the which I know well is as hard an adventure as I know any. Sir, said Sir Kay, I will prove it. And Sir Gaheris said he would

d, for king Mark was ever full
n. And therewithal Sir Ga-
arted and rode his way. And
ame way that Sir Kay should
id him down to rest, charging
e to wait upon Sir Kay,—and
when he cometh. So within a
r Kay came riding that way.
n Sir Gaheris took his horse
him, and said, Sir Kay, ye are
to ride at the request of king
r he dealeth all with treason.
d Sir Kay, I require you let us
is adventure. I shall not fail
l Sir Gaheris. And so they
t time till a lake that was that
ed the perilous lake, and there
le under the shawe of the wood.
n while king Mark within the
Tintagil avoided all his barons,
ther save such as were privy
1 were all avoided out of his
And then he let call his
Sir Andred, and bad arm him
e him lightly, and by that time
idnight. And so king Mark
d in black, horse and all. And
privy postern they two issued
their varlets with them, and
they came to that lake. Then
espied them first, and gat his
d proffered to just. And king
le against him, and smote each
l hard, for the moon shone as
t day. And there at that justs
s horse fell down, for his horse
so big as the king's horse was,
Kay's horse bruised him full
ien Sir Gaheris was wroth that
had a fall. Then he cried,
sit thou fast in thy saddle, for
venge my fellow. Then king
s afeard of Sir Gaheris, and so
will king Mark rode against
l Sir Gaheris gave him such a
at he fell down. So then forth-
r Gaheris ran unto Sir Andred,
e him from his horse quite that
smote in the earth and nigh
en his neck. And therewith Sir
alight, and gat up Sir Kay.
n they went both on foot to
l bad them yield them and tell
their names, or else they should die. Then with great pain Sir Andred spake first and said, It is king Mark of Cornwall, therefore beware what ye do, and I am Sir Andred his cousin. Fie on you both, said Sir Gaheris, for a false traitor, and false treason hast thou wrought and he both, under the feigned cheer that ye made us. It were pity, said Sir Gaheris, that thou shouldst live any longer. Save my life, said king Mark, and I will make amends; and consider that I am a king anointed. It were the more shame, said Sir Gaheris, to save thy life; thou art a king anointed with crism, and therefore thou shouldest hold with all men of worship; and therefore thou art worthy to die. With that he lashed at king Mark without saying any more; and he covered him with his shield, and defended him as he might. And then Sir Kay lashed at Sir Andred. And therewithal king Mark yielded him unto Sir Gaheris, and then he kneeled down, and made his oath upon the cross of the sword that never while he lived he would be against errant knights. And also he sware to be good friend unto Sir Tristram, if ever he came into Cornwall. By then Sir Andred was on the earth, and Sir Kay would have slain him. Let be, said Sir Gaheris, slay him not I pray you. It were pity, said Sir Kay, that he should live any longer, for this is nigh cousin unto Sir Tristram, and ever he hath been a traitor unto him, and by him he was exiled out of Cornwall, and therefore I will slay him, said Sir Kay. Ye shall not, said Sir Gaheris; sithen I have given the king his life, I pray you give him his life. And therewithal Sir Kay let him go. And so Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris rode forth their way unto Dinas the seneschal, for because they heard say that he loved well Sir Tristram. So they reposed them there. And soon after they rode unto the realm of Logris. And so within a little while they met with Sir Launcelot, that had always dame Bragwaine with him, to that intent he wend to have met sooner with Sir Tristram, and Sir Launcelot asked what tidings in Cornwall,

and whether they heard of Sir Tristram or not. Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris answered and said that they heard not of him. Then they told Sir Launcelot word by word of their adventure. Then Sir Launcelot smiled, and said, Hard it is to take out of the flesh that is bred in the bone. And so made them merry together.

CHAP. XL.

How after that Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan had been long in prison they were delivered.

Now leave we off this tale and speak we of Sir Dinas that loved a lady within the castle, and she loved another knight better than him. And so when Sir Dinas went out on hunting she slipped down by a towel, and took with her two brachets, and so she went to the knight that she loved. And when Sir Dinas came home and missed his lady, and his brachets, then was he more wroth for his brachets than for the lady. So then he rode after the knight that had his lady, and bad him turn and just. So Sir Dinas smote him down, that with the fall he brake his leg and his arm. And then his lady cried Sir Dinas mercy, and said she would love him better than ever she did. Nay, said Sir Dinas, I shall never trust them that once betrayed me, and therefore as ye have begun so end, for I will never meddle with you. And so Sir Dinas departed and took his brachets with him, and so rode to his castle.

Now will we turn unto Sir Launcelot, that was right heavy that he could never hear no tidings of Sir Tristram, for all this while he was in prison with Sir Darras, Palamides, and Dinadan. Then dame Bragwaine took her leave to go into Cornwall, and Sir Launcelot, Sir Kay, and Sir Gaheris rode to seek Sir Tristram in the country of Surluse. Now speaketh this tale of Sir Tristram and of his two fellows, for every day Sir Palamides brawled and said language against Sir Tristram. I marvel, said Sir Dinadan, of thee Sir Palamides: and thou hadst Sir Tristram here thou wouldst do him no harm; for and a wolf and a sheep were together in prison, the wolf would suffer the sheep to be in peace. And wit thou well, said Sir Dinadan, this same is Sir Tristram at a word, and now mayest thou do thy best with him, and let see now how ye can shift it with your hands. Then was Sir Palamides abashed and said little. Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, I have heard much of your ill-will against me, but I will not meddle with you as at this time by my will, because I dread the lord of this place that hath us in governance, for and I dread him more than I do thee, soon should it be shift. So they appeased themselves. Right so came in a damsel and said, Knights, be of good cheer, for ye are sure of your lives, and that I heard say my lord Sir Darras. Then were they glad all three, for daily they wend they should have died. Then soon after this Sir Tristram fell sick, that he wend to have died. Then Sir Dinadan wept, and so did Sir Palamides under them both making great sorrow. So a damsel came into them, and found them mourning. Then she went to Sir Darras and told him how that mighty knight that bare the black shield was likely to die. That shall not be, said Sir Darras, for God defend when any knights come to me for succour that I should suffer them to die within my prison. Therefore, said Sir Darras to the damsel, fetch that knight and his fellows afore me. And then anon when Sir Darras saw Sir Tristram afore him, he said, Sir knight, me repenteth of thy sickness, for thou art called a full noble knight, and so it seemeth by thee. And wit ye well, it shall never be said that Sir Darras shall destroy such a noble knight as thou art in prison, howbeit that thou hast slain three of my sons, whereby I was greatly agrieved. But now shalt thou go and thy fellows, and your harness and horses have been fair and clean kept, and ye shall go where it liketh you, upon this covenant, that

ht, will promise me to be
d to my sons two that be
e, and also that thou tell me
Sir, said he, as for me, my
r Tristram de Liones, and in
vas I born, and nephew I am
Mark. And as for the death
ns, I might not do withal,
y had been the next kin that
night have done none other-
l if I had slain them by
treachery, I had been worthy
ed. All this I consider, said
, that all that ye did was by
ighthood, and that was the
ould not put you to death.
ye be Sir Tristram the good
pray you heartily to be my
l and to my sons. Sir, said
n, I promise you by the faith
y ever while I live I will do
e, for ye have done to us but
l knight ought to do. Then
n reposed him there till that
ended of his sickness. And
as big and strong they took
and every knight took their
l so departed, and rode to-
they came to a cross way.
ws, said Sir Tristram, here
part in sundry ways. And
r Dinadan had the first ad-
him I will begin.

CHAP. XLI.

Dinadan rescued a lady from se Sance Pité, and how Sir received a shield of Morgan

r Dinadan rode by a well, he
ly making great dole. What
? said Sir Dinadan. Sir
id the lady, I am the wo-
y of the world, for within
days here came a knight
Breuse Sance Pité, and he
own brother, and ever since
pt me at his own will, and of
the world I hate him most.
ore I require you of knight-
venge me, for he will not
e here anon. Let him come,
said Sir Dinadan, and because of honour of all women I will do my part. With this came Sir Breuse, and when he saw a knight with his lady, he was wood wroth. And then he said, Sir knight, keep thee from me. So they hurled together as thunder, and either smote other passing sore. But Sir Dinadan put him through the shoulder a grievous wound, and or ever Sir Dinadan might turn him, Sir Breuse was gone and fled. Then the lady prayed him to bring her to a castle there beside but four mile thence. And so Sir Dinadan brought her there, and she was welcome, for the lord of that castle was her uncle. And so Sir Dinadan rode his way upon his adventure.

Now turn we this tale unto Sir Tristram, that by adventure he came to a castle to ask lodging, wherein was queen Morgan le Fay. And so when Sir Tristram was let into that castle he had good cheer all that night. And upon the morn when he would have departed, the queen said, Wit ye well ye shall not depart lightly, for ye are here as a prisoner. God defend, said Sir Tristram, for I was but late a prisoner. Fair knight, said the queen, ye shall abide with me till that I wit what ye are, and from whence ye come. And ever the queen would set Sir Tristram on her side, and her paramour on the other side, and ever queen Morgan would behold Sir Tristram, and thereat the knight was jealous, and was in will suddenly to have run upon Sir Tristram with a sword, but he left it for shame. Then the queen said to Sir Tristram, Tell me thy name, and I shall suffer you to depart when you will. Upon that covenant I tell you my name is Sir Tristram de Liones. Ah, said Morgan le Fay, and I had wist that thou shouldst not have departed so soon as thou shalt: but sithen I have made a promise I will hold it, with that thou wilt promise me to bear upon thee a shield that I shall deliver thee, unto the castle of the Hard Rock, where king Arthur hath cried a great tournament, and there I pray you that ye will be,

and to do for me as much deeds of arms as ye may do. For at that Castle of Maidens, Sir Tristram, ye did marvellous deeds of arms as ever I heard knight do. Madam, said Sir Tristram, let me see the shield that I shall bear. So the shield was brought forth, and the shield was goldish, with a king and a queen therein painted, and a knight standing above them, with one foot upon the king's head, and the other upon the queen's. Madam, said Sir Tristram, this is a fair shield and a mighty; but what signifieth this king and this queen and that knight standing upon both their heads. I shall tell you, said Morgan le Fay, it signifieth king Arthur and queen Guenever, and a knight that holdeth them both in bondage and servage. Who is that knight? said Sir Tristram. That shall ye not wit as at this time, said the queen. But, as the French book saith, queen Morgan loved Sir Launcelot best, and ever she desired him, and he would never love her, nor do nothing at her request, and therefore she held many knights together for to have taken him by strength. And because she deemed that Sir Launcelot loved queen Guenever, and she him again, therefore queen Morgan le Fay ordained that shield to put Sir Launcelot to a rebuke, to that intent that king Arthur might understand the love between them. Then Sir Tristram took that shield and promised her to bear it at the tournament at the castle of the Hard Rock. But Sir Tristram knew not that shield was ordained against Sir Launcelot, but afterward he knew it.

CHAP. XLII.

How Sir Tristram took with him the shield, and also how he slew the paramour of Morgan le Fay.

So then Sir Tristram took his leave of the queen, and took the shield with him. Then came the knight that held queen Morgan le Fay, his name was Sir Hemison, and he made him ready to follow Sir Tristram. Fair friend, said Morgan, ride not after that knight, for ye shall win no worship of him on him, coward, said Sir Hemis I wist never good knight come Cornwall, but if it were Sir Tristi Liones. What and that be he she. Nay, nay, said he, he is w Beale Isoud, and this is but a knight. Alas my fair friend, ye find him the best knight that e met withal, for I know him bette ye do. For your sake, said Sir son, I shall slay him. Ah, fair said the queen, me repenteth th will follow that knight, for I fe sore of your again coming. Wit this knight rode his way wood and he rode after Sir Tristram a as he had been chased with kn When Sir Tristram heard a knight after him so fast, he returned and saw a knight coming against And when he came nigh to Sir tram, he cried on high, Sir knight, thee from me. Then they rushe gether as it had been thunder, an Hemison bruised his spear upo Tristram, but his harness was so that he might not hurt him. An Tristram smote him harder, and him through the body, and he fell his horse croup. Then Sir Tri turned to have done more wit sword, but he saw so much blo from him, that him seemed he likely to die: and so he departed him and came to a fair manor old knight, and there Sir Tri lodged.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Morgan le Fay buried her para and how Sir Tristram praised Sir celot and his kin.

Now leave we to speak of Sir tram, and speak we of the knigh was wounded to the death. The varlet alight, and took off his helm then he asked his master whether were any life in him. There is life, said the knight, but it is but and therefore leap thou up behin when thou hast holpen me up; an me fast that I fall not, and brin

Morgan le Fay, for deep of death draw to my heart, ıy not live, for I would fain h her or I died. For else my be in great peril and I die. great pain his varlet brought e castle, and there Sir Hemi- own dead. When Morgan le ıim dead, she made great sor- ɔf reason. And then she let m unto his shirt, and so she ıut into a tomb. And about she let write: Here lieth Sir slain by the hands of Sir Tris- ıones. Now turn we unto Sir that asked the knight, his host, late any knights adventurous. id, the last night here lodged ir Ector de Maris and a damsel and that damsel told me that ne of the best knights of the That is not so, said Sir Tris- I know four better knights of lood; and the first is Sir Laun- ake, call him the best knight; ors de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir : Ganis, and Sir Gaheris. Nay, ıost, Sir Gawaine is a better an he. That is not so, said am, for I have met with them l I felt Sir Gaheris for the ight; and Sir Lamorak, I call ıod as any of them, except Sir :. Why name ye not Sir Tris- . his host, for I account him as ıny of them. I know not Sir said Tristram. Thus they d jested as long as them list, went to rest. And on the morn ram departed and took his is host, and rode towards the re, and none adventure had Sir but that, and so he rested not ne to the castle, where he saw ed tents.

CHAP. XLIV.

Tristram at a tournament bare ld that Morgan le Fay had de- bim.

he king of Scots and the king l held against king Arthur's knights, and there began a great meddle. So came in Sir Tristram and did marvellous deeds of arms, for there he smote down many knights. And ever he was afore king Arthur with that shield. And when king Arthur saw that shield, he marvelled greatly in what intent it was made. But queen Guenever deemed as it was, wherefore she was heavy. Then was there a damsel of queen Morgan in a chamber by king Arthur, and when she heard king Arthur speak of that shield, then she spake openly unto king Arthur, Sir king, wit ye well this shield was ordained for you, to warn you of your shame and dishonour, and that longeth to you and to your queen. And then anon the damsel piked her away privily, that no man wist where she was become. Then was king Arthur sad and wroth, and asked from whence came that damsel. There was not one that knew her, nor wist where she was become. Then queen Guenever called to her Sir Ector de Maris, and there she made her complaint to him, and said, I wot well this shield was made by Morgan le Fay, in despite of me and Sir Launcelot, wherefore I dread sore lest I should be destroyed. And ever the king beheld Sir Tristram that did so marvellous deeds of arms, that he wondered sore what knight he might be, and well he wist it was not Sir Launcelot. And it was told him that Sir Tristram was in Petit Britain with Isoud la Blanche Mains, for he deemed, and he had been in the realm of Logris, Sir Launcelot or some of his fellows that were in the quest of Sir Tristram, that they should have found him or that time. So king Arthur had marvel what knight he might be. And ever Sir Arthur's eye was on that shield. All that espied the queen, and that made her sore afeard. Then ever Sir Tristram smote down knights, wonderly to behold, what upon the right hand and upon the left hand, that unneth no knight might withstand him. And the king of Scots and the king of Ireland began to withdraw them. When Arthur espied that, he thought that that knight

and my lord, said Sir Launcelot, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram is a man that I am loth to offend, for he hath done for me more than ever I did for him as yet. But then Sir Launcelot made to bring forth a book, and then Sir Launcelot said, Here we are ten knights that will swear upon a book never to rest one night where we rest another, this twelvemonth, until that we find Sir Tristram. And as for me, said Sir Launcelot, I promise you upon this book that and I may meet with him, either by fairness or foulness I shall bring him to this court, or else I shall die therefore. And the names of these ten knights that had undertaken this quest were these following. First was Sir Launcelot; Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, and Bleoberis, and Sir Blamor de Ganis, and Lucan the butler, Sir Uwaine, Sir Galihud, Sir Lionel, and Galiodin. So these ten noble knights departed from the court of king Arthur; and so they rode upon their quest together until they came to a cross where departed four highways, and there departed the fellowship in four, to seek Sir Tristram. And as Sir Launcelot rode by adventure he met with dame Bragwaine, that was sent into that country to seek Sir Tristram, and she fled as fast as her palfrey might go. So Sir Launcelot met with her, and asked her why she fled. Ah, fair knight, said dame Bragwaine, I flee for dread of my life, for here followeth me Sir Breuse Sance Pité to slay me. Hold you nigh me, said Sir Launcelot. Then when Sir Launcelot saw Sir Breuse Sance Pité, Sir Launcelot cried unto him and said, False knight, destroyer of ladies and damsels, now thy last days be come. When Sir Breuse Sance Pité saw Sir Launcelot's shield he knew it well, for at that time he bare not the arms of Cornwall, but he bare his own shield. And then Sir Breuse fled, and Sir Launcelot followed after him. But Sir Breuse was so well horsed, that when him list to flee he might well flee, and also abide when him list. And *then Sir* Launcelot returned unto dame Bragwaine, and she thanked hi great labour.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Tristram, Sir Palami Sir Dinadan were taken an prison.

Now will we speak of Sir L butler, that by fortune came the same place there as was tram, and in he came in no intent but to ask harbour. T porter asked what was his nam your lord that my name is Si the butler, a knight of the Roun So the porter went unto Sir Dar of the place, and told him there to ask harbour. Nay, n Sir Daname, that was nephew Darras, say him that he shall lodged here. But let him wi Sir Daname will meet with hi and bid him make him ready. Daname came forth on horseb there they met together with and Sir Lucan smote down Sir over his horse croup, and then into that place, and Sir Lucan r him, and asked after him man Then Sir Dinadan said to Sir T It is shame to see the lord's c this place defoiled. Abide, Tristram, and I shall redress i in the mean while Sir Dinadan horseback, and he justed with the butler, and there Sir Luca Dinadan through the thick of th and so he rode his way, and tram was wroth that Sir Dina hurt, and followed after, and to avenge him. And within a overtook Sir Lucan and bade hi and so they met together, so Tristram hurt Sir Lucan passi and gave him a fall. With th Sir Uwaine, a gentle knight, an he saw Sir Lucan so hurt, he c Tristram to just with him. Fair said Sir Tristram, tell me your require you. Sir knight, wit my name is Sir Uwaine le Fise Ureine. Ah, said Sir Tristram,

ould not have ado with you at
Ye shall not so, said Sir
but ye shall have ado with me.
a Sir Tristram saw none other
t rode against him, and over-
r Uwaine, and hurt him in the
so he departed unto his lodging
And when Sir Dinadan under-
at Sir Tristram had hurt Sir
e would have ridden after Sir
have slain him, but Sir Tris-
ld not suffer him.
Sir Uwaine let ordain an horse-
d brought Sir Lucan to the
Ganis, and the castle thereby
castle of Ganis, of the which
beris was lord. And at that
r Launcelot promised all his
meet in the quest of Sir Tris-
when Sir Tristram was come
lging, there came a damsel that
Darras that three of his sons
in at that tournament, and two
y wounded that they were never
elp themselves, and all this was
a noble knight that bare the
ield, and that was he that bare
. Then came there one and
Darras that the same knight
hin him that bare the black
Then Sir Darras went unto
ram's chamber, and there he
s shield and shewed it to the
Ah, sir, said the damsel, that
he that slew your three sons.
ithout any tarrying Sir Darras
Tristram, and Sir Palamides,
Dinadan within a strong prison,
e Sir Tristram was like to have
reat sickness, and every day Sir
es would reprove Sir Tristram
iate betwixt them. And ever
ram spake fair and said little.
n Sir Palamides saw the falling
ess of Sir Tristram then was he
r him, and comforted him in all
wise he could. And, as the
book saith, there came forty
to Sir Darras that were of his
, and they would have slain Sir
and his two fellows, but Sir
would not suffer that, but kept
prison, and meat and drink
they had. So Sir Tristram endured there great pain, for sickness had undertaken him, and that is the greatest pain a prisoner may have. For all the while a prisoner may have his health of body, he may endure under the mercy of God, and in hope of good deliverance; but when sickness toucheth a prisoner's body, then may a prisoner say all wealth is him bereft, and then he hath cause to wail and to weep. And so did Sir Tristram when sickness had undertaken him, for then he took such sorrow that he had almost slain himself.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How king Mark was sorry for the good renown of Sir Tristram: some of king Arthur's knights justed with knights of Cornwall.

Now will we speak, and leave Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan in prison, and speak we of other knights that sought after Sir Tristram many divers parts of this land. And some went into Cornwall, and by adventure Sir Gaheris, nephew unto king Arthur, came unto king Mark, and there he was well received, and sat at king Mark's own table and eat of his own mess. Then king Mark asked Sir Gaheris what tidings there were in the realm of Logris. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, the king reigneth as a noble knight, and now but late there was a great justs and tournament as ever I saw any in the realm of Logris, and the most noble knights were at that justs. But there was one knight that did marvellously three days, and he bare a black shield, and of all knights that ever I saw he proved the best knight. Then said king Mark, That was Sir Launcelot, or Sir Palamides the Paynim. Not so, said Sir Gaheris, for both Sir Launcelot and Sir Palamides were on the contrary part against the knight with the black shield. Then it was Sir Tristram, said the king. Yea, said Sir Gaheris. And therewith the king smote down his head, and in his heart he feared sore that Sir Tristram should get him such worship in the realm of

Logris, where through that he himself should not be able to withstand him. Thus Sir Gaheris had great cheer with king Mark, and with queen La Beale Isoud, the which was glad of Sir Gaheris' words; for well she wist by his deeds and manners that it was Sir Tristram. And then the king made a feast royal, and unto that feast came Sir Uwaine le Fise de Roy Ureine, and some folk called him Uwaine le Blanche Mains. And this Sir Uwaine challenged all the knights of Cornwall. Then was the king wood wroth that he had no knights to answer him. Then Sir Andred, nephew unto king Mark, lept up and said, I will encounter with Sir Uwaine. Then he went and armed him, and horsed him in the best manner. And there Sir Uwaine met with Sir Andred and smote him down, that he swooned on the earth. Then was king Mark sorry and wroth out of measure that he had no knight to revenge his nephew Sir Andred. So the king called unto him Sir Dinas the seneschal, and prayed him for his sake to take upon him to just with Sir Uwaine. Sir, said Sir Dinas, I am full loth to have ado with any knight of the Round Table. Yet, said the king, for my love take upon thee to just. So Sir Dinas made him ready, and anon they encountered together with great spears, but Sir Dinas was overthrown, horse and man, a great fall. Who was wroth but king Mark? Alas, he said, have I no knight that will encounter with yonder knight. Sir, said Sir Gaheris, for your sake I will just. So Sir Gaheris made him ready, and when he was armed he rode into the field. And when Sir Uwaine saw Sir Gaheris' shield, he rode unto him and said, Sir, ye do not your part; for, sir, the first time ye were made knight of the Round Table ye sware that ye should not have ado with your fellowship wittingly. And pardy Sir Gaheris, ye knew me well enough by my shield, and so do I know you by your shield, and though ye would break your oath I would not break mine, for there is not one here, nor ye, that shall think I am afraid of you, but I durst right well have ado with you, but we be sisters' sons. Then was Sir Gaheris ashamed. And so therewithal every knight went his way, and Sir Uwaine rode into the country. Then king Mark armed him and took his horse and his spear, with a squire with him. And then he rode afore Sir Uwaine, and suddenly at a gap he ran upon him as he that was not ware of him, and there he smote him almost through the body, and there left him. So within a while there came Sir Kay, and found Sir Uwaine, and asked him how he was hurt. I wot not, said Sir Uwaine, why, nor wherefore, but by treason I am sure I gat this hurt, for here came a knight suddenly upon me or that I was ware, and suddenly hurt me. Then there was come Sir Andred to seek king Mark. Thou traitor knight, said Sir Kay, and I wist it were thou that thus traitourly hast hurt this noble knight, thou shouldst never pass my hands. Sir, said Sir Andred, I did never hurt him, and that I will report me to himself. Fie on you, false knights, said Sir Kay, for ye of Cornwall are nought worth. So Sir Kay made carry Sir Uwaine to the abbey of the black cross, and there he was healed. And then Sir Gaheris took his leave of king Mark. But or he departed he said, Sir king, ye did a foul shame unto you and your court when ye banished Sir Tristram out of this country, for ye needed not to have doubted no knight and he had been here. And so he departed.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the treason of king Mark, and how Sir Gaheris smote him down and Andred his cousin.

THEN there came Sir Kay the seneschal unto king Mark, and there he had good cheer shewing outward. Now fair lords, said he, will ye prove any adventures in the forest of Morris, in the which I know well is as hard an adventure as I know any. Sir, said Sir Kay, I will prove it. And Sir Gaheris said he would

l, for king Mark was ever full
ı. And therewithal Sir Ga-
ırted and rode his way. And
me way that Sir Kay should
d him down to rest, charging
to wait upon Sir Kay,—and
when he cometh. So within a
Kay came riding that way.
ı Sir Gaheris took his horse
ıim, and said, Sir Kay, ye are
:o ride at the request of king
he dealeth all with treason.
Sir Kay, I require you let us
s adventure. I shall not fail
Sir Gaheris. And so they
time till a lake that was that
d the perilous lake, and there
e under the shawe of the wood.
ı while king Mark within the
'intagil avoided all his barons,
ther save such as were privy
were all avoided out of his
And then he let call his
ir Andred, and bad arm him
him lightly, and by that time
idnight. And so king Mark
l in black, horse and all. And
rivy postern they two issued
their varlets with them, and
hey came to that lake. Then
espied them first, and gat his
l proffered to just. And king
e against him, and smote each
hard, for the moon shone as
day. And there at that justs
horse fell down, for his horse
o big as the king's horse was,
Kay's horse bruised him full
en Sir Gaheris was wroth that
had a fall. Then he cried,
it thou fast in thy saddle, for
venge my fellow. Then king
afeard of Sir Gaheris, and so
will king Mark rode against
Sir Gaheris gave him such a
t he fell down. So then forth-
Gaheris ran unto Sir Andred,
him from his horse quite that
smote in the earth and nigh
n his neck. And therewith Sir
light, and gat up Sir Kay.
they went both on foot to
bad them yield them and tell
their names, or else they should die. Then with great pain Sir Andred spake first and said, It is king Mark of Cornwall, therefore beware what ye do, and I am Sir Andred his cousin. Fie on you both, said Sir Gaheris, for a false traitor, and false treason hast thou wrought and he both, under the feigned cheer that ye made us. It were pity, said Sir Gaheris, that thou shouldst live any longer. Save my life, said king Mark, and I will make amends; and consider that I am a king anointed. It were the more shame, said Sir Gaheris, to save thy life; thou art a king anointed with crism, and therefore thou shouldest hold with all men of worship; and therefore thou art worthy to die. With that he lashed at king Mark without saying any more; and he covered him with his shield, and defended him as he might. And then Sir Kay lashed at Sir Andred. And therewithal king Mark yielded him unto Sir Gaheris, and then he kneeled down, and made his oath upon the cross of the sword that never while he lived he would be against errant knights. And also he sware to be good friend unto Sir Tristram, if ever he came into Cornwall. By then Sir Andred was on the earth, and Sir Kay would have slain him. Let be, said Sir Gaheris, slay him not I pray you. It were pity, said Sir Kay, that he should live any longer, for this is nigh cousin unto Sir Tristram, and ever he hath been a traitor unto him, and by him he was exiled out of Cornwall, and therefore I will slay him, said Sir Kay. Ye shall not, said Sir Gaheris; sithen I have given the king his life, I pray you give him his life. And therewithal Sir Kay let him go. And so Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris rode forth their way unto Dinas the seneschal, for because they heard say that he loved well Sir Tristram. So they reposed them there. And soon after they rode unto the realm of Logris. And so within a little while they met with Sir Launcelot, that had always dame Bragwaine with him, to that intent he wend to have met sooner with Sir Tristram, and Sir Launcelot asked what tidings in Cornwall,

and whether they heard of Sir Tristram or not. Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris answered and said that they heard not of him. Then they told Sir Launcelot word by word of their adventure. Then Sir Launcelot smiled, and said, Hard it is to take out of the flesh that is bred in the bone. And so made them merry together.

CHAP. XL.

How after that Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and Sir Dinadan had been long in prison they were delivered.

Now leave we off this tale and speak we of Sir Dinas that loved a lady within the castle, and she loved another knight better than him. And so when Sir Dinas went out on hunting she slipped down by a towel, and took with her two brachets, and so she went to the knight that she loved. And when Sir Dinas came home and missed his lady, and his brachets, then was he more wroth for his brachets than for the lady. So then he rode after the knight that had his lady, and bad him turn and just. So Sir Dinas smote him down, that with the fall he brake his leg and his arm. And then his lady cried Sir Dinas mercy, and said she would love him better than ever she did. Nay, said Sir Dinas, I shall never trust them that once betrayed me, and therefore as ye have begun so end, for I will never meddle with you. And so Sir Dinas departed and took his brachets with him, and so rode to his castle.

Now will we turn unto Sir Launcelot, that was right heavy that he could never hear no tidings of Sir Tristram, for all this while he was in prison with Sir Darras, Palamides, and Dinadan. Then dame Bragwaine took her leave to go into Cornwall, and Sir Launcelot, Sir Kay, and Sir Gaheris rode to seek Sir Tristram in the country of Surluse. Now speaketh this tale of Sir Tristram and of his two fellows, for every day Sir Palamides brawled and said language against Sir Tristram. I marvel, said Sir Dinadan, of thee Sir Palamides: and thou hadst Sir Tristram here thou wouldst do him no harm; for and a wolf and a sheep were together in prison, the wolf would suffer the sheep to be in peace. And wit thou well, said Sir Dinadan, this same is Sir Tristram at a word, and now mayest thou do thy best with him, and let see now how ye can shift it with your hands. Then was Sir Palamides abashed and said little. Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, I have heard much of your ill-will against me, but I will not meddle with you as at this time by my will, because I dread the lord of this place that hath us in governance, for and I dread him more than I do thee, soon should it be shift. So they appeased themselves. Right so came in a damsel and said, Knights, be of good cheer, for ye are sure of your lives, and that I heard say my lord Sir Darras. Then were they glad all three, for daily they wend they should have died. Then soon after this Sir Tristram fell sick, that he wend to have died. Then Sir Dinadan wept, and so did Sir Palamides under them both making great sorrow. So a damsel came into them, and found them mourning. Then she went to Sir Darras and told him how that mighty knight that bare the black shield was likely to die. That shall not be, said Sir Darras, for God defend when any knights come to me for succour that I should suffer them to die within my prison. Therefore, said Sir Darras to the damsel, fetch that knight and his fellows afore me. And then anon when Sir Darras saw Sir Tristram afore him, he said, Sir knight, me repenteth of thy sickness, for thou art called a full noble knight, and so it seemeth by thee. And wit ye well, it shall never be said that Sir Darras shall destroy such a noble knight as thou art in prison, howbeit that thou hast slain three of my sons, whereby I was greatly agrieved. But now shalt thou go and thy fellows, and your harness and horses have been fair and clean kept, and ye shall go where it liketh you, upon this covenant, that

ght, will promise me to be
ıd to my sons two that be
ve, and also that thou tell me
. Sir, said he, as for me, my
ir Tristram de Liones, and in
was I born, and nephew I am
Mark. And as for the death
ons, I might not do withal,
ey had been the next kin that
might have done none other-
ıd if I had slain them by
treachery, I had been worthy
ied. All this I consider, said
ı, that all that ye did was by
nighthood, and that was the
ould not put you to death.
ye be Sir Tristram the good
pray you heartily to be my
ıd and to my sons. Sir, said
ım, I promise you by the faith
ly ever while I live I will do
:e, for ye have done to us but
al knight ought to do. Then
ım reposed him there till that
nended of his sickness. And
vas big and strong they took
:, and every knight took their
d so departed, and rode to-
l they came to a cross way.
ows, said Sir Tristram, here
lepart in sundry ways. And
ir Dinadan had the first ad-
f him I will begin.

CHAP. XLI.

Dinadan rescued a lady from use Sance Pité, and how Sir n received a shield of Morgan

ir Dinadan rode by a well, he
dy making great dole. What
u? said Sir Dinadan. Sir
ıid the lady, I am the wo-
ly of the world, for within
days here came a knight
Breuse Sance Pité, and he
own brother, and ever since
ept me at his own will, and of
ı the world I hate him most.
fore I require you of knight-
avenge me, for he will not
be here anon. Let him come,
said Sir Dinadan, and because of honour of all women I will do my part. With this came Sir Breuse, and when he saw a knight with his lady, he was wood wroth. And then he said, Sir knight, keep thee from me. So they hurled together as thunder, and either smote other passing sore. But Sir Dinadan put him through the shoulder a grievous wound, and or ever Sir Dinadan might turn him, Sir Breuse was gone and fled. Then the lady prayed him to bring her to a castle there beside but four mile thence. And so Sir Dinadan brought her there, and she was welcome, for the lord of that castle was her uncle. And so Sir Dinadan rode his way upon his adventure.

Now turn we this tale unto Sir Tristram, that by adventure he came to a castle to ask lodging, wherein was queen Morgan le Fay. And so when Sir Tristram was let into that castle he had good cheer all that night. And upon the morn when he would have departed, the queen said, Wit ye well ye shall not depart lightly, for ye are here as a prisoner. God defend, said Sir Tristram, for I was but late a prisoner. Fair knight, said the queen, ye shall abide with me till that I wit what ye are, and from whence ye come. And ever the queen would set Sir Tristram on her side, and her paramour on the other side, and ever queen Morgan would behold Sir Tristram, and thereat the knight was jealous, and was in will suddenly to have run upon Sir Tristram with a sword, but he left it for shame. Then the queen said to Sir Tristram, Tell me thy name, and I shall suffer you to depart when you will. Upon that covenant I tell you my name is Sir Tristram de Liones. Ah, said Morgan le Fay, and I had wist that thou shouldst not have departed so soon as thou shalt: but sithen I have made a promise I will hold it, with that thou wilt promise me to bear upon thee a shield that I shall deliver thee, unto the castle of the Hard Rock, where king Arthur hath cried a great tournament, and there I pray you that ye will be,

and to do for me as much deeds of arms as ye may do. For at that Castle of Maidens, Sir Tristram, ye did marvellous deeds of arms as ever I heard knight do. Madam, said Sir Tristram, let me see the shield that I shall bear. So the shield was brought forth, and the shield was goldish, with a king and a queen therein painted, and a knight standing above them, with one foot upon the king's head, and the other upon the queen's. Madam, said Sir Tristram, this is a fair shield and a mighty; but what signifieth this king and this queen and that knight standing upon both their heads. I shall tell you, said Morgan le Fay, it signifieth king Arthur and queen Guenever, and a knight that holdeth them both in bondage and servage. Who is that knight? said Sir Tristram. That shall ye not wit as at this time, said the queen. But, as the French book saith, queen Morgan loved Sir Launcelot best, and ever she desired him, and he would never love her, nor do nothing at her request, and therefore she held many knights together for to have taken him by strength. And because she deemed that Sir Launcelot loved queen Guenever, and she him again, therefore queen Morgan le Fay ordained that shield to put Sir Launcelot to a rebuke, to that intent that king Arthur might understand the love between them. Then Sir Tristram took that shield and promised her to bear it at the tournament at the castle of the Hard Rock. But Sir Tristram knew not that shield was ordained against Sir Launcelot, but afterward he knew it.

CHAP. XLII.

How Sir Tristram took with him the shield, and also how he slew the paramour of Morgan le Fay.

So then Sir Tristram took his leave of the queen, and took the shield with him. Then came the knight that held queen Morgan le Fay, his name was Sir Hemison, and he made him ready to follow Sir Tristram. Fair friend, said Morgan, ride not after that knight, for ye shall win no worship of him on him, coward, said Sir Hemis I wist never good knight come Cornwall, but if it were Sir Tristı Liones. What and that be he she. Nay, nay, said he, he is wi Beale Isoud, and this is but a knight. Alas my fair friend, ye find him the best knight that e met withal, for I know him bette ye do. For your sake, said Sir I son, I shall slay him. Ah, fair f said the queen, me repenteth th will follow that knight, for I fe sore of your again coming. With this knight rode his way wood v and he rode after Sir Tristram a as he had been chased with kn When Sir Tristram heard a knight after him so fast, he returned a and saw a knight coming against And when he came nigh to Sir tram, he cried on high, Sir knight, thee from me. Then they rushe gether as it had been thunder, an Hemison bruised his spear upo Tristram, but his harness was so that he might not hurt him. An Tristram smote him harder, and him through the body, and he fell his horse croup. Then Sir Tri turned to have done more witl sword, but he saw so much bloc from him, that him seemed he likely to die: and so he departed him and came to a fair manor t old knight, and there Sir Tri lodged.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Morgan le Fay buried her para and how Sir Tristram praised Sir celot and his kin.

Now leave we to speak of Sir tram, and speak we of the knigh was wounded to the death. The varlet alight, and took off his helm then he asked his master whether were any life in him. There is i life, said the knight, but it is but and therefore leap thou up behin when thou hast holpen me up; an me fast that I fall not, and brin

Morgan le Fay, for deep
of death draw to my heart,
y not live, for I would fain
ı her or I died. For else my
be in great peril and I die.
great pain his varlet brought
e castle, and there Sir Hemi-
own dead. When Morgan le
im dead, she made great sor-
of reason. And then she let
m unto his shirt, and so she
ut into a tomb. And about
she let write: Here lieth Sir
slain by the hands of Sir Tris-
iones. Now turn we unto Sir
that asked the knight, his host,
late any knights adventurous.
d, the last night here lodged
ir Ector de Maris and a damsel
and that damsel told me that
ıe of the best knights of
hat is not so, said Sir Tris-
I know four better knights of
ood; and the first is Sir Laun-
ake, call him the best knight;
ors de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir
: Ganis, and Sir Gaheris. Nay,
ıost, Sir Gawaine is a better
an he. That is not so, said
ım, for I have met with them
l I felt Sir Gaheris for the
ight; and Sir Lamorak, I call
od as any of them, except Sir
. Why name ye not Sir Tris-
his host, for I account him as
ny of them. I know not Sir
said Tristram. Thus they
d jested as long as them list,
went to rest. And on the morn
ram departed and took his
is host, and rode towards the
re, and none adventure had Sir
but that, and so he rested not
ne to the castle, where he saw
ed tents.

CHAP. XLIV.

*Tristram at a tournament bare
d that Morgan le Fay had de-
bim.*

he king of Scots and the king
l held against king Arthur's knights, and there began a great meddle. So came in Sir Tristram and did marvellous deeds of arms, for there he smote down many knights. And ever he was afore king Arthur with that shield. And when king Arthur saw that shield, he marvelled greatly in what intent it was made. But queen Guenever deemed as it was, wherefore she was heavy. Then was there a damsel of queen Morgan in a chamber by king Arthur, and when she heard king Arthur speak of that shield, then she spake openly unto king Arthur, Sir king, wit ye well this shield was ordained for you, to warn you of your shame and dishonour, and that longeth to you and to your queen. And then anon the damsel piked her away privily, that no man wist where she was become. Then was king Arthur sad and wroth, and asked from whence came that damsel. There was not one that knew her, nor wist where she was become. Then queen Guenever called to her Sir Ector de Maris, and there she made her complaint to him, and said, I wot well this shield was made by Morgan le Fay, in despite of me and Sir Launcelot, wherefore I dread sore lest I should be destroyed. And ever the king beheld Sir Tristram that did so marvellous deeds of arms, that he wondered sore what knight he might be, and well he wist it was not Sir Launcelot. And it was told him that Sir Tristram was in Petit Britain with Isoud la Blanche Mains, for he deemed, and he had been in the realm of Logris, Sir Launcelot or some of his fellows that were in the quest of Sir Tristram, that they should have found him or that time. So king Arthur had marvel what knight he might be. And ever Sir Arthur's eye was on that shield. All that espied the queen, and that made her sore afeard. Then ever Sir Tristram smote down knights, wonderly to behold, what upon the right hand and upon the left hand, that unneth no knight might withstand him. And the king of Scots and the king of Ireland began to withdraw them. When Arthur espied that, he thought that that knight

with the strange shield should not escape him. Then he called unto him Sir Uwaine la Blanche Mains, and bade him arm him and make him ready. So anon king Arthur and Sir Uwaine dressed them before Sir Tristram, and required him to tell them where he had that shield. Sir, he said, I had it of queen Morgan le Fay, sister unto king Arthur.

Soo here endeth this history of this book, for it is the firste book of sire Tristram de lyones, and the second book of sir tristram foloweth.

Here begynneth the second book of sire Tristram. Howe syr Tristram smote doune kyng Arthur and sir Uwayne, by cause he wold not telle hem wherfor that shelde was made. But to say the sothe sire Tristram coude not telle the cause, for he knewe it not.

The Tenth Book.

CHAP. I.

How Sir Tristram justed and smote down king Arthur, because he told him not the cause why he bare that shield.

And if so be ye can describe what ye bear, ye are worthy to bear the arms. As for that, said Sir Tristram, I will answer you. This shield was given me, not desired, of queen Morgan le Fay. And as for me, I cannot describe these arms, for it is no point of my charge, and yet I trust to bear them with worship. Truly, said king Arthur, ye ought to bear none arms but if ye wist what ye bear. But I pray you tell me your name. To what intent? said Sir Tristram. For I would wit, said king Arthur. Sir, ye shall not wit as at this time. Then shall ye and I do battle together, said king Arthur. Why, said Sir Tristram, will ye do battle with me but if I tell you my name? and that little needeth you and ye were a man of worship, for ye have seen me this day have had great travail; and therefore ye are a villainous knight to ask battle of me, considering my great travail, howbeit I will not fail you, and have ye no doubt that I fear not you; though ye think ye have me at a great advantage, yet shall I right well endure you. And therewithal king Arthur dressed his shield and his spear, and Sir Tristram against him, and they came so eagerly together. And there king Arthur brake his spear all to pieces upon Sir Tristram's shield. But Sir Tristram hit king Arthur again, that horse and man fell to the earth. And there was king Arthur wounded on the left side a great wound and a perilous. Then when Sir Uwaine saw his lord Arthur lie on the ground sore wounded he was passing heavy. And then he dressed his shield and spear, and cried aloud unto Sir Tristram, and said, Knight, defend thee. So they came together as thunder, and Sir Uwaine brake his spear all to pieces upon Sir Tristram's shield. And Sir Tristram smote him harder and sorer, with such a might that he bare him clean out of his saddle to the earth.

ıat Sir Tristram turned about
l, Fair knights, I had no need
vith you, for I have had enough
this day. Then arose Arthur
ınt to Sir Uwaine, and said
Tristram, We have as we have
l, for through our pride we de-
battle of you, and yet we knew
ır name. Nevertheless, said Sir
, by saint cross he is a strong
at mine advice as any is now

Sir Tristram departed, and in
›lace he asked and demanded
r Launcelot, but in no place he
ot hear of him whether he were
on live, wherefore Sir Tristram
;reat dole and sorrow. So Sir
n rode by a forest, and then was
: of a fair tower by a marsh on
e side, and on that other side a
adow. And there he saw ten
fighting together. And ever
rer he came he saw how there
t one knight did battle against
ights, and that one knight did
vellously that Sir Tristram had
onder that ever one knight might
;reat deeds of arms. And then
a little while he had slain half
orses and unhorsed them, and
ırses ran in the fields and forest.
ir Tristram had so great pity
ıat one knight that endured so
ın, and ever he thought it should
alamides by his shield. And so
unto the knights and cried unto
nd bad them cease of their battle,
did themselves great shame, so
nights to fight with one. Then
d the master of those knights,
ıe was called Breuse Sance Pité,
as at that time the most mis-
sest knight living, and said thus:
ht, what have ye ado with us to
; and therefore and ye be wise
on your way as ye came, for this
shall not escape us. That were
id Sir Tristram, that so good a
as he is should be slain so cow-
And therefore I warn you I will
him with all my puissance.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Tristram saved Sir Palamides' life, and how they promised to fight together within a fortnight.

So Sir Tristram alight off his horse because they were on foot, that they should not slay his horse, and then dressed his shield with his sword in his hand: and he smote on the right hand and on the left hand passing sore, that well nigh at every stroke he strake down a knight. And when they espied his strokes they fled all with Breuse Sance Pité unto the tower: and Sir Tristram followed fast after with his sword in his hand. But they escaped into the tower and shut Sir Tristram without the gate. And when Sir Tristram saw this he returned back unto Sir Palamides, and found him sitting under a tree sore wounded. Ah, fair knight, said Sir Tristram, well be ye found. Gramercy, said Sir Palamides, of your great goodness, for ye have rescued me of my life, and saved me from my death. What is your name? said Sir Tristram. He said, my name is Sir Palamides. Oh, said Sir Tristram, thou hast a fair grace of me this day that I should rescue thee, and thou art the man in the world that I most hate. But now make thee ready, for I will do battle with thee. What is your name? said Sir Palamides. My name is Sir Tristram, your mortal enemy. It may be so, said Sir Palamides, but ye have done overmuch for me this day that I should fight with you, for inasmuch as ye have saved my life, it will be no worship for you to have ado with me, for ye are fresh, and I am wounded sore. And therefore and ye will needs have ado with me, assign me a day, and then I shall meet with you without fail. Ye say well, said Sir Tristram. Now, I assign you to meet me in the meadow by the river of Camelot, where Merlin set the peron. So they were agreed. Then Sir Tristram asked Sir Palamides why the ten knights did battle with him. For this cause, said Sir Palamides, as I rode on mine adventures in a forest here

beside, I espied where lay a dead knight, and a lady weeping beside him. And when I saw her making such dole, I asked her who slew her lord? Sir, she said, the falsest knight of the world now living: and he is the most villain that ever man heard speak of, and his name is Sir Breuse Sance Pité. Then for pity I made the damsel to leap on her palfrey, and I promised her to be her warrant, and to help her to inter her lord. And so, suddenly, as I came riding by this tower, there came out Sir Breuse Sance Pité, and suddenly he strake me from my horse. And then or I might recover my horse, this Sir Breuse slew the damsel. And so I took my horse again, and I was sore ashamed, and so began the meddle betwixt us. And this is the cause wherefore we did this battle. Well, said Sir Tristram, now I understand the manner of your battle. But in any wise have remembrance of your promise that ye have made with me to do battle with me this day fortnight. I shall not fail you, said Sir Palamides. Well, said Sir Tristram, as at this time I will not fail you till that ye be out of the danger of your enemies. So they mounted upon their horses, and rode together unto that forest, and there they found a fair well, with clear water burbling. Fair sir, said Sir Tristram, to drink of that water have I courage. And then they alight off their horses. And then were they ware by them where stood a great horse tied to a tree, and ever he neighed. And then were they ware of a fair knight armed under a tree, lacking no piece of harness, save his helm lay under his head. Truly, said Sir Tristram, yonder lieth a well-faring knight, what is best to do? Awake him, said Sir Palamides. So Sir Tristram wakened him with the butt of his spear. And so the knight arose up hastily, and put his helm upon his head, and gat a great spear in his hand, and without any more words he hurled unto Sir Tristram, and smote him clean from his saddle to the earth, and hurt him on the left side, that Sir Tristram lay in great peril. Then he galloped farther, and fet his course, and hurling upon Sir Palamides, and he strake him a part through the that he fell from his horse to the And then this strange knight left there, and took his way throug forest. With this Sir Palamides Sir Tristram were on foot, and gat horses again, and either asked co of other what was best to do. E head, said Sir Tristram, I will f this strong knight that thus hath sh us. Well, said Sir Palamides, and repose me hereby with a friend of Beware, said Sir Tristram unto mides, that ye fail not that day th have set with me to do battle, for deem, ye will not hold your da I am much bigger than ye. A that, said Sir Palamides, be it as may, for I fear you not: for and not sick nor prisoner I will not fail But I have cause for to have more of you that ye will not meet with for ye ride after yonder strong k and if ye meet with him it is an adventure and ever ye escape his h Right so Sir Tristram and Sir Pala departed, and either took their diverse.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Tristram sought a strong that had smitten him down, and other knights of the Round Table.

So Sir Tristram rode long afte strong knight. And at the last h where lay a lady overthwart a knight. Fair lady, said Sir Tris who hath slain your lord? Sir, sai there came a knight riding as m and I rested us here, and asked h whence he was, and my lord sa Arthur's court. Therefore, said strong knight, I will just with for I hate all these that be of Ar court. And my lord that lieth dead mounted upon his horse, an strong knight and my lord encour together, and there he smote m through out with his spear. And he hath brought me in great wo damage. That me repenteth, sai

of your great anger; and it
tell me your husband's name?
ıe, his name was Galardoun,
I have proved a good knight.
ed Sir Tristram from that
ady, and had much evil lodg-
ı on the third day Sir Tris-
with Sir Gawaine and with
:ris in a forest at a lodge;
were sore wounded. Then
m asked Sir Gawaine and Sir
if they met with such a
th such a cognisance, with
shield. Fair sir, said these
ıch a knight met with us to
damage. And first he smote
ellow Sir Bleoberis, and sore
him because he bad me I
have ado with him, for why,
r strong for me. That strong
)k his words at scorn, and
d it for mockery. And then
together, and so he hurt my
ıd when he had done so, I
for shame but I must just
And at the first course, he
down and my horse to the
d there he had almost slain
)m us he took his horse and
ınd in an evil time we met
Fair knights, said Sir Tris-
e met with me and with an-
ıt that hight Palamides, and
ıs both down with one spear,
ıs right sore. By my faith,
Gawaine, by my counsel ye
ıim pass and seek him no
r at the next feast of the
ıble upon pain of my head
ıd him there. By my faith,
ristram, I shall never rest till
him. And then Sir Gawaine
his name. Then he said, My
ir Tristram. And so either
their names. And then de-
Tristram, and rode his way.
rtune in a meadow Sir Tris-
with Sir Kay the seneschal
ıadan. What tidings with you,
ristram,—with you knights?
said these knights. Why so?
ristram, I pray you tell me,
o seek a knight. What cog-
nisance beareth he? said Sir Kay. He beareth, said Sir Tristram, a covered shield close with a cloth. By my head, said Sir Kay, that is the same knight that met with us, for this night we were lodged within a widow's house, and there was that knight lodged. And when he wist we were of Arthur's court, he spake great villainy by the king, and specially by the queen Guenever. And then on the morrow we waged battle with him for that cause. And at the first recounter, said Sir Kay, he smote me down from my horse, and hurt me passing sore. And when my fellow Sir Dinadan saw me smitten down and hurt, he would not revenge me, but fled from me. And thus is he departed. And then Sir Tristram required them to tell him their names, and so either told other their names. And so Sir Tristram departed from Sir Kay and from Sir Dinadan, and so he passed through a great forest into a plain, till he was ware of a priory, and there he reposed him with a good man six days.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Tristram smote down Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and Sir Dodinas le Savage.

And then he sent his man that hight Gouvernail, and commanded him to go to a city there by to fetch him new harness; for it was long time afore that that Sir Tristram had been refreshed; his harness was bruised and broken. And when Gouvernail his servant was come with his apparel, he took his leave at the widow, and mounted upon his horse, and rode his way early on the morn. And, by sudden adventure Sir Tristram met with Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and with Sir Dodinas le Savage. And these two knights met with Sir Tristram and questioned with him, and asked him if he would just with them. Fair knights, said Sir Tristram, with a good will I would just with you, but I have promised at a day set near hand to do battle with a strong knight. And therefore I am loth to

have ado with you, for and it misfortuned me here to be hurt, I should not be able to do my battle which I promised. As for that, said Sir Sagramor, maugre your head ye shall just with us or ye pass from us. Well, said Sir Tristram, if ye enforce me thereto, I must do what I may. And then they dressed their shields, and came running together with great ire. But through Sir Tristram's great force, he strake Sir Sagramor from his horse. Then he hurled his horse farther, and said to Sir Dodinas, Knight, make thee ready. And so through fine force Sir Tristram strake Dodinas from his horse. And when he saw them lie on the earth he took his bridle, and rode forth on his way, and his man Gouvernail with him. Anon as Sir Tristram was past, Sir Sagramor and Sir Dodinas gat again their horses, and mounted up lightly, and followed after Sir Tristram. And when Sir Tristram saw them come so fast after him, he returned with his horse to them, and asked them what they would. It is not long ago since I smote you down to the earth at your own request and desire: I would have ridden by you but ye would not suffer me, and now me seemeth ye would do more battle with me. That is truth, said Sir Sagramor and Sir Dodinas, for we will be revenged of the despite that ye have done to us. Fair knights, said Sir Tristram, that shall little need you, for all that I did to you ye caused it, wherefore I require you of your knighthood leave me as at this time, for I am sure and I do battle with you I shall not escape without great hurts, and as I suppose ye shall not escape all lotless. And this is the cause why I am so loth to have ado with you. For I must fight within these three days with a good knight and as valiant as any is now living, and if I be hurt I shall not be able to do battle with him. What knight is that, said Sir Sagramor, that ye shall fight withal? Sir, said he, it is a good knight called Sir Palamides. By my head, said Sir Sagramor and Sir Dodinas, ye have cause to dread him, for ye shall find him a good knight and a valiant. And ye shall have ado with him we bear you as at this time, and should not escape us lightly. knight, said Sir Sagramor, tell name. Sir, said he, my name is tram de Liones. Ah, said S and Sir Dodinas, well be ye fo much worship have we heard And then either took leave of ot departed on their way.

CHAP. V.

How Sir Tristram met at the pa Sir Launcelot, and how they together unknown.

THEN departed Sir Tristram a straight unto Camelot, to the that Merlin had made tofore, w Lanceor, that was the king's Ireland, was slain by the hands c And in that same place was lady Columbe slain, that was lo Sir Lanceor, for after he was d took his sword and thrust it her body. And by the craft of he made to inter this knight S ceor and his lady Columbe un stone. And at that time Merl phesied that in that same place fight two the best knights th were in Arthur's days, and t lovers. So when Sir Tristram the tomb where Lanceor and were buried, he looked about hi Sir Palamides. Then was he w seemly knight came riding agai all in white, with a covered When he came nigh Sir T he said on high, Ye be welco knight, and well and truly holden your promise. And th dressed their shields and spea came together with all their m their horses. And they met so that both their horses and fell to the earth. And as fast might they avoided their hors put their shields before them, a strake together with bright sw men that were of might, an

. other wonderly sore, that the
ın out upon the grass. And
y two fought the space of four
ıat never one would speak to
ıe word, and of their harness
l hewn off many pieces. Oh,
ıvernail, I have marvel greatly
ıtrokes my master hath given
master. By my head, said
ncelot's servant, your master
: given so many but your mas-
received as many or more. Oh,
ıvernail, it is too much for Sir
ss to suffer, or Sir Launcelot,
ɔity it were that either of these
ıights should destroy other's
So they stood and wept both,
e great dole when they saw the
words over covered with blood
ɔodies. Then at the last spake
ıcelot and said: Knight, thou
wonderly well as ever I saw
ıerefore and it please you tell me
ıe. Sir, said Sir Tristram, that
th to tell any man my name.
ıid Sir Launcelot, and I were
I was never loth to tell my
It is well said, quoth Sir Tris-
n I require you to tell me your
Fair knight, he said, my name
ıuncelot du Lake. Alas, said
ram, what have I done, for ye
man in the world that I love
air knight, said Sir Launcelot,
our name. Truly, said he, my
Sir Tristram de Liones. Oh,
Launcelot, what adventure is
me! And therewith Sir Laun-
ɛeled down and yielded him up
d. And therewithal Sir Tris-
ɛeled adown, and yielded him
/ord. And so either gave other
ɛe. And then they both forth-
ent to the stone, and set them
on it, and took off their helms
them, and either kissed other
ed times. And then anon after
k their helms and rode to
And there they met with
ıne and with Sir Gaheris that
e promise to Arthur never to
ain to the court till they had
Sir Tristram with them.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot brought Sir Tristram to the court, and of the great joy that the king and other made for the coming of Sir Tristram.

RETURN again, said Sir Launcelot, for your quest is done, for I have met with Sir Tristram: lo here is his own person. Then was Sir Gawaine glad, and said to Sir Tristram, Ye are welcome, for now have ye eased me greatly of my labour. For what cause, said Sir Gawaine, came ye into this court? Fair sir, said Sir Tristram, I came into this country because of Sir Palamides, for he and I had assigned at this day to have done battle together at the peron, and I marvel I hear not of him. And thus by adventure my lord Sir Launcelot and I met together. With this came king Arthur. And when he wist that there was Sir Tristram, then he ran unto him and took him by the hand and said, Sir Tristram, ye be as welcome as any knight that ever came to this court. And when the king had heard how Sir Launcelot and he had foughten, and either had wounded other wonderly sore, then the king made great dole. Then Sir Tristram told the king how he came thither for to have had ado with Sir Palamides. And then he told the king how he had rescued him from the nine knights and Breuse Sance Pité, and how he found a knight lying by a well, and that knight smote down Sir Palamides and me, but his shield was covered with a cloth. So Sir Palamides left me, and I followed after that knight. And in many places I found where he had slain knights, and forjusted many. By my head, said Sir Gawaine, that same knight smote me down and Sir Bleoberis, and hurt us sore both, he with the covered shield. Ah, said Sir Kay, that knight smote me adown and hurt me passing sore, and fain would I have known him, but I might not. Mercy, said Arthur, what knight was that with the covered shield? I know not, said Sir Tristram; and so said they all. Now, said king

Arthur, then wot I, for it is Sir Launcelot. Then they all looked upon Sir Launcelot and said, Ye have beguiled us with your covered shield. It is not the first time, said Arthur, he hath done so. My lord, said Sir Launcelot, truly wit ye well I was the same knight that bare the covered shield. And because I would not be known that I was of your court I said no worship of your house. That is truth, said Sir Gawaine, Sir Kay, and Sir Bleoberis. Then king Arthur took Sir Tristram by the hand, and went to the Table Round. Then came queen Guenever and many ladies with her, and all the ladies said at one voice, Welcome, Sir Tristram. Welcome, said the damsels: Welcome, said the knights: Welcome, said Arthur, for one of the best knights and the gentlest of the world, and the man of most worship. For of all manner of hunting thou bearest the prize, and of all measures of blowing thou art the beginning, and of all the terms of hunting and hawking ye are the beginner: of all instruments of music ye are the best; therefore, gentle knight, said Arthur, ye are welcome to this court. And also I pray you, said Arthur, grant me a boon. It shall be at your commandment, said Tristram. Well, said Arthur, I will desire of you that ye will abide in my court. Sir, said Sir Tristram, thereto is me loth, for I have ado in many countries. Not so, said Arthur, ye have promised it me, ye may not say nay. Sir, said Sir Tristram, I will as ye will. Then went Arthur unto the sieges about the Round Table, and looked in every siege the which were void that lacked knights. And then the king saw in the siege of Marhaus letters that said, This is the siege of the noble knight Sir Tristram. And then Arthur made Sir Tristram knight of the Table Round with great nobley and great feast as might be thought. For Sir Marhaus was slain afore by the hands of Sir Tristram in an island, and that was well known at that time in the court of Arthur; for this Marhaus was a worthy knight. And for evil deeds that he did unto the country o wall Sir Tristram and he fough they fought so long tracing and ing till they fell bleeding to th for they were so sore wound they might not stand for bleedin Sir Tristram by fortune recover Sir Marhaus died through the st the head. So leave we of Sir Tr and speak we of king Mark.

CHAP. VII.

How for the despite of Sir T king Mark came with two knig England, and how he slew on knights.

Then king Mark had great de the renown of Sir Tristram, and t chased him out of Cornwall: y he nephew unto king Mark, but great suspicion unto Sir Tristra cause of his queen, La Beale Isou him seemed that there was too love between them both. So wh Tristram departed out of Cornw England, king Mark heard of th prowess that Sir Tristram did the which grieved him sore. sent on his party men to espy deeds he did. And the quee privily on her part spies to know deeds he had done, for great lo between them twain. So when th sagers were come home, they t truth as they had heard, that he all other knights, but if it we Launcelot. Then king Mark wa heavy of these tidings, and as gl La Beale Isoud. Then in great he took with him two good knigh two squires, and disguised himse took his way into England, to tent for to slay Sir Tristram. A of these two knights hight Sir B and the other knight was call Amant. So as they rode, king asked a knight that he met wh should find king Arthur. He s Camelot. Also he asked that after Sir Tristram, whether he h him in the court of king Arthu you well, said that knight, ye sh

am there for a man of as great as is now living, for through ss he won the tournament of : of Maidens, that standeth by . Rock. And sithen he hath his own hands thirty knights : men of great honour. And battle that ever he did he ith Sir Launcelot, and that arvellous battle. And not by Launcelot brought Sir Tris- the court, and of him king ade passing great joy, and so a knight of the Table Round, seat was where the good Sir Marhaus seat was. Then Mark passing sorry when he the honour of Sir Tristram, ey departed. Then said king o his two knights, Now will I my counsel; ye are the men st most to on live; and I will it my coming hither is to this r to destroy Sir Tristram by by treason; and it shall be er he escape our hands. Alas, ules, what mean you? for ye such a way ye are disposed y. For Sir Tristram is the most worship that we know l therefore I warn you plainly er consent to do him to the nd therefore I will yield my nd forsake you. When king ard him say so, suddenly he sword, and said, A traitor! e Sir Bersules on the head, word went to his teeth. When e knight saw him do that vil- ed, and his squires, they said ul done and mischievously, : we will do thee no more nd wit ye well we will ap- e of treason afore Arthur. s king Mark wonderly wroth, d have slain Amant; but he o squires held them together, ought by his malice. When k saw he might not be re- a them, he said thus unto the nant, Wit thou well, and thou me of treason I shall thereof e afore king Arthur; but I require thee that thou tell not my name that I am king Mark, whatsoever come of me. As for that, said Sir Amant, I will not discover your name. And so they parted; and Amant and his fellows took the body of Bersules and buried it.

CHAP. VIII.

How king Mark came to a fountain where he found Sir Lamorak complaining for the love of king Lot's wife.

THEN king Mark rode till he came to a fountain, and there he rested him, and stood in a doubt whether he would ride to Arthur's court or none, or return again to his country. And as he thus rested him by that fountain, there came by him a knight well armed on horse-back, and he alight and tied his horse unto a tree, and set him down by the brink of the fountain, and there he made great languor and dole, and made the dolefullest complaint of love that ever man heard; and all this while was he not ware of king Mark. And this was a great part of his complaint, he cried and wept, saying, O fair queen of Orkney, king Lot's wife, and mother of Sir Gawaine, and to Sir Gaheris, and mother to many other, for thy love I am in great pains. Then king Mark arose, and went near him, and said, Fair knight, ye have made a piteous complaint. Truly, said the knight, it is an hundred part more rueful than my heart can utter. I require you, said king Mark, tell me your name. Sir, said he, as for my name, I will not hide it from no knight that beareth a shield, and my name is Sir Lamorak de Galis. But when Sir Lamorak heard king Mark speak, then wist he well by his speech that he was a Cornish knight. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, I understand by your tongue ye be of Cornwall, wherein there dwelleth the shamefullest king that is now living, for he is a great enemy to all good knights; and that proveth well, for he hath chased out of that country Sir Tristram, that is the worshipfullest knight that now is living, and all knights speak of him worship,

and for jealousy of his queen he hath chased him out of his country. It is pity, said Sir Lamorak, that ever any such false knight-coward as king Mark is should be matched with such a fair lady and good as La Beale Isoud is, for all the world of him speaketh shame, and of her worship that any queen may have. I have not ado in this matter, said king Mark, neither nought will I speak thereof. Well said, said Sir Lamorak. Sir, can ye tell me any tidings? I can tell you, said Sir Lamorak, that there shall be a great tournament in haste beside Camelot, at the castle of Jagent. And the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Ireland, as I suppose, make that tournament.

Then there came a knight, that was called Sir Dinadan, and saluted them both. And when he wist that king Mark was a knight of Cornwall, he reproved him for the love of king Mark a thousand fold more than did Sir Lamorak. Then he proffered to just with king Mark. And he was full loth thereto; but Sir Dinadan edged him so, that he justed with Sir Lamorak. And Sir Lamorak smote king Mark so sore that he bare him on his spear end over his horse tail. And then king Mark arose again, and followed after Sir Lamorak. But Sir Dinadan would not just with Sir Lamorak, but he told king Mark that Sir Lamorak was Sir Kay the seneschal. That is not so, said king Mark, for he is much bigger than Sir Kay. And so he followed and overtook him, and bad him abide. What will ye do? said Sir Lamorak. Sir, he said, I will fight with a sword, for ye have shamed me with a spear. And therewith they dashed together with swords, and Sir Lamorak suffered him and forbare him. And king Mark was passing hasty, and smote thick strokes. Sir Lamorak saw he would not stint, and waxed somewhat wroth, and doubled his strokes, for he was one of the noblest knights of the world, and he beat him so on the helm that his head hung nigh on the saddle bow. When Sir Lamorak saw him f he said, Sir knight, what chee seemeth ye have nigh your fill o ing; it were pity to do you an harm for ye are but a mean therefore I give you leave to g ye list. Gramercy, said king M ye and I be not matches. Th Dinadan mocked king Mark ar Ye are not able to match knight. As for that, said king at the first time that I justed w knight ye refused him. Think it is a shame to me? said Sir Di nay, sir, it is ever worship to a to refuse that thing that he m attain: therefore your worship h much more, to have refused hi did: for I warn you plainly he to beat five such as ye and I ye knights of Cornwall are no worship, as other knights are because ye are no men of wors hate all men of worship; for ne bred in your country such a kn Sir Tristram.

CHAP. IX.

How king Mark, Sir Lamorak, Dinadan came to a castle, and b Mark was known there.

Then they rode forth all tc king Mark, Sir Lamorak, a Dinadan, till that they came bridge. And at the end thereo a fair tower. Then saw they a on horseback, well armed, bran a spear, crying and proffering hin just. Now, said Sir Dinadan un Mark, yonder are two brethre one hight Allein, and that othe Trian, that will just with an passeth this passage. Now proffe self, said Dinadan to king Ma ever ye be laid to the earth. Th Mark was ashamed, and therev feutred his spear, and hurtled Trian, and either brake their sp to pieces, and passed through Then Sir Trian sent king Mark spear to just more; but in no would not just no more. The

the castle, all three knights, prayed the lord of the castle ɔur. Ye are right welcome, knights of the castle, for the e lord of this castle, the which Tor le Fise Aries. And then e into a fair court, well re- And they had passing good the lieutenant of this castle ıt Berluse espied king Mark ɾall. Then said Berluse, Sir ɔnow you better than ye ween, e king Mark, that slew my re mine own eyes, and me had ad I not escaped into a wood; e well for the love of my lord ıstle, I will neither hurt you you, nor none of your fellow- t wit ye well when ye are past ng I shall hurt you and I may, ːw my father traitourly. But he love of my lord Sir Tor, he love of Sir Lamorak the le knight that here is lodged, ıave none ill lodging. For it ıat ever ye should be in the of good knights, for ye are the ıinous knight or king that is ʌn on live; for ye are a de- good knights, and all that ye treason.

CHAP. X.

Berluse met with king Mark, and Sir Dinadan took his part.

was king Mark sore ashamed, but little again. But when ɔrak and Sir Dinadan wist as king Mark they were sorry owship. So after supper they ɔdging. So on the morn they ly, and king Mark and Sir rode together; and three mile r lodging there met with them ghts, and Sir Berluse was one, other his two cousins. Sir aw king Mark, and then he high, Traitor, keep thee from it thou well that I am Berluse. t, said Sir Dinadan, I counsel ave off at this time, for he is king Arthur; and because I have promised to conduct him to my lord king Arthur, needs must I take a part with him, howbeit I love not his condition, and fain I would be from him. Well Dinadan, said Sir Berluse, me repenteth that ye will take part with him, but now do your best. And then he hurtled to king Mark, and smote him sore upon the shield that he bare him clean out of his saddle to the earth. That saw Sir Dinadan, and he feutred his spear, and ran to one of Berluse's fellows, and smote him down off his saddle. Then Dinadan turned his horse, and smote the third knight in the same wise to the earth, for Sir Dinadan was a good knight on horse-back. And there began a great battle, for Berluse and his fellows held them together strongly on foot. And so through the great force of Sir Dinadan, king Mark had Sir Berluse to the earth, and his two fellows fled; and had not been Sir Dinadan, king Mark would have slain him; and so Sir Dinadan rescued him of his life, for king Mark was but a murderer. And then they took their horses and departed, and left Sir Berluse there sore wounded. Then king Mark and Sir Dinadan rode forth a four leagues English till that they came to a bridge, where hoved a knight on horseback, armed and ready to just. Lo, said Sir Dinadan unto king Mark, yonder hoveth a knight that will just, for there shall none pass this bridge but he must just with that knight. It is well, said king Mark, for this justs falleth with thee. Sir Dinadan knew the knight well that he was a noble knight, and fain he would have justed, but he had lever king Mark had justed with him, but by no mean king Mark would not just. Then Sir Dinadan might not refuse him in no manner. And then either dressed their spears and their shields and smote together, so that through fine force Sir Dinadan was smitten to the earth. And lightly he arose up, and gat his horse, and required that knight to do battle with swords. And he answered and said, Fair knight, as at this time I may not

have ado with you no more; for the custom of this passage is such. Then was Sir Dinadan passing wroth, that he might not be revenged of that knight; and so he departed. And in no wise would that knight tell his name; but ever Sir Dinadan thought that he should know him by his shield that it should be Sir Tor.

CHAP. XI.

How king Mark mocked Sir Dinadan, and how they met with six knights of the Round Table.

So as they rode by the way, king Mark then began to mock Sir Dinadan, and said, I wend you knights of the Table Round might in no wise find their matches. Ye say well, said Sir Dinadan, as for you, on my life I call you none of the best knights; but sith ye have such a despite at me, I require you to just with me, to prove my strength. Not so, said king Mark, for I will not have ado with you in no manner. But I require you of one thing, that when ye come to Arthur's court, discover not my name, for I am there so hated. It is shame to you, said Sir Dinadan, that ye govern yourself so shamefully; for I see by you ye are full of cowardice, and ye are a murderer, and that is the greatest shame that a knight may have, for never a knight being a murderer hath worship, nor never shall have. For I saw but late through my force ye would have slain Sir Berluse, a better knight than ye, or ever ye shall be, and more of prowess.

Thus they rode forth talking, till they came to a fair place where stood a knight, and prayed them to take their lodging with him. So at the request of that knight they reposed them there, and made them well at ease, and had great cheer. For all errant knights were welcome to him, and especially all those of Arthur's court. Then Sir Dinadan demanded his host, what was the knight's name that kept the bridge. For what cause ask you it? said his host. For it is not long ago, said Sir Dinadan, since he gave me a fall. Ah, fair knight, said his host, thereof have ye no marvel, for he is a passing good knight, and his name is Sir Tor, the son of Aries le Vaysher. Ah, said Sir Dinadan, was that Sir Tor, for truly so ever me thought. Right as they stood thus talking together, they saw come riding to them over a plain six knights of the court of king Arthur, well armed at all points. And there by their shields Sir Dinadan knew them well. The first was the good knight Sir Uwaine, the son of king Uriens; the second was the noble knight Sir Brandiles; the third was Ozana le Cure Hardy; the fourth was Uwaine les Adventurous; the fifth was Sir Agravaine; the sixth Sir Mordred, brother to Sir Gawaine. When Sir Dinadan had seen these six knights, he thought in himself he would bring king Mark by some wile to just with one of them. And anon they took their horses and ran after these knights well a three mile English. Then was king Mark ware where they sat all six about a well, and eat and drank such meats as they had, and their horses walking and some tied, and their shields hung in divers places about them. Lo, said Sir Dinadan, yonder are knights errant that will just with us. God forbid, said king Mark, for they be six, and we but two. As for that, said Sir Dinadan, let us not spare, for I will assay the foremost. And therewith he made him ready. When king Mark saw him do so, as fast as Sir Dinadan rode toward them king Mark rode froward them with all his menial company. So when Sir Dinadan saw king Mark was gone, he set the spear out of the rest, and threw his shield upon his back, and came riding to the fellowship of the Table Round. And anon Sir Uwaine knew Sir Dinadan, and welcomed him, and so did all his fellowship.

CHAP. XII.

How the six knights sent Sir Dagonet to just with king Mark, and how king Mark refused him.

And then they asked him of his adventures, and whether he had seen Sir

or Sir Launcelot. Truly, said
in, I saw none of them since
from Camelot. What knight
d Sir Brandiles, that so sud-
rted from you, and rode over
ld? Sir, said he, it was a
Cornwall, and the most hor-
ird that ever bestrode horse.
s name? said all the knights.
said Sir Dinadan. So when
eposed them, and spoken to-
y took their horses and rode
where dwelled an old knight
all knights errant good cheer.
e mean while that they were
ne into the castle Sir Griflet
Dieu, and there was he wel-
they asked him whether he
ir Launcelot or Sir Tristram?
swered, I saw him not since
d from Camelot. So as Sir
alked and beheld the castle,
a chamber he espied king
then he rebuked him, and
why he departed so? Sir, said
urst not abide because they
any. But how escaped ye?
Mark. Sir, said Sir Dinadan,
better friends than I wend
een. Who is captain of that
? said the king. Then for to
Sir Dinadan said it was Sir
Oh, said the king, might I
auncelot by his shield? Yea,
an, for he beareth a shield of
black bends. All this he
r the king, for Sir Launcelot
his fellowship. Now I pray
ing Mark, that ye will ride
wship? That is me loth to do,
nadan, because ye forsook my
Right so Sir Dinadan went
Mark and went to his own
And so they mounted upon
s, and rode on their ways, and
he Cornish knight, for Dina-
em that he was in the castle
were lodged. It is well said,
iflet, for here have I brought
t king Arthur's fool, that is
llow and the merriest in the
ll ye do well? said Sir Dina-
ve told the Cornish knight
that here is Sir Launcelot, and the Cornish knight asked me what shield he bare. Truly I told him that he bare the same shield that Sir Mordred beareth. Will ye do well? said Sir Mordred; I am hurt and may not well bear my shield nor harness, and therefore put my shield and my harness upon Sir Dagonet, and let him set upon the Cornish knight. That shall be done, said Sir Dagonet, by my faith. Then anon was Dagonet armed in Mordred's harness and his shield, and he was set on a great horse and a spear in his hand. Now, said Dagonet, shew me the knight, and I trow I shall bear him down. So all these knights rode to a wood side, and abode till king Mark came by the way. Then they put forth Sir Dagonet, and he came on all the while his horse might run, straight upon king Mark. And when he came nigh king Mark, he cried as he were wood, and said, Keep thee, knight of Cornwall, for I will slay thee. Anon as king Mark beheld his shield he said to himself, Yonder is Sir Launcelot: alas, now am I destroyed. And therewithal he made his horse to run as fast as it might through thick and thin. And ever Sir Dagonet followed king Mark crying and rating him as a wood man through a great forest. When Sir Uwaine and Sir Brandiles saw Dagonet so chase king Mark, they laughed all as they were wood. And then they took their horses and rode after to see how Sir Dagonet sped. For they would not for no good that Sir Dagonet were hurt, for king Arthur loved him passing well, and made him knight with his own hands. And at every tournament he began to make king Arthur to laugh. Then the knights rode here and there crying and chasing after king Mark, that all the forest rang of the noise.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Palamides by adventure met king Mark flying, and how he overthrew Dagonet and other knights.

So king Mark rode by fortune by a

well in the way where stood a knight errant on horseback armed at all points with a great spear in his hand. And when he saw king Mark coming flying he said, Knight, return again for shame, and stand with me, and I shall be thy warrant. Ah, fair knight, said king Mark, let me pass, for yonder cometh after me the best knight of the world, with the black bended shield. Fie for shame, said the knight, he is none of the worthy knights. And if he were Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram I should not doubt to meet the better of them both. When king Mark heard him say that word he turned his horse and abode by him. And then that strong knight bare a spear to Dagonet, and smote him so sore that he bare him over his horse tail, and nigh he had broken his neck. And anon after him came Sir Brandiles, and when he saw Dagonet have that fall he was passing wroth, and cried, Keep thee knight! And so they hurtled together wonderous sore. But the knight smote Sir Brandiles so sore that he went to the earth, horse and man. Sir Uwaine came after and saw all this. Truly, said he, yonder is a strong knight. And then they feutred their spears, and this knight came so eagerly that he smote down Sir Uwaine. Then came Ozana with the hardy heart, and he was smitten down. Now, said Sir Griflet, by my counsel let us send to yonder errant knight, and wit whether he be of Arthur's court, for, as I deem, it is Sir Lamorak de Galis. So they sent unto him, and prayed the strange knight to tell his name, and whether he were of Arthur's court or not. As for my name they shall not wit, but tell them I am a knight errant as they are: and let them wit that I am no knight of king Arthur's court. And so the squire rode again to them, and told them his answer of him. By my head, said Sir Agravaine, he is one of the strongest knights that ever I saw, for he hath overthrown three noble knights, and needs we must encounter with him for shame. So Sir Agravaine feutred his spear, and that other was ready, and smote him down over his horse earth. And in the same wise h Sir Uwaine les Avoutres and Griflet. Then had he served t but Sir Dinadan, for he was behi Sir Mordred was unarmed, a gonet had his harness. So wh was done this strong knight r his way a soft pace, and king rode after him praising him mu he would answer no words, but wonderly sore, hanging down hi taking no heed to his words. Th rode well a three mile Englis then this knight called to him and bad him, Ride until yonc manor, and recommend me to t of that castle and place, and p to send me refreshing of good and drinks. And if she ask thee am, tell her that I am the knig followeth the glatisant beast,—th English to say the questing beas that beast wheresoever he w quested with such a noise as been a thirty couple of hounds

Then the varlet went his wa came to the manor and saluted th and told her from whence he And when she understood that h from the knight that followed the ing beast, O sweet Lord Jesu, sh when shall I see that noble knig dear son Palamides. Alas, will abide with me! And therewi swooned and wept and made great dole. And then all so soor might she gave the varlet all asked. And the varlet returned Palamides, for he was a varlet Mark. And as soon as he came the knight's name was Sir Pal I am well pleased, said king M hold thee still and say nothing they alight, and set them down posed them awhile. Anon with Mark fell on sleep. When S mides found him sound asleep his horse and rode his way, and them, I will not be in the com a sleeping knight. And so forth a great pace.

CHAP. XIV.

r Mark and Sir Dinadan heard alamides making great sorrow ourning for La Beale Isoud.

urn we unto Sir Dinadan that se seven knights passing heavy. n he wist how that they sped, was he. My lord Uwaine, adan, I dare lay my head it norak de Galis; I promise you l find him and he may be found ountry. And so Sir Dinadan er this knight. And so did rk, that sought him through t. So as king Mark rode after nides, he heard a noise of a made great dole. Then king de as nigh that noise as he id as he durst. Then was he knight that was descended off and had put off his helm, and made a piteous complaint and is of love.

eave we that, and talk we of dan, that rode to seek Sir Pala- nd as he came within a forest, he a knight a chaser of a deer. Sir, Dinadan, met ye with a knight ield of silver and lions' heads? knight, said the other, with night met I with but a while straight yonder way be went. y, said Sir Dinadan, for might I rack of his horse, I should not nd that knight. Right so as dan rode in the even late, he doleful noise, as it were of a hen Sir Dinadan rode toward se. And when he came nigh se, he alight off his horse and ir him on foot. Then was he a knight that stood under a his horse tied by him, and the his head. And ever that knight loleful complaint as ever made And always he made his com- La Beale Isoud the queen of l, and said, Ah fair lady, why hee, for thou art fairest of all id yet shewest thou never love or bounty. Alas, yet must I e. And I may not blame thee fair lady, for mine eyes be cause of this sorrow. And yet to love thee I am but a fool, for the best knight of the world loveth thee, and ye him again, that is Sir Tristram de Liones. And the falsest king and knight is your husband, and the most coward and full of treason is your lord king Mark. Alas, that ever so fair a lady and peerless of all other should be matched with the most villainous knight of the world. All this language heard king Mark what Sir Palamides said by him. Wherefore he was adread when he saw Sir Dinadan, lest, and he espied him, that he would tell Sir Palamides that he was king Mark; and therefore he withdrew him, and took his horse and rode to his men where he commanded them to abide. And so he rode as fast as he might unto Camelot. And the same day he found there Amant the knight ready, that before king Arthur had appealed him of treason. And so lightly the king commanded them to do battle. And by misadventure king Mark smote Amant through the body. And yet was Amant in the righteous quarrel. And right so he took his horse and departed from the court for dread of Sir Dinadan, that he would tell Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides what he was. Then were there maidens that La Beale Isoud had sent to Sir Tristram that knew Sir Amant well.

CHAP. XV.

How king Mark had slain Sir Amant wrongfully tofore king Arthur, and Sir Launcelot fetched king Mark to king Arthur.

THEN by the licence of king Arthur they went to him, and spake with him, for while the truncheon of the spear stuck in his body he spake: Ah, fair damsels, said Amant, recommend me unto La Beale Isoud, and tell her that I am slain for the love of her and of Sir Tristram. And there he told the damsels how cowardly king Mark had slain him and Sir Bersules his fellow:—And for that deed I appealed him of treason, and

here I am slain in a righteous quarrel; and all was because Sir Bersules and I would not consent by treason to slay the noble knight Sir Tristram. Then the two maidens cried aloud that all the court might hear it, and said, O sweet Lord Jesu that knoweth all hid things, why sufferest thou so false a traitor to vanquish and slay a true knight that fought in a righteous quarrel! Then anon it was sprung to the king and the queen, and to all lords and ladies, that it was king Mark that had slain Sir Amant, and Sir Bersules afore hand, wherefore they did their battle. Then was king Arthur wroth out of measure, and so were all the other knights.

But when Sir Tristram knew all the matter, he made great dole out of measure, and wept for sorrow for loss of the noble knights Sir Bersules and Sir Amant. When Sir Launcelot espied Sir Tristram weep, he went hastily to king Arthur, and said, Sir, I pray you give me leave to return again to yonder false king and knight. I pray you, said king Arthur, fetch him again, but I would not that ye slew him for my worship. Then Sir Launcelot armed him in all haste, and mounted upon a great horse, and took a spear in his hand and rode after king Mark. And from thence a three mile English Sir Launcelot overtook him, and bad him—Turn recreant king and knight: for whether thou wilt or not thou shalt go with me to king Arthur's court. King Mark returned and looked upon Sir Launcelot and said, Fair sir, what is your name? Wit thou well, said he, my name is Sir Launcelot, and therefore defend thee. And when king Mark wist that it was Sir Launcelot, and came so fast upon him with a spear, he cried then aloud, I yield me to thee Sir Launcelot, honourable knight. But Sir Launcelot would not hear him, but came fast upon him. King Mark saw that, and made no defence, but tumbled down out of his saddle to the earth as a sack, and there he lay still, and cried Sir Launcelot mercy.—Arise, recreant knight and king.—I will not fight, said king Mark; but whither that ye will I will go with you. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that I may not thee one buffet for the love of Sir tram and of La Beale Isoud, an the two knights that thou hast traitourly. And so he mounted upc horse, and brought him to king A And there king Mark alight in that place, and threw his helm from upon the earth, and his sword, an flat to the earth of king Arthur's and put him in his grace and m Truly, said Arthur, ye are welcon a manner, and in a manner ye ar welcome. In this manner ye are come, that ye come hither maugre head, as I suppose. That is truth, king Mark, and else I had not been for my lord Sir Launcelot brough hither through his fine force, and t am I yielden to as recreant. said Arthur, ye understand ye to do me service, homage, and f and never would ye do me none ever ye have been against me, s destroyer of my knights: now will ye acquit you? Sir, said Mark, right as your lordship wi quire me, unto my power I will a large amends. For he was speaker and false there under. for great pleasure of Sir Tristra make them twain accorded, the withheld king Mark as at that and made a broken love day be them.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Dinadan told Sir Palami the battle between Sir Launcelot a Tristram.

Now turn we again unto Sir mides, how Sir Dinadan comforte in all that he might from his sorrow. What knight are ye? sa Palamides. Sir, I am a knight as ye be, that hath sought you l your shield. Here is my shield Sir Palamides, wit ye well, and aught therewith, I will defend it. said Sir Dinadan, I will not ha with you but in good manner. ye will ye shall find me soon

r Dinadan, whitherward ride
ay? By my head, said Sir
I wot not, but as fortune
. Heard ye or saw ye ought
ram?—Truly of Sir Tristram
rd and saw, and not for then
not inwardly well together,
nischief Sir Tristram rescued
ıy death: and yet or he and
by both our assents we as-
ay that we should have met
/ grave that Merlin set beside
nd there to have done battle
owbeit I was letted, said Sir
that I might not hold my
hich grieveth me sore; but I
ge excuse, for I was prisoner
, and many other more, and
ir Tristram right well under-
: I brake it not of fear of
And then Sir Palamides
)inadan the same day that
l have met. Truly, said Sir
hat same day met Sir Laun-
ir Tristram at the same grave
And there was the most
ıattle that ever was seen in
etwixt two knights, for they
e than two hours, and there
)led so much blood that all
elled that ever they might
And so at the last by both
ıts they were made friends
brethren for ever, and no
ıdge the better knight. And
Tristram made a knight of
Table, and he sitteth in the
e noble knight Sir Marhaus.
ıd, said Sir Palamides, Sir
s far bigger than Sir Laun-
:he hardier knight. Have ye
:m both? said Sir Dinadan. I
Sir Tristram fight, said Sir
but never Sir Launcelot to
.—But at the fountain where
lot lay on sleep, there with
he smote down Sir Tristram
amides, but at that time they
either other. Fair knight,
inadan, as for Sir Launcelot
ristram let them be, for the
them will not be lightly
)f no knight that I know
living. No, said Sir Palamides; but and I had a quarrel to the better of them both, I would with as good a will fight with him as with you. Sir, said Sir Dinadan, I require you tell me your name, and in good faith I shall hold you company till that we come to Camelot, and there ye shall have great worship now at this great tournament; for there shall be queen Guenever and La Beale Isoud of Cornwall. Wit you well, Sir knight, said Sir Palamides, for the love of La Beale Isoud I will be there, and else not, but I will not have ado in king Arthur's court. Sir, said Dinadan, I shall ride with you and do you service, so ye will tell me your name. Sir knight, ye shall understand that my name is Sir Palamides, brother to Sir Safere, the good and noble knight, and Sir Segwarides and I we be Saracens born of father and mother. Sir, said Sir Dinadan, I thank you much for the telling of your name. For I am glad of that I know your name, and I promise you by the faith of my body ye shall not be hurt by me by my will, but rather be advanced. And thereto will I help you with all my power I promise you, doubt ye not. And certainly on my life ye shall win great worship in the court of king Arthur, and be right welcome. So then they dressed on their helms and put on their shields, and mounted upon their horses, and took the broad way toward Camelot. And then were they ware of a castle that was fair and rich, and also passing strong as any was within this realm.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Lamorak justed with divers knights of the castle wherein was Morgan le Fay.

Sir Palamides, said Dinadan, here is a castle that I know well, and therein dwelleth queen Morgan le Fay, king Arthur's sister, and king Arthur gave her this castle, the which he hath repented him since a thousand times; for since king Arthur and she have been at debate and strife; but this castle could he

never get nor win of her by no manner of engine; and ever as she might she made war on king Arthur. And all dangerous knights she withholdeth with her for to destroy all these knights that king Arthur loveth. And there shall no knight pass this way but he must just with one knight, or with two or with three. And if it hap that king Arthur's knight be beaten, he shall lose his horse and his harness and all that he hath, and hard if that he escape but that he shall be prisoner. Truly, said Palamides, this is a shameful custom, and a villainous usage for a queen to use, and, namely, to make such war upon her own lord that is called the flower of chivalry that is christian or heathen, and with all my heart I would destroy that shameful custom. And I will that all the world wit she shall have no service of me. And if she send out any knights, as I suppose she will, for to just, they shall have both their hands full. And I shall not fail you, said Sir Dinadan, unto my puissance, upon my life. So as they stood on horseback afore the castle there came a knight with a red shield, and two squires after him. And he came straight unto Sir Palamides the good knight, and said to him, Fair and gentle knight errant, I require thee for the love thou owest unto knighthood, that ye will not have ado here with these men of this castle. (For this was Sir Lamorak that thus said.) For I came hitherto to seek this deed, and it is my request. And therefore I beseech you, knight, let me deal, and if I be beaten revenge me. Well, said Palamides, let see how ye will speed, and we shall behold you. Then anon came forth a knight of the castle, and proffered to just with the knight with the red shield. Anon they encountered together, and he with the red shield smote him so hard that he bare him over to the earth. Therewith anon came another knight of the castle, and he was smitten so sore that he avoided his saddle. And forthwith came the third knight, and the knight with the red shield smote him to the earth. Then came Sir Palamides and besought him that he might help him to just. Fair knight, said he unto him, suffer me as at this time to have my will, for and they were twenty knights I shall not doubt them. And ever there were upon the walls of the castle many lords and ladies that cried and said, Well have ye justed, knight with the red shield. But as soon as the knight had smitten them down, his squire took their horses and avoided the saddles and bridles of their horses, and turned them into the forest, and made the knights to be kept to the end of the justs. Right so came out of the castle the fourth knight, and freshly proffered to just with the knight with the red shield. And he was ready, and he smote him so hard that horse and man fell to the earth, and the knight's back brake with the fall, and his neck also. Truly, said Sir Palamides, that yonder is a passing good knight, and the best juster that ever I saw. By my head, said Sir Dinadan, he is as good as ever was Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram, what knight somever he be.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Palamides would have justed for Sir Lamorak with the knights of the castle.

THEN forthwithal came out a knight of the castle with a shield bended with black and with white. And anon the knight with the red shield and he encountered together so hard that he smote the knight of the castle through the bended shield and through the body, and brake the horse's back. Fair knight, said Sir Palamides, ye have overmuch in hand, therefore I pray you let me just, for ye had need to be reposed. Why sir, said the knight, seem ye that I am weak and feeble? and, sir, me thinketh ye proffer me wrong, and to me shame, when I do well enough. I tell you now as I told you erst, for and they were twenty knights I shall beat them. And if I be beaten or slain then may ye revenge me. And if ye think that I be weary, and ye have

: to just with me, I shall find
ıg enough. Sir, said Pala-
aid it not because I would
you, but me seemeth that ye
ıuch on hand. And therefore,
e gentle, said the knight with
ield, ye should not proffer me
erefore I require you to just
and ye shall find that I am

Sith ye require me, said Sir take keep to yourself. Then nights came together as fast horses might run, and the ote Sir Palamides so sore ield that the spear went into a great wound and a peril- therewithal Sir Palamides ; saddle. And that knight to Sir Dinadan. And when im coming, he cried aloud Sir, I will not have ado with for that he let it not, but ght upon him. So Sir Dina- ame put forth his spear and ered it upon the knight. But Sir Dinadan again so hard ote him clean from his saddle; ıorses he would not suffer his neddle with, and because they hts errant. Then he dressed to the castle, and justed with hts more, and there was none night withstand him, but he to the earth. And of these ights he slew in plain justs l the eight knights he made wear on the cross of a sword ihould never use the evil cus- ıe castle. And when he had n to swear that oath, he let ;. And ever stood the lords ıdies on the castle walls cry- aying, Knight with the red have marvellously well done, : saw knight do. And there- a knight out of the castle un- d said, Knight with the red ermuch damage hast thou us this day, therefore return ou wilt, for here are no more ıave ado with thee, for we re- that ever thou camest here, : is fordone the old custom of this castle. And with that word he turned again into the castle, and shut the gates. Then the knight with the red shield turned and called his squires, and so past forth on his way, and rode a great pace. And when he was past, Sir Palamides went to Sir Dinadan and said, I had never such a shame of one knight that ever I met, and therefore I cast me to ride after him, and to be revenged with my sword. For a horseback I deem I shall get no worship of him. Sir Palamides, said Dinadan, ye shall not meddle with him by my counsel, for ye shall get no worship of him, and for this cause,—ye have seen him this day have had overmuch to do, and overmuch travailed. Truly, said Sir Palamides, I shall never be at ease till that I have had ado with him. Sir, said Dinadan, I shall give you my beholding. Well, said Sir Palamides, then shall ye see how we shall redress our mights. So they took their horses of their varlets, and rode after the knight with the red shield; and down in a valley beside a fountain they were ware where he was alight to repose him, and had done off his helm for to drink at the well.

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir Lamorak justed with Sir Palamides and hurt him grievously.

THEN Palamides rode fast till he came nigh him. And then he said, Knight, remember ye of the shame ye did to me right now at the castle, therefore dress thee, for I will have ado with thee. Fair knight, said he unto Sir Palamides, of me ye win no worship, for ye have seen this day that I have been travailed sore. As for that, said Palamides, I will not let; for wit ye well I will be revenged. Well, said the knight, I may happen to endure you. And therewithal he mounted upon his horse, and took a great spear in his hand, ready for to just. Nay, said Palamides, I will not just, for I am sure at justing I get no prize. Fair knight, said that knight, it would beseem a knight to just and to fight on horseback. Ye

shall see what I will do, said Palamides. And therewith he alight down upon foot, and dressed his shield afore him, and pulled out his sword. Then the knight with the red shield descended down from his horse, and dressed his shield afore him, and so he drew out his sword. And then they came together a soft pace, and wonderly they lashed together passing thick, the mountenance of an hour, or ever they breathed. Then they traced and traversed, and waxed wonderly wroth, and either behight other death. They hewed so fast with their swords, that they cut in down half their swords and mails, that the bare flesh in some places stood above their harness. And when Sir Palamides beheld his fellow's sword over covered with his blood, it grieved him sore. Somewhile they foined, somewhile they strake as wild men. But at the last Sir Palamides waxed faint, because of his first wound that he had at the castle with a spear, for that wound grieved him wonderly sore. Fair knight, said Palamides, me seemeth we have assayed either other passing sore, and if it may please thee I require thee of thy knighthood tell me thy name. Sir, said the knight to Palamides, that is me loth to do, for thou hast done me wrong and no knighthood to proffer me battle, considering my great travail: but and thou wilt tell me thy name, I will tell thee mine. Sir, said he, wit thou well my name is Palamides. Ah sir, ye shall understand my name is Sir Lamorak de Galis, son and heir unto the good knight and king, king Pellinore; and Sir Tor the good knight is my half brother. When Sir Palamides heard him say so, he kneeled down and asked mercy: For outrageously have I done to you this day, considering the great deeds of arms I have seen you do, shamefully and unknightly I have required you to do battle. Ah, Sir Palamides, said Sir Lamorak, over much have ye done and said to me. And therewith he embraced him with both his hands, and said, Palamides the worthy knight, in all this land is no better than ye, nor of more prowe me repented sore that we shoul together. So it doth not me, s Palamides, and yet am I sorer w than ye be; but as for that, I sha thereof be whole. But certainly I not for the fairest castle in this la if thou and I had met, for I sha you the days of my life afore all knights, except my brother Sir I say the same, said Sir Lamor cept my brother Sir Tor. Then Sir Dinadan, and he made great Sir Lamorak. Then their squires c both their shields and their harne stopped their wounds. And ther a priory they rested them all nigh

CHAP. XX.

How it was told Sir Launcelot that net chased king Mark, and how a overthrew him and six knights.

Now turn we again, when Sir L and Sir Brandiles with his fellow to the court of king Arthur: the the king, Sir Launcelot, and Sir Tr how Sir Dagonet the fool chase Mark through the forest, and hc strong knight smote them dov seven with one spear. There was laughing and jesting at king Ma at Sir Dagonet. But all these k could not tell what knight it wa rescued king Mark. Then they king Mark if that he knew him. A answered and said, He named h the knight that followed the qu beast, and on that name he sei of my varlets to a place wher his mother, and when she hear whence he came, she made g great dole, and discovered to m let his name, and said, O my dea Sir Palamides, why wilt thou n me? and therefore, Sir, said king it is to understand his name is Si mides, a noble knight. Then w these seven knights glad that the his name. Now turn we again, the morn they took their horses Sir Lamorak, Palamides, and Di with their squires and varlets, ti saw a fair castle that stood on a

closed. And thither they rode, they found a knight that hight that was lord of that castle. e they had great cheer, and eased. Sir Dinadan, said Sir what will ye do? O sir, said I will to-morrow to the court ırthur. By my head, said Sir ;, I will not ride these three I am sore hurt and much have ıd therefore I will repose me ıly, said Sir Lamorak, and I here with you. And when ye will I ride, unless that ye tarry , then will I take my horse.

I pray you, Sir Dinadan, ride with us. Faithfully, said I will not abide, for I have ent to see Sir Tristram that I ıbide long from him. Ah, Di- d Sir Palamides, now do I un- that ye love my mortal enemy, fore how should I trust you? l Dinadan, I love my lord Sir above all other, and him will ıd do honour. So shall I, said rak, in all that may lie in my So on the morn Sir Dinadan o the court of king Arthur. the way as he rode he saw od an errant knight, and made r for to just. Not so, said Sir for I have no will to just. shall ye just, said the knight, e pass this way. Whether ask by love or by hate? The knight , Wit ye well I ask it for love, for hate. It may well be so, Dinadan, but ye proffer me e, when ye will just with me sharp spear. But fair knight, Dinadan, sith ye will just with with me in the court of king nd there shall I just with you. l the knight, sith ye will not just I pray you tell me your name. t, said he, my name is Sir Di- Ah, said the knight, full well you for a good knight and a ıd wit you well I love you Then shall here be no justs, dan, betwixt us. So they de- And the same day he came to Camelot where lay king Arthur. And there he saluted the king and the queen, Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram. And all the court was glad of Sir Dinadan, for he was gentle, wise, and courteous, and a good knight. And in especial the valiant knight Sir Tristram loved Sir Dinadan passing well above all other knights save Sir Launcelot. Then the king asked Sir Dinadan what adventures he had seen. Sir, said Dinadan, I have seen many adventures, and of some king Mark knoweth, but not all. Then the king hearkened Sir Dinadan how he told that Sir Palamides and he were afore the castle of Morgan le Fay, and how Sir Lamorak took the justs afore them, and how he forjusted twelve knights, and of them four he slew, and how after he smote down Sir Palamides and me both. I may not believe that, said the king, for Sir Palamides is a passing good knight. That is very truth, said Sir Dinadan, but yet I saw him better proved hand for hand. And then he told the king all that battle, and how Sir Palamides was more weaker and more hurt, and more lost of his blood. And without doubt, said Sir Dinadan, had the battle longer lasted Palamides had been slain. Oh, said king Arthur, this is to me a great marvel. Sir, said Tristram, marvel ye no thing thereof, for at mine advice there is not a valianter knight in all the world living, for I know his might. And now I will say you, I was never so weary of knight but if it were Sir Launcelot. And there is no knight in the world except Sir Launcelot I would did so well as Sir Lamorak. Truly, said the king, I would that knight Sir Lamorak came to this court. Sir, said Dinadan, he will be here in short space and Sir Palamides both. But I fear that Palamides may not yet travel.

CHAP. XXI.

How king Arthur let do cry a justs, and how Sir Lamorak came in and overthrew Sir Gawaine and many other.

THEN within three days after the king let make a justing at a priory.

And there made them ready many knights of the Round Table. For Sir Gawaine and his brethren made them ready to just. But Tristram, Launcelot, nor Dinadan, would not just, but suffered Sir Gawaine, for the love of king Arthur, with his brethren, to win the gree if they might. Then on the morn they apparelled them to just, Sir Gawaine and his four brethren, and did there great deeds of arms. And Sir Ector de Maris did marvellously well; but Sir Gawaine passed all that fellowship, wherefore king Arthur and all the knights gave Sir Gawaine the honour at the beginning. Right so king Arthur was ware of a knight and two squires the which came out of a forest side, with a shield covered with leather, and then he came slily and hurtled here and there, and anon with one spear he had smitten down two knights of the Round Table. Then with his hurtling he lost the covering of his shield. Then was the king and all other ware that he bare a red shield. Oh, said king Arthur, see where rideth a stout knight, he with the red shield. And there was noise and crying, Beware the knight with the red shield. So within a little while he had overthrown three brethren of Sir Gawaine's. Truly, said king Arthur, me seemeth yonder is the best juster that ever I saw. With that he saw him encounter with Sir Gawaine, and he smote him down with so great force, that he made his horse to avoid his saddle. How now, said the king, Sir Gawaine hath a fall, well were me and I knew what knight he were with the red shield. I know him well, said Dinadan, but as at this time ye shall not know his name. By my head, said Sir Tristram, he justed better than Sir Palamides, and if ye list to know his name, wit ye well his name is Sir Lamorak de Galis. As they stood thus talking, Sir Gawaine and he encountered together again, and there he smote Sir Gawaine from his horse, and bruised him sore. And in the sight of king Arthur he smote down twenty knights beside Sir Gawaine and his brethren. And so clearly v prize given him as a knight p Then slily and marvellously Sir rak withdrew him from all the ship into the forest side. All this king Arthur, for his eye went from him.

Then the king, Sir Launcel Tristram, and Sir Dinadan too hacknies and rode straight af good knight Sir Lamorak de Ga there found him. And thus s king, Ah fair knight, well be ye When he saw the king he put helm and saluted him. And wh saw Sir Tristram he alight down horse, and ran to him for to take the thighs; but Sir Tristram wo suffer him, but he alight or that h and either took other in arm made great joy of other. The ki glad, and also was all the fellow the Round Table, except Sir G and his brethren. And when th that he was Sir Lamorak, the great despite at him, and were w wroth with him, that he had pu to dishonour that day. Then G called privily in counsel all his br and to them said thus: Fair br here may ye see whom that w king Arthur loveth, and whom t love he hateth. And wit ye w fair brethren, that this Sir Lamor never love us, because we sl father king Pellinore, for we that he slew our father, king c ney. And for the despite of P Sir Lamorak did us a shame mother, therefore I will be re Sir, said Sir Gawaine's brethren, how ye will or may be reveng ye shall find us ready. Well, s Gawaine, hold you still, and w espy our time.

CHAP. XXII.

How king Arthur made king Ma accorded with Sir Tristram, a they departed toward Cornwall.

Now pass we our matter, an we Sir Gawaine, and speak

at on a day said unto king I pray you to give me a gift all ask you. Sir, said king will give you whatsoever ye d it be in my power. Sir, said king Arthur: this I will hat ye will be good lord unto im, for he is a man of great nd that ye will take him with Cornwall, and let him see his d there cherish him for my , said king Mark, I promise e faith of my body, and by the e to God and to you, I shall im for your sake in all that I ay. Sir, said Arthur, and I ve you all the evil will that ved you, and so be that ye upon a book afore me. With ill, said king Mark. And so ware upon a book afore him is knights, and therewith king d Sir Tristram took either the hands hard knit together. all this king Mark thought s it proved after, for he put am in prison, and cowardly e slain him. Then soon after k took his leave to ride into and Sir Tristram made him ride with him, wherefore the t of the Round Table were d heavy; and in especial Sir , and Sir Lamorak, and Sir were wroth out of measure. they wist king Mark would stroy Sir Tristram. Alas, said that my lord Sir Tristram shall And Sir Tristram took such at he was amazed like a fool. Sir Launcelot unto king Ar- t have ye done, for ye shall nost man of worship that ever your court? It was his own id Arthur, and therefore I t do withal; for I have done can, and made them at ac- cord, said Sir Launcelot, fie accord, for ye shall hear that slay Sir Tristram, or put him n, for he is the most coward villainest king and knight w living. And therewith Sir Launcelot departed, and came to king Mark, and said to him thus: Sir king, wit thou well, the good knight Sir Tristram shall go with thee. Beware, I counsel thee, of treason; for and thou mischieve that knight, by any manner of falsehood or treason, by the faith I owe to God and to the order of knighthood, I shall slay thee with mine own hands. Sir Launcelot, said the king, over much have ye said to me; and I have sworn and said over largely afore king Arthur, in hearing of all his knights, that I shall not slay nor betray him. It were to me overmuch shame to break my promise. Ye say well, said Sir Launcelot, but ye are called so false and full of treason that no man may believe you. Forsooth, it is known well wherefore ye came into this country, and for none other cause but for to slay Sir Tristram. So with great dole king Mark and Sir Tristram rode together; for it was by Sir Tristram's will and his means to go with king Mark, and all was for the intent to see La Beale Isoud; for without the sight of her Sir Tristram might not endure.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Percivale was made knight of king Arthur, and how a dumb maid spake, and brought him to the Round Table.

Now turn we again unto Sir Lamorak, and speak we of his brethren. Sir Tor, which was king Pellinore's first son; and Sir Aglavale was his next son; Sir Lamorak, Dornar, Percivale, these were his sons too. So when king Mark and Sir Tristram were departed from the court, there was made great dole and sorrow for the departing of Sir Tristram. Then the king and his knights made no manner of joys eight days after. And at the eight days' end, there came to the court a knight, with a young squire with him; and when this knight was unarmed, he went to the king, and required him to make the young squire a knight. Of what lineage is he come? said king Arthur. Sir, said the knight, he is the son of king

Pellinore, that did you sometime good service, and he is brother unto Lamorak de Galis the good knight. Well, said the king, for what cause desire ye that of me, that I should make him knight? Wit you well, my lord the king, that this young squire is brother to me, as well as to Sir Lamorak, and my name is Aglavale. Sir Aglavale, said Arthur, for the love of Sir Lamorak, and for his father's love, he shall be made knight to-morrow. Now tell me, said Arthur, what is his name? Sir, said the knight, his name is Percivale de Galis.

So on the morn the king made him knight in Camelot. But the king and all the knights thought it would be long or that he proved a good knight. Then at the dinner when the king was set at the table, and every knight after he was of prowess, the king commanded him to be set among mean knights; and so was Sir Percivale set as the king commanded. Then was there a maiden in the queen's court that was come of high blood; and she was dumb, and never spake word. Right so she came straight into the hall, and went unto Sir Percivale, and took him by the hand, and said aloud, that the king and all the knights might hear it, Arise, Sir Percivale the noble knight and God's knight, and go with me; and so he did. And there she brought him to the right side of the siege-perilous, and said, Fair knight, take here thy siege, for that siege appertaineth to thee, and to none other. Right so she departed and asked a priest. And as she was confessed and houselled; then she died. Then the king and all the court made great joy of Sir Percivale.

CHAP. XXIV.

How Sir Lamorak visited king Lot's wife, and how Sir Gaheris slew her which was his own mother.

Now turn we unto Sir Lamorak, that much was there praised. Then, by the mean of Sir Gawaine and his brethren, they sent for their mother there besides fast by a castle beside Camelot; and all was to that intent to slay Sir Lamorak. The queen of Orkney was t a while, but Sir Lamorak wi being, and was full fain; ar make an end of this matter he her, and there betwixt them w assigned that Sir Lamorak sho to her. Thereof was ware Sir and there he rode afore, the sa and waited upon Sir Lamorak. he saw where he came all arm where Sir Lamorak alight, he horse to a privy postern, ar went into a parlour and unarm and then he went unto the qu she made of him passing great he of her again, for either lov passing sore. So when the ki Gaheris, saw his time, he ca them, all armed, with his swor and suddenly gat his mother hair, and strake off her head Sir Lamorak saw the blood d him all hot, the which he loved well, wit you well he was sore and dismayed of that dolorou And therewithal Sir Lamorak l as a knight dismayed, saying t Sir Gaheris, knight of the Tabl foul and evil have ye done, ar great shame. Alas, why have your mother that bare you; w right ye should have slain n offence hast thou done, said notwithstanding a man is born his service, but yet shouldest ware with whom thou medd thou hast put me and my to a shame, and thy father s father; and thou to love our n too much shame for us to suff as for thy father king Pellin brother Sir Gawaine and I sl Ye did him the more wrong, Lamorak, for my father slew father; it was Balan le Savage yet my father's death is not r Leave those words, said Gah and thou speak feloniously I thee, but because thou art un am ashamed to slay thee. But well, in what place I may ge shall slay thee; and now my n quit of thee; and therefore v

l take thine armour, that thou
ae. Sir Lamorak saw there was
her boot, but fast armed him,
k his horse, and rode his way,
great sorrow. But for the
nd dolour he would not ride to
thur's court, but rode another
But when it was known that
had slain his mother, the king
sing wroth, and commanded
go out of his court. Wit ye
Gawaine was wroth that Ga-
d slain his mother, and let Sir
c escape. And for this matter
king passing wroth, and so was
ncelot, and many other knights.
Sir Launcelot, here is a great
befallen by felony, and by fore-
ason, that your sister is thus
lly slain. And I dare say that
wrought by treason, and I dare
shall lose that good knight Sir
c. the which is great pity. I
ell and am sure, and Sir Tris-
it it he would never more come
your court, the which should
ou much more, and all your
God defend, said the noble
rthur, that I should lose Sir
c or Sir Tristram, for then
f my chief knights of the Table
were gone. Sir, said Sir Laun-
am sure that ye shall lose
orak, for Sir Gawaine and his
will slay him by one mean or
r they among them have con-
nd sworn to slay him and ever
y see their time. That shall I
Arthur.

CHAP. XXV.

Agravaine and Sir Mordred with a knight fleeing, and how both were overthrown, and of Sir Dinadan.

leave we of Sir Lamorak, and
f Sir Gawaine's brethren, and
of Sir Agravaine and Sir Mor-
As they rode on their adven-
ey met with a knight flying
ounded, and they asked him
lings? Fair knights, said he,
eth a knight after me that will slay me. With that came Sir Dinadan, riding to them by adventure, but he would promise them no help. But Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred promised him to rescue him. Therewithal came that knight straight unto them. And anon he proffered to just. That saw Sir Mordred, and rode to him; but he strake Sir Mordred over his horse tail. That saw Sir Agravaine, and straight he rode toward that knight. And right so as he served Mordred, so he served Agravaine, and said to them, Sirs, wit ye well both, that I am Breuse Sance Pité, that hath done this to you. And yet he rode over Agravaine five or six times. When Dinadan saw this, he must needs just with him for shame. And so Dinadan and he encountered together, that with pure strength Sir Dinadan smote him over his horse tail. Then he took his horse and fled. For he was on foot one of the valiantest knights in Arthur's days, and a great destroyer of all good knights. Then rode Sir Dinadan unto Sir Mordred and unto Sir Agravaine. Sir knight, said they all, well have ye done, and well have ye revenged us; wherefore we pray you tell us your name. Fair sirs, ye ought to know my name, the which is called Sir Dinadan. When they understood that it was Dinadan, they were more wroth than they were before, for they hated him out of measure, because of Sir Lamorak. For Dinadan had such a custom that he loved all good knights that were valiant, and he hated all those that were destroyers of good knights. And there were none that hated Dinadan but those that ever were called murderers. Then spake the hurt knight that Breuse Sance Pité had chased, his name was Dalan, and said, If thou be Dinadan, thou slewest my father. It may well be so, said Dinadan, but then it was in my defence, and at his request. By my head, said Dalan, thou shalt die therefore. And therewith he dressed his spear and his shield. And to make the shorter tale, Sir Dinadan smote him down off his horse, that his neck was nigh broken. And in the same wise he smote Sir Mordred and

Sir Agravaine. And after, in the quest of the Sancgreal, cowardly and feloniously they slew Dinadan, the which was great damage, for he was a great jester and a passing good knight. And so Sir Dinadan rode to a castle that hight Beale-Valet, and there he found Sir Palamides, that was not yet whole of the wound that Sir Lamorak gave him. And there Dinadan told Palamides all the tidings that he heard and saw of Sir Tristram, and how he was gone with king Mark, and with him he hath all his will and desire. Therewith Sir Palamides waxed wroth, for he loved La Beale Isoud, and then he wist well that Sir Tristram should see her.

CHAP. XXVI.

How king Arthur, the queen, and Launcelot received letters out of Cornwall, and of the answer again.

Now leave we Sir Palamides and Sir Dinadan, in the Castle of Beale-Valet, and turn we again unto king Arthur. There came a knight out of Cornwall, his name was Fergus, a fellow of the Round Table, and there he told the king and Sir Launcelot good tidings of Sir Tristram, and there were brought goodly letters, and how he left him in the Castle of Tintagil. Then came the damsel that brought goodly letters unto king Arthur and unto Sir Launcelot; and there she had passing good cheer of the king and of the queen Guenever, and of Sir Launcelot. Then they wrote goodly letters again. But Sir Launcelot bad ever Sir Tristram beware of king Mark; for ever he called him in his letters king Fox, as who saith, He fareth all with wiles and treason: whereof Sir Tristram in his heart thanked Sir Launcelot. Then the damsel went unto La Beale Isoud, and bare her letter from the king and from Sir Launcelot, whereof she was in passing great joy. Fair damsel, said La Beale Isoud, how fareth my lord Arthur, and the queen Guenever, and the noble knight, Sir Launcelot du Lake? She answered, and to make short tale, Much the better that ye and Sir Tristram be in joy. Truly, said La Beale Is Tristram suffereth great pain and I for him. So the damsel d and brought letters to king Mar when he had read them, and un them, he was wroth with Sir T for he deemed that he had sent t sel unto king Arthur; for Artl Launcelot in a manner threaten Mark. And as king Mark rea letters he deemed treason by S tram. Damsel, said king Mark ride again, and bear letters fi unto king Arthur? Sir, she sai be at your commandment to ric ye will. Ye say well, said th come again, said the king, to-mc fetch your letters. Then she d and told them how she should ri with letters unto Arthur. Then, you, said La Beale Isoud and S tram, that when ye have receiv letters, that ye would come by we may see the privity of your All that I may do, madam, ye v I must do for Sir Tristram, for been long his own maiden. Sc morn the damsel went to king M have had his letters, and to de am not advised, said king Mark time to send my letters. Then and secretly he sent letters un Arthur, and unto queen Guene unto Sir Launcelot. So the va parted, and found the king and c Wales, at Carlion. And as the k the queen were at mass the varl with the letters; and when m done the king and the queen op letters privily by themselves. beginning of the king's letter wonderly short unto king Artl bade him intermeddle with and with his wife, and of his kni he was able enough to rule and wife.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Launcelot was wroth with that he received from king Mari Dinadan which made a lay of ki

When king Arthur underst letter he mused of many thin

on his sister's words, queen
le Fay, that she had said be-
en Guenever and Sir Launcelot.
is thought he studied a great
hen he bethought him again
ister was his own enemy, and
ated the queen and Sir Laun-
so he put all that out of his
Then king Arthur read the
in, and the latter clause said
Mark took Sir Tristram for
l enemy, wherefore he put
t of doubt he would be re-
f Sir Tristram. Then was
hur wroth with king Mark.
n queen Guenever read her
l understood it, she was wroth
easure, for the letter spake
her, and by Sir Launcelot.
rivily she sent the letter unto
elot. And when he wist the
he letter, he was so wroth that
im down on his bed to sleep,
Sir Dinadan was ware, for it
manner to be privy with all
ghts. And as Sir Launcelot
tole the letter out of his hand,
it word by word; and then he
at sorrow for anger. And so
elot awaked, and went to a
and read the letter again, the
de him angry. Sir, said Dina-
refore be ye angry? discover
t to me. For sooth ye wot
we you good will, howbeit
or knight, and a servitor unto
to all good knights. For
be not of worship myself, yet
those that be of worship. It
said Sir Launcelot, ye are a
ght, and for great trust I will
my counsel. And when Dina-
stood all, he said, This is my
set you right nought by these
or king Mark is so villainous
fair speech shall never man
im. But ye shall see what
. I will make a lay for him,
it is made I shall make an
sing it afore him. So anon
nd made it, and taught it an
at hight Eliot, and when he
he taught it to many harpers.
And so by the will of Sir Launcelot, and of Arthur, the harpers went straight into Wales and into Cornwall, to sing the lay that Sir Dinadan made by king Mark, which was the worst lay that ever harper sang with harp or with any other instruments.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Sir Tristram was hurt, and of a war made to king Mark; and of Sir Tristram, how he promised to rescue him.

Now turn we again unto Sir Tristram and to king Mark. As Sir Tristram was at justs and at tournament it fortuned he was sore hurt, both with a spear and with a sword. But yet he wan always the degree. And for to repose him he went to a good knight that dwelled in Cornwall in a castle, whose name was Sir Dinas the seneschal. Then by misfortune there came out of Sessoin a great number of men of arms, and an hideous host; and they entered nigh the castle of Tintagil; and their captain's name was Elias, a good man of arms. When king Mark understood his enemies were entered into his land, he made great dole and sorrow, for in no wise by his will king Mark would not send for Sir Tristram, for he hated him deadly. So when his council was come, they devised and cast many perils of the strength of their enemies; and then they concluded all at once, and said thus unto king Mark, Sir, wit ye well ye must send for Sir Tristram the good knight, or else they will never be overcome. For by Sir Tristram they must be fought withal, or else we row against the stream. Well, said king Mark, I will do by your counsel. But yet he was full loth thereto, but need constrained him to send for him. Then was he sent for in all haste that might be, that he should come to king Mark. When Sir Tristram understood that the king had sent for him, he mounted upon a soft ambler and rode to king Mark. And when he was come, the king said thus: Fair nephew Sir Tristram, this is all: here be come our

enemies of Sessoin, that are here nigh hand; and without tarrying they must be met with shortly, or else they will destroy this country. Sir, said Sir Tristram, wit ye well, all my power is at your commandment; and wit ye well Sir, these eight days may I bear none arms, for my wounds be not yet whole. And by that day I shall do what I may. Ye say well, said king Mark: then go ye again, and repose you, and make you fresh; and I shall go and meet the Sessoins with all my power. So the king departed unto Tintagil, and Sir Tristram went to repose him. And the king made a great host, and departed them in three. The first part led Sir Dinas the seneschal, and Sir Andred led the second part, and Sir Arguis led the third part, and he was of the blood of king Mark. And the Sessoins had three great battles, and many good men of arms. And so king Mark, by the advice of his knights, issued out of the castle of Tintagil upon his enemies. And Dinas the good knight rode out afore, and slew two knights with his own hands; and then began the battles. And there was marvellous breaking of spears, and smiting of swords, and slew down many good knights, and ever was Sir Dinas the seneschal the best of king Mark's part. And thus the battle endured long with great mortality. But at the last king Mark and Sir Dinas, were they never so loth, they withdrew them to the castle of Tintagil, with great slaughter of people, and the Sessoins followed on fast, that ten of them were put within the gates, and four slain with the portcullis. Then king Mark sent for Sir Tristram by a varlet, that told him all the mortality. Then he sent the varlet again, and bade him, Tell king Mark that I will come as soon as I am whole, for erst I may do him no good. Then king Mark had his answer. Therewith came Elias, and bade the king yield up the castle, for ye may not hold it no while. Sir Elias, said the king, so will I yield up the castle, if I be not soon rescued. Anon king Mark sent again for rescue to Sir Tristram. By then Sir Tristram was and he had gotten him ten good of Arthur's, and with them he ro Tintagil. And when he saw th host of Sessoins he marvelled greatly. And then Sir Tristra by the woods and by the ditc secretly as he might, till he cam the gates. And there dressed a to him, when he saw that Sir T would enter; and Sir Tristram him down dead. And so he three more. And every each o ten knights slew a man of arm Sir Tristram entered into the ca Tintagil. And when king Mar that Sir Tristram was come, h glad of his coming, and so was fellowship, and of him they mad joy.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Sir Tristram overcame the bat bow Elias desired a man to fig for body.

So on the morn, Elias the came and bade king Mark co and do battle, For now the good Sir Tristram is entered, it wil shame to thee, said Elias, for t thy walls. When king Mark stood this, he was wroth, and s word, but went unto Sir Tristra asked him his counsel. Sir, s Tristram, will ye that I give h answer? I will well, said king Then Sir Tristram said thus to t sager, Bear thy lord word fr king and me, that we will do with him to-morn in the plai What is your name? said th sager. Wit thou well my name Tristram de Liones. Therewit messager departed, and told h Elias all that he had heard. S Sir Tristram unto king Mark, I p give me leave to have the rule battle. I pray you take the ru king Mark. Then Sir Tristram vise the battle in what manner should be. He let depart his six parts, and ordained Sir Di seneschal to have the fore wa

ıights to rule the remnant: and ıe night Sir Tristram burnt all ;oins' ships unto the cold water. ; Elias wist that, he said, It was Tristram's doing, for he casteth shall never escape, mother's son herefore, fair fellows, fight freely ow, and miscomfort you nought knight, though he be the best in the world: he may not have h us all. Then they ordained ıttles in four parts, wonderly ɔarelled and garnished with men . Thus they within issued, and :hout set freely upon them; and r Dinas did great deeds of arms. then Sir Dinas and his fellow- re put to the worse. With that r Tristram, and slew two knights e spear. Then he slew on the ınd and on the left hand, that ırvelled that ever he might do eds of arms. And then he might ıetime the battle was driven a ıught from the castle, and some- was at the gates of the castle. ame Elias the captain rashing d there, and hit king Mark so on the helm that he made him l the saddle; and then Sir Dinas ıg Mark again to horseback. ithal came in Sir Tristram like ınd there he met with Elias, and te him so sore upon the helm avoided his saddle. And thus ught till it was night, and for aughter, and for wounded people, h party drew to their rest. And ing Mark was come within the of Tintagil, he lacked of his an hundred; and they without two hundred: and they searched ınded men on both parties. And ey went to council; and wit you ther party were loth to fight o that either might escape with ɔrship.

ı Elias the captain understood th of his men, he made great nd when he wist that they were go to battle again he was wroth neasure. Then Elias sent word ıg Mark in great despite, whether he would find a knight that would fight for him, body for body, and if that he might slay king Mark's knight, he to have the truage of Cornwall yearly: and if that his knight slay mine, I fully release my claim for ever. Then the messager departed unto king Mark, and told him how that his lord Elias had sent him word to find a knight to do battle with him, body for body. When king Mark understood the messager he bad him abide, and he should have his answer. Then called he all the baronage together, to wit what was the best counsel. They said, all at once, To fight in a field we have no lust, for had not been Sir Tristram's prowess, it had been likely that we never should have escaped. And therefore, sir, as we deem, it were well done to find a knight that would do battle with him, for he knightly proffereth.

CHAP. XXX.

How Sir Elias and Sir Tristram fought together for the truage, and how Sir Tristram slew Elias in the field.

Nor for then, when all this was said, they could find no knight that would do battle with him. Sir king, said they all, here is no knight that dare fight with Elias. Alas, said king Mark, then am I utterly shamed, and utterly destroyed, unless that my nephew Sir Tristram will take the battle upon him. Wit ye well, they said all, he had yesterday over much on hand, and he is weary for travail, and sore wounded. Where is he? said king Mark. Sir, said they, he is in his bed to repose him. Alas, said king Mark, but I have the succour of my nephew Sir Tristram I am utterly destroyed for ever. Therewith one went to Sir Tristram where he lay, and told him what king Mark had said. And therewith Sir Tristram arose lightly, and put on him a long gown, and came afore the king and all the lords. And when he saw them all so dismayed, he asked the king and the lords what tidings were with them. Never worse, said the king. And

therewith he told him all how he had word of Elias to find a knight to fight for the truage of Cornwall, and none can I find; and as for you, said the king and all the lords, we may ask no more of you for shame, for through your hardiness yesterday ye saved all our lives. Sir, said Sir Tristram, now I understand ye would have my succour, reason would that I should do all that lieth in my power to do, saving my worship and my life, howbeit I am sore bruised and hurt. And sithen Sir Elias proffereth so largely, I shall fight with him, or else I will be slain in the field, or else I will deliver Cornwall from the old truage. And therefore lightly call his messager, and he shall be answered: for as yet my wounds be green, and they will be sorer a seven night after than they be now, and therefore he shall have his answer, that I will do battle to-morn with him. Then was the messager departed brought before king Mark. Hark my fellow, said Sir Tristram, go fast unto thy lord, and bid him make true assurance on his part, for the truage, as the king here shall make on his part; and then tell thy lord Sir Elias, that I, Sir Tristram, king Arthur's knight, and knight of the Table Round, will as to-morn meet with thy lord on horseback, to do battle as long as my horse may endure, and after that to do battle with him on foot to the utterance. The messager beheld Sir Tristram from the top to the toe; and therewithal he departed, and came to his lord, and told him how he was answered of Sir Tristram. And therewithal was made hostage on both parties, and made it as sure as it might be, that whether party had the victory, so to end. And then were both hosts assembled, on both parts of the field without the castle of Tintagil, and there was none but Sir Tristram and Sir Elias armed. So when the appointment was made, they departed in sunder, and they came together with all the might that their horses might run. And either knight smote other so hard that both horses and knights went to the earth. Not for then they both lightly arose, and dressed their shields on their shoulders, with naked swords in their hands, and they dashed together that it seemed a flaming fire about them. Thus they traced and traversed, and hewed on helms and hauberks, and cut away many cantels of their shields, and either wounded other passing sore, so that the hot blood fell freshly upon the earth. And by then they had fought the mountenance of an hour Sir Tristram waxed faint and for-bled, and gave sore aback. That saw Sir Elias, and followed fiercely upon him, and wounded him in many places. And ever Sir Tristram traced and traversed, and went froward him here and there, and covered him with his shield as he might all weakly, that all men said he was overcome. For Sir Elias had given him twenty strokes against one. Then was there laughing of the Sessoins' party, and great dole on king Mark's party. Alas, said the king, we are ashamed and destroyed all for ever. For, as the book saith, Sir Tristram was never so matched, but if it were Sir Launcelot. Thus as they stood and beheld both parties, that one party laughing, and the other part weeping, Sir Tristram remembered him of his lady, La Beale Isoud, that looked upon him, and how he was likely never to come in her presence. Then he pulled up his shield, that erst hung full low; and then he dressed up his shield unto Elias, and gave him many sad strokes, twenty against one, and all to-brake his shield and his hauberk, that the hot blood ran down to the earth. Then began king Mark to laugh and all Cornish men, and that other party to weep. And ever Sir Tristram said to Sir Elias, Yield thee! Then when Sir Tristram saw him so staggering on the ground, he said, Sir Elias, I am right sorry for thee, for thou art a passing good knight as ever I met withal, except Sir Launcelot. Therewithal Sir Elias fell to the earth, and there died. What shall I do? said Sir Tristram unto king Mark, for this battle is at an end. Then they of Elias's party departed;

Mark took of them many
to redress the harms and the
iat he had of them, and the
he sent into their country to
it their fellows. Then was Sir
searched and well healed. Yet
s king Mark would fain have
Tristram. But for all that
Tristram saw or heard by king
would he never beware of his
ut ever he would be there as
Isoud was.

CHAP. XXXI.

*a great feast that king Mark
an harper came and sang the
t Dinadan had made.*

ill we pass of this matter, and
of the harper that Sir Laun-
Sir Dinadan had sent into
. And at the great feast that
k made for joy that the Ses-
e put out of his country, then
ot the harper, with the lay
adan had made, and secretly
it unto Sir Tristram, and told
lay that Dinadan had made by
rk. And when Sir Tristram
he said: That Dinadan can
nderly well and ill, there as it
Sir, said Eliot, dare I sing
afore king Mark? Yea, on my
d Sir Tristram, for I shall be
unt. Then at the meat came
he harper, and because he was
harper men heard him sing
lay that Dinadan had made,
h spake the most villainy by
k of his treason that ever man
When the harper had sung his
the end, king Mark was won-
oth, and said, Thou harper,
st thou be so bold on thy head
his song before me? Sir, said
: you well I am a minstrel, and
o as I am commanded of these
t I bear the arms of. And, sir,
vell that Sir Dinadan, a knight
ble Round, made this song, and
: to sing it afore you. Thou
ell, said king Mark, and be-
ou art a minstrel thou shalt go
quit, but I charge thee hie thee fast out of my sight. So the harper departed, and went to Sir Tristram, and told him how he had sped. Then Sir Tristram let make letters, as goodly as he could, to Launcelot, and to Sir Dinadan. And so he let conduct the harper out of the country. But to say that king Mark was wonderly wroth, he was; for he deemed that the lay that was sung afore him was made by Sir Tristram's counsel, wherefore he thought to slay him and all his well-willers in that country.

CHAP. XXXII.

How king Mark slew by treason his brother Boudwin, for good service that he had done to him.

Now turn we to another matter, that fell between king Mark and his brother that was called the good prince Sir Boudwin, that all the people of the country loved passing well. So it befell upon a time, that the miscreants Saracens landed in the country of Cornwall, soon after these Sessoins were gone. And then the good prince Sir Boudwin, at the landing, he raised the country privily and hastily. And or it were day he let put wild-fire in three of his own ships, and suddenly he pulled up the sail, and with the wind he made those ships to be driven among the navy of the Saracens; and to make short tale, those three ships set on fire all the ships, that none were saved. And at the point of the day the good prince Boudwin, with all his fellowship, set on the miscreants, with shouts and cries, and slew to the number of forty thousand, and left none alive. When king Mark wist this, he was wonderly wroth that his brother should win such worship. And because this prince was better beloved than he in all that country, and that also Sir Boudwin loved well Sir Tristram, therefore he thought to slay him. And thus hastily as a man out of his wit, he sent for prince Boudwin, and Anglides his wife, and bad them bring their young son with them, that he might see him. All

this he did to the intent to slay the child as well as his father, for he was the falsest traitor that ever was born. Alas, for his goodness and for his good deeds this gentle prince Boudwin was slain. So when he came with his wife Anglides, the king made them fair semblant till they had dined. And when they had dined, king Mark sent for his brother, and said thus: Brother, how sped you when the miscreants arrived by you? Me seemeth it had been your part to have sent me word, that I might have been at that journey, for it had been reason that I had had the honour, and not you. Sir, said the prince Boudwin, it was so that and I had tarried till that I had sent for you, those miscreants had destroyed my country. Thou liest, false traitor, said king Mark, for thou art ever about for to win worship from me, and put me to dishonour, and thou cherishest that I hate. And therewith he struck him to the heart with a dagger, that he never after spake word. Then the lady Anglides made great dole and swooned, for she saw her lord slain afore her face. Then was there no more to do, but prince Boudwin was despoiled and brought to burial. But Anglides privily got her husband's doublet and his shirt, and that she kept secretly. Then was there much sorrow and crying, and great dole made Sir Tristram, Sir Dinas, Sir Fergus, and so did all the knights that were there, for that prince was passingly well beloved. So La Beale Isoud sent unto Anglides, the prince Boudwin's wife, and bad her avoid lightly, or else her young son Alisander le Orphelin should be slain. When she heard this, she took her horse and her child, and rode her way with such poor men as durst ride with her.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Anglides, Boudwin's wife, escaped with her young son, Alisander le Orphelin, and came to the castle of Arundel.

NOTWITHSTANDING, when king Mark had done this deed, yet he thought to do more vengeance; and with his sword in his hand he sought from chamber to chamber, to find Anglides and her young son. And when she was missed, he called a good knight that hight Sir Sadok, and charged him, by pain of death, to fetch Anglides again, and her young son. So Sir Sadok departed, and rode after Anglides. And within ten mile he overtook her, and bade her turn again, and ride with him to king Mark. Alas, fair knight, she said, what shall ye win by my son's death, or by mine? I have had over much harm, and too great a loss. Madam, said Sadok, of your loss is dole and pity; but, madam, said Sadok, would ye depart out of this country with your son, and keep him till he be of age, that he may revenge his father's death, then would I suffer you to depart from me, so ye promise me for to revenge the death of prince Boudwin. Ah, gentle knight, Jesu thank thee, and if ever my son Alisander le Orphelin live to be a knight, he shall have his father's doublet and his shirt with the bloody marks; and I shall give him such a charge that he shall remember it while he liveth. And therewithal Sadok departed from her, and either betook other to God. And when Sadok came to king Mark, he told him faithfully that he had drowned young Alisander, her son; and thereof king Mark was full glad.

Now turn we unto Anglides, that rode both night and day by adventure out of Cornwall, and little and in few places she rested. But ever she drew southward to the sea side, till by fortune she came to a castle that is called Magouns, and now it is called Arundel in Southsex. And the constable of the castle welcomed her, and said she was welcome to her own castle; and there was Anglides worshipfully received, for the constable's wife was nigh her cousin. And the constable's name was Bellangere, and that same constable told Anglides that the same castle was hers by right inheritance. Thus Anglides endured years and winters, till

er was big and strong. There ıe so wight in all that country, there was none that might do ner of mastery afore him.

CHAP. XXXIV.

ıglides gave the bloody doublet to ıder her son the same day that he ıade knight, and the charge withal.

upon a day Bellangere the le came to Anglides and said, , it were time that my lord er were made knight, for he is ıg strong young man. Sir, said ould he were made knight; but ust I give him the most charge er sinful mother gave to her Do as ye list, said Bellangere, hall give him warning that he : made knight. Now it will be ne that he may be made knight adyday in Lent. Be it so, said :s, and I pray you make ready e. So came the constable to er, and told him that he should Ladyday in Lent be made I thank God, said Alisander, re the best tidings that ever ɔ me. Then the constable or- twenty of the greatest gentle- sons, and the best born men country, that should be made that same day that Alisander de knight. So on the same day isander and his twenty fellows ıade knights, at the offering of ıs there came Anglides unto her d said thus: O fair sweet son, I thee upon my blessing, and of h order of chivalry that thou ıere this day, that thou under- hat I shall say and charge thee Therewithal she pulled out a doublet and a bloody shirt, that e-bled with old blood. When er saw this, he start back and ɔale, and said, Fair mother, what s mean? I shall tell thee, fair son; ; thine own father's doublet and at he ware upon him that same t he was slain. And there she n why and wherefore: and how for his goodness king Mark slew him with his dagger afore mine own eyes. And therefore this shall be your charge, that I shall give thee. Now I require thee and charge thee upon my blessing, and upon the high order of knighthood, that thou be revenged upon king Mark for the death of thy father. And therewithal she swooned. Then Alisander leaped to his mother, and took her up in his arms, and said, Fair mother, ye have given me a great charge, and here I promise you I shall be avenged upon king Mark when that I may, and that I promise to God and to you. So this feast was ended. And the constable, by the advice of Anglides, let purvey that Sir Alisander was well horsed and harnessed. Then he justed with his twenty fellows that were made knights with him. But, for to make a short tale, he overthrew all those twenty, that none might withstand him a buffet.

CHAP. XXXV.

How it was told to king Mark of Sir Alisander, and how he would have slain Sir Sadok for saving of his life.

Then one of those knights departed unto king Mark, and told him all how Alisander was made knight, and all the charge that his mother gave him, as ye have heard afore time. Alas, false treason, said king Mark, I wend that young traitor had been dead. Alas, whom may I trust? And therewithal king Mark took a sword in his hand, and sought Sir Sadok from chamber to chamber to slay him. When Sir Sadok saw king Mark come with his sword in his hand, he said thus: Beware, king Mark, and come not nigh me, for wit thou well that I saved Alisander his life, of which I never repent me, for thou falsely and cowardly slewest his father Boudwin traitorly for his good deeds. Wherefore I pray almighty Jesu send Alisander might and strength to be revenged upon thee. And now beware king Mark of young Alisander, for he is made a knight. Alas, said king Mark, that ever I should hear a traitor say so afore me. And therewith four knights

of king Mark drew their swords to slay Sir Sadok. But anon Sir Sadok slew them all in king Mark's presence. And then Sir Sadok passed forth into his chamber, and took his horse and his harness, and rode on his way a good pace. For there was neither Sir Tristram, neither Sir Dinas, nor Sir Fergus, that would Sir Sadok any evil will. Then was king Mark wroth, and thought to destroy Sir Alisander, and Sir Sadok that had saved him, for king Mark dread and hated Sir Alisander most of any man living. When Sir Tristram understood that Alisander was made knight, anon forthwithal he sent him a letter, praying him and charging him that he would draw him to the court of king Arthur, and that he put him in the rule and in the hands of Sir Launcelot. So this letter was sent to Alisander from his cousin Sir Tristram. And at that time he thought to do after his commandment. Then king Mark called a knight that brought him the tidings from Alisander, and bade him abide still in that country. Sir, said that knight, so must I do, for in mine own country I dare not come. No force, said king Mark. I shall give thee here double as much lands as thou haddest of thine own. But within short space Sir Sadok met with that false knight and slew him. Then was king Mark wood wroth out of measure. Then he sent unto queen Morgan le Fay and to the queen of Northgalis, praying them in his letters that they two sorceresses would set all the country in fire, with ladies that were enchantresses, and by such that were dangerous knights, as Malgrin, and Breuse Sance Pité; that by no means Alisander le Orphelin should escape, but either he should be taken or slain. This ordinance made king Mark for to destroy Alisander.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How Sir Alisander wan the prize at a tournament, and of Morgan le Fay. And how he fought with Sir Malgrin and slew him.

Now turn we again unto Sir Alisander, that at his departing from his took with him his father's blood So that he bare with him always death day, in tokening to think father's death. So was Alisand posed to ride to London by the of Sir Tristram to Sir Launcelot by fortune he went by the se and rode wrong. And there h at a tournament the gree, tha Carados made. And there he down king Carados, and twenty knights, and also Sir Safere a knight, that was Sir Palamides' b the good knight. All this saw a sel, and saw the best knight ju ever she saw. And ever as he down knights he made them to to wear no harness in a twelve and a day. This is well said, sai gan le Fay, this is the knight would fain see. And so she to palfrey and rode a great while, an she rested her in her pavilion. S came four knights: two were and two were unarmed, and th Morgan le Fay their names. T was Elias de Gomeret, the seco Car de Gomeret; those were that other twain were of Can cousins unto queen Guenever that one hight Sir Guy, and tha hight Garaunt; those were un There these four knights told M le Fay how a young knight had them down before a castle. F maiden of that castle said that but late made knight and young as we suppose, but if it were Si tram, or Sir Launcelot, or Sir L the good knight, there is non might sit him a buffet with a Well, said Morgan le Fay, I sha that knight or it be long time, dwell in that country.

So turn we to the damsel castle, that when Alisander le O had forjusted the four knight called him to her, and said th knight, wilt thou for my sake j fight with a knight of this count is and hath been long time neighbour to me, his name is M

will not suffer me to be married
ıanner wise for all that I can do,
knight for my sake. Damsel,
lisander, and he come while I
e I will fight with him, and my
ɔdy for your sake I will jeopard.
ıerewithal she sent for him, for
; at her commandment. And
ither had a sight of other they
hem ready for to just, and they
ogether eagerly, and Malgrin
his spear upon Alisander, and
ler smote him again so hard that
him quite from his saddle to the
But this Malgrin arose lightly
essed his shield and drew his
and bad him alight, saying,
ı thou have the better of me on
ck, shalt thou find that I shall
like a knight on foot. It is well
id Alisander. And so lightly he
his horse, and betook him to his
And then they rashed together
ɔ boars, and laid on their helms
elds long time by the space of
ours, that never man could say
was the better knight. And in
ınwhile came Morgan le Fay to
ısel of the castle, and they beheld
tle. But this Malgrin was an
d knight, and he was called one
dangerous knights of the world
attle on foot: but on horseback
ere many better. And ever this
ı awaited to slay Alisander, and
nded him wonderly sore, that it
ırvel that ever he might stand,
had bled so much blood: for
er fought wildly and not wittily.
at other was a felonious knight,
aited him, and smote him sore.
netime they rashed together with
ields like two boars or rams, and
veling both to the earth. Now
said Malgrin, hold thy hand
and tell me what thou art. I
, said Alisander, but if me list.
l me thy name, and why thou
this country, or else thou shalt
my hands. Wit thou well, said
, that for this maiden's love of
le I have slain ten good knights
ap; and by outrage and pride of
myself I have slain ten other knights. Truly, said Alisander, this is the foulest confession that ever I heard knight make, nor never heard I speak of other men of such a shameful confession; wherefore it were great pity and great shame to me that I should let thee live any longer; therefore keep thee as well as ever thou mayest, for as I am true knight, either thou shalt slay me or else I shall slay thee, I promise thee faithfully. Then they lashed together fiercely. And at the last Alisander smote Malgrin to the earth, and then he raced off his helm, and smote off his head lightly. And when he had done and ended this battle, anon he called to him his varlet, the which brought him his horse. And then he weening to be strong enough would have mounted. And so she laid Sir Alisander in a horse-litter, and led him into the castle, for he had no foot nor might to stand upon the earth. For he had sixteen great wounds, and in especial one of them was like to be his death.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How queen Morgan le Fay bad Alisander in her castle, and how she healed his wounds.

THEN queen Morgan le Fay searched his wounds, and gave such an ointment unto him that he should have died. And on the morn when she came to him, he complained him sore; and then she put other ointments upon him, and then he was out of his pain. Then came the damsel of the castle, and said unto Morgan le Fay, I pray you help me that this knight might wed me, for he hath won me with his hands. Ye shall see, said Morgan le Fay, what I shall say. Then Morgan le Fay went to Sir Alisander and bad in any wise that he should refuse this lady—if she desire to wed you, for she is not for you. So the damsel came and desired of him marriage. Damsel, said Orphelin, I thank you, but as yet I cast me not to marry in this country. Sir, said she, sithen ye will not marry me, I pray you, insomuch

as ye have won me, that ye will give me to a knight of this country that hath been my friend and loved me many years. With all my heart, said Alisander, I will assent thereto. Then was the knight sent for; his name was Sir Gerine le Grose. And anon he made them handfast and wedded them. Then came queen Morgan le Fay to Alisander, and bad him arise, and put him in a horse-litter: and gave him such a drink that in three days and three nights he waked never but slept: and so she brought him to her own castle, that at that time was called La Beale Regard. Then Morgan le Fay came to Alisander, and asked him if he would fain be whole. Who would be sick, said Alisander, and he might be whole? Well, said Morgan le Fay, then shall ye promise me by your knighthood that this day twelvemonth and a day ye shall not pass the compass of this castle, and without doubt ye shall lightly be whole. I assent, said Sir Alisander. And there he made her a promise. Then was he soon whole. And when Alisander was whole then he repented him of his oath, for he might not be revenged upon king Mark. Right so there came a damsel that was cousin to the Earl of Pase, and she was cousin to Morgan le Fay. And by right that castle of La Beale Regard should have been hers by true inheritance. So this damsel entered into this castle where lay Alisander, and there she found him upon his bed, passing heavy and all sad.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How Alisander was delivered from the queen Morgan le Fay by the means of a damsel.

Sir knight, said the damsel, and ye would be merry, I could tell you good tidings. Well were me, said Alisander, and I might hear of good tidings, for now I stand as a prisoner by my promise. Sir, said she, wit you well that ye be a prisoner, and worse than ye ween. For my lady, my cousin queen Morgan le Fay, keepeth you here for none other intent but for to do her pleasure with you, when it liketh her. Defend me, said Alisander, from such pleasure, for I had lever die than I would do her such pleasure. Truly, said the damsel, and ye would love me and be ruled by me, I shall make your deliverance with your worship. Tell me, said Alisander, by what mean, and ye shall have my love. Fair knight, said she, this castle of right ought to be mine, and I have an uncle the which is a mighty earl, he is earl of Pase, and of all folks he hateth most Morgan le Fay, and I shall send unto him, and pray him for my sake to destroy this castle for the evil customs that be used therein; and then will he come and set wild fire on every part of the castle, and I shall get you out at a privy postern, and there shall ye have your horse and your harness. Ye say well, damsel, said Alisander. And then she said, Ye may keep the room of this castle this twelvemonth and a day, then break ye not your oath. Truly, fair damsel, said Alisander, ye say sooth. And then he kissed her. So anon she sent unto her uncle, and bad him come and destroy that castle; for as the book saith, he would have destroyed that castle afore time, had not that damsel been. When the earl understood her letters he sent her word again, that on such a day he would come and destroy that castle. So when that day came, she shewed Alisander a postern where through he should flee into a garden, and there he should find his armour and his horse. When the day came that was set, thither came the earl of Pase with four hundred knights, and set on fire all the parts of the castle, that, or they ceased, they left not a stone standing. And all this while that the fire was in the castle, he abode in the garden. And when the fire was done, he let make a cry that he would keep that piece of earth, there as the castle of La Beale Regard was, a twelvemonth and a day, from all manner knights that would come.

So it happed there was a duke that

sirus, and he was of the kin of celot. And this knight was a grim, for every third year he : at Jerusalem. And because ll his life to go in pilgrimage, ed him duke Ansirus the pil- nd this duke had a daughter t Alice, that was a passing fair and because of her father she ed Alice La Beale Pilgrim. n as she heard of this cry, unto Arthur's court, and said n hearing of many knights, at knight may overcome that iat keepeth that piece of earth e me and all my lands. When its of the Round Table heard hus, many were glad, for she ing fair, and of great rents. she let cry in castles and fast on her side as Sir Alisan- n his side. Then she dressed ion straight by the piece of t Alisander kept. So she was oon there but there came a f Arthur's court, that hight r le Desirous, and he prof- just with Alisander, and they red, and Sagramor le Desirous iis spear upon Sir Alisander, Alisander smote him so hard voided his saddle. And when Alice saw him just so well, she him a passing goodly knight back. And then she lept out avilion and took Sir Alisan- he bridle, and thus she said: ght, I require thee of thy od, shew me thy visage. I ll, said Alisander, shew my And then he put off his helm; a she saw his visage she said, e I must love and never other. w me your visage, said he.

CHAP. XXXIX.

ander met with Alice la Beale , and how he justed with two ; and after of him and of Sir d.

he unwimpled her visage. And saw her he said, Here have I found my love and my lady. Truly, fair lady, said he, I promise you to be your knight, and none other that beareth the life. Now, gentle knight, said she, tell me your name. My name is, said he, Alisander le Orphelin. Now, damsel, tell me your name, said he. My name is, said she, Alice la Beale Pilgrim. And when we be more at our heart's ease, both ye and I shall tell each other of what blood we be come. So there was great love betwixt them. And as they thus talked, there came a knight that hight Harsouse le Berbuse, and asked part of Sir Alisander's spears. Then Sir Alisander encountered with him, and at the first Sir Alisander smote him over his horse croup. And then there came another knight that hight Sir Hewgon. And Sir Alisander smote him down as he did that other. Then Sir Hewgon proffered to do battle on foot. Sir Alisander overcame him with three strokes, and there would have slain him had he not yielded him. So then Alisander made both those knights to swear to wear none armour in a twelvemonth and a day. Then Sir Alisander alight down, and went to rest him and repose him. Then the damsel that halp Sir Alisander out of the castle, in her play told dame Alice altogether how he was prisoner of the castle of La Beale Regard: and there she told her how she gat him out of prison. Sir, said Alice la Beale Pilgrim, me seemeth ye are much beholden to this maiden. That is truth, said Sir Alisander. And there Alice told him of what blood she was come. Sir, wit ye well, she said, that I am of the blood of king Ban, that was father unto Sir Launcelot. Ye wis, fair lady, said Alisander, my mother told me that my father was brother unto a king, and I am nigh cousin to Sir Tristram. Then this while came there three knights, that one hight Vains, and that other hight Harvis de les Marches, and the third hight Perin de la Montaine. And with one spear Sir Alisander smote them down all three, and gave them such falls that

they had no list to fight upon foot. So he made them to swear to wear no arms in a twelvemonth. So when they were departed, Sir Alisander beheld his lady Alice on horseback as he stood in her pavilion. And then he was so enamoured upon her, that he wist not whether he were on horseback or on foot. Right so came the false knight Sir Mordred, and saw Sir Alisander was assotted upon his lady: and therewithal he took his horse by the bridle and led him here and there, and had cast to have led him out of that place to have shamed him. When the damsel that halp him out of that castle saw how shamefully he was led, anon she let arm her, and set a shield upon her shoulder. And therewith she mounted upon his horse, and gat a naked sword in her hand, and she thrust unto Alisander with all her might, and she gave him such a buffet that he thought the fire flew out of his eyes. And when Alisander felt that stroke he looked about him, and drew his sword. And when she saw that, she fled, and so did Mordred into the forest, and the damsel fled into the pavilion. So when Sir Alisander understood himself how the false knight would have shamed him, had not the damsel been, then was he wroth with himself that Sir Mordred was so escaped his hands. But then Sir Alisander and dame Alice had good game at the damsel, how sadly she hit him upon the helm. Then Sir Alisander justed thus day by day, and on foot he did many battles with many knights of king Arthur's court, and with many knights strangers. Therefore to tell all the battles that he did it were overmuch to rehearse, for every day within that twelvemonth he had ado with one knight or with other, and some day he had ado with three or with four. And there was never knight that put him to the worse. And at the twelvemonth's end he departed with his lady Alice la Beale Pilgrim. And the damsel would never go from him: and so they went into their country of Benoye, and lived there in great joy.

CHAP. XL.

How Sir Galahalt did do cry c Surluse, and queen Guenever' should just against all that wo

But as the book saith, kir would never stint till he had s by treason. And by Alice h child which hight Bellengerus l And by good fortune he cam court of king Arthur, and p passing good knight: and he r his father's death; for the fa Mark slew both Sir Tristram sander falsely and feloniously. happed so that Alisander ha grace nor fortune to come ur Arthur's court. For and he h to Sir Launcelot, all knights s knew him, he was one of the s knights that was in Arthur's da great dole was made for him.

So let we of him pass, and tu another tale. So it befell that S halt the haut prince was lord country of Surluse, whereof can good knights. And this nobl was a passing good man of ar ever he held a noble fellowship t And then he came to Arthur' and told him his intent, how his will, how he would let cry in the country of Surluse, th country was within the lands Arthur, and there he asked l let cry a justs. I will give yo said king Arthur. But wit th said king Arthur, I may not t Sir, said queen Guenever, pleas to give me leave to be at th With right good will, said Art Sir Galahalt the haut prince sh you in governance. Sir, said C I will as ye will. Sir, then th I will take with me, and such as please me best. Do as said king Arthur. So anon s manded Sir Launcelot to ma ready with such knights as he best. So in every good town ar of this land was made a cry, tha country of Surluse Sir Galahal make a justs that should last eig

the haut prince with the help Guenever's knights should just ll manner of men that would hen this cry was known, kings es, dukes and earls, barons and ights, made them ready to be sts. And at the day of justing ne in Sir Dinadan disguised, nany great deeds of arms.

CHAP. XLI.

Launcelot fought in the tour- , and how Sir Palamides did here for a damsel.

t the request of queen Guenever ng Bagdemagus, Sir Launcelot o the range, but he was dis- nd that was the cause that few w him. And there met with ctor de Maris his own brother, r brake their spears upon other hands. And then either gat spear, and then Sir Launcelot wn Sir Ector de Maris his own

That saw Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Launcelot such a buffet helm that he wist not well was. Then Sir Lanncelot was id smote Sir Bleoberis so sore helm that his head bowed ckward. And he smote eft uffet that he avoided his sad- d so he rode by and thrust the thickest. When the king galis saw Sir Ector and Sir lie on the ground, then he derous wroth, for they came art against them of Surluse. ing of Northgalis ran to Sir t, and brake a spear upon him ces. Therewith Sir Launcelot the king of Northgalis and m such a buffet on the helm sword that he made him to horse; and anon the king was gain. So both the king Bag- and the king of Northgalis led together: and then began meddle, but they of Northgalis bigger.

Sir Launcelot saw his party worst, he thronged into the thickest press with a sword in his hand, and there he smote down on the right hand and on the left hand, and pulled down knights, and rased off their helms, that all men had wonder that ever one knight might do such deeds of arms. When Sir Meliagant, that was son unto king Bagdemagus, saw how Sir Launcelot fared, he marvelled greatly. And when he understood that it was he, he wist well that he was disguised for his sake. Then Sir Meliagant prayed a knight to slay Sir Launcelot's horse, either with sword or with spear. At that time king Bagdemagus met with a knight that hight Sauseise, a good knight, to whom he said, Now fair Sauseise, encounter with my son Meliagant, and give him large payment; for I would he were well beaten of thy hands, that he might depart out of the field. And then Sir Sauseise encountered with Sir Meliagant, and either smote other down. And then they fought on foot, and there Sauseise had won Sir Meliagant had not there come rescues. So then the haut prince blew to lodging. And every knight unarmed him and went to the great feast. Then in the meanwhile there came a damsel unto the haut prince, and complained that there was a knight that hight Goneries, that withheld her all her lands. Then the knight was there present, and cast his glove to him, or to any that would fight in her name. So the damsel took up the glove all heavily for default of a champion. Then there came a varlet to her and said, Damsel, will ye do after me? Full fain, said the damsel. Then go ye unto such a knight that lyeth here beside in an hermitage, and that followeth the questing beast, and pray him to take the battle upon him, and anon I wot well he will grant you.

So anon she took her palfrey, and within awhile she found that knight, that was Sir Palamides. And when she required him, he armed him and rode with her, and made her to go to the haut prince, and to ask leave for her knight to do battle. I will well, said the haut prince. Then the knights

were ready in the field to just on horseback: and either gat a spear in their hands, and met so fiercely together that their spears all to-shivered. And then they flung out swords, and Sir Palamides smote Sir Goneries down to the earth, and then he rased off his helm, and smote off his head. Then they went to supper. And the damsel loved Sir Palamides, but the book saith she was of his kin. So then Sir Palamides disguised him in this manner; in his shield he bear the questing beast, and in all his trappings. And when he was thus ready, he sent to the haut prince to give him leave to just with other knights, but he was adoubted of Sir Launcelot. The haut prince sent him word again that he should be welcome, and that Sir Launcelot should not just with him. Then Sir Galahalt the haut prince let cry what knight soever he were that smote down Sir Palamides should have his damsel to himself.

CHAP. XLII.

How Sir Galahalt and Palamides fought together, and of Sir Dinadan and Sir Galahalt.

Here beginneth the second day. Anon as Sir Palamides came into the field, Sir Galahalt the haut prince was at the range end, and met with Sir Palamides, and he with him, with great spears. And then they came so hard together that their spears all to-shivered. But Sir Galahalt smote him so hard that he bare him backward over his horse, but yet he lost not his stirrups. Then they drew their swords and lashed together many sad strokes that many worshipful knights left their business to behold them. But at the last Sir Galahalt the haut prince smote a stroke of might unto Sir Palamides sore upon the helm, but the helm was so hard that the sword might not bite, but slipped and smote off the head of the horse of Sir Palamides. When the haut prince wist, and saw the good knight fall unto the earth, he was ashamed of that stroke. And therewith he alighted down off his own horse, and prayed the goo Sir Palamides to take that hor gift, and to forgive him that de said Palamides, I thank you great goodness, for ever of a worship a knight shall never l worship. And so he mounted u horse, and the haut prince had anon. Now, said the haut p release to you that maiden, have won her. Ah, said Palam damsel and I be at your comma So they departed, and Sir Gal great deeds of arms. And came Dinadan and encounter Sir Galahalt, and either came so fast with their spears, th spears brake to their hands. B dan had wend the haut prince l more weary than he was. And smote many sad strokes at t prince. But when Dinadan might not get him to the earth, My lord, I pray you leave me another. The haut prince k Dinadan, and left goodly for words, and so they departed. there came another, and told prince that it was Dinadan sooth, said the prince, therefo heavy that he is so escaped fi for with his mocks and jests n I never have done with him. A Galahalt rode fast after him, him, Abide, Dinadan, for king sake. Nay, said Sir Dinadan, no more together this day. that wrath the haut prince n Meliagant, and he smote him throat, that and he had fallen had broken, and with the san he smote down another knight came in they of Northgalis, an strangers, and were like to h them of Surluse to the worse. Galahalt the haut prince had ev in hand. So there came in t knight Semound the Valiant, w knights, and he beat them al Then the queen Guenever and S celot let blow to lodging: an knight unarmed him, and dre to the feast.

CHAP. XLIII.

Archade appealed Sir Palamides ason, and how Sir Palamides im.

Palamides was unarmed, he lging for himself and the dam- on the haut prince commanded lodging. And he was not so his lodging, but there came a that hight Archade; he was unto Goneries, that Sir Pala- ew afore in the damsel's quar- d this knight Archade called nides traitor, and appealed him death of his brother. By the the haut prince, said Sir Pala- shall answer thee. When the ice understood their quarrel, he a go to dinner, and as soon as dined, look that either knight y in the field. So when they d, they were armed both, and ir horses; and the queen, and ce, and Sir Launcelot, were ehold them. And so they let r horses, and there Sir Pala- are Archade on his spear over e tail. And then Palamides nd drew his sword; but Sir might not arise, and there mides rased off his helm, and ff his head. Then the haut nd queen Guenever went to Then king Bagdemagus sent s son Meliagant, because Sir ot should not meet with him, nated Sir Launcelot, and that : not.

CHAP. XLIV.

ird day, and how Sir Palamides with Sir Lamorak, and other

beginneth the third day of just- l at that day king Bagdema- le him ready, and there came him king Marsil, that had in island of Sir Galahalt the haut and this island had the name a. Then it befell that king agus and king Marsil of Pomi- tain met together with spears, and king Marsil had such a buffet that he fell over his horse croup. Then there came in a knight of king Marsil, to revenge his lord: and king Bagdemagus smote him down, horse and man, to the earth. So there came an earl that hight Arrouse, and Sir Breuse, and an hundred knights with them of Pomitain, and the king of Northgalis was with them; and all these were against them of Surluse. And then there began great battle, and many knights were cast under horse feet. And ever king Bagdemagus did best, for he first began, and ever he held on. Gaheris, Gawaine's brother, smote ever at the face of king Bagdemagus: and at the last king Bagdemagus hurtled down Gaheris, horse and man. Then, by adventure, Sir Palamides, the good knight, met with Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis' brother, and there either smote other with great spears, that both their horses and knights fell to the earth. But Sir Blamor had such a fall that he had almost broken his neck; for the blood brast out at nose, mouth, and his ears; but at the last he recovered well by good surgeons. Then there came in duke Chaleins of Clarance, and in his governance there came a knight that hight Elis la Noire; and there encountered with him king Bagdemagus, and he smote Elis that he made him to avoid his saddle. So the duke Chaleins of Clarance did there great deeds of arms; and of so late as he came in the third day there was no man did so well, except king Bagdemagus and Sir Palamides; that the prize was given that day unto king Bagdemagus. And then they blew unto lodging, and unarmed them, and went to the feast. Right so there came Sir Dinadan, and mocked and jested with king Bagdemagus, that all knights laughed at him; for he was a fine jester, and well loving all good knights. So anon as they had dined there came a varlet, bearing four spears on his back, and he came to Palamides and said thus: Here is a knight by hath sent you the choice of four spears, and

requireth you for your lady's sake to take that one half of these spears, and just with him in the field. Tell him, said Palamides, I will not fail him. When Sir Galahalt wist of this, he bad Palamides make him ready. So the queen Guenever, the haut prince, and Sir Launcelot, they were set upon scaffolds to give the judgment of these two knights.

Then Sir Palamides and the strange knight ran so eagerly together that their spears brake to their hands. Anon withal either of them took a great spear in his hand and all to-shivered them in pieces. And then either took a greater spear. And then the knight smote down Sir Palamides, horse and man, to the earth. And as he would have passed over him, the strange knight's horse stumbled, and fell down upon Palamides. Then they drew their swords, and lashed together wonderly sore a great while. Then the haut prince and Sir Launcelot said they saw never two knights fight better than they did. But ever the strange knight doubled his strokes, and put Palamides aback. Therewith the haut prince cried, Ho; and then they went to lodging. And when they were unarmed they knew it was the noble knight Sir Lamorak. When Sir Launcelot knew that it was Sir Lamorak he made much of him; for above all earthly men he loved him best except Sir Tristram. Then queen Guenever commended him, and so did all other good knights make much of him, except Sir Gawaine's brethren. Then queen Guenever said unto Sir Launcelot, Sir, I require you that and ye just any more, that ye just with none of the blood of my lord Arthur. So he promised he would not as at that time.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the fourth day, and of many great feats of arms.

Here beginneth the fourth day. Then came into the field the king with the hundred knights, and all they of Northgalis, and the duke Chaleins of Clarance, and king Marsil of Por And there came Safere, Palamide ther, and there he told him tidi his mother, and how he appea earl before king Arthur:—For h war upon our father and mothe there I slew him in plain battl they went into the field, and the with them; and there came to en against them Sir Bleoberis de Ga Sir Ector de Maris. Sir Palamic countered with Sir Bleoberis, and smote other down; and in th wise did Sir Safere and Sir Ect those two couples did battle o Then came in Sir Lamorak, and countered with the king with th dred knights, and smote him qui his horse tail; and in the same served the king of Northgalis, a he smote down king Marsil. A or ever he stint, he smote dow his spear and with his sword knights. When duke Chaleins s morak do so great prowess, he not meddle with him for sham then he charged all his knights of death that none of you touc for it were shame to all good and that knight were shamed. the two kings gathered them to and all they set upon Sir Lamor he failed them not, but rashed he there, smiting on the right hand the left, and rased off many hel that the haut prince and queer never said they saw never knig such deeds of arms on horseback. said Launcelot to king Bagdem will arm me and help Sir La And I will ride with you, sai Bagdemagus. And when they tw horsed, they came to Sir Lamora stood among thirty knights, an was him that might reach him a and ever he smote again mightily. came there into the press Sir Lav and he threw down Sir Mado Porte, and with the truncheon spear he threw down many k And king Bagdemagus smote left hand and on the right han vellously well. And then the thr

k. Therewithal then Sir Gala-
blow to lodging, and all the
gave Sir Lamorak the prize.
this while fought Palamides,
ceris, Sir Safere, Sir Ector, on
ever were there four knights
atched. And then they were
nd had unto their lodging, and
them, and so they went to the
st.

hen Sir Lamorak was come
court, queen Guenever took
her arms, and said, Sir, well
lone this day. Then came the
ice, and he made of him great
so did Dinadan, for he wept
But the joy that Sir Launcelot
Sir Lamorak there might no
. Then they went unto rest;
the morn the haut prince let
o the field.

CHAP. XLVI.

fifth day, and how Sir Lamorak behaved him.

beginneth the fifth day. So it
at Sir Palamides came in the
e and proffered to just there as
hur was, in a castle there be-
luse; and there encountered
a worshipful duke, and there
nides smote him over his horse
And this duke was uncle unto
thur. Then Sir Elise's son
to Palamides, and Palamides
lise in the same wise. When Sir
saw this, he was wroth. Then
his horse, and encountered with
mides, and Palamides smote
ard that he went to the earth,
d man. And for to make a
e, he smote down three bre-
Sir Gawaine's, that is for to
dred, Gaheris, and Agravaine.
said Arthur, this is a great
f a Saracen, that he shall smite
y blood. And therewithal
thur was wood wroth, and
to have made him ready to
at espied Sir Lamorak, that
nd his blood were discomfited.
n he was ready, and asked
s if he would any more just.
Why should I not? said Palamides. Then they hurtled together, and brake their spears and all to-shivered them, that all the castle rang of their dints. Then either gat a greater spear in his hand, and they came so fiercely together; but Sir Palamides' spear all to-brast, and Sir Lamorak's did hold. Therewithal Sir Palamides lost his stirrups and lay upright on his horse's back. And then Sir Palamides returned again, and took his damsel, and Sir Safere returned his way. So when he was departed, king Arthur came to Sir Lamorak, and thanked him of his goodness, and prayed him to tell him his name. Sir, said Lamorak, wit you well, I owe you my service: but as at this time I will not abide here, for I see of mine enemies many about me. Alas, said Arthur, now wot I well it is Sir Lamorak de Galis. O, Lamorak, abide with me, and by my crown I shall never fail thee: and not so hardy in Gawaine's head, nor none of his brethren, to do thee any wrong. Sir, said Sir Lamorak, wrong have they done me and to you both. That is truth, said king Arthur, for they slew their own mother and my sister, which me sore grieveth. It had been much fairer and better that ye had wedded her, for ye are a king's son as well as they. Truly, said the noble knight Sir Lamorak unto Arthur, her death shall I never forget; I promise you and make mine avow I shall avenge her death as soon as I see time convenient. And if it were not at the reverence of your highness I should now have been revenged upon Sir Gawaine and his brethren. Truly, said Arthur, I will make you at accord. Sir, said Lamorak, as at this time I may not abide with you, for I must to the justs, where is Sir Launcelot and the haut prince Sir Galahalt.

Then there was a damsel that was daughter to king Bandes; and there was a Saracen knight that hight Corsabrin, and he loved the damsel, and in no wise he would suffer her to be married. For ever this Sir Corsabrin defamed her, and named her that she was out of her

mind; and thus he let her that she might not be married.

CHAP. XLVII.

How Sir Palamides fought with Corsabrin for a lady, and how Palamides slew Corsabrin.

So by fortune this damsel heard tell that Palamides did much for damsels' sakes; so she sent to him a pensel, and prayed him to fight with Sir Corsabrin for her love, and he should have her, and her lands of her father's that should fall to her. Then the damsel sent unto Corsabrin, and bad him go unto Sir Palamides, that was a Paynim as well as he: and she gave him warning that she had sent him her pensel; and if he might overcome Palamides she would wed him. When Corsabrin wist of her deeds, then was he wood wroth and angry, and rode unto Surluse, where the haut prince was, and there he found Sir Palamides ready, the which had the pensel. So there they waged battle either with other afore Galahalt. Well, said the haut prince, this day must noble knights just, and at after dinner we shall see how ye can speed. Then they blew to justs. And in came Dinadan, and met with Sir Gerin, a good knight, and he threw him down over his horse croup: and Sir Dinadan overthrew four knights more; and there he did great deeds of arms. For he was a good knight, but he was a scoffer, and a jester, and the merriest knight among fellowship that was that time living. And he had such a custom that he loved every good knight, and every good knight loved him again. So then when the haut prince saw Dinadan do so well, he sent unto Sir Launcelot, and bade him strike down Sir Dinadan:— And when that ye have done so, bring him afore me and the noble queen Guenever. Then Sir Launcelot did as he was required. Then Sir Lamorak and he smote down many knights, and rased off helms, and drove all the knights afore them. And so Sir Launcelot smote down Sir Dinadan, and made his men to unarm him, and so brought him to the queen and t prince, and then laughed at Si dan so sore that they might nc Well, said Sir Dinadan, yet ha shame, for the old shrew Sir L smote me down. So they went ner, and all the court had good Dinadan. Then when the din done, they blew to the field, t Sir Palamides and Corsabrin. mides pight his pensel in the the field, and then they hurtled with their spears as it were and either smote other to th And then they pulled their swc dressed their shields, and la gether mightily as mighty knig well nigh there was no piece of would hold them. For this C was a passing felonious knigh sabrin, said Palamides, wilt tho me yonder damsel, and the Then was Corsabrin wroth measure, and gave Palamides buffet that he kneeled on h Then Palamides arose ligh smote him upon the helm tha down right to the earth. Ar with he rased off his helm, a Corsabrin, yield thee, or else tl die of my hands. Fie on thee, sabrin, do thy worst. Then l off his head. And therewith a stench of his body when the parted, so that there might abide the savour. So was th had away and buried in a wood he was a Paymin.

Then they blew unto lodg Palamides was unarmed. went unto queen Guenever, to prince, and to Sir Launcelot. the haut prince, here have this day a great miracle by C what savour there was when departed from the body. Ther we will require you to take the upon you; and I promise knights will set the more by say more worship by you. Palamides, I will that ye all k into this land I came to be cl and in my heart I am christe

ed will I be. But I have made avow, that I may not be chris- ll I have done seven true battles s' sake. And then will I be chris- And I trust God will take mine or I mean truly. Then Sir Pala- rayed queen Guenever and the ince to sup with him. And so l both, Sir Launcelot, and Sir k, and many other good knights. he morn they heard their mass, w the field; and then knights em ready.

CHAP. XLVIII.

sixth day, and what then was done.

: beginneth the sixth day. Then ere in Sir Gaheris, and there ered with him Sir Ossaise of and Sir Gaheris smote him over e croup. And then either party ered with other, and there was ears broken, and many knights der feet. So there came Sir l and Sir Aglovale, that were l unto Sir Lamorak, and they h other two knights, and either ther so hard that all four knights rses fell to the earth. When morak saw his two brethren e was wroth out of measure. en he gat a great spear in his nd therewithal he smote down od knights, and then his spear Then he pulled out his sword, te about him on the right hand the left hand, and rased off nd pulled down knights, that all rvelled of such deeds of arms lid, for he fared so that many fled. Then he horsed his bre- gain, and said, Brethren, ye to be ashamed to fall so off rses; what is a knight but when n horseback? I set not by a when he is on foot, for all on foot are but pelowres bat- or there should no knight fight , but if it were for treason, or were driven thereto by force: e, brethren, sit fast upon your horses, or else fight never more afore me. With that came in duke Chaleins of Clarance; and there encountered with him the earl Ulbawes of Surluse, and either of them smote other down. Then the knights of both parties horsed their lords again; for Sir Ector and Bleoberis were on foot, waiting on the duke Chaleins; and the king with the hundred knights was with the earl of Ulbawes. With that came Gaheris, and lashed to the king with the hundred knights, and he to him again. Then came the duke Chaleins and departed them. Then they blew to lodging, and the knights unarmed them, and drew them to their dinner; and at the midst of their dinner in came Dinadan, and began to rail. Then he beheld the haut prince, that seemed wroth with some fault that he saw. For he had a custom he loved no fish; and because he was served with fish, the which he hated, therefore he was not merry. When Sir Dinadan had espied the haut prince, he espied where was a fish with a great head, and that he gat betwixt two dishes, and served the haut prince with that fish. And then he said thus: Sir Galahalt, well may I liken you to a wolf, for he will never eat fish, but flesh. Then the haut prince laughed at his words. Well, well, said Dinadan to Launcelot, what do ye in this country; for here may no mean knights win no worship for thee? Sir Dinadan, said Launcelot, I ensure thee that I shall no more meet with thee, nor with thy great spear, for I may not sit in my saddle when that spear hitteth me. And if I be happy, I shall beware of that boisterous body that thou bearest. Well, said Launcelot, make good watch ever. God forbid that ever we meet, but if it be at a dish of meat. Then laughed the queen and the haut prince, that they might not sit at their table. Thus they made great joy till on the morn. And then they heard mass, and blew to field. And queen Guenever and all the estates were set, and judges armed clean with their shields to keep the right.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the seventh battle, and how Sir Launcelot, being disguised like a maid, smote down Sir Dinadan.

Now beginneth the seventh battle. There came in the duke Cambines, and there encountered with him Sir Aristance, that was counted a good knight, and they met so hard that either bare other down, horse and man. Then came there the earl of Lambaile, and helped the duke again to horse. Then came there Sir Ossaise of Surluse, and he smote the earl Lambaile down from his horse. Then began they to do great deeds of arms, and many spears were broken, and many knights were cast to the earth. Then the king of Northgalis and the earl Ulbawes smote together, that all the judges thought it was like mortal death. This mean while queen Guenever and the haut prince and Sir Launcelot made there Sir Dinadan make him ready to just. I would, said Sir Dinadan, ride into the field, but then one of you twain will meet with me. Perdy, said the haut prince, ye may see how we sit here as judges with our shields, and always mayest thou behold whether we sit here or not. So Sir Dinadan departed, and took his horse, and met with many knights, and did passing well. And as he was departed, Sir Launcelot disguised himself, and put upon his armour a maiden's garment freshly attired. Then Sir Launcelot made Sir Galihodin to lead him through the range, and all men had wonder what damsel it was. And so as Sir Dinadan came into the range, Sir Launcelot, that was in the damsel's array, gat Galihodin's spear, and ran unto Sir Dinadan. And always Sir Dinadan looked up there as Sir Launcelot was, and then he saw one sit in the stead of Sir Launcelot, armed. But when Dinadan saw a manner of a damsel, he dread perils that it was Sir Launcelot disguised. But Sir Launcelot came on him so fast that he smote him over his horse croup. And then with great scorns they gat Sir Dinadan into the forest there beside, and there they despoiled him unto his shirt, and put upon him a woman's garment, and so brought him into the field, and so they blew unto lodging. And every knight went and unarmed him. Then was Sir Dinadan brought in among them all. And when queen Guenever saw Sir Dinadan brought so among them all, then she laughed that she fell down, and so did all that were there. Well, said Dinadan to Launcelot, thou art so false that I can never beware of thee. Then, by all the assent, they gave Sir Launcelot the prize: the next was Sir Lamorak de Galis; the third was Sir Palamides; the fourth was king Bagdemagus. So these four knights had the prize. And there was great joy and great nobley in all the court. And on the morn queen Guenever and Sir Launcelot departed unto king Arthur; but in no wise Sir Lamorak would not go with them. I shall undertake, said Sir Launcelot, that, and ye will go with us, king Arthur shall charge Sir Gawaine and his brethren never to do you hurt. As for that, said Sir Lamorak, I will not trust Sir Gawaine, nor none of his brethren; and wit ye well Sir Launcelot, and it were not for my lord king Arthur's sake, I should match Sir Gawaine and his brethren well enough. But to say that I should trust them, that shall I never. And therefore I pray you recommend me unto my lord Arthur, and unto all my lords of the Round Table. And in what place that ever I come I shall do you service to my power: and, sir, it is but late that I revenged that when my lord Arthur's kin were put to the worse by Sir Palamides. Then Sir Lamorak departed from Sir Launcelot, and either wept at their departing.

CHAP. L.

How by treason Sir Tristram was brought to a tournament for to have been slain, and how he was put in prison.

Now turn we from this matter, and speak we of Sir Tristram, of whom this

principally of; and leave we the
d the queen, Sir Launcelot, and
ıorak. And here beginneth the
of king Mark that he ordained
Sir Tristram. There was cried
coasts of Cornwall a great tour-
and justs. And all was done
Galahalt the haut prince, and
ıgdemagus, to the intent to slay
ıncelot, or else utterly destroy
l shame him, because Sir Laun-
ad always the higher degree:
e this prince and this king made
ts against Sir Launcelot. And
ir counsel was discovered unto
ark, whereof he was full glad.
ing Mark bethought him that he
ıave Sir Tristram unto that tour-
disguised that no man should
im, to that intent that the haut
should ween that Sir Tristram
ir Launcelot. So at these justs
Sir Tristram. And at that time
ncelot was not there, but when
w a knight disguised do such
f arms, they wend it had been
ıncelot. And in especial king
aid it was Sir Launcelot plainly.
hey set upon him, both king
ıagus and the haut prince, and
ıights, that it was wonder that
r Tristram might endure that
Notwithstanding for all the pain
had, Sir Tristram wan the de-
that tournament, and there he
ıny knights, and bruised them,
ey hurt him, and bruised him
ly sore. So when the justs were
they knew well that it was Sir
n de Liones. And all that were
Mark's party were glad that
tram was hurt, and the remnant
rry of his hurt; for Sir Tristram
so behated as was Sir Launce-
in the realm of England. Then
ng Mark unto Sir Tristram, and
ir nephew, I am sorry of your
Gramercy, my lord, said Sir
n. Then king Mark made Sir
n for to be put in a horse bier,
t sign of love, and said, Fair
I shall be your leech myself.
he rode forth with Sir Tristram,
and brought him to a castle by day-
light. And then king Mark made Sir
Tristram to eat, and then after he gave
him a drink, the which as soon as he
had drunk he fell on sleep; and when
it was night he made him to be carried
to another castle, and there he put him
in a strong prison, and there he ordained
a man and a woman to give him his
meat and drink. So there he was a
great while. Then was Sir Tristram
missed, and no creature wist where he
was become. When La Beale Isoud
heard how he was missed, privily she
went unto Sir Sadok, and prayed him to
espy where was Sir Tristram. Then
when Sadok wist how Sir Tristram
was missed, and anon espied that he
was put in prison by king Mark and
the traitors of Magons, then Sadok and
two of his cousins laid them in an am-
bushment, fast by the castle of Tintagil,
in arms. And as by fortune there came
riding king Mark and four of his
nephews, and a certain of the traitors
of Magons. When Sir Sadok espied
them he brake out of the bushment,
and set there upon them. And when
king Mark espied Sir Sadok he fled as
fast as he might. And there Sir Sadok
slew all the four nephews unto king
Mark. But these traitors of Magons slew
one of Sadok's cousins, with a great
wound in the neck, but Sadok smote
the other to death. Then Sir Sadok rode
upon his way unto a castle that was
called Liones, and there he espied of
the treason and felony of king Mark.
So they of that castle rode with Sir
Sadok till that they came to a castle that
hight Arbray. And there in the town
they found Sir Dinas the seneschal,
that was a good knight. But when Sir
Sadok had told Sir Dinas of all the
treason of king Mark, he defied such a
king, and said he would give up his
lands that he held of him. And when
he said these words all manner knights
said as Sir Dinas said. Then by his
advice, and of Sir Sadok's, he let stuff
all the towns and castles within the
country of Liones, and assembled all
the people that they might make.

CHAP. LI.

How king Mark let do counterfeit letters from the Pope, and how Sir Percivale delivered Sir Tristram out of prison.

Now turn we unto king Mark, that when he was escaped from Sir Sadok he rode unto the castle of Tintagil, and there he made great cry and noise, and cried unto harness all that might bear arms. Then they sought and found where were dead four cousins of king Mark's, and the traitors of Magons. Then the king let inter them in a chapel. Then the king let cry in all the country that held of him, to go unto arms, for he understood to the war he must needs. When king Mark heard and understood how Sir Sadok and Sir Dinas were risen in the country of Liones, he remembered of wiles and treason. Lo, thus he did: he let make and counterfeit letters from the Pope, and did make a strange clerk to bear them unto king Mark. The which letters specified, that king Mark should make him ready, upon pain of cursing, with his host to come to the Pope, to help to go to Jerusalem, for to make war upon the Saracens. When this clerk was come by the mean of the king, anon withal king Mark sent these letters unto Sir Tristram, and bad him say thus; That and he would go war upon the miscreants, he should be had out of prison, and to have all his power. When Sir Tristram understood this letter, then he said thus to the clerk: Ah, king Mark, ever hast thou been a traitor, and ever wilt be: but clerk, said Sir Tristram, say thou thus unto king Mark. Since the apostle Pope hath sent for him, bid him go thither himself, for tell him, traitor king as he is, I will not go at his command, get I out of my prison as I may. For I see I am well rewarded for my true service. Then the clerk returned unto king Mark, and told him of the answer of Sir Tristram. Well, said king Mark, yet shall he be beguiled. So he went into his chamber, and counterfeited letters, and the letters specified that the Pope desired Sir Tristram to come hin make war upon the miscreants. the clerk was come again unto S tram and took him these letter Sir Tristram beheld these lette anon espied they were of king counterfeiting. Ah, said Sir Tr false hast thou been ever, king and so wilt thou end. Then th departed from Sir Tristram, an to king Mark again. By ther were come four wounded knights the castle of Tintagil, and one o his neck was nigh broken in another had his arm stricken aw third was borne through with a the fourth had his teeth strick twain. And when they came afo Mark they cried and said, Kin fleest thou not, for all this cou arisen clearly against thee. Th king Mark wroth out of measure in the mean while there came i country Sir Percivale de Galis, t Sir Tristram. And when he hea Sir Tristram was in prison, Sir Pe made clearly the deliverance of S tram by his knightly means. An he was so delivered he made gr of Sir Percivale, and so each other. Sir Tristram said unto Si vale, And ye will abide in these m I will ride with you. Nay, said vale, in this country may I no for I must needs into Wales. Percivale departed from Sir Tr and rode straight unto king Ma told him how he had delivered S tram. And also he told the ki he had done himself great sha to put Sir Tristram in prison, f now the knight of most renow this world living. And wit th the most noble knights of the love Sir Tristram, and if he wil war upon you ye may not al That is truth, said king Mark may not love Sir Tristram bec loveth my queen and my wife, L Isoud. Ah fie for shame, said Si vale, say ye never so more. Are uncle unto Sir Tristram, and h nephew? Ye should never think

knight as Sir Tristram is, that
d do himself so great a villany
his uncle's wife, howbeit, said
ivale, he may love your queen
because she is called one of the
adies of the world. Then Sir
e departed from king Mark.
n he was departed king Mark
ht him of more treason, not-
ıding king Mark granted Sir
e never by no manner of means
Sir Tristram. So anon king
nt unto Sir Dinas the seneschal,
should put down all the people
had raised, for he sent him an
t he would go himself unto the
Rome to war upon the mis-
and this is a fairer war than
raise the people against your
When Sir Dinas the seneschal
ood that king Mark would go
e miscreants, then Sir Dinas in
haste put down all the people;
ien the people were departed
an to his home, then king Mark
vhere was Sir Tristram with La
oud. And there by treason king
et take him and put him in
contrary to his promise that he
nto Sir Percivale. When queen
nderstood that Sir Tristram was
n she made as great sorrow as
de lady or gentlewoman. Then
tram sent a letter unto La Beale
ınd prayed her to be his good
nd if it pleased her to make a
eady for her and him, he would
her unto the realm of Logris,
his land. When La Beale Isoud
ood Sir Tristram's letters and
nt, she sent him another, and
n be of good comfort, for she
do make the vessel ready, and
gs to purpose. Then La Beale
sent unto Sir Dinas, and to
and prayed them in any wise
king Mark and put him in
unto the time that she and Sir
n were departed unto the realm
ris. When Sir Dinas the se-
understood the treason of king
ıe promised her again, and sent
word that king Mark should be
put in prison. And as they devised it so it was done. And then Sir Tristram was delivered out of prison, and anon in all the haste queen Isoud and Sir Tristram went and took their counsel with that they would have with them when they departed.

CHAP. LII.

How Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud came into England, and how Sir Launcelot brought them to Joyous Gard.

THEN La Beale Isoud and Sir Tristram took their vessel, and came by water into this land. And so they were not in this land four days but there came a cry of a justs and tournament that king Arthur let make. When Sir Tristram heard tell of that tournament, he disguised himself and La Beale Isoud, and rode unto that tournament. And when he came there he saw many knights just and tourney, and so Sir Tristram dressed him to the range. And to make short conclusion, he overthrew fourteen knights of the Round Table. When Sir Launcelot saw these knights thus overthrown Sir Launcelot dressed him to Sir Tristram. That saw La Beale Isoud, how Sir Launcelot was come into the field. Then La Beale Isoud sent unto Sir Launcelot a ring, and bad him wit that it was Sir Tristram de Liones. When Sir Launcelot understood that there was Sir Tristram, he was full glad, and would not just. Then Sir Launcelot espied whither Sir Tristram went, and after him he rode, and then either made of other great joy. And so Sir Launcelot brought Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud unto Joyous Gard, that was his own castle that he had won with his own hands. And there Sir Launcelot put them in to weld for their own. And wit ye well that castle was garnished and furnished for a king and a queen royal there to have sojourned. And Sir Launcelot charged all his people to honour them and love them as they would do himself.

So Sir Launcelot departed unto king Arthur; and then he told queen Guenever how he that justed so well at the

last tournament was Sir Tristram. And there he told her how he had with him La Beale Isoud, maugre king Mark; and so queen Guenever told all this unto king Arthur. When king Arthur wist that Sir Tristram was escaped, and come from king Mark, and had brought La Beale Isoud with him, then was he passing glad. So because of Sir Tristram king Arthur let make a cry, that on May-day should be a justs, before the castle of Lonazep; and that castle was fast by Joyous Gard. And thus king Arthur devised, that all the knights of this land, and of Cornwall, and of North Wales, should just against all these countries.—Ireland, Scotland, and the remnant of Wales, and the country of Gore, and Surluse, and of Listinoise, and they of Northumberland, and all they that held lands of king Arthur on this half the sea. When this cry was made, many knights were glad and many were unglad. Sir, said Launcelot unto Arthur, by this cry that ye have made, ye will put us that be about you in great jeopardy, for there be many knights that have great envy to us, therefore when we shall meet at the day of justs, there will be hard shift among us. As for that, said Arthur, I care not, there shall we prove who shall be the best of his hands. So when Sir Launcelot understood wherefore king Arthur made this justing, then he made such purveyance that La Beale Isoud should behold the justs in a secret place that was honest for her estate.

Now turn we unto Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud, how they made great joy daily together with all manner of mirths that they could devise; and every day Sir Tristram would go ride on hunting, for Sir Tristram was that time called the best chaser of the world, and the noblest blower of an horn of all manner of measures. For, as books report, of Sir Tristram came all the good terms of venery and hunting, and all the sizes and measures of blowing of an horn; and of him we had first all the terms of hawking, and which were beasts of chase, and beasts of venery, and which were vermins; and all the blasts that belong to all manner of games. First to the uncoupling, to the seeking, to the rechate, to the flight, to the death, and to strake; and many other blasts and terms, that all manner of gentlemen have cause to the world's end to praise Sir Tristram and to pray for his soul.

CHAP. LIII.

How by the counsel of La Beale Isoud Sir Tristram rode armed, and how he met with Sir Palamides.

So on a day La Beale Isoud said unto Sir Tristram, I marvel me much, said she, that ye remember not yourself, how that ye be here in a strange country, and here be many perilous knights, and well ye wote that king Mark is full of treason, and that ye will ride thus to chase and hunt unarmed; ye might be destroyed. My fair lady and my love, I cry you mercy, I will no more do so. So then Sir Tristram rode daily on hunting armed, and his men bearing his shield and his spear. So on a day, a little afore the month of May, Sir Tristram chased an hart passing eagerly, and so the hart passed by a fair well. And then Sir Tristram alighted, and put off his helm to drink of that burbley water. Right so he heard and saw the questing beast come to the well. When Sir Tristram saw that beast, he put on his helm, for he deemed he should hear of Sir Palamides, for that beast was his quest. Right so Tristram saw where came a knight armed, upon a noble courser, and he saluted him, and they spake of many things; and this knight's name was Breuse Sance Pité. And right so withal there came unto them the noble knight Sir Palamides, and either saluted other, and spake fair to other. Fair knights, said Sir Breuse Sance Pité, I can tell you tidings. What is that? said those knights. Sirs, wit ye well that king Mark is put in prison by his own knights, and all was for love of Sir Tristram: for king Mark had put Sir Tristram twice in prison; and once

ivale delivered the noble knight tram out of prison; and at the ıe queen La Beale Isoud de- him, and went clearly away with o this realm: and all this while ırk the false traitor is in prison. truth? said Sir Palamides; then e hastily hear of Sir Tristram. for to say that I love La Beale dare make good that I do, and hath my service above all other ınd shall have the term of my ıd right so as they stood talking .w afore them where came a all armed on a great horse, and ıis men bare his shield, and the is spears. And anon as that espied them, he gat his shield spear, and dressed him to just. lows, said Sir Tristram, yonder ight will just with us; let see ıf us shall encounter with him, e well he is of the court of king

It shall not be long or he be thal, said Sir Palamides, for I ıever no knight in my quest of sting beast but, and he would ıever refused him. As well may Breuse Sance Pité, follow that s ye. Then shall ye do bat- ı me, said Sir Palamides. So amides dressed him unto the night, Sir Bleoberis, that was a ble knight, nigh kin unto Sir lot. And so they met so hard r Palamides fell to the earth, ıd all. Then Sir Bleoberis cried ınd said thus: Make thee ready, lse traitor knight, Breuse Sance : wit thou certainly I will have h thee to the utterance, for the nights and ladies that thou hast ıetrayed. When this false knight itor, Breuse Sance Pité, heard r so, he took his horse by the ınd fled his way as fast as his ight run, for sore he was of him

When Sir Bleoberis saw him followed fast after him, through ıd through thin. And by for- Sir Breuse fled, he saw even im three knights of the Table of the which the one hight Sir Ector de Maris, the other hight Sir Percivale de Galis, the third hight Sir Harry le Fise Lake, a good knight and an hardy. And as for Sir Percivale, he was called that time of his time one of the best knights of the world, and the best assured. When Breuse saw these knights, he rode straight unto them, and cried unto them, and prayed them of rescues. What need have ye? said Sir Ector. Ah, fair knights, said Sir Breuse, here followeth me the most traitor knight and most coward, and most of villainy: his name is Breuse Sance Pité; and if he may get me, he will slay me without mercy and pity. Abide with us, said Sir Percivale, and we shall warrant you. Then were they ware of Sir Bleoberis, that came riding all that he might. Then Sir Ector put himself forth for to just afore them all. When Sir Bleoberis saw that they were four knights, and he but himself, he stood in a doubt whether he would turn or hold his way. Then he said to himself, I am a knight of the Table Round, and rather than I should shame mine oath and my blood I will hold my way whatsoever fall thereof. And then Sir Ector dressed his spear, and smote either other passing sore, but Sir Ector fell to the earth. That saw Sir Percivale, and he dressed his horse toward him all that he might drive; but Sir Percivale had such a stroke that horse and man fell to the earth. When Sir Harry saw that they were both to the earth, then he said to himself, Never was Breuse of such prowess. So Sir Harry dressed his horse, and they met together so strongly that both the horses and knights fell to the earth; but Sir Bleoberis's horse began to recover again. That saw Sir Breuse, and he came hurtling, and smote him over and over, and would have slain him as he lay on the ground. Then Sir Harry le Fise Lake arose lightly, and took the bridle of Sir Breuse's horse, and said, Fie for shame, strike never a knight when he is at the earth; for this knight may be called no shameful knight of his deeds: for yet as men

may see there as he lieth on the ground, he hath done worshipfully, and put to the worse passing good knights. Therefore will I not let, said Sir Breuse. Thou shalt not choose, said Sir Harry, as at this time. Then when Sir Breuse saw that he might not choose, nor have his will, he spake fair. Then Sir Harry let him go. And then anon he made his horse to run over Sir Bleoberis, and rashed him to the earth like if he would have slain him. When Sir Harry saw him do so villainously, he cried, Traitor knight, leave off for shame. And as Sir Harry would have taken his horse to fight with Sir Breuse, then Sir Breuse ran upon him as he was half upon his horse, and smote him down horse and man to the earth, and had near slain Sir Harry the good knight. That saw Sir Percivale, and then he cried, Traitor knight what dost thou? And when Sir Percivale was upon his horse, Sir Breuse took his horse, and fled all that ever he might, and Sir Percivale and Sir Harry followed after him fast, but ever the longer they chased the further were they behind. Then they turned again, and came to Sir Ector de Maris and to Sir Bleoberis. Ah fair knights, said Bleoberis, why have ye succoured that false knight and traitor? Why, said Sir Harry, what knight is he? for well I wot it is a false knight, said Sir Harry, and a coward, and a felonious knight. Sir, said Bleoberis, he is the most coward knight, and a devourer of ladies, and a destroyer of good knights, and specially of Arthur's. What is your name? said Sir Ector. My name is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis. Alas, fair cousin, said Ector, forgive it me, for I am Sir Ector de Maris. Then Sir Percivale and Sir Harry made great joy that they met with Bleoberis, but all they were heavy that Sir Breuse was escaped them, whereof they made great dole.

CHAP. LIV.

Of Sir Palamides, and how he met with Sir Bleoberis and with Sir Ector, and of Sir Percivale.

Right so as they stood thus, there came Sir Palamides; and when the shield of Bleoberis lie on th then said Palamides, He that that shield, let him dress him to he smote me down here fast l fountain, and therefore I will fig him on foot. I am ready, said S beris, here to answer thee; for v well, sir knight, it was I, and m is Bleoberis de Ganis. Well a met, said Palamides, and wit th my name is Sir Palamides the S And either of them hated other death. Sir Palamides, said Ec thou well, there is neither thou, n knight that beareth the life, th eth any of our blood, but he sl for it; therefore, and thou list t go seek Sir Launcelot, or Sir Tr and there shall ye find your With them have I met, said Pal but I had never no worship of Was there never no manner of said Sir Ector, but they, tha matched with you? Yes, said mides, there was the third, a knight as any of them, and of h he was the best that ever I foun and he might have lived till h been an hardier man, there liv knight now such, and his name v Lamorak de Galis. And as h justed at a tournament, there h threw me and thirty knights mo there he won the degree. And departing, there met him Sir G and his brethren, and with gre they slew him feloniously, unto a knights' great damage. And wh Percivale heard that his broth dead, Sir Lamorak, he fell over his mane swooning, and there he m greatest dole that ever made And when Sir Percivale arose, h Alas, my good and noble brot Lamorak, now shall we never m I trow in all the wide world might not find such a knight as of his age; and it is too much t the death of our father king Pe and now the death of our good Sir Lamorak. Then in the mea there came a varlet from the c

hur, and told them of the great ent that should be at Lonazep, r these lands, Cornwall, and lis, should be against all them ld come.

CHAP. LV.

Tristram met with Sir Dinadan, r their devices, and what he said Gawaine's brethren.

urn we unto Sir Tristram, that de on hunting he met with Sir , that was come into that to seek Sir Tristram. Then adan told Sir Tristram his ut Sir Tristram would not tell e, wherefore Sir Dinadan was For such a foolish knight as aid Sir Dinadan, I saw but late lying by a well, and he fared ept, and there he lay like a fool , and would not speak, and his y by him, and his horse stood and well I wot he was a lover. sir, said Sir Tristram, are a lover? Marry, fie on that id Sir Dinadan. That is evil d Sir Tristram, for a knight er be of prowess, but if he be a It is well said, said Sir Dina- w tell me your name, sith ye be or else I shall do battle with ; for that, said Sir Tristram, it son to fight with me but I tell ame: and as for that, my name not wit as at this time. Fie ie, said Dinadan, art thou a nd darest not tell thy name to efore I will fight with thee. As said Sir Tristram, I will be ad- r I will not fight but if me list; do battle, said Sir Tristram, ye able to withstand me. Fie on ward, said Sir Dinadan. And they hoved still, they saw a me riding against them. Lo, Tristram, see where cometh a ding will just with you. Anon Dinadan beheld him, he said, the same doted knight that I by the well, neither sleeping ing. Well, said Sir Tristram, I know that knight well with the covered shield of azure, he is the king's son of Northumberland, his name is Epinegris, and he is as great a lover as I know, and he loveth the king's daughter of Wales, a full fair lady. And now I suppose, said Sir Tristram, and ye require him he will just with you; and then shall ye prove whether a lover be a better knight or ye that will not love no lady. Well, said Sir Dinadan, now shalt thou see what I shall do. Therewithal Sir Dinadan spake on high and said, Sir knight, make thee ready to just with me, for it is the custom of errant knights one to just with other. Sir, said Epinegris, is it the rule of you errant knights for to make a knight to just will he or nill? As for that, said Dinadan, make thee ready, for here is for me. And therewithal they spurred their horses, and met together so hard that Epinegris smote down Sir Dinadan. Then Sir Tristram rode to Sir Dinadan, and said, How now? me seemeth the lover hath well sped. Fie on thee coward, said Sir Dinadan, and if thou be a good knight revenge me. Nay, said Sir Tristram, I will not just as at this time, but take your horse, and let us go hence. Defend me, said Sir Dinadan, from thy fellowship, for I never sped well since I met with thee. And so they departed. Well, said Sir Tristram, peradventure I could tell you tidings of Sir Tristram. Defend me, said Dinadan, from thy fellowship, for Sir Tristram were mickle the worse and he were in thy company. And then they departed. Sir, said Sir Tristram, yet it may happen I shall meet with you in other places. So rode Sir Tristram unto Joyous Gard, and there he heard in that town great noise and cry. What is this noise, said Sir Tristram. Sir, said they, here is a knight of this castle that hath been long among us, and right now he is slain with two knights, and for none other cause but that our knight said that Sir Launcelot were a better knight than Sir Gawaine. That was a simple cause, said Sir Tristram, for to slay a good knight for to say well by his

master. That is little remedy to us, said the men of the town, for and Sir Launcelot had been here, soon we should have been revenged upon the false knights. When Sir Tristram heard them say so, he sent for his shield and for his spear, and lightly within a little while he had overtaken them, and bade them turn and amend what they had misdone. What amends wouldest thou have? said the one knight. And therewith they took their course, and either met other so hard, that Sir Tristram smote down that knight over his horse tail. Then the other knight dressed him to Sir Tristram; and in the same wise he served the other knight. And then they gat off their horses as well as they might, and dressed their shields and swords to do their battle to the utterance. Knights, said Sir Tristram, ye shall tell me of whence ye are and what be your names; for such men ye might be ye should hard escape my hands; and ye might be such men of such a country that for all your evil deeds ye should pass quit. Wit thou well, sir knight, said they, we fear us not to tell thee our names, for my name is Sir Agravaine, and my name is Gaheris, brethren unto the good knight Sir Gawaine, and we be nephews unto king Arthur. Well, said Sir Tristram, for king Arthur's sake I shall let you pass as at this time. But it is shame, said Sir Tristram, that Sir Gawaine and ye that be come of so great a blood, that ye four brethren are so named as ye be. For ye be called the greatest destroyers and murderers of good knights that be now in this realm; for it is but as I heard say, that Sir Gawaine and ye slew among you a better knight than ever ye were, that was the noble knight Sir Lamorak de Galis; and it had pleased God, said Sir Tristram, I would I had been by Sir Lamorak at his death. Then shouldest thou have gone the same way, said Sir Gaheris. Fair knight, said Sir Tristram, there must have been many more knights than ye are. And therewithal Sir Tristram departed from them toward Joyous Gard. And when he was depa took their horses, and the on the other, We will overtake hi revenged upon him in the desp Lamorak.

CHAP. LVI.

How Sir Tristram smote down S vaine and Sir Gaberis, and Dinadan was sent for by I Isoud.

So when they had overta Tristram, Sir Agravaine bade hi traitor knight. That is evil said Tristram; and therewith he pull sword, and smote Sir Agravain buffet upon the helm that he down off his horse in a swoon, had a grievous wound. And turned to Gaheris, and Sir smote his sword and his helm with such a might that Gaheris of his saddle; and so Sir Tristr unto Joyous Gard, and there l and unarmed him. So Sir told La Beale Isoud of all his a as ye have heard tofore. And w heard him tell of Sir Dinadan, said, is not that he that made t by king Mark? That same is he Tristram, for he is the best jo jester, and a noble knight of hi and the best fellow that I know good knights love his fellowshi Sir, said she, why brought ye with you? Have ye no care, Tristram, for he rideth to seel this country, and therefore he away till he have met with m there Sir Tristram told La Bea how Sir Dinadan held against al Right so there came in a varlet Sir Tristram how there was c errant knight into the town wi colours upon his shield. That is nadan, said Sir Tristram. Wit ye shall do? said Sir Tristram; for him, my lady Isoud, and I be seen, and ye shall hear the knight that ever ye spake wit the maddest talker, and I p heartily that ye make him goo Then anon La Beale Isoud sent

id prayed Sir Dinadan that he ome into the castle and repose e, with a lady. With a good id Sir Dinadan. And so he l upon his horse, and rode into le, and there he alight, and armed, and brought into the Anon La Beale Isoud came unto d either saluted other. Then ed him of whence that he was. , said Dinadan, I am of the court Arthur, and knight of the Table and my name is Sir Dinadan. lo ye in this country? said La soud. Madam, said he, I seek tram the good knight, for it was : that he was in this country. well be, said La Beale Isoud, m not aware of him. Madam. inadan, I marvel of Sir Tris- d more other lovers, what aileth) be so mad and so sotted upon

Why, said La Beale Isoud, a knight and be no lover? It ie to you: wherefore ye may called a good knight but if e a quarrel for a lady. Nay, Dinadan, for the joy of love is rt, and the sorrow thereof, and meth thereof, dureth over long. l La Beale Isoud, say ye not so, : fast by was the good knight oberis, that fought with three at once for a damsel's sake, and her afore the king of Northum- . It was so, said Sir Dinadan, for him well for a good knight and , and come of noble blood, for oble knights of whom he is come is Sir Launcelot du Lake. Now ou, said La Beale Isoud, tell me fight for my love with three that done me great wrong? and uch as ye be a knight of king s I require you to do battle for ien Sir Dinadan said, I shall say as fair a lady as ever I saw any, ch fairer than is my lady queen er, but, wit ye well at one word, not fight for you with three

Heaven defend me. Then ughed, and had good game at io he had all the cheer that she might make him; and there he lay all that night. And on the morn early Sir Tristram armed him, and La Beale Isoud gave him a good helm; and then he promised her that he would meet with Sir Dinadan, and they two would ride together unto Lonazep, where the tournament should be;—and there shall I make ready for you, where ye shall see the tournament. Then departed Sir Tristram with two squires that bare his shield and his spears that were great and long.

CHAP. LVII.

How Sir Dinadan met with Sir Tristram, and with justing with Sir Palamides Sir Dinadan knew him.

THEN after that, Sir Dinadan departed and rode his way a great pace until he had overtaken Sir Tristram. And when Sir Dinadan had overtaken him, he knew him anon, and he hated the fellowship of him above all other knights. Ah, said Sir Dinadan, art thou that coward knight that I met with yesterday, keep thee, for thou shalt just with me, maugre thy head. Well, said Sir Tristram, and I am loth to just. And so they let their horses run, and Sir Tristram missed of him a purpose, and Sir Dinadan brake a spear upon Sir Tristram; and therewith Sir Dinadan dressed him to draw out his sword. Not so, said Sir Tristram, why are ye so wroth? I will not fight. Fie on thee, coward, said Sir Dinadan, thou shamest all knights. As for that, said Sir Tristram, I care not, for I will wait upon you and be under your protection, for because ye are so good a knight ye may save me. The devil deliver me of thee, said Sir Dinadan, for thou art as goodly a man of arms and of thy person as ever I saw, and the most coward that ever I saw. What wilt thou do with those great spears that thou carriest with thee? I shall give them, said Sir Tristram, to some good knight when I come to the tournament: and if I see you do best I shall give them to you. So thus as they rode talking they saw where came an errant knight afore

them, that dressed him to just. Lo, said Sir Tristram, yonder is one will just, now dress thee to him. A shame betide thee, said Sir Dinadan. Nay not so, said Tristram, for that knight beseemeth a shrew. Then shall I, said Sir Dinadan. And so they dressed their shields and their spears, and they met together so hard that the other knight smote down Sir Dinadan from his horse. Lo, said Sir Tristram, it had been better ye had left. Fie on thee, coward, said Sir Dinadan. Then Sir Dinadan started up, and gat his sword in his hand, and proffered to do battle on foot. Whether in love or in wrath, said the other knight. Let us do battle in love, said Sir Dinadan. What is your name? said that knight, I pray you tell me. Wit ye well my name is Sir Dinadan. Ah Dinadan, said that knight, and my name is Gareth, the youngest brother unto Sir Gawaine. Then either made of other great cheer, for this Gareth was the best knight of all the brethren, and he proved a good knight. Then they took their horses, and there they spake of Sir Tristram, how such a coward he was: and every word Sir Tristram heard, and laughed them to scorn. Then were they ware where there came a knight afore them well horsed and well armed, and he made him ready to just. Fair knights, said Sir Tristram, look betwixt you who shall just with yonder knight, for I warn you I will not have ado with him. Then shall I, said Sir Gareth: and so they encountered together, and there that knight smote down Sir Gareth over his horse croup. How now, said Sir Tristram unto Sir Dinadan, dress thee now, and revenge the good knight Gareth. That shall I not, said Sir Dinadan, for he hath stricken down a much bigger knight than I am. Ah, said Sir Tristram, now Sir Dinadan I see and feel well your heart faileth you, therefore now shall ye see what I shall do. And then Sir Tristram hurtled unto that knight, and smote him quite from his horse. And when Sir Dinadan saw that he marvelled greatly: and then he deemed that it was Sir Tristram. Then this knight that was on foot pulle sword to do battle. What is you said Sir Tristram. Wit ye w the knight, my name is Sir Pa What knight hate ye most? Tristram. Sir knight, said he Sir Tristram to the death, for ar meet with him the one of us s Ye say well, said Sir Tristram, ye well that I am Sir Tristram de and now do your worst. W Palamides heard him say so astonished, and then he said pray you, Sir Tristram, forgive mine evil will, and if I live I s you service above all other knig be living, and there as I have o evil will me sore repenteth. I what aileth me, for me seemeth are a good knight, and none knight that named himself knight should not hate you; t I require you, Sir Tristram, t displeasure at mine unkind wor Palamides, said Sir Tristram, well, and well I wot ye are knight, for I have seen you pro many great enterprises have y upon you, and well achieved therefore, said Sir Tristram, have any evil will to me, now right it, for I am ready at you Not so, my lord Sir Tristram; I you knightly service in all thing will command. And right so take you, said Sir Tristram. they rode forth on their ways, ta many things. O my lord Sir T said Dinadan, foul have ye moc for truly I came into this cou your sake, and by the advice of Sir Launcelot, and yet would Launcelot tell me the certainty where I should find you. Tru Sir Tristram, Sir Launcelot w where I was, for I abode wit own castle.

CHAP. LVIII.

How they approached the castle and of other devices of the deat Lamorak.

THUS they rode until they we

castle Lonazep: and then were are of four hundred tents and is, and marvellous great ordi- Truly, said Sir Tristram, yon- ee the greatest ordinance that saw. Sir, said Palamides, me i there was as great an ordinance astle of Maidens upon the rock ye won the prize, for I saw my- ere ye forjusted thirty knights. d Dinadan, and in Surluse at urnament that Sir Galahalt of ng Isles made, the which there even days, was as great a gather- is here, for there were many . Who was the best? said Sir n. Sir, it was Sir Launcelot du id the noble knight Sir Lamorak s. And Sir Launcelot won the I doubt not, said Sir Tristram, won the degree, so he had not vermatched with many knights. the death of Sir Lamorak, said stram, it was over great pity, for ay he was the cleanest mighted id the best winded of his age s on live, for I knew him that he biggest knight that ever I met but if it were Sir Launcelot. id Sir Tristram, full woe is me death. And if they were not isins of my lord Arthur that n, they should die for it, and all at were consenting to his death. r such things, said Sir Tristram, to draw unto the court of my rthur: I will that ye wit it, r Tristram unto Gareth. Sir, I you not, said Gareth, for well erstand the vengeance of my n Sir Gawaine, Sir Agravaine, , and Mordred. But as for me, Gareth, I meddle not of their , therefore is none of them that ne; and for I understand they be ers of good knights I left their y, and God would I had been by, reth, when the noble knight Sir k was slain. Now, truly, said Sir n, it is well said of you, for I had an all the gold betwixt this and had been there. Yea, said Sir Pa- , and so would I had been there, and yet had I never the degree at no justs nor tournament there as he was, but he put me to the worse or on foot or on horseback, and that day that he was slain he did the most deeds of arms that ever I saw knight do in all my life days. And when him was given the degree by my lord Arthur, Sir Gawaine and his three brethren, Agravaine, Gaheris, and Sir Mordred, set upon Sir Lamorak in a privy place, and there they slew his horse, and so they fought with him on foot more than three hours, both before him and behind him; and Sir Mordred gave him his death's wound behind him at his back, and all to-hewed him: for one of his squires told me that saw it. Fie upon treason, said Sir Tristram, for it killeth my heart to hear this tale. So doth it mine, said Gareth; brethren as they be mine I shall never love them, nor draw in their fellowship, for that deed. Now speak we of other deeds, said Sir Palamides, and let him be, for his life ye may not get again. That is the more pity, said Dinadan, for Sir Gawaine and his brethren, except you, Sir Gareth, hate all the good knights of the Round Table for the most part; for well I wot, and they might privily, they hate my lord Sir Launcelot, and all his kin, and great privy despite they have at him, and that is my lord Sir Launcelot well ware of, and that causeth him to have the good knights of his kin about him.

CHAP. LIX.

How they came to Humber bank, and how they found a ship there, wherein lay the body of king Hermance.

Sir, said Palamides, let us leave off this matter, and let us see how we shall do at this tournament. By mine advice, said Palamides, let us four hold together against all that will come. Not by my counsel, said Sir Tristram, for I see by their pavilions there will be four hundred knights, and doubt ye not, said Sir Tristram, but there will be many good knights, and be a man never so valiant nor so big yet he may be over-

matched. And so have I seen knights done many times: and when they wend best to have won worship they lost it. For manhood is not worth but if it be meddled with wisdom: and as for me, said Sir Tristram, it may happen I shall keep mine own head as well as another. So thus they rode until that they came to Humber bank, where they heard a cry and a doleful noise. Then were they ware in the wind where came a rich vessel covered over with red silk, and the vessel landed fast by them. Therewith Sir Tristram alight and his knights. And so Sir Tristram went afore and entered into that vessel. And when he came within, he saw a fair bed richly covered, and thereupon lay a dead seemly knight, all armed, save the head was all be-bled, with deadly wounds upon him: the which seemed to be a passing good knight. How may this be, said Sir Tristram, that this knight is thus slain? Then Sir Tristram was ware of a letter in the dead knight's hand. Master mariners, said Sir Tristram, what meaneth that letter? Sir, said they, in that letter ye shall hear and know how he was slain, and for what cause, and what was his name; but sir, said the mariners, wit ye well that no man shall take that letter and read it but if he be a good knight, and that he will faithfully promise to revenge his death, else shall there no knight see that letter open. Wit ye well, said Sir Tristram, that some of us may revenge his death as well as others, and if it be so as ye mariners say, his death shall be revenged. And therewith Sir Tristram took the letter out of the knight's hand; and it said thus:—Hermance king and lord of the Red City, I send unto all knights errant recommending unto you noble knights of Arthur's court, I beseech them all among them to find one knight that will fight for my sake with two brethren that I brought up of nought, and feloniously and traitorly they have slain me, wherefore I beseech one good knight to revenge my death. And he that revengeth my death, I will that he have my Red City and all my castles. Sir, said the mariners, wit ye well this king and knight that here lieth was a full worshipful man, and of full great prowess, and full well he loved all manner of knights errant. Truly, said Sir Tristram, here is a piteous case, and full fain I would take this enterprise upon me, but I have made such a promise that needs I must be at this great tournament or else I am shamed. For well I wot for my sake in especial my lord Arthur let make this justs and tournament in this country; and well I wot that many worshipful people will be there at that tournament for to see me. Therefore I fear me to take this enterprise upon me, that I shall not come again betimes to this justs. Sir, said Palamides, I pray you give me this enterprise, and ye shall see me achieve it worshipfully, or else I shall die in this quarrel. Well, said Sir Tristram, and this enterprise I give you, with this that ye be with me at this tournament, that shall be as at this day seven night. Sir, said Palamides, I promise you that I shall be with you by that day if I be unslain or unmaimed.

CHAP. LX.

How Sir Tristram with his fellowship came and were with an host which after fought with Sir Tristram; and other matters.

THEN departed Sir Tristram, Gareth, and Sir Dinadan, and left Sir Palamides in the vessel; and so Sir Tristram beheld the mariners how they sailed over long Humber. And when Sir Palamides was out of their sight, they took their horses, and beheld about them. And then were they ware of a knight that came riding against them unarmed, and nothing about him but a sword. And when this knight came nigh them he saluted them, and they him again. Fair knights, said that knight, I pray you insomuch as ye be knights errant, that ye will come and see my castle, and take such as ye find there; I pray you heartily. And so they rode with him into his

and there they were brought
hall, that was well apparelled,
hey were there unarmed and set
rd. And when this knight saw
tram, anon he knew him; and
s knight waxed pale and wroth
Tristram. When Sir Tristram
host make such cheer, he mar-
ınd said, Sir, mine host, what
ake you? Wit thou well, said he,
:he worse for thee, for I know
Tristram de Liones, thou slewest
her. And therefore I give thee
ıs I will slay thee, and ever I may
: at large. Sir knight, said Sir
n, I am never advised that ever I
y brother of yours; and if ye say
id I will make you amends unto
ver. I will none amends, said
ght, but keep thee from me. So
e had dined, Sir Tristram asked
ıs and departed. And so they
their ways; and within a little
ir Dinadan saw where came a
well armed, and well horsed,
shield. Sir Tristram, said Sir
ı, take keep to yourself, for I
ke yonder cometh your host
l have ado with you. Let him
aid Sir Tristram, I shall abide
well as I may. Anon the knight,
e came nigh Sir Tristram, he
d bade him abide and keep him.
hurtled together, but Sir Tris-
note the other knight so sore
bare him over his horse croup.
night arose lightly and took his
gain, and so rode fiercely to Sir
n, and smote him twice hard
ıe helm. Sir knight, said Sir
n, I pray you leave off and smite
more, for I would be loth to deal
ıu and I might choose, for I have
eat and your drink within my
For all that he would not leave,
n Sir Tristram gave him such a
ıpon the helm, that he fell up so
rom his horse, that the blood
ıut at the ventails of his helm,
he lay still, likely to have been
Then Sir Tristram said, Me re-
ı sore of this buffet that I smote
:, for as I suppose he is dead.

And so they left him and rode on their ways. So they had not ridden but a while, but they saw coming against them two full likely knights, well armed and well horsed, and goodly servants about them. The one was Berrant le Apres, and he was called the king with the hundred knights, and the other was Sir Segwarides, which were renowned two noble knights. So as they came either by other, the king looked upon Sir Dinadan, that at that time had Sir Tristram's helm upon his shoulder, the which helm the king had seen before with the queen of Northgalis, and that queen the king loved, and that helm the queen of Northgalis had given unto La Beale Isoud, and the queen La Beale Isoud gave it to Sir Tristram. Sir knight, said Berrant, where had ye that helm? What would ye? said Sir Dinadan. For I will have ado with thee, said the king, for the love of her that owned that helm, and therefore keep you. So they departed and came together with all the mights of their horses; and there the king with the hundred knights smote Sir Dinadan, horse and all, to the earth; and then he commanded his servant, Go and take thou his helm off, and keep it. So the varlet went to unbuckle his helm. What helm? What wilt thou do? said Sir Tristram; leave that helm. To what intent, said the king, will ye, sir knight, meddle with that helm? Wit you well, said Sir Tristram, that helm shall not depart from me, or it be dearer bought. Then make you ready, said Sir Berrant unto Sir Tristram. So they hurtled together, and there Sir Tristram smote him down over his horse tail. And then the king arose lightly, and gat his horse lightly again, and then he strake fiercely at Sir Tristram many great strokes. And then Sir Tristram gave Sir Berrant such a buffet upon the helm that he fell down over his horse, sore stunned. Lo, said Sir Dinadan, that helm is unhappy to us twain, for I had a fall for it, and now, sir king, have ye another fall. Then Segwarides asked, Who shall just with me? I pray

thee, said Sir Gareth unto Dinadan, let me have this justs. Sir, said Dinadan, I pray you take it as for me. That is no reason, said Tristram, for this justs should be yours. At a word, said Sir Dinadan, I will not thereof. Then Gareth dressed him to Sir Segwarides, and there Sir Segwarides smote Sir Gareth and his horse to the earth. Now, said Sir Tristram to Dinadan, just with yonder knight. I will not thereof, said Dinadan. Then will I, said Sir Tristram. And then Sir Tristram ran to him and gave him a fall, and so they left them on foot. And Sir Tristram rode unto Joyous Gard, and there Sir Gareth would not of his courtesy have gone into this castle, but Sir Tristram would not suffer him to depart. And so they alight and unarmed them, and had great cheer. But when Dinadan came afore La Beale Isoud, he cursed the time that ever he bare Sir Tristram's helm, and there he told her how Sir Tristram had mocked him. Then was there laughing and jesting at Sir Dinadan, that they wist not what to do with him.

CHAP. LXI.

How Palamides went for to fight with two brethren for the death of king Hermance.

Now will we leave them merry within Joyous Gard, and speak we of Sir Palamides. Then Sir Palamides sailed even along Humber to the coasts of the sea, where was a fair castle. And at that time it was early in the morning afore day. Then the mariners went unto Sir Palamides, that slept fast. Sir knight, said the mariners, ye must arise, for here is a castle, there ye must go into. I assent me, said Sir Palamides. And therewithal he arrived. And then he blew his horn, that the mariners had given him. And when they within the castle heard that horn, they put forth many knights, and there they stood upon the walls, and said with one voice, Welcome be ye to this castle. And then it waxed clear day, and Sir Palamides entered into the castle. And within a while he was served with many divers meats. Then Sir Palamides heard about him much weeping and great dole. What may this mean? said Sir Palamides: I love not to hear such a sorrow, and fain I would know what it meaneth. Then there came afore him one whose name was Sir Ebel, that said thus, Wit ye well, sir knight, this dole and sorrow is here made every day, and for this cause: we had a king that hight Hermance, and he was king of the Red City, and this king that was lord was a noble knight, large and liberal of his expense. And in the world he loved nothing so much as he did errant knights of king Arthur's court, and all justing, hunting, and all manner of knightly games; for so kind a king and knight had never the rule of poor people as he was; and because of his goodness and gentleness we bemoan him and ever shall. And all kings and estates may beware by our lord, for he was destroyed in his own default, for had he cherished them of his blood he had yet lived with great riches and rest; but all estates may beware of our king. But alas, said Ebel, that we shall give all other warning by his death. Tell me, said Palamides, in what manner was your lord slain, and by whom? Sir, said Sir Ebel, our king brought up of children two men that now are perilous knights, and these two knights our king had so in charity, that he loved no man nor trusted no man of his blood, nor none other that was about him. And by these two knights our king was governed: and so they ruled him peaceably, and his lands, and never would they suffer none of his blood to have no rule with our king. And also he was so free and so gentle, and they so false and deceivable, that they ruled him peaceably; and that espied the lords of our king's blood, and departed from him unto their own livelihood. Then when these two traitors understood that they had driven all the lords of his blood from him, they were not pleased with that rule, but

y thought to have more, as ever old saw, Give a churl rule, and he will not be sufficed; for ver he be that is ruled by a orn, and the lord of the soil gentleman born, the same vil- ll destroy all the gentlemen im; therefore all estates and ware whom ye take about you. e be a knight of king Arthur's member this tale, for this is the conclusion. My lord and king o the forest hereby, by the ad- these false traitors; and there d at the red deer, armed at all ll like a good knight; and so ur he waxed dry, and then he nd drank at a well; and when alight, by the assent of these ors, that one that hight Helius nly smote our king through the h a spear, and so they left him And when they were departed, fortune I came to the well, and y lord and king wounded to the And when I heard his com- let bring him to the wate side, at same ship I put him alive; n my lord king Hermance was vessel, he required me for the h I owed unto him for to write n this manner:—

CHAP. LXII.

of the letter written for to revenge g's death, and how Sir Palamides for to have the battle.

MENDING unto king Arthur and is knights errant, beseeching . that insomuch as I king Her- king of the Red City, thus am felony and treason through two of mine own, and of mine own up, and of mine own making, e worshipful knight will revenge , insomuch I have been ever to er well willing unto Arthur's nd who that will adventure his these two traitors for my sake battle, I king Hermance, king ed City, freely give him all my ad rents that ever I held in my life. This letter, said Ebel, I wrote by my lord's commandment; and then he received his Creator, and when he was dead he commanded me or ever he was cold to put that letter fast in his hand; and then he commanded me to put forth that same vessel down Humber, and I should give these mariners in commandment never to stint until that they came unto Logris, where all the noble knights shall assemble at this time;—And there shall some good knight have pity on me to revenge my death, for there was never king nor lord falselyer ne traitorlyer slain than I am here to my death. Thus was the complaint of our king Hermance. Now, said Sir Ebel, ye know all how our lord was betrayed, we require you for God's sake have pity upon his death, and worshipfully revenge his death, and then may ye hold all these lands. For we all wit well that, and ye may slay these two traitors, the Red City and all those that be therein will take you for their lord. Truly, said Sir Palamides, it grieveth my heart for to hear you tell this doleful tale. And to say the truth, I saw the same letter that ye speak of; and one of the best knights on the earth read that letter to me, and by his commandment I came hither to revenge your king's death; and therefore have done, and let me wit where I shall find those traitors, for I shall never be at ease in my heart till that I be in hands with them. Sir, said Sir Ebel, then take your ship again, and that ship must bring you unto the Delectable Isle, fast by the Red City, and we in this castle shall pray for you and abide your again-coming; for this same castle, and ye speed well, must needs be yours; for our king Hermance let make this castle for the love of the two traitors, and so we kept it with strong hand, and therefore full sore are we threated. Wot ye what ye shall do, said Sir Palamides; whatsoever come of me, look ye keep well this castle. For, and it misfortune me so to be slain in this quest, I am sure there will come one of the best knights of the world for to revenge my

death, and that is Sir Tristram de Liones, or else Sir Launcelot du Lake.

Then Sir Palamides departed from that castle. And as he came nigh the city, there came out of a ship a goodly knight armed against him, with his shield on his shoulder, and his hand upon his sword. And anon as he came nigh Sir Palamides he said, Sir knight, what seek ye here? Leave this quest, for it is mine, and mine it was or ever it was yours, and therefore I will have it. Sir knight, said Palamides, it may well be that this quest was yours or it was mine, but when the letter was taken out of the dead king's hand, at that time by likelihood there was no knight had undertaken to revenge the death of the king. And so at that time I promised to revenge his death. And so I shall, or else I am ashamed. Ye say well, said the knight, but wit ye well then will I fight with you, and who be the better knight of us both, let him take the battle upon hand. I assent me, said Sir Palamides. And then they dressed their shields and pulled out their swords, and lashed together many sad strokes as men of might; and this fighting was more than an hour; but at the last Sir Palamides waxed big and better winded, so that then he smote that knight such a stroke that he made him to kneel upon his knees. Then that knight spake on high and said, Gentle knight, hold thy hand. Sir Palamides was goodly, and withdrew his hand. Then this knight said, Wit ye well, knight, that thou art better worthy to have this battle than I, and I require thee of knighthood tell me thy name. Sir, my name is Palamides, a knight of king Arthur, and of the Table Round, that hither I came to revenge the death of this dead king.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the preparation of Sir Palamides and the two brethren that should fight with him.

Well be ye found, said the knight to Palamides, for of all knights that be on live, except three, I had levest h The first is Sir Launcelot du L second is Sir Tristram de Lio third is my nigh cousin Sir Lam Galis. And I am brother un Hermance that is dead, and m is Sir Hermind. Ye say well, Palamides, and ye shall see how speed. And if I be there slain my lord Sir Launcelot, or else lord Sir Tristram, and pray then venge my death, for as for Sir La him shall ye never see in this Alas, said Sir Hermind, how m be? He is slain, said Sir Pal by Sir Gawaine and his b Truly, said Hermind, there w one for one that slew him. truth, said Sir Palamides, for th four dangerous knights that sle as Sir Gawaine, Sir Agravaine, heris, and Sir Mordred; but Sir the fifth brother was away, t knight of them all. And so Si mides told Hermind all the mann how they slew Sir Lamorak a by treason. So Sir Palamides t ship, and arrived up at the Del Isle. And in the meanwhile Si mind, that was the king's brother rived up at the Red City, and t told them how there was come a of king Arthur's to avenge kin mance's death; and his name Palamides the good knight, that most part he followeth the beast sant. Then all the city made gre For mickle had they heard of Si mides, and of his noble prowes let they ordain a messenger an unto the two brethren, and bad to make them ready, for there knight come that would fight wit both. So the messenger wen them where they were at a castl beside. And there he told the there was a knight come of ki thur's court to fight with them once. He is welcome, said the tell us, we pray you, if it be Sir lot, or any of his blood. He is that blood, said the messenger. we care the less, said the two b

ıone of the blood of Sir Laun-
keep not to have ado withal.
vell, said the messenger, that
is Sir Palamides, that yet is
ned, a noble knight. Well, said
l he be now unchristened he
:r be christened. So they ap-
to be at the city within two

/hen Sir Palamides was come
y, they made passing great joy
and then they beheld him and
he was well made, cleanly and
d unmaimed of his limbs, and
)o young nor too old; and so
ople praised him. And though
ıot christened, yet he believed
st manner, and was full faithful
of his promise, and well con-
And because he made his
t he would never be christened
time that he had achieved the
ıtisant, which was a wonderful
ıd a great signification, for
rophesied much of that beast.
) Sir Palamides avowed never
ull christendom unto the time
had done seven battles within
So within the third day there
the city these two brethren,
hight Helius, the other hight
the which were men of great
howbeit that they were false
of treason, and but poor men
were they noble knights of their
And with them they brought
ights to that intent that they
e big enough for the Red City.
ne the two brethren with great
and pride, for they had put the
y in fear and damage. Then
re brought to the lists. And
nides came into the place, and
ıs: Be ye the two brethren,
and Helake, that slew your
ıd lord, Sir Hermance, by
nd treason, for whom that I
e hither to revenge his death?
ı well, said Sir Helius and Sir
that we are the same knights
w king Hermance. And wit
ll Sir Palamides, Saracen, that
handle thee so or thou depart
that thou shalt wish that thou werest christened. It may well be, said Sir Palamides, for yet I would not die or I were christened, and yet so am I not afeard of you both, but I trust to God that I shall die a better christian man than any of you both; and doubt ye not, said Sir Palamides, either ye or I shall be left dead in this place.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of the battle between Sir Palamides and the two brethren, and how the two brethren were slain.

THEN they departed, and the two brethren came against Sir Palamides, and he against them, as fast as their horses might run. And by fortune Sir Palamides smote Helake through his shield, and through the breast more than a fathom. All this while Sir Helius held up his spear, and for pride and presumption he would not smite Sir Palamides with his spear. But when he saw his brother lie on the earth, and saw he might not help himself, then he said unto Sir Palamides, Help thyself: and therewith he came hurtling unto Sir Palamides with his spear, and smote him quite from his saddle. Then Sir Helius rode over Sir Palamides twice or thrice. And therewith Sir Palamides was ashamed, and gat the horse of Sir Helius by the bridle, and therewithal the horse areared, and Sir Palamides halp after, and so they fell both to the earth, but anon Sir Helius start up lightly, and there he smote Sir Palamides a mighty stroke upon the helm, so that he kneeled upon his own knee. Then they lashed together many sad strokes, and traced and traversed, now backward, now sideling, hurtling together like two boars, and that same time they fell both groveling to the earth. Thus they fought still without any reposing two hours, and never breathed, and then Sir Palamides waxed faint and weary, and Sir Helius waxed passing strong, and doubled his strokes, and drove Sir Palamides overthwart and endlong all the field, that they of the city, when they

saw Sir Palamides in this case, they wept, and cried, and made great dole, and the other party made as great joy. Alas, said the men of the city, that this noble knight should thus be slain for our king's sake. And as they were thus weeping and crying, Sir Palamides that had suffered an hundred strokes, that it was wonder that he stood upon his feet, at the last, Sir Palamides beheld as he might the common people how they wept for him, and then he said to himself, Ah, fie for shame, Sir Palamides, why hangest thou thy head so low? And therewith he bear up his shield, and looked Sir Helius in the visage, and he smote him a great stroke upon the helm, and after that another and another. And then he smote Sir Helius with such a might that he fell to the earth groveling, and then he rased off his helm from his head, and there he smote him such a buffet that he departed his head from the body. And then were the people of the city the joyfullest people that might be. So they brought him to his lodging with great solemnity, and there all the people became his men. And then Sir Palamides prayed them all to take keep unto all the lordship of king Hermance;—For, fair sirs, wit ye well, I may not as at this time abide with you, for I must in all haste be with my lord king Arthur at the castle of Lonazep, the which I have promised.

Then were the people full heavy at his departing. For all that city proffered Sir Palamides the third part of their goods so that he would abide with them: but in no wise as at that time he would not abide. And so Sir Palamides departed. And so he came unto the castle, there as Sir Ebel was lieutenant. And when they in the castle wist how Sir Palamides had sped there was a joyful company. And so Sir Palamides departed, and came to the castle of Lonazep. And when he wist that Sir Tristram was not there, he took his way over Humber, and came unto Joyous Gard where as Sir Tristram was, and La Beale Isoud. Sir Tristram had commanded that what knight errant came within the Joyous Gard, as in th that they should warn Sir Tr So there came a man of the tov told Sir Tristram how there was a in the town a passing goodl What manner of man is he? Tristram, and what sign beare So the man told Sir Tristram tokens of him. That is Palamid Dinadan. It may well be, s Tristram: go ye to him, said S tram unto Dinadan. So Dinad unto Sir Palamides, and there made of other great joy, and lay together that night, and morn early came Sir Tristram Gareth, and took them in thei and so they arose and brake thei

CHAP. LXV.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palami Breuse Sance Pité, and how S tram and La Beale Isoud we Lonazep.

And then Sir Tristram desi Palamides to ride into the fiel woods; so they were accorded to them in the forest. And when th played them a great while, the unto a fair well, and anon the ware of an armed knight that riding against them, and there saluted other. Then this armed spake to Sir Tristram, and aske were those knights that were loc Joyous Gard. I wot not what t said Sir Tristram. What knig ye, said that knight, for me s that ye be no knights errant, ye ride unarmed? Whether knights or not, we list not to t our name. Wilt thou not tell name, said that knight, then kee for thou shalt die of my hands therewith he gat his spear in his and would have run Sir Tristram t That saw Sir Palamides, and sm horse traverse in midst of the si man and horse fell to the earth therewith Sir Palamides aligh pulled out his sword to have sla Let be, said Sir Tristram, slay h

is but a fool, it were shame
n. But take away his spear,
ristram, and let him take his
go where that he will. So
knight arose he groaned sore
and so he took his horse, and
was up, he turned then his
l required Sir Tristram and
ides to tell him what knights
. Now wit ye well, said Sir
that my name is Sir Tristram
, and this knight's name is
ides. When he wist what
, he took his horse with the
use they should not ask him
and so rode fast away through
thin. Then came there by
ight with a bended shield of
se name was Epinogris, and
toward them a great wallop.
re ye riding? said Sir Tris-
y fair lords, said Epinogris, I
e falsest knight that beareth
wherefore I require tell me
ye saw him, for he beareth a
a case of red over it. Truly,
ram, such a knight departed
ot a quarter of an hour ago;
ou tell us his name. Alas,
ogris, why let ye him escape
and he is so great a foe unto
knights: his name is Breuse
. Ah fie for shame, said Sir
, alas that ever he escaped my
he is the man in the world
te most. Then every knight
at sorrow to other, and so
departed, and followed the
r him. Then Sir Tristram and
ellows rode unto Joyous Gard,
Sir Tristram talked unto Sir
of his battle, how he sped at
City; and as ye have heard
was it ended. Truly, said
am, I am glad ye have well
ye have done worshipfully.
l Sir Tristram, we must for-
norn. And then he devised
hould be, and Sir Tristram
send his two pavilions to set
by the well of Lonazep,—and
hall be the queen La Beale
is well said, said Sir Dinadan.

But when Sir Palamides heard of that, his heart was ravished out of measure: notwithstanding he said but little. So when they came to Joyous Gard, Sir Palamides would not have gone into the castle, but as Sir Tristram took him by the finger, and led him into the castle. And when Sir Palamides saw La Beale Isoud, he was so ravished so that he might scarcely speak. So they went unto meat, but Palamides might not eat, and there was all the cheer that might be had. And on the morn they were apparelled to ride towards Lonazep.

So Sir Tristram had three squires, and La Beale Isoud had three gentlewomen, and both the queen and they were richly apparelled; and other people had they none with them, but varlets to bear their shields and their spears. And thus they rode forth. So as they rode they saw afore them a rout of knights: it was the knight Galihodin with twenty knights with him. Fair fellows, said Galihodin, yonder come four knights, and a rich and a well fair lady: I am in will to take that lady from them. That is not of the best counsel, said one of Galihodin's men, but send ye to them and wit what they will say. And so it was done. There came a squire to Sir Tristram and asked him whether they would just, or else to lose their lady? Not so, said Sir Tristram, tell your lord, I bid him come as many as we be, and win her and take her. Sir, said Palamides, and it please you, let me have this deed, and I shall undertake them all four. I will that ye have it, said Sir Tristram, at your pleasure. Now go and tell your lord Galihodin, that this same knight will encounter with him and his fellows.

CHAP. LXVI.

How Sir Palamides justed with Sir Galihodin and after with Sir Gawaine, and smote them down.

THEN this squire departed and told Galihodin, and then he dressed his shield, and put forth a spear, and Sir Palamides smote Galihodin so hard that he

smote both horse and man to the earth. And there he had an horrible fall. And then came there another knight, and in the same wise he served him, and so he served the third and the fourth, that he smote them over their horse croups: and always Sir Palamides' spear was whole. Then came six knights more of Galihodin's men, and would have been avenged upon Sir Palamides. Let be, said Sir Galihodin, not so hardy! None of you all meddle with this knight, for he is a man of great bounty and honour; and if he would, ye were not able to meddle with him. And right so they held them still. And ever Sir Palamides was ready to just. And when he saw they would no more, he rode unto Sir Tristram. Right well have ye done, said Sir Tristram, and worshipfully have ye done as a good knight should. This Galihodin was nigh cousin unto Galahalt the haut prince. And this Galihodin was a king within the country of Surluse. So as Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, and La Beale Isoud rode together, they saw afore them four knights, and every man had his spear in his hand. The first was Sir Gawaine, the second Sir Uwaine, the third Sir Sagramor le Desirous, and the fourth was Dodinas le Savage. When Sir Palamides beheld them, that the four knights were ready to just, he prayed Sir Tristram to give him leave to have ado with them all so long as he might hold him on horseback:—And if that I be smitten down, I pray you revenge me. Well, said Sir Tristram, I will as ye will, and ye are not so fain to have worship, but I would as fain increase your worship. And there withal Sir Gawaine put forth his spear, and Sir Palamides another, and so they came so eagerly together that Sir Palamides smote Sir Gawaine to the earth, horse and all; and in the same wise he served Uwaine, Sir Dodinas, and Sagramor. All these four knights Sir Palamides smote down with divers spears. And then Sir Tristram departed toward Lonazep. And when they were departed, then came thither Galihodin with his ten knights unto Sir Gawaine, and there he told him all how l sped. I marvel, said Sir Gawain knights they be that are so arra green. And that knight upon th horse smote me down, said Gal and my three fellows. And so he me, said Gawaine, and well I w Sir Gawaine, that either he up white horse is Sir Tristram, or Palamides, and that gaybeseen queen Isoud. Thus they talked thing and of other. And in the while Sir Tristram passed on, t he came to the well where h pavilions were set, and ther alighted, and there they saw pavilions and great array. Th Tristram left there Sir Palamid Sir Gareth with La Beale Isou Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan Lonazep to hearken tidings; a Tristram rode upon Sir Palamide horse. And when he came into the Sir Dinadan heard a great horn and to the horn drew many k Then Sir Tristram asked a knight meaneth the blast of that horn said that knight, it is all tho shall hold against king Arthur tournament. The first is the Ireland, and the king of Surlu king of Listinoise, the king of Nc berland, and the king of the be of Wales, with many other cou and these draw them to a cou understand what governance the be of. But the king of Ireland name was Marhalt, and father good knight Sir Marhaus that S tram slew, had all the speech, Tristram might hear it. He said and fellows, let us look to ourse wit ye well king Arthur is sure good knights, or else he wo with so few knights have ado w therefore, by my counsel, let eve have a standard and a cogniz himself, that every knight drav natural lord, and then may ev and captain help his knights, have need. When Sir Tristr heard all their counsel, he ro king Arthur for to hear of his c

CHAP. LXVII.

Tristram and his fellowship came tournament of Lonazep; and of usts and matters.

r Tristram was not so soon) the place, but Sir Gawaine alihodin went to king Arthur, him, That same green knight een harness, with the white ote us two down, and six of rs, this same day. Well, said and then he called Sir Tris- l asked him what was his ir, said Sir Tristram, ye shall xcused as at this time, for ye wit my name. And there Sir returned and rode his way. I vel, said Arthur, that yonder ll not tell me his name, but Griflet le Fise de Dieu, and to speak with me betwixt us.

Griflet rode after him, and him, and said to him that king rayed him for to speak with etly apart. Upon this cove- l Sir Tristram, I will speak that I will turn again, so that isure me not to desire to hear . I shall undertake, said Sir at he will not greatly desire it So they rode together until e to king Arthur. Fair sir, Arthur, what is the cause ye tell me your name? Sir, said am, without a cause I will not name. Upon what party will said king Arthur. Truly, my Sir Tristram, I wot not yet on y I will be on until I come to and there as my heart giveth will I hold: but to-morrow ye and prove on what party I ne. And therewithal he re- d went to his pavilions. And morn they armed them all in d came into the field; and ng knights began to just, and worshipful deeds. Then spake nto Sir Tristram, and prayed ive him leave to break his him thought shame to bear whole again. When Sir Tristram heard him say so he laughed, and said, I pray you, do your best. Then Sir Gareth gat a spear, and proffered to just. That saw a nephew unto the king of the hundred knights, his name was Selises, and a good man of arms. So this knight Selises then dressed him unto Sir Gareth, and they two met together so hard that either smote other down, horse and all, to the earth; so they were both bruised and hurt, and there they lay till the king with the hundred knights halp Selises up; and Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides halp up Gareth again; and so they rode with Sir Gareth unto their pavilions, and then they pulled off his helm. And when La Beale Isoud saw Sir Gareth bruised in the face, she asked him what ailed him. Madam, said Sir Gareth, I had a great buffet, and, as I suppose, I gave another, but none of my fellows would not rescue me. Forsooth, said Palamides, it longed not to none of us as this day to just, for there have not this day justed no proved knights; and needs ye would just, and when the other party saw ye proferred yourself to just, they sent one to you, a passing good knight of his age, for I know him well, his name is Selises, and worshipfully ye met with him, and neither of you are dishonoured; and therefore refresh yourself, that ye may be ready and whole to just to-morrow. As for that, said Sir Gareth, I shall not fail you, and I may bestride my horse.

CHAP. LXVIII.

How Sir Tristram and his fellowship justed, and of the noble feats that they did in that tourneying.

Now upon what party, said Sir Tristram, is it best we be withal as to-morn? Sir, said Palamides, ye shall have mine advice to be against king Arthur as to-morn, for on his party will be Sir Launcelot, and many good knights of his blood with him. And the more men of worship that they be, the more worship we shall win. That is full knightly spoken, said Sir Tristram, and

right so as ye counsel me, so will we do. So be it, said they all. So that night they were lodged with the best. And on the morn when it was day, they were arrayed in green trappings, shields, and spears; and La Beale Isoud in the same colour, and her three damsels. And right so these four knights came into the field endlong and through. And so they led La Beale Isoud thither as she should stand and behold all the justs in a bay window; but always she wimpled that no man might see her visage. And then these three knights rode straight unto the party of the king of Scots.

When king Arthur had seen them do all this, he asked Sir Launcelot what were these knights and that queen? Sir, said Sir Launcelot, I cannot say you in certain, but if Sir Tristram be in this country, or Sir Palamides, wit ye well it be they in certain, and La Beale Isoud. Then Arthur called to him Sir Kay, and said, Go lightly and wit how many knights there be here lacking of the Table Round, for by the sieges thou mayest know. So went Sir Kay, and saw by the writing in the sieges that there lacked ten knights,—And these be their names that be not here, Sir Tristram, Sir Palamides, Sir Percivale, Sir Gaheris, Sir Epinogris, Sir Mordred, Sir Dinadan, Sir La Cote Male Taile, and Sir Pelleas the noble knight. Well, said Arthur, some of these I dare undertake are here this day against us. Then came therein two brethren, cousins unto Sir Gawaine, the one hight Sir Edward, that other hight Sir Sadok, the which were two good knights, and they asked of king Arthur that they might have the first justs, for they were of Orkney. I am pleased, said king Arthur. Then Sir Edward encountered with the king of Scots, in whose party was Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides; and Sir Edward smote the king of Scots quite from his horse; and Sir Sadok smote down the king of North Wales, and gave him a wonder great fall, that there was a great cry on king Arthur's party, and that made Sir Palamides passing wroth; and so Sir Palamides dressed his shield and his spe with all his might he met v Edward of Orkney, that he sm so hard that his horse might n on his feet, and so they hurtle earth: and then with the sam Sir Palamides smote down Si over his horse croup. Oh, said what knight is that arrayed green? he justeth mightily. V well, said Sir Gawaine, he is knight, and yet shall ye see h better or he depart; and yet see, said Sir Gawaine, another knight in the same colour than h that same knight, said Sir Gawa smote down right now my two he smote me down within th days, and seven fellows more meanwhile, as they stood thus there came into the place Sir T upon a black horse, and or stint he smote down with on four good knights of Orkney, th of the kin of Sir Gawaine; Gareth and Sir Dinadan ever of them smote down a good Truly, said Arthur, yonder knig the black horse doth mightily ar vellously well. Abide you, s Gawaine; that knight with th horse began not yet. Then S tram made to horse again t kings that Edward and Sadok h horsed at the beginning. And t Tristram drew his sword, and re the thickest of the press again of Orkney, and there he smot knights, and rashed off helm pulled away their shields, and down many knights: he fared Sir Arthur and all knights ha marvel, when they saw one kn so great deeds of arms. And S mides failed not upon the oth but did so marvellously well men had wonder. For there k thur likened Sir Tristram, that the black horse, like to a wood l likened Sir Palamides, upon th horse, unto a wood libbard, Gareth and Sir Dinadan unto wolves. But the custom wa

em, that none of the kings
lp other, but all the fellow-
ery standard to help other as
t. But ever Sir Tristram did
deeds of arms that they of
axed weary of him, and so
them unto Lonazep.

CHAP. LXIX.

Tristram was unhorsed and down by Sir Launcelot, and at Sir Tristram smote down thur.

as the cry of heralds and all
common people, The green
ıth done marvellously, and
them of Orkney. And there
s numbered that Sir Tristram,
upon the black horse, had
›wn twenty knights; and Sir
had smitten down twenty
and the most part of these
ts were of the house of king
nd proved knights. Truly,
ır unto Sir Launcelot, this is
ame to us to see four knights
ıany knights of mine; and
make you ready, for we will
vith them. Sir, said Sir Laun-
ye well that there are two
od knights, and great worship
t to us now to have ado with
they have this day sore tra-
s for that, said Arthur, I will
d, and therefore take with
eoberis and Sir Ector, and I
fourth, said Arthur. Sir, said
ye shall find me ready, and
r Sir Ector, and my cousin
ris. And so when they were
on horseback, Now choose,
thur unto Sir Launcelot, with
ıt ye will encounter withal.
auncelot, I will meet with the
ht upon the black horse (that
ristram), and my cousin Sir
shall match the green knight
white horse (that was Sir Pa-
and my brother Sir Ector
h with the green knight upon
horse (that was Sir Gareth).
t I, said Sir Arthur, have ado
with the green knight upon the grisled horse (and that was Sir Dinadan). Now every man take heed to his fellow, said Sir Launcelot. And so they trotted on together; and there encountered Sir Launcelot against Sir Tristram. So Sir Launcelot smote Sir Tristram so sore upon the shield that he bare horse and man to the earth: but Sir Launcelot wend it had been Sir Palamides, and so he passed forth. And then Sir Bleoberis encountered with Sir Palamides, and he smote him so hard upon the shield that Sir Palamides and his white horse rustled to the earth. Then Sir Ector de Maris smote Sir Gareth so hard that down he fell off his horse. And the noble king Arthur encountered with Sir Dinadan, and he smote him quite from his saddle. And then the noise turned awhile how the green knights were slain down. When the king of Northgalis saw that Sir Tristram had a fall, then he remembered him how great deeds of arms Sir Tristram had done. Then he made ready many knights, for the custom and cry was such, that what knight were smitten down, and might not be horsed again by his fellows, or by his own strength, that as that day he should be prisoner unto the party that had smitten him down. So came in the king of Northgalis, and he rode straight unto Sir Tristram. And when he came nigh him he alight down suddenly, and betook Sir Tristram his horse, and said thus: Noble knight, I know thee not of what country thou art, but for the noble deeds that thou hast done this day take there my horse, and let me do as well as I may; for truly thou art better worthy to have mine horse than I myself. Gramercy, said Sir Tristram, and if I may I shall requite you. Look that ye go not far from us, and, as I suppose, I shall win you another horse. And therewith Sir Tristram mounted upon his horse, and there he met with king Arthur, and he gave him such a buffet upon the helm with his sword that king Arthur had no power to keep his saddle. And then Sir Tris-

tram gave the king of Northgalis king Arthur's horse. Then was there great press about king Arthur for to horse him again. But Sir Palamides would not suffer king Arthur to be horsed again: but ever Sir Palamides smote on the right hand and on the left hand mightily as a noble knight. And this mean while Sir Tristram rode through the thickest of the press, and smote down knights on the right and on the left hand, and rased off helms, and so passed forth unto his pavilions, and left Sir Palamides on foot. And Sir Tristram changed his horse, and disguised himself all in red, horse and harness.

CHAP. LXX.

How Sir Tristram changed his harness and it was all red, and how he demeaned him, and how Sir Palamides slew Launcelot's horse.

And when the queen La Beale Isoud saw that Sir Tristram was unhorsed, and she wist not where he was, then she wept greatly. But Sir Tristram, when he was ready, came dashing lightly into the field, and then La Beale Isoud espied him. And so he did great deeds of arms, with one spear that was great Sir Tristram smote down five knights or ever he stint. Then Sir Launcelot espied him readily that it was Sir Tristram, and then he repented him that he had smitten him down. And so Sir Launcelot went out of the press to repose him, and lightly he came again. And now when Sir Tristram came unto the press, through his great force he put Sir Palamides upon his horse, and Sir Gareth, and Sir Dinadan, and then they began to do marvellously. But Sir Palamides nor none of his two fellows knew not who had holpen them on horseback again. But ever Sir Tristram was nigh them and succoured them, and they not him, because he was changed into red armour. And all this while Sir Launcelot was away. So when La Beale Isoud knew Sir Tristram again upon his horse back she was passing glad, and then she laughed and made good cheer. And as it h Sir Palamides looked up tow where she lay in the window, espied how she laughed: an with he took such a rejoici he smote down, what with hi and with his sword, all that met; for through the sight of he so enamoured in her love, that he at that time that, and both Sir T and Sir Launcelot had been both him, they should have won no of him. And in his heart, as t saith, Sir Palamides wished th his worship he might have a Sir Tristram before all men be La Beale Isoud. Then Sir Pa began to double his strength, did so marvellously that all m wonder of him. And ever he his eye unto La Beale Isoud, an he saw her make such cheer h like a lion, that there might withstand him. And then Sir T beheld him how that Sir Pa bestirred him, and then he sa Sir Dinadan, Truly, Sir Palamic passing good knight, and a well ing: but such deeds saw I hin do, nor never heard I tell that did so much in one day. It is said Sir Dinadan: and he would more unto Sir Tristram; but to he said, And if ye knew for wh he doth all these deeds of arm would Sir Tristram abate his c Alas, said Sir Tristram, that Si mides is not christened. So sa Arthur, and so said all those t held him. Then all people ga the prize as for the best knig day, that he passed Sir Launc Sir Tristram. Well, said Dina himself, all this worship that S mides hath here this day, he ma the queen Isoud; for had sh away this day, Sir Palamides h gotten the prize this day.

Right so came into the field Si celot du Lake, and saw and he noise and cry and the great that Sir Palamides had. He him against Sir Palamides with

ar, and a long, and thought m down. And when Sir Pa- w Sir Launcelot come upon t, he ran upon Sir Launcelot i his sword as he might. And ncelot should have stricken ıote his spear on side, and wo with his sword. And Sir rashed unto Sir Launcelot and have put him to a shame, is sword he smote his horse's Sir Launcelot rode upon, and .auncelot fell to the earth. the cry huge and great;—See 'alamides the Saracen hath own Sir Launcelot's horse. ı were there many knights ı Sir Palamides, because he that deed. Therefore many ld there against that it was done in a tournament to kill ilfully, but that it had been ıin battle, life for life.

CHAP. LXXI.

ıuncelot said to Sir Palamides, the prize of that day was given Palamides.

Sir Ector de Maris saw Sir his brother have such a d so set on foot, then he gat agerly and ran against Sir and he smote him so hard re him quite from his horse. Sir Tristram that was in red ıd he smote down Sir Ector ıuite from his horse. Then lot dressed his shield upon r, and with his sword naked l, and so came straight upon des fiercely, and said, Wit thou hast done me this day ıt despite that ever any wor- ght did to me in tournament s, and therefore I will be on thee, therefore take keep . Ah mercy, noble knight, ıides, and forgive me mine leeds, for I have no power to withstand you. And I so much this day, that well id never so much nor never shall in my life days. And therefore, most noble knight, I require thee spare me as at this day, and I promise you I shall ever be your knight while I live. And ye put me from my worship now, ye put me from the greatest worship that ever I had, or ever shall have, in my life days. Well, said Sir Launcelot, I see, for to say the sooth, ye have done marvellously well this day, and I understand a part for whose love ye do it, and well I wot that love is a great mistress. And if my lady were here as she is not, wit you well that ye should not bear away the worship. But beware your love be not discovered; for and Sir Tristram may know it ye will repent it. And since my quarrel is not here, ye shall have this day the worship as for me; considering the great travail and pain that ye have had this day, it were no worship for me to put you from it. And therewithal Sir Launcelot suffered Sir Palamides to depart. Then Sir Launcelot by great force and might gat his own horse, maugre twenty knights. So when Sir Launcelot was horsed he did many marvels, and so did Sir Tristram, and Sir Palamides in likewise. Then Sir Launcelot smote down with a spear Sir Dinadan, and the king of Scotland, and the king of Wales, and the king of Northumberland, and the king of Listinoise. So then Sir Launcelot and his fellows smote down well a forty knights. Then came the king of Ireland and the king of the Straight Marches to rescue Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides. There began a great meddle, and many knights there were smitten down on both parties, and always Sir Launcelot spared Sir Tristram, and he spared him. And Sir Palamides would not meddle with Sir Launcelot. And so there was hurtling here and there. And then king Arthur sent out many knights of the Table Round. And Sir Palamides was ever in the foremost front. And Sir Tristram did so strongly well that the king and all other had marvel. And then the king let blow to lodging. And because Sir Palamides began

first, and never he went nor rode out of the field to repose, but ever he was doing marvellously well, either on foot or on horseback, and longest enduring, king Arthur and all the kings gave Sir Palamides the honour and the gree as for that day. Then Sir Tristram commanded Sir Dinadan to fetch the queen La Beale Isoud, and bring her to his two pavilions that stood by the well. And so Dinadan did as he was commanded. But when Sir Palamides understood and wist that Sir Tristram was in the red armour, and on the red horse, wit ye well that he was glad, and so was Sir Gareth, and Sir Dinadan. For they all wend that Sir Tristram had been taken prisoner.

And then every knight drew to his inn. And then king Arthur and every knight spake of those knights. But above all men they gave Sir Palamides the prize, and all knights that knew Sir Palamides had wonder of his deeds. Sir, said Sir Launcelot unto Arthur, as for Sir Palamides, and he be the green knight, I dare say as for this day he is best worthy to have the degree, for he reposed him never, ne never changed his weeds. And he began first and longest held on. And yet well I wot, said Sir Launcelot, that there was a better knight than he, and that shall be proved or we depart, upon pain of my life. Thus they talked on either party, and so Sir Dinadan railed with Sir Tristram and said, What the devil is upon thee this day, for Sir Palamides' strength feebled never this day, but ever he doubled his strength.

CHAP. LXXII.

How Sir Dinadan provoked Sir Tristram to do well.

And thou Sir Tristram faredst all this day as though thou hadst been asleep, and therefore I call thee coward. Well, Dinadan, said Sir Tristram, I was never called coward or now, of none earthly knight, in my life: and, wit thou well, sir, I call myself never the more coward though Sir Launcelot gave me a fall, for I outcept him of all knights doubt ye not, Sir Dinadan, a Launcelot have a quarrel good, he over good for any knight that living; and yet of his sufferance, la bounty, and courtesy, I call him peerless. And so Sir Tristram manner wroth with Sir Dinadan all this language Sir Dinadan s cause he would anger Sir Tristr to cause him to awake his spiri to be wroth. For well knew Sir D that and Sir Tristram were thor wroth, Sir Palamides should not prize upon the morn. And f intent Sir Dinadan said all this and language against Sir Tr Truly, said Sir Palamides, as Launcelot, of his noble knigh courtesy, and prowess, and gent I know not his peer: for thi said Sir Palamides, I did full u teously unto Sir Launcelot, ar unknightly, and full knightly an teously he did to me again: for had been as ungentle to me as I him, this day I had won no w And therefore, said Palamides, be Sir Launcelot's knight whil life lasteth. This talking was houses of kings. But all kings, and knights said, of clear knig and pure strength, of bounty, an tesy, Sir Launcelot and Sir T bare the prize above all knigh ever were in Arthur's days. An were never knights in Arthur' did half so many deeds as the as the book saith, no ten knig not half the deeds that they di there was never knight in the that required Sir Launcelot or S tram of any quest, so it were their shame, but they performe desire.

CHAP. LXXIII.

How king Arthur and Sir Launcel to see La Beale Isoud, and bo mides smote down king Arthur.

So on the morn Sir Launce parted, and Sir Tristram was rea La Beale Isoud with Sir Palami

th. And so they rode all in
l freshly beseen, unto the forest.
Tristram left Sir Dinadan sleep-
bed. And so as they rode, it
ıe king and Launcelot stood in
v, and saw Sir Tristram ride
d. Sir, said Sir Launcelot,
ideth the fairest lady of the
cept your queen dame Guene-
ɔ is that? said Sir Arthur. Sir,
it is queen Isoud, that, out-
lady your queen, she is match-
ɛe your horse, said Arthur, and
at all rights, as I will do, and
: you, said the king, I will see
en anon they were armed and
ıd either took a spear and rode
forest. Sir, said Launcelot, it
od that ye go too nigh them,
'e well there are two as good
ıs now are living; and there-
I pray you be not too hasty.
dventure there will be some
be displeased and we come
upon them. As for that, said
I will see her, for I take no
ɔm I grieve. Sir, said Laun-
put yourself in great jeopardy.
at, said the king, we will take
ıture. Right so anon the king
ı to her, and saluted her, and
d you save. Sir, said she, ye
ome. Then the king beheld
liked her wonderly well. With
: Sir Palamides unto Arthur and
ɔurteous knight, what seeketh
e? Thou art uncourteous, to
ɔn a lady thus suddenly; there-
ıdraw thee. Sir Arthur took
d of Sir Palamides' words, but
looked still upon queen Isoud.
ıs Sir Palamides wroth, and
ı he took a spear and came
upon king Arthur, and smote
vn with a spear. When Sir
ɛt saw that despite of Sir Pala-
ɛ said to himself, I am loth to
ı with yonder knight, and not
vn sake but for Sir Tristram.
thing I am sure of, if I smite
r Palamides I must have ado
Tristram, and that were over
me to match them both, for
they are two noble knights: notwithstanding, whether I live or die, needs must I revenge my lord, and so will I whatsoever befal of me. And therewith Sir Launcelot cried to Sir Palamides, Keep thee from me! And then Sir Launcelot and Sir Palamides rashed together with two spears strongly. But Sir Launcelot smote Sir Palamides so hard that he went quite out of his saddle, and had a great fall. When Sir Tristram saw Sir Palamides have that fall, he said to Sir Launcelot, Sir knight keep thee, for I must just with thee. As for to just with me, said Sir Launcelot, I will not fail you for no dread I have of you, but I am loth to have ado with you and I might choose: for I will that ye wit that I must revenge my special lord, that was unhorsed unwarily and unknightly. And therefore, though I have revenged that fall, take ye no displeasure therein, for he is to me such a friend that I may not see him shamed. Anon Sir Tristram understood by his person and by his knightly words that it was Sir Launcelot du Lake, and verily Sir Tristram deemed that it was king Arthur, he that Sir Palamides had smitten down.

And then Sir Tristram put his spear from him, and put Sir Palamides again on horseback; and Sir Launcelot put king Arthur on horseback, and so departed. Truly, said Sir Tristram unto Palamides, ye did not worshipfully when ye smote down that knight so suddenly as ye did. And wit ye well ye did yourself great shame: for the knights came hither of their gentleness to see a fair lady, and that is every good knight's part to behold a fair lady, and ye had not ado to play such masteries afore my lady. Wit thou well it will turn to anger, for he that ye smote down was king Arthur, and that other was the good knight Sir Launcelot. But I shall not forget the words of Sir Launcelot, when that he called him a man of great worship: thereby I wist that it was king Arthur. And as for Sir Launcelot, and there had been five hundred knights in the meadow he would

not have refused them, and yet he said he would refuse me: by that again I wist that it was Sir Launcelot, for ever he forbeareth me in every place, and sheweth me great kindness; and of all knights—I out-take none, say what men will say—he beareth the flower of all chivalry, say it him whosoever will, and he be well angered, and that him list to do his utterance without any favour, I know him not on live but Sir Launcelot is over hard for him, be it on horseback or on foot. I may never believe, said Sir Palamides, that king Arthur will ride so privily as a poor errant knight. Ah, said Sir Tristram, ye know not my lord Arthur, for all knights may learn to be a knight of him. And therefore ye may be sorry, said Sir Tristram, of your unkindly deeds to so noble a king. And a thing that is done may not be undone, said Sir Palamides. Then Sir Tristram sent queen Isoud unto her lodging in the priory, there to behold all the tournament.

CHAP. LXXIV.

How the second day Palamides forsook Sir Tristram, and went to the contrary part against him.

THEN there was a cry unto all knights, that when they heard an horn blow they should make justs as they did the first day. And like as the brethren Sir Edward and Sir Sadok began the justs the first day, Sir Uwaine, the king's son Urein, and Sir Lucanere de Buttelere, began the justs the second day. And at the first encounter Sir Uwaine smote down the king's son of Scots, and Sir Lucanere ran against the king of Wales, and they brake their spears all to pieces, and they were so fierce both, that they hurtled together that both fell to the earth. Then they of Orkney horsed again Sir Lucanere. And then came in Sir Tristram de Liones; and then Sir Tristram smote down Sir Uwaine and Sir Lucanere; and Sir Palamides smote down other two knights; and Sir Gareth smote down other two knights. Then said Sir Arthur unto Sir Launcelot, See yonder three knights do passing well, and namely the first that justed. Sir, said Launcelot, that knight began not yet, but ye shall see him this day do marvellously. And then came into the place the duke's son of Orkney, and then they began to do many deeds of arms. When Sir Tristram saw them so begin, he said to Palamides, How feel ye yourself? may ye do this day as ye did yesterday? Nay, said Palamides, I feel myself so weary and so sore bruised of the deeds of yesterday, that I may not endure as I did yesterday. That me repenteth, said Sir Tristram, for I shall lack you this day. Sir Palamides said, Trust not to me, for I may not do as I did. All these words said Palamides for to beguile Sir Tristram. Sir, said Sir Tristram unto Sir Gareth, then must I trust upon you; wherefore I pray you be not far from me to rescue me. And need be, said Gareth, I shall not fail you in all that I may do.

Then Sir Palamides rode by himself, and then in despite of Sir Tristram he put himself in the thickest press among them of Orkney: and there he did so marvellous deeds of arms that all men had wonder of him, for there might none stand him a stroke. When Sir Tristram saw Sir Palamides do such deeds he marvelled, and said to himself, He is weary of my company. So Sir Tristram beheld him a great while, and did but little else, for the noise and cry was so huge and great that Sir Tristram marvelled from whence came the strength that Sir Palamides had there in the field. Sir, said Sir Gareth unto Sir Tristram, remember ye not of the words that Sir Dinadan said to you yesterday, when he called you coward? For sooth, Sir, he said it for none ill; for ye are the man in the world that he most loveth, and all that he said was for your worship. And therefore, said Sir Gareth to Sir Tristram, let me know this day what ye be; and wonder ye not so upon Sir Palamides, for he enforceth himself to win all the worship and honour from you. I may well believe it, said Sir Tristram, and since I understand his

ıd his envy ye shall see, if ›rce myself, that the noise t that now is upon him.

r Tristram rode into the the press, and then he did ›usly well, and did so great ms, that all men said that ı did double so much deeds ıat Sir Palamides had done

And then the noise went Sir Palamides, and all the d upon Sir Tristram. See, ›eople, how Sir Tristram vn with his spear so many nd see, said they all, how ıts he smiteth down with his of how many knights he heir helms and their shields. : beat them all of Orkney

How now, said Sir Laun-ding Arthur, I told you that :re would a knight play his Yonder rideth a knight ye : doth knightly, for he hath d wind. Truly, said Arthur ot, ye say sooth, for I saw ıtter knight, for he passeth lamides. Sir, wit ye well, elot, it must be so of right, nself that noble knight Sir I may right well believe it, '. But when Sir Palamides noise and the cry was ı him he rode out on a part, Sir Tristram. And when Sir ıaw Sir Tristram do so mar-ell, he wept passingly sore for he wist well he should › win that day. For well alamides, when Sir Tristram forth his strength and his ıe should get but little wor-ıy.

CHAP. LXXV.

'ristram departed out of the l awaked Sir Dinadan, and bis array into black.

ne king Arthur, and the king ılis, and Sir Launcelot du Sir Bleoberis, Sir Bors de Ector de Maris, these three knights came into the field with Sir Launcelot. And then Sir Launcelot with the three knights of his kin did so great deeds of arms, that all the noise began upon Sir Launcelot. And so they beat the king of Wales and the king of Scots far aback, and made them to avoid the field. But Sir Tristram and Sir Gareth abode still in the field, and endured all that ever there came, that all men had wonder that any knight might endure so many strokes. But ever Sir Launcelot and his three kinsmen, by the commandment of Sir Launcelot, forbare Sir Tristram. Then said Sir Arthur, Is that Sir Palamides that endureth so well? Nay, said Sir Launcelot, wit ye well it is the good knight Sir Tristram, for yonder ye may see Sir Palamides beholdeth, and hoveth, and doth little or nought. And, sir, ye shall understand that Sir Tristram weeneth this day to beat us all out of the field. And as for me, said Sir Launcelot, I shall not beat him, beat him who so will. Sir, said Launcelot unto Arthur, ye may see how Sir Palamides hoveth yonder as though he were in a dream; wit ye well he is full heavy that Tristram doth such deeds of arms. Then is he but a fool, said Arthur, for never was Sir Palamides, nor never shall be, of such prowess as Sir Tristram. And if he have any envy at Sir Tristram, and cometh in with him upon his side, he is a false knight. As the king and Sir Launcelot thus spake, Sir Tristram rode privily out of the press, that none espied him but La Beale Isoud and Sir Palamides, for they two would not let of their eyes upon Sir Tristram.

And when Sir Tristram came to his pavilions, he found Sir Dinadan in his bed asleep. Awake, said Tristram, ye ought to be ashamed so to sleep, when knights have ado in the field. Then Sir Dinadan arose lightly, and said, What will ye that I shall do? Make you ready, said Sir Tristram, to ride with me into the field. So when Sir Dinadan was armed he looked upon Sir Tristram's helm and on his shield, and when he saw so many strokes upon his

helm and upon his shield, he said, In good time was I thus asleep; for had I been with you I must needs for shame there have followed you, more for shame than any prowess that is in me, that I see well now by those strokes, that I should have been truly beaten as I was yesterday. Leave your jests, said Sir Tristram, and come off, that we were in the field again. What, said Sir Dinadan, is your heart up? Yesterday ye fared as though ye had dreamed. So then Sir Tristram was arrayed in black harness. Oh, said Sir Dinadan, what aileth you this day? me seemeth ye be wilder than ye were yesterday. Then smiled Sir Tristram, and said to Dinadan, Await well upon me: if ye see me over-matched look that ye be ever behind me, and I shall make you ready way. So Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan took their horses. All this espied Sir Palamides, both their going and their coming, and so did La Beale Isoud, for she knew Sir Tristram above all other.

CHAP. LXXVI.

How Sir Palamides changed his shield and his armour for to hurt Sir Tristram, and how Sir Launcelot did to Sir Tristram.

THEN when Sir Palamides saw that Sir Tristram was disguised, then he thought to do him a shame. So Sir Palamides rode to a knight that was sore wounded, that sat under a fair well from the field. Sir knight, said Sir Palamides, I pray you to lend me your armour and your shield, for mine is over well known in this field, and that hath done me great damage, and ye shall have mine armour and my shield, that is as sure as yours. I will well, said the knight, that ye have mine armour and my shield, if they may do you any avail. So Sir Palamides armed him hastily in that knight's armour, and his shield that shone as any crystal or silver, and so he came riding into the field. And then there was neither Sir Tristram nor none of king Arthur's party that knew Sir Palamides. And right so as Sir Palamides was come into the field Sir Tristram smote down three knights, even in the sight of Sir Palamides. And then Sir Palamides rode against Sir Tristram, and either met other with great spears, that they brast to their hands. And then they dashed together with swords eagerly. Then Sir Tristram had marvel what knight he was that did battle so knightly with him. Then was Sir Tristram wroth, for he felt him passing strong, so that he deemed he might not have ado with the remnant of the knights, because of the strength of Sir Palamides. So they lashed together, and gave many sad strokes together, and many knights marvelled what knight he might be that so encountered with the black knight, Sir Tristram. Full well knew La Beale Isoud that there was Sir Palamides that fought with Sir Tristram, for she espied all in her window where that she stood, as Sir Palamides changed his harness with the wounded knight. And then she began to weep so heartily for the despite of Sir Palamides that there she swooned. Then came in Sir Launcelot with the knights of Orkney; and when the other party had espied Sir Launcelot they cried, Return, return, here cometh Sir Launcelot du Lake. So there came knights and said, Sir Launcelot, ye must needs fight with yonder knight in the black harness (that was Sir Tristram), for he hath almost overcome that good knight that fighteth with him with the silver shield (that was Sir Palamides). Then Sir Launcelot rode betwixt Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides, and Sir Launcelot said to Palamides, Sir knight, let me have the battle, for ye have need to be reposed. Sir Palamides knew Sir Launcelot well, and so did Sir Tristram. But because Sir Launcelot was a far hardier knight than himself therefore he was glad, and suffered Sir Launcelot to fight with Sir Tristram. For well wist he that Sir Launcelot knew not Sir Tristram, and there he hoped that Sir Launcelot should beat or shame Sir Tristram, whereof Sir Palamides was full fain. And so Sir

gave Sir Tristram many sad
Sir Launcelot knew not Sir
ut Sir Tristram knew well
lot. And thus they fought
er, that La Beale Isoud was
her mind for sorrow. Then
n told Sir Gareth how that
the black harness was Sir
nd this is Launcelot that
h him, that must needs have
f him, for Sir Tristram hath
uch travail this day. Then
him down, said Sir Gareth.
etter that we do, said Sir
an Sir Tristram be shamed.
hoveth the strong knight
lver shield to fall upon Sir
need be. Then forthwithal
ed upon Sir Launcelot, and
great stroke upon his helm
at he was astonied. And
Sir Dinadan with a spear,
ote Sir Launcelot such a
horse and all fell to the
s, said Sir Tristram to Sir
Sir Dinadan, fie for shame,
smite down so good a knight
nd namely when I had ado
Now ye do yourself great
him no dis-worship: for I
asonable hot though ye had
me. Then came Sir Pala-
was disguised, and smote
Dinadan from his horse.
auncelot, because Sir Dina-
nitten him aforehand, then
ot assailed Sir Dinadan pass-
d Sir Dinadan defended him
But well understood Sir Tris-
ir Dinadan might not endure
lot, wherefore Sir Tristram
Then came Sir Palamides
Sir Tristram. And when Sir
w him come, he thought to
at once, because that he
Sir Dinadan, because he
eat peril with Sir Launcelot.
istram hurtled unto Sir Pala-
gave him a great buffet, and
ristram gat Sir Palamides,
him down underneath him.
Sir Tristram with him, and
lept up lightly, and left Sir
Palamides, and went betwixt Sir Launcelot and Dinadan, and then they began to do battle together. Right so Sir Dinadan gat Sir Tristram's horse, and said on high, that Sir Launcelot might hear it, My lord Sir Tristram, take your horse. And when Sir Launcelot heard him name Sir Tristram, Alas, said Sir Launcelot, what have I done? I am dishonoured. Ah, my lord Sir Tristram, said Launcelot, why were ye disguised? ye have put yourself in great peril this day. But, I pray you, noble knight, to pardon me, for and I had known you we had not done this battle. Sir, said Sir Tristram, this is not the first kindness ye shewed me. So they were both horsed again. Then all the people on the one side gave Sir Launcelot the honour and the degree, and on the other side all the people gave to the noble knight Sir Tristram the honour and the degree. But Launcelot said nay thereto:—For I am not worthy to have this honour, for I will report me unto all knights that Sir Tristram hath been longer in the field than I, and he hath smitten down many more knights this day than I have done; and therefore I will give Sir Tristram my voice and my name, and so I pray all my lords and fellows so to do. Then there was the whole voice of dukes and earls, barons and knights, that Sir Tristram this day is proved the best knight.

CHAP. LXXVII.

How Sir Tristram departed with La Beale Isoud, and how Palamides followed and excused him.

THEN they blew unto lodging, and queen Isoud was led unto her pavilions. But wit you well she was wroth out of measure with Sir Palamides, for she saw all his treason from the beginning to the ending. And all this while neither Sir Tristram, neither Sir Gareth, nor Dinadan, knew not of the treason of Sir Palamides. But afterward ye shall hear that there befel the greatest debate betwixt Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides that might be. So

when the tournament was done, Sir Tristram, Gareth, and Dinadan rode with La Beale Isoud to these pavilions. And ever Sir Palamides rode with them in their company disguised as he was. But when Sir Tristram had espied him, that he was the same knight with the shield of silver that held him so hot that day, Sir knight, said Sir Tristram, wit you well here is none that hath need of your fellowship, and therefore I pray you depart from us. Sir Palamides answered again, as though he had not known Sir Tristram, Wit ye well, sir knight, from this fellowship will I never depart, for one of the best knights of the world commanded me to be in this company, and till he discharge me of my service I will not be discharged. By that Sir Tristram knew that it was Sir Palamides. Ah Sir Palamides, said the noble knight Sir Tristram, are ye such a knight? Ye have been named wrong, for ye have long been called a gentle knight, and as this day ye have shewed me great ungentleness, for ye had almost brought me unto my death. But as for you I suppose I should have done well enough, but Sir Launcelot with you was overmuch, for I know no knight living but Sir Launcelot is over good for him, and he will do his uttermost. Alas, said Sir Palamides, are ye my lord Sir Tristram? Yea, sir, and that ye know well enough. By my knighthood, said Palamides, until now I knew you not, for I wend that ye had been the king of Ireland, for well I wot that ye bare his arms. His arms I bare, said Sir Tristram, and that will I stand by, for I won them once in a field of a full noble knight, his name was Sir Marhaus, and with great pain I won that knight, for there was none other recover, but Sir Marhaus died through false leeches, and yet was he never yielden to me. Sir, said Palamides, I wend ye had been turned upon Sir Launcelot's party, and that caused me to turn. Ye say well, said Sir Tristram, and so I take you, and I forgive you. So then they rode into their pavilions, and when they were alight they unarmed them, and washed thei and hands, and so went to me were set at their table. Bu Isoud saw Sir Palamides she then her colours, and for wr might not speak. Anon Si tram espied her countenance, a Madam, for what cause make such cheer? we have been s vailed this day. Mine own lo La Beale Isoud, be ye not di with me, for I may none other for I saw this day how ye w trayed, and nigh brought to you Truly, sir, I saw every deal, h in what wise; and therefore, s should I suffer in your presence felon and traitor as Sir Palamide I saw him with mine eyes how held you when ye went out of t For ever he hoved still upon hi till he saw you come in aga And then forthwithal I saw him the hurt knight, and change with him, and then straight I s how he rode into the field. An as he had found you he enco with you, and thus wilfully Si mides did battle with you, and him, sir, I was not greatly afear dread sore Launcelot, that kn not. Madam, said Palamides, say what so ye will, I may not you, but by my knighthood not Sir Tristram. Sir Palamid Sir Tristram, I will take your but well I wot ye spared me b but all is pardoned on my part La Beale Isoud held down h and said no more at that time.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

How king Arthur and Sir Launce into their pavilions as they sat a and of Palamides.

And therewithal two knight came unto the pavilion, and th alight both, and came in arme pieces. Fair knights, said Sir T ye are to blame to come thus a all pieces upon me while we ar meat. If ye would anything, were in the field there might

ur hearts. Not so, said the one knights, we come not for that ɔut wit ye well, Sir Tristram, ɔome hither as your friends. n come here, said the one, for u, and this knight is come for ı Beale Isoud. Then, said Sir , I require you do off your ıat I may see you. That will your desire, said the knights. en their helms were off, Sir thought he should know Then said Sir Dinadan privily Tristram, Sir, that is Sir Laun- Lake that spake unto you first, other is my lord king Arthur. d Sir Tristram unto La Beale ladam, arise, for here is my ; Arthur. Then the king and ɔn kissed, and Sir Launcelot Tristram braced either other and then there was joy without and at the request of La Beale ıg Arthur and Launcelot were . And then there was merry

n, said Sir Arthur, it is many hen that I have desired to see ɔr ye have been praised so far, I dare say ye are the fairest I saw; and Sir Tristram is as as good a knight as any that I ıerefore me beseemeth ye are ɛt together. Sir, I thank you, noble knight Sir Tristram, and of your great goodness and ye are peerless. Thus they f many things, and of all the sts. But for what cause, said thur, were ye, Sir Tristram, us? Ye are a knight of the ɔund; of right ye should have h us. Sir, said Sir Tristram, Dinadan and Sir Gareth your hew caused me to be against y lord Arthur, said Gareth, I bear the blame, but it were ram's own deeds. That may I aid Sir Dinadan, for this un- r Tristram brought us to this ınt, and many great buffets he s to have. Then the king and t laughed that they might not sit. What knight was that, said Arthur, that held you so short, this with the shield of silver? Sir, said Sir Tristram, here he sitteth at this board. What, said Arthur, was it Sir Palamides? Wit ye well it was he, said La Beale Isoud. Truly, said Arthur, that was unknightly done of you of so good a knight, for I have heard many people call you a courteous knight. Sir, said Palamides, I knew not Sir Tristram, for he was so disguised. Truly, said Launcelot, it may well be, for I knew not Sir Tristram, but I marvel why ye turned on our party. That was done for the same cause, said Launcelot. As for that, said Sir Tristram, I have pardoned him, and I would be right loth to leave his fellowship, for I love right well his company. So they left off, and talked of other things. And in the evening king Arthur and Sir Launcelot departed unto their lodging. But wit ye well Sir Palamides had envy heartily, for all that night he had never rest in his bed, but wailed and wept out of measure. So on the morn Sir Tristram, Gareth, and Dinadan arose early, and then they went unto Sir Palamides' chamber, and there they found him fast on sleep, for he had all night watched. And it was seen upon his cheeks that he had wept full sore. Say nothing, said Sir Tristram, for I am sure he hath taken anger and sorrow for the rebuke that I gave to him, and La Beale Isoud.

CHAP. LXXIX.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides did the next day, and how king Arthur was unhorsed.

Then Sir Tristram let call Sir Palamides, and bade him make him ready, for it was time to go to the field. When they were ready they were armed and clothed all in red, both Isoud and all they. And so they led her passing freshly through the field, into the priory where was her lodging. And then they heard three blasts blow, and every king and knight dressed him unto the field; and the first that was ready to just was Sir Palamides and Sir Kainus le Strange,

a knight of the Table Round. And so they two encountered together, but Sir Palamides smote Sir Kainus so hard, that he smote him quite over his horse croup: and forth withal Sir Palamides smote down another knight, and brake then his spear, and pulled out his sword and did wonderly well. And then the noise began greatly upon Sir Palamides. Lo, said king Arthur, yonder Palamides beginneth to play his pageant. Truly, said Arthur, he is a passing good knight. And right as they stood talking thus, in came Sir Tristram as thunder, and he encountered Sir Kay the seneschal, and there he smote him down quite from his horse, and with that same spear Sir Tristram smote down three knights more; and then he pulled out his sword and did marvellously. Then the noise and cry changed from Sir Palamides and turned to Sir Tristram, and all the people cried, O Tristram! O Tristram! And then was Sir Palamides clean forgotten. How now, said Launcelot unto Arthur, yonder rideth a knight that playeth his pageants. Truly, said Arthur to Launcelot, ye shall see this day that yonder two knights shall here do this day wonders. Sir, said Launcelot, the one knight waiteth upon the other, and enforceth himself through envy to pass the noble knight Sir Tristram, and he knoweth not of the privy envy the which Sir Palamides hath to him. For all that the noble Sir Tristram doth is through clean knighthood. And then Sir Gareth and Dinadan did wonderly great deeds of arms as two noble knights, so that king Arthur spake of them great honour and worship; and the kings and knights of Sir Tristram's side did passing well, and held them truly together. Then Sir Arthur and Sir Launcelot took their horses and dressed them, and gat into the thickest of the press. And there Sir Tristram unknowing smote down king Arthur, and then Sir Launcelot would have rescued him, but there were so many upon Sir Launcelot that they pulled him down from his horse. And then the king of Ireland and the king of Scots, with their knights, did their pain to take king Arthur and Sir Launcelot prisoner. When Sir Launcelot heard them say so, he fared as it had been an hungry lion, for he fared so that no knight durst nigh him. Then came Sir Ector de Maris, and he bare a spear against Sir Palamides, and brake it upon him all to shivers. And then Sir Ector came again, and gave Sir Palamides such a dash with a sword that he stooped down upon his saddle-bow. And forth withal Sir Ector pulled down Sir Palamides under his feet. And then Sir Ector de Maris gat Sir Launcelot du Lake an horse, and brought it to him, and bad him mount upon him. But Sir Palamides lept afore, and gat the the horse by the bridle, and lept into the saddle. Truly, said Launcelot, ye are better worthy to have that horse than I. Then Sir Ector brought Sir Launcelot another horse. Gramercy, said Launcelot unto his brother. And so when he was horsed again, with one spear he smote down four knights. And then Sir Launcelot brought to king Arthur one of the best of the four horses. Then Sir Launcelot with king Arthur and a few of his knights of Sir Launcelot's kin, did marvellous deeds; for that time, as the book recordeth, Sir Launcelot smote down and pulled down thirty knights. Notwithstanding, the other part held them so fast together that king Arthur and his knights were overmatched. And when Sir Tristram saw that, what labour king Arthur and his knights, in especial the noble deeds that Sir Launcelot did with his own hands, he marvelled greatly.

CHAP. LXXX.

How Sir Tristram turned to king Arthur's side, and how Sir Palamides would not.

THEN Sir Tristram called unto him Sir Palamides, Sir Gareth, and Sir Dinadan, and said thus to them, My fair fellows, wit ye well that I will turn unto king Arthur's party, for I saw never so few men do so well, and it will be shame unto us knights that be of the Round Table to see our lord king Arthur, and

knight Sir Launcelot, to be
d. It will be well done, said
and Sir Dinadan. Do your
alamides, for I will not change
hat I came in withal. That
ake, said Sir Tristram: speed
n your journey. And so de-
Palamides from them. Then
m, Sir Gareth, and Sir Dina-
d with Sir Launcelot. And
ıuncelot smote down the king
quite from his horse; and so
elot smote down the king of
l the king of Wales. And
rthur ran unto Sir Palamides,
: him quite from his horse.
Sir Tristram bare down all
:t. Sir Gareth and Sir Dina-
ıere as noble knights. Then
ties began to flee. Alas, said
, that ever I should see this
ɔw have I lost all the worship
n. And then Sir Palamides
vay wailing, and so withdrew
: came to a well, and there he
rse from him, and did off his
ıd wailed and wept like as he
a wood man.

any knights gave the prize to
ım, and there were many that
ɪrize unto Sir Launcelot. Fair
. Sir Tristram, I thank you of
r ye would give me, but I pray
ily that ye would give your
ir Launcelot, for by my faith,
ristram, I will give Sir Laun-
voice. But Sir Launcelot
t have it. And so the prize
ı betwixt them both. Then
ı rode to his lodging. And
eris and Sir Ector rode with
am and La Beale Isoud unto
ons. Then as Sir Palamides
e well, wailing and weeping,
e by him fleeing the king of
l of Scotland, and they saw Sir
; in that rage. Alas, said they,
ɔble a man as ye be should be
ray. And then those kings
lamides' horse again, and made
m him and mount upon his
. so he rode with them, making
. So when Sir Palamides came nigh the pavilions there as Sir Tristram and La Beale Isoud were in, then Sir Palamides prayed the two kings to abide him there the while that he spake with Sir Tristram. And when he came to the port of the pavilions, Sir Palamides said on high, Where art thou, Sir Tristram de Liones? Sir, said Dinadan, that is Palamides. What, Sir Palamides, will ye not come in here among us? Fie on thee traitor, said Sir Palamides, for wit you well, and it were daylight as it is night, I would slay thee with mine own hands. And if ever I may get thee, said Palamides, thou shalt die for this day's deed. Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, ye blame me with wrong, for had ye done as I did ye had won worship. But since ye give me so large warning I shall be well ware of you. Fie on thee traitor, said Palamides, and therewith departed. Then on the morn Sir Tristram, Bleoberis, and Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Gareth, Sir Dinadan, what by water and what by land, they brought La Beale Isoud unto Joyous Gard, and there reposed them a seven night, and made all the mirths and disports that they could devise. And king Arthur and his knights drew unto Camelot, and Sir Palamides rode with the two kings; and ever he made the greatest dole that any man could think. For he was not all only so dolorous for the departing from La Beale Isoud, but he was a part as sorrowful to depart from the fellowship of Sir Tristram, for Sir Tristram was so kind and so gentle that when Sir Palamides remembered him thereof he might never be merry.

CHAP. LXXXI.

How Sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector reported to queen Guenever of the beauty of La Beale Isoud.

So at the seven night's end Sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector departed from Sir Tristram and from the queen, and these two good knights had great gifts, and Sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan abode with Sir Tristram. And when Sir Bleoberis

and Sir Ector were come there as the queen Guenever was lodged in a castle by the sea side, and through the grace of God the queen was recovered from her malady, then she asked the two knights from whence they came. They said they came from Sir Tristram and from La Beale Isoud. How doth Sir Tristram, said the queen, and La Beale Isoud? Truly, said those two knights, he doth as a noble knight should do, and as for the queen Isoud, she is peerless of all ladies; for to speak of her beauty, bounty, and mirth, and of her goodness, we saw never her match as far as we have ridden and gone. Oh mercy, said queen Guenever, so saith all the people that have seen her and spoken with her. Would that I had part of her conditions. And it is misfortuned me of my sickness while that tournament endured; and, as I suppose, I shall never see in all my life such an assembly of knights and ladies as ye have done. Then the knights told her how Sir Palamides wan the degree at the first day with great noblesse; and the second day Sir Tristram wan the degree; and the third day Sir Launcelot wan the degree. Well, said queen Guenever, who did best all these three days? Truly, said these knights, Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram had least dishonour. And wit ye well Sir Palamides did passing well and mightily, but he turned against the party that he came in withal, and that caused him to lose a great part of his worship, for it seemed that Sir Palamides is passing envious. Then shall he never win worship, said queen Guenever, for, and it happeth an envious man once to win worship, he shall be dishonoured twice therefore. And for this cause all men of worship hate an envious man, and will shew him no favour. And he that is courteous, kind, and gentle, hath favour in every place.

CHAP. LXXXII.

How Sir Palamides complained by a well, and how Epinogris came and found him, and of their both sorrows.

Now leave we of this matter, and speak we of Sir Palamides th and lodged him with the two whereof the kings were heavy. the king of Ireland sent a man Sir Palamides, and gave him courser. And the king of gave him great gifts, and fa would have had Sir Palamides abiden with them, but in no would abide, and so he depar rode as adventures would gui till it was nigh noon. And t forest by a well Sir Palamides sa lay a fair wounded knight, and h bound by him, and that knig the greatest dole that ever he he make, for ever he wept and si though he would die. Then S mides rode near him, and salu mildly and said, Fair knight, why so? let me lie down and wail w for doubt ye not I am much more than ye are; for I dare say, sa mides, that my sorrow is an h fold more than yours is, and t let us complain either to other. said the wounded knight, I requ tell me your name, for and thou of the noble knights of the Roun thou shalt never know my name, ever come of me. Fair knight, sa mides, such as I am, be it bette it worse, wit thou well that m is Sir Palamides, son and heir un Astlabor, and Sir Safere and Sir rides are my two brethren, and w well as for myself I was never chri but my two brethren are truly chri Oh noble knight, said that knig is me that I have met with y wit ye well my name is Epinog king's son of Northumberland. sit down, said Epinogris, and either complain to other. Th Palamides began his complaint. shall I tell you, said Palamides, w I endure. I love the fairest qu lady that ever bare life, and wit her name is La Beale Isoud, king wife of Cornwall. That is gre said Sir Epinogris, for to lov Isoud, for one of the best kn the world loveth her, that is S

Liones. That is truth, said , for no man knoweth that :ter than I do, for I have been ;tram's fellowship this month, La Beale Isoud together; and Palamides, unhappy man that ' have I lost the fellowship of ım for ever, and the love of Isoud for ever, and I am never e her more, and Sir Tristram :ither to other mortal enemies. . Epinogris, sith that ye loved Isoud, loved she you ever anything that ye could think Nay, by my knighthood, said ;, I never espied that ever she more than all the world. But lay she gave me the greatest at ever I had, the which shall rom my heart, and yet I well hat rebuke, for I had not done and therefore I have lost the r and of Sir Tristram for ever. ve many times enforced myself ny deeds for La Beale Isoud's I she was the causer of my winning. Alas, said Sir Pala- w have I lost all the worship I wan, for never shall me be- orowess as I had in the fellow- r Tristram.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Palamides brought to Sir Epino- ; lady; and how Sir Palamides r Safere were assailed.

ıy, said Epinogris, your sorrow est to my sorrow, for I rejoiced nd wan her with my hands, and gain, alas that day. Thus first r, said Epinogris: my lady was daughter, and as the earl and ats came from the tournament ep, for her sake I set upon and on his two knights, my e being present, and so by for- e I slew the earl and one of the ınd the other knight fled, and ny lady. And on the morn, as I reposed us at this well side, ıe there to me an errant knight, was Sir Helior le Preuse, an hardy knight; and this Sir Helior challenged me to fight for my lady. And then we went to battle, first upon horse and after on foot. But at the last Sir Helior wounded me so that he left me for dead, and so he took my lady with him. And thus my sorrow is more than yours, for I have rejoiced, and ye rejoiced never. That is truth, said Sir Palamides, but sith I can never recover myself, I shall promise you, if I can meet with Sir Helior I shall get you your lady again, or else he shall beat me. Then Sir Palamides made Sir Epinogris to take his horse, and so they rode to an hermitage, and there Sir Epinogris rested him. And in the mean while Sir Palamides walked privily out, to rest him under the leaves; and there beside he saw a knight come riding with a shield that he had seen Sir Ector de Maris bear aforehand, and there came after him a ten knights, and so these ten knights hoved under the leaves for heat. And anon after there came a knight, with a green shield and therein a white lion, leading a lady upon a palfrey. Then this knight with the green shield, that seemed to be master of the ten knights, he rode fiercely after Sir Helior; for it was he that hurt Sir Epinogris. And when he came nigh Sir Helior he bad him defend his lady. I will defend her, said Helior, unto my power. And so they ran together so mightily that either of these two knights smote other down, horse and all, to the earth, and then they wan up lightly and drew their swords and their shields, and lashed together mightily more than an hour. All this Sir Palamides saw and beheld, but ever at the last the knight with Sir Ector's shield was bigger, and at the last this knight smote Sir Helior down, and then that knight unlaced his helm to have stricken off his head. And then he cried mercy, and prayed him to save his life, and bad him take his lady.

Then Sir Palamides dressed him up, because he wist well that that same lady was Epinogris' lady, and he promised him to help him. Then Sir Palamides

went straight to that lady, and took her by the hand, and asked her whether she knew a knight that hight Epinogris. Alas, she said, that ever he knew me, or I him, for I have for his sake lost my worship, and also his life grieveth me most of all. Not so, lady, said Palamides, come on with me, for here is Epinogris in this hermitage. Ah, well is me, said the lady, and he be on live. Whither wilt thou with that lady? said the knight with Sir Ector's shield. I will do with her what me list, said Palamides. Wit you well, said that knight, thou speakest over large, though thou seemest me to have at advantage, because thou sawest me do battle but late. Thou weenest, sir knight, to have that lady away from me so lightly; nay, think it never not, and thou were as good a knight as is Sir Launcelot, or as is Sir Tristram, or Sir Palamides, but thou shalt win her dearer than ever did I. And so they went unto battle upon foot, and there they gave many sad strokes, and either wounded other passing sore; and thus they fought still more than an hour. Then Sir Palamides had marvel what knight he might be that was so strong and so well breathed during, and thus said Palamides: Knight, I require thee tell me thy name. Wit thou well, said that knight, I dare tell thee my name, so that thou wilt tell me thy name. I will, said Palamides. Truly, said that knight, my name is Safere, son of king Astlabor, and Sir Palamides and Sir Segwarides are my brethren. Now, and wit thou well my name is Sir Palamides. Then Sir Safere kneeled down upon his knees, and prayed him of mercy; and then they unlaced their helms, and either kissed other weeping. And in the mean while Sir Epinogris arose out of his bed, and heard them by the strokes, and so he armed him to help Sir Palamides if need were.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

How Sir Palamides and Sir Safere conducted Sir Epinogris to his castle, and of other adventures.

THEN Sir Palamides took the lady by the hand and brought her to Sir Epinogris, and there was great joy betwixt them, for either swooned for joy. When they were met,—Fair knight and lady, said Sir Safere, it were pity to depart you, Heaven send you joy either of other. Gramercy, gentle knight, said Epinogris, and much more thank be to my lord Sir Palamides, that thus hath through his prowess made me to get my lady. Then Sir Epinogris required Sir Palamides and Sir Safere his brother to ride with them unto his castle, for the safeguard of his person. Sir, said Palamides, we will be ready to conduct you, because that ye are sore wounded. And so was Epinogris and his lady horsed, and his lady behind him, upon a soft ambler.

And then they rode unto his castle, where they had great cheer, and joy as great as ever Sir Palamides and Sir Safere ever had in their life days. So on the morn Sir Safere and Sir Palamides departed, and rode as fortune led them: and so they rode all that day until afternoon. And at the last they heard a great weeping and a great noise down in a manor. Sir, said then Sir Safere, let us wit what noise this is. I will well, said Sir Palamides. And so they rode forth till that they came to a fair gate of a manor, and there sat an old man saying his prayers and beads. Then Sir Palamides and Sir Safere alight, and left their horses, and went within the gates, and there they saw full many goodly men weeping. Fair sirs, said Sir Palamides, wherefore weep ye, and make this sorrow? Anon one of the knights of the castle beheld Sir Palamides and knew him, and then went to his fellows and said, Fair fellows, wit ye well all, we have in this castle the same knight that slew our lord at Lonazep, for I know him well, it is Sir Palamides. Then they went unto harness all that might bear harness, some on horseback and some on foot, to the number of threescore. And when they were ready, they came freshly upon Sir Palamides and upon Sir Safere with a great noise, and said thus, Keep thee,

les, for thou art known, and
ıou must be dead, for thou
ɔur lord, and therefore, wit ye
ill slay thee, therefore defend
n Sir Palamides and Sir Sa-
ıe set his back to other, and
great strokes, and took many
ces; and thus they fought
nty knights and forty gentle-
ɔomen, nigh two hours. But
, though they were loth, Sir
and Sir Safere were taken
ı, and put in a strong prison.
n three days twelve knights
ɔn them, and they found Sir
guilty, and Sir Safere not
heir lord's death. And when
should be delivered, there
dole betwixt Sir Palamides
nd many piteous complaints
ıfere made at his departing,
is no maker can rehearse the
. Fair brother, said Pala-
be thy dolour and thy sor-
if I be ordained to die a
leath, welcome be it; but
wist of this death that I am
to, I should never have been
ɔo Sir Safere departed from
r with the greatest dolour
w that ever made knight.
ıe morn they of the castle
welve knights to ride with
des unto the father of the
ıt that Sir Palamides slew;
ɔy bound his legs under an
belly. And then they rode
ılamides unto a castle by the
at hight Pelownes, and there
les should have justice: thus
ɔrdinance. And so they rode
alamides fast by the castle of
ɔrd; and as they passed by
, there came riding out of
by them one that knew Sir
and when that knight saw
les bounden upon a crooked
e knight asked Sir Palamides
cause he was led so. Ah,
llow and knight, said Pala-
le toward my death, for the
a knight at a tournament of
and if I had not departed
from my lord Sir Tristram, as I ought not to have done, now might I have been sure to have had my life saved. But I pray you, sir knight, recommand me unto my lord Sir Tristram, and unto my lady queen Isoud, and say to them, if ever I trespassed to them I ask them forgiveness. And also, I beseech you, recommand me unto my lord king Arthur, and unto all the fellowship of the Round Table, unto my power. Then that knight wept for pity of Sir Palamides; and therewithal he rode unto Joyous Gard as fast as his horse might run. And lightly that knight descended down off his horse, and went unto Sir Tristram, and there he told him all as ye have heard: and ever the knight wept as he had been mad.

CHAP. LXXXV.

How Sir Tristram made him ready to rescue Sir Palamides, but Sir Launcelot rescued him or he came.

When Sir Tristram heard how Sir Palamides went to his death, he was heavy to hear that, and said, Howbeit that I am wrath with Sir Palamides, yet will not I suffer him to die so shameful a death, for he is a full noble knight. And then anon Sir Tristram was armed, and took his horse, and two squires with him, and rode a great pace toward the castle of Pelownes, where Sir Palamides was judged to death. And these twelve knights that led Sir Palamides passed by a well whereas Sir Launcelot was, which was alight there, and had tied his horse to a tree, and taken off his helm to drink of that well; and when he saw these knights, Sir Launcelot put on his helm, and suffered them to pass by him. And then was he ware of Sir Palamides bounden, and led shamefully to his death. Oh, mercy, said Launcelot, what misadventure is befallen him, that he is thus led toward his death? Forsooth, said Launcelot, it were shame to me to suffer this noble knight so to die and I might help him, therefore I will help him whatsoever come of it, or else I shall die for Sir Palamides' sake.

And then Sir Launcelot mounted upon his horse, and gat his spear in his hand, and rode after the twelve knights that led Sir Palamides. Fair knights, said Sir Launcelot, whither lead ye that knight? it beseemeth him full ill to ride bounden. Then these twelve knights suddenly turned their horses, and said to Sir Launcelot, Sir knight, we counsel thee not to meddle with this knight, for he hath deserved death, and unto death he is judged. That me repenteth, said Launcelot, that I may not ransom him with fairness, for he is over good a knight to die such a shameful death. And therefore, fair knights, said Sir Launcelot, keep you as well as ye can, for I will rescue that knight, or die for it. Then they began to dress their spears, and Sir Launcelot smote the foremost down, horse and man; and so he served three more with one spear, and then that spear brake; and therewithal Sir Launcelot drew his sword, and then he smote on the right hand and on the left hand: then within awhile he left none of those twelve knights but he had laid them to the earth, and the most part of them were sore wounded. And then Sir Launcelot took the best horse that he found, and loosed Sir Palamides, and set him upon that horse, and so they returned again unto Joyous Gard. And then was Sir Palamides ware of Sir Tristram how he came riding; and when Sir Launcelot saw him he knew him right well; but Sir Tristram knew not him, because Sir Launcelot had on his shoulder a golden shield. So Sir Launcelot made him ready to just with Sir Tristram, that Sir Tristram should not wend that he were Sir Launcelot. Then Sir Palamides cried on loud unto Sir Tristram, O my lord, I require you just not with this knight, for this good knight hath saved me from my death. When Sir Tristram heard him say so, he came a soft trotting pace toward them. And then Sir Palamides said, My lord Sir Tristram, much am I beholding unto you of your great goodness that would proffer your noble body to rescue me undeserved, for I have greatly offended you. Notwiths said Sir Palamides, here met this noble knight, that worshipf manly rescued me from twelve and smote them down all, and them sore.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

How Sir Tristram and Sir L with Palamides, came to Joyou and of Palamides and Sir Tris

Fair knight, said Sir Tristra Sir Launcelot, of whence be ye a knight errant, said Sir Launcel rideth to seek many adventures is your name? said Sir Tristra at this time I will not tell you. Sir Launcelot said unto Sir T and to Palamides, Now either are met together, I will depa you. Not so, said Sir Tristram, you of knighthood to ride w unto my castle. Wit you we Sir Launcelot, I may not rid you, for I have many deeds tc other places, that at this time not abide with you. Truly, s Tristram, I require you, as ye b knight to the order of knighthoc you with me this night. Tl Tristram had a grant of Sir La howbeit, though he had not him he would have ridden witl or soon would come after the Sir Launcelot came for none cause into that country but fo Sir Tristram. And when the come within Joyous Gard they and their horses were led into a and then they unarmed them. when Sir Launcelot was unhelm Tristram and Sir Palamides kn Then Sir Tristram took Sir La in arms, and so did La Beale and Sir Palamides kneeled dow his knees and thanked Sir La When Sir Launcelot saw Sir Pa kneel, he lightly took him up, a thus; Wit thou well, Sir Pal I, and any knight in this land ship, ought of very right succ rescue so noble a knight as

and renowned throughout all
lm, endlong and overthwart.
n was there joy among them;
oftener that Sir Palamides saw
e Isoud, the heavier he waxed
ay. Then Sir Launcelot within
four days departed; and with
e Sir Ector de Maris: and Di-
id Sir Palamides were there left
Tristram a two months and
But ever Sir Palamides faded
rned, that all men had marvel
e he faded so away. So upon
n the dawning Sir Palamides
o the forest by himself alone,
e he found a well, and then he
nto the well, and in the water
his own visage, how he was
l and defaded, nothing like
was. What may this mean?
Palamides. And thus he said
lf: Ah, Palamides, Palamides,
thou diffaded, thou that was
e called one of the fairest
of the world? I will no more
s life, for I love that I may
t nor recover. And therewithal
him down by the well. And
began to make a rhyme of
e Isoud and him. And in the
ile Sir Tristram was that same
en into the forest to chase the
greese. But Sir Tristram would
: on hunting never more un-
because of Sir Breuse Sance
nd so as Sir Tristram rode into
st up and down, he heard one
rvellously loud; and that was
mides, that lay by the well.
en Sir Tristram rode softly
for he deemed there was some
rrant that was at the well.
when Sir Tristram came nigh
descended down from his horse,
his horse fast till a tree, and
came near him on foot. And
was ware where lay Sir Pala-
y the well, and sang loud and
And ever the complaints were
noble queen La Beale Isoud,
ch was marvellously and won-
well said, and full dolefully and
r made. And all the whole
song the noble knight Sir Tristram heard from the beginning to the ending, the which grieved and troubled him sore. But then at the last, when Sir Tristram had heard all Sir Palamides' complaints, he was wroth out of measure, and thought for to slay him there as he lay. Then Sir Tristram remembered himself that Sir Palamides was unarmed, and of the noble name that Sir Palamides had, and the noble name that himself had, and then he made a restraint of his anger, and so he went unto Sir Palamides a soft pace, and said, Sir Palamides, I have heard your complaint, and of thy treason that thou hast owed me so long. And wit thou well therefore thou shalt die. And if it were not for shame of knighthood thou shouldest not escape my hands, for now I know well thou hast awaited me with treason. Tell me, said Sir Tristram, how thou wilt acquit thee. Sir, said Palamides, thus I will acquit me:—as for queen La Beale Isoud, ye shall wit well that I love her above all other ladies of the world; and well I wot it shall befal me as for her love as befel to the noble knight Sir Kehidius, that died for the love of La Beale Isoud; and now, Sir Tristram, I will that ye wit that I have loved La Beale Isoud many a day, and she hath been the causer of my worship. And else I had been the most simplest knight in the world. For by her, and because of her, I have won the worship that I have: for when I remembered me of La Beale Isoud, I wan the worship wheresoever I came, for the most part; and yet had I never reward nor bounty of her the days of my life, and yet have I been her knight guerdonless; and therefore Sir Tristram, as for any death I dread not, for I had as lief die as to live. And if I were armed as thou art, I should lightly do battle with thee. Well have ye uttered your treason, said Tristram. I have done to you no treason, said Sir Palamides, for love is free for all men, and though I have loved your lady she is my lady as well as yours: howbeit I have wrong if any wrong be,

for ye rejoice her, and have her love, and so had I never, nor never am like to have. And yet shall I love her to the uttermost days of my life as well as ye.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

How there was a day set between Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides for to fight, and how Sir Tristram was hurt.

THEN, said Sir Tristram, I will fight with you unto the uttermost. I grant, said Palamides, for in a better quarrel keep I never to fight, for, and I die of your hands, of a better knight's hands may I not be slain. And sithen I understand that I shall never rejoice La Beale Isoud, I have as good will to die as to live. Then set ye a day, said Sir Tristram, that we shall do battle. This day fifteen days, said Palamides, will I meet with you here by, in the meadow under Joyous Gard. Fie for shame, said Sir Tristram, will ye set so long day? let us fight to-morn. Not so, said Palamides, for I am meagre, and have been long sick for the love of La Beale Isoud, and therefore I will repose me till I have my strength again. So then Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides promised faithfully to meet at the well that day fifteen days. I am remembered, said Sir Tristram to Palamides, that ye brake me once a promise when that I rescued you from Breuse Sance Pité and nine knights, and then ye promised me to meet at the peron and the grave beside Camelot, whereas at that time ye failed of your promise. Wit you well, said Palamides unto Sir Tristram, I was at that day in prison, so that I might not hold my promise. Truly, said Sir Tristram, and ye had holden your promise, this work had not been here now at this time. Right so departed Sir Tristram and Sir Palamides. And so Sir Palamides took his horse and his harness, and he rode unto king Arthur's court, and there Sir Palamides gat him four knights and four serjeants of arms, and so he returned againward unto Joyous Gard. And in the mean while Sir Tristram chased and hunted at all manner of venery, and about thu afore the battle should be, as S tram chased an hart, there archer shot at the hart, and fortune he smote Sir Tristram thick of the thigh, and the arr Sir Tristram's horse, and hu When Sir Tristram was so hurt; passing heavy, and wit ye well sore. And then he took anothe and rode unto Joyous Gard wit heaviness, more for the promise made with Sir Palamides, as to d with him within three days aft for any hurt of his thigh. Wh there was neither man nor wom could cheer him with anythin they could make to him, neithe La Beale Isoud, for ever he deem Sir Palamides had smitten him he should not be able to do batt him at the day set.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

How Sir Palamides kept his day foughten, but Sir Tristram m come; and other things.

BUT in no wise there was no about Sir Tristram that would that ever Sir Palamides would l Tristram, neither by his own ha by none other consenting. The the fifteenth day was come, lamides came to the well wi knights with him of Arthur's co three serjeants of arms. And intent Sir Palamides brought the with him and the serjeants of a they should bear record of the betwixt Sir Tristram and Sir Pal And the one serjeant brought helm, the other his spear, the t sword. So thus Sir Palamide into the field, and there he abo two hours. And then he sent unto Sir Tristram, and desired come into the field to hold his When the squire was come to Gard, anon as Sir Tristram h his coming, he let command squire should come to his there as he lay in his bed.

am, said Palamides' squire, ill, my lord Palamides abideth e field, and he would wit would do battle or not. Ah, other, said Sir Tristram, wit that I am right heavy for gs, therefore tell Sir Pala- I were well at ease I would re, nor he should have no d for me, and I might either : and for thou shalt say no liar—Sir Tristram shewed igh, that the wound was six p:—And now thou hast seen ell thy lord that this is no atter; and tell him that I than all the gold of king at I were whole: and tell as soon as I am whole I him endlong and overthwart, promise you as I am true d if ever I may meet with ll have battle of me his fill. his the squire departed. And Palamides wist that Tristram he was glad, and said, Now I shall have no shame, for I should have had hard handling d by likely I must needs have orse. For he is the hardest battle that now is living Launcelot. And then de- Palamides where as fortune And within a month Sir Tris- whole of his hurt. And then horse, and rode from country to country, and all strange adventures he achieved wheresoever he rode, and always he enquired for Sir Palamides, but of all that quarter of summer Sir Tristram could never meet with Sir Palamides. But thus as Sir Tristram sought and enquired after Sir Palamides, Sir Tristram achieved many great battles, wherethrough all the noise fell to Sir Tristram, and it ceased of Sir Launcelot; and therefore Sir Launcelot's brethren and his kinsmen would have slain Sir Tristram, because of his fame. But when Sir Launcelot wist how his kinsmen were set, he said to them openly, Wit you well, that and the envy of you all be so hardy to wait upon my lord Sir Tristram with any hurt, shame, or villainy, as I am true knight I shall slay the best of you with mine own hands. Alas, fie for shame, should ye for his noble deeds await upon him to slay him. Jesu defend, said Launcelot, that ever any noble knight as Sir Tristram is should be destroyed with treason. Of this noise and fame sprang into Cornwall, and among them of Liones, whereof they were passing glad and made great joy. And then they of Liones sent letters unto Sir Tristram of recommendation, and many great gifts to maintain Sir Tristram's estate. And ever between Sir Tristram resorted unto Joyous Gard, where as La Beale Isoud was, that loved him as her life.

ere endeth the tenthe book which is of syr Tristram.

re foloweth the Enleuenth book whiche is of sir launcelot.

The Eleventh Book.

CHAP. I.

Launcelot rode on his adven- l how he holpe a dolorous lady pain, and how that he fought ragon.

ve we Sir Tristram de Liones, we of Sir Launcelot du Lake, and Sir Galahad, Sir Launcelot's son, how he was born, and in what manner, as the book of French rehearseth. Afore the time that Sir Galahad was born, there came in an hermit unto king Arthur, upon Whitsunday, as the knights sat at the Table Round. And when the hermit saw the siege perilous,

he asked the king and all the knights why that siege was void. Sir Arthur and all the knights answered, There shall never none sit in that seige but one, but if he be destroyed. Then, said the hermit, wot ye what is he? Nay, said Arthur and all the knights, we wot not who is he that shall sit therein. Then wot I, said the hermit, for he that shall sit there is unborn, and this same year he shall be born that shall sit there in that siege perilous, and he shall win the Sangreal. When this hermit had made this mention he departed from the court of king Arthur. And then after this feast Sir Launcelot rode on his adventures, till on a time by adventure he passed over the bridge of Corbin, and there he saw the fairest tower that ever he saw, and thereunder was a fair town full of people, and all the people, men and women, cried at once, Welcome Sir Launcelot du Lake, the flower of all knighthood, for by thee all we shall be holpen out of danger. What mean ye, said Sir Launcelot, that ye cry so upon me? Ah, fair knight, said they all, here is within this tower a dolorous lady that hath been there in pains many winters: for ever she boileth in scalding water. And but late, said all the people, Sir Gawaine was here, and he might not help her, and so he left her in pain. So may I, said Sir Launcelot, leave her in pain as well as Sir Gawaine did. Nay, said the people, we know well that it is Sir Launcelot that shall deliver her. Well, said Launcelot, then show me what I shall do. Then they brought Sir Launcelot into the tower. And when he came to the chamber there as this lady was, the doors of iron unlocked and unbolted. And so Sir Launcelot went into the chamber that was as hot as any stew, and there Sir Launcelot took the fairest lady by the hand that ever he saw, and she was naked as a needle, and by enchantment queen Morgan le Fay and the queen of Northgalis had put her there in that pains because she was called the fairest lady of that country. And there she had been five years, and never might she be delivered out of her great pains unto the best knight of the world had t by the hand. Then the people her clothes. And when she was Sir Launcelot thought she was t lady of the world, but if it we Guenever. Then this lady sa Launcelot, Sir, if it please yo go with me hereby into a cha we may give loving and thar God? Madam, said Sir La cometh on with me, I will go w So when they came there, a thankings to God, all the peop learned and lay, gave thankin God and him, and said, Sir knig ye have delivered this lady, deliver us from a serpent that is a tomb. Then Sir Launcelot t shield, and said, Bring me thit what I may do unto the ple God and you, I will do. S Sir Launcelot came thither, written upon the tomb letters that said thus: Here shall com bard of king's blood and he s this serpent, and this libbard gender a lion in this foreign the which lion shall pass a knights. So then Sir Launcel the tomb, and there came out a ble and a fiendly dragon spit out of his mouth. Then Sir L drew out his sword and fought dragon long, and at last with g Sir Launcelot slew that dragon. withal came king Pelles, the g noble knight, and saluted Sir L and he him again. Fair kni the king, what is your name? you of your knighthood tell me.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Launcelot came to Pe of the Sangreal, and of Ela Pelles' daughter.

Sir, said Launcelot, wit you name is Sir Launcelot du Lak my name is, said the king, Pel of the foreign country, and co unto Joseph of Arimathie. A either of them made much of o

went into the castle to take
ast. And anon there came in a
a window, and in her mouth
emed a little censer of gold.
:ewithal there was such a savour
: spicery of the world had been
ınd forthwithal there was upon
all manner of meats and drinks
' could think upon. So came in
passing fair and young, and she
:ssel of gold betwixt her hands,
eto the king kneeled devoutly,
his prayers, and so did all that
:re. Then said Sir Launcelot,
ıay this mean? This is, said
, the richest thing that any man
ring. And when this thing
ɔout, the Round Table shall be
And wit thou well, said the
ıis is the holy Sancgreal that
here seen. So the king and Sir
ɔt led their life the most part
day. And fain would king
ıave found the mean to have
Launcelot to love his daughter
ine, and for this intent: the
ıew well that Sir Launcelot
ıave a child by his daughter,
:h should be named Sir Gala-
good knight, by whom all the
country should be brought out
:r, and by him the holy Graale
ɔe achieved. Then came forth
hat hight dame Brisen, and she
o the king, Sir, wit ye well,
ncelot loveth no lady in the
ıt all only queen Guenever, and
: work ye by counsel, and I
ake him to see your daughter
ınd he shall not wit but that he
ıeen Guenever. Oh, fair lady,
risen, said the king, hope ye to
is about? Sir, said she, upon
my life let me deal. For this
'as one of the greatest enchan-
ıat was that time in the world

anon by dame Brisen's wit she
ıe to come to Sir Launcelot
knew well. And this man
him a ring from queen Gue-
e as it had come from her, and
as she was wont for the most
part to wear. And when Sir Launcelot saw that token, wit ye well he was never so fain. Where is my lady? said Sir Launcelot. She is in the castle of Case, said the messager, but five mile hence. Then Sir Launcelot thought to be there the same night. And then this Brisen, by the commandment of king Pelles, let send Elaine to this castle with twenty-five knights unto the castle of Case. Then Sir Launcelot rode unto that castle, and there anon he was received worshipfully with such people to his seeming as were about queen Guenever. So when Sir Launcelot was alight, then dame Brisen brought him a cup full of wine, and as soon as he had drank that wine he was so assotted that he wend that maiden Elaine had been queen Guenever. Wit ye well that Sir Launcelot was glad, and so was that lady Elaine, for well she knew that of them should be born Sir Galahad, that should prove the best knight of the world. And then Sir Launcelot remembered him, and he arose up and went to the window.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Launcelot was displeased when he knew that he had been deceived, and how Galahad was born.

And anon as he had unshut the window, the enchantment was gone, then he knew himself that he had been deceived. Alas, said he, that I have lived so long; now am I shamed. So then he gat his sword in his hand, and said, Thou traitress, who art thou? thou shalt die right here of my hands. Then this fair lady, Elaine, kneeled down afore Sir Launcelot and said, Fair courteous knight, come of king's blood, I require you have mercy upon me; and as thou art renowned the most noble knight of the world, slay me not, for I shall have a son by thee that shall be the most noblest knight of the world. Ah, false traitress, said Sir Launcelot, why hast thou betrayed me? Anon tell me what thou art. Sir, she said, I am Elaine, the daughter of king Pelles.

Well, said Sir Launcelot, I will forgive you this deed. And therewith he took her up in his arms and kissed her, for she was as fair a lady, and thereto young, and as wise as any was that time living. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, I may not blame this to you, but her that made this enchantment upon me, as between you and me; and I may find her, that same lady Brisen, she shall lose her head for witchcraft, for there was never knight deceived so as I am. And so Sir Launcelot armed him, and took his leave mildly at that lady, young Elaine, and so he departed. Then she said, My lord Sir Launcelot, I beseech you see me as soon as you may, for I have obeyed me unto the prophecy that my father told me, and by his commandment to fulfil this prophecy I have given the greatest riches and the fairest flower that ever I had, and that is my maiden love and faith, and therefore, gentle knight, owe me your good will. And so Sir Launcelot arrayed him, and was armed, and took his leave mildly of that young lady Elaine, and so he departed, and rode till he came to the castle of Corbin where her father was. And as soon as her time came she was delivered of a fair child, and they christened him Galahad. And wit ye well that child was well kept and well nourished, and he was named Galahad, because Sir Launcelot was so named at the fontain stone; and after that, the Lady of the lake confirmed him Sir Launcelot du Lake. Then after this lady was delivered and churched there came a knight unto her, his name was Sir Bromel la Pleche, the which was a great lord, and he had loved that lady long, and he evermore desired her to wed her, and so by no means she could put him off, till on a day she said to Sir Bromel, Wit thou well, sir knight, I will not love you, for my love is set upon the best knight of the world. Who is he? said Sir Bromel. Sir, said she, it is Sir Launcelot du Lake that I love, and none other, and therefore woo me no longer. Ye say well, said Sir Bromel, and since ye have told me so much, ye shall have but little joy of Sir Launcelot, for I shall slay him wheresoever I meet him. Sir, said the lady Elaine, do to him no treason. Wit ye well, my lady, said Bromel, and I promise you this twelvemonth I shall keep the bridge of Corbin for Sir Launcelot's sake, that he shall neither come nor go unto you but I shall meet with him.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Bors came to dame Elaine, and saw Galahad, and how he was fed with the Sangreal.

Then, as it befel by fortune and adventure, Sir Bors de Ganis, that was nephew unto Sir Launcelot, came over that bridge, and there Sir Bromel and Sir Bors justed, and Sir Bors smote Sir Bromel such a buffet that he bare him over his horse croup. And then Sir Bromel, as an hardy knight, pulled out his sword and dressed his shield, to do battle with Sir Bors. And then Sir Bors alight and avoided his horse, and there they dashed together many sad strokes, and long thus they fought, till at the last Sir Bromel was laid to the earth, and there Sir Bors began to unlace his helm to slay him. Then Sir Bromel cried Sir Bors' mercy, and yielded him. Upon this covenant thou shalt have thy life, said Sir Bors, so thou go unto Sir Launcelot upon Whitsunday that next cometh, and yield thee unto him as knight recreant. I will do it, said Sir Bromel: and that he sware upon the cross of the sword, and so he let him depart. And Sir Bors rode unto king Pelles that was within Corbin. And when the king and Elaine his daughter wist that Sir Bors was nephew unto Sir Launcelot, they made him great cheer. Then said dame Elaine, We marvel where Sir Launcelot is, for he came never here but once. Marvel not, said Sir Bors, for this half year he hath been in prison with queen Morgan le Fay, king Arthur's sister. Alas, said dame Elaine, that me repenteth. And ever Sir Bors beheld that child in her arms, and ever him seemed it was passing like Sir Launcelot. Truly, said dame Elaine,

rell this is his child. Then Sir
ɔt for joy, and he prayed to God
prove as good a knight as his
as. And so came in a white
d she bare a little censer of gold
outh, and there was all manner
and drinks, and a maiden bare
greal, and she said openly, Wit
Sir Bors that this child is Gala-
t shall sit in the siege perilous,
ieve the Sancgreal, and he shall
better than ever was Sir Laun-
Lake, that is his own father.
n they kneeled down and made
votions, and there was such a
as all the spicery in the world
n there. And when the dove
r flight, the maiden vanished
e Sancgreal as she came. Sir,
Bors unto king Pelles, this
ay be named the castle adven-
for here be many strange ad-
. That is soth, said the king.
ll may this place be called the
rous place, for there come but
hts here that go away with any
; be he never so strong, here he
proved, and but late Sir Gawaine
d knight gat but little worship
For I let you wit, said king
here shall no knight win no
but if he be of worship himself,
ood living, and that loveth God,
adeth God, and else he getteth
ship here, be he never so hardy.
a wonderful thing, said Sir Bors.
e mean in this country I wot not,
have many strange adventures,
efore I will lie in this castle this
Ye shall not do so, said king
ɔy my counsel, for it is hard and
ɔe without a shame. I shall take
nture that will befal me, said Sir
Then I counsel you, said the king,
nfessed clean. As for that, said
, I will be shriven with a good
ɔ Sir Bors was confessed, and for
ıen Sir Bors was a virgin, save
that was the daughter of king
is, and their child hight Helin,
e for her Sir Bors was a pure
And so he was led unto bed in a
e chamber, and many doors were
shut about the chamber. When Sir Bors espied all those doors, he avoided all the people, for he might have nobody with him; but in no wise Sir Bors would unarm him, but so he laid him down upon the bed. And right so he saw come in a light that he might well see a spear great and long, that came straight upon him pointling, and to Sir Bors seemed that the head of the spear burnt like a taper. And anon, or Sir Bors wist, the spear head smote him into the shoulder an hand breadth in deepness, and that wound grieved Sir Bors passing sore. And then he laid him down again for pain, and anon therewithal came a knight armed with his shield on his shoulder, and his sword in his hand, and he bad Sir Bors, Arise sir knight, and fight with me. I am sore hurt, he said, but yet I shall not fail thee. And then Sir Bors start up and dressed his shield, and then they lashed together mightily a great while. And at the last Sir Bors bare him backward, until that he came unto a chamber door, and there that knight went into that chamber, and rested him a great while. And when he had reposed him he came out freshly again, and began new battle with Sir Bors mightily and strongly.

CHAP. V.

How Sir Bors made Sir Pedivere to yield him, and of marvellous adventures that he had, and how he achieved them.

THEN Sir Bors thought he should no more go into that chamber to rest him, and so Sir Bors dressed him betwixt the knight and that chamber door, and there Sir Bors smote him down, and then that knight yielded him. What is your name? said Sir Bors. Sir, said he, my name is Pedivere of the Straight Marches. So Sir Bors made him to swear at Whitsunday next coming to be at the court of king Arthur and yield him there as a prisoner, as an overcome knight by the hands of Sir Bors. So thus departed Sir Pedivere of the Straight Marches. And then Sir Bors laid him down to rest, and then he heard and felt much noise in that

chamber; and then Sir Bors espied that there came in, he wist not whether at the doors or windows, shot of arrows and of quarels, so thick that he marvelled, and many fell upon him and hurt him in the bare places. And then Sir Bors was ware where came in an hideous lion; so Sir Bors dressed him unto the lion, and anon the lion bereft him of his shield, and with his sword Sir Bors smote off the lion's head.

Right so Sir Bors forthwithal saw a dragon in the court, passing horrible, and there seemed letters of gold written in his forehead; and Sir Bors thought that the letters made a signification of king Arthur. Right so there came an horrible libard and an old, and there they fought long, and did great battle together. And at the last the dragon spit out of his mouth as it had been an hundred dragons, and lightly all the small dragons slew the old dragon, and tare him all to pieces. Anon withal there came an old man into the hall, and he sat him down in a fair chair, and there seemed to be two adders about his neck, and then the old man had an harp, and there he sang an old song, how Joseph of Aramathie came into this land. Then when he had sung, the old man bad Sir Bors—Go from thence, for here shall ye have no more adventures, and full worshipfully have ye done, and better shall ye do hereafter. And then Sir Bors seemed that there came the whitest dove with a little golden censer in her mouth; and anon therewithal the tempest ceased and passed that afore was marvellous to hear. So was all that court full of good savours. Then Sir Bors saw four children bearing four fair tapers, and an old man in the midst of the children with a censer in his one hand, and a spear in his other hand, and that spear was called the spear of vengeance.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Bors departed; and how Sir Launcelot was rebuked of queen Guenever, and of his excuse.

Now, said that old man to Sir Bors, go ye to your cousin Sir Launcelot, and tell him of this adventure, the which had been most convenient for him of all earthly knights, but sin is so foul in him he may not achieve such holy deeds; for, had not been his sin, he had passed all the knights that ever were in his days. And tell thou Sir Launcelot, of all worldly adventures he passeth in manhood and prowess all other, but in these spiritual matters he shall have many his better. And then Sir Bors saw four gentlewomen coming by him poorly beseen, and he saw where that they entered into a chamber where was great light, as it were a summer light, and the women kneeled down afore an altar of silver with four pillars, and as it had been a bishop kneeled down afore that table of silver. And as Sir Bors looked over his head, he saw a sword like silver, naked, hoving over his head, and the clearness thereof smote so in his eyes that at that time Sir Bors was blind, and there he heard a voice that said, Go hence, thou Sir Bors, for as yet thou art not worthy for to be in this place. And then he went backward to his bed till on the morn. And on the morn king Pelles made great joy of Sir Bors, and then he departed and rode to Camelot, and there he found Sir Launcelot du Lake, and told him of the adventures he had seen with king Pelles at Corbin. So the noise sprang in king Arthur's court that Sir Launcelot had a child by Elaine, the daughter of king Pelles, wherefore queen Guenever was wroth and gave many rebukes to Sir Launcelot, and called him false knight. And then Sir Launcelot told the queen all, and how he was made to meet her by enchantment, in likeness of the queen. So the queen held Sir Launcelot excused. And, as the book saith, king Arthur had been in France, and had made war upon the mighty king Claudas, and had won much of his lands; and when the king was come again he let cry a great feast, that all lords and ladies of all England should be there, but if it were such as were rebellious against him.

CHAP. VII.

me Elaine, Galahad's mother, came eat estate unto Camelot, and how ancelot behaved him there.

when dame Elaine, the daughter Pelles, heard of this feast, she her father, and required him would give her leave to ride to ist. The king answered, I will go thither; but in any wise, as me and will have my blessing, be well beseen in the richest nd look that ye spare not for no isk, and ye shall have all that edeth. Then, by the advice of risen her maiden, all thing was led unto the purpose, and there er no lady more richlier beseen. rode with twenty knights and lies and gentlewomen to the of an hundred horses. And ie came to Camelot, king Arthur een Guenever said, and all the , that dame Elaine was the fair- the best beseen lady that ever n in that court.

anon as king Arthur wist that s come, he met her and saluted l so did the most part of all the of the Round Table, both Sir n, Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Ga- and many more that I will not e. But when Sir Launcelot saw was so ashamed, and that be- e drew his sword on her, that he ot salute her nor speak to her, Sir Launcelot thought she was est woman that ever he saw in days. But when dame Elaine Launcelot that would not speak she was so heavy that she wend rt would have to-brast. For wit , out of measure she loved him. en Elaine said unto her woman Brisen, The unkindness of Sir ot slayeth me near. Ah peace, said dame Brisen, I will under- it he shall come to you, and ye hold you still. That were me aid dame Elaine, than all the at is above the earth. Let me d dame Brisen. So when Elaine was brought unto queen Guenever, either made other good cheer by countenance, but nothing with hearts. But all men and women spake of the beauty of dame Elaine, and of her great riches. Then the queen commanded that dame Elaine should sleep in a chamber nigh unto her chamber, and all under one roof. And so it was done as the queen had commanded. Then the queen sent for Sir Launcelot, and bid him come to her, or else, I am sure, said the queen, that ye will go to your lady, dame Elaine, by whom ye had Galahad. Ah, madam, said Sir Launcelot, never say ye so; for that was against my will. Then, said the queen, look that ye come to me when I send for you. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, I shall not fail you, but I shall be ready at your commandment. This bargain was soon done and made between them, but dame Brisen knew it by her crafts, and told it to her lady dame Elaine. Alas, said she, how shall I do. Let me deal, said dame Brisen, for I shall bring him by the hand, even to you, and he shall ween that I am queen Guenever's messager. Now well is me, said dame Elaine, for all the world I love not so much as I do Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. VIII.

How dame Brisen by enchantment brought Sir Launcelot to dame Elaine, and how queen Guenever rebuked him.

So then dame Brisen came to Sir Launcelot and said, Sir Launcelot du Lake, my lady queen Guenever awaiteth upon you. O my fair lady, said Sir Launcelot, I am ready to go with you where ye will have me. So Sir Launcelot took his sword in his hand, and then dame Brisen took him by the finger and led him unto her lady, dame Elaine; and then she departed and left them together. Wit ye well the lady was glad, and so was Sir Launcelot, for he wend that it was the queen. Then queen Guenever sent one of her women unto Sir Launcelot; and when she came there, she found Sir Launcelot was

away: so she came to the queen and told her all. Alas, said the queen, where is that false knight become? Then the queen was nigh out of her wit, and then she writhed and weltered as a mad woman; and at the last the queen met with Sir Launcelot, and thus she said, False traitor knight that thou art, look thou never abide in my court, and not so hardy, thou false traitor knight that thou art, that ever thou come in my sight. Alas, said Sir Launcelot: and therewith he took such an heartly sorrow at her words that he fell down to the floor in a swoon. And therewithal queen Guenever departed. And when Sir Launcelot awoke of his swoon he lept out at a bay window into a garden, and there with thorns he was all to-scratched in his visage and his body, and so he ran forth he wist not whither, and was wild wood as ever was man; and so he ran two year, and never man might have grace to know him.

CHAP. IX.

How dame Elaine was commanded by queen Guenever to avoid the court, and how Sir Launcelot became mad.

Now turn we unto queen Guenever and to the fair lady Elaine. When dame Elaine heard the queen so to rebuke Sir Launcelot, and also she saw how he swooned, and how he lept out at a bay window, then she said unto queen Guenever, Madam, ye are greatly to blame for Sir Launcelot, for now ye have lost him; for I saw and heard by his countenance that he is mad for ever. Alas, madam, ye do great sin, and to yourself great dishonour, for ye have a lord of your own, and therefore it is your part to love him; for there is no queen in this world hath such another king as ye have. And if ye were not, I might have the love of my lord Sir Launcelot; and cause I have to love him, for I am his, and by him I have borne a fair son, and his name is Galahad, and he shall be in his time the best knight of the world. Dame Elaine, said the queen, I charge you and command you to avoid my court; and for the love ye owe unto Sir Launcelot discover not his counsel, for and ye do it will be his death. As for that, said dame Elaine, I dare undertake he is marred for ever, and that have ye made, for ye nor I are like to rejoice him; for he made the most piteous groans when he lept out at yonder bay window that ever I heard man make. Alas! said fair Elaine, and alas! said the queen Guenever, for now I wot well we have lost him for ever. So on the morn dame Elaine took her leave to depart, and she would no longer abide. Then king Arthur brought her on her way with more than an hundred knights through a forest. And by the way she told Sir Bors de Ganis all how it betid, and how Sir Launcelot lept out at a bay window araged out of his wit. Alas, said Sir Bors, where is my lord Sir Launcelot become? Sir, said Elaine, I wot never. Alas, said Sir Bors, betwixt you both ye have destroyed that good knight. As for me, said dame Elaine, I said never nor did never thing that should in any wise displease him; but with the rebuke that queen Guenever gave him I saw him swoon to the earth; and when he awoke he took his sword in his hand, and lept out at a window, with the grisliest groan that ever I heard man make. Now farewell, dame Elaine, said Sir Bors, and hold my lord Arthur with a tale as long as ye can, for I will turn again unto queen Guenever and give her a heat: and I require you as ever ye will have my service, make good watch, and espy if ever ye may see my lord Sir Launcelot. Truly, said fair Elaine, I shall do all that I may do, for as fain would I know and wit where he is become as you or any of his kin, or queen Guenever, and cause great enough have I thereto as well as any other. And wit ye well, said fair Elaine to Sir Bors, I would lose my life for him rather than he should be hurt: but alas, I cast me never for to see him; and the chief causer of this is dame Guenever. Madam, said dame Brisen, the which had made the en-

nt before betwixt Sir Launcelot I pray you heartily let Sir Bors nd hie him with all his might, s he may, to seek Sir Launcelot. arn you he is clean out of his id yet he shall be well holpen, by miracle. Then wept dame nd so did Sir Bors de Ganis, they departed; and Sir Bors ight unto queen Guenever, and e saw Sir Bors she wept as she od. Fie on your weeping, said , for ye weep never but when no boot. Alas, said Sir Bors, r Sir Launcelot's kin saw you. have ye lost the best knight of od, and he that was all our nd our succour. And I dare make it good, that all kings, nor heathen, may not find such , for to speak of his nobleness rtesy with his beauty and his ss. Alas, said Sir Bors, what do that be of his blood? Alas, or de Maris. Alas, said Lionel.

CHAP. X.

rrow queen Guenever made for ıncelot, and how he was sought ghts of his kin.

vhen the queen heard them say ell to the earth in a dead swoon. n Sir Bors took her up, and er, and when she was awaked she afore the three knights, and held her hands, and besought them ım, and spare not for no goods he be founden, for I wot he is s mind. And Sir Bors, Sir Ector, Lionel departed from the queen, might not abide no longer for And then the queen sent them enough for their expenses, and took their horses and their and departed. And then they m country to country, in forests wildernesses and in wastes, and y laid watch as well both at nd at all manner of men as they hearken and enquire after him, ıt was a naked man in his shirt, sword in his hand. And thus they rode nigh a quarter of a year, endlong and overthwart, in many places, forests and wildernesses, and ofttimes were evil lodged for his sake, and yet for all their labour and seeking could they never hear word of him. And wit you well these three knights were passing sorry. Then at the last Sir Bors and his fellows met with a knight, that hight Sir Melion de Tartare. Now, fair knight, said Sir Bors, whither be ye away? for they knew either other aforetime. Sir, said Sir Melion, I am in the way toward the court of king Arthur. Then we pray you, said Sir Bors, that ye will tell my lord Arthur, and my lady queen Guenever, and all the fellowship of the Round Table, that we cannot in no wise hear tell where Sir Launcelot is become. Then Sir Melion departed from them, and said that he would tell the king and the queen and all the fellowship of the Round Table, as they had desired him. So when Sir Melion came to the court of king Arthur, he told the king and the queen and all the fellowship of the Round Table, what Sir Bors had said of Sir Launcelot. Then Sir Gawaine, Sir Uwaine, Sir Sagramor le Desirous, Sir Aglovale, and Sir Percivale de Galis, took upon them by the great desire of king Arthur, and in especial by the queen, to seek throughout all England, Wales, and Scotland, to find Sir Launcelot. And with them rode eighteen knights more to bear them fellowship. And wit ye well they lacked no manner of spending: and so were they three and twenty knights.

Now turn we to Sir Launcelot, and speak we of his care and woe and what pain he there endured, for cold, hunger, and thirst he had plenty. And thus as these noble knights rode together, they by one assent departed, and then they rode by two, by three, and by four, and by five; and ever they assigned where they should meet. And so Sir Aglovale and Sir Percivale rode together unto their mother that was a queen in those days. And when she saw her two sons, for joy she wept tenderly. And then she

said, Ah, my dear sons, when your father was slain he left me four sons, of the which now be twain slain; and for the death of my noble son Sir Lamorak shall my heart never be glad. And then she kneeled down upon her knees tofore Aglovale and Sir Percivale, and besought them to abide at home with her. Ah, sweet mother, said Sir Percivale, we may not; for we be come of king's blood of both parties, and therefore, mother, it is our kind to haunt arms and noble deeds. Alas, my sweet sons, then she said, for your sakes I shall lose my liking and joy, and then wind and weather I may not endure, what for the death of your father king Pellinore, that was shamefully slain by the hands of Sir Gawaine and his brother Sir Gaheris, and they slew him not manly, but by treason. Ah, my dear sons, this is a piteous complaint for me of your father's death, considering also the death of Sir Lamorak, that of knighthood had but few fellows. Now, my dear sons, have this in your mind. Then there was but weeping and sobbing in the court when they should depart, and she fell in swooning in midst of the court.

CHAP. XI.

How a servant of Sir Aglovale's was slain, and what vengeance Sir Aglovale and Sir Percivale did therefore.

And when she was awaked she sent a squire after them with spending enough. And so when the squire had overtaken them, they would not suffer him to ride with them, but sent him home again to comfort their mother, praying her meekly of her blessing. And so this squire was benighted, and by misfortune he happened to come unto a castle where dwelled a baron. And so when the squire was come into the castle, the lord asked him from whence he came, and whom he served? My lord, said the squire, I serve a good knight that is called Sir Aglovale. The squire said it to good intent, weening unto him to have been more forborne for Sir Aglovale's sake than if he had said served the queen, Aglovale's Well, my fellow, said the lord castle, for Sir Aglovale's sake th have evil lodging, for Aglovale brother, and therefore thou shal part of payment. And then t commanded his men to have hi and so pulled him out of the ca there they slew him without Right so on the morn came S vale and Sir Percivale riding church-yard, where men and were busy, and beheld the dead and they thought to bury him. is there, said Sir Aglovale, tha hold so fast? A good man sta and said, Fair knight, here squire slain shamefully this nigh was he slain, fair fellow? said Si vale. My fair sir, said the m lord of this castle lodged this sq night, and because he said he w vant unto a good knight that king Arthur, his name is Sir A therefore the lord commanded him, and for this cause is h Gramercy, said Sir Aglovale, shall see his death revenged ligh I am that same knight for wh squire was slain. Then Sir A called unto him Sir Percivale, a him alight lightly, and so the both, and betook their horses t men, and so they went on foot i castle. And all so soon as the within the castle gate Sir Aglov the porter, Go thou unto thy lo tell him that I am Sir Aglov whom this squire was slain this Anon the porter told this to hi whose name was Goodewin: a armed him, and then he came i court and said, Which of you Aglovale? Here I am, said Ag for what cause slewest thou thi my mother's squire? I slew him, Goodewin, because of thee; for th est my brother Sir Gawdelin. As brother, said Sir Aglovale, I av slew him, for he was a false kni a betrayer of ladies and of good k and for the death of my squi

:. I defy thee, said Sir Goode-
hen they lashed together as
as it had been two lions: and
civale he fought with all the
: that would fight. And within
Sir Percivale had slain all that
vithstand him; for Sir Percivale
his strokes that were so rude
ere durst no man abide him.
thin a while Sir Aglovale had
dewin at the earth, and there he
his helm and strake off his
And then they departed and took
orses. And then they let carry
l squire unto a priory, and there
erred him.

CHAP. XII.

Percivale departed secretly from other, and how he loosed a knight with a chain, and of other things.

when this was done, they rode
ny countries, ever enquiring after
ncelot, but never they could hear
And at the last they came to a
hat hight Cardican, and there
civale and Sir Aglovale were
together, and privily about
it Sir Percivale came to Aglo-
quire, and said, Arise and make
dy, for ye and I will ride away
. Sir, said the squire, I would
ride with you where ye would
, but, and my lord your brother
, he will slay me. As for that
ou not, for I shall be thy war-
and so Sir Percivale rode till it
ernoon, and then he came upon
e of stone, and there he found a
hat was bounden with a chain
out the waist unto a pillar of
O fair knight, said that bounden
I require thee loose me of my
What knight are ye? said Sir
le, and for what cause are ye so
1? Sir, I shall tell you, said
ght; I am a knight of the Table
and my name is Sir Persides,
s by adventure I came this way,
e I lodged in this castle at the
foot, and therein dwelleth an
eous lady, and because she prof-
fered me to be her paramour and I refused her, she set her men upon me suddenly or ever I might come to my weapon, and thus they bound me, and here I wot well I shall die, but if some man of worship break my bands. Be ye of good cheer, said Sir Percivale, and because ye are a knight of the Round Table as well as I, I trust to God to break your bands. And therewith Sir Percivale drew out his sword, and strake at the chain with such a might that he cut a-two the chain, and through Sir Persides' hauberk, and hurt him a little. Truly, said Sir Persides, that was a mighty stroke as ever I felt one, for had not the chain been, ye had slain me. And therewithal Sir Persides saw a knight coming out of the castle all that ever he might flying. Beware Sir, said Sir Persides, yonder cometh a man that will have ado with you. Let him come, said Sir Percivale, and so he met with that knight in the midst of the bridge, and Sir Percivale gave him such a buffet that he smote him quite from his horse, and over a part of the bridge, that had not been a little vessel under the bridge that knight had been drowned. And then Sir Percivale took the knight's horse, and made Sir Persides to mount upon him, and so they rode unto the castle, and bad the lady deliver Sir Persides' servants, or else he would slay all that ever he found. And so for fear she delivered them all. Then was Sir Percivale ware of a lady that stood in that tower. Ah, madam, said Sir Percivale, what use and custom is that in a lady to destroy good knights but if they will be your paramour? forsooth this is a shameful custom of a lady. And if I had not a great matter in my hand, I should foredo your evil customs. And so Sir Persides brought Sir Percivale unto his own castle, and there he made him great cheer all that night. And on the morn, when Sir Percivale had heard mass and broken his fast, he bad Sir Persides, Ride unto king Arthur, and tell the king how that ye met with me, and tell my brother Sir Aglovale how I rescued you, and bid

him seek not after me, for I am in the quest to seek Sir Launcelot du Lake. And though he seek me he shall not find me, and tell him I will never see him, nor the court, till I have found Sir Launcelot. Also tell Sir Kay the seneschal, and to Sir Mordred, that I trust to God to be of as great worthiness as either of them. For tell them I shall never forget their mocks and scorns that they did to me that day that I was made knight. And tell them I will never see that court till men speak more worship of me than ever men did of any of them both. And so Sir Persides departed from Sir Percivale, and then he rode unto king Arthur, and told there of Sir Percivale. And when Sir Aglovale heard him speak of his brother Sir Percivale, he said, He departed from me unkindly. Sir, said Sir Persides, on my life he shall prove a noble knight as any now is living. And when he saw Sir Kay and Sir Mordred, Sir Persides said thus: My fair lords both, Sir Percivale greeteth you well both, and he sent you word by me that he trusteth to God or ever he come to the court again to be of as great nobleness as ever were ye both, and more men to speak of his nobleness than ever they did you. It may well be, said Sir Kay and Sir Mordred, but at that time when he was made knight he was full unlikely to prove a good knight. As for that, said king Arthur, he must needs prove a good knight, for his father and his brethren were noble knights.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Percivale met with Sir Ector, and how they fought long, and each had almost slain other.

And now will we turn unto Sir Percivale that rode long, and in a forest he met a knight with a broken shield and a broken helm, and as soon as either saw other readily, they made them ready to just, and so hurtled together with all the might of their horses, and met together so hard that Sir Percivale was smitten to the earth. And then Sir Percivale arose lightly and cast his on his shoulder and drew his swo bad the other knight alight, and battle to the uttermost. Will ye said that knight, and therewith h and put his horse from him, a they came together an easy pa there they lashed together with swords, and sometime they stro sometime they foined, and eith other many great wounds. Th fought near half a day, and neve but right little, and there was them both that had less wounds teen, and they bled so much tha marvel they stood on their feet. knight that fought with Sir P was a proved knight and a wise knight, and Sir Percivale was yo strong, not knowing in fighting other was. Then Sir Percivale first, and said, Sir knight, hold t a while still, for we have fought simple matter and quarrel ove and therefore I require thee tell name, for I was never or thi matched. Truly, said that knig never or this time was there never that wounded me so sore as th done, and yet have I foughten i battles; and now shalt thou wi am a knight of the Table Round, name is Sir Ector de Maris, unto the good knight Sir Launc Lake. Alas, said Sir Percivale, name is Sir Percivale de Gali hath made my quest to seek Si celot; now I am siker that I shal finish my quest, for ye have sl with your hands. It is not so, Ector, for I am slain by your han may not live; therefore I requi said Sir Ector unto Sir Percival ye hereby to a priory, and brin priest that I may receive my S for I may not live. And when y to the court of king Arthur, tell brother Sir Launcelot how t slew me, for then he would b mortal enemy; but ye may say was slain in my quest as I soug Alas, said Sir Percivale, ye s thing that never will be, for I

or bleeding that I may scarcely how should I then take my

CHAP. XIV.

miracle they were both made whole, e coming of the holy vessel of San-l.

N they made both great dole out asure. This will not avail, said ale. And then he kneeled down ade his prayer devoutly unto hty Jesu; for he was one of the nights of the world that at that as, in whom the very faith stood n. Right so there came by, the essel of the Sancgreal with all r of sweetness and savour, but ould not readily see who that at vessel, but Sir Percivale had a ering of the vessel, and of the that bare it, for he was a perfect aiden. And forthwithal they both s whole of hide and limb as ever ere in their life days; then they gave thankings to God with great mildness. O Jesu! said Sir Percivale, what may this mean that we be thus healed, and right now we were at the point of dying? I wot full well, said Sir Ector, what it is. It is an holy vessel that is borne by a maiden, and therein is a part of the holy blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, blessed might He be! but it may not be seen, said Sir Ector, but if it be by a perfect man. Truly, said Sir Percivale, I saw a damsel, as me thought, all in white, with a vessel in both her hands, and forthwithal I was whole. So then they took their horses and their harness, and amended their harness as well as they might that was broken, and so they mounted upon their horses and rode talking together. And there Sir Ector de Maris told Sir Percivale how he had sought his brother Sir Launcelot long, and never could hear witting of him:—In many strange adventures have I been in this quest. And so either told other of their adventures.

Here endeth the enleuenth booke. And here foloweth the twelfth book.

The Twelfth Book.

CHAP. I.

ir Launcelot in his madness took a d and fought with a knight, and lept into a bed.

now leave we of a while of Sir and of Sir Percivale, and speak Sir Launcelot, that suffered and d many sharp showers, that ever ld wood from place to place, and y fruit and such as he might get, ank water two year, and other g had he but little but his shirt s breeches. Thus as Sir Launcendered here and there, he came in meadow where he found a pavilion, and there by upon a tree there hung a white shield, and two swords hung thereby, and two spears leaned there by a tree. And when Sir Launcelot saw the swords, anon he lept to the one sword, and took it in his hand and drew it out. And then he lashed at the shield that all the meadow rang of the dints, that he gave such a noise as ten knights had foughten together. Then came forth a dwarf and lept unto Sir Launcelot, and would have had the sword out of his hand, and then Sir Launcelot took him by the both shoulders, and threw him to the ground upon his neck, that he had almost broken his neck, and therewithal

the dwarf cried, Help. Then came forth a likely knight, and well apparelled in scarlet furred with meniver. And anon as he saw Sir Launcelot, he deemed that he should be out of his wit: and then he said with fair speech, Good man, lay down that sword, for, as me seemeth, thou hast more need of sleep, and of warm clothes, than to wield that sword. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, come not too nigh; for, and thou do, wit thou well I will slay thee. And when the knight of the pavilion saw that, he start backward within the pavilion. And then the dwarf armed him lightly, and so the knight thought by force and might to take the sword from Sir Launcelot, and so he came stepping out, and when Sir Launcelot saw him come so all armed with his sword in his hand, then Sir Launcelot flew to him with such a might, and hit him upon the helm such a buffet that the stroke troubled his brains, and therewith the sword brake in three. And the knight fell to the earth as he had been dead, the blood brasting out of his mouth, the nose, and the ears. And then Sir Launcelot ran into the pavilion, and rushed even into the warm bed: and there was a lady in that bed, and she gat her smock, and ran out of the pavilion. And when she saw her lord lie on the ground like to be dead, then she cried and wept as she had been mad. Then with her noise the knight awaked out of his swoon, and looked up weakly with his eyes, and then he asked her where was that mad man that had given him such a buffet? for such a buffet had I never of man's hand. Sir, said the dwarf, it is not worship to hurt him, for he is a man out of his wit, and doubt ye not he hath been a man of great worship, and for some heartly sorrow that he hath taken he is fallen mad: and me seemeth, said the dwarf, he resembleth much unto Sir Launcelot; for him I saw at the great tournament beside Lonazep. Jesu defend, said that knight, that ever that noble knight Sir Launcelot should be in such a plight. But whatsoever he be, said that knight, harm will I none do him. And this knight's name was Bliant. Then he said unto the dwarf, Go thou fast on horseback unto my brother Sir Selivant, that is at the Castle Blank, and tell him of mine adventure, and bid him bring with him an horse-litter, and then will we bear this knight unto my castle.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Launcelot was carried in a horse-litter, and how Sir Launcelot rescued Sir Bliant his host.

So the dwarf rode fast, and he came again and brought Sir Selivant with him, and six men with an horse-litter. And so they took up the feather-bed with Sir Launcelot, and so carried all away with them unto the Castle Blank, and he never awaked till he was within the castle. And then they bound his hands and his feet, and gave him good meats and good drinks, and brought him again to his strength and his fairness, but in his wit they could not bring him again, nor to know himself. Thus was Sir Launcelot there more than a year and an half, honestly arrayed, and fair fared withal. Then upon a day this lord of that castle, Sir Bliant, took his arms on horseback with a spear to seek adventures. And as he rode in a forest there met him two knights adventurous. The one was Breuse Sance Pité, and his brother, Sir Bertelot, and these two ran both at once upon Sir Bliant, and brake their spears upon his body. And then they drew out swords, and made great battle, and fought long together. But at the last Sir Bliant was sore wounded, and felt himself faint, and then he fled on horseback toward his castle. And they came hurling under the castle where as Sir Launcelot lay in a window, and saw how two knights laid upon Sir Bliant with their swords. And when Sir Launcelot saw that, yet as wood as he was, he was sorry for his lord Sir Bliant. And then Sir Launcelot brake his chains from his legs and off his arms, and in the breaking he hurt his hands sore: and so Sir Launcelot ran out

tern, and there he met with the ghts that chased Sir Bliant, and : pulled down Sir Bertelot with hands from his horse, and there- ıe wrothe his sword out of his ınd so he lept unto Sir Breuse, re him such a buffet upon the at he tumbled backward over e croup. And when Sir Bertelot re his brother have such a fall, ı spear in his hand, and would ı Sir Launcelot through. That Bliant, and strake off the hand ertelot: and then Sir Breuse and telot gat their horses and fled When Sir Selivant came, and at Sir Launcelot had done for her, then he thanked God, and his brother, that ever they did y good. But when Sir Bliant t Sir Launcelot was hurt with aking of his irons, then was he hat ever he bound him. Bind more, said Sir Selivant, for he and gracious. Then they made ıy of Sir Launcelot, and they ım no more. And so he abode ı half year and more. And on n early, Sir Launcelot was ware ame a great boar with many nigh him. But the boar was so e might no hounds tear him, and ıters came after blowing their ıoth on horseback and on foot: ı Sir Launcelot was ware where ht, and tied his horse to a tree, ıed his spear against the tree.

CHAP. III.

Launcelot fought against a boar 'ew him, and how he was hurt, and ht unto an hermitage.

me Sir Launcelot, and found the ounden till a tree, and a spear against a tree, and a sword tied addle bow. And then Sir Laun- ɔt into the saddle, and gat that his hand, and then he rode after r. And then Sir Launcelot was ıere the boar set his back to a ıt by an hermitage. Then Sir ot ran at the boar with his spear. And therewith the boar turned him nimbly, and rove out the lungs and the heart of the horse, so that Launcelot fell to the earth, and or ever Sir Launcelot might get from the horse, the boar rove him on the brawn of the thigh, up to the hough bone. And then Sir Launcelot was wroth, and up he gat upon his feet, and drew his sword, and he smote off the boar's head at one stroke. And therewithal came out the hermit, and saw him have such a wound; then the hermit came to Sir Launcelot and bemoaned him, and would have had him home unto his hermitage. But when Sir Launcelot heard him speak, he was so wroth with his wound that he ran upon the hermit to have slain him, and the hermit ran away, and when Sir Launcelot might not overget him he threw his sword after him, for Sir Launcelot might go no farther for bleeding. Then the hermit turned again, and asked Sir Launcelot how he was hurt. Fellow, said Sir Launcelot, this boar hath bitten me sore. Then come with me, said the hermit, and I shall heal you. Go thy way, said Sir Launcelot, and deal not with me. Then the hermit ıan his way, and there he met with a good knight with many men. Sir, said the hermit, here is fast by my place the goodliest man that ever I saw, and he is sore wounded with a boar, and yet he hath slain the boar. But well I wot, said the hermit, and he be not holpen, that goodly man shall die of that wound, and that were great pity. Then that knight, at the desire of the hermit, gat a cart, and in that cart that knight put the boar and Sir Launcelot, for Sir Launcelot was so feeble that they might right easily deal with him. And so Sir Launcelot was brought unto the hermitage, and there the hermit healed him of his wound. But the hermit might not find Sir Launcelot's sustenance, and so he impaired and waxed feeble, both of his body and of his wit, for the default of his sustenance: he waxed more wooder than he was aforehand. And then, upon a day, Sir Launcelot ran his

way into the forest, and by adventure he came to the city of Corbin where dame Elaine was, that bare Galahad, Sir Launcelot's son. And so when he was entered into the town, he ran through the town to the castle, and then all the young men of that city ran after Sir Launcelot, and there they threw turves at him, and gave him many sad strokes. And ever as Sir Launcelot might overreach any of them he threw them, so that they would never come in his hands no more, for of some he brake the legs and arms, and so fled into the castle, and then came out knights and squires and rescued Sir Launcelot. And when they beheld him, and looked upon his person, they thought they saw never so goodly a man. And when they saw so many wounds upon him, all they deemed that he had been a man of worship. And then they ordained him clothes to his body, and straw underneath him, and a little house. And then every day they would throw him meat, and set him drink, but there was but few would bring meat to his hands.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Launcelot was known by dame Elaine, and was borne into a chamber, and after healed by the Sangreal.

So it befel, that king Pelles had a nephew, his name was Castor, and so he desired of the king to be made knight, and so at the request of this Castor, the king made him knight at the feast of Candlemas. And when Sir Castor was made knight, that same day he gave many gowns. And then Sir Castor sent for the fool, that was Sir Launcelot. And when he was come afore Sir Castor, he gave Sir Launcelot a robe of scarlet and all that belonged unto him. And when Sir Launcelot was so arrayed like a knight, he was the seemliest man in all the court, and none so well made. So when he saw his time he went into the garden, and there Sir Launcelot laid him down by a well and slept. And so at afternoon, dame Elaine and her maidens came into the garden to play them, and as they roamed up and down, one of dame Elaine's maidens espied where lay a goodly man by the well sleeping, and anon shewed him to dame Elaine. Peace, said dame Elaine, and say no word; and then she brought dame Elaine where he lay. And when that she beheld him, anon she fell in remembrance of him, and knew him verily for Sir Launcelot, and therewithal she fell on weeping so heartily that she sank even to the earth. And when she had thus wept a great while, then she arose and called her maidens, and said she was sick. And so she went out of the garden, and she went straight to her father, and there she took him apart by herself, and then she said, Oh father, now have I need of your help, and but if that ye help me, farewell my good days for ever. What is that, daughter? said king Pelles. Sir, she said, thus is it: in your garden I went for to sport, and there by the well I found Sir Launcelot du Lake sleeping. I may not believe that, said king Pelles. Sir, she said, truly he is there, and me seemeth he should be distract out of his wit. Then hold you still, said the king, and let me deal. Then the king called to him such as he most trusted, a four persons, and dame Elaine his daughter. And when they came to the well and beheld Sir Launcelot, anon dame Brisen knew him. Sir, said dame Brisen, we must be wise how we deal with him, for this knight is out of his mind, and if we awake him rudely, what he will do we all know not. But ye shall abide, and I shall throw such an enchantment upon him that he shall not awake within the space of an hour; and so she did. Then within a little while after king Pelles commanded that all people should avoid, that none should be in that way there as the king would come. And so when this was done, these four men and these ladies laid hand on Sir Launcelot. And so they bare him into a tower, and so into a chamber where was the holy vessel of the Sancgreal, and by force Sir Launcelot was laid by that holy vessel, and

me a holy man and uncovered sel, and so by miracle, and by f that holy vessel, Sir Launcelot led and recovered. And when was awaked he groaned and and complained greatly that he sing sore.

CHAP. V.

r Launcelot, after that he was and had his mind, he was ed, and how that Elaine desired le for him.

when Sir Launcelot saw king nd Elaine he waxed ashamed, d thus: Oh Lord Jesu, how here? For God's sake, my lord, vit how I came here? Sir, said laine, into this country ye came nad man clean out of your wit. re have ye been kept as a fool, creature here knew what ye ntil by fortune a maiden of mine me unto you, where as ye lay by a well, and anon, as I verily you, I knew you. And then I father, and so were ye brought is holy vessel, and by the virtue is were ye healed. O, said Sir ot, if this be sooth, how many e that know of my woodness. said Elaine, no more but my nd I and dame Brisen. Now, I u, said Sir Launcelot, keep it in , and let no man know it in the for I am sore ashamed that I een thus miscarried, for I am d out of the country of Logris , that is for to say, the country and. And so Sir Launcelot lay an a fortnight, or ever that he ir for soreness. And then upon e said unto dame Elaine these Lady Elaine, for your sake I d much travel, care, and anguish, th not to rehearse it, ye know Notwithstanding I know well I ne foul to you, when that I drew rd to you, for to have slain you was the cause that ye and dame eceived me. That is truth, said laine. Now will ye for my love, said Sir Launcelot, go unto your father, and get me a place of him wherein I may dwell: for in the court of king Arthur may I never come. Sir, said dame Elaine, I will live and die with you, and only for your sake, and if my life might not avail you, and my death might avail you, wit ye well I would die for your sake. And I will go to my father, and I am sure there is nothing that I can desire of him but I shall have it. And where ye be, my lord Sir Launcelot, doubt ye not but I will be with you with all the service that I may do. So forthwithal she went to her father, and said, Sir, my lord Sir Launcelot desireth to be here by you in some castle of yours. Well, daughter, said the king, sith it is his desire to abide in these marches, he shall be in the castle of Bliant, and there shall ye be with him, and twenty of the fairest ladies that be in this country, and they shall all be of the great blood; and ye shall have ten knights with you. For, daughter, I will that ye wit we all be honoured by the blood of Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot came into the Joyous Isle, and there he named himself Le Chevaler Mal Fet.

THEN went dame Elaine unto Sir Launcelot, and told him all how her father had devised for him and her. Then came the knight Sir Castor, that was nephew unto king Pelles, unto Sir Launcelot, and asked him what was his name? Sir, said Sir Launcelot, my name is Le Chevaler Mal Fet, that is to say, the knight that hath trespassed. Sir, said Sir Castor, it may well be so, but ever me seemeth your name should be Sir Launcelot du Lake, for or now I have seen you. Sir, said Launcelot, ye are not as a gentle knight: I put case my name were Sir Launcelot, and that it list me not to discover my name; what should it grieve you here to keep my counsel, and ye not hurt thereby? But wit thou well, and ever it lie in my

power I shall grieve you, and that I promise you truly. Then Sir Castor kneeled down and besought Sir Launcelot of mercy:—For I shall never utter what ye be while that ye be in these parts. Then Sir Launcelot pardoned him. And then after this king Pelles with ten knights, and dame Elaine and twenty ladies, rode unto the castle of Bliant, that stood in an island enclosed in iron, with a fair water, deep and large. And when they were there Sir Launcelot let call it the Joyous Isle, and there was he called none otherwise but Le Chevaler Mal Fet, the knight that hath trespassed. Then Sir Launcelot let make him a shield all of sable, and a queen crowned in the midst all of silver, and a knight, clean armed, kneeling before her; and every day once, for any mirths that all the ladies might make him, he would once every day look towards the realm of Logris where king Arthur and queen Guenever were. And then would he fall upon a weeping as though his heart should to-brast. So it fell that time that Sir Launcelot heard of a justing fast by his castle, within three leagues. Then he called unto him a dwarf, and he bade him go unto that justing, and, or ever the knights depart, look thou make there a cry in the hearing of all the knights, that there is one knight in the Joyous Isle, that is the castle Bliant, and say that his name is Le Chevaler Mal Fet, that will just against knights that will come; and who that putteth that knight to the worse shall have a fair maid and a jerfalcon.

CHAP. VII.

Of a great tourneying in the Joyous Isle, and how Sir Percivale and Sir Ector came thither, and Sir Percivale fought with him.

So when this cry was made, unto Joyous Isle drew knights to the number of five hundred. And wit ye well there was never seen in Arthur's days one knight that did so much deeds of arms as Sir Launcelot did three days together. For, as the book maketh truly mention, he had the bet the five hundred knights, and t not one slain of them. And Sir Launcelot made them all feast. And in the meanwh Sir Percivale de Galis and Sir Maris under that castle that w the Joyous Isle. And as the that gay castle they would h to that castle, but they might the broad water, and bridge c find none. Then they saw on side a lady with a sperhawl hand, and Sir Percivale called and asked that lady who was castle. Fair knight, she s within this castle is the faires this land, and her name is Elai we have in this castle the faire and the mightiest man that i say, living, and he calleth hi Chevaler Mal Fet. How cam these marches? said Sir I Truly, said the damsel, he c this country like a mad man, v and boys chasing him through of Corbin; and by the holy the Sancgreal he was brought wit again, but he will not c with no knight but by undor noon. And if ye list to come castle, said the lady, ye must the further side of the castle, shall ye find a vessel that will and your horse. Then they and came unto the vessel. Sir Percivale alight, and sai Ector de Maris. Ye shall a here until that I wit what n knight he is. For it were sha us, inasmuch as he is but on and we should both do battle v Do ye as ye list, said Sir I Maris, and here I shall abide that I hear of you. Then p Percivale the water. And when to the castle-gate, he bad th Go thou to the good knight w castle, and tell him here is errant knight to just with h said the porter, ride ye within t and there is a common place fo that lords and ladies may bet

1 as Sir Launcelot had warning, soon ready; and there Sir Per- ınd Sir Launcelot encountered ıch a might, and their spears rude, that both the horses and ghts fell to the earth. Then they their horses and flang out noble and hewed away cantels of ields, and hurtled together with ields like two boars, and either d other passing sore. At the Percivale spake first, when they ughten there more than two Fair knight, said Sir Percivale, e thee tell me thy name, for I er with such a knight. Sir, said ncelot, my name is Le Chevaler t: now tell me your name, said ncelot, I require you gentle Truly, said Sir Percivale, my Sir Percivale de Galis, that was unto the good knight Sir La- de Galis, and king Pellinore father, and Sir Aglovale is my . Alas, said Sir Launcelot, what lone to fight with you that art t of the Table Round, that some- s your fellow!

CHAP. VIII.

ch of them knew other, and of great courtesy. And how his r Sir Ector came unto him, f their joy.

herewithal Sir Launcelot kneeled pon his knees, and threw away eld and his sword from him. Sir Percivale saw him do so, he ed what he meaned. And then e said, Sir knight, whatsoever e, I require thee upon the high f knighthood tell me thy true Then he said, Truly my name Launcelot du Lake, king Ban's Benoy. Alas, said Sir Percivale, ave I done! I was sent by the or to seek you, and so I have you nigh this two year; and is Sir Ector de Maris your bro- ideth me on the other side of the water. Now, said Sir Percivale, you forgive me mine offence that I have here done. It is soon forgiven, said Sir Launcelot. Then Sir Percivale sent for Sir Ector de Maris. And when Sir Launcelot had a sight of him, he ran unto him and took him in his arms, and then Sir Ector kneeled down and either wept upon other, that all had pity to behold them. Then came dame Elaine, and she there made them great cheer as might lie in her power; and there she told Sir Ector and Sir Percivale how and in what manner Sir Launcelot came into that country, and how he was healed. And there it was known how long Sir Launcelot was with Sir Bliant and with Sir Selivant, and how he first met with them, and how he departed from them because of a boar; and how the hermit healed Sir Launcelot of his great wound, and how that he came to Corbin.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Bors and Sir Lionel came to king Brandegore, and how Sir Bors took his son Helin le Blank, and of Sir Launcelot.

Now leave we Sir Launcelot in the Joyous Isle with the lady dame Elaine, and Sir Percivale and Sir Ector playing with them, and turn we to Sir Bors de Ganis and Sir Lionel, that had sought Sir Launcelot nigh by the space of two years, and never could they hear of him. And as they thus rode by adventure, they came to the house of Brandegore, and there Sir Bors was well known, for he had a child of the king's daughter fifteen years before, and his name was Helin le Blank. And when Sir Bors saw that child it liked him passing well. And so those knights had good cheer of the king Brandegore. And on the morn Sir Bors came afore king Brandegore, and said, Here is my son Helin le Blank, that as it is said he is my son; and since it is so, I will that ye wit I will have him with me unto the court of king Arthur. Sir, said the king, ye may well take him with you, but he is over tender of age. As for that, said Sir Bors, I will have

him with me, and bring him to the house of most worship of the world. So when Sir Bors should depart, there was made great sorrow for the departing of Helin le Blank, and great weeping was there made. But Sir Bors and Sir Lionel departed. And within a while they came to Camelot, where was king Arthur. And when king Arthur understood that Helin le Blank was Sir Bors' son, and nephew unto king Brandegore, then king Arthur let him make knight of the Round Table; and so he proved a good knight and an adventurous.

Now will we turn to our matter of Sir Launcelot. It befel upon a day Sir Ector and Sir Percivale came to Sir Launcelot and asked him what he would do, and whether he would go with them unto king Arthur or not? Nay, said Sir Launcelot, that may not be by no mean; for I was so entreated at the court that I cast me never to come there more. Sir, said Sir Ector, I am your brother, and ye are the man in the world that I love most, and if I understood that it were your disworship, ye may understand I would never counsel you thereto; but king Arthur and all his knights, and in especial queen Guenever, made such dole and sorrow that it was marvel to hear and see. And ye must remember the great worship and renown that ye be of, how that ye have been more spoken of than any other knight that is now living; for there is none that beareth the name now but ye and Sir Tristram; therefore, brother, said Sir Ector, make you ready to ride to the court with us, and I dare say there was never knight better welcome to the court than ye: and I wot well, and can make it good, said Sir Ector, it hath cost my lady the queen twenty thousand pound the seeking of you. Well, brother, said Sir Launcelot, I will do after your counsel, and ride with you. So then they took their horses, and made them ready, and took their leave at king Pelles and at dame Elaine. And when Sir Launcelot should depart, dame Elaine made great sorrow. I Sir Launcelot, said dame Elaine same feast of Pentecost shall y and mine, Galahad, be made for he is fully now fifteen win Do as ye list, said Sir Launcel give him grace to prove a good As for that, said dame Elaine, not he shall prove the best ma kin, except one. Then shall l man good enough, said Sir Laun

CHAP. X.

How Sir Launcelot with Sir Perci Sir Ector came to the court, an great joy of him.

Then they departed, and wit days' journey they came to C that is called in English, Win And when Sir Launcelot wa among them, the king and knights made great joy of hin there Sir Percivale de Galis Ector de Maris began and t whole adventures, that Sir L had been out of his mind the his absence, how he called hin Chevaler Mal Fet, the knight t trespassed, and in three days Si celot smote down five hundred And ever, as Sir Ector and Sir F told these tales of Sir Launcelo Guenever wept as she should ha Then the queen made great cheer said king Arthur, I marvel f cause ye Sir Launcelot went out mind? I and many others deer for the love of fair Elaine, the c of king Pelles, by whom ye ar that ye have a child, and his Galahad; and men say he s marvels. My lord, said Sir La if I did any folly, I have that I And therewithal the king sp more; but all Sir Launcelot's k for whom he went out of hi And then there were great feas and great joy. And many gre and ladies, when they heard t Launcelot was come to the cour they made great joy.

CHAP. XI.

Beale Isoud counselled Sir Tristo go unto the court to the great f Pentecost.

will we leave of this matter, and e of Sir Tristram and of Sir Pathat was the Saracen unchris-When Sir Tristram was come ito Joyous Gard from his adven-l this while that Sir Launcelot is missed two year and more, ram bare the renown through all n of Logris, and many strange es befel him, and full well and and worshipfully he brought an end. So when he was come a Beale Isoud told him of the ist that should be at Pentecost owing; and there she told him Launcelot had been missed two d all that while he had been out ind, and how he was holpen by y vessel the Sancgreal. Alas, Tristram, that caused some dewixt him and queen Guenever. dame Isoud, I know it all, for Guenever sent me a letter, in ch she wrote me all how it to require you to seek him; w, blessed be God, said La soud, he is whole and sound, ie again to the court. Thereof ad, said Sir Tristram, and now and I make us ready, for both I will be at the feast. Sir, said ind it please you I will not be or through me ye be marked of ood knights, and that causeth have much more labour for my in needeth you. Then will I not e, said Sir Tristram, but if ye . Not so, said La Beale Isoud, i shall I be spoken of shame all queens and ladies of estate, iat are called one of the noblest of the world, and ye a knight of nd Table, how may ye be missed east? What shall be said among its?—See how Sir Tristram hunthawketh, and cowereth within with his lady, and forsaketh rship. Alas, shall some say, it is pity that ever he was made knight, or that ever he should have the love of a lady. Also what shall queens and ladies say of me?—It is pity that I have my life, that I will hold so noble a knight as ye are from his worship. Truly, said Sir Tristram unto La Beale Isoud, it is passing well said of you, and nobly counselled, and now I well understand that ye love me; and like as ye have counselled me, I will do a part thereafter. But there shall no man nor child ride with me, but myself. And so will I ride on Tuesday next coming, and no more harness of war but my spear and my sword.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Tristram departed unarmed, and met with Sir Palamides, and how they smote each other, and how Sir Palamides forbare him.

And so when the day came, Sir Tristram took his leave at La Beale Isoud; and she sent with him four knights, and within half a mile he sent them again: and within a mile after Sir Tristram saw afore him where Sir Palamides had stricken down a knight, and almost wounded him to the death. Then Sir Tristram repented him that he was not armed, and then he hoved still. With that Sir Palamides knew Sir Tristram, and cried on high, Sir Tristram, now be we met, for or we depart we will redress our old sores! As for that, said Sir Tristram, there was never yet Christian man that might make his boast that ever I fled from him; and wit ye well Sir Palamides, thou that art a Saracen shall never make thy boast that Sir Tristram de Liones shall flee from thee. And therewith Sir Tristram made his horse to run, and with all his might he came straight upon Sir Palamides, and brast his spear upon him in an hundred pieces. And forthwithal Sir Tristram drew his sword. And then he turned his horse and struck at Palamides six great strokes upon his helm, and then Sir Palamides stood still and beheld Sir Tristram, and marvelled of his woodness and of his folly. And then Sir Palamides

said to himself, And Sir Tristram were armed it were hard to cease him of this battle, and if I turn again and slay him I am shamed wheresoever that I go. Then Sir Tristram spake, and said, Thou coward knight, what castest thou to do? why wilt thou not do battle with me, for have thou no doubt I shall endure all thy malice. Ah, Sir Tristram, said Sir Palamides, full well thou wotest I may not fight with thee for shame, for thou art here naked, and I am armed, and if I slay thee dishonour shall be mine. And well thou wotest, said Sir Palamides to Sir Tristram, I know thy strength and thy hardiness to endure against a good knight. That is truth, said Sir Tristram, I understand thy valiantness well. Ye say well, said Sir Palamides, now I require you tell me a question that I shall say to you. Tell me what it is, said Sir Tristram, and I shall answer you the truth. I put the case, said Sir Palamides, that ye were armed at all rights as well as I am, and I naked as ye be, what would ye do to me now by your true knighthood? Ah, said Sir Tristram, now I understand thee well, Sir Palamides, for now must I say my own judgment, and, as God me bless, that I shall say shall not be said for no fear that I have of thee. But this is all; wit, Sir Palamides, as at this time thou shouldest depart from me, for I would not have ado with thee. No more will I, said Sir Palamides, and therefore ride forth on thy way. As for that I may choose, said Sir Tristram, either to ride or to abide. But Sir Palamides, said Sir Tristram, I marvel of one thing, that thou that art so good a knight, that thou will not be christened, and thy brother Sir Safere hath been christened many a day.

CHAP. XIII.

How that Sir Tristram gat him harness of a knight which was hurt, and how he overthrew Sir Palamides.

As for that, said Sir Palamides, I may not yet be christened, for one avow that I have made many years agone; howbeit in my heart I believe in Jesus Christ and his mild mother Mary; but I have but one battle to do, and when that is done I will be baptised with a good will. By my head, said Sir Tristram, as for one battle thou shalt not seek it no longer. For God defend, said Sir Tristram, that through my default thou shouldest longer live thus a Saracen. For yonder is a knight that ye, Sir Palamides, have hurt and smitten down; now help me that I were armed in his armour, and I shall soon fulfil thine avows. As ye will, said Sir Palamides, so it shall be. So they rode unto that knight that sat upon a bank, and then Sir Tristram saluted him, and he weakly saluted him again. Sir knight, said Sir Tristram, I require you tell me your right name. Sir, he said, my name is Sir Galleron of Galway, and knight of the Table Round. Truly, said Sir Tristram, I am right heavy of your hurts: but this is all, I must pray you to lend me all your whole armour, for ye see I am unarmed, and I must do battle with this knight. Sir, said the hurt knight, ye shall have it with a good will; but ye must beware, for I warn you that knight is wight. Sir, said Galleron, I pray you tell me your name, and what is that knight's name that hath beaten me. Sir, as for my name, it is Sir Tristram de Lionés, and as for the knight's name that hath hurt you, it is Sir Palamides, brother unto the good knight Sir Safere, and yet is Sir Palamides unchristened. Alas, said Sir Galleron, that is pity that so good a knight and so noble a man of arms should be unchristened. Truly, said Sir Tristram, either he shall slay me, or I him, but that he shall be christened or ever we depart in sunder. My lord Sir Tristram, said Sir Galleron, your renown and worship is well known through many realms, and God save you this day from shenship and shame. Then Sir Tristram unarmed Galleron, the which was a noble knight and had done many deeds of arms, and he was a large knight of flesh and bone. And when he was unarmed he stood upon his feet, for he

ised in the back with a spear; s Sir Galleron might, he armed tram. And then Sir Tristram l upon his own horse, and in his gat Sir Galleron's spear. And hal Sir Palamides was ready, hey came hurtling together, and ıote other in the midst of their and therewithal Sir Palamides' ake, and Sir Tristram smote e horse; and then Sir Palamides, as he might, avoided his horse, ssed his shield, and pulled out d. That saw Sir Tristram, and h he alight, and tied his horse to

CHAP. XIV.

r Tristram and Sir Palamides long together, and after accorded; ow Sir Tristram made him to be ned.

hen they came together as two ırs, lashing together, tracing and ıg as noble men that oft had ll proved in battle; but ever mides dread the might of Sir ı, and therefore he suffered him the him. Thus they fought ıan two hours; and often Sir ı smote such strokes at Sir es that he made him to kneel; Palamides brake and cut away ieces of Sir Tristram's shield, n Sir Palamides wounded Sir ı, for he was a well fighting Then Sir Tristram was wood ıt of measure, and rashed upon mides with such a might that mides fell groveling to the earth, ewithal he leapt up lightly upon and then Sir Tristram wounded mides sore through the shoulder. er Sir Tristram fought still in d, and Sir Palamides failed not, e him many sad strokes. And last Sir Tristram doubled his and by fortune Sir Tristram ir Palamides' sword out of his ıd if Sir Palamides had stooped word, he had been slain. Then es stood still and beheld his with a sorrowful heart. How now, said Sir Tristram unto Palamides, now have I thee at advantage as thou hadst me this day, but it shall never be said in no court, nor among good knights, that Sir Tristram shall slay any knight that is weaponless, and therefore take thou thy sword, and let us make an end of this battle. As for to do this battle, said Palamides, I dare right well end it; but I have no great lust to fight no more, and for this cause, said Palamides, mine offence to you is not so great but that we may be friends. All that I have offended is and was for the love of La Beale Isoud. And as for her, I dare say she is peerless above all other ladies, and also I proffered her never no dishonour; and by her I have gotten the most part of my worship, and sithen I offended never as to her own person. And as for the offence that I have done, it was against your own person, and for that offence ye have given me this day many sad strokes, and some I have given you again; and now I dare say I felt never man of your might, nor so well breathed, but if it were Sir Launcelot du Lake. Wherefore I require you, my lord, forgive me all that I have offended unto you. And this same day have me to the next church, and first let me be clean confessed, and after see you now that I be truly baptized. And then will we all ride together unto the court of Arthur, that we be there at the high feast. Now take your horse, said Sir Tristram, and as ye say, so it shall be; and all your evil will God forgive it you, and I do. And here, within this mile, is the suffragan of Carlisle, that shall give you the sacrament of baptism. Then they took their horses, and Sir Galleron rode with them. And when they came to the suffragan Sir Tristram told him their desire. Then the suffragan let fill a great vessel with water. And when he had hallowed it, he then confessed clean Sir Palamides, and Sir Tristram and Sir Galleron were his godfathers. And then soon after they departed, riding towards Camelot, where king Arthur and queen Guenever was, and for the most part all the knights of

the Round Table. And so the king and all the court were glad that Sir Palamides was christened. And at the same feast in came Galahad and sat in the Siege Perilous.

And so therewithal departed severed all the knights of the Table. And Sir Tristram again unto Joyous Gard, and S mides followed the questing bea

Here endeth the second book of syr Tristram that was draw of Frensshe in to Englysshe.

But here is no rehersal of the thyrd book. And here folow noble tale of the Sancgreal that called is the hooly vessel a sygnefycacyon of the blessid blood of our lord Jhesu Cryste, mote it be, the which was brought in to this land by Joseph mathye, therefor on al synful souls blessid lord haue thou mer

Explicit liber xii. Et incipit Decimustercius.

The Thirteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

How at the Vigil of the feast of Pentecost entered into the hall, before king Arthur, a damsel, and desired Sir Launcelot for to come and dub a knight, and how he went with her.

At the vigil of Pentecost, when all the fellowship of the Round Table were comen unto Camelot, and there heard their service, and the tables were set ready to the meat, right so entered into the hall a full fair gentlewoman on horseback, that had ridden full fast, for her horse was all besweat. Then she there alight, and came before the king, and saluted him; and then he said, Damsel, God thee bless! Sir, said she, I pray you say me where Sir Launcelot is? Yonder ye may see him, said the king. Then she went unto Launcelot and said, Sir Launcelot, I salute you on king Pelles' behalf, and I require you come on with me hereby into a forest. Then Sir Launcelot asked her with whom she dwelled? I dwell, said she, with king Pelles. What will ye with me? said Sir Launcelot. Ye shall know, said she, when ye come thither. Well, said he, I will gladly go with you. Launcelot bade his squire sad horse and bring his arms; an haste he did his commandment. came the queen unto Launcelot a Will ye leave us at this higl Madam, said the gentlewoman, well he shall be with you to-mo dinner-time. If I wist, said the that he should not be with us morn, he should not go with my good will.

Right so departed Sir Launce the gentlewoman, and rode ur he came into a forest, and into valley, where they saw an al nuns; and there was a squire rea opened the gates; and so they and descended off their hors there came a fair fellowship al Launcelot and welcomed him, a passing glad of his coming. A they led him into the Abbess's cl and unarmed him, and right so ware upon a bed lying two cousins, Sir Bors and Sir Lio then he waked them, and wh saw him they made great joy. Sir Bors unto Sir Launcelot, wha

fore hath brought thee hither, for we wend to-morrow to have found you at Camelot? Truly, said Sir Launcelot, a gentlewoman brought me hither, but I know not the cause. In the meanwhile, as they thus stood talking together, there came twelve nuns which brought with them Galahad, the which was passing fair and well made, that men might not find his match; and all those ladies kept. Sir, said the ladies, we bring you here this child, the which we have nourished, and we pray you to make him a knight; for of a more worthier man's hand may he not receive the order of knighthood. Sir Launcelot beheld that young squire, and saw him seemly and demure as a dove, with all manner of good features, that he wend of his age never to have seen so fair a man of form. Then said Sir Launcelot, Cometh this desire of himself? He and all they said, Yea. Then shall he, said Sir Launcelot, receive the high order of knighthood as to-morrow at the reverence of the high feast. That night Sir Launcelot had passing good cheer, and on the morn at the hour of prime, at Galahad's desire, he made him knight, and said, God make him a good man, For beauty faileth you not as any that liveth.

CHAP. II.

How the letters were found written in the siege perilous, and of the marvellous adventure of the sword in a stone.

Now, fair sir, said Sir Launcelot, will ye come with me unto the court of king Arthur? Nay, said he, I will not go with you as at this time. Then he departed from them and took his two cousins with him, and so they came unto Camelot by the hour of undorne on Whitsunday. By that time the king and the queen were gone to the minster to hear their service: then the king and the queen were passing glad of Sir Bors and Sir Lionel, and so was all the fellowship. So when the king and all the knights were come from service, the barons espied in the sieges of the Round Table, all about written with gold letters. Here ought to sit he, and he ought to sit here. And thus they went so long until that they came to the siege perilous, where they found letters newly written of gold, that said: Four hundred winters and fifty-four accomplished after the passion of our Lord Jesu Christ ought this siege to be fulfilled. Then all they said, This is a marvellous thing, and an adventurous. In the name of God, said Sir Launcelot; and then he accounted the term of the writing, from the birth of our Lord unto that day. It seemeth me, said Sir Launcelot, this siege ought to be fulfilled this same day, for this is the feast of Pentecost after the four hundred and four and fifty year; and if it would please all parties, I would none of these letters were seen this day, till he be come that ought to achieve this adventure. Then made they to ordain a cloth of silk for to cover these letters in the siege perilous. Then the king bad haste unto dinner. Sir, said Sir Kay the steward, if ye go now unto your meat, ye shall break your old custom of your court. For ye have not used on this day to sit at your meat or that ye have seen some adventure. Ye say sooth, said the king, but I had so great joy of Sir Launcelot and of his cousins, which be come to the court whole and sound, that I bethought me not of my old custom. So as they stood speaking, in came a squire, and said unto the king, Sir, I bring unto you marvellous tidings. What be they? said the king. Sir, there is here beneath at the river a great stone, which I saw fleet above the water, and therein saw I sticking a sword. The king said, I will see that marvel. So all the knights went with him, and when they came unto the river, they found there a stone fleeting, as it were of red marble, and therein stack a fair and a rich sword, and in the pomell thereof were precious stones, wrought with subtil letters of gold. Then the barons read the letters, which said in this wise: Never

shall man take me hence but only he by whose side I ought to hang, and he shall be the best knight of the world. When the king had seen these letters, he said unto Sir Launcelot, Fair sir, this sword ought to be yours, for I am sure ye be the best knight of the world. Then Sir Launcelot answered full soberly: Certes, sir, it is not my sword: also, sir, wit ye well I have no hardiness to set my hand to, for it longed not to hang by my side. Also who that assayeth to take that sword, and faileth of it, he shall receive a wound by that sword, that he shall not be whole long after. And I will that ye wit that this same day will the adventures of the Sancgreal, that is called the holy vessel, begin.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Gawaine assayed to draw out the sword, and how an old man brought in Galahad.

Now, fair nephew, said the king unto Sir Gawaine, assay ye for my love. Sir, he said, save your good grace, I shall not do that. Sir, said the king, assay to take the sword, and at my commandment. Sir, said Gawaine, your commandment I will obey. And therewith he took up the sword by the handles, but he might not stir it. I thank you, said the king to Sir Gawaine. My lord Sir Gawaine, said Sir Launcelot, now wit ye well, this sword shall touch you so sore that ye shall will ye had never set your hand thereto, for the best castle of this realm. Sir, he said, I might not withsay mine uncle's will and commandment. But when the king heard this, he repented it much, and said unto Sir Percivale that he should assay for his love. And he said, Gladly, for to bear Sir Gawaine fellowship. And therewith he set his hand on the sword, and drew it strongly, but he might not move it. Then were there more that durst be so hardy to set their hands thereto. Now may ye go to your dinner, said Sir Kay unto the king, for a marvellous adventure have ye seen. So the king and all went unto the court, and every knight knew his ow and set him therein, and you that were knights served th when they were served, and a fulfilled, save only the siege anon there befell a marvellou ture, that all the doors and the of the place shut by themse for then the hall was not grea ened, and therewith they abash one and other. Then king Arth first, and said, Fair fellows an we have seen this day marvels night I suppose we shall see marvels. In the mean while ca good old man, and an ancient, all in white, and there was no knew from whence he came. A him he brought a young knig on foot, in red arms, without s shield, save a scabbard hanging side. And these words he said be with you, fair lords. Then man said unto Arthur, Sir, here a young knight the whi king's lineage, and of the kin Joseph of Arimathie, whereby t vels of this court and of strang shall be fully accomplished.

CHAP. IV.

How the old man brought Ga the siege perilous and set hin and how all the knights marve

The king was right glad of hi and said unto the good man, S right welcome, and the young with you. Then the old man t young man to unarm him; and in a coat of red sendel, and mantle upon his shoulder th furred with ermine, and put th him. And the old knight said young knight, Sir, follow m anon he led him unto the sie ous, where beside sat Sir La and the good man lift up th and found there letters that sa This is the siege of Galahad t prince. Sir, said the old knigh well that place is yours. And set him down surely in that sieg

aid to the old man, Sir, ye may
our way, for well have ye done
vere commanded to do. And
id me unto my grandsire king
nd unto my lord Petchere,
them on my behalf, I shall
l see them as soon as ever I
the good man departed, and
him twenty noble squires, and
ieir horses and went their way.
l the knights of the Table
iarvelled them greatly of Sir
that he durst sit there in that
lous, and was so tender of age,
not from whence he came, but
y God, and said, This is he by
e Sancgreal shall be achieved,
sat never none but he, but he
chieved. Then Sir Launcelot
is son, and had great joy of
en Sir Bors told his fellows,
n of my life this young knight
ie unto great worship. This
; great in all the court, so that
to the queen. Then she had
vhat knight it might be that
enture him to sit in the siege
Many said unto the queen, he
l much unto Sir Launcelot.
vell suppose, said the queen,
; son of Sir Launcelot and king
ughter, and his name is Gala-
would fain see him, said the
ir he must needs be a noble
so is his father; I report
all the Table Round. So
e meat was done, that the
all were risen, the king went
siege perilous, and lift up the
l found there the name of Ga-
d then he shewed it unto Sir
, and said, Fair nephew, now
among us Sir Galahad the
ght, that shall worship us all,
n pain of my life he shall
he Sancgreal, right so as Sir
t hath done us to understand.
ne king Arthur unto Galahad,
, Sir, ye be welcome, for ye
ve many good knights to the
the Sancgreal, and ye shall
hat never knights might bring
l. Then the king took him by
the hand, and went down from the palace to shew Galahad the adventures of the stone.

CHAP. V.

How king Arthur shewed the stone, boving on the water, to Galahad, and how he drew out the sword.

THE queen heard thereof, and came after with many ladies, and shewed them the stone where it hoved on the water. Sir, said the king unto Sir Galahad, here is a great marvel as ever I saw, and right good knights have assayed and failed. Sir, said Galahad, that is no marvel, for this adventure is not theirs, but mine, and for the surety of this sword I brought none with me; for here by my side hangeth the scabbard. And anon he laid his hand on the sword, and lightly drew it out of the stone, and put it in the sheath and said unto the king, Now it goeth better than it did aforchand. Sir, said the king, a shield God shall send you. Now have I, said Sir Galahad, that sword that sometime was the good knight's Balin le Savage, and he was a passing good man of his hands. And with this sword he slew his brother Balan, and that was great pity, for he was a good knight, and either slew other through a dolorous stroke that Balan gave unto my grandfather king Pelles, the which is not yet whole, nor not shall be till I heal him. Therewith the king and all espied where came riding down the river a lady on a white palfrey toward them. Then she saluted the king and the queen, and asked if that Sir Launcelot was there? And then he answered himself, I am here, fair lady. Then she said, all with weeping, How your great doing is changed sith this day in the morn. Damsel, why say ye so? said Launcelot. I say you sooth, said the damsel, for ye were this day the best knight of the world, but who should say so now should be a liar, for there is now one better than ye. And well it is proved by the adventures of the sword whereto ye durst not set your hand, and that is

the change and leaving of your name; wherefore I make unto you a remembrance, that ye shall not ween from henceforth that ye be the best knight of the world. As touching unto that, said Launcelot, I know well I was never the best. Yes, said the damsel, that were ye, and are yet of any sinful man of the world. And sir king, Nacien the hermit sendeth thee word, that thee shall befall the greatest worship that ever befell king in Britain; and I say you wherefore, for this day the Sancgreal shall appear in thy house, and feed thee and all thy fellowship of the Round Table. So she departed and went that same way that she came.

CHAP. VI.

How king Arthur had all the knights together, for to just in the meadow beside Camelot or they departed.

Now, said the king, I am sure at this quest of the Sancgreal shall all ye of the Table Round depart, and never shall I see you again whole together, therefore I will see you all whole together in the meadow of Camelot, to just and to tourney, that after your death men may speak of it, that such good knights were wholly together such a day. As unto that counsel, and at the king's request, they accorded all, and took on their harness that longed unto justing. But all this moving of the king was for this intent, for to see Galahad proved, for the king deemed he should not lightly come again unto the court after his departing. So were they assembled in the meadow, both more and less. Then Sir Galahad, by the prayer of the king and the queen, did upon him a noble jesserance, and also he did on his helm, but shield would he take none for no prayer of the king. And then Sir Gawaine and other knights prayed him to take a spear. Right so he did; and the queen was in a tower with all her ladies for to behold that tournament. Then Sir Galahad dressed him in the midst of the meadow, and began to break spears marvellously, that all men had wonder of him, for he there surmou other knights, for within a whil thrown down many good knigh Table Round save twain, that Launcelot and Sir Percivale.

CHAP. VII.

How the queen desired to see and how after all the knights plenished with the holy Sangr how they avowed the enquest of

Then the king, at the queen's made him to alight and to ur helm, that the queen might se the visage. And when she beh she said, Soothly, I dare well Sir Launcelot is his father, fc two men resembled more in therefore it is no marvel thoug of great prowess. So a lady th by the queen said, Madam, oug right to be so good a knight forsooth, said the queen, for he parties come of the best knight world, and of the highest linea Sir Launcelot is come but of th degree from our Lord Jesu Chr Sir Galahad is of the ninth degr our Lord Jesu Christ; therefor say they be the greatest gentl the world. And then the king estates went home unto Came so went to evensong to th minster. And so after upon tha per, and every knight sat in l place as they were toforehand anon they heard cracking and c thunder, that them thought th should all to-drive. In the mids blast entered a sun-beam more by seven times than ever they s and all they were alighted of th of the Holy Ghost. Then bega knight to behold other, and eit other by their seeming fairer th they saw afore. Not for then th no knight might speak one word while, and so they looked every other, as they had been dumb there entered into the hall t Graile covered with white san there was none might see it, 1

And there was all the hall full
ith good odours, and every
ıd such meats and drinks as he
d in this world: and when the
ıile had been borne through
then the holy vessel departed
, that they wist not where it
Then had they all breath to
And then the king yielded
s unto God of his good grace
ad sent them. Certes, said the
ought to thank our Lord Jesu
or that he hath shewed us this
e reverence of this high feast of
t. Now, said Sir Gawaine, we
ı served this day of what meats
ıks we thought on, but one
guiled us, we might not see
Graile, it was so preciously co-
herefore I will make here avow,
morn, without longer abiding,
.bour in the quest of the Sanc-
ıt I shall hold me out a twelve-
ıd a day, or more if need be,
r shall I return again unto the
I have seen it more openly
ıath been seen here: and if I
speed, I shall return again as
may not be against the will of
ı Jesu Christ. When they of
le Round heard Sir Gawaine
hey arose up the most party,
le such avows as Sir Gawaine
e.

as king Arthur heard this he
ıtly displeased, for he wist well
y might not againsay their
Alas! said king Arthur unto
aine, ye have nigh slain me
avow and promise that ye have
For through you ye have be-
of the fairest fellowship and the
knighthood that ever were seen
in any realm of the world.
n they depart from hence, I am
y all shall never meet more in
ld, for they shall die many in
t. And so it forethinketh me
for I have loved them as well
fe, wherefore it shall grieve me
e the departition of this fellow-
or I have had an old custom
them in my fellowship.

CHAP. VIII.

How great sorrow was made of the king and the queen and ladies for the departing of the knights, and how they departed.

And therewith the tears filled in his eyes. And then he said, Gawaine, Gawaine, ye have set me in great sorrow. For I have great doubt that my true fellowship shall never meet here more again. Ah, said Sir Launcelot, comfort yourself, for it shall be unto us as a great honour, and much more than if we died in any other places, for of death we be sure. Ah Launcelot, said the king, the great love that I have had unto you all the days of my life maketh me to say such doleful words; for never christian king had never so many worthy men at this table as I have had this day at the Round Table, and that is my great sorrow. When the queen, ladies, and gentlewomen wist these tidings, they had such sorrow and heaviness that there might no tongue tell it, for those knights had holden them in honour and charity. But among all other queen Guenever made great sorrow. I marvel, said she, my lord would suffer them to depart from him. Thus was all the court troubled, for the love of the departition of those knights. And many of those ladies that loved knights would have gone with their lovers; and so had they done, had not an old knight come among them in religious clothing, and then he spake all on high and said, Fair lords which have sworn in the quest of the Sancgreal, thus sendeth you Nacien the hermit word, that none in this quest lead lady nor gentlewoman with him, for it is not to do in so high a service as they labour in, for I warn you plain, he that is not clean of his sins he shall not see the mysteries of our Lord Jesu Christ; and for this cause they left these ladies and gentlewomen. After this the queen came unto Galahad, and asked him of whence he was, and of what country? He told her of whence he was. And son unto

Sir Launcelot, she said he was: as to that he said neither yea nor nay. Truly, said the queen, of your father ye need not to shame you, for he is the goodliest knight and of the best men of the world come, and of the stock, of all parties, of kings. Wherefore ye ought of right to be of your deeds a passing good man, and certainly, she said, ye resemble him much. Then Sir Galahad was a little ashamed, and said, Madam, sith ye know in certain, wherefore do ye ask it me? for he that is my father shall be known openly, and all betimes. And then they went to rest them. And in the honour of the highness of Galahad he was led into king Arthur's chamber, and there rested in his own bed. And as soon as it was day the king arose, for he had no rest of all that night for sorrow. Then he went unto Gawaine and to Sir Launcelot, that were arisen for to hear mass. And then the king again said, Ah Gawaine, Gawaine, ye have betrayed me. For never shall my court be amended by you, but ye will never be sorry for me, as I am for you. And therewith the tears began to run down by his visage. And therewith the king said, Ah knight, Sir Launcelot, I require thee thou counsel me, for I would that this quest were undone, and it might be. Sir, said Sir Launcelot, ye saw yesterday so many worthy knights that then were sworn, that they may not leave it in no manner of wise. That wot I well, said the king, but it shall so heavy me at their departing, that I wot well there shall no manner of joy remedy me. And then the king and the queen went unto the minster. So anon Launcelot and Gawaine commanded their men to bring their arms. And when they all were armed, save their shields and their helms, then they came to their fellowship, which all were ready in the same wise for to go to the minster to hear their service.

Then after the service was done, the king would wit how many had taken the quest of the holy Graile, and to account them he prayed them all. Then found they by tale an hundr and all were knights of Table. And then they p helms, and departed, and re them all wholly unto the there was weeping and gr Then the queen departed chamber so that no man ceive her great sorrows. Launcelot missed the quee into her chamber, and wh him she cried aloud, O, Sir ye have betrayed me and death, for to leave thus my madam, said Sir Launcelot, be not displeased, for I again as soon as I may wit ship. Alas, said she, that you! but He that suffered the cross for all mankind, good conduct and safety, a whole fellowship. Right s Sir Launcelot, and found his that abode his coming. A mounted upon their horses through the streets of Ca there was weeping of the ric and the king turned away, not speak for weeping. S while they came to a city a that hight Vagon: there t into the castle, and the l castle was an old man that h and he was a good man of and set open the gates, and all the good cheer that he m so on the morrow they w corded that they should d each from other. And the parted on the morrow with w mourning cheer, and every l the way that him best liked.

CHAP. IX.

How Galahad gat him a shie they sped that presumed to the said shield.

Now rideth Sir Galahad shield, and so he rode four out any adventure. And at day after even-song he came abbey, and there he was re

ıce, and led to a chamber, ɜ was unarmed, and then ɐe of two knights of the le, one was king Bagde- hat other was Sir Uwaine. ıey saw him they went unto le of him great solace, and t to supper. Sirs, said Sir ıat adventure brought you , said they, it is told us this place is a shield that r bear about his neck but mischieved or dead within or else maimed for ever. king Bagdemagus, I shall norrow for to assay this enture. In the name of r Galahad. Sir, said Bag- d I may not achieve the this shield ye shall take for I am sure ye shall not id Galahad, I agree right , for I have no shield. So they arose and heard mass. Bagdemagus asked where rous shield was. Anon a im behind an altar where ıng as white as any snow, ıidst was a red cross. Sir, ık, this shield ought not to bout no knight's neck, but rthiest knight of the world, e I counsel you knights to sed. Well, said king Bag- ɾot well that I am not the of the world, but yet shall ɐar it. And so he bare it onastery; and then he said ahad, If it will please you, bide here still, till ye know speed. I shall abide you alahad. Then king Bag- ık with him a squire, the d bring tidings unto Sir r he sped. Then when they ı two mile, and came in a afore an hermitage, then goodly knight come from white armour, horse and came as fast as his horse ɾith his spear in the rest, ɡdemagus dressed his spear and brake it upon the white knight; but the other struck him so hard that he brake the mails, and thrust him through the right shoulder, for the shield covered him not as at that time, and so he bare him from his horse, and therewith he alighted and took the white shield from him, saying, Knight, thou hast done thyself great folly, for this shield ought not to be borne but by him that shall have no peer that liveth. And then he came to king Bagdemagus's squire and said, Bear this shield unto the good knight Sir Galahad, that thou left in the abbey, and greet him well from me. Sir, said the squire, what is your name? Take thou no heed of my name, said the knight, for it is not for thee to know, nor for none earthly man. Now, fair sir, said the squire, at the reverence of Jesu Christ tell me for what cause this shield may not be borne, but if the bearer thereof be mischieved. Now, sith thou hast conjured me so, said the knight, this shield behoveth to no man but unto Galahad. And the squire went unto Bagdemagus and asked him whether he were sore wounded or not? Yea forsooth, said he, I shall escape hard from the death. Then he fetched his horse, and brought him with great pain unto an abbey. Then was he taken down softly, and unarmed, and laid in a bed, and there was looked to his wounds. And, as the book telleth, he lay there long, and escaped hard with the life.

CHAP. X.

How Galahad departed with the shield. And how king Evelake had received the shield of Joseph of Aramathie.

Sir Galahad, said the squire, that knight that wounded Bagdemagus sendeth you greeting, and bad that ye should bear this shield, where through great adventures should befall. Now blessed be God and fortune, said Sir Galahad. And then he asked his arms, and mounted upon his horse, and hung the white shield about his neck, and commended them unto God. And Sir

Uwaine said he would bear him fellowship if it pleased him. Sir, said Galahad, that may ye not, for I must go alone, save this squire shall bear me fellowship: and so departed Uwaine. Then within a while came Galahad there as the white knight abode him by the hermitage, and every each saluted other courteously. Sir, said Galahad, by this shield been many marvels fallen. Sir, said the knight, it befell after the passion of our Lord Jesu Christ thirty-two year, that Joseph of Armathie, the gentle knight the which took down our Lord off the holy cross, at that time he departed from Jerusalem with a great party of his kindred with him. And so he laboured till that they came to a city that hight Sarras. And at that same hour that Joseph came to Sarras, there was a king that hight Evelake, that had great war against the Saracens, and in especially against one Saracen, the which was the king Evelake's cousin, a rich king and a mighty, which marched nigh this land, and his name was called Tolleme la Feintes. So on a day this two met to do battle. Then Joseph, the son of Joseph of Armathie, went to king Evelake, and told him he should be discomfit and slain, but if he left his belief of the old law, and believed upon the new law. And then there he shewed him the right belief of the Holy Trinity, to the which he agreed unto with all his heart, and there this shield was made for king Evelake, in the name of Him that died upon the cross. And then through his good belief he had the better of king Tolleme. For when Evelake was in the battle, there was a cloth set afore the shield, and when he was in the greatest peril he let put away the cloth, and then his enemies saw a figure of a man on the cross, where through they all were discomfit. And so it befell that a man of king Evelake's was smitten his hand off, and bare that hand in his other hand. And Joseph called that man unto him, and bad him, Go with good devotion, touch the cross. And as soon as that man had touched the cross with his was as whole as ever it was Then soon after there fell a gre vel, that the cross of the shield time vanished away, that no m where it became. And then kir lake was baptised, and for th part all the people of that ci soon after Joseph would depa king Evelake would go witl whether he would or nould. by fortune they came into thi that at that time was called Britain. And there they found felon paynim, that put Josep prison. And so by fortune came unto a worthy man tha Mondrames, and he assembled people, for the great renown heard of Joseph, and so he cai the land of Great Britain, ai herited this felon paynim an sumed him, and therewith d Joseph out of prison. And afi all the people were turned to th tian faith.

CHAP. XI.

How Joseph made a cross on th shield with his blood, and ho labad was by a monk brougl tomb.

Nor long after that Joseph w in his deadly bed. And when kir lake saw that, he made much s and said, For thy love I have l country, and sith ye shall depart this world leave me some tol yours, that I may think on you. said, that will I do full gladly. bring me your shield that I to when ye went into battle king Tolleme. Then Joseph bl at the nose that he might not means be staunched. And then that shield he made a cross of h blood. Now may ye see a remem that I love you, for ye shall ne this shield but ye shall think on n it shall be always as fresh as it is and never shall no man bear this about his neck but he shall re

e time that Galahad the good
bear it, and the last of my
shall have it about his neck,
ll do many marvellous deeds.
id king Evelake, where shall I
shield, that this worthy knight
e it? Ye shall leave it there as
the hermit shall be put after
h. For thither shall that good
ome the fifteenth day after that
receive the order of knighthood.
that day that they set is this
ıt ye have his shield. And in
e abbey lieth Nacien the hermit.
en the white knight vanished
Anon, as the squire had heard
ords, he alight off his hackney,
eled down at Galahad's feet, and
ıim that he might go with him
had made him knight.—If I
ıot refuse you?—Then will ye
ıe a knight, said the squire,
t order, by the grace of God,
well set in me. So Sir Galahad
him, and turned again unto the
ıere they came from. And there
ıde great joy of Sir Galahad.
on as he was alight, there was
brought him unto a tomb in
h-yard, where that was such
that who that heard it should
gh be mad or lose his strength.
r, they said, we deem it is a

CHAP. XII.

ıarvel that Sir Galahad saw and in the tomb, and how he made ı knight.

lead me thither, said Galahad.
they did, all armed save his
Now, said the good man, go to
b and lift it up. So he did, and
great noise, and piteously he
t all men might hear it, Sir
l, the servant of Jesu Christ,
ou not nigh me, for thou shalt
e go again there where I have
long. But Galahad was nothing
ut lift up the stone, and there
t so foul a smoke, and after he
foulest figure leap thereout that
ever he saw in the likeness of a man; and then he blessed him, and wist well it was a fiend. Then heard he a voice say, Galahad, I see there environ about thee so many angels that my power may not dare thee. Right so Sir Galahad saw a body all armed lie in that tomb, and beside him a sword. Now, fair brother, said Galahad, let us remove this body, for it is not worthy to lie in this church-yard, for he was a false Christian man. And therewith they all departed and went to the abbey. And anon as he was unarmed, a good man came and set him down by him, and said, Sir, I shall tell you what betokeneth all that ye saw in the tomb: For that covered body betokeneth the duresse of the world, and the great sin that our Lord found in the world, for there was such wretchedness that the father loved not the son, nor the son loved not the father, and that was one of the causes that our Lord took flesh and blood of a clean maiden; for our sins were so great at that time that well nigh all was wickedness. Truly, said Galahad, I believe you right well. So Sir Galahad rested him there that night. And upon the morn he made the squire knight, and asked him his name, and of what kindred he was come. Sir, said he, men call me Melias de Lile, and I am the son of the king of Denmark. Now, fair sir, said Galahad, sith ye be come of kings and queens, now look that knighthood be well set in you, for ye ought to be a mirror unto all chivalry. Sir, said Melias, ye say sooth. But, sir, sithen ye have made me a knight, ye must of right grant me my first desire that is reasonable. Ye say sooth, said Galahad. Then Melias said, that ye will suffer me to ride with you in this quest of the Sancgreal till that some adventure depart us.—I grant you, sir. Then men brought Sir Melias his armour, and his spear, and his horse; and so Sir Galahad and he rode forth all that week ere they found any adventure. And then upon a Monday, in the morning, as they were departed from an abbey, they came to a

cross which departed two ways; and in that cross were letters written, that said thus: Now ye knights errant, the which goeth to seek knights adventurous, see here two ways; that one way defendeth thee that thou ne go that way, for he shall not go out of the way again, but if he be a good man and a worthy knight; and if thou go on the left hand, thou shalt not there lightly win prowess, for thou shalt in this way be soon assayed. Sir, said Melias to Galahad, if it like you to suffer me to take the way on the left hand, tell me, for there I shall well prove my strength. It were better, said Galahad, ye rode not that way, for I deem I should better escape in that way than ye. — Nay, my lord, I pray you let me have that adventure.—Take it, in God's name, said Galahad.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the adventure that Melias had, and how Galahad revenged him, and how Melias was carried into an abbey.

And then rode Melias into an old forest, and therein he rode two days and more. And then he came into a fair meadow, and there was a fair lodge of boughs. And then he espied in that lodge a chair, wherein was a crown of gold subtily wrought. Also there was clothes covered upon the earth, and many delicious meats were set thereon. Sir Melias beheld this adventure, and thought it marvellous, but he had no hunger, but of the crown of gold he took much keep, and therewith he stooped down, and took it up, and rode his way with it. And anon he saw a knight came riding after him that said, Knight, set down that crown which is not yours, and therefore defend you. Then Sir Melias blessed him, and said, Fair Lord of heaven, help and save thy new-made knight. And then they let their horses run as fast as they might, so that the other knight smote Sir Melias through hauberk and through the left side, that he fell to the earth nigh dead. And then he t crown and went his way, and Si lay still and had no power to the meanwhile by fortune the Sir Galahad and found him peril of death. And then Ah, Melias, who hath wounde therefore it had been better ridden that other way. And w Melias heard him speak, Sir, for God's love let me not die forest, but bear me unto the abl beside, that I may be confes have my rites. It shall be do Galahad, but where is he th wounded you? With that Sir heard in the leaves cry on high, keep thee from me! Ah sir, s lias, beware, for that is he th slain me. Sir Galahad answe knight, come on your peril. The dressed to other, and came tog fast as their horses might run; lahad smote him so that his spe through his shoulder, and sm down off his horse, and in the Galahad's spear brake. With th out another knight out of the and brake a spear upon Gala ever he might turn him. Then drew out his sword and smote left arm of him, so that it fel earth. And then he fled, and S had sued fast after him. And turned again unto Sir Melias, a he alight and dressed him softl horse tofore him, for the trunc his spear was in his body, and S had start up behind him, and h in his arms, and so brought the abbey, and there unarmed brought him to his chamber. A he asked his Saviour. And whe received Him he said unto Sir Sir, let death come when it him. And therewith he drew truncheon of the spear out of h and then he swooned. Then ca an old monk, which sometime k a knight, and beheld Sir Melia anon he ransacked him, and said unto Sir Galahad, I shall l of this wound, by the grace

the term of seven weeks. Then
r Galahad glad, and unarmed
ıd said he would abide there
lays. And then he asked Sir
how it stood with him. Then
, he was turned unto helping,
thanked.

CHAP. XIV.

ir Galahad departed, and how he commanded to go to the castle of ms to destroy the wicked custom.

will I depart, said Galahad, for
much on hand, for many good
be full busy about it, and this
and I were in the same quest of
ıcgreal. Sir, said a good man,
sin he was thus wounded: and I
said the good man, how ye
ıke upon you so rich a thing as
h order of knighthood without
onfession, and that was the cause
: bitterly wounded. For the way
right hand betokeneth the high
our Lord Jesu Christ, and the
a true good liver. And the other
tokeneth the way of sinners and
believers. And when the devil
ur pride and presumption for to
ɔu in the quest of the holy Sanc-
hat made you to be overthrown,
may not be achieved but by
s living. Also, the writing on
ɔss was a signification of hea-
leeds, and of knightly deeds in
works, and no knightly deeds in
r works; and pride is head of all
sins, that caused this knight to
from Sir Galahad: and where
ɔokest the crown of gold thou
t in covetise and in theft. All
re no knightly deeds. And this
d the holy knight, the which
with the two knights, the two
signify the two deadly sins which
holly in this knight Sir Melias,
y might not withstand you, for ye
hout deadly sin. Now departed
d from thence, and betaught
ll unto God. Sir Melias said,
d Galahad, as soon as I may ride
seek you. God send you health,
said Galahad; and so took his horse and departed and rode many journeys forward and backward, as adventure would lead him. And at the last it happened him to depart from a place or a castle, the which was named Abblasoure, and he had heard no mass, the which he was wont ever to hear or that he departed out of any castle or place, and kept that for a custom. Then Sir Galahad came unto a mountain, where he found an old chapel, and found there nobody, for all all was desolate, and there he kneeled tofore the altar, and besought God of wholesome counsel. So, as he prayed, he heard a voice that said, Go thou now, thou adventurous knight, to the Castle of Maidens, and there do thou away the wicked customs.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Galahad fought with the knights of the castle, and destroyed the wicked custom.

When Sir Galahad heard this he thanked God, and took his horse, and he had not ridden but half a mile, he saw in a valley afore him a strong castle with deep ditches, and there ran beside it a fair river, that hight Severn, and there he met with a man of great age, and either saluted other, and Galahad asked him the castle's name? Fair sir, said he, it is the Castle of Maidens. That is a cursed castle, said Galahad, and all they that be conversant therein; for all pity is out thereof, and all hardiness and mischief is therein.—Therefore I counsel you, sir knight, to turn again. Sir, said Galahad, wit you well I shall not turn again. Then looked Sir Galahad on his arms that nothing failed him, and then he put his shield afore him, and anon there met him seven fair maidens, the which said unto him, Sir knight, ye ride here in a great folly, for ye have the water to pass over. Why should I not pass the water? said Galahad. So rode he away from them, and met with a squire that said, Knight, those knights in the castle defy you, and forbid you, ye

go no further till that they wit what ye would. Fair sir, said Galahad, I come for to destroy the wicked custom of this castle.—Sir, and ye will abide by that, ye shall have enough to do.—Go you now, said Galahad, and haste my needs. Then the squire entered into the castle. And anon after there came out of the castle seven knights, and all were brethren. And when they saw Galahad, they cried, Knight, keep thee, for we assure thee nothing but death. Why, said Galahad, will ye all have ado with me at once? Yea, said they, thereto mayest thou trust. Then Galahad put forth his spear, and smote the foremost to the earth, that near he brake his neck. And therewith all the other smote him on his shield great strokes, so that their spears brake. Then Sir Galahad drew out his sword, and set upon them so hard that it was marvel to see it, and so, through great force, he made them to forsake the field; and Galahad chased them till they entered into the castle, and so passed through the castle at another gate. And there met Sir Galahad an old man, clothed in religious clothing, and said, Sir, have here the keys of this castle. Then Sir Galahad opened the gates, and saw so much people in the streets that he might not number them, and all said, Sir, ye be welcome, for long have we abiden here our deliverance. Then came to him a gentlewoman, and said, These knights be fled, but they will come again this night, and here to begin again their evil custom. What will ye that I shall do? said Galahad. Sir, said the gentlewoman, that ye send after all the knights hither that hold their lands of this castle, and make them to swear for to use the customs that were used heretofore of old time. I will well, said Galahad. And there she brought him an horn of ivory, bounden with gold richly, and said, Sir, blow this horn, which will be heard two mile about this castle. When Sir Galahad had blown the horn he set him down upon a bed. Then came a priest unto Galahad, and said, Sir, it is past a s
agone that these seven breth
into this castle, and harbou
the lord of this castle, that l
duke Lianour, and he was lo
this country. And when th
the duke's daughter that was
woman, then by their false c
made debate betwixt themsel
the duke of his goodness wo
departed them; and there t
him and his eldest son. And
took the maiden, and the treas
castle. And then by great f
held all the knights of this castl
their will under their obeisanc
great servage and truage, robl
pilling the poor common peo
that they had. So it happe
day the duke's daughter said,
done unto me great wrong to s
own father and my brother, an
hold our lands: not for then,
ye shall not hold this castle
years, for by one knight ye
overcome. Thus she prophesi
years agone. Well, said th
knights, sithen ye say so, th
never lady nor knight pass th
but they shall abide maugre th
or die therefore, till that k
come by whom we shall lose th
And therefore it is called the
Castle, for they have devour
maidens. Now, said Sir Ga
she here for whom this castle
Nay, said the priest, she w
within these three nights a
she was thus enforced; and sit
they kept her younger sister,
dureth great pains with ma
ladies. By this were the k
the country come. And then
them do homage and fealty
duke's daughter, and set them
ease of heart. And in the m
came one to Galahad, and told
that Gawaine, Gareth, and Uw
slain the seven brethren. I
well, said Sir Galahad: and
armour and his horse and co
them unto God.

CHAP. XVI.

vaine came to the Abbey for Galahad, and how he was a Hermit.

ı the tale, after Sir Gawaine rode many journeys both froward. And at the last the abbey where Sir Ga- ıe white shield. And there : learned the way to sue ılahad, and so he rode to /here Melias lay sick, and 'elias told Sir Gawaine of us adventure that Sir Gala- ertes, said Sir Gawaine, I ›y that I took not the way ; for, and I may meet with ot depart from him lightly, :llous adventures Sir Gala- th. Sir, said one of the will not of your fellow- ' said Sir Gawaine. Sir, ye be wicked and sinful, l blessed.

they thus stood talking re came in riding Sir Ga- then they made joy either ıd on the morn they heard so departed. And by the ıet with Sir Uwaine les ınd there Sir Uwaine told how he had met with none ith he departed from the we, said Sir Gawaine. promised other of those s not to depart while that that quest, but if fortune So they departed and rode till that they came by the ıidens. And there the seven ied the three knights, and we be banished by one this castle, we shall destroy ts of king Arthur's that we ıe, for the love of Sir Ga- therewith the seven knights ıe three knights: and by Gawaine slew one of the d each one of his fellows ', and so slew the remnant. ey took the way under the there they lost the way that Sir Galahad rode, and there every each of them departed from other, and Sir Gawaine rode till he came to an hermitage, and there he found the good man saying his evensong of Our Lady. And there Sir Gawaine asked harbour for charity, and the good man granted it him gladly. Then the good man asked him what he was? Sir, he said, I am a knight of king Arthur's, that am in the quest of the Sancgreal, and my name is Sir Gawaine. Sir, said the good man, I would wit how it standeth betwixt God and you? Sir, said Sir Gawaine, I will with a good will shew you my life, if it please you. And there he told the hermit how a monk of an abbey called me wicked knight. He might well say it, said the hermit, for when ye were first made knight, ye should have taken you to knightly deeds and virtuous living, and ye have done the contrary, for ye have lived mischievously many winters, and Sir Galahad is a maid, and sinned never, and that is the cause he shall achieve where he goeth that ye nor none such shall not attain, nor none in your fellowship; for ye have used the most untruest life that ever I heard knight live. For, certes, had ye not been so wicked as ye are, never had the seven brethren been slain by you and your two fellows. For Sir Galahad, himself alone, beat them all seven the day before, but his living is such he shall slay no man lightly. Also I may say you, the Castle of Maidens betokeneth the good souls that were in prison afore the Incarnation of Jesu Christ. And the seven knights betoken the seven deadly sins that reigned that time in the world. And I may liken the good Galahad unto the Son of the High Father, that light within a maid, and bought all the souls out of thrall: so did Sir Galahad deliver all the maidens out of the woful castle. Now, Sir Gawaine, said the good man, thou must do penance for thy sin.—Sir, what penance shall I do?—Such as I will give, said the good man. Nay, said Sir Gawaine, I may do no penance; for we knights adventurous often suffer

great woe and pain. Well, said the good man, and then he held his peace. And on the morn Sir Gawaine departed from the hermit, and betaught him unto God. And by adventure he met with Sir Aglovale and Sir Griflet, two knights of the Table Round. And they two rode four days without finding of any adventure, and at the fifth day they departed. And every each held as fell them by adventure.

Here leaveth the tale of Sir Gawaine and his fellows, and speak we of Sir Galahad.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Galahad met with Sir Launcelot and with Sir Percivale, and smote them down, and departed from them.

So when Sir Galahad was departed from the Castle of Maidens, he rode till he came to a waste forest, and there he met with Sir Launcelot and Sir Percivale, but they knew him not, for he was new disguised. Right so, Sir Launcelot his father dressed his spear, and brake it upon Sir Galahad, and Sir Galahad smote him so again, that he smote down horse and man. And then he drew his sword, and dressed him unto Sir Percivale, and smote him so on the helm that it rove to the coif of steel, and had not the sword swerved Sir Percivale had been slain, and with the stroke he fell out of his saddle. This justs was done tofore the hermitage where a recluse dwelled. And when she saw Sir Galahad ride, she said, God be with thee, best knight of the world. Ah certes, said she all aloud, that Launcelot and Percivale might hear it, and yonder two knights had known thee as well as I do, they would not have encountered with thee. When Sir Galahad heard her say so he was sore adread to be known: therewith he smote his horse with his spurs, and rode a great pace froward them. Then perceived they both that he was Galahad, and up they gat on their horses, and rode fast after him, but in a while he was out of their sight. And then they turned again wit cheer. Let us spere some tidi Percivale, at yonder recluse. I list, said Sir Launcelot. When civale came to the recluse, sh him well enough, and Sir L both. But Sir Launcelot rod thwart and endlong in a wild fo held no path, but as wild adven him. And at the last he can stony cross, which departed tw in waste land, and by the cros stone that was of marble, but it dark that Sir Launcelot might what it was. Then Sir Launcelot by him, and saw an old chap there he wend to have found And Sir Launcelot tied his h a tree, and there he did off his and hung it upon a tree. And went to the chapel door, and f waste and broken. And within h a fair altar full richly arrayed wi of clean silk, and there stood clean candlestick which bare si candles, and the candlestick silver. And when Sir Launce this light, he had great will for into the chapel, but he could place where he might enter: t he passing heavy and dismayed. he returned and came to his ho did off his saddle and bridle, him pasture; and unlaced his he ungirded his sword, and laid hi to sleep upon his shield to cross.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Launcelot, half sleeping waking, saw a sick man bor litter, and how he was healed Sangreal.

And so he fell on sleep, a waking and half sleeping he sa by him two palfreys all fair an the which bare a litter, therein sick knight. And when he was cross, he there abode still. Sir Launcelot saw and beheld, slept not verily; and he heard h Oh, sweet Lord, when shall this leave me? and when shall t

come by me where through I blessed? For I have endured ng for little trespass. A full hile complained the knight thus, ways Sir Launcelot heard it. at Sir Launcelot saw the candle- ith the six tapers come before ss, and he saw nobody that it. Also there came a table of nd the holy vessel of the Sanc- which Sir Launcelot had seen ie in king Peschour's house. erewith the sick knight set him l held up both his hands, and air sweet Lord, which is here this holy vessel, take heed unto t I may be whole of this malady. erewith on his hands and on es he went so nigh that he the holy vessel, and kissed it, on he was whole, and then he ord God I thank thee, for I am of this sickness. So when the ssel had been there a great while t unto the chapel, with the ier and the light, so that Laun- ist not where it was become, for overtaken with sin that he had er to arise against the holy wherefore after that many men him shame, but he took repent- ter that. Then the sick knight him up, and kissed the cross. is squire brought him his arms, ed his lord how he did? Certes, I thank God right well, through r vessel I am healed. But I have arvel of this sleeping knight, that power to awake when this holy as brought hither. I dare right , said the squire, that he dwelleth e deadly sin, whereof he was onfessed. By my faith, said the whatsoever he be he is unhappy, deem he is of the fellowship of nd Table, the which is entered e quest of the Sancgreal. Sir, squire, here I have brought you arms, save your helm and your nd therefore by my assent now take this knight's helm and his And so he did. And when he an armed he took Sir Laun- celot's horse, for he was better than his own: and so departed they from the cross.

CHAP. XIX.

How a voice spake to Sir Launcelot, and how he found his horse and his helm borne away, and after went afoot.

THEN anon Sir Launcelot waked, and set him up, and bethought him what he had seen there, and whether it were dreams or not. Right so heard he a voice that said, Sir Launcelot, more harder than is the stone, and more bitter than is the wood, and more naked and barer than is the leaf of the fig-tree, therefore go thou from hence. and with- draw thee from this holy place. And when Sir Launcelot heard this he was passing heavy, and wist not what to do, and so departed, sore weeping, and cursed the time that he was born. For then he deemed never to have had wor- ship more. For those words went to his heart, till that he knew wherefore he was called so. Then Sir Launcelot went to the cross, and found his helm, his sword, and his horse, taken away. And then he called himself a very wretch, and most unhappy of all knights: and there he said, My sin and my wickedness have brought me unto great dishonour. For when I sought worldly adventures for worldly desires I ever achieved them, and had the better in every place, and never was I dis- comfit in no quarrel, were it right or wrong. And now I take upon me the adventures of holy things, and now I see and understand that mine old sin hindereth me, and shameth me, so that I had no power to stir nor to speak when the holy blood appeared afore me. So thus he sorrowed till it was day, and heard the fowls sing: then somewhat he was comforted. But when Sir Launcelot missed his horse and his harness, then he wist well God was displeased with him. Then he departed from the cross on foot into a forest. And so by prime he came to an high hill, and found an hermitage, and an hermit therein, which was going

unto mass. And then Launcelot kneeled down and cried on our Lord mercy for his wicked works. So when mass was done, Launcelot called him, and prayed him for charity for to hear his life. With a good will, said the good man. Sir, said he, be ye of king Arthur's court, and of the fellowship of the Round Table? Yea forsooth, and my name is Sir Launclot du Lake, that hath been right well said of, and now my good fortune is changed, for I am the most wretch of the world. The hermit beheld him, and had marvel how he was so abashed. Sir, said the hermit, ye ought to thank God more than any knight living; for He hath caused you to have more worldly worship than any knight that now liveth. And for your presumption to take upon you in deadly sin for to be in His presence, where His flesh and His blood was, that caused you ye might not see it with worldly eyes, for He will not appear where such sinners be, but if it be unto their great hurt, and unto their great shame. And there is no knight living now that ought to give God so great thanks as ye; for He hath given you beauty, seemliness, and great strength, above all other knights, and therefore ye are the more beholding unto God than any other man to love Him and dread Him; for your strength and manhood will little avail you and God be against you.

CHAP. XX.

How Sir Launcelot was shriven, and what sorrow he made; and of the good ensamples which were shewed him.

THEN Sir Launcelot wept with heavy cheer, and said, Now I know well ye say me sooth. Sir, said the good man, hide none old sin from me. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, that were me full loth to discover. For this fourteen years I never discovered one thing that I have used, and that may I now blame my shame and my misadventure. And then he told there that good man all his life, and how he had loved a queen unmeasurably, and out long;—and all my great dee that I have done, I did the mc the queen's sake, and for her s I do battle were it right and never did I battle all God's sake, but for to win wc to cause me to be the bette and little or nought I thank it. Then Sir Launcelot sai you counsel me. I will cot said the hermit, if ye will e that ye will never come in th fellowship, as much as ye ma And then Sir Launcelot pron he would not, by the faith of Look that your heart and yc accord, said the good man, a ensure you ye shall have n ship than ever ye had. Ho said Sir Launcelot, I marve voice that said to me marvellc as ye have heard toforehand. no marvel, said the good mar for it seemeth well God loveth men may understand a ston of kind, and namely one n another, and that is to unde thee Sir Launcelot, for thou leave thy sin for no goodness hath sent thee, therefore thou than any stone, and never thou be made soft nor by by fire, and that is, the heat of Ghost may not enter in th take heed; in all the world not find one knight to whom hath given so much of gra hath given you: for He h you fairness with seemliness: given thee wit, discretion to k from evil: He hath given the and hardiness; and given the so largely that thou hast h days the better wheresoever the And now our Lord will s no longer, but that thou sh Him, whether thou wilt or n why the voice called thee bitt wood, for where overmuch sin there may be but little sweetne fore thou art likened to an c tree. Now have I shewed

ırder than the stone, and
n the tree. Now shall I
why thou art more naked
han the fig-tree. It befell
d on Palm-Sunday preached
, and there He found in the
all hardness was harboured
l there He found in all the
e that would harbour Him.
[e went without the town,
n the midst of the way a
which was right fair and
ed of leaves, but fruit had
en our Lord cursed the tree
fruit; that betokeneth the
Jerusalem, that had leaves
. So thou, Sir Launcelot,
ly Graile was brought afore
und in thee no fruit, nor
good thought nor good will, and defouled with lechery. Certes, said Sir Launcelot, all that ye have said is true, and from henceforward I cast me by the grace of God never to be so wicked as I have been, but as to follow knighthood, and to do feats of arms. Then the good man enjoined Sir Launcelot such penance as he might do, and to sue knighthood, and so he assoiled him and prayed Sir Launcelot to abide with him all that day. I will well, said Sir Launcelot, for I have neither helm, nor horse, nor sword. As for that, said the good man, I shall help you or to-morn at even of an horse, and all that longeth unto you. And then Sir Launcelot repented him greatly.

eth of the history of syr launcelot. And here followeth ıf syr Percyuale de galys which is the xiiii. book.

The Fourteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

ɪivale came to a recluse, and ɪsel; and how she told him ɪs his aunt.

ı the tale, that when Sir
as ridden after Sir Galahad,
had all these adventures
Sir Percivale turned again
:luse, where he deemed to
of that knight that Laun-
ed. And so he kneeled
)w, and the recluse opened
ed Sir Percivale what he
lam, he said, I am a knight
ur's court, and my name is
de Galis. When the re-
his name, she had great
for mickle she had loved
any other knight, for she
so, for she was his aunt.
.e commanded the gates to be opened, and there he had all the cheer that she might make him, and all that was in her power was at his commandment. So, on the morn, Sir Percivale went to the recluse, and asked her if she knew that knight with the white shield? Sir, said she, why would ye wit? Truly, madam, said Sir Percivale, I shall never be well at ease till that I know of that knight's fellowship, and that I may fight with him, for I may not leave him so lightly, for I have the shame yet. Ah, Percivale, said she, would ye fight with him? I see well ye have great will to be slain as your father was, through outrageousness. Madam, said Sir Percivale, it seemeth by your words that ye know me? Yea, said she, I well ought to know you, for I am your aunt, although I be in a priory place. For some called me some time the queen of the Waste Lands, and I was called the queen of most

riches in the world; and it pleased me never my riches so much as doth my poverty. Then Sir Percivale wept for very pity, when he knew it was his aunt. Ah, fair nephew, said she, when heard ye tidings of your mother? Truly, said he, I heard none of her, but I dream of her much in my sleep, and therefore I wot not whether she be dead or on live. Certes, fair nephew, said she, your mother is dead; for after your departing from her. she took such a sorrow that anon after she was confessed she died. Now God have mercy on her soul, said Sir Percivale, it sore forethinketh me; but all we must change the life. Now fair aunt, tell me what is the knight? I deem it be he that bare the red arms on Whitsunday. Wit you well, said she, that this is he, for otherwise ought he not to do, but to go in red arms, and that same knight hath no peer, for he worketh all by miracle, and he shall never be overcome of no earthly man's hand.

CHAP. II.

How Merlin likened the Round Table to the world, and how the knights that should achieve the Sangreal should be known.

Also Merlin made the Round Table in tokening of the roundness of the world, for by the Round Table is the world signified by right. For all the world, christian and heathen, repair unto the Round Table, and when they are chosen to be of the fellowship of the Round Table, they think them more blessed, and more in worship, than if they had gotten half the world; and ye have seen that they have lost their fathers and their mothers, and all their kin, and their wives and their children, for to be of your fellowship. It is well seen by you; for since ye departed from your mother ye would never see her, ye found such a fellowship at the Round Table. When Merlin had ordained the Round Table, he said, by them which should be fellows of the Round Table the truth of the Sancgreal should be well known. And men asked him how me know them that should best do achieve the Sancgreal? then there should be three white b should achieve it, and the tw be maidens, and the third sh chaste. And that one of th should pass his father as muc lion passeth the libard, both of and hardiness. They that heard say so, said thus unto Merlin: there shall be such a knigh shouldst ordain by thy crafts a si no man should sit in it but he that shall pass all other knights. Merlin answered that he would And then he made the siege p in the which Galahad sat in meat on Whitsunday last past madam, said Sir Percivale, s have I heard of you, that by n will I will never have ado with lahad, but by way of kindness. God's love, fair aunt, can ye te some way where I may find h much would I love the fellow him? Fair nephew, said she, ride unto a castle the which i Goothe, where he hath a cousin and there may ye be lodged thi And as he teacheth you, sue fast as ye can, and if he can tell tidings of him, ride straight u castle of Carbonek, where the king is there lying, for there hear true tidings of him.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Percivale came into a m where he found king Evelake, w an old man.

Then departed Sir Percivale f aunt, either making great sorro so he rode till evensong tim then he heard a clock smite. A he was ware of a house closed w walls and deep ditches, and t knocked at the gate, and was le he alight, and was led unto a c and soon he was unarmed. A he had right good cheer all th and on the morn he heard his m

nonastery he found a priest ready altar. And on the right side he pew closed with iron, and behind ar he saw a rich bed and a fair, loth of silk and gold. Then Sir le espied that therein was a man oman, for the visage was covered. ie left off his looking, and heard vice. And when it came to the , he that lay within that perclose l him up, and uncovered his nd then him beseemed a passing n, and he had a crown of gold is head, and his shoulders were and uncovered unto his middle. ien Sir Percivale espied his body ll of great wounds, both on the ers, arms, and visage. And ever l up his hands unto our Lord's nd cried, Fair sweet Father Jesu forget not me, and so he lay but always he was in his prayers isons: and him seemed to be of e of three hundred winter. And he mass was done, the priest took rd's body and bare it to the sick And when he had used it, he did crown, and commanded the to be set on the altar. Then Sir le asked one of the brethren ie was. Sir, said the good man, e heard much of Joseph of Ar- , how he was sent by Jesu Christ is land, for to teach and preach y christian faith, and therefore he l many persecutions, the which emies of Christ did unto him. the city of Sarras he converted whose name was Evelake. And king came with Joseph into this and always he was busy to be is the Sancgreal was, and on a e nighed it so nigh that our as displeased with him, but ever lowed it more and more, till truck him almost blind. Then ng cried mercy, and said, Fair let me never die till the good of my blood of the ninth degree ie, that I may see him openly shall achieve the Sancgreal, that iss him.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Percivale saw many men of arms, bearing a dead knight, and how he fought against them.

When the king thus had made his prayers, he heard a voice that said, Heard be thy prayers, for thou shalt not die till he have kissed thee: and when that knight shall come, the clearness of your eyes shall come again, and thou shalt see openly, and thy wounds shall be healed, and erst shall they never close. And this befell of king Evelake: and this same king hath lived this three hundred winters this holy life. And men say the knight is in the court that shall heal him. Sir, said the good man, I pray you tell me what knight that ye be, and if ye be of king Arthur's court and of the Table Round? Yea, forsooth, said he, and my name is Sir Percivale de Galis. And when the good man understood his name, he made great joy of him. And then Sir Percivale departed, and rode till the hour of noon. And he met in a valley about twenty men of arms, which bear in a bier a knight deadly slain. And when they saw Sir Percivale, they asked him of whence he was? and he answered, Of the court of king Arthur. Then they cried all at once, Slay him. Then Sir Percivale smote the first to the earth, and his horse upon him. And then seven of the knights smote upon his shield all at once, and the remnant slew his horse, so that he fell to the earth. So had they slain him or taken him, had not the good knight Sir Galahad, with the red arms, come there by adventure into those parts. And when he saw all those knights upon one knight, he cried, Save me that knight's life. And then he dressed him toward the twenty men of arms as fast as his horse might drive, with his spear in the rest, and smote the foremost horse and man to the earth. And when his spear was broken he set his hand to his sword, and smote on the right hand and on the left hand, that it was marvel to see. And at every stroke he smote one down, or put

him to a rebuke, so that they would fight no more, but fled to a thick forest, and Sir Galahad followed them. And when Sir Percivale saw him chase them so, he made great sorrow that his horse was away. And then he wist well it was Sir Galahad. And then he cried aloud, Ah fair knight, abide and suffer me to do thankings unto thee, for much have ye done for me! But ever Sir Galahad rode so fast, that at the last he passed out of his sight. And as fast as Sir Percivale might he went after him on foot, crying. And then he met with a yeoman riding upon an hackney, the which led in his hand a great black steed, blacker than any bear. Ah fair friend, said Sir Percivale, as ever I may do for you, and to be your true knight in the first place ye will require me, that ye will lend me that black steed, that I might overtake a knight, the which rideth afore me. Sir knight, said the yeoman, I pray you hold me excused of that, for that I may not do. For wit ye well, the horse is such a man's horse, that, and I lent it you or any other man, that he would slay me. Alas, said Sir Percivale, I had never so great sorrow as I have had for losing of yonder knight. Sir, said the yeoman, I am right heavy for you, for a good horse would beseem you well, but I dare not deliver you this horse, but if ye would take him from me. That will I not do, said Sir Percivale. And so they departed, and Sir Percivale sat him down under a tree, and made sorrow out of measure. And as he was there, there came a knight riding on the horse that the yeoman led, and he was clean armed.

CHAP. V.

How a yeoman desired him to get again an horse, and how Sir Percivale's hackney was slain, and how he gat an horse.

And anon the yeoman came pricking after as fast as ever he might, and asked Sir Percivale if he saw any knight riding on his black steed? Yea sir, forsooth, said he, why ask ye me that? Ah, sir, that steed he hath taken from me with strength, wherefore my lord w me in what place he findeth me. said Sir Percivale, what wouldc that I did? thou seest well th on foot, but and I had a goo I should bring him soon agai said the yeoman, take mine h and do the best ye can, and follow you on foot, to wit how shall speed. Then Sir Percivale upon that hackney, and rode as he might. And at the last he s knight. And then he cried, l turn again; and he turned, and spear against Sir Pereivale, a smote the hackney in the midst breast, that he fell down dead earth, and there he had a great f the other rode his way. And t Percivale was wood wroth, and Abide, wicked knight, coward an hearted knight, turn again and fig me on foot. But he answered n past on his way. When Sir P saw he would not turn, he cast a helm and sword, and said, Now very wretch, cursed, and most u above all other knights. So in t row he abode all that day till night, and then he was faint, and l down and slept till it was mi And then he awaked, and sav him a woman which said un right fiercely, Sir Percivale, wha thou here? He answered and sa neither good nor great ill. If th ensure me, said she, that thou w my will when I summon thee, lend thee mine own horse, whic bear thee whither thou wilt. Si vale was glad of her proffer, a sured her to fulfil all her desire. abide me here, and I shall go fe an horse. And so she came soo and brought an horse with her t inly black. When Sir Percivale that horse, he marvelled that it great and so well apparelled: a for then he was so hardy, and upon him, and took none heed self. And so anon as he was u he thrust to him with his spurs, rode by a forest, and the moo

nd within an hour and less, he four days' journey thence, till to a rough water the which ıd his horse would have borne it.

CHAP. VI.

'eat danger that Sir Percivale by his horse, and how he saw a and a lion fight.

'hen Sir Percivale came nigh , and saw the water so bois- : doubted to overpass it. And ıade a sign of the cross in his

When the fiend felt him so he shook off Sir Percivale, and into the water, crying and making great sorrow; and it nto him that the water burnt.

Percivale perceived it was a : which would have brought his perdition. Then he com- ıimself unto God, and prayed l to keep him from all such ns. And so he prayed all that on the morn that it was day. ıaw that he was in a wild moun- which was closed with the sea about, that he might see no ut him which might relieve wild beasts. And then he went ley, and there he saw a young ring a young lion by the neck, : came by Sir Percivale. With : a great lion crying and roar- the serpent. And as fast as Sir saw this, he marvelled, and thither, but anon the lion had ı the serpent, and began battle ı. And then Sir Percivale o help the lion, for he was the ural beast of the two; and he drew his sword, and set afore him, and there gave the ıuch a buffet that he had a ɔund. When the lion saw that, no resemblant to fight with made him all the cheer that a ght make a man. Then Sir perceived that, and cast down , which was broken, and then his helm for to gather wind, as greatly enchafed with the serpent. And the lion went alway about him fawning as a spaniel. And then he stroked him on the neck and on the shoulders. And then he thanked God of the fellowship of that beast. And about noon, the lion took his little whelp, and trussed him, and bare him there he came from. Then was Sir Percivale alone. And as the tale telleth, he was one of the men of the world at that time that most believed in our Lord Jesu Christ. For in these days there were few folks that believed in God perfectly. For in those days the son spared not the father no more than a stranger. And so Sir Percivale comforted himself in our Lord Jesu, and besought God that no temptation should bring him out of God's service, but to endure as his true champion. Thus when Sir Percivale had prayed, he saw the lion come toward him, and then he couched down at his feet. And so all that night the lion and he slept together: and when Sir Percivale slept he dreamed a marvellous dream, that there two ladies met with him, and that one sat upon a lion, and that other sat upon a serpent, and that one of them was young, and the other was old, and the youngest him thought said, Sir Percivale, my lord saluteth thee, and sendeth thee word that thou array thee and make thee ready, for to-morn thou must fight with the strongest champion of the world. And if thou be overcome, thou shalt not be quit for losing of any of thy members, but thou shalt be shamed for ever to the world's end. And then he asked her what was her lord. And she said, the greatest lord of all the world. And so she departed suddenly, that he wist not where.

CHAP. VII.

Of the vision that Sir Percivale saw, and how his vision was expounded, and of his lion.

THEN came forth the other lady that rode upon the serpent, and she said, Sir Percivale, I complain me of you that ye have done unto me, and have not offended

unto you. Certes, madam, said he, unto you nor no lady I never offended. Yes, said she, I shall tell you why. I have nourished in this place a great while a serpent, which served me a great while, and yesterday ye slew him as he gat his prey. Say me for what cause ye slew him, for the lion was not yours? Madam, said Sir Percivale, I know well the lion was not mine, but I did it, for the lion is of a more gentler nature than the serpent, and therefore I slew him; me seemeth I did not amiss against you. Madam, said he, what would ye that I did? I would, said she, for the amends of my beast that ye become my man. And then he answered, That will I not grant you. No, said she, truly ye were never but my servant, since ye received the homage of our Lord Jesu Christ. Therefore I ensure you in what place I may find you without keeping, I shall take you as he that sometime was my man. And so she departed from Sir Percivale, and left him sleeping, the which was sore travailed of his vision. And on the morn he rose and blessed him, and he was passing feeble. Then was Sir Percivale ware in the sea, and saw a ship come sailing toward him, and Sir Percivale went unto the ship, and found it covered within and without with white samite. And at the board stood an old man clothed in a surplice in likeness of a priest. Sir, said Sir Percivale, ye be welcome. God keep you, said the good man. Sir, said the old man, of whence be ye? Sir, said Sir Percivale, I am of king Arthur's court, and a knight of the Table Round, the which am in the quest of the Sancgreal, and here I am in great duresse, and never like to escape out of this wilderness. Doubt not, said the good man, and ye be so true a knight as the order of chivalry requireth, and of heart as ye ought to be, ye should not doubt that none enemy should slay you. What are ye? said Sir Percivale. Sir, said the old man, I am of a strange country, and hither I come to comfort you. Sir, said Sir Percivale, what signifieth my dream that I dreamed this night? And there he told him altogether. She which rode upor said the good man, betokenetl law of holy Church, that is stand faith, good hope, belief, tism. For she seemed younge other, it is great reason, for she in the resurrection and the pass Lord Jesu Christ. And for g she came to thee, to warn th great battle that shall befall th whom, said Sir Percivale, shal With the most champion of t said the old man, for, as the but if thou quit thee well, t not be quit by losing of one but thou shalt be shamed to tl end. And she that rode serpent signifieth the old law serpent betokeneth a fiend. she blamed thee that thou sl servant, it betokeneth nothing pent that thou slewest betok devil that thou rodest upon to and when thou madest a si cross, there thou slewest him away his power. And when thee amends and to become and thou saidest thou woul that was to make thee to belie and leave thy baptism. So manded Sir Percivale to dep so he lept over the board, an and all went away he wist no Then he went up unto the found the lion, which alway fellowship, and he stroked the back, and had great joy o

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Percivale saw a sh to him-ward, and how the l ship told him of her disherita

By that Sir Percivale ha there till midday he saw a rowing in the sea as all the w world had driven it. And s under that rock. And when vale saw this, he hied him th found the ship covered with blacker than any bier, and th a gentlewoman of great beaut was clothed richly that none better. And when she saw

said, Who brought you in this
ss where ye be never like to
ıce? for ye shall die here for
ınd mischief. Damsel, said Sir
ɛ, I serve the best man of the
.nd in his service he will not
ɛ to die, for who that knocketh
ter, and who that asketh shall
ıd who that seeketh him, he
im not. But then she said, Sir
ɛ wot ye what I am? Yea, said
w who taught you my name?
:. Now, said Sir Percivale, I
ɔu better than ye ween. And I
ıt of the waste forest, where
the red knight with the white
said the damsel. Ah damsel,
with that knight would I meet
fain. Sir, said she, and ye will
ıe, by the faith that ye owe unto
ɔod, that ye shall do my will
ne I summon you, I shall bring
o that knight. Yea, said he, I
omise you to fulfil your desire.
id she, now shall I tell you, I
ı in the forest chasing two
to a water, the which is called
ɛ, and he drove them into that
ır dread of death, and the two
passed over, and the red knight
ıfter, and there his horse was
l, and he through great strength
unto the land. Thus she told
l Sir Percivale was passing glad

Then she asked him if he
n any meat late? Nay madam,
ate no meat nigh these three
t late here I spake with a good
ıt fed me with his good words
y, and refreshed me greatly.
ɪnight, said she, that same man
nchanter, and a multiplier of
For, and ye believe him, ye
inly be shamed, and die in this
pure hunger, and be eaten with
sts, and ye be a young man and
y knight, and I shall help you
will. What are ye? said Sir
e, that proffereth me thus great
:. I am, said she, a gentle-
that am disherited, which was
e the richest woman of the
Damsel, said Sir Percivale, who
hath disherited you, for I have great pity of you? Sir, said she, I dwelled with the greatest man of the world, and he made me so fair and so clear that there was none like me, and of that great beauty I had a little pride, more than I ought to have had. Also, I said a word that pleased him not. And then he would not suffer me to be any longer in his company, and so drove me from mine heritage, and so disherited me, and he had never pity of me nor of none of my council, nor of my court. And sithen, sir knight, it hath befallen me so, and through me and mine I have taken from him many of his men, and made them to become my men. For they ask never nothing of me but I give it them, that and much more. Thus I and all my servants war against him night and day. Therefore I know now no good knight, nor no good man, but I get them on my side and I may. And for that I know that thou art a good knight, I beseech you to help me. And for ye be a fellow of the Round Table, wherefore ye ought not to fail no gentlewoman which is disherited, and she besought you of help.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir Percivale promised her help, and how he required her of love, and how he was saved from the fiend.

Then Sir Percivale promised her all the help that he might. And then she thanked him. And at that time the weather was hot, and then she called unto her a gentlewoman, and bad her bring forth a pavilion; and so she did, and pight it upon the gravel. Sir, said she, now may ye rest you in this heat of the day. Then he thanked her, and she put off his helm and his shield, and there he slept a great while. And then he awoke, and asked her if she had any meat, and she said, Yea, also ye shall have enough; and so there was set enough upon the table, and thereon so much that he had marvel, for there was all manner of meats that he could think on. Also he drank there the strongest wine that ever he drank, him thought,

and therewith he was a little heated more than he ought to be. With that he beheld the gentlewoman, and him thought that she was the fairest creature that ever he saw. And then Sir Percivale proffered her love, and prayed her that she would be his. Then she refused him in a manner when he required her, for the cause he should be the more ardent on her, and ever he ceased not to pray her of love. And when she saw him well enchafed, then she said, Sir Percivale, wit ye well, I shall not fulfil your will, but if ye swear from henceforth ye shall be my true servant, and to do nothing but that I shall command you: will ye ensure me this as ye be a true knight? Yea, said he, fair lady, by the faith of my body. Well, said she, now shall ye do with me whatso it please you, and now wit ye well that ye are the knight in the world that I have most desire to. And then Sir Percivale came near to her, to proffer her love, and by adventure and grace he saw his sword lie upon the ground all naked, in whose pommel was a red cross, and the sign of the crucifix therein, and bethought him on his knighthood, and his promise made toforehand unto the good man. Then he made the sign of the cross in his forehead, and therewith the pavilion turned up so down, and then it changed unto a smoke and a black cloud, and then he was adread, and cried aloud,—

CHAP. X.

How Sir Percivale for penance rove himself through the thigh; and how she was known for the devil.

FAIR sweet Father, Jesu Christ, ne let me not be shamed, the which was near lost had not thy good grace been! And then he looked into a ship, and saw her enter therein, which said, Sir Percivale, ye have betrayed me. And so she went with the wind roaring and yelling, that it seemed that all the water burnt after her. Then Sir Percivale made great sorrow, and drew his sword unto him, saying, Sithen my flesh will be my master, I shall punish it. And therewith he rove himself through the thigh, that the blood start about him, and said, O good Lord, take this in recompensation of that I have done against thee my Lord. So then he clothed him and armed him, and called himself a wretch, saying, How nigh was I lost, and to have lost that I should never have gotten again, that was my virginity, for that may never be recovered after it is once lost. And then he stopped his bleeding wound with a piece of his shirt. Thus as he made his moan, he saw the same ship come from the Orient that the good man was in the day before: and the noble knight was ashamed with himself, and therewith he fell in a swoon. And when he awoke he went unto him weakly, and there he saluted this good man. And then he asked Sir Percivale, How hast thou done sith I departed? Sir, said he, here was a gentlewoman, and led me into deadly sin: and there he told him altogether. Knew ye not the maid? said the good man. Sir, said he, nay: but well I wot the fiend sent her hither to shame me. Oh, good knight, said he, thou art a fool, for that gentlewoman was the master fiend of hell, the which hath power above all devils, and that was the old lady that thou sawest in thy vision riding on the serpent. Then he told Sir Percivale how our Lord Jesu Christ beat him out of heaven for his sin, the which was the most brightest angel of heaven, and therefore he lost his heritage, and that was the champion that thou foughtest withal, the which had overcome thee, had not the grace of God been: now beware, Sir Percivale, and take this for an ensample. And then the good man vanished away. Then Sir Percivale took his arms, and entered into the ship, and so departed from thence.

Here endeth the fourtenthe booke, whiche is of syr percyual. And here followeth of syre launcelot whiche is the fyftenth booke.

The Fifteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

r Launcelot came into a chapel, be found dead, in a white shirt, a of religion of an hundred winter

s the hermit had kept Sir Laun-
ree days, the hermit gat him an
n helm, and a sword. And then
arted about the hour of noon.
ien he saw a little house, and
ie came near he saw a chapel,
:re beside he saw an old man
s clothed all in white full richly,
:n Sir Launcelot said, God save
God keep you, said the good
nd make you a good knight.
ir Launcelot alight, and entered
: chapel, and there he saw an old
:ad, in a white shirt of passing
th. Sir, said the good man, this
at is dead ought not to be in such
ɜ as ye see him in, for in that
.e the oath of his order. For he
en more than an hundred winters
of a religion. And then the good
id Sir Launcelot went into the
and the good man took a stole
is neck, and a book, and then he
d on that book, and with that
.w in an hideous figure and an
:, that there was no man so hard-
nor so hard but he should have
eard. Then said the fiend, Thou
'availed me greatly, now tell
at thou wilt with me? I will,
e good man, that thou tell me
ny fellow became dead, and
r he be saved or damned? Then
with a horrible voice, He is not
t saved. How may that be? said
id man; it seemed to me that
l not well, for he brake his order
wear a shirt, where he ought to
one: and who that trespasseth
our order doth not well. Not
l the fiend, this man that lieth here dead was come of a great lineage. And there was a lord that hight the earl de Vale, that held great war against this man's nephew, the which hight Aguarus. And so this Aguarus saw the earl was bigger than he, then he went for to take counsel of his uncle, the which lieth here dead as ye may see. And then he asked leave, and went out of his hermitage for to maintain his nephew against the mighty earl. And so it happed that this man that lieth here dead did so much by his wisdom and hardiness that the earl was taken, and three of his lords, by force of this dead man.

CHAP. II.

Of a dead man, how men would have hewen him, and it would not be, and how Sir Launcelot took the hair of the dead man.

THEN was there peace betwixt the earl and this Aguarus, and great surety that the earl should never war against him. Then this dead man that here lieth came to this hermitage again, and then the earl made two of his nephews for to be avenged upon this man. So they came on a day, and found this dead man at the sacring of his mass, and they abode him till he had said mass. And then they set upon him and drew out swords to have slain him. But there would no sword bite on him, more than upon a gad of steel, for the high Lord which he served he him preserved. Then made they a great fire, and did off all his cloathes and the hair off his back; and then this dead man hermit said unto them, Ween ye to burn me? It shall not lie in your power, nor to perish me as much as a thread, and there were any on my body. No! said one of them, it shall be assayed. And then they despoiled him, and put upon him this shirt, and cast him in a fire

and there he lay all that night till it was day, in that fire, and was not dead. And so in the morn I came and found him dead, but I found neither thread nor skin perished; and so took him out of the fire with great fear, and laid him here as ye may see. And now may ye suffer me to go my way, for I have said you the truth. And then he departed with a great tempest. Then was the good man and Sir Launcelot more gladder than they were tofore. And then Sir Launcelot dwelled with that good man that night. Sir, said the good man, be ye not Sir Launcelot du Lake? Yea, sir, said he. What seek ye in this country? Sir, said Sir Launcelot, I go to seek the adventures of the Sancgreal. Well, said he, seek it ye may well, but though it were here ye shall have no power to see it, no more than a blind man should see a bright sword, and that is long on your sin, and else ye were more abler than any man living. And then Sir Launcelot began to weep. Then said the good man, Were ye confessed sith ye entered into the quest of the Sancgreal? Yea, sir, said Sir Launcelot. Then upon the morn, when the good man had sung his mass, then they buried the dead man. Then Sir Launcelot said, Father, what shall I do? Now, said the good man, I require you take this hair that was this holy man's, and put it next thy skin, and it shall prevail thee greatly. Sir, and I will do it, said Sir Launcelot. Also I charge you that ye eat no flesh as long as ye be in the quest of the Sancgreal, nor ye shall drink no wine, and that ye hear mass daily and ye may do it. So he took the hair and put it upon him, and so departed at evensong time. And so rode he into a forest, and there he met with a gentlewoman riding upon a white palfrey, and then she asked him, Sir knight, whither ride ye? Certes damsel, said Launcelot, I wot not whither I ride, but as fortune leadeth me. Ah, Sir Launcelot, said she, I wot what adventure ye seek, for ye were aforetime nearer than ye be now, and yet shall ye see it more openly than ever ye did, and that shall ye unders short time. Then Sir Launcelo her where he might be harbour night? Ye shall not find this c night, but to-morn ye shall find l good, and ease of that ye be i of. And then he commended h God. Then he rode till that h to a cross, and took that for l as for that night.

CHAP. III.

Of a vision that Sir Launcelot h how he told it to an hermit, and counsel of him.

And so he put his horse to and did off his helm and his shi made his prayers unto the cr he never fall in deadly sin And so he laid him down t And anon as he was asleep it be there a vision, that there came afore him all by compass of st that man had a crown of gold head, and that man led in his fel seven kings and two knights. these worshipped the cross, l upon their knees, holding u hands towards the heaven; and said, Fair sweet Father of heave and visit us, and yield unto u each as we have deserved. Then Launcelot up to the heaven, a seemed the clouds did open, and man came down with a com angels, and alight among them, a unto every each his blessing, an them his servants, and good a knights. And when this old m said thus, he came to one o knights and said, I have lost I have set in thee, for thou ha thee against me as a warrior, a wrong wars with vain glory, m the pleasure of the world than t me, therefore thou shalt be con without thou yield me my treasu this vision saw Sir Launcelot cross. And on the morn he t horse and rode till mid day, an by adventure, he met with th knight that took his horse, hi

sword, when he slept when the
al appeared afore the cross.
Sir Launcelot saw him he sa-
im not fair, but cried on high,
keep thee, for thou hast done
reat unkindness. And then they
re them their spears, and Sir
ot came so fiercely upon him
smote him and his horse down
arth, that he had nigh broken his
Then Sir Launcelot took the
horse, that was his own afore-
nd descended from the horse he
n, and tied the knight's own
a tree, that he might find that
hen that he was arisen.

Sir Launcelot rode till night,
adventure he met an hermit, and
them saluted other, and there
d with that good man all night,
e his horse such as he might
hen said the good man unto
lot, Of whence be ye? Sir, said
m of Arthur's court, and my
Sir Launcelot du Lake, that
e quest of the Sancgreal. And
e I pray you to counsel me of
, the which I had at the cross.
he told him all.

CHAP. IV.

*e hermit expounded to Sir Laun-
bis vision, and told him that Sir
bad was his son.*

ir Launcelot, said the good man,
ou mightest understand the high
that thou art come of, and thy
etokeneth: After the passion of
rist forty years, Joseph of Ara-
preached the victory of king
, that he had in the battles the
f his enemies. And of the seven
nd the two knights: the first of
called Nappus, an holy man;
second hight Nacien, in remem-
of his grandsire, and in him
our Lord Jesu Christ; and the
s called Hellias le Grose; and
rth hight Lisais; and the fifth
onas, he departed out of his
and went into Wales, and took
ghter of Manuel, whereby he
had the land of Gaul, and he came to dwell in this country, and of him came king Launcelot thy grandsire, which there wedded the king's daughter of Ireland, and he was as worthy a man as thou art, and of him came king Ban thy father, the which was the last of the seven kings. And by thee, Sir Launcelot, it signifieth that the angels said thou were none of the seven fellowships. And the last was the ninth knight, he was signified to a lion, for he should pass all manner of earthly knights, that is Sir Galahad, the which thou gat of king Pelles' daughter, and thou ought to thank God more than any other man living; for of a sinner earthly thou hast no peer as in knighthood, nor never shall be. But little thank hast thou given to God for all the great virtues that God hath lent thee.

Sir, said Launcelot, ye say that that good knight is my son. That oughtest thou to know, and no man better, said the good man, for by the daughter of king Pelles thou hadst Galahad, and that was he that at the feast of Pentecost sat in the siege perilous, and therefore make thou it known openly that he is thy son, for that will be your worship and honour, and to all thy kindred. And I counsel you in no place press not upon him to have ado with him. Well, said Launcelot, me seemeth that good knight should pray for me unto the high Father that I fall not to sin again. Trust thou well, said the good man, thou farest much the better for his prayer; but the son shall not bear the wickedness of the father, nor the father shall not bear the wickedness of the son, but every each shall bear his own burthen; and therefore beseek thou only God, and he will help thee in all thy needs. And then Sir Launcelot and he went to supper, and so laid him to rest, and the hair pricked so Sir Launcelot's skin, which grieved him full sore, but he took it meekly, and suffered the pain. And so on the morn he heard his mass, and took his arms, and so took his leave.

CHAP. V.

How Sir Launcelot jusied with many knights, and how he was taken.

And then he mounted upon his horse and rode into a forest, and held no highway. And as he looked afore him he saw a fair plain, and beside that a fair castle, and afore the castle were many pavilions of silk and of divers hue. And him seemed that he saw there five hundred knights riding on horseback, and there were two parties; they that were of the castle were all on black horses, and their trappings black. And they that were without were all on white horses and trappings: and every each hurtled to other, that it marvelled Sir Launcelot. And at the last him thought they of the castle were put to the worse. Then thought Sir Launcelot for to help there the weaker party, in increasing of his chivalry. And so Sir Launcelot thrust in among the party of the castle, and smote down a knight, horse and man, to the earth. And then he rashed here and there, and did marvellous deeds of arms. And then he drew out his sword and strake many knights to the earth, so that all those that saw him marvelled that ever one knight might do so great deeds of arms. But always the white knights held them nigh about Sir Launcelot, for to tire him and wind him.

But at the last, as a man may not ever endure, Sir Launcelot waxed so faint of fighting and travailing, and was so weary of his great deeds, that he might not lift up his arms for to give one stroke, so that he wend never to have borne arms: and then they all took him and led him away into a forest, and there made him to alight and to rest him. And then all the fellowship of the castle were overcome for the default of him, and then they said all unto Sir Launcelot, Blessed be God that ye be now of our fellowship, for we shall hold you in our prison. And so they left him with few words. And then Sir Launcelot made great sorrow, —For never or now was I never at tournament nor justs but I best, and now I am shame then he said, Now I am sure t more sinfuller than ever I wa he rode sorrowing, and half a he out of despair, till that he c a deep valley, and when Sir I saw he might not ride up mountain, he there alight u apple-tree, and there he left l and his shield, and put his hc pasture. And then he laid him sleep. And then him thoug came an old man afore him, tl said, Ah, Launcelot, of evil f poor belief, wherefore is thy wi so lightly towards thy deadly si when he had said thus he away, and Launcelot wist not v was become. Then he took h and armed him. And as he roc way he saw a chapel, where v cluse, which had a window might see up to the altar. aloud she called Launcelot, foi seemed a knight errant. And came, and she asked him what and of what place, and where : went to seek.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot told his vi a woman, and how she expour him.

And then he told her altogetl by word, and the truth how it l at the tournament. And after his vision, that he had had that his sleep, and prayed her to what it might mean, for he was content with it. Ah, Launcel she, as long as ye were knight o knighthood, ye were the most m man of the world, and most turous. Now, said the lady, sin set among the knights of heav ventures, if adventure fell the at that tournament, have thou vel; for that tournament yeste but a tokening of our Lord. An then there was none enchantn they at the tournament were

The tournament was a token
ho should have most knights,
zar the son of king Pelles, or
he son of king Harlon; but
s all clothed in white, and
was covered in black, the
e come. All what this be-
shall tell you. The day of
when king Arthur held his
efell that earthly kings and
ok a tournament together,
ay the quest of the Sancgreal.
y knights were they, the which
ed all in black, and the cover-
neth the sins whereof they
nfessed. And they with the
f white betokeneth virginity,
that chosen chastity. And
the quest begun in them.
beheld the sinners and the
, and when thou sawest the
ercome, thou inclinedst to
for boasting and pride of the
all that must be left in that
r in this quest thou shalt
fellows and thy betters, for
feeble of evil trust and good
made it when thou were
e they took thee, and led thee
orest. And anon there ap-
Sancgreal unto the white
ut thou was so feeble of
f and faith, that thou might
t, for all the teaching of the
but anon thou turnedst unto
; and that caused thy misad-
venture, that thou shouldest know good from evil and vain glory of the world, the which is not worth a pear. And for great pride thou madest great sorrow that thou hadst not overcome all the white knights with the covering of white, by whom was betokened virginity and chastity, and therefore God was wroth with you, for God loveth no such deeds in this quest; and this vision signifieth that thou were of evil faith and of poor belief, the which will make thee to fall into the deep pit of hell, if thou keep thee not. Now have I warned thee of thy vain glory and of thy pride, that thou hast many times erred against thy Maker. Beware of everlasting pain, for of all earthly knights I have most pity of thee, for I know well thou hast not thy peer of any earthly sinful man. And so she commanded Sir Launcelot to dinner; and after dinner he took his horse and commended her to God, and so rode into a deep valley, and there he saw a river and an high mountain. And through the water he must needs pass, the which was hideous; and then in the name of God he took it with good heart. And when he came over he saw an armed knight, horse and man black as any bear: without any word he smote Sir Launcelot's horse to the earth, and so he passed on: he wist not where he was become. And then he took his helm and his shield, and thanked God of his adventure.

leueth of the story of syr launcelot. And speke we of sir Gawayne, the whiche is the xvi. book.

The Sixteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

awaine was nigh weary of the the Sangreal, and of his mar-vream.

Sir Gawaine was departed ellowship, he rode long with-dventure. For he found not the tenth part of adventure as he was wont to do. For Sir Gawaine rode from Whitsunday unto Michaelmas, and found none adventure that pleased him. So on a day it befell Gawaine met with Sir Ector de Maris, and either made great joy of other, that it were marvel to tell. And so they told every each

other, and complained them greatly that they could find none adventure.

Truly, said Sir Gawaine unto Sir Ector, I am nigh weary of this quest, and loth I am to follow further in strange countries. One thing marvelleth me, said Sir Ector, I have met with twenty knights, fellows of mine, and all they complain as I do. I marvel, said Sir Gawaine, where that Sir Launcelot your brother is. Truly, said Sir Ector, I cannot hear of him, nor of Sir Galahad, Percivale, nor Sir Bors. Let them be, said Sir Gawaine, for they four have no peers. And if one thing were not in Sir Launcelot, he had no fellow of none earthly man; but he is as we be, but if he took more pain upon him. But and these four be met together, they will be loth that any man meet with them; for, and they fail of the Sancgreal, it is in waste of all the remnant to recover it. Thus as Ector and Gawaine rode more than eight days. And on a Saturday they found an old chapel, the which was wasted that there seemed no man thither repaired, and there they alight, and set their spears at the door, and in they entered into the chapel, and there made their orisons a great while, and then set them down in the sieges of the chapel. And as they spake of one thing and other, for heaviness they fell on sleep, and there befell them both marvellous adventures. Sir Gawaine him seemed he came into a meadow full of herbs and flowers. And there he saw a rack of bulls an hundred and fifty, that were proud and black, save three of them were all white, and one had a black spot, and the other two were so fair and so white that they might be no whiter. And these three bulls which were so fair were tied with two strong cords. And the remnant of the bulls said among them, Go we hence to seek better pasture. And so some went, and some came again; but they were so lean that they might not stand upright; and of the bulls that were so white, that one came again, and no more. But when this white bull was come again among these other, there arose up a grea of wind that failed them; departed, one here and a This vision befell Sir C night.

CHAP. II.

Of the vision of Sir Ector justed with Sir Uwaine le sworn brother.

But to Sir Ector de another vision, the conti seemed him that his broth celot and he alight out of lept upon two horses, and to the other, Go we seek not find. And him thoug beat Sir Launcelot and d and clothed him in anoth which was all full of kn him upon an ass. And so he came to the fairest well saw, and Sir Launcelot aligl have drunk of that well. stooped to drink of the wat sank from him. And wher lot saw that, he turned and as the head came from. meanwhile he trowed that Sir Ector rode till that t a rich man's house, wher a wedding. And there he the which said, Sir knight place for you: and ther again unto the chair that h Thus within a while bo and Ector awaked, and eith of their vision, the whic them greatly. Truly, said I never be merry till I hear t brother Launcelot.

Now as they sat thus saw an hand shewing unt and was covered with red upon that hung a bridle held within the fist a great burnt right clear, and so them, and entered into the then vanished away, and not where. And anon a voice which said, Kni evil faith and poor belie things have failed you, and

me to the adventures of the
Then first spake Gawaine
Ector, have ye heard these
ea truly, said Sir Ector, I
Now go we, said Sir Ector,
hermit that will tell us of
for it seemeth me we labour
And so they departed and
valley, and there met with a
h rode on an hackney, and
him fair. Sir, said Gawaine,
teach us to any hermit?
e in a little mountain, said
but it is so rough that there
se go thither; and therefore
on foot: there shall ye find
se, and there is Nacien the
ch is the holiest man in this
And so they departed either
And then in a valley they
a knight all armed, which
em to just as far as he saw
ly, said Sir Gawaine, sith I
om Camelot there was none
ne to just but once. And
aid Ector, let me just with
, said Gawaine, ye shall
be beaten, it shall not for-
en if ye go after me. And
enbraced other to just, and
her as fast as their horses
and brast their shields and
and the one more than the
Gawaine was wounded in
e, but the other knight was
ough the breast, and the
out on the other side, and
both out of their saddles,
falling they brake both their
ion Gawaine arose, and set
o his sword, and cast his
: him. But all for nought
the knight had no power
ainst him. Then said Ga-
must yield you as an over-
, or else I may slay you.
ght, said he, I am but dead;
ake, and of your gentleness,
e unto an abbey, that I may
Creator. Sir, said Gawaine,
house of religion hereby.
he knight, set me on an
: you, and I shall teach you.
Gawaine set him up in the saddle, and he lept up behind him for to sustain him, and so came to an abbey, where they were well received; and anon he was unarmed, and received his Creator. Then he prayed Gawaine to draw the truncheon of the spear out of his body. Then Gawaine asked him what he was, that knew him not? I am, said he, of king Arthur's court, and was a fellow of the Round Table, and we were brethren sworn together, and now, Sir Gawaine, thou hast slain me, and my name is Uwaine les Avoutres, that sometime was son unto king Uriens, and was in the quest of the Sancgreal; and now forgive it thee God, for it shall ever be said that the one sworn brother hath slain the other.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector came to an hermitage to be confessed, and how they told to the hermit their visions.

Alas, said Sir Gawaine, that ever this misadventure is befallen me. No force, said Uwaine, sith I shall die this death, of a much more worshipfuller man's hands might I not die; but when ye come to the court, recommand me unto my lord king Arthur, and all those that be left onlive, and for old brotherhood think on me. Then began Gawaine to weep, and Ector also. And then Uwaine himself, and Sir Gawaine, drew out the truncheon of the spear; and anon departed the soul from the body. Then Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector buried him, as men ought to bury a king's son, and made written upon his name, and by whom he was slain.

Then departed Gawaine and Ector, as heavy as they might for their misadventure; and so rode till that they came unto the rough mountain, and there they tied their horses, and went on foot to the hermitage. And when they were come up, they saw a poor house, and beside the chapel a little courtlage, where Nacien the hermit gathered worts, as he which had tasted none other meat of a great while. And when he saw

the errant knights, he came toward them and saluted them, and they him again. Fair lords, said he, what adventure brought you hither? Sir, said Gawaine, to speak with you, for to be confessed. Sir, said the hermit, I am ready. Then they told him so much that he wist well what they were, and then he thought to counsel them if he might. Then began Gawaine first, and told him of his vision that he had had in the chapel: and Ector told him all as it is afore rehearsed. Sir, said the hermit unto Sir Gawaine, the fair meadow and the rack therein ought to be understood the Round Table, and by the meadow ought to be understood humility and patience, those be the things which be always green and quick; for men may no time overcome humility and patience, therefore was the Round Table founded, and the chivalry hath been at all times, so by the fraternity which was there that she might not be overcome. For men said she was founded in patience and in humility. At the rack ate an hundred and fifty bulls, but they ate not in the meadow, for their hearts should be set in humility and patience, and the bulls were proud and black, save only three. By the bulls is to understand the fellowship of the Round Table, which for their sin and their wickedness be black. Blackness is to say without good or virtuous works. And the three bulls which were white, save only one which was spotted;—the two white betoken Sir Galahad and Sir Percivale, for they be maidens clean and without spot; and the third that had a spot signifieth Sir Bors de Ganis, which trespassed but once in his virginity, but since he kept himself so well in chastity that all is forgiven him, and his misdeeds. And why those three were tied by the necks, they be three knights in virginity and chastity, and there is no pride smitten in them. And the black bulls which said, Go we hence, they were those which at Pentecost, at the high feast, took upon them to go in the quest of the Sancgreal without confession: they might not enter in the humility and patience.' . they returned into waste signifieth death, for the many of them: every shall slay other for sin, shall escape shall be it shall be marvel to see of the three bulls with one shall come again, a two never.

CHAP. IV.

How the hermit expou vision.

THEN spake Nacien unto it is that Launcelot and y of one chair: the chai mastership and lordship, w down from. But ye two the hermit, ye go to seek never find, that is the Sa it is the secret thing of Christ. What is to m Launcelot fell down off h hath left pride, and ta humility, for he hath crie for his sin, and sore repe our Lord hath clothed clothing, which is full of the hair which he weareth the ass that he rode upo of humility. For God w upon no steed, nor upo So in ensample that an a meekness, that thou sawes lot ride on in thy sleep: where as the water sa when he should have t and when he saw he mi it, he returned thither fro came, for the well betoke grace of God, the more to take it, the more sl desire. So when he ca Sancgreal, he meeked him him not a man worthy t the holy vessel, for he defouled in deadly sin by many years, yet when h drink of the well, there providence of the Sancgr

ved so long the devil, he vengeance four and twenty for that he hath been the ant four and twenty years. soon after he shall return ot out of this country, and a part of such things as he

I tell you what betokeneth th the candle and the bridle; understand the Holy Ghost, ity is ever, and the bridle bstinence. For when she is christian man's heart, she ı so short that he falleth not in. And the candle which arness and sight, signifieth way of Jesu Christ. And vent, and said, Knights of and of wicked belief,—these s failed, charity, abstinence, therefore ye may not attain dventure of the Sancgreal.

CHAP. V.

ood counsel that the hermit gave to him.

said Gawaine, soothly have at I see it openly. Now I good man and holy father, r we met not with so many as we were wont to do, and have the better. I shall tell , said the good man: The f the Sancgreal, which ye and have undertaken the quest ind it not, the cause is, for ı not to sinners. Wherefore though ye fail thereof, and r. For ye be an untrue l a great murderer, and to signifieth other things than or I dare say, as sinful as lot hath been, sith that he the quest of the Sancgreal ver man, nor nought shall come unto Camelot again. ı taken upon him for to for- And were not that he is not by his thought he is likely to he should be next to achieve alahad his son. But God knoweth his thought, and his unstableness, and yet shall he die right an holy man; and no doubt he hath no fellow of no earthly sinful man. Sir, said Gawaine, it seemeth me by your words, that for our sins it will not avail us to travail in this quest. Truly, said the good man, there be an hundred such as ye be, that never shall prevail but to have shame. And when they had heard these voices, they commanded him unto God.

Then the good man called Gawaine, and said, It is long time passed sith that ye were made knight, and never since thou servedst thy Maker, and now thou art so old a tree, that in thee there is neither life nor fruit; wherefore bethink thee that thou yield unto our Lord the bare rind, sith the fiend hath the leaves and the fruit. Sir, said Gawaine, and I had leisure I would speak with you, but my fellow here, Sir Ector, is gone, and abideth me yonder beneath the hill. Well, said the good man, thou were better to be counselled. Then departed Gawaine, and came to Ector, and so took their horses, and rode till they came to a foster's house which harboured them right well. And on the morn they departed from their host, and rode long or they could find any adventure.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Bors met with an hermit, and how he was confessed to him, and of his penance enjoined to him.

When Bors was departed from Camelot, he met with a religious man riding on an ass, and Sir Bors saluted him. Anon the good man knew him that he was one of the knights errant that was in the quest of the Sancgreal. What are ye? said the good man. Sir, said he, I am a knight that fain would be counselled in the quest of the Sancgreal: for he shall have much earthly worship that may bring it to an end. Certes, said the good man, that is sooth, for he shall be the best knight of the world, and the fairest of all the

fellowship. But wit you well, there shall none attain it but by cleanness, that is, pure confession. So rode they together till that they came to an hermitage. And there he prayed Bors to dwell all that night with him: and so he alight, and put away his armour, and prayed him that he might be confessed; and so they went into the chapel, and there he was clean confessed: and they eat bread, and drank water, together. Now, said the good man, I pray thee that thou eat none other, till that thou sit at the table where the Sancgreal shall be. Sir, said he, I agree me thereto; but how wit ye that I shall sit there? Yes, said the good man, that know I, but there shall be but few of your fellows with you. All is welcome, said Sir Bors, that God sendeth me. Also, said the good man, instead of a shirt, and in sign of chastisement, ye shall wear a garment; thereof I pray you do off all your clothes and your shirt, and so he did. And then he took him a scarlet coat, so that should be instead of his shirt, till he had fulfilled the quest of the Sancgreal. And the good man found him in so marvellous a life, and so stable, that he marvelled, and felt that he was never corrupt in fleshly lusts, but in one time that he begat Elian le Blank. Then he armed him, and took his leave, and so departed. And so a little from thence he looked up into a tree, and there he saw a passing great bird upon an old tree, and it was passing dry, without leaves, and the bird sat above, and had birds, the which were dead for hunger. So smote he himself with his beak, the which was great and sharp. And so the great bird bled till that he died among his birds. And the young birds took the life by the blood of the great bird. When Bors saw this, he wist well it was great tokening. For when he saw the great bird arose not, then he took his horse and went his way. So by evensong, by adventure he came to a strong tower, and an high, and there was he lodged gladly.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Bors was lodged u and how he took on him j against a champion for her l

And when he was unarme him into an high tower, wh lady, young, lusty, and fair. received him with great joy, him to sit down by her, and set to sup with flesh and mar And when Sir Bors saw th thought him on his penance, squire to bring him water. brought him, and he made so and ate them. Ah, said the l ye like not my meat. Yes, Sir Bors, God thank you m I may eat none other meat Then she spake no more time, for she was loth to him.

Then after supper they spa thing and other. With that a squire, and said, Madam, purvey you to-morn for a for else your sister will castle, and also your lands, can find a knight that will morn in your quarrel against Noire. Then she made so said, Ah Lord God, whereto ye to hold my land, whereo now be disherited without r right. And when Sir Bors her say thus, he said, I sha you. Sir, said she, I shall there was here a king that l ause, which held all this la keeping. So it mishapped h gentlewoman, a great deal el So took he her all this la keeping, and all his men to g she brought up many evil whereby she put to death a of his kinsmen. And whe that, he let chase her out of and betook it me, and all th my charge: but anon, as th king was dead, this other lad war upon me, and hath destr of my men, and turned them a that I have well nigh no ma

nought else but this high
she left me. And yet she
ed me to have this tower,
an find a knight to fight
mpion. Now tell me, said
at is that Pridam le Noire?
e, he is the most doubted
land.—Now may ye send
at ye have found a knight
ight with that Pridam le
i's quarrel and yours. Then
s not a little glad, and sent
ıe was provided. And that
ɔrs had good cheer, but in
ould come, but laid him on
r never would do otherwise
had met with the quest of

CHAP. VIII.

hich Sir Bors had that night, be fought and overcame his

ı as he was asleep, him
ɔn, that there came to him
ıe one as white as a swan,
ır was marvellous black, but
ɔ great as the other, but in
of a raven. Then the white
o him, and said, And thou
ɜ me meat and serve me, I
thee all the riches of the
shall make thee as fair and
I am. So the white bird
d there came the black bird
said, And thou wilt serve
ow, and have me in no
ıgh I be black, for wit thou
ore availeth my blackness,
her's whiteness. And then
l. And he had another
thought that he came to
:e, which seemed a chapel,
e found a chair set on the
hich was worm-eaten and
l on the right hand were
like a lily, and the one
taken the other's whiteness,
man parted them, that the
not the other, and then out
ver came out many flowers,
at plenty. Then him thought
an said, Should not he do
great folly, that would let these two flowers perish for to succour the rotten tree, that it fell not to the earth? Sir, said he, it seemeth me that this wood might not avail. Now keep thee, said the good man, that thou never see such adventure befall thee. Then he awaked and made a sign of the cross in the midst of the forehead, and so rose and clothed him, and there came the lady of the place, and she saluted him, and he her again, and so went to a chapel, and heard their service. And there came a company of knights that the lady had sent for, to lead Sir Bors unto battle. Then asked he his arms. And when he was armed, she prayed him to take a little morsel to dine. Nay, madam, said he, that shall I not do, till I have done my battle, by the grace of God. And so he lept upon his horse, and departed all the knights and men with him. And as soon as these two ladies met together, she which Bors should fight for, complained her, and said, Madam, ye have done me wrong to bereave me of my lands that king Aniause gave me, and full loth I am there should be any battle. Ye shall not choose, said the other lady, or else your knight withdraw him. Then there was the cry made, which party had the better of those two knights, that this lady should enjoy all the land. Now departed the one knight here, and the other there. Then they came together with such force that they pierced their shields and their hauberks, and the spears flew in pieces, and they wounded either other sore. Then hurtled they together so that they fell both to the earth, and their horses betwixt their legs. And anon they arose, and set hands to their swords, and smote each one other upon the heads, that they made great wounds and deep, that the blood went out of their bodies. For there found Sir Bors greater defence in that knight more than he wend. For that Pridam was a passing good knight, and he wounded Sir Bors full evil, and he him again. But ever this Sir Pridam held the stour in like hard.

That perceived Sir Bors, and suffered him till he was nigh attaint, and then he ran upon him more and more, and the other went back for dread of death. So in his withdrawing he fell upright, and Sir Bors drew his helm so strongly that he rent it from his head, and gave him great strokes with the flat of his sword upon the visage, and bade him yield him, or he should slay him. Then he cried him mercy, and said, Fair knight, for God's love slay me not, and I shall ensure thee never to war against thy lady, but be alway toward her. Then Bors let him be. Then the old lady fled with all her knights.

CHAP. IX.

How the lady was restored to her lands by the battle of Sir Bors, and of his departing, and how he met Sir Lionel taken and beaten with thorns, and also of a maid which should have been disbonoured.

So then came Bors to all those that held lands of his lady, and said he should destroy them but if they did such service unto her as belonged to their lands. So they did their homage, and they that would not were chased out of their lands. Then befell that young lady to come to her estate again, by the mighty prowess of Sir Bors de Ganis. So when all the country was well set in peace, then Sir Bors took his leave and departed, and she thanked him greatly, and would have given him great riches, but he refused it. Then he rode all that day till night, and came to an harbour, to a lady which knew him well enough, and made of him great joy. Upon the morn, as soon as the day appeared, Bors departed from thence, and so rode into a forest unto the hour of mid-day, and there befell him a marvellous adventure. So he met at the departing of the two ways two knights, that led Lionel his brother all naked, bounden upon a strong hackney, and his hands bounden tofore his breast: and every each of them held in his hand thorns, wherewith they went beating him so sore that the blood trailed down more than in an hundred places of his body, so that he was all blood tofore and behind, but he said never a word, as he which was great of heart; he suffered all that ever they did to him as though he had felt none anguish. Anon Sir Bors dressed him to rescue him that was his brother: and so he looked upon the other side of him, and saw a knight which brought a fair gentlewoman, and would have set her in the thickest place of the forest, for to have been the more surer out of the way from them that sought him. And she, which was nothing assured, cried with an high voice, Saint Mary, succour your maid!

And anon she espied where Sir Bors came riding. And when she came nigh him, she deemed him a knight of the Round Table, whereof she hoped to have some comfort; and then she conjured him, by the faith that he owed unto Him in whose service thou art entered in, and for the faith ye owe unto the high order of knighthood, and for the noble king Arthur's sake, that I suppose that made thee knight, that thou help me, and suffer me not to be shamed of this knight!

When Bors heard her say thus, he had so much sorrow there he nist not what to do. For if I let my brother be in adventure he must be slain, and that would I not for all the earth. And if I help not the maid, she is shamed for ever, and also she shall lose her honour, the which she shall never get again. Then lift he up his eyes, and said weeping, Fair sweet Lord Jesu Christ, whose liege man I am, keep Lionel my brother, that these knights slay him not; and for pity of you, and for Mary's sake, I shall succour this maid.

CHAP. X.

How Sir Bors left to rescue his brother, and rescued the damsel; and how it was told him that Lionel was dead.

THEN dressed he him unto the knight the which had the gentlewoman, and

ied, Sir knight, let your hand naiden, or ye be but dead. he set down the maiden and l at all pieces, save he lacked .Then he dressed his shield, out his sword, and Bors smote rd that it went through his haberjon on the left shoulder; gh great strength he beat him he earth; and at the pulling rs' spear there he swooned. ame Bors to the maid, and w seemeth it you? Of this : be delivered at this time. said she, I pray you lead as this knight had me.— I do gladly: and took the the wounded knight, and set ewoman upon him, and so er as she desired. Sir knight, ye have better sped than ye or if ye had not saved me five nen should have died for it. knight was he that had you orest? — By my faith, said my cousin. So wot I never at craft the fiend enchafed esterday he took me from my ivily; for I nor none of my ien mistrusted him not. And shamed me, he should have he sin, and his body shamed noured for ever. Thus as she king with him, there came nights seeking after her, and told them all how Bors had her; then they made great besought him to come to her great lord, and he should be come. Truly, said Bors, that be at this time, for I have a venture to do in this country. nmended them unto God, and

Then Sir Bors rode after s brother by the trace of their Thus he rode seeking a great hen he overtook a man clothed ious clothing, and rode on a ack horse, blacker than a bery, Sir knight, what seek you? Sir, seek my brother, that I saw while beaten with two knights. discomfort you not, nor fall into no vain hope, for I shall tell you tidings such as they be; for truly he is dead. Then shewed he him a new slain body, lying in a bush, and it seemed him well that it was the body of Lionel. And then he made such a sorrow that he fell to the earth all in a swoon, and lay a great while there. And when he came to himself he said, Fair brother, sith the company of you and me is parted, shall I never have joy in my heart; and now He which I have taken unto my Master, He be my help. And when he had said thus, he took his body lightly in his arms, and put it upon the bow of his saddle. And then he said to the man, Canst thou tell me unto some chapel, where that I may bury this body? Come on, said he, here is one fast by. And so long they rode till they saw a fair tower, and afore it there seemed an old feeble chapel. And then they alight both, and put him into a tomb of marble.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Bors told his dream to a priest which he had dreamed, and of the counsel that the priest gave to him.

Now leave we him here, said the good man, and go we to harbour till to-morrow, we will come here again to do him service. Sir, said Bors, be ye a priest? Yea, forsooth, said he.—Then I pray you tell me a dream that befell to me the last night.— Say on, said he. Then he began so much to tell him of the great bird in the forest: and after told him of his birds, one white, another black; and of the rotten tree, and of the white flowers. Sir, said the priest, I shall tell you a part now, and the other deal to-morrow. The white fowl betokeneth a gentlewoman, fair and rich, which loveth thee, and hath loved thee long; and if thou refuse her love, she shall go die anon, if thou have no pity on her. That signifieth the great bird, the which shall make thee for to refuse her. Now, for no fear nor for no dread that thou hast of God, thou shalt not refuse her, but thou wouldest

not do it for to be holden chaste, for to conquer the praise of the vain-glory of the world; for that shall befall thee now, and thou refuse her, that Launcelot, the good knight thy consin, shall die. And therefore men shall now say that thou art a manslayer, both of thy brother Sir Lionel, and of thy cousin Sir Launcelot du Lake, the which thou mightest have saved and rescued full easily. But thou weenedst to rescue a maid, which pertained nothing to thee. Now look thou whether it had been greater harm of thy brother's death, or else to have suffered her for to have lost her honour. Then asked he him, Hast thou heard the tokens of thy dream, the which I have told to you? Yea forsooth, said Sir Bors, all your exposition and declaring of my dream I have well understood and heard. Then said the man in this black clothing, Then is it in thy default if Sir Launcelot thy cousin die. Sir, said Bors, that were me loth; for wit ye well there is nothing in the world but I had lever do it than to see my lord Sir Launcelot du Lake to die in my default. Choose ye now the one or the other, said the good man. And then he led Sir Bors into an high tower, and there he found knights and ladies. Those ladies said he was welcome, and so they unarmed him. And when he was in his doublet, men brought him a mantle furred with ermine, and put it about him, and then they made him such cheer that he had forgotten all his sorrow and anguish, and only set his heart in these delights and dainties, and took no more thought for his brother Sir Lionel, neither of Sir Launcelot du Lake his cousin. And anon came out of a chamber to him the fairest lady that ever he saw, and more richer beseen than ever he saw queen Guenever, or any other estate. Lo! said they, Sir Bors, here is the lady unto whom we all owe our service, and I trow she be the richest lady, and the fairest of all the world, and the which loveth you best above all other knights, for she will have no knight but you. And when he understood that language, he was abashed. Not for then sh him, and he her; and then down together, and spake things, insomuch that she beso to be her love, for she had l above all earthly men, and sh make him richer than ever wa his age. When Sir Bors u her words he was right evil which in no manner would n chastity, so wist not he how t her.

CHAP. XII.

How the devil in a woman's liken have tempted Sir Bors, and hou grace be escaped.

Alas! said she, Bors, shall my will? Madam, said Sir B is no lady in this world whc will fulfil as of this thing, for m lieth dead which was slain r Ah, Bors, said she, I have l long for the great beauty I hav you, and great hardiness I ha of you, that needs ye must give love, and, therefore, I pray you me. Truly, said he, I shall nc no manner of wise. Then s him such sorrow as though s have died. Well, Bors, said this have ye brought me nigh end. And therewith she toel the hand, and bade him behc And ye shall see how I sha your love. Ah, said then he. I never see. Then she depa went up into a high battlemen with her twelve gentlewom when they were above, one of t women cried and said, Ah. gentle knight, have mercy on u suffer my lady to have her wi ye do not, we must suffer deatl lady, for to fall down off this h And if ye suffer us thus to little a thing, all ladies and gen will say of you dishonour. Th he upward: they seemed all great estate and richly and we Then had he of them great pit that he was un-counselled withi

ver he had they all had lost their han he is: and with that they own all at once unto the earth. hen he saw that, he was all l, and had thereof great mar- ith that he blessed his body and ge; and anon he heard a great nd a great cry, as though all the of hell had been about him, and ith he saw neither tower, ne e gentlewoman, nor no chapel he brought his brother to. Then e up both his hands to the hea- id said, Fair Father God, I am sly escaped. And then he took his nd his horse, and rode on his Then he heard a clock smite on it hand, and thither he came to ey on his right hand, closed with alls, and there was let in. Then pposed that he was one of the of the Sancgreal. So they led to a chamber, and unarmed him. id Sir Bors, if there be any holy this house, I pray you let me vith him. Then one of them led nto the abbot, which was in a

And then Sir Bors saluted him, him again. Sir, said Bors, I am ht errant, and told him all the ire which he had seen. Sir said the abbot, I wot not what for I wend never that a knight age might have been so strong grace of our Lord Jesu Christ. r then ye shall go unto your rest, ill not counsel you this day, it is e, and to-morrow I shall counsel I can.

CHAP. XIII.

holy communication of an abbot ir Bors, and how the abbot coun- l him.

that night was Sir Bors served and on the morn early he heard and the abbot came to him and n good morrow, and Bors to him

And then he told him he was a of the quest of the Sancgreal, and e had charge of the holy man to ead and water. Then [said the abbot] our Lord Jesu Christ shewed Him unto you, in the likeness of a soul that suffered great anguish for us since He was put upon the cross, and bled His heart blood for mankind: there was the token and the likeness of the Sancgreal that appeared afore you, for the blood that the great fowl bled revived the chickens from death to life. And by the bare tree is betokened the world, which is naked and without fruit, but if it come of our Lord. Also the lady for whom ye fought for, and king Aniause, which was lord there tofore, betokeneth Jesu Christ, which is the King of the world; and that ye fought with the champion for the lady, this it betoken- eth: for when ye took the battle for the lady, by her ye shall understand the new law of Jesu Christ and holy Church; and by the other lady ye shall under- stand the old law and the fiend, which all day warreth against holy Church, therefore ye did your battle with right. For ye be Jesu Christ's knights, therefore ye ought to be defenders of holy Church. And by the black bird might ye un- derstand the holy Church, which saith I am black, but he is fair. And by the white bird might men understand the fiend. And I shall tell you how the swan is white without forth, and black within; it is hypocrisy which is without yellow or pale, and seemeth without forth the servants of Jesu Christ, but they be within so horrible of filth and sin, and beguile the world evil. Also when the fiend appeared to thee in like- ness of a man of religion, and blamed thee that thou left thy brother for a lady, so led thee where thou seemed thy brother was slain, but he is yet on live, and all was for to put thee in error, and bring thee unto vain hope and lechery, for he knew thou were tender hearted, and all was for thou shouldest not find the blessed adventure of the Sancgreal. And the third fowl betokeneth the strong battle against the fair ladies which were all devils. Also the dry tree, and the white lily:—the dry tree betokeneth thy brother Sir Lionel, which is dry without virtue, and

therefore many men ought to call him the rotten tree, and the worm-eaten tree, for he is a murderer and doth contrary to the order of knighthood. And the two white flowers signify two maidens, the one is a knight which was wounded the other day, and the other is the gentlewoman which ye rescued; and why the other flower drew nigh the other, that was the knight which would have dishonoured her, and himself both. And, Sir Bors, ye had been a great fool, and in great peril, to have seen those two flowers perish for to succour the rotten tree, for and they had sinned together they had been damned: and for that ye rescued them both, men might call you a very knight and servant of Jesu Christ.

CHAP. XIV.

How Sir Bors met with his brother Sir Lionel, and how Sir Lionel would have slain Sir Bors.

THEN went Sir Bors from thence, and commended the abbot unto God. And then he rode all that day, and harboured with an old lady. And on the morn he rode to a castle in a valley, and there he met with a yeoman going a great pace toward a forest. Say me, said Sir Bors, canst thou tell me of any adventure? Sir, said he, here shall be under this castle a great and a marvellous tournament. Of what folks shall it be? said Sir Bors. The earl of Plains (said he) shall be on the one party, and the lady's nephew of Hervin on the other party. Then Bors thought to be there, if he might meet with his brother Sir Lionel, or any other of his fellowship which were in the quest of the Sancgreal. And then he turned to an hermitage that was in the entry of the forest. And when he was come thither, he found there Sir Lionel his brother, which sat all armed at the entry of the chapel door, for to abide there harbour till on the morn that the tournament shall be. And when Sir Bors saw him he had great joy of him, that was it marvel to tell of his joy. And then he alight off his horse and said, Fair sweet brother, when came ye hither? Anon as Sir Lionel saw him he said, Ah Bors, ye may not make none avaunt, but, as for you, I might have been slain; when ye saw two knights leading me away, beating me, ye left me to succour a gentlewoman, and suffered me in peril of death: for never erst ne did no brother to another so great an untruth. And for that misdeed now I ensure you but death, for well have ye deserved it; therefore keep thee from henceforward, and that shall ye find as soon as I am armed. When Sir Bors understood his brother's wrath, he kneeled down to the earth, and cried him mercy, holding up both his hands, and prayed him to forgive him his evil will. Nay, said Lionel, that shall never be, and I may have the higher hand, that I make mine avow to God: thou shalt have death for it, for it were pity ye lived any longer. Right so he went in, and took his harness, and mounted upon his horse, and came tofore him and said, Bors, keep thee from me, for I shall do to thee as I would to a felon or a traitor, for ye be the untruest knight that ever came out of so worthy an house as was king Bors de Ganis, which was our father; therefore start upon thy horse, and so shall ye be most at your advantage. And but if ye will, I will run upon thee there as ye stand upon foot, and so the shame shall be mine and the harm yours; but of that shame reck I nought. When Sir Bors saw that he must fight with his brother or else to die, he nist not what to do. Then his heart counselled him not thereto, in as much as Lionel was born or he, wherefore he ought to bear him reverence; yet kneeled he down afore Lionel's horse feet, and said, Fair sweet brother, have mercy upon me and slay me not, and have in remembrance the great love which ought to be between us twain. What Sir Bors said to Lionel he recked not, for the fiend had brought him in such a will that he should slay him. Then when Lionel saw he would none other, and that he would not have risen to give him battle, he rushed over him, so that he

Bors with his horse feet upward earth, and hurt him so sore that oned of distress, the which he felt elf to have died without con-

So when Lionel saw this, he ff his horse, to have smitten off l. And so he took him by the nd would have rent it from his Then came the hermit run- nto him, which was a good d of great age, and well had d all the words that were be- them, and so fell down upon s.

CHAP. XV.

r Colgrevance fought against Sir l for to save Sir Bors, and how rmit was slain.

r he said to Lionel, Ah, gentle have mercy upon me and on thy , for if thou slay him thou shalt of sin, and that were sorrowful; s one of the worthiest knights of rld, and of the best conditions. me help, said Lionel, Sir priest, e flee from him I shall slay you, shall never the sooner be quit. said the good man, I had lever me than him, for my death ot be great harm, not half so s of his. Well, said Lionel, I am and set his hand to his sword, ote him so hard that his head ackward. Not for that he re- him of his evil will, but took ther by the helm, and unlaced it stricken off his head, and had m without fail, but so it happed, ance, a fellow of the Round came at that time thither, as our will was. And when he saw the an slain, he marvelled much what t be. And then he beheld Lionel ave slain his brother, and knew s which he loved right well. art he down and took Lionel by ulders, and drew him strongly rom Bors, and said, Lionel, will r your brother, the worthiest of the world one? and that no good man suffer. Why, said Sir Lionel, will ye let me? therefore if ye intermit you in this, I shall slay you, and him after. Why, said Colgrevance, is this sooth, that ye will slay him? Slay him will I, said he, who so say the contrary; for he hath done so much against me that he hath well deserved it; and so ran upon him, and would have smitten him through the head; and Sir Colgrevance ran betwixt them and said, And ye be so hardy to do so more, we two shall meddle together. When Lionel understood his words, he took his shield afore him, and asked him what he was; and he told him Colgrevance, one of his fellows. Then Lionel defied him, and gave him a great stroke through the helm. Then he drew his sword, for he was a passing good knight, and defended him right manfully. So long endured the battle that Sir Bors rose up all anguishly, and beheld Sir Colgrevance, the good knight, fight with his brother for his quarrel. Then was he full sorry and heavy, and thought, if Colgrevance slew him that was his brother he should never have joy, and if his brother slew Colgrevance the shame should ever be his. Then would he have risen to have departed them, but he had not so much might to stand on foot: so he abode him so long till Colgrevance had the worse, for Sir Lionel was of great chivalry and right hardy, for he had pierced the hauberk and the helm, that he abode but death. For he had lost much of his blood, that it was marvel that he might stand upright. Then beheld he Sir Bors, which sat dressing him upward, and said, Ah Bors, why come ye not to cast me out of peril of death, wherein I have put me to succour you, which were right now nigh the death? Certes, said Lionel, that shall not avail you, for none of you shall bear other's warrant, but that ye shall die both of my hand. When Bors heard that, he did so much he rose and put on his helm. Then perceived he first the hermit priest which was slain, then made he a marvellous sorrow upon him.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Lionel slew Sir Colgrevance, and how after he would have slain Sir Bors.

THEN oft Colgrevance cried upon Sir Bors, Why will ye let me die here for your sake? if it please you that I die for you the death, it will please me the better for to save a worthy man. With that word Sir Lionel smote off the helm from his head. Then Colgrevance saw that he might not escape; then he said, Fair sweet Jesu, that I have misdone have mercy upon my soul; for such sorrow that my heart suffereth for goodness, and for alms deed that I would have done here, be to me aligement of penance unto my soul's health. At these words Lionel smote him so sore that he bare him to the earth. So when he had slain Colgrevance, he ran upon his brother as a fiendly man, and gave him such a stroke that he made him stoop; and he, that was full of humility, prayed him, for God's love to leave this battle: For and it befell, fair brother, that I slew you, or ye me, we should be dead of that sin. Never God me help but if I have on you mercy, and I may have the better hand. Then drew Bors his sword, all weeping, and said, Fair brother, God knoweth mine intent. Ah, fair brother, ye have done full evil this day to slay such an holy priest, the which never trespassed. Also ye have slain a gentle knight, and one of our fellows. And well wot ye that I am not afeard of you greatly, but I dread the wrath of God; and this is an unkindly war, therefore God shew miracle upon us both. Now God have mercy upon me, though I defend my life against my brother. With that Bors lift up his hand, and would have smitten his brother.

CHAP. XVII.

How there came a voice which charged Sir Bors to touch not him, and of a cloud that came between them.

AND then he heard a voice that said, Flee, Bors, and touch him not, or else thou shalt slay him. Right so alight a cloud betwixt them in likeness of a fire, and a marvellous flame, that both their two shields burnt. Then were they sore afraid, that they fell both to the earth, and lay there a great while in a swoon. And when they came to themselves, Bors saw that his brother had no harm: then he held up both his hands, for he dread God had taken vengeance upon him. With that he heard a voice say, Bors, go hence and bear thy brother no longer fellowship, but take thy way anon right to the sea, for Sir Percivale abideth thee there. Then he said to his brother, Fair sweet brother, forgive me, for God's love, all that I have trespassed unto you. Then he answered, God forgive it thee, and I do gladly. So Sir Bors departed from him, and rode the next way to the sea. And at the last, by fortune he came to an abbey which was nigh the sea. That night Bors rested him there, and in his sleep there came a voice to him, and bad him go to the sea; then he start up, and made a sign of the cross in the midst of his forehead, and took his harness, and made ready his horse, and mounted upon him. And at a broken wall he rode out, and rode so long till that he came to the sea. And on the strand he found a ship covered all with white samite. And he alight, and betook him to Jesu Christ. And as soon as he entered into the ship, the ship departed into the sea, and went so fast that him seemed the ship went flying, but it was soon dark, so that he might know no man, and so he slept till it was day. Then he awaked, and saw in the midst of the ship a knight lie, all armed save his helm. Then knew he that it was Sir Percivale of Wales, and then he made of him right great joy. But Sir Percivale was abashed of him, and he asked him what he was. Ah, fair sir, said Bors, know ye me not? Certes, said he, I marvel how ye came hither, but if our Lord brought you hither himself: then Sir Bors smiled, and did off his helm. Then Percivale knew him, and either made great joy of other, that it was marvel to

en Bors told him how he the ship, and by whose adnt. And either told other of ıtations, as ye have heard to- So went they downward in the sea, one while backward another while forward, and every each comforted other, and oft were in their prayers. Then said Sir Percivale, We lack nothing but Galahad the good knight.

s endeth the sixteenth book whiche is of sire Gawayne, Ector de marys, and sire Bors de ganys and sir percyual.

e foloweth the seuenteenth book whiche is of the noble knyghte sire Galahad.

The Sebenteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Galahad fought at a tournad how he was known of Sir and Sir Ector de Maris.

ith this story, when Galahad ed Percivale from the twenty e rode then into a vast forest, e rode many journeys, and he ny adventures, the which he o an end, whereof the story ıere no mention. Then he ray to the sea on a day, and it he passed by a castle where onder tournament, but they ad done so much that they re put to the worse, yet were n good knights enough. When saw that those within were at mischief that men slew them ıtry of the castle, then he help them, and put a spear smote the first that he fell to and the spear brake to pieces. drew his sword, and smote hey were thickest, and so he erful deeds of arms, that all velled. Then it happed that and Sir Ector de Maris were nights without; but when they e white shield with the red one said to the other, Yonder d knight Sir Galahad the haut prince: now he should be a great fool which should meet with him to fight. So by adventure he came by Sir Gawaine, and he smote him so hard that he clave his helm, and the coif of iron unto his head, so that Gawaine fell to the earth: but the stroke was so great, that it slanted down to the earth, and carved the horse shoulder in two. When Ector saw Gawaine down, he drew him aside, and thought it no wisdom for to abide him, and also for natural love, that he was his uncle. Thus through his great hardiness he beat aback all the knights without. And then they within came out and chased them all about. But when Galahad saw there would none turn again, he stole away privily, so that none wist where he was become. Now by my head, said Gawaine to Ector, now are the wonders true that were said of Launcelot du Lake, that the sword which stuck in the stone should give me such a buffet that I would not have it for the best castle in this world, and soothly now it is proved true, for never before had I such a stroke of man's hand. Sir, said Ector, me seemeth your quest is done. And yours is not done, said Gawaine, but mine is done; I shall seek no further. Then Gawaine was borne into a castle, and unarmed him, and laid him in a

rich bed, and a leech found that he might live, and to be whole within a month. Thus Gawaine and Ector abode together. For Sir Ector would not away till Gawaine were whole. And the good knight Galahad rode so long till he came that night to the castle of Carboneck; and it befell him thus that he was benighted in an hermitage. So the good man was fain when he saw he was a knight errant. Then when they were at rest, there came a gentlewoman knocking at the door, and called Galahad, and so the good man came to the door to wit what she would. Then she called the hermit, Sir Ulfin, I am a gentlewoman that would speak with the knight that is with you. Then the good man awaked Galahad, and bad him arise, and speak with a gentlewoman that seemeth hath great need of you. Then Galahad went to her, and asked her what she would. Galahad, said she, I will that ye arm you, and mount upon your horse, and follow me, for I shall shew you within these three days the highest adventure that ever any knight saw. Anon Galahad armed him, and took his horse and commended him to God, and bad the gentlewoman go, and he would follow there as she liked.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Galahad rode with a damsel, and came to the ship whereas Sir Bors and Sir Percivale were in.

So she rode as fast as her palfrey might bear her, till that she came to the sea the which was called Collibe. And at the night they came unto a castle in a valley, was closed with a running water, and with strong walls and high. And so she entered into the castle with Galahad, and there had he great cheer, for the lady of that castle was the damsel's lady. So when he was unarmed, then said the damsel, Madam, shall we abide here all this day? Nay, said she, but till he hath dined, and till he hath slept a little. So he eat and slept a while, till that the maid called him, and armed him by torchlight. And when the maid was horsed, and he both, the lady took Galahad a fair child and rich, and so they departed from the castle, till they came to the sea-side, and there they found the ship where Bors and Percivale were in, the which cried on the ship's board, Sir Galahad, ye be welcome, we have abiden you long. And when he heard them, he asked them what they were. Sir, said she, leave your horse here, and I shall leave mine; and took their saddles and their bridles with them, and made a cross on them, and so entered into the ship. And the two knights received them both with great joy, and every each knew other. And so the wind arose, and drove them through the sea in a marvellous place. And within a while it dawned. Then did Galahad off his helm and his sword, and asked of his fellows from whence came that fair ship. Truly, said they, ye wot as well as we, but of God's grace. And then they told every each to other of all their hard adventures, and of their great temptation. Truly, said Galahad, ye are much bounden to God, for ye have escaped great adventures: and had not the gentlewoman been I had not come here; for as for you, I wend never to have found you in these strange countries. Ah, Galahad, said Bors, if Launcelot your father were here then were we well at ease, for then me seemeth we failed nothing. That may not be, said Galahad, but if it please our Lord. By then the ship went from the land of Logris, and by adventure it arrived up betwixt two rocks passing great and marvellous, but there they might not land, for there was a swallow of the sea, save there was another ship, and upon it they might go without danger. Go we thither, said the gentlewoman, and there shall we see adventures, for for so is our Lord's will. And when they came thither, they found the ship rich enough, but they found neither man nor woman therein. But they found in the end of the ship two fair letters written, which said a dreadful word and a marvellous:—Thou man

shall enter into this ship, beware in steadfast belief, for I am Faith; refore beware how thou enterest, thou fail I shall not help thee. aid the gentlewoman, Percivale, what I am? Certes, said he, my witting. Wit you well, said at I am thy sister, which am r of king Pellinore. And there- ye well ye are the man in the hat I most love. And if ye be erfect belief of Jesu Christ, enter no manner of wise, for then ye perish in the ship, for he is ct he will suffer no sin in him. 'ercivale understood that she was y sister, he was inwardly glad, id, Fair sister, I shall enter for if I be a mis-creature, or an knight, there shall I perish.

CHAP. III.

r Galahad entered into the ship, of a fair bed therein, with other llous things, and of a sword.

e mean while Galahad blessed l entered therein, and then next tlewoman, and then Sir Bors and civale. And when they were it was so marvellous fair and at they marvelled. And in the f the ship was a fair bed, and lahad went thereto, and found crown of silk. And at the feet word rich and fair, and it was ut of the sheath half a foot and nd the sword was of divers fa- nd the pommel was of stone, and as in him all manner of colours man might find, and every each colours had divers virtues, and es of the haft were of two ribs of beasts. The one beast was a which was conversant in Cali- id is called the serpent of the And the bone of him is of such , that there is no hand that him shall never be weary nor nd the other beast is a fish, which right great, and haunteth the Eufrates; and that fish is called , and his bones be of such a manner of kind, that who that handleth them shall have so much will that he shall never be weary, and he shall not think on joy nor sorrow that he hath had, but only that thing that he beholdeth before him. And as for this sword there shall never man begripe it at the handle but one, but he shall pass all other. In the name of God, said Percivale, I shall essay to handle it. So he set his hand to the sword, but he might not begripe it. By my faith, said he, now have I failed. Bors set his hand thereto and failed. Then Galahad beheld the sword, and saw the letters like blood, that said, Let see who shall assay to draw me out of my sheath, but if he be more hardier than other, and who that draweth me, wit ye well that he shall never fail of shame of his body, or to be wounded to the death. By my faith, said Galahad, I would draw this sword out of the sheath, but the offending is so great, that I shall not set my hand thereto. Now sir, said the gentlewoman, wit ye well that the drawing of this sword is forbidden to all men, save all only unto you. Also this ship arrived in the realm of Logris, and that time was deadly war between king Labor, which was father unto the maimed king, and king Hurlame, which was a Saracen. But then was he newly christened, so that men held him afterwards one of the wittiest men of the world. And so upon a day it befell that king Labor and king Hurlame had assembled their folk upon the sea, where this ship was arrived, and there king Hurlame was discomfit, and his men slain, and he was afeard to be dead, and fled to his ship, and there found this sword, and drew it, and came out and found king Labor, the man in the world of all Christendom in whom was then the greatest faith. And when king Hurlame saw king Labor, he dressed this sword, and smote him upon the helm so hard, that he clave him and his horse to the earth with the first stroke of his sword. And it was in the realm of Logris; and so befell great pestilence and great harm to both realms. For

sithen increased neither corn nor grass, nor well nigh no fruit, nor in the water was no fish, wherefore men call it the lands of the two marches, the waste land, for that dolorous stroke. And when king Hurlame saw this sword so carving, he turned again to fetch the scabbard: and so came into this ship, and entered, and put up the sword in the sheath. And as soon as he had done it, he fell down dead afore the bed. Thus was the sword proved, that none ne drew it but he were dead or maimed. So lay he there till a maiden came into the ship, and cast him out, for there was no man so hardy of the world to enter into that ship for the defence.

CHAP. IV.

Of the marvels of the sword and of the scabbard.

And then beheld they the scabbard; it seemed to be of a serpent's skin. And thereon were letters of gold and silver. And the girdle was but poorly to come to, and not able to sustain such a rich sword, and the letters said: He which shall wield me, ought to be more harder than any other, if he bear me as truly as I ought to be borne. For the body of him which I ought to hang by, he shall not be shamed in no place while he is gird with this girdle, nor never none be so hardy to do away this girdle for it ought not to be done away, but by the hands of a maid, and that she be a king's daughter, and queen's, and she must be a maid all the days of her life, both in will and in deed; and if she break her virginity, she shall die the most villainous death that ever did any woman. Sir, said Percivale, turn this sword, that we may see what is on the other side. And it was red as blood, with black letters as any coal, which said, He that shall praise me most, most shall he find me to blame at a great need, and to whom I should be most debonair shall I be most felon, and that shall be at one time. Fair brother, said she to Percivale, it befell about a forty year after the passion of Jesu Christ, that Nacien, the brother-in-law of king Mordrains, was borne into a town more than fourteen days' journey from his country, by the commandment of our Lord, into an isle, into the parts of the west, that men call the Isle of Turnance. So befell it that he found this ship at the entry of a rock, and he found the bed, and this sword, as we have heard now. Not for then he had not so much hardiness to draw it: and there he dwelled an eight days, and at the ninth day there fell a great wind which departed him out of the isle, and brought him to another isle by a rock, and there he found the greatest giant that ever man might see. Therewith came that horrible giant to slay him, and then he looked about him, and might not fly, and he had nothing to defend him with. So he ran to his sword, and when he saw it naked he praised it much, and then he shook it, and therewith he brake it in the midst. Ah, said Nacien, the thing I most praised ought I now most to blame. And therewith he threw the pieces of his sword over his bed. And after he lept over the board to fight with the giant, and slew him. And anon he entered into the ship again, and the wind arose, and drove him through the sea, that by adventure he came to another ship where king Mordrains was, which had been tempted full evil with a fiend in the port of perilous rock. And when that one saw the other they made great joy of other, and either told other of their adventure, and how the sword failed him at his most need. When Mordrains saw the sword he praised it much,—but the breaking was not to do but by wickedness of thyself-ward, for thou art in some sin:—and there he took the sword, and set the pieces together, and they soldered as fair as ever they were tofore; and there he put the sword in the sheath, and laid it down on the bed. Then heard they a voice that said, Go out of this ship a little while, and enter into the other, for dread ye fall in deadly sin; for, and ye be found in deadly sin, ye may not escape but perish. And so

t into the other ship. And as went over the board, he was with a sword on the right he fell down noseling to the ard, and therewith he said, O v am I hurt. And then there oice and said, Take thou that rfeit that thou didst in drawing vord, therefore thou receivest a or thou were never worthy to , as the writing maketh men- the name of God, said Gala- re right wise of these works.

CHAP. V.

Pelles was smitten through both because he drew the sword, and marvellous histories.

id she, there was a king that lles the maimed king. And might ride, he supported much lom, and holy Church. So upon hunted in a wood of his which to the sea, and at the last he hounds and his knights, save : and there he and his knight that they came toward Ireland, : he found the ship. And when ie letters and understood them, tered, for he was right perfect :: but his knight had none har- enter, and there found he this id drew it out as much as ye

So therewith entered a spear, h he was smitten him through thighs, and never sith might ealed, nor nought shall tofore : to him. Thus, said she, was les, your grandsire, maimed for iness. In the name of God, said Galahad. So they went he bed to behold all about it, ve the head there hung two

Also there were two spindles ere as white as any snow, and at were as red as blood, and ove green as any emerald: of ee colours were the spindles, atural colour within, and with- ainting. These spindles, said el, were when sinful Eve came r fruit, for which Adam and she were put out of paradise, she took with her the bough on which the apple hung on. Then perceived she that the branch was fair and green, and she remembered her the loss which came from the tree. Then she thought to keep the branch as long as she might. And for she had no cofler to keep it in, she put it in the earth. So by the will of our Lord the branch grew to a great tree within a little while, and was as white as any snow, branches, boughs, and leaves, that was a token a maiden planted it. But after the tree which was white became green as any grass, and all that came out of it. And in the same time there was Abel begotten; thus was the tree long of green colour. And so it befell many days after, under the same tree Cain slew Abel, whereof befell great marvel. For anon as Abel had received the death under the green tree, it lost the green colour and became red, and that was in tokening of the blood. And anon all the plants died thereof, but the tree grew and waxed marvellously fair, and it was the fairest tree and the most delectable that any man might behold and see, and so died the plants that grew out of it tofore the time that Abel was slain under it. So long endured the tree till that Solomon king David's son reigned, and held the land after his father. This Solomon was wise, and knew all the virtues of stones and trees, and so he knew the course of the stars, and many other diverse things.

This Solomon had an evil wife, where through he wend that there had never been no good woman, and so he despised them in his books. So answered a voice him once, Solomon, if heaviness come to a man by a woman, ne reck thou never. For yet shall there come a woman whereof there shall come greater joy unto man an hundred times more than this heaviness giveth sorrow, and that woman shall be born of thy lineage. Then when Solomon heard these words, he held himself but a fool, and the truth he perceived by old books. Also the Holy Ghost shewed him the

coming of the glorious Virgin Mary. Then asked he of the voice if it should be in the end of his lineage. Nay, said the voice, but there shall come a man which shall be a maid, and the last of your blood, and he shall be as good a knight as duke Josua thy brother-in-law.

CHAP. VI.

How Solomon took David's sword by the counsel of his wife, and of other matters marvellous.

Now have I certified thee of that thou stoodst in doubt. Then was Solomon glad that there should come any such of his lineage, but ever he marvelled and studied who that should be, and what his name might be. His wife perceived that he studied, and thought that she would know it at some season, and so she waited her time, and asked of him the cause of his studying, and there he told her altogether how the voice told him. Well, said she, I shall let make a ship of the best wood and most durable that men may find. So Solomon sent for all the carpenters of the land and the best. And when they had made the ship, the lady said to Solomon, Sir, said she, since it is so that this knight ought to pass all other knights of chivalry which have been tofore him, and shall come after him, moreover I shall tell you, said she, ye shall go into our Lord's temple, whereas is king David's sword, your father, the which is the marvellousest and sharpest that ever was taken in any knight's hand. Therefore take that, and take off the pommel, and thereto make ye a pommel of precious stones, that it be so subtilly made that no man perceive it but that they be all one. And after make there an hilt so marvellously and wonderly that no man may know it. And after make a marvellous sheath. And when ye have made all this, I shall let make a girdle thereto, such as shall please me. All this king Solomon did let make as she devised, both the ship and all the remnant. And when the ship was ready in the sea to sail, the lady let make a great bed, and marvellous rich, and set her up bed's head covered with silk, a the sword at the feet, and the were of hemp, and therewith th was angry. Sir, wit ye well, sa that I have none so high a thing were worthy to sustain so high a and a maid shall bring other l thereto, but I wot not when it sl nor what time. And there s make a covering to the ship, o of silk that should never rot manner of weather. Yet went th and made a carpenter to come tree which Abel was slain under. said she, carve me out of this much wood as will make me a s Ah, madam, said he, this is the t which our first mother planted. said she, or else I shall destro Anon as he began to work then out drops of blood, and then w have left, but she would not suff and so he took away as much w might make a spindle, and so sh him to take as much of the gree and of the white tree. And whe three spindles were shapen, she them to be fastened upon the cei the bed. When Solomon saw t said to his wife, Ye have done r lously, for though all the worl here right now, they could not wherefore all this was made, b Lord himself, and thou that has it wotest not what it shall b Now let it be, said she, for y hear tidings sooner than ye ween

Now shall ye hear a wonder of king Solomon and his wife.

CHAP. VII.

A wonderful tale of king Solom his wife.

That night lay Solomon bef ship with little fellowship. An he was on sleep, him though came from heaven a great com angels, and alight into the sh took water which was brought angel in a vessel of silver, and sp all the ship. And after he cam

nd drew letters on the hilt.
:r went to the ship's board, and
ıere other letters, which said:
an that wilt enter within me,
that thou be full within the
r I ne am but faith and belief.
›lomon espied these letters he
ıhed, so that he durst not enter,
drew him aback, and the ship
n shoven in the sea, and he went
hat he lost sight of him within
while. And then a little voice
lomon, the last knight of thy
shall rest in this bed. Then
›lomon and awaked his wife,
l her of the adventures of the

saith the history, that a great
e three fellows beheld the bed
three spindles. Then they
certain that they were of
:olours, without painting. Then
up a cloth which was above
ınd, and there they found a
se by seeming. And Percivale
and found therein a writ,
he read it, and devised the
of the spindles, and of the
ence it came, and by whom it
le. Now, said Galahad, where
e find the gentlewoman that
ıke new girdles to the sword.
said Percivale's sister, dismay
, for by the leave of God I
make a girdle to the sword,
: as shall belong thereto. And
: opened a box, and took out
which were seemly wrought
›lden threads, and upon that
full precious stones, and a rich
›f gold. Lo lords, said she,
a girdle that ought to be set
e sword. And wit ye well the
part of this girdle was made
ıair, which I loved well while
as a woman of the world. But
as I wist that this adventure
ained me, I clipped off my hair
le this girdle in the name of
e be well found, said Sir Bors,
s you have put us out of great
ıerein we should have entered
your tidings been. Then went the gentlewoman and set it on the girdle of the sword. Now, said the fellowship, what is the name of the sword, and what shall we call it? Truly, said she, the name of the sword is, the sword with the strange girdles, and the sheath, mover of blood; for no man that hath blood in him shall never see the one part of the sheath which was made of the tree of life. Then they said to Galahad, In the name of Jesu Christ, and pray you that ye gird you with this sword, which hath been desired so much in the realm of Logris. Now let me begin, said Galahad, to gripe this sword for to give you courage: but wit ye well it belongeth no more to me then it doth to you. And then he griped about it with his fingers a great deal. And then she girt him about the middle with the sword:—Now reck I not though I die, for now I hold me one of the blessed maidens of the world, which hath made the worthiest knight of the world. Damsel, said Galahad, ye have done so much that I shall be your knight all the days of my life. Then they went from that ship, and went to the other. And anon the wind drove them into the sea a great pace, but they had no victual: but it befell that they came on the morn to a castle that men call Carteloise, that was in the marches of Scotland. And when they had passed the port, the gentlewoman said, Lords, here be men arriven that, and they wist that ye were of king Arthur's court, ye should be assailed anon. Damsel, said Galahad, he that cast us out of the rock shall deliver us from them.

CHAP. VIII.

How Galahad and his fellows came to a castle, and how they were fought withal, and how they slew their adversaries, and other matters.

So it befell, as they spake thus there came a squire by them, and asked what they were. And they said they were of king Arthur's house. Is that sooth? said he. Now by my head, said he, ye

be ill arrayed; and then turned he again unto the cliff fortress. And within a while they heard a horn blow. Then a gentlewoman came to them, and asked them of whence they were, and they told her. Fair lords, said she, for God's love turn again if ye may, for ye be come unto your death. Nay, they said, we will not turn again, for He shall help us in whose service we be entered in. Then as they stood talking, there came knights well armed, and bad them yield them, or else to die. That yielding, said they, shall be noyous to you; and therewith they let their horses run, and Sir Percivale smote the foremost to the earth, and took his horse and mounted thereupon, and the same did Galahad. Also Sir Bors served another so. For they had no horses in that country, for they left their horses when they took their ship in other countries. And so when they were horsed then began they to set upon them. And they of the castle fled into the strong fortress, and the three knights after them, into the castle, and so alight on foot, and with their swords slew them down, and gat into the hall. Then when they beheld the great multitude of people they had slain, they held themselves great sinners. Certes, said Bors, I ween and God had loved them that we should not have had power to have slain them thus, but they have done so much against our Lord that he will not suffer them to reign no longer. Say ye not so, said Galahad, for if they misdid against God the vengeance is not ours, but to Him which hath power thereof. So came there out of a chamber a good man which was a priest, and bear God's body in a cup. And when he saw them which lay dead in the hall, he was all abashed. And Galahad did off his helm and kneeled down, and so did his two fellows. Sir, said they, have ye no dread of us, for we be of king Arthur's court. Then asked the good man how they were slain so suddenly; and they told it him. Truly, said the good man, and ye might live as long as the world might endure, never might ye have done so g alms-deed as this. Sir, said G I repent me much, inasmuch were christened. Nay, repent y said he, for they were not chr and I shall tell you how that I this castle. Here was lord earl not but one year, and he had th good knights of arms, and a d the fairest gentlewoman that me So those three knights loved the so sore that they burnt in love, they dishonoured her, maugre h And for she cried to her father, t her, and took their father and in prison, and wounded him nig death, but a cousin of hers rescu And then did they great untrut slew clerks and priests, and ma down chapels, that our Lord's might not be served nor said; a same day their father sent to m be confessed and houseled, b shame had never man as I h day with the three brethren: earl bad me suffer, for he sa should not long endure, for th vants of our Lord should destro and now it is brought to an end by this ye may wit that our Lor displeased with your deeds. said Galahad, and it had not our Lord, never should we hav so many men in so little a while then they brought the earl Her of prison into the midst of the ha knew Galahad anon, and yet him never afore but by revela our Lord.

CHAP. IX.

How the three knights, with Pe sister, came into the waste forest an hart and four lions and othe

THEN began he to weep right t and said, Long have I abiden yo ing, but for God's love hold me arms, that my soul may depart my body in so good a man's arm be. Gladly, said Galahad. A one said on high that all heart had, well hast thou avenged

nemies. Now behoveth thee to
ıe maimed king as soon as thou
for he shall receive by thee
which he hath abiden so long.
erewith the soul departed from
ly. And Galahad made him to
ed as he ought to be.

t so departed the three knights,
rcivale's sister with them. And
came into a waste forest, and
ıey saw afore them a white hart,
four lions led. Then they took
› assent for to follow after, for
r whither they repaired; and so
de after, a great pace, till that
ume to a valley, and thereby
hermitage where a good man
; and the hart and the lions
also. So when they saw all
ey turned to the chapel, and saw
d man in a religious weed, and
armour of our Lord, for he
sing mass of the Holy Ghost,
they entered in and heard mass.
the secrets of the mass, they
ıw the hart become a man, the
marvelled them, and set him
ıe altar in a rich siege, and saw
: lions were changed, the one to
m of a man, the other to the
f a lion, and the third to an
nd the fourth was changed unto

Then took they their siege
the hart sat, and went out
ı a glass window, and there was
: perished nor broken, and they
voice say, In such a manner en-
ıe son of God in the womb of
, Mary. And when they heard
ords, they fell down to the earth,
re astonied, and therewith was
clearness. And when they were
› themselves again, they went to
d man, and prayed him that he
ay them truth. What thing have
? said he: and they told him all
y had seen. Ah, lords, said he,
velcome, now wot I well ye be
d knights the which shall bring
cgreal to an end; for ye be they
hom our Lord shall shew great

And well ought our Lord be
l to an hart; for the hart when
he is old he waxeth young again in his white skin: right so cometh again our Lord from death to life, for he lost earthly flesh, that was the deadly flesh which he had taken in the womb of the blessed virgin Mary; and for that cause appeared our Lord as a white hart without spot. And the four that were with him is to understand the four evangelists, which set in writing a part of Jesu Christ's deeds that he did some time when he was among you an earthly man. For wit ye well never erst might no knight know the truth, for, ofttimes or this, our Lord shewed him unto good men and unto good knights in likeness of an hart. But I suppose from henceforth ye shall see no more. And then they joyed much, and dwelled there all that day. And upon the morrow, when they had heard mass they departed, and commended the good man to God. And so they came to a castle, and passed by. So there came a knight armed after them, and said, Lords, hark what I shall say to you.

CHAP. X.

How they were desired of a strange custom, the which they would not obey; and how they fought and slew many knights.

This gentlewoman that ye lead with you is a maid? Sir, said she, a maid I am. Then he took her by the bridle and said, By the holy cross ye shall not escape me tofore ye have yielden the custom of this castle. Let her go, said Percivale; ye be not wise, for a maid in what place she cometh is free. So in the meanwhile there came out a ten or twelve knights armed, out of the castle, and with them came gentlewomen which held a dish of silver, and then they said, This gentlewoman must yield us the custom of this castle. Sir, said a knight, what maid passeth hereby shall give this dish full of blood of her right arm. Blame have ye, said Galahad, that brought up such customs, and I ensure you of this gentlewoman ye shall fail while that I live. Truly, said Sir Percivale, I had lever be slain. And

I also, said Sir Bors. By my truth, said the knight, then shall ye die, for ye may not endure against us, though ye were the best knights of the world. Then let them run each to other, and the three fellows beat the ten knights, and then set their hands to their swords, and beat them down and slew them. Then there came out of the castle well a threescore knights armed. Fair lords, said the three fellows, have mercy upon yourselves, and have not ado with us. Nay, fair lords, said the knights of the castle, we counsel you to withdraw you, for ye are the best knights of the world, and therefore do no more, for ye have done enough. We will let you go with this harm, but we must needs have the custom. Certes, said Galahad, for nought speak ye. Well, said they, will ye die? We be not yet come thereto, said Galahad. Then began they to meddle together, and Galahad drew his sword with the strange girdles, and smote on the right hand and on the left hand, and slew what that ever abode him, and did such marvels that there was none that saw him but they wend he had been none earthly man but a monster. And his two fellows halp him passing well, and so they held the journey every each in like hard, till it was night. Then must they needs part. So came a good knight and said to the three fellows, If ye will come in to night, and take such harbour as here is, ye shall be right welcome, and we shall ensure you by the faith of our bodies, as we are true knights, to leave you in such estate to-morrow as we find you, without any falsehood. And as soon as ye know of the custom we dare say ye will accord. Therefore, for God's love, said the gentlewoman, go thither, and spare not for me. Go we, said Galahad, and so they entered into the castle. And when they were alight, they made great joy of them. So within a while the three knights asked the custom of the castle, and wherefore it was. What it is, said they, we will say you sooth.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Percivale's sister bled a dish full of blood for to heal a lady; wherefore she died; and how that the body was put in a ship.

THERE is in this castle a gentlewoman which we and this castle is hers, and many other. So it befell many years agone there fell upon her a malady. And when she had lain a great while, she fell into a measle, and of no leech she could have no remedy. But at the last an old man said, and she might have a dish full of blood of a maid and a clean virgin in will and in work, and a king's daughter, that blood should be her health, and for to anoint her withal: and for this thing was this custom made. Now, said Percivale's sister, Fair knights, I see well that this gentlewoman is but dead. Certes, said Galahad, and if ye bleed so much, ye may die. Truly, said she, and I die for to heal her, I shall get me great worship and soul's health, and worship to my lineage, and better is one harm than twain. And therefore there shall be no more battle, but to-morn I shall yield you your custom of this castle. And then there was great joy, more than there was tofore. For else had there been mortal war upon the morn; notwithstanding she would none other, whether they would or nold. That night were the three fellows eased with the best, and on the morn they heard mass, and Sir Percivale's sister bad bring forth the sick lady. So she was, the which was evil at ease. Then said she, Who shall let me blood? So one came forth and let her blood, and she bled so much that the dish was full. Then she lift up her hand and blessed her. And then she said to the lady, Madam, I am come to the death, for to make you whole; for God's love pray for me. With that she fell in a swoon. Then Galahad and his two fellows start up to her, and lift her up, and stanched her, but she had bled so much that she might not live. Then she said, when she was awaked, Fair brother

rcivale, I die for the healing of
ly. So I require you that ye bury not
s in this country, but as soon as I am
ad put me in a boat at the next
ven, and let me go as adventure will
d me; and as soon as ye three come
the city of Sarras, there to achieve
holy Graile, ye shall find me under
tower arrived, and there bury me in
spiritual place, for I say you so
uch, there Galahad shall be buried,
d ye also, in the same place. Then
rcivale understood these words, and
nted it her, weeping. And then
id a voice, Lords and fellows, to-
orrow at the hour of prime ye three
ll depart every each from other, till
e adventure bring you to the maimed
g. Then asked she her Saviour, and
soon as she had received him the
l departed from the body. So the
e day was the lady healed, when she
s anointed withal. Then Sir Perci-
le made a letter of all that she had
pen them as in strange adventures,
d put it in her right hand, and so laid
r in a barge, and covered it with black
k; and so the wind arose, and drove
e barge from the land, and all knights
held it, till it was out of their sight.
Then they drew all to the castle, and
forthwith there fell a sudden tempest,
d a thunder, lightning, and rain, as
l the earth would have broken. So
lf the castle turned up so down. So it
ssed evensong or the tempest was
ased. Then they saw afore them a
ight armed and wounded hard in the
dy and in the head, that said, Oh
od, succour me, for now it is need!
fter this knight came another knight
d a dwarf which cried to them afar,
and, ye may not escape. Then the
ounded knight held up his hands to
od, that he should not die in such
bulation. Truly, said Galahad, I shall
ccour him for His sake that he calleth
on. Sir, said Bors, I shall do it, for it
not for you, for he is but one knight.
r, said he, I grant. So Sir Bors took his
rse, and commended him to God, and
de after to rescue the wounded knight.
Now turn we to the two fellows.

CHAP. XII.

How Galahad and Percivale found in a castle many tombs of maidens that had bled to death.

Now saith the story that all night Galahad and Percivale were in a chapel in their prayers, for to save Sir Bors. So on the morrow they dressed them in their harness toward the castle, to wit what was fallen of them therein. And when they came there, they found neither man nor woman that he ne was dead by the vengeance of our Lord. With that they heard a voice that said, This vengeance is for blood shedding of maidens. Also they found at the end of the chapel a churchyard, and therein might they see a threescore fair tombs, and that place was so fair and so delectable that it seemed them there had been none tempest. For there lay the bodies of all the good maidens which were martyred for the sick lady's sake. Also they found the names of every each, and of what blood they were come, and all were of kings' blood, and twelve of them were kings' daughters. Then they departed, and went into a forest. Now, said Percivale unto Galahad, we must depart; so pray we our Lord that we may meet together in short time. Then they did off their helms, and kissed together, and wept at their departing.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Launcelot entered into the ship where Sir Percivale's sister lay dead; and how he met with Sir Galahad his son.

Now saith the history, that when Launcelot was come to the water of Mortoise, as it is rehearsed before, he was in great peril, and so he laid him down and slept, and took the adventure that God would send him.

So when he was asleep, there came a vision unto him and said, Launcelot, arise up, and take thine armour, and enter into the first ship that thou shalt find. And when he had heard these words, he start up and saw great clear-

ness about him. And then he lift up his hand and blessed him, and so took his arms, and made him ready; and so by adventure he came by a strand, and found a ship, the which was without sail or oar. And as soon as he was within the ship, there he felt the most sweetness that ever he felt; and he was fulfilled with all thing that he thought on or desired. Then said he, Fair sweet Father Jesu Christ, I wot not in what joy I am, for this joy passeth all earthly joys that ever I was in. And so in this joy he laid him down to the ship's board, and slept till day. And when he awoke, he found there a fair bed, and therein lying a gentlewoman dead, the which was Sir Percivale's sister. And as Launcelot devised her, he espied in her right hand a writ, the which he read, the which told him all the adventures that ye have heard tofore, and of what lineage she was come. So with this gentlewoman Sir Launcelot was a month and more. If ye would ask how he lived, He that fed the people of Israel with manna in the desert, so was he fed. For every day, when he had said his prayers, he was sustained with the grace of the Holy Ghost. So on a night he went to play him by the water side, for he was somewhat weary of the ship. And then he listened, and heard an horse come, and one riding upon him. And when he came nigh he seemed a knight. And so he let him pass, and went there as the ship was, and there he alight, and took the saddle and the bridle and put the horse from him, and went into the ship. And then Launcelot dressed unto him and said, Ye be welcome. And he answered and saluted him again, and asked him, What is your name? for much my heart giveth unto you. Truly, said he, my name is Launcelot du Lake. Sir, said he, then be ye welcome, for ye were the beginner of me in this world. Ah, said he, are ye Galahad? Yea forsooth, said he. And so he kneeled down and asked him his blessing, and after took off his helm and kissed him. And there was great joy between them, for there is no tongue can tell the joy that they made either of other, and many a friendly word spoken between, as kind would, the which is no need here to be rehearsed. And there every each told other of their adventures and marvels that were befallen to them in many journeys, sith that they departed from the court. Anon as Galahad saw the gentlewoman dead in the bed, he knew her well enough, and told great worship of her, and that she was the best maid living, and it was great pity of her death. But when Launcelot heard how the marvellous sword was gotten, and who made it, and all the marvels rehearsed afore, then he prayed Galahad his son that he would shew him the sword, and so he did. And anon he kissed the pommel, and the hilts, and the scabbard. Truly, said Launcelot, never erst knew I of so high adventures done, and so marvellous and strange. So dwelled Launcelot and Galahad within that ship half a year, and served God daily and nightly with all their power. And often they arrived in isles far from folk, where there repaired none but wild beasts; and there they found many strange adventures and perilous, which they brought to an end. But because the adventures were with wild beasts, and not in the quest of the Sancgreal, therefore the tale maketh here no mention thereof, for it would be too long to tell of all those adventures that befell them.

CHAP. XIV.

How a knight brought unto Sir Galahad an horse, and bad him come from his father Sir Launcelot.

So after, on a Monday, it befell that they arrived in the edge of a forest, tofore a cross, and then saw they a knight, armed all in white, and was richly horsed, and led in his right hand a white horse. And so he came to the ship, and saluted the two knights on the high Lord's behalf, and said, Galahad, sir, ye have been long enough with your father, come out of the ship, and start upon this horse, and go where the adventures shall lead thee in the quest of the Sancgreal. Then he went to his

l kissed him sweetly, and said,
t father, I wot not when I
you more, till I see the body
hrist. I pray you, said Laun-
ye to the high Father that He
n his service. And so he took
and there they heard a voice,
Think for to do well, for the
never see the other before the
ay of doom. Now, son Gala-
Launcelot, since we shall de-
never see other, I pray to the
ier to preserve both me and
Sir, said Galahad, no prayer
much as yours. And there-
had entered into the forest.
rind arose, and drove Launce-
han a month throughout the
he slept but little, but prayed
at he might see some tidings of
real. So it befell on a night,
at he arrived afore a castle, on
side, which was rich and fair.
was a postern opened towards
id was open without any keep-
two lions kept the entry; and
shone clear. Anon Sir Laun-
d a voice that said, Launcelot,
this ship, and enter into the
ere thou shalt see a great part
ire. Then he ran to his arms,
med him, and so he went to
and saw the lions. Then set
to his sword, and drew it.
e came a dwarf suddenly, and
n on the arm so sore that the
out of his hand. Then heard
say, Oh man of evil faith and
f, wherefore trowest thou more
rness than in thy Maker? for
t more avail thee than thine
n whose service thou art set.
l Launcelot, Fair Father Jesu
hank thee of thy great mercy,
reprovest me of my misdeed.
well that ye hold me for your
Then took he again his sword,
up in his sheath, and made a
is forehead, and came to the
l they made semblant to do
. Notwithstanding he passed
rithout hurt, and entered into
to the chief fortress, and there
were they all at rest. Then Launcelot entered in so armed, for he found no gate nor door but it was open. And at the last he found a chamber whereof the door was shut, and he set his hand thereto to have opened it, but he might not.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Launcelot was tofore the door of the chamber wherein the holy Sangreal was.

THEN he enforced him mickle to undo the door. Then he listened, and heard a voice which sang so sweetly that it seemed none earthly thing; and him thought the voice said, Joy and honour be to the Father of Heaven! Then Launcelot kneeled down tofore the chamber, for well wist he that there was the Sancgreal within that chamber. Then said he, Fair sweet Father Jesu Christ, if ever I did thing that pleased the Lord, for thy pity have me not in despite for my sins done aforetime, and that thou shew me something of that I seek! And with that he saw the chamber door open, and there came out a great clearness, that the house was as bright as all the torches of the world had been there. So came he to the chamber door, and would have entered. And anon a voice said to him, Flee Launcelot, and enter not, for thou oughtest not to do it: and if thou enter thou shalt forthink it. Then he withdrew him aback right heavy. Then looked he up in the midst of the chamber, and saw a table of silver, and the holy vessel covered with red samite, and many angels about it, whereof one held a candle of wax burning, and the other held a cross, and the ornaments of an altar. And before the holy vessel he saw a good man clothed as a priest, and it seemed that he was at the sacring of the mass. And it seemed to Launcelot that above the priest's hands there were three men, whereof the two put the youngest by likeness between the priest's hands, and so he lift it up right high, and it seemed to shew so to the people. And then Launcelot marvelled not a

little, for him thought that the priest was so greatly charged of the figure, that him seemed that he should fall to the earth. And when he saw none about him that would help him, then came he to the door a great pace, and said, Fair Father Jesu Christ, ne take it for no sin though I help the good man, which hath great need of help. Right so entered he into the chamber, and came toward the table of silver; and when he came nigh he felt a breath that him thought it was intermeddled with fire, which smote him so sore in the visage that him thought it burnt his visage; and therewith he fell to the earth, and had no power to arise, as he that was so araged that had lost the power of his body, and his hearing, and his saying. Then felt he many hands about him, which took him up and bare him out of the chamber door, without any amending of his swoon, and left him there seeming dead to all people. So upon the morrow, when it was fair day, they within were arisen, and found Launcelot lying afore the chamber door. All they marvelled how that he came in. And so they looked upon him, and felt his pulse, to wit whether there were any life in him; and so they found life in him, but he might neither stand, nor stir no member that he had; and so they took him by every part of the body, and bare him into a chamber, and laid him in a rich bed, far from all folk, and so he lay four days. Then the one said he was on live, and the other said nay. In the name of God, said an old man, for I do you verily to wit he is not dead, but he is so full of life as the mightiest of you all, and therefore I counsel you that he be well kept till God send him life again.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Launcelot had lain fourteen days and as many nights as a dead man, and other divers matters.

In such manner they kept Launcelot four and twenty days, and also many nights, that ever he lay still as a dead man; and at the twenty-fifth day befell him after midday that he opened his eyes. And when he saw folk he made great sorrow and said, Why have ye awaked me? for I was more at ease than I am now. Oh Jesu Christ, who might be so blessed that might see openly thy great marvels of secretness there where no sinner may be. What have ye seen? said they about him. I have seen, said he, so great marvels that no tongue may tell, and more than any heart can think, and had not my sin been here afore me I had seen much more. Then they told him how he had lain there four and twenty days and nights. Then him thought it was punishment for the twenty-four years that he had been a sinner, wherefore our Lord put him in penance four and twenty days and nights. Then looked Sir Launcelot before him, and saw the hair which he had borne nigh a year, for that he forethought him right much that he had broken his promise unto the hermit, which he had avowed to do. Then they asked him how it stood with him. Forsooth, said he, I am whole of body, thanked be our Lord; therefore, sirs, for God's love tell me where that I am? Then said they all that he was in the castle of Carbonek. Therewith came a gentlewoman, and brought him a shirt of small linen cloth, but he changed not there, but took the hair to him again. Sir, said they, the quest of the Sancgreal is achieved right now in you, that never shall ye see of the Sancgreal no more than ye have seen. Now I thank God, said Launcelot, of His great mercy, of that I have seen, for it sufficeth me, for, as I suppose, no man in this world hath lived better than I have done to achieve that I have done. And therewith he took the hair, and clothed him in it, and above that he put a linen shirt, and after a robe of scarlet, fresh and new. And when he was so arrayed, they marvelled all, for they knew him that he was Launcelot, the good knight. And then they said all, O my lord Sir Launcelot, be that ye? And he said, Truly

Then came word to king
the knight that had lain so
ras Sir Launcelot; then was
ght glad, and went to see
when Launcelot saw him
essed him against him, and
the king great joy of him.
the king told him tidings,
daughter was dead. Then
was right heavy of it, and
ıe forthinketh the death of
ter, for she was a full fair
ınd young. And well I wot
ıe best knight that is now
r that ever was since God
So the king held him there
And on the morrow he took
king Pelles, and at all the
hat were there, and thanked
great labour. Right so as
linner in the chief hall, then
›efallen that the Sancgreal
the tables with all manner
ıat any heart might think.
sat, they saw all the doors
vs of the place were shut
ı's hand, whereof they were
and none wist what to do.
happed suddenly a knight
e chief door, and knocked,
Undo the door; but they
And ever he cried, Undo,
›uld not. And at the last
hem so much, that the king
se, and came to a window
night called. Then he said,
ye shall not enter at this
the Sancgreal is here, and
› into another. For certes
›f the knights of the quest,
hem which hath served the
ıast left the service of our
he was passing wroth at
vords. Sir knight, said the
would so fain enter, say me
ntry ye be? Sir, said he, I
ılm of Logris, and my name
Maris, and brother unto my
ncelot. Truly, said the king,
eth of that I have said, for
: is here within. And when
Maris understood that his
there, for he was the man
in the world that he most dread and loved, and then he said, Alas, now doubleth my sorrow and shame, full truly said the good man of the hill unto Gawaine and to me of our dreams. Then went he out of the court as fast as his courser might run, and so through out the castle.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot returned towards Logris, and of other adventures which he saw in the way.

THEN king Pelles came to Sir Launcelot, and told him tidings of his brother, whereof he was sorry that he wist not what to do. So Sir Launcelot departed, and took his armour, and said that he would go see the realm of Logris—which I have not seen in a twelvemonth. And therewith commended the king to God, and so rode through many realms. And at the last he came to a white abbey, and there they made him that night great cheer. And on the morn he arose and heard mass, and afore an altar he found a rich tomb which was newly made, and then he took heed, and saw the sides written with letters of gold, which said, Here lieth king Bagdemagus of Gore, the which king Arthur's nephew slew:—and named him Sir Gawaine. Then was not he a little sorry, for Launcelot loved him much more than any other, and had it been any other than Gawaine he should not have escaped from death to life:—said to himself, Alas, this is a great hurt to king Arthur's court, the loss of such a man. And then he departed, and came to the abbey where Galahad did the adventure of the tombs, and wan the white shield with the red cross, and there had he great cheer all that night. And on the morn he turned unto Camelot, where he found king Arthur and the queen. But many of the knights of the Round Table were slain and destroyed, more than half. And so three were come home, Ector, Gawaine, and Lionel, and many other that need not to be rehearsed.

And all the court was passing glad of Sir Launcelot; and the king asked him many tidings of his son Galahad. And there Launcelot told the king of his adventures that had befallen him since he departed. And also he told him of the adventures of Galahad, Percivale, and Bors, which that he knew by the letter of the dead damsel, and as Galahad had told him. Now, God would, said the king, that they were all three here. That shall never be, said Launcelot, for two of them shall ye never see, but one of them shall come again.

Now leave we this story, and speak we of Galahad.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Galahad came to king Mordrains, and of other matters and adventures.

Now saith the story that Galahad rode many journeys in vain. And at the last he came to the abbey where king Mordrains was, and when he heard that, he thought he would abide to see him. And upon the morn, when he had heard mass, Galahad came unto king Mordrains, and anon the king saw him, the which had lain blind of long time. And then he dressed him against him, and said, Galahad, the servant of Jesu Christ, whose coming I have abiden so long, now embrace me, and let me rest on thy breast, so that I may rest between thine arms, for thou art a clean virgin above all knights, as the flower of the lily, in whom virginity is signified, and thou art the rose, the which is the flower of all good virtue, and in colour of fire. For the fire of the Holy Ghost is taken so in thee, that my flesh, which was all dead of oldness, is become young again. When Galahad heard his words, then he embraced him and all his body. Then said he, Fair Lord Jesu Christ, now I have my will, now I require thee in this point that I am in, thou come and visit me. And anon our Lord heard his prayer. Therewith the soul departed from the body. And then Galahad put him in the earth as a king ought to be: and so departed, and came into a perilous forest, where he found the well the which boiled with great waves, as the tale telleth tofore. And as soon as Galahad set his hand thereto it ceased, so that it burnt no more, and the heat departed: for that it burnt it was a sign of lust; but that heat might not abide his pure virginity. And this was taken in the country for a miracle, and so ever after was it called Galahad's well. Then by adventure he came into the country of Gore, and into the abbey where Sir Launcelot had been toforehand, and found the tomb of king Bagdemagus (but was founder thereof Joseph of Armathie's son) and the tomb of Simeon where Launcelot had failed. Then he looked into a croft under the minster, and there he saw a tomb which burnt full marvellously. Then asked he the brethren what it was. Sir, said they, a marvellous adventure that may not be brought unto none end but by him that passeth of bounty and of knighthood all them of the Round Table. I would, said Galahad, that ye would lead me thereto. Gladly, said they: and so led him till a cave; and he went down upon steps and came nigh the tomb, and then the flaming failed and the fire staunched, the which many a day had been great. Then came there a voice that said, Much are ye beholden to thank our Lord, the which hath given you a good hour, that ye may draw out the souls of earthly pain, and to put them into the joys of paradise. I am of your kindred, the which have dwelled in this heat this three hundred winter and four and fifty, to be purged of the sin that I did against Joseph of Armathie. Then Galahad took the body in his arms, and bear it into the minster. And that night lay Galahad in the abbey: and on the morn he gave him service, and put him in the earth, afore the high altar.

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir Percivale and Sir Bors met with Sir Galahad, and how they came to the castle of Carbonek, and other matters.

So departed he from thence, and commended the brethren to God. And so

re days till that he came to
d king, and ever followed
ıe five days, asking where he
nd so one told him how the
of Logris were achieved. So
t befell that they came out
forest, and there they met
ıith Sir Bors, the which rode
is no need to tell if they
and them he saluted, and
d him honour and good ad-
d every each told other. Then
[t is more than a year and a
ne lay ten times where men
ut in wild forests and in
but God was ever my com-

de they a great while till
me to the castle of Carbonek.
they were entered within the
Pelles knew them. Then
great joy, for they wist well
›ming that they had fulfilled
the Sancgreal. Then Eliazar,
son, brought afore them the
ord wherewith Joseph was
·ough the thigh. Then Bors
d thereto, if he might have
again, but it would not be.
›ok it to Percivale, but he
ore power thereto than he.
ye it again, said Percivale to
›r and it be ever achieved by
man, ye must do it. And
he the pieces and set them
ınd they seemed that they
been broken, and as well as
:n first forged. And when
espied that the adventure of
was achieved, then they gave
to Bors, for it might not be
or he was a good knight, and
ıan. And a little afore even
arose great and marvellous,
ll of great heat, that many
· dread. And anon alight a
ıg them, and said, They that
to sit at the table of Jesu
:, for now shall very knights
› they went thence all save
; and Eliazar his son, the
: holy men, and a maid which
iece. And so these three

fellows and they three were there; no more. Anon they saw knights all armed come in at the hall door, and did off their helms and their arms, and said unto Galahad, Sir, we have hied right much for to be with you at this table, where the holy meat shall be parted. Then said he, Ye be welcome: but of whence be ye? So three of them said they were of Gaul, and other three said they were of Ireland, and the other three said they were of Denmark. So as they sat thus, there came out a bed of tree of a chamber, the which four gentlewomen brought, and in the bed lay a good man sick, and a crown of gold upon his head; and there in the midst of the place they set him down, and went again their way. Then he lift up his head and said, Galahad, knight, ye be welcome, for much have I desired your coming, for in such pain and in such anguish I have been long. But now I trust to God the term is come that my pain shall be allayed, that I shall pass out of this world, so as it was promised me long ago. Therewith a voice said, There be two among you that be not in the quest of the Sancgreal, and therefore depart ye.

CHAP. XX.

How Galahad and his fellows were fed of the holy Sangreal, and how our Lord appeared to them, and other things.

Then king Pelles and his son departed. And therewithal beseemed them that there came a man and four angels from heaven, clothed in likeness of a bishop, and had a cross in his hand, and these four angels bare him up in a chair, and set him down before the table of silver whereupon the Sancgreal was, and it seemed that he had in midst of his forehead letters that said, See ye here Joseph the first bishop of Christendom, the same which our Lord succoured in the city of Sarras, in the spiritual place. Then the knights marvelled, for that bishop was dead more than three hundred year tofore. Oh knights, said he, marvel not, for I was sometime an earthly man. With that they heard the

chamber door open, and there they saw angels, and two bare candles of wax, and the third a towel, and the fourth a spear which bled marvellously, that three drops fell within a box which he held with his other hand. And they set the candles upon the table, and the third the towel upon the vessel, and the fourth the holy spear even upright upon the vessel. And then the bishop made semblant as though he would have gone to the sacring of the mass. And then he took an ubbly, which was made in likeness of bread; and at the lifting up there came a figure in likeness of a child, and the visage was as red and as bright as any fire, and smote himself into the bread, so that they all saw it, that the bread was formed of a fleshly man, and then he put it into the holy vessel again. And then he did that longed to a priest to do to a mass. And then he went to Galahad and kissed him, and bad him go and kiss his fellows, and so he did anon. Now, said he, servants of Jesu Christ, ye shall be fed afore this table with sweet meats, that never knights tasted. And when he had said, he vanished away; and they set them at the table in great dread, and made their prayers. Then looked they, and saw a man come out of the holy vessel, that had all the signs of the passion of Jesu Christ, bleeding all openly, and said, My knights and my servants and my true children, which be come out of deadly life into spiritual life, I will now no longer hide me from you, but ye shall see now a part of my secrets and of my hid things: now hold and receive the high meat which ye have so much desired. Then took he himself the holy vessel, and came to Galahad, and he kneeled down and there he received his Saviour, and after him so received all his fellows; and they thought it so sweet that it was marvellous to tell. Then said he to Galahad, Son, wotest thou what I hold betwixt my hands? Nay, said he, but if ye will tell me. This is, said he, the holy dish wherein I ate the lamb on Sher-thursday. And now hast thou seen that thou most desiredst to see, but yet hast thou not seen it so openly as thou shalt see it in the city of Sarras, in the spiritual place. Therefore thou must go hence, and bear with thee this holy vessel, for this night it shall depart from the realm of Logris, that it shall never be seen more here, and wotest thou wherefore? for he is not served nor worshipped to his right, by them of this land, for they be turned to evil living, therefore I shall disherit them of the honour which I have done them. And therefore go ye three to-morrow unto the sea, where ye shall find your ship ready, and with you take the sword with the strange girdles, and no more with you, but Sir Percivale and Sir Bors. Also I will that ye take with you of the blood of this spear, for to anoint the maimed king, both his legs and all his body, and he shall have his health. Sir, said Galahad, why shall not these other fellows go with us?—For this cause, for right as I departed mine apostles, one here and another there, so I will that ye depart. And two of you shall die in my service, but one of you shall come again, and tell tidings. Then gave he them his blessing and vanished away.

CHAP. XXI.

How Galahad anointed with the blood of the spear the maimed king, and other adventures.

And Galahad went anon to the spear which lay upon the table, and touched the blood with his fingers, and came after to the maimed king, and anointed his legs. And therewith he clothed him anon, and start upon his feet out of his bed as an whole man, and thanked our Lord that he had healed him. And that was not to the world-ward, for anon he yield him to a place of religion of white monks, and was a full holy man. That same night, about midnight came a voice among them, which said, My sons and not my chieftains, my friends and not my warriors, go ye hence, where ye hope best to do, and as I bad you.—

nked be thou, Lord, that thou
achsafe to call us thy sinners.
ay we well prove that we have
our pains.
anon in all haste they took their
and departed. But the three
of Gaul, one of them hight
e, king Claudas' son, and the
vo were great gentlemen. Then
Galahad to every each of them,
hey come to king Arthur's court,
ey should salute my lord Sir
lot my father, and of them of the
Table, and prayed them if that
me on that part that they should
et it. Right so departed Gala-
ercivale, and Bors with him.
they rode three days, and then
me to a rivage, and found the
ereof the tale speaketh of tofore.
ien they came to the board, they
n the midst the table of silver
hey had left with the maimed
nd the Sancgreal, which was
with red samite. Then were
ad to have such things in their
iip, and so they entered, and
reat reverence thereto, and Ga-
ill in his prayer long time to our
iat, at what time he asked, that
ild pass out of this world: so
ie prayed, till a voice said to
alahad, thou shalt have thy re-
ind when thou askest the death
ody thou shalt have it, and then
hou find the life of the soul.
le heard this, and prayed him of
iip that was between them, to
i wherefore he asked such things.
iall I tell you, said Galahad: the
ay when we saw a part of the
ires of the Sancgreal, I was in
joy of heart that I trow never
is that was earthly, and therefore
vell when my body is dead my
all be in great joy to see the
Trinity every day, and the ma-
our Lord Jesu Christ. So long
iey in the ship that they said to
i, Sir, in this bed ought ye to
so saith the scripture. And so
him down and slept a great
And when he awaked he looked afore him, and saw the city of Sarras. And as they would have landed, they saw the ship wherein Percivale had put his sister in. Truly, said Percivale, in the name of God, well hath my sister holden us covenant. Then took they out of the ship the table of silver, and he took it to Percivale and to Bors to go tofore, and Galahad came behind, and right so they went to the city, and at the gate of the city they saw an old man crooked. Then Galahad called him, and bad him help to bear this heavy thing. Truly, said the old man, it is ten year ago that I might not go but with crutches. Care thou not, said Galahad, and arise up and shew thy good will. And so he assayed, and found himself as whole as ever he was. Then ran he to the table, and took one part against Galahad. And anon arose there great noise in the city, that a cripple was made whole by knights marvellous that entered into the city. Then anon after, the three knights went to the water, and brought up into the palace Percivale's sister, and buried her as richly as a king's daughter ought to be. And when the king of the city, which was cleped Estorause, saw the fellowship, he asked them of whence they were, and what thing it was that they had brought upon the table of silver. And they told him the truth of the Sancgreal, and the power which that God had set there. Then the king was a tyrant, and was come of the line of paynims, and took them, and put them in prison in a deep hole.

CHAP. XXII.

How they were fed with the Sangreal while they were in prison, and how Galahad was made king.

But as soon as they were there, our Lord sent them the Sancgreal, through whose grace they were alway fulfilled while that they were in prison. So at the year's end it befell that this king Estorause lay sick, and felt that he should die. Then he sent for the three knights, and they came afore him, and

he cried them mercy of that he had done to them, and they forgave it him goodly, and he died anon. When the king was dead, all the city was dismayed, and wist not who might be their king. Right so as they were in counsel, there came a voice among them, and bad them choose the youngest knight of them three to be their king, for he shall well maintain you and all yours. So they made Galahad king by all the assent of the whole city, and else they would have slain him. And when he was come to behold the land, he let make about the table of silver a chest of gold and of precious stones that covered the holy vessel, and every day early the three fellows would come afore it and make their prayers. Now at the year's end, and the self day after Galahad had borne the crown of gold, he arose up early, and his fellows, and came to the palace, and saw tofore them the holy vessel, and a man kneeling on his knees, in likeness of a bishop, that had about him a great fellowship of angels, as it had been Jesu Christ himself. And then he arose and began a mass of Our Lady. And when he came to the sacrament of the mass, and had done, anon he called Galahad, and said to him, Come forth, the servant of Jesu Christ, and thou shalt see that thou hast much desired to see. And then he began to tremble right hard, when the deadly flesh began to behold the spiritual things. Then he held up his hands toward heaven, and said, Lord, I thank thee, for now I see that that hath been my desire many a day. Now, blessed Lord, would I not longer live, if it might please thee Lord. And therewith the good man took our Lord's body betwixt his hands, and proffered it to Galahad, and he received it right gladly and meekly. Now, wotest thou what I am? said the good man. Nay, said Galahad. — I am Joseph of Armathie, which our Lord hath sent here to thee to bear thee fellowship. And wotest thou wherefore that he hath sent me more than any other? For thou hast resembled me in two things, in that thou hast seen the marvels of the Sancgreal, and in that thou hast been a clean maiden, as I have been and am. And when he had said these words, Galahad went to Percivale and kissed him, and commanded him to God. And so he went to Sir Bors and kissed him, and commanded him to God, and said, Fair lord, salute me to my lord Sir Launcelot, my father, and as soon as ye see him bid him remember of this unstable world. And therewith he kneeled down tofore the table and made his prayers, and then suddenly his soul departed to Jesu Christ, and a great multitude of angels bare his soul up to heaven, that the two fellows might well behold it. Also the two fellows saw come from heaven an hand, but they saw not the body; and then it came right to the vessel, and took it and the spear, and so bare it up to heaven. Sithen was there never man so hardy to say that he had seen the Sancgreal.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the sorrow that Percivale and Bors made when Galahad was dead; and of Percivale how he died, and other matters.

When Percivale and Bors saw Galahad dead, they made as much sorrow as ever did two men: and if they had not been good men they might lightly have fallen in despair. And the people of the country and of the city were right heavy. And then he was buried. And as soon as he was buried, Sir Percivale yielded him to an hermitage out of the city, and took a religious clothing; and Bors was alway with him, but never changed he his secular clothing, for that he purposed him to go again into the realm of Logris. Thus a year and two months lived Sir Percivale in the hermitage a full holy life, and then passed out of this world. And Bors let bury him by his sister and by Galahad in the spiritualties. When Bors saw that he was in so far countries as in the parts of Babylon, he departed from Sarras, and armed him, and came to the

entered into a ship, and so it
n in good adventure he came
realm of Logris. And he rode
ll he came to Camelot where
was. And then was there
made of him in the court,
wend all he had been dead,
h as he had been so long out
ountry. And when they had
e king made great clerks to
ore him, that they should
of the high adventures of the
ights. When Bors had told
ıe adventures of the Sancgreal,
ıad befallen him and his three
that was Launcelot, Percivale,
and himself. There Launcelot
adventures of the Sancgreal
ıad seen. All this was made
books, and put in almeries at
. And anon Sir Bors said to
celot, Galahad your own son saluted you by me, and after you king Arthur, and all the court, and so did Sir Percivale: for I buried them with mine own hands in the city of Sarras. Also, Sir Launcelot, Galahad prayeth you to remember of this uncertain world, as ye behight him when ye were together more than half a year. This is true, said Launcelot; now I trust to God his prayer shall avail me. Then Launcelot took Sir Bors in his arms, and said, Gentle cousin, ye are right welcome to me, and all that ever I may do for you and for yours, ye shall find my poor body ready at all times whiles the spirit is in it, and that I promise you faithfully, and never to fail. And wit ye well, gentle cousin Sir Bors, that ye and I will never depart in sunder whilst our lives may last. Sir, said he, I will as ye will.

; endeth thystory of the Sancgreal that was breuely drawen Frensshe in to Englysshe, the whiche is a story cronycled for the truest and the holyest that is in thys world, the which is book.

And here foloweth the eyghtenth book.

The Eighteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

y of king Arthur and the queen the achievement of the Sangreal; w Launcelot fell to his old love

er the quest of the Sancgreal
lled, and all knights that were
ive were come again unto the
ound, as the book of the Sanc-
keth mention, then was there
in the court, and in especial
hur and queen Guenever made
of the remnant that were come
ıd passing glad was the king and the queen of Sir Launcelot and of Sir Bors. For they had been passing long away in the quest of the Sancgreal. Then, as the book saith, Sir Launcelot began to resort unto queen Guenever again, and forgat the promise and the perfection that he made in the quest. For, as the book saith, had not Sir Launcelot been in his privy thoughts and in his mind so set inwardly to the queen, as he was in seeming outward to God, there had no knight passed him in the quest of the Sancgreal: but ever his thoughts were privily on the queen, and so they loved together more hotter

than they did toforehand, that many in the court spake of it, and in especial Sir Agravaine, Sir Gawaine's brother, for he was ever open mouthed. So befell that Sir Launcelot had many resorts of ladies and damsels, that daily resorted unto him, that besought him to be their champion. And in all such matters of right Sir Launcelot appealed him daily to do for the pleasure of our Lord Jesu Christ. And ever as much as he might he withdrew him from the company and fellowship of queen Guenever, for to eschew the slander and noise: wherefore the queen waxed wroth with Sir Launcelot, and upon a day she called Sir Launcelot unto her chamber, and said thus: Sir Launcelot, I see and feel daily that thy love beginneth to slake, for thou hast no joy to be in my presence, but ever thou art out of this court, and quarrels and matters thou hast now adays for ladies and gentlewomen, more than ever thou were wont to have aforehand. Ah, madam, said Launcelot, in this ye must hold me excused for divers causes. One is, I was but late in the quest of the Sancgreal, and I thank God, of his great mercy, and never of my deserving, that I saw in that my quest as much as ever saw any sinful man, and so was it told me. And if I had not had my privy thoughts to return to your love again as I do, I had seen as great mysteries as ever saw my son Galahad, or Percivale, or Sir Bors, and therefore, madam, I was but late in that quest. Wit ye well, madam, it may not be yet lightly forgotten the high service in whom I did my diligent labour. Also, madam, wit ye well that there be many men speak of our love in this court, and have you and me greatly in a wait, as Sir Agravaine, and Sir Mordred: and, madam, wit ye well, I dread them more for your sake than for any fear that I have of them myself, for I may happen to escape and rid myself in a great need, where ye must abide all that will be said unto you. And then if that ye fall in any distress through wilful folly, then is there none other remedy or help but by me and my blood. And wit ye well, madam, the boldness of you and me will bring us to great shame and slander, and that were me loth to see you dishonoured. And that is the cause that I take upon me more for to do for damsels and maidens than ever I did tofore, that men should understand my joy and my delight is my pleasure to have ado for damsels and maidens.

CHAP. II.

How the queen commanded Sir Launcelot to avoid the court, and of the sorrow that Launcelot made.

All this while the queen stood still, and let Sir Launcelot say what he would. And when he had all said, she brast out on weeping, and so she sobbed and wept a great while: and when she might speak, she said, Launcelot, now I well understand that thou art a false recreant knight, and lovest and holdest other ladies, and by me thou hast disdain and scorn. For wit thou well, she said, now I understand thy falsehood, and therefore shall I never love thee no more, and never be thou so hardy to come in my sight; and right here I discharge thee this court, that thou never come within it, and I forfend thee my fellowship, and upon pain of thy head that thou see me no more. Right so Sir Launcelot departed with great heaviness, that hardly he might sustain himself for great dole making. Then he called Sir Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Lionel, and told them how the queen had forfend him the court, and so he was in will to depart into his own country. Fair sir, said Sir Bors de Ganis, ye shall not depart out of this land by mine advice; ye must remember in what honour ye are renowned, and called the noblest knight of the world, and many great matters ye have in hand, and women in their hastiness will do oftimes that sore repenteth them, and therefore by mine advice ye shall take your horse, and ride to the good hermitage here beside Windsor, that sometime was a good knight, his name is Sir

id there shall ye abide till I word of better tidings. Bro- Sir Launcelot, wit ye well I h to depart out of this realm, ueen hath defended me so t me seemeth she will never d lady as she hath been. Say so, said Sir Bors, for many iis time she hath been wroth and after it she was the first ited it. Ye say well, said for now will I do by your nd take mine horse and my nd ride to the hermit Sir nd there will I repose me ear some manner of tidings But, fair brother, I pray you e love of my lady queen Gue- ye may. Sir, said Sir Bors, ot to move me of such mat- ell ye wot I will do what I ase you. And then the noble Launcelot departed with right r, suddenly, that none earthly ist of him, nor where he was ut Sir Bors. So when Sir was departed, the queen made of sorrow in shewing, to none d, nor to none other: but, wit wardly, as the book saith, she thought, but she bare it out oud countenance, as though thing nor danger.

CHAP. III.

dinner that the queen made is a knight poisoned, which lor laid on the queen.

n the queen let make a privy London unto the knights of l Table. And all was for to ard that she had as great joy r knights of the Table Round l in Sir Launcelot. All only ner she had Sir Gawaine and en, that is to say, Sir Agra- Gaheris, Sir Gareth, and Sir Also there was Sir Bors de Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleo- Ganis, Sir Galihud, Sir Gali- Ector de Maris, Sir Lionel, ides, Sir Safere his brother, Sir La Cote Male Taile, Sir Persant, Sir Ironside, Sir Brandiles, Sir Kay le Seneschal, Sir Mador de la Porte, Sir Patrise, a knight of Ireland, Aliduk, Sir Astomore, and Sir Pinel le Savage, the which was cousin to Sir Lamorak de Galis, the good knight that Sir Gawaine and his brethren slew by treason. And so these four and twenty knights should dine with the queen in a privy place by themselves, and there was made a great feast of all manner of dainties. But Sir Gawaine had a custom that he used daily at dinner and at supper, that he loved well all manner of fruit, and in especial apples and pears. And therefore, whosoever dined or feasted Sir Gawaine would commonly purvey for good fruit for him; and so did the queen for to please Sir Gawaine, she let purvey for him of all manner of fruit, for Sir Gawaine was a passing hot knight of nature. And this Pinel hated Sir Gawaine because of his kinsman Sir Lamorak de Galis, and therefore for pure envy and hate Sir Pinel enpoisoned certain apples, for to enpoison Sir Gawaine. And so this was well unto the end of the meat: and so it befell by misfortune a good knight named Patrise, cousin unto Sir Mador de la Porte, to to take a poisoned apple. And when he had eaten it he swelled so till he brast, and there Sir Patrise fell down suddenly dead among them. Then every knight lept from the board ashamed and araged for wrath, nigh out of their wits. For they wist not what to say: considering queen Guenever made the feast and dinner, they all had suspicion unto her. My lady, the queen, said Gawaine, wit ye well, madam, that this dinner was made for me: for all folks that know my conditions understand that I love well fruit, and now I see well I had near been slain; therefore, madam, I dread lest ye will be shamed. Then the queen stood still, and was sore abashed, that he nist not what to say. This shall not so be ended, said Sir Mador de la Porte, for here have I lost a full noble knight of my blood, and therefore upon this shame and despite I will be revenged

to the utterance. And there openly Sir Mador appealed the queen of the death of his cousin Sir Patrise. Then stood they all still, that none of them would speak a word against him. For they had a great suspicion unto the queen because she let make that dinner. And the queen was so abashed that she could none other ways do but wept so heartily that she fell in a swoon. With this noise and cry came to them king Arthur. And when he wist of that trouble, he was a passing heavy man.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Mador appeached the queen of treason, and there was no knight would fight for her at the first time.

And ever Sir Mador stood still afore the king, and ever he appealed the queen of treason: for the custom was such that time that all manner of shameful death was called treason. Fair lords, said king Arthur, me repenteth of this trouble, but the case is so I may not have ado in this matter, for I must be a rightful judge, and that repenteth me that I may not do battle for my wife: for, as I deem, this deed came never by her, and therefore I suppose she shall not be all distained, but that some good knight shall put his body in jeopardy, rather than she shall be burnt in a wrong quarrel. And therefore, Sir Mador, be not so hasty, for it may happen she shall not be all friendless, and therefore desire thou thy day of battle, and she shall purvey her of some good knight that shall answer you, or else it were to me great shame, and to all my court. My gracious lord, said Sir Mador, ye must hold me excused, for though ye be our king in that degree, ye are but a knight as we are, and ye are sworn unto knighthood as well as we, and therefore I beseech you that ye be not displeased. For there is none of the four and twenty knights that were bidden to this dinner but all they have great suspicion unto the queen. What say ye all, my lords? said Sir Mador. Then they answered by and by that they could not excuse the queen, for why she made the dinner, and either it must come by her or by her servants. Alas, said the queen, I made this dinner for a good intent, and never for none evil; so Almighty God help me in my right as I was never purposed to do such evil deeds, and that I report me unto God. My lord the king, said Sir Mador, I require you, as ye be a righteous king, give me a day that I may have justice. Well, said the king, I give the day this day fifteen days, that thou be ready armed on horseback in the meadow beside Westminster. And if it so fall that there be any knight to encounter with you, there mayest thou do the best, and God speed the right. And if it so fall that there be no knight at that day, then must my queen be burnt, and there shall she be ready to have her judgment. I am answered, said Sir Mador; and every knight went where it liked him. So when the king and the queen were together, the king asked the queen how this case befell? The queen answered, So God me help I wot not how, nor in what manner. Where is Sir Launcelot? said king Arthur, and he were here, he would not grudge to do battle for you. Sir, said the queen, I wot not where he is, but his brother and his kinsmen deem that he is not within this realm. That me repenteth, said king Arthur, for and he were here he would soon stint this strife. Then I will counsel you, said the king, and unto Sir Bors—That ye will do battle for her for Sir Launcelot's sake,—and upon my life he will not refuse you. For well I see, said the king, that none of these four and twenty knights that were with you at your dinner, where Sir Patrise was slain, will do battle for you, nor none of them will say well of you, and that shall be great slander for you in this court. Alas, said the queen, and I may not do withal, but now I miss Sir Launcelot, for and he were here he would put me soon to my heart's ease. What aileth you, said the king, ye cannot keep Sir Launcelot on your side? For, wit ye well, said the king, who that

auncelot upon his party hath
an of worship in the world
ide. Now go your way, said
ito the queen, and require Sir
battle for you for Sir Laun-
t.

CHAP. V.

*een required Sir Bors to fight
nd how he granted upon con-
nd how he warned Sir Laun-
ceof.*

ueen departed from the king,
r Sir Bors into her chamber.
he was come, she besought
our. Madam, said he, what
hat I did, for I may not with
p have ado in this matter,
was at the same dinner, for
any of those knights would
in suspicion. Also madam,
rs, now miss ye Sir Launce-
would not have failed you
right nor in wrong, as ye
proved when ye have been in
i now ye have driven him out
ntry, by whom ye and all we
worshipped by. Therefore,
marvel me how ye dare for
uire me to do any thing for
much ye have chased him
country, by whom we were
and honoured. Alas, fair
d the queen, I put me wholly
ce, and all that is done amiss
end as ye will counsel me.
with she kneeled down upon
nees, and besought Sir Bors
ercy upon her,—or I shall
ameful death, and thereto I
aded. Right so came king
id found the queen kneeling
Bors. Then Sir Bors pulled
d said, Madam, ye do to me
nour. Ah, gentle knight, said
have mercy upon my queen,
knight, for I am now in
e is untruly defamed. And
courteous knight, said the
ise her to do battle for her:
ou, for the love of Sir Laun-
lord, said Sir Bors, ye re-
quire me the greatest thing that any man may require me; and wit ye well, if I grant to do battle for the queen I shall wrath many of my fellowship of the Table Round; but as for that, said Bors, I will grant my lord, for my lord Sir Launcelot's sake, and for your sake, I will at that day be the queen's champion, unless that there come by adventure a better knight than I am to do battle for her. Will ye promise me this, said the king, by your faith? Yea sir, said Sir Bors, of that will I not fail you, nor her both, but if that there come a better knight than I am, and then shall he have the battle. Then was the king and the queen passing glad, and so departed, and thanked him heartily. So then Sir Bors departed secretly upon a day, and rode unto Sir Launcelot, there as he was with the hermit Sir Brasias, and told him of all their adventure. Ah, said Sir Launcelot, this is come happily as I would have it, and therefore I pray you make you ready to do battle, but look that ye tarry till ye see me come, as long as ye may. For I am sure Mador is an hot knight, when he is enchafed, for the more ye suffer him, the hastier will he be to battle. Sir, said Bors, let me deal with him; doubt ye not ye shall have all your will. Then departed Sir Bors from him, and came to the court again. Then was it noised in all the court that Sir Bors should do battle for the queen: wherefore many knights were displeased with him, that he would take upon him to do battle in the queen's quarrel, for there were but few knights in the court but they deemed the queen was in the wrong, and that she had done that treason. So Sir Bors answered thus unto his fellows of the Table Round: Wit ye well, my fair lords, it were shame to us all, and we suffered to see the most noble queen of the world to be shamed openly, considering her lord and our lord is the man of most worship in the world, and most christened, and he hath ever worshipped us all, in all places. Many answered him again:—As for our most noble king Arthur, we love him and honour him as well as ye do; but as for

queen Guenever we love her not, because she is a destroyer of good knights. Fair lords, said Sir Bors, me seemeth ye say not as ye should say, for never yet in my days knew I never, nor heard say, that ever she was a destroyer of any good knight: but at all times, as far as I ever could know, she was always a maintainer of good knights, and always she hath been large and free of her goods to all good knights, and the most bounteous lady of her gifts and her good grace that ever I saw or heard speak of. And therefore it were shame, said Sir Bors, to us all to our most noble king's wife, and we suffered her to be shamefully slain. And wit ye well, said Sir Bors, I will not suffer it, for I dare say so much, the queen is not guilty of Sir Patrise's death, for she owed him never none ill will, nor none of the four and twenty knights that were at that dinner; for I dare say for good love she bad us to dinner, and not for no mal-engine; and that I doubt not shall be proved hereafter: for howsoever the game goeth, there was treason among us. Then some said to Sir Bors, We may well believe your words. And so some of them were well pleased, and some were not so.

CHAP. VI.

How at the day Sir Bors made him ready for to fight for the queen; and when he should fight how another discharged him.

THE day came on fast until the even that the battle should be. Then the queen sent for Sir Bors, and asked him how he was disposed. Truly madam, said he, I am disposed in likewise as I promised you; that is for to say, I shall not fail you, unless by adventure there come a better knight than I am, to do the battle for you: then, madam, am I discharged of my promise. Will ye, said the queen, that I tell my lord Arthur thus? Do as it shall please you, madam. Then the queen went unto the king, and told him the answer of Sir Bors. Have ye no doubt, said the king, of Sir Bors, for I call him now one of the best knights of the world, and the most profitablest man. And thus it past on until the morn. And the king and the queen, and all manner of knights that were there at that time, drew them unto the meadow beside Westminster, where the battle should be. And so when the king was come with the queen, and many knights of the Round Table, then the queen was put there in the constable's ward, and a great fire made about an iron stake, that, and Sir Mador de la Porte had the better, she should be burnt. Such custom was used in those days, that neither for favour, neither for love, nor affinity, there should be none other but righteous judgment, as well upon a king as upon a knight, and as well upon a queen as upon another poor lady. So in this meanwhile came in Sir Mador de la Porte, and took his oath afore the king, That the queen did this treason until his cousin Sir Patrise, and unto his oath he would prove it with his body, hand for hand, who that would say the contrary. Right so came in Sir Bors de Ganis, and said, that as for queen Guenever, she is in the right, and that will I make good with my hands, that she is not culpable of this treason that is put upon her. Then make thee ready, said Sir Mador, and we shall prove whether thou be in the right or I. Sir Mador, said Sir Bors, wit thou well I know you for a good knight: not for then I shall not fear so greatly, but I trust to God I shall be able to withstand your malice: but thus much have I promised my lord Arthur, and my lady the queen, that I shall do battle for her in this case to the uttermost, unless that there come a better knight than I am, and discharge me. Is that all, said Sir Mador, either come thou off and do battle with me, or else say nay. Take your horse, said Sir Bors, and, as I suppose, ye shall not tarry long, but ye shall be answered. Then either departed to their tents, and made them ready to horseback as they thought best. And anon Sir

ame into the field with his
i his shoulder, and his spear
and. And so rode about the
ying unto king Arthur, Bid
ampion come forth and he
Then was Sir Bors ashamed,
: his horse and came to the
And then was he ware where
m a wood there fast by a
ll armed upon a white horse,
trange shield of strange arms,
ame riding all that he might
id so he came to Sir Bors, and
r knight, I pray you be not
d, for here must a better knight
re have this battle; therefore I
i withdraw you. For wit ye
ive had this day a right great
and this battle ought to be
d so I promised you when I
th you last, and with all my
hank you of your good will.
: Bors rode unto king Arthur,
him how there was a knight
t would have the battle for to
the queen. What knight is he?
king. I wot not, said Sir Bors,
covenant he made with me to
this day. Now my lord, said
here am I discharged.

CHAP. VII.

Launcelot fought against Sir for the queen, and how he over- Sir Mador and discharged the

the king called to that knight,
d him if he would fight for the
Then he answered to the king,
e came I hither, and therefore,
he said, tarry me no longer,
y not tarry. For anon as I
shed this battle I must depart
or I have ado many matters
e. For wit you well, said that
this is dishonour to you all
of the Round Table, to see and
noble a lady, and so courteous
as queen Guenever is, thus to
ed and shamed amongst you.
y all marvelled what knight
ht be that so took the battle
upon him, for there was not one that knew him, but if it were Sir Bors. Then said Sir Mador de la Porte unto the king, Now let me wit with whom I shall have ado withal. And then they rode to the lists' end, and there they couched their spears, and ran together with all their mights. And Sir Mador's spear brake all to pieces, but the other's spear held, and bare Sir Mador's horse and all backward to the earth a great fall. But mightily and suddenly he avoided his horse, and put his shield afore him, and then drew his sword, and bad the other knight alight and do battle with him on foot. Then that knight descended from his horse lightly like a valiant man, and put his shield afore him, and drew his sword, and so they came eagerly unto battle, and either gave other many great strokes, tracing and traversing, rasing and foining, and hurtling together with their swords, as it were wild boars. Thus were they fighting nigh an hour, for this Sir Mador was a strong knight, and mightily proved in many strong battles. But at last this knight smote Sir Mador groveling upon the earth, and the knight stept near him to have pulled Sir Mador flatling upon the ground; and therewith suddenly Sir Mador arose, and in his rising he smote that knight through the thick of the thighs, that the blood ran out fiercely. And when he felt himself so wounded, and saw his blood, he let him arise upon his feet; and then he gave him such a buffet upon the helm that he fell to the earth flatling, and therewith he strode to him for to have pulled off his helm off his head. And then Sir Mador prayed that knight to save his life, and so he yielded him as overcome, and released the queen of his quarrel. I will not grant thee thy life, said that knight, only that thou freely release the queen for ever, and that no mention be made upon Sir Patrise's tomb that ever queen Guenever consented to that treason. All this shall be done, said Sir Mador, I clearly discharge my quarrel for ever. Then the knights parters of the lists

took up Sir Mador and led him to his tent. And the other knight went straight to the stair foot where sat king Arthur, and by that time was the queen come to the king, and either kissed other heartily. And when the king saw that knight, he stooped down to him and thanked him, and in likewise did the queen: and the king prayed him to put off his helmet, and to repose him, and to take a sop of wine, and then he put off his helm to drink, and then every knight knew him that it was Sir Launcelot du Lake. Anon as the king wist that, he took the queen in his hand, and went unto Sir Launcelot, and said, Sir, grant mercy of your great travail that ye have had this day for me and for my queen. My lord, said Sir Launcelot, wit ye well I ought of right ever to be in your quarrel, and in my lady the queen's quarrel to do battle, for ye are the man that gave me the high honour of knighthood, and that day my lady your queen did me great worship, and else I had been shamed; for that same day ye made me knight through my hastiness I lost my sword, and my lady your queen found it, and lapped it in her train, and gave me my sword when I had need thereto, and else had I been shamed among all knights. And therefore, my lord Arthur, I promised her at that day ever to be her knight in right or in wrong. Grant mercy, said king Arthur, for this journey, and wit ye well, said the king, I shall acquit your goodness. And ever the queen beheld Sir Launcelot, and wept so tenderly that she sank almost to the ground for sorrow that he had done to her so great goodness, where she shewed him great unkindness. Then the knights of his blood drew unto him, and there either of them made great joy of other. And so came all the knights of the Table Round that were there at that time, and welcomed him. And then Sir Mador was had to leech-craft, and Sir Launcelot was healed of his wound. And then there was made great joy and mirths in that court.

CHAP. VIII.

How the truth was known by the m the lake, and of divers other ma

And so it befell that the da the lake, her name was Nimue, th wedded the good knight Sir Pell so she came to the court, for ever great goodness unto king Arth to all his knights, through her and enchantments. And so wh heard how the queen was an a for the death of Sir Patrise, th told it openly that she was never and there she disclosed by whom done, and named him Sir Pinel, what cause he did it. There openly disclosed, and so the que excused, and the knight Pinel fl his country. Then was it openly that Sir Pinel enpoisoned the at the feast, to that intent t destroyed Sir Gawaine, becau Gawaine and his brethren de Sir Lamorak de Galis, to the wh Pinel was cousin unto. Then v Patrise buried in the church of minster, in a tomb, and thereup written, Here lieth Sir Patrise of I sla'n by Sir Pinel le Savage, tl poisoned apples to have slain S waine, and by misfortune Sir Pat one of those apples, and then su he brast. Also there was writte the tomb, that queen Guenev appealed of treason of the death Patrise by Sir Mador de la Por there was made mention how Sir celot fought with him for queen never, and overcame him in plain All this was written upon the t Sir Patrise, in excusing of the And then Sir Mador sued daily an to have the queen's good grace. by the means of Sir Launcelot he him to stand in the queen's grac all was forgiven. Thus it passe till our Lady day, Assumption. a fifteen days of that feast th let cry a great justs and a tourn that should be at that day at C that is Winchester. And the k cry that he and the king of Scots

t all that would come against
id when this cry was made,
ne many knights. So there
her the king of Northgalis,
Anguish of Ireland, and the
the hundred knights, and Sir
he haut prince, and the king
mberland, and many other
s and earls of divers countries.
Arthur made him ready to
these justs, and would have
ueen with him: but at that
would not, she said, for she
and might not ride at that
at me repenteth, said the
this seven year ye saw not
lowship together, except at
le when Galahad departed
ourt. Truly, said the queen
, ye must hold me excused, I
: there, and that me repenteth.
y deemed the queen would
re because of Sir Launcelot
for Sir Launcelot would not
he king; for he said that he
hole of the wound the which
had given him. Wherefore
as heavy and passing wroth,
departed towards Winchester
llowship. And so by the way
dged in a town called Astolat,
w in English called Gilford,
the king lay in the castle.
the king was departed, the
ed Sir Launcelot unto her,
ir Launcelot ye are greatly to
us to hold you behind my
t trow ye, what will your
d mine say and deem? nought
e how Sir Launcelot holdeth
ehind the king, and so doth
, for that they would be
and thus will they say, said
to Sir Launcelot, have ye
thereof.

CHAP. IX.

Launcelot rode to Astolat, and a sleeve to bear upon his helm uest of a maid.

said Sir Launcelot, I allow
t is of late come sin ye were
wise, and therefore, madam, as at this time I will be ruled by your counsel, and this night I will take my rest, and to-morrow by time will take my way toward Winchester. But wit you well, said Sir Launcelot to the queen, that at that justs I will be against the king and all his fellowship. Ye may there do as ye list, said the queen, but by my counsel ye shall not be against your king and your fellowship, for therein be full many hardy knights of your blood, as ye wot well enough, it needeth not to rehearse them. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, I pray you that ye be not displeased with me, for I will take the adventure that God will send me. And so upon the morn early Sir Launcelot heard mass, and brake his fast, and so took his leave of the queen, and departed. And then he rode so much until he came to Astolat, that is Gilford; and there it happed him in the eventide he came to an old baron's place, that hight Sir Bernard of Astolat. And as Sir Launcelot entered into his lodging, king Arthur espied him as he did walk in a garden beside the castle, how he took his lodging, and knew him full well. It is well, said king Arthur unto the knights that were with him in that garden beside the castle, I have now espied one knight that will play his play at the justs to the which we be gone toward, I undertake he will do marvels. Who is that, we pray you tell us, said many knights that were there at that time. Ye shall not wit for me, said the king, at this time. And so the king smiled, and went to his lodging. So when Sir Launcelot was in his lodging, and unarmed him in his chamber, the old baron and hermit came unto him, making his reverence, and welcomed him in the best manner; but the old knight knew not Sir Launcelot. Fair sir, said Sir Launcelot to his host, I would pray you to lend me a shield that were not openly known, for mine is well known. Sir, said his host, ye shall have your desire, for me seemeth ye be one of the likeliest knights of the world, and therefore I shall shew you

friendship. Sir, wit you well I have two sons which were but late made knights, and the eldest hight Sir Tirre, and he was hurt that same day that he was made knight, that he may not ride, and his shield ye shall have, for that is not known, I dare say, but here and in no place else. And my youngest son hight Sir Lavaine, and if it please you he shall ride with you unto that justs, and he is of his age strong and wight. For much my heart giveth unto you that ye should be a noble knight, therefore, I pray you tell me your name, said Sir Bernard. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, ye must hold me excused as at this time, and if God give me grace to speed well at the justs I shall come again and tell you. But I pray you, said Sir Launcelot, in any wise let me have your son Sir Lavaine with me, and that I may have his brother's shield. Also this shall be done, said Sir Bernard.

This old baron had a daughter that time that was called that time the fair maid of Astolat. And ever she beheld Sir Launcelot wonderfully. And, as the book saith, she cast such a love unto Sir Launcelot that she could never withdraw her love, wherefore she died; and her name was Elaine le Blank. So thus as she came to and fro, she was so hot in her love that she besought Sir Launcelot to wear upon him at the justs a token of hers. Fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, and if I grant you that, ye may say I do more for your love than ever I did for lady or damsel. Then he remembered him that he would go to the justs disguised, and for because he had never afore that time borne no manner of token of no damsel, then he bethought him that he would bear one of her, that none of his blood thereby might know him. And then he said, Fair maiden, I will grant you to wear a token of yours upon my helmet, and therefore what it is shew it me. Sir, she said, it is a red sleeve of mine, of scarlet well embroidered with great pearls. And so she brought it him. So Sir Launcelot received it and said, Never did I erst so much for no damsel. And then Sir L betook the fair maiden his sl keeping, and prayed her to k until that he came again. And night he had merry rest and gre For ever the damsel Elaine wa Sir Launcelot, all the while sh be suffered.

CHAP. X.

How the tourney began at Winche what knights were at the justs, things.

So upon a day on the mo Arthur and all his knights depa their king had tarried there th to abide his noble knights. when the king was riden, Sir L and Sir Lavaine made them r to ride, and either of them ha shields, and the red sleeve Sir L let carry with him. And so th their leave at Sir Bernard the ol and at his daughter the fair m Astolat. And then they rode till they came to Camelot, th called Winchester. And there w press of kings, dukes, earls, and and many noble knights. But t Launcelot was lodged privily, means of Sir Lavaine, with a r gess, that no man in that to ware what they were. And sojourned there till our Lady d sumption, as the great feast sh So then trumpets blew unto t and king Arthur was set on hi a scaffold, to behold who di But, as the French book sait Arthur would not suffer Sir Ga go from him, for never had Sir the better and Sir Launcelot we field; and many times was Sir rebuked when Launcelot came justs disguised. Then some kings, as king Anguish of Irel the king of Scotland, were t turned upon the side of king And then on the other party king of Northgalis, and the ki the hundred knights, and the Northumberland, and Sir Gala haut prince. But these three k

were passing weak to hold
ing Arthur's party: for with
the noblest knights of the
o then they withdrew them
ty from other, and every man
ready in his best manner to
ie might. Then Sir Launcelot
ready, and put the red sleeve
head, and fastened it fast; and
uncelot and Sir Lavaine de-
it of Winchester privily, and
a little leaved wood, behind
that held against king Ar-
ty, and there they held them
the parties smote together.
came in the king of Scots and
of Ireland on Arthur's party:
nst them came the king of
erland; and the king with
red knights smote down the
Northumberland, and the king
hundred knights smote down
guish of Ireland. Then Sir
, that was on Arthur's party,
ed with Sir Galahalt, and
them smote down other, and
ty halp their lords on horse-
in. So there began a strong
n both parties. And then there
Sir Brandiles, Sir Sagramor le
Sir Dodinas le Savage, Sir
neschal, Sir Griflet le Fise de
Mordred, Sir Meliot de Logris,
a le Cure Hardy, Sir Safere,
gris, and Sir Galleron of Gal-
these fifteen knights were
the Table Round. So these
others came in together, and
ack the king of Northumber-
the king of North Wales.
r Launcelot saw this, as he
little leaved wood, then he said
Lavaine, See yonder is a com-
od knights, and they hold them
s boars that were chafed with
at is truth, said Sir Lavaine.

CHAP. XI.

Launcelot and Sir Lavaine en- the field against them of king s court, and how Launcelot was

aid Sir Launcelot, and ye will help me a little, ye shall see yonder fellowship which chaseth now these men in our side, that they shall go as fast backward as they went forward. Sir, spare not, said Sir Lavaine, for I shall do what I may. Then Sir Launcelot and Sir Lavaine came in at the thickest of the press, and there Sir Launcelot smote down Sir Brandiles, Sir Sagramor, Sir Dodinas, Sir Kay, Sir Griflet, and all this he did with one spear. And Sir Lavaine smote down Sir Lucan le Buttelere, and Sir Bedivere. And then Sir Launcelot gat another spear, and there he smote down Sir Agravaine, Sir Gaheris, and Sir Mordred, and Sir Meliot de Logris. And Sir Lavaine smote down Ozanna le Cure Hardy: and then Sir Launcelot drew his sword, and there he smote on the right hand and on the left hand, and by great force he unhorsed Sir Safere, Sir Epinogris, and Sir Galleron. And then the knights of the Table Round withdrew them aback, after they had gotten their horses as well as they might. O mercy, said Sir Gawaine, what knight is yonder, that doth so marvellous deeds of arms in that field? I wot what he is, said king Arthur. But as at this time I will not name him. Sir, said Sir Gawaine, I would say it were Sir Launcelot, by his riding and his buffets that I see him deal: but ever me seemeth it should not be he, for that he beareth the red sleeve upon his head, for I wist him never bear token, at no justs, of lady nor gentlewoman. Let him be, said king Arthur, he will be better known and do more or ever he depart. Then the party that were against king Arthur were well comforted, and then they held them together, that beforehand were sore rebuked. Then Sir Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Lionel, called unto them the knights of their blood, as Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Aliduke, Sir Galihud, Sir Galihodin, Sir Bellangere le Beuse, so these nine knights of Sir Launcelot's kin thrust in mightily, for they were all noble knights. And they of great hate and despite that they had unto him,

thought to rebuke that noble knight Sir Launcelot, and Sir Lavaine, for they knew them not. And so they came hurtling together, and smote down many knights of Northgalis and of Northumberland. And when Sir Launcelot saw them fare so, he gat a spear in his hand, and there encountered with him all at once Sir Bors, Sir Ector, and Sir Lionel, and all they three smote him at once with their spears. And with force of themselves they smote Sir Launcelot's horse to the earth. And by misfortune Sir Bors smote Sir Launcelot through the shield into the side, and the spear brake, and the head left still in his side. When Sir Lavaine saw his master lie on the ground, he ran to the king of Scots, and smote him to the earth, and by great force he took his horse and brought him to Sir Launcelot, and maugre them all he made him to mount upon that horse. And then Launcelot gat a spear in his hand, and there he smote Sir Bors horse and man to the earth, in the same wise he served Sir Ector and Sir Lionel, and Sir Lavaine smote down Sir Blamor de Ganis. And then Sir Launcelot drew his sword, for he felt himself so sore and hurt that he wend there to have had his death. And then he smote Sir Bleoberis such a buffet on the helmet that he fell down to the earth in a swoon. And in the same wise he served Sir Aliduke and Sir Galihud. And Sir Lavaine smote down Sir Bellangere, that was the son of Alisander le Orphelin. And by this was Sir Bors horsed, and then he came with Sir Ector and Sir Lionel, and all they three smote with swords upon Sir Launcelot's helmet. And when he felt their buffets, and his wound the which was so grievous, then he thought to do what he might while he might endure; and then he gave Sir Bors such a buffet that he made him bow his head passing low, and therewithal he rased off his helm, and might have slain him, and so pulled him down. And in the same wise he served Sir Ector and Sir Lionel. For, as the book saith, he might have slain them, but when he saw their visages his heart might not serve him thereto, but left them there.

And then afterward he hurled in the thickest press of them all, and did there the marvellousest deeds of arms that ever man saw or heard speak of; and ever Sir Lavaine the good knight with him. And there Sir Launcelot with his sword smote and pulled down, as the French book maketh mention, more than thirty knights, and the most party were of the Table Round. And Sir Lavaine did full well that day, for he smote down ten knights of the Table Round.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Lavaine departed out of the field, and in what jeopardy Launcelot was.

Mercy, said Sir Gawaine to Arthur, I marvel what knight that he is with the red sleeve. Sir, said king Arthur, he will be known or he depart. And then the king blew unto lodging, and the prize was given by heralds unto the knight with the white shield, that bare the red sleeve. Then came the king with the hundred knights, the king of Northgalis, and the king of Northumberland, and Sir Galahalt the haut prince, and said unto Sir Launcelot, Fair knight, God thee bless, for much have ye done this day for us, therefore we pray you that ye will come with us, that ye may receive the honour and the prize as ye have worshipfully deserved it. My fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, wit you well, if I have deserved thank I have sore bought it, and that me repenteth, for I am like never to escape with my life, therefore, fair lords, I pray you that ye will suffer me to depart where me liketh, for I am sore hurt. I take none force of none honour, for I had lever to repose me than to be lord of all the world. And therewithal he groaned piteously, and rode a great gallop away-ward from them, until he came under a wood's side; and when he saw that he was from the field nigh a mile, that he was sure he might not be

ıe said with an high voice, night Sir Lavaine, help me ncheon were out of my side, th so sore that it nigh slay-) mine own lord, said Sir would fain do that might but I dread me sore, and I ıe truncheon, that ye shall ıf death. I charge you, said ot, as ye love me draw it ıerewithal he descended from nd right so did Sir Lavaine, ith Sir Lavaine drew the ut of his side. And he gave ek, and a marvellous grisly his blood brast out nigh a , that at last he sank down,)ned pale and deadly. Alas, aine, what shall I do? And ned Sir Launcelot into the o he lay there nigh half an had been dead. And so at Launcelot cast up his eyes,) Lavaine, help me that I y horse, for here is fast by two mile a gentle hermit, me was a full noble knight lord of possessions: and for ıess he hath taken him to ty, and forsaken many lands, ne is Sir Baudewin of Brit- ıe is a full noble surgeon, l leech. Now let see, help t I were there. For ever iveth me that I shall never ousin-german's hands. And great pain Sir Lavaine halp is horse; and then they rode lop together, and ever Sir)led that it ran down to the l so by fortune they came to tage, which was under a a great cliff on the other fair water running under it. ir Lavaine beat on the gate utt of his spear, and cried for Jesu's sake. And there r child to them, and asked they would? Fair son, said , go and pray thy lord the God's sake to let in here at is full sore wounded, and l thy lord that I saw him do more deeds of arms than ever I heard say that any man did. So the child went in lightly, and then he brought the hermit, the which was a passing good man. So when Sir Lavaine saw him. he prayed him for God's sake of succour. What knight is he? said the hermit, is he of the house of king Arthur or not? I wot not, said Sir Lavaine, what is he, nor what is his name, but well I wot I saw him do marvellously this day, as of deeds of arms. On whose party was he? said the hermit. Sir, said Sir Lavaine, he was this day against king Arthur, and there he wan the prize of all the knights of the Round Table. I have seen the day, said the hermit, I would have loved him the worse because he was against my lord king Arthur, for sometime I was one of the fellowship of the Round Table, but I thank God now I am otherwise disposed. But where is he? let me see him. Then Sir Lavaine brought the hermit to him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Launcelot was brought to an hermit for to be healed of his wound, and of other matters.

And when the hermit beheld him as he sat leaning upon his saddle-bow, ever bleeding piteously, and ever the knight hermit thought that he should know him, but he could not bring him to knowledge, because he was so pale for bleeding, What knight are ye? said the hermit, and where were ye born? My fair lord, said Sir Launcelot, I am a stranger, and a knight adventurous that laboureth throughout many realms for to win worship. Then the hermit advised him better, and saw by a wound on his cheek that he was Sir Launcelot. Alas, said the hermit, mine own lord, why hide you your name from me: forsooth I ought to know you of right, for ye are the most noblest knight of the world; for well I know you for Sir Launcelot. Sir, said he, sith ye know me, help me and ye may, for God's

sake; for I would be out of this pain at once, either to death or to life. Have ye no doubt, said the hermit, ye shall live and fare right well. And so the hermit called to him two of his servants, and so he and his servants bare him into the hermitage, and lightly unarmed him and laid him in his bed. And then anon the hermit stanched his blood, and made him to drink good wine, so that Sir Launcelot was well refreshed, and knew himself. For in those days it was not the guise of hermits as is now adays. For there were none hermits in those days but that they had been men of worship and of prowess, and those hermits held great household, and refreshed people that were in distress.

Now turn we unto king Arthur, and leave we Sir Launcelot in the hermitage. So when the kings were come together on both parties, and the great feast should be holden, king Arthur asked the king of Northgalis and their fellowship where was that knight that bare the red sleeve:—Bring him before me, that he may have his laud and honour and the prize, as it is right. Then spake Sir Galahalt the haut prince and the king with the hundred knights: We suppose that knight is mischieved, and that he is never like to see you, nor none of us all, and that is the greatest pity that ever we wist of any knight. Alas, said Arthur, how may this be? is he so hurt? What is his name? said king Arthur. Truly, said they all, we know not his name, nor from whence he came, nor whither he would. Alas, said the king, these be to me the worst tidings that came to me this seven year: for I would not for all the lands I hold, to know and wit it were so that that noble knight were slain. Know ye him? said they all. As for that, said Arthur, whether I know him or know him not, ye shall not know for me what man he is, but Almighty Jesu send me good tidings of him. And so said they all. By my head, said Sir Gawaine, if it be so, that the good knight be so sore hurt, it is great damage and pity to all this land, for he is one of the noblest knights that ever I saw in a field handle a spear or a sword. And if he may be found I shall find him, for I am sure he is not far from this town. Bear you well, said king Arthur, and ye may find him, unless that he be in such a plight that he may not hold himself. Jesu defend, said Sir Gawaine, but wit I shall what he is, and I may find him. Right so Sir Gawaine took a squire with him, upon hackneys, and rode all about Camelot within six or seven miles. But so he came again, and could hear no word of him.

Then within two days king Arthur and all the fellowship returned unto London again. And so as they rode by the way, it happed Sir Gawaine at Astolat to lodge with Sir Bernard, there as was Sir Launcelot lodged. And so as Sir Gawaine was in his chamber to repose him, Sir Bernard the old baron came unto him, and his daughter Elaine, for to cheer him, and to ask him what tidings, and who did best at that tournament of Winchester. Truly, said Sir Gawaine, there were two knights that bare two white shields; but the one of them bare a red sleeve upon his head, and certainly he was one of the best knights that ever I saw just in field. For I dare say, said Sir Gawaine, that one knight with the red sleeve smote down forty valiant knights of the Table Round, and his fellow did right well and worshipfully. Now blessed be God, said the fair maiden of Astolat, that that knight sped so well, for he is the man in the world that I first loved, and truly he shall be the last that ever I shall love. Now fair maid, said Sir Gawaine, is that good knight your love? Certainly, sir, said she, wit ye well he is my love. Then know ye his name, said Sir Gawaine. Nay, truly, said the damsel, I know not his name, nor from whence he cometh, but to say that I love him, I promise you and God that I love him. How had ye knowledge of him first? said Sir Gawaine.

CHAP. XIV.

Gawaine was lodged with the Astolat, and there had know- ut it was Sir Launcelot that red sleeve.

e told him as ye have heard . how her father betook him r to do him service, and how lent him her brother Sir eld,—And here with me he wn shield. For what cause said Sir Gawaine. For this l the damsel, for his shield ell known among many noble Ah, fair damsel, said Sir Ga- ise it you let me have a sight eld. Sir, said she, it is in my overed with a case, and if ye with me, ye shall see it. Not ir Bernard, till his daughter r it. So when the shield was Gawaine took off the case: ie beheld that shield, he knew it was Sir Launcelot's shield, wn arms. Ah, mercy, said ne, now is my heart more n ever it was tofore. Why? e. For I have great cause, awaine: is that knight that is shield your love? Yea she, my love he is, God were his love. Truly, said ie, fair damsel, ye have right, ie be your love, ye love the urable knight of the world, an of most worship. So me er, said the damsel, for never, ne, for no knight that ever ed I never none erst. God l Sir Gawaine, that either of rejoice other, but that is in lventure. But truly, said Sir nto the damsel, ye may say fair grace, for why, I have t noble knight this four and r, and never or that day I nor knight, I dare make it good, eard say that ever he bare ign of no lady, gentlewoman, , at no justs nor tournament. fore, fair maiden, said Sir Ga- are much beholden to him to give him thanks. But I dread me, said Sir Gawaine, that ye shall never see him in this world, and that is great pity that ever was of earthly knight. Alas, said she, how may this be? Is he slain? I say not so, said Sir Gawaine, but wit ye well, he is grievously wounded, by all manner of signs, and by men's sight more likely to be dead then to be on live; and wit ye well he is the noble knight Sir Launcelot, for by this shield I know him. Alas, said the fair maiden of Astolat, how may this be, and what was his hurt? Truly, said Sir Gawaine, the man in the world that loved him best hurt him so, and I dare say, said Sir Gawaine, and that knight that hurt him knew the very certainty that he had hurt Sir Launcelot, it would be the most sorrow that ever came to his heart. Now, fair father, said then Elaine, I require you give me leave to ride and to seek him, or else I wot well I shall go out of my mind, for I shall never stint till that I find him and my brother Sir Lavaine. Do as it liketh you, said her father, for me right sore repenteth of the hurt of that noble knight. Right so the maid made her ready, and before Sir Gawaine making great dole. Then on the morn Sir Gawaine came to king Arthur, and told him how he had found Sir Launcelot's shield in the keeping of the fair maiden of Astolat. All that knew I aforehand, said king Arthur, and that caused me I would not suffer you to have ado at the great justs: for I espied, said king Arthur, when he came in till his lodging, full late in the evening in Astolat. But marvel have I, said Arthur, that ever he would bear any sign of any damsel: for, or now, I never heard say nor knew that ever he bare any token of none earthly woman. By my head, said Sir Gawaine, the fair maiden of Astolat loveth him marvellously well; what it meaneth I cannot say; and she is ridden after to seek him. So the king and all came to London, and there Sir Gawaine openly disclosed to all the court that it was Sir Launcelot that justed best.

CHAP. XV.

Of the sorrow that Sir Bors had for the hurt of Launcelot; and of the anger that the queen had because Launcelot bore the sleeve.

And when Sir Bors heard that, wit ye well he was a heavy man, and so were all his kinsmen. But when queen Guenever wist that Sir Launcelot bare the red sleeve of the fair maiden of Astolat, she was nigh out of her mind for wrath. And then she sent for Sir Bors de Ganis in all the haste that might be. So when Sir Bors was come tofore the queen, then she said, Ah, Sir Bors, have ye heard say how falsely Sir Launcelot hath betrayed me? Alas, madam, said Sir Bors, I am afraid he hath betrayed himself, and us all. No force, said the queen, though he be destroyed, for he is a false traitor knight. Madam, said Sir Bors, I pray you say ye not so, for wit you well I may not hear such language of him. Why, Sir Bors, said she, should I not call him traitor, when he bare the red sleeve upon his head at Winchester, at the great justs? Madam, said Sir Bors, that sleeve-bearing repenteth me sore, but I dare say he did it to none evil intent, but for this cause he bare the red sleeve, that none of his blood should know him; for, or then, we nor none of us all never knew that ever he bare token or sign of maid, lady, ne gentlewoman. Fie on him, said the queen, yet for all his pride and boasting, there ye proved yourself his better. Nay, madam, say ye never more so, for he beat me and my fellows, and might have slain us, and he had would. Fie on him, said the queen, for I heard Sir Gawaine say before my lord Arthur, that it were marvel to tell the great love that is between the fair maiden of Astolat and him. Madam, said Sir Bors, I may not warn Sir Gawaine to say what it pleased him: but I dare say as for my lord Sir Launcelot, that he loveth no lady, gentlewoman, nor maid, but all he loveth in like much, and therefore, madam, said Sir Bors, ye may say what ye will, but wit ye well I will haste me to seek him, wheresoever he be, and G good tidings of him. And them there, and speak we celot, that lay in great peril

So as fair Elaine came to she sought there all about, tune Sir Lavaine was ridden to enchafe his horse. A Elaine saw him she kne then she cried onloud until when he heard her, anon her; and then she asked How did my lord, Sir Who told you, sister, tha name was Sir Launcelot? told him how Sir Gawaine knew him. So they rode that they came to the her anon she alight. So Sir Lav her in to Sir Launcelot. A saw him lie so sick and pal she might not speak, but fell to the earth down su swoon, and there she lay a And when she was relieved and said, My lord Sir Lau why be ye in this plight? a swooned again. And then lot prayed Sir Lavaine to ta And bring her to me. A came to herself, Sir Laun her, and said, Fair maiden, thus? Ye put me to pain make ye no more such chee be come to comfort me, welcome, and of this little have, I shall be right hasti the grace of God. But I Sir Launcelot, who told yo Then the fair maiden told hi Gawaine was lodged with And there by your shield h your name. Alas, said Si that me repenteth, that n known, for I am sure it wi anger. And then Sir Lau passed in his mind that would tell queen Guenever the red sleeve, and for wh wist well would turn unto So this maiden, Elaine, from Sir Launcelot, but w

t, and did such attendance he French book saith there voman did more kindlier ı she. Then Sir Launcelot .avaine to make espies in ɔr Sir Bors if he came there, by what tokens he should y a wound in his forehead: n sure, said Sir Launcelot, will seek me, for he is the ıight that hurt me.

CHAP. XVI.

sought Launcelot and found bermitage, and of the lamen- ten them.

we unto Sir Bors de Ganis, to Winchester to seek after r Launcelot; and so when Vinchester, anon there were Lavaine had made to lie in such a man; and anon Sir warning; and then Sir e to Winchester, and found there he told him what he h whom he was, and what e. Now, fair knight, said require you that ye will ı my lord Sir Launcelot. Lavaine, take your horse, his hour ye shall see him. y departed, and came to e.

Sir Bors saw Sir Launcelot pale and discoloured, anon his countenance, and for pity he might not speak, derly a great while. And e might speak he said thus: r Launcelot, God you bless, u hasty recovery; and full of my misfortune and of ıiness, for now I may call ɔpy, and I dread me that y displeased with me, that er me to have such a shame ou, that are all our leader orship, and therefore I call ɔpy. Alas, that ever such a as I am should have power ss to hurt the most noblest world. Where I so shamefully set upon you and overcharged you, and where ye might have slain me, ye saved me, and so did not I: for I, and your blood, did to you our utterance. I marvel, said Sir Bors, that my heart or my blood would serve me, wherefore my lord Sir Launcelot, I ask your mercy. Fair cousin, said Sir Launcelot, ye be right welcome, and wit ye well overmuch ye say for to please me, the which pleaseth me not; for why? I have the same sought, for I would with pride have overcome you all, and there in my pride I was near slain, and that was in mine own default, for I might have given you warning of my being there. And then had I had no hurt; for it is an old said saw, there is hard battle there as kin and friends do battle either against other; there may be no mercy, but mortal war. Therefore, fair cousin, said Sir Launcelot, let this speech overpass, and all shall be welcome that God sendeth; and let us leave off this matter, and let us speak of some rejoicing: for this that is done may not be undone, and let us find a remedy how soon that I may be whole. Then Sir Bors leaned upon his bed's side, and told Sir Launcelot how the queen was passing wroth with him, because he ware the red sleeve at the great justs. And there Sir Bors told him all how Sir Gawaine discovered it by your shield that ye left with the fair maiden of Astolat. Then is the queen wroth, said Sir Launcelot, and therefore am I right heavy, for I deserved no wrath, for all that I did was because that I would not be known. Right so excused I you, said Sir Bors, but all was in vain, for she said more largely to me than I to you now. But is this she, said Sir Bors, that is so busy about you, that men call the fair maiden of Astolat? She it is, said Sir Launcelot, that by no means I cannot put from me. Why should ye put her from you? said Sir Bors, she is a passing fair damsel, and a well beseen and well taught; and God would, fair cousin, said Sir Bors, that ye could love her, but as to that I may not, nor I dare not, counsel you. But I see well, said Sir Bors, by her

diligence about you, that she loveth you entirely. That me repenteth, said Sir Launcelot. Sir, said Sir Bors, she is not the first that hath lost her pain upon you, and that is the more pity. And so they talked of many more things. And so within three days or four, Sir Launcelot was big and strong again.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot armed him to assay if he might bear arms, and how his wound burst out again.

THEN Sir Bors told Sir Launcelot how there was sworn a great tournament and justs betwixt king Arthur and the king of Northgalis, that should be on All-hallowmass day, beside Winchester. Is that truth? said Sir Launcelot, then shall ye abide with me still a little while, until that I be whole, for I feel myself right big and strong. Blessed be God, said Sir Bors. Then were they there nigh a month together; and ever this maiden Elaine did ever her diligent labour, night and day, unto Sir Launcelot, that there was never child nor wife more meeker to father and husband, than was that fair maiden of Astolat. Wherefore Sir Bors was greatly pleased with her. So upon a day, by the assent of Sir Launcelot, Sir Bors and Sir Lavaine they made the hermit to seek in woods for divers herbs. And so Sir Launcelot made fair Elaine to gather herbs for him, to make him a bath. In the mean while, Sir Launcelot made him to arm him at all pieces, and there he thought to assay his armour and his spear, for his hurt or not. And so when he was upon his horse, he stirred him fiercely, and the horse was passing lusty and fresh, because he was not laboured a month before. And then Sir Launcelot couched that spear in the rest: that courser lept mightily when he felt the spurs; and he that was upon him, the which was the noblest horse of the world, strained him mightily and stably, and kept still the spear in the rest. And therewith Sir Launcelot strained himself so straitly, with so great force, to get the horse forward, that th the wound brast, both with out, and therewithal the out so fiercely that he fe feeble that he might not horse. And then Sir Lau unto Sir Bors, Ah, Sir B Lavaine, help, for I am c end. And therewith he f the one side to the earth, corpse. And then Sir B Lavaine came to him, making out of measure. fortune the maiden Elaine mourning, and then she c And when she found Si there armed in that plac and wept as she had beer then she kissed him, and might to awake him. A rebuked her brother and S called them false traitor would take him out of h she cried, and said she v them of his death. With t holy hermit, Sir Baudewin and when he found Sir that plight he said but littl well he was wroth; and t them, Let us have him they all bare him unto th and unarmed him, and lai bed, and evermore his wou ously, but he stirred no Then the knight hermit p his nose, and a little deal his mouth, and then Si waked of his swoon, and mit stanched his bleeding. he might speak, he asked why he put his life in je said Sir Launcelot, becaus had been strong, and also me that there should be a mass a great justs betwixt and the king of Northgalis, I thought to assay it my I might be there or not. A celot, said the hermit, yo your courage will never b your last day, but ye shall d counsel; let Sir Bors depa and let him do at that tour

d by the grace of God, said hermit, by that the tourna- ıe, and ye come hither again, .ot shall be as whole as ye, so l be governed by me.

CHAP. XVIII.

ırs returned and told tidings of celot, and of the tourney, and the prize was given.

r Bors made him ready to ı Sir Launcelot; and then Sir said, Fair cousin, Sir Bors, l me unto all them unto ıught to recommend me unto, you enforce yourself at that ye may be best, for my love, ıall I abide you, at the mercy ll ye come again. And so leparted, and came to the ıg Arthur, and told them in he had left Sir Launcelot. epenteth, said the king, but ll have his life, we may all . And there Sir Bors told in what jeopardy Sir Laun- when he would essay his . all that he did, madam, was ɜ of you, because he would at this tournament. Fie on ant knight, said the queen, well I am right sorry and he his life. His life shall he Sir Bors, and who that would except you, madam, we that blood should help to short

But, madam, said Sir Bors, ɜen oft-times displeased with Sir Launcelot, but at all he end ye find him a true And so he departed. And knight of the Round Table there present at that time, ı ready to be at that justs ɔwmass. And thither drew hts of divers countries. And owmass drew near, thither king of Northgalis, and the he hundred knights, and Sir ıe haut prince of Surluse, and ne king Anguish of Ireland, ıg of Scots. So these three kings came on king Arthur's party. And so that day Sir Gawaine did great deeds of arms, and began first, and the heralds numbered that Sir Gawaine smote down twenty knights. Then Sir Bors de Ganis came in the same time, and he was numbered that he smote down twenty knights. And therefore the prize was given betwixt them both, for they began first, and the longest endured.

Also Sir Gareth, as the book saith, did that day great deeds of arms, for he smote down, and pulled down, thirty knights. But when he had done these deeds he tarried not, but so departed, and therefore he lost his prize. And Sir Palamides did great deeds of arms that day, for he smote down twenty knights, but he departed suddenly; and men deemed Sir Gareth and he rode together to some manner adventure. So when this tournament was done, Sir Bors departed, and rode till he came to Sir Launcelot his cousin, and then he found him walking on his feet, and there either made great joy of other. And so Sir Bors told Sir Launcelot of all the justs, like as ye have heard. I marvel, said Sir Launcelot, that Sir Gareth, when he had done such deeds of arms, that he would not tarry. Thereof we marvelled all, said Sir Bors, for, but if it were you, or Sir Tristram, or Sir Lamorak de Galis, I saw never knight bear down so many in so little a while as did Sir Gareth. And anon as he was gone, he wist not where. By my head, said Sir Launcelot, he is a noble knight, and a mighty man, and well breathed; and if he were well assayed, said Sir Launcelot, I would deem he were good enough for any man that beareth the life; and he is a gentle knight, courteous, true, and bounteous, meek and mild, and in him is no manner of mal-engine, but plain, faithful, and true. So then they made them ready to depart from the hermit. And so upon a morn they took their horses, and Elaine le Blank with them; and when they came to Astolat, there they were well lodged, and had great

cheer of Sir Bernard the old baron, and of Sir Tirre his son. And so upon the morn, when Sir Launcelot should depart, fair Elaine brought her father with her, and Sir Tirre and Sir Lavaine, and thus she said:

CHAP. XIX.

Of the great lamentation of the fair maid of Astolat when Launcelot should depart, and how she died for his love.

My lord Sir Launcelot, now I see ye will depart, now, fair knight and courteous knight, have mercy upon me, and suffer me not to die for thy love. What would ye that I did? said Sir Launcelot. I would have you to my husband, said Elaine. Fair damsel, I thank you, said Sir Launcelot, but truly, said he, I cast me never to be wedded man. Then, fair knight, said she, will ye be my love? Jesu defend me, said Sir Launcelot, for then I rewarded to your father and your brother full evil for their great goodness. Alas, said she, then must I die for your love. Ye shall not so, said Sir Launcelot, for wit ye well, fair maiden, I might have been married and I had would, but I never applied me to be married yet. But because, fair damsel, that ye love me as ye say ye do, I will, for your good will and kindness, shew you some goodness, and that is this; that wheresoever ye will beset your heart upon some good knight that will wed you, I shall give you together a thousand pound yearly, to you and to your heirs. Thus much will I give you, fair madam, for your kindness, and always while I live to be your own knight. Of all this, said the maiden, I will none, for, but if ye will wed me, or else be my lover, wit you well, Sir Launcelot, my good days are done. Fair damsel, said Sir Launcelot, of these two things ye must pardon me. Then she shrieked shrilly, and fell down in a swoon; and then women bare her into her chamber, and there she made overmuch sorrow. And then Sir Launcelot would depart; and there he asked Sir Lavaine what he would do. What should I do, s Lavaine, but follow you, but if y me from you, or command m from you? Then came Sir Be Sir Launcelot, and said to him, see but that my daughter Ela die for your sake. I may not d said Sir Launcelot, for that me penteth; for I report me to that my proffer is fair, and m eth, said Sir Launcelot, that sh me as she doth: I was never t of it, for I report me to you early nor late proffered her bo fair behests; and as for me, Launcelot, I dare do all that knight should do, that she i maiden, both for deed and for I am right heavy of her distres is a full fair maiden, good, an and well taught. Father, saic vaine, I dare make good she is good as my lord Sir Launc said; but she doth as I do, fo first saw my lord Sir Launcelo never depart from him, nor will and I may follow him. Launcelot took his leave, and departed, and came unto W And when Arthur wist that Sir lot was come, whole and so king made great joy of him, a Sir Gawaine, and all the knigh Round Table except Sir Agra Sir Mordred. Also queen was wood wroth with Sir L and would by no means sp him, but estranged herself fr and Sir Launcelot made all t that he might to speak with t but it would not be.

Now speak we of the fair m Astolat, that made such sor and night, that she never slept drank; and ever she made l plaint unto Sir Launcelot. she had thus endured a ten c she feebled so that she m pass out of this world, then sh her clean, and received her And ever she complained still Launcelot. Then her ghost bade her leave such thought

Why should I leave such
am I not an earthly woman?
: while the breath is in my
' complain me, for my belief
ıe offence though I love an
n, and I take God to my
ver loved none but Sir Laun-
ake, nor never shall; and a
n I am for him and for all
l since it is the sufferance of
shall die for the love of so
night, I beseech the High
heaven to have mercy upon
nd upon mine innumerable
I suffered may be allegiance
my sins. For sweet Lord
the fair maiden, I take thee
on thee I was never great
gainst thy laws, but that I
noble knight Sir Launcelot
asure, and of myself, good
ght not withstand the fervent
fore I have my death. And
ılled her father Sir Bernard,
other Sir Tirre, and heartily
her father that her brother
e a letter like as she did
and so her father granted
when the letter was written
ord like as she devised, then
her father that she might be
ntil she were dead, — And
ody is hot, let this letter be
right hand, and my hand
: with the letter until that
and let me be put in a fair
all the richest clothes that
ut me, and so let my bed,
' richest clothes, be laid with
:hariot unto the next place
mes is, and there let me be
a barget, and but one man
ıuch as ye trust to steer me
l that my barget be covered
samite, over and over. Thus,
eseech you, let it be done.
her granted it her faithfully,
should be done like as she
d. Then her father and her
ıde great dole, for, when this
anon she died. And so when
dead, the corpse, and the
ras led the next way unto
Thames, and there a man, and the corpse, and all, were put into Thames, and so the man steered the barget unto Westminster, and there he rowed a great while to and fro or any espied it.

CHAP. XX.

How the corpse of the maid of Astolat arrived tofore king Arthur, and of the burying, and how Sir Launcelot offered the mass-penny.

So by fortune king Arthur and the queen Guenever were speaking together at a window; and so as they looked into Thames, they espied this black barget, and had marvel what it meant. Then the king called Sir Kay, and shewed it him. Sir, said Sir Kay, wit you well there is some new tidings. Go thither, said the king to Sir Kay, and take with you Sir Brandiles and Agravaine, and bring me ready word what is there. Then these three knights departed, and came to the barget, and went in; and there they found the fairest corpse lying in a rich bed, and a poor man sitting in the barget's end, and no word would he speak. So these three knights returned unto the king again, and told him what they found. That fair corpse will I see, said the king. And so then the king took the queen by the hand and went thither. Then the king made the barget to be holden fast; and then the king and the queen entered, with certain knights with them. And there he saw the fairest woman lie in a rich bed, covered unto her middle with many rich clothes, and all was of cloth of gold, and she lay as though she had smiled. Then the queen espied a letter in her right hand, and told it to the king. Then the king took it, and said, Now I am sure this letter will tell what she was, and why she is come hither. Then the king and the queen went out of the barget, and so commanded a certain man to wait upon the barget. And so when the king was come within his chamber, he called many knights about him, and said that he would wit openly what was written

within that letter. Then the king brake it, and made a clerk to read it; and this was the intent of the letter:—Most noble knight, Sir Launcelot, now hath death made us two at debate for your love; I was your lover, that men called the fair maiden of Astolat; therefore unto all ladies I make my moan; yet pray for my soul, and bury me at the least, and offer ye my mass-penny. This is my last request. And a clean maiden I died, I take God to witness. Pray for my soul, Sir Launcelot, as thou art peerless.—This was all the substance in the letter. And when it was read, the king, the queen, and all the knights wept for pity of the doleful complaints. Then was Sir Launcelot sent for. And when he was come, king Arthur made the letter to be read to him; and when Sir Launcelot heard it word by word, he said, My lord Arthur, wit ye well I am right heavy of the death of this fair damsel. God knoweth I was never causer of her death by my willing, and that will I report me to her own brother; here he is, Sir Lavaine. I will not say nay, said Sir Launcelot, but that she was both fair and good, and much I was beholden unto her, but she loved me out of measure. Ye might have shewed her, said the queen, some bounty and gentleness, that might have preserved her life. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, she would none other way be answered, but that she would be my wife, or else my love, and of these two I would not grant her; but I proffered her, for her good love that she shewed me, a thousand pound yearly to her and to her heirs, and to wed any manner knight that she could find best to love in her heart. For, madam, said Sir Launcelot, I love not to be constrained to love; for love must arise of the heart, and not by no constraint. That is truth, said the king, and many knights: love is free in himself, and never will be bounden; for where he is bounden he loseth himself. Then said the king unto Sir Launcelot, It will be your worship that ye oversee that she be interred worshipfully. Sir, said Sir Launcelot, that shall be done a best devise. And so many went thither to behold that fair And so upon the morn she was richly, and Sir Launcelot offe mass-penny, and all the knight Table Round that were there time offered with Sir Launcelo then the poor man went again barget. Then the queen sent Launcelot, and prayed him o for why she had been wroth causeless. This is not the fi said Sir Launcelot, that ye h displeased with me causeles madam, ever I must suffer what sorrow I endure I take So this passed on all that win all manner of hunting and hawl justs and tourneys were many many great lords; and ever in a Sir Lavaine gat great worship, he was nobly renowned amo knights of the Table Round.

CHAP. XXI.

Of great justs done all a Christ of a great justs and tourney or king Arthur, and of Sir Launc

THUS it passed on till Christ every day there was justs ma diamond, who that justed bes have a diamond. But Sir L would not just, but if it were a justs cried. But Sir Lavain there all that Christmas passi and best was praised; for th but few that did so well. W all manner of knights deemed Lavaine should be made knig Round Table at the next feast c cost. So at after Christmas k thur let call unto him many knig there they advised together to party and a great tournament a And the king of Northgalis Arthur he would have on h king Anguish of Ireland, and t with the hundred knights, and of Northumberland, and Sir the haut prince; and so th kings and this mighty duke to

Arthur and the knights of
ound. And the cry was
ıe day of the justs should
Vestminster on Candlemas
many knights were glad,
:m ready to be at that justs
est manner. Then queen
nt for Sir Launcelot, and
warn you that ye ride no
justs nor tournaments, but
smen may know you. And
that shall be, ye shall have
e of gold; and I pray you,
enforce yourself there that
ak of you worship. But I
s ye will have my love, that
r kinsmen that ye will bear
sleeve of gold upon your
dam, said Sir Launcelot, it
ıe. And so either made
f other. And when Sir
ıw his time, he told Sir
would depart, and have no
m but Sir Lavaine, unto the
that dwelled in the forest
his name was Sir Brastias,
thought to repose him, and
he rest that he might, be-
ıld be fresh at that day of
ir Launcelot and Sir La-
ed, that no creature wist
ıs become, but the noble
blood. And when he was
hermitage, wit you well he
:heer. And so daily Sir
ould go to a well fast by
:e, and there he would lie
see the well spring and
sometime he slept there.
ne there was a lady dwelled
st, and she was a great
l daily she used to hunt,
he bare her bow with her;
went never with her, but
:n, and they were shooters,
ell kill a deer, both at the
the trest; and they daily
ıd arrows, horns and wood-
nany good dogs they had,
: string and for a bait.
l that this lady, the hunt-
ited her dogs for the bow
hind, and so this barren hind took her flight over heaths and woods, and ever this lady and part of her gentlewomen coasted the hind, and checked it by the noise of the hounds, to have met with the hind at some water. And so it happed the hind came to the well whereas Sir Launcelot was sleeping and slumbering. And so when the hind came to the well, for heat she went to soil, and there she lay a great while; and the dogs came fast after, and umbecast about, for she had lost the very perfect track of the hind. Right so, there came that lady the huntress, that knew by the dog that she had that the hind was at the soil in that well. And there she came stiffly, and found the hind, and she put a broad arrow in her bow, and shot at the hind, and overshot the hind, and so, by misfortune, the arrow smote Sir Launcelot in the thick of the thigh, over the barbs. When Sir Launcelot felt himself so hurt, he hurled up woodly, and saw the lady that had smitten him. And when he saw she was a woman, he said thus, Lady, or damsel, what that thou be, in an evil time bare ye a bow, the devil made you a shooter.

CHAP. XXII.

How Launcelot after that he was hurt of a gentlewoman came to an hermit, and of other matters.

Now mercy, fair sir, said the lady, I am a gentlewoman that useth here in this forest hunting, and truly I saw you not, but as here was a barren hind at the soil in this well, and I wend to have done well, but my hand swerved. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, ye have mischieved me. And so the lady departed, and Sir Launcelot, as well as he might, pulled out the arrow, and the head abode still in his thigh; and so he went weakly to the hermitage, evermore bleeding as he went. And when Sir Lavaine and the hermit espied that Sir Launcelot was hurt, wit you well they were passing heavy: but Sir Lavaine nor the hermit wist not how he was hurt, nor by whom. And then they were wroth out of measure. Then with great pain the

hermit gat out the arrow's head out of Sir Launcelot's thigh, and much of his blood he shed, and the wound was passing sore, and unhappily smitten; for it was in such a place that he might not sit in no saddle. Ah, mercy, said Sir Launcelot, I call myself the most unhappiest man that liveth; for ever when I would fainest have worship, there befalleth me ever some unhappy thing. Now, so heaven me help, I shall be in the field upon Candlemas day at the justs, whatsoever fall of it. So all that might be gotten to heal Sir Launcelot was had. So when the day was come, Sir Launcelot let devise that he was arrayed, and Sir Lavaine, and their horses, as though they had been Saracens. And so they departed, and came nigh to the field. The king of Northgalis with an hundred knights with him, and the king of Northumberland brought with him an hundred good knights, and king Anguish of Ireland brought with him an hundred good knights ready to just, and Sir Galahalt the haut prince brought with him an hundred good knights, and the king with the hundred knights brought with him as many; and all these were proved good knights. Then came in king Arthur's party, and there came in the king of Scots with an hundred knights, and king Uriens of Gore brought with him an hundred good knights, and king Howel of Britanny brought with him an hundred knights. And Chalance of Clarance brought with him an hundred knights, and king Arthur himself came into the field with two hundred knights, and the most part were knights of the Table Round that were proved noble knights. And there were old knights set in scaffolds, for to judge with the queen who did best.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Launcelot behaved him at the justs, and other men also.

THEN they blew to the field, and there the king of Northgalis encountered with the king of Scots, and there the king of Scots had a fall, and the king of Ireland smote down king Uriens, and the king of Northumberland smote down king Howel of Britanny, and Sir Galahalt, the haut prince, smote down Chalance of Clarance. And then king Arthur was wood wroth, and ran to the king with the hundred knights, and there king Arthur smote him down, and after with that same spear king Arthur smote down three other knights. And then when his spear was broken king Arthur did passing well. And so therewithal came in Sir Gawaine, and Sir Gaheris, Sir Agravaine, and Sir Mordred, and there every each of them smote down a knight, and Sir Gawaine smote down four knights. And then there began a strong meddle, for then there came in the knights of Launcelot's blood, and Sir Gareth and Sir Palamides with them, and many knights of the Table Round, and they began to hold the four kings and the mighty duke so hard that they were discomfit, but this duke Galahalt the haut prince was a noble knight, and by his mighty prowess of arms he held the knights of the Table Round straight enough. All this doing saw Sir Launcelot, and then he came into the field with Sir Lavaine, as it had been thunder. And then anon Sir Bors and the knights of his blood espied Sir Launcelot, and said to them all, I warn you beware of him with the sleeve of gold upon his head, for he is himself Sir Launcelot du Lake. And for great goodness Sir Bors warned Sir Gareth. I am well apayed, said Sir Gareth, that I may know him. But who is he, said they all, that rideth with him in the same array? That is the good and gentle knight Sir Lavaine, said Sir Bors. So Sir Launcelot encountered with Sir Gawaine, and there by force Sir Launcelot smote down Sir Gawaine and his horse to the earth, and so he smote down Sir Agravaine and Sir Gaheris, and also he smote down Sir Mordred, and all this was with one spear. Then Sir Lavaine met with Sir Palamides, and either met other so hard and so fiercely that both their horses fell to the earth. And then were they horsed

hen met Sir Launcelot with
es, and there Sir Palamides
And so Sir Launcelot, or
ıt, as fast as he might get
smote down thirty knights,
ıt part of them were knights
ıle Round. And ever the
his blood withdrew them,
em ado in other places where
ɔt came not; and then king
; wroth when he saw Sir
lo such deeds, and then the
unto him Sir Gawaine, Sir
r Kay, Sir Griflet, Sir Lucan
Sir Bedivere, Sir Palamides,
ıis brother; and so the king
ine knights made them ready
Sir Launcelot and upon Sir
ıll this espied Sir Bors and
Now I dread me sore, said
hat my lord Sir Launcelot
rd matched. By my head,
eth, I will ride unto my lord
ot for to help him, fall of
ıay, for he is the same man
ıe knight. Ye shall not so,
s, by my counsel, unless that
ruised. Ye shall see me dis-
Sir Gareth; and therewithal
Welsh knight where he was
mself, and he was sore hurt
r Gawaine, and to him Sir
e, and prayed him of his
to lend him his shield for
well, said the Welsh knight.
Sir Gareth had his shield,
aith, it was green, with a
t seemed in it. Then Sir
ıe driving to Sir Launcelot
might, and said, Knight,
f, for yonder cometh king
ı nine noble knights with
you to a rebuke, and so I
bear you fellowship for old
ve shewed me. Gramercy,
ncelot. Sir, said Sir Gareth,
e with Sir Gawaine, and I
ıter with Sir Palamides, and
ıine match with the noble
r. And when we have de-
ı, let us three hold us sadly
Then came king Arthur with
ghts with him, and Sir Laun-
celot encountered with Sir Gawaine, and gave him such a buffet that the bow of his saddle brast, and Sir Gawaine fell to the earth. Then Sir Gareth encountered with the good knight Sir Palamides, and he gave him such a buffet that both his horse and he dashed to the earth. Then encountered king Arthur with Sir Lavaine, and there either of them smote other to the earth, horse and all, that they lay a great while. Then Sir Launcelot smote down Sir Agravaine, and Sir Gaheris, and Sir Mordred. And Sir Gareth smote down Sir Kay, Sir Safere, and Sir Griflet. And then Sir Lavaine was horsed again, and he smote down Sir Lucan the butler, and Sir Bedivere, and then there began great throng of good knights. Then Sir Launcelot hurtled here and there, and rased and pulled off helms, so that at that time there might none sit him a buffet with spear nor with sword. And Sir Gareth did such deeds of arms that all men wondered what knight he was with the green shield; for he smote down that day and pulled down more than thirty knights. And, as the French book saith, Sir Launcelot marvelled, when he beheld Sir Gareth do such deeds, what knight he might be: and Sir Lavaine pulled down and smote down twenty knights. Also Sir Launcelot knew not Sir Gareth, for, and Sir Tristram de Liones or Sir Lamorak de Galis had been alive, Sir Launcelot would have deemed he had been one of them twain. So ever as Sir Launcelot, Sir Gareth, Sir Lavaine, fought, and on the one side Sir Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Lionel, Sir Lamorak de Galis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Galihud, Sir Galihodin, Sir Pelleas, and with more other of king Ban's blood, fought upon another party, and held the king with the hundred knights, and also the king of Northumberland, right straight.

CHAP. XXIV.

How king Arthur marvelled much of the justing in the field, and how he rode and found Sir Launcelot.

So this tournament and this justs

dured long, till it was near night, for the knights of the Round Table relieved ever unto king Arthur; for the king was wroth out of measure that he and his knights might not prevail that day. Then Sir Gawaine said to the king, I marvel where all this day Sir Bors de Ganis and his fellowship of Sir Launcelot's blood be. I marvel all this day they be not about you. It is for some cause, said Sir Gawaine. By my head, said Sir Kay, Sir Bors is yonder all this day upon the right hand of this field, and there he and his blood done more worshipfully than we do. It may well be, said Sir Gawaine, but I dread me ever of guile, for on pain of my life, said Sir Gawaine, this knight with the red sleeve of gold is himself Sir Launcelot, I see well by his riding and by his great strokes, and the other knight in the same colour is the good young knight Sir Lavaine. Also that knight with the green shield is my brother Sir Gareth, and yet he hath disguised himself, for no man shall never make him be against Sir Launcelot, because he made him knight. By my head, said Arthur, nephew, I believe you, therefore tell me now what is your best counsel? Sir, said Sir Gawaine, ye shall have my counsel. Let blow unto lodging, for, and he be Sir Launcelot du Lake, and my brother Sir Gareth with him, with the help of that good young knight Sir Lavaine, trust me truly it will be no boot to strive with them, but if we should fall ten or twelve upon one knight, and that were no worship, but shame. Ye say truth, said the king, and for to say sooth, said the king, it were shame to us, so many as we be, to set upon them any more. For wit ye well, said the king, they be three good knights, and namely that knight with the sleeve of gold. So then they blew unto lodging; but forthwithal king Arthur let send unto the four kings, and to the mighty duke, and prayed them that the knight with the sleeve of gold depart not from them, but that the king may speak with him. Then forthwithal king Arthur alight, and unarmed him, and took a little hackn after Sir Launcelot, for ev spy upon him; and so he among the four kings an and there the king prayed t supper. And they said they good will. And so when unarmed, then king Arth Launcelot, Sir Lavaine, and Ah Sir Launcelot, said king day ye have heated me and So they went unto Arthur's together, and there was a and great revel, and the pri unto Sir Launcelot, and by named him that he had s fifty knights, and Sir Gar thirty, and Sir Lavaine four knights. Then Sir Launce king and the queen how th ress shot him in the forest in the thigh with a broad how the wound thereof w six inches deep, and in like Arthur blamed Sir Gareth, left his fellowship and he Launcelot. My lord, said he made me a knight, and him so hard bestad, me th my worship to help him, fo do so much, and so many n against him. And when I that he was Sir Launcelot shamed to see so many kni him alone. Truly, said k unto Sir Gareth, ye say wel shipfully have ye done, and great worship, and all the life, said king Arthur unto wit you well I shall love yo you the more better. For e thur, it is a worshipful knig help another worshipful kni seeth him in a great danger worshipful man will be lo worshipful shamed, and he t worship, and fareth with cow shall he shew gentleness, nor of goodness, where he seet any danger, for then ever wi shew no mercy, and always will do ever to another man be done to himself. So ther

into kings and dukes; and and play, and all manner was used; and he that was ue, and faithful to his friend, e cherished.

CHAP. XXV.

love is likened to summer.

t passed on from Candlemas Easter, that the month of me, when every lusty heart o blossom and to bring for like as herbs and trees fruit and flourish in May, very lusty heart, that is in a lover, springeth and i lusty deeds. For it giveth vers courage, that lusty ay, in some thing to con- o some manner of thing, month than in any other ivers causes. For then all trees renew a man and in likewise lovers call r mind old gentleness and and many kind deeds that n by negligence. For like ure doth always arase and summer, so fareth it by e in man and woman. For sons there is no stability, ee all day, for a little blast isure, anon we shall deface irt true love for little or cost much thing. This is or stability, but it is feebleness of nature and great disworship whosoever useth this. Therefore, like as May month flowereth and flourisheth in many gardens, so in likewise let every man of worship flourish his heart in this world, first unto God, and next unto the joy of them that he promised his faith unto, for there was never worshipful man nor worshipful woman, but they loved one better than another: and worship in arms may never be foiled, but first reserve the honour to God, and secondly the quarrel must come of thy lady: and such love I call virtuous love. But now-a-days men cannot love seven night but they must have all their desires, that love may not endure by reason; for where they be soon accorded, and hasty heat, soon it cooleth. Right so fareth love now-a-days; soon hot, soon cold. This is no stability, but the old love was not so. Men and women could love together seven years, and no wanton lusts were between them, and then was love truth and faithfulness. And lo in likewise was used love in king Arthur's days. Wherefore I liken love now-a-days unto summer and winter. For like as the one is hot and the other cold, so fareth love now-a-days. Therefore all ye that be lovers call unto your remembrance the month of May, like as did queen Guenever. For whom I make here a little mention, that while she lived she was a true lover, and therefore she had a good end.

cit liber Octodecimus. And here foloweth liber xix.

The Nineteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Guenever rode on Maying i knights of the Round Table ll in green.

ll in the month of May, ver called unto her knights of the Table Round, and she gave them warning that early upon the morrow she would ride on maying into woods and fields beside Westminster.—And I warn you that there be none of you but that he be well horsed, and that ye all be clothed in green, either

in silk, either in cloth, and I shall bring with me ten ladies, and every knight shall have a lady behind him, and every knight shall have a squire and two yeomen, and I will that ye all be well horsed. So they made them ready in the freshest manner, and these were the names of the knights: Sir Kay the seneschal, Sir Agravaine, Sir Brandiles, Sir Sagramor le Desirous, Sir Dodinas le Savage, Sir Ozanna le Cure Hardy, Sir Ladinas of the Forest Savage, Sir Persant of Inde, Sir Ironside that was called the knight of the red lawns, and Sir Pelleas the lover, and these ten knights made them ready in the freshest manner to ride with the queen. And so upon the morn they took their horses, with the queen, and rode on maying in woods and meadows, as it pleased them, in great joy and delights: for the queen had cast to have been again with king Arthur at the furthest by ten of the clock, and so was that time her purpose. Then there was a knight, that hight Meliagrance, and he was son unto king Bagdemagus, and this knight had at that time a castle, of the gift of king Arthur, within seven mile of Westminster; and this knight Sir Meliagrance loved passing well queen Guenever, and so had he done long and many years. And the book saith he had lain in a wait for to steal away the queen, but evermore he forbare for because of Sir Launcelot, for in no wise he would meddle with the queen, and Sir Launcelot were in her company, or else and he were near hand her. And that time was such a custom the queen rode never without a great fellowship of men of arms about her; and they were many good knights, and the most part were young men that would have worship, and they were called the queen's knights, and never in no battle, tournament, nor justs, they bare none of them no manner of knowledging of their own arms, but plain white shields, and thereby they were called the queen's knights. And then when it happed any of them to be of great worship by his noble deeds, then at the next feast of Pentecost, if there were any slain or dead, as there was no year that there failed but some were dead, then was there chosen in his stead that was dead the most men of worship that were called the queen's knights. And thus they came up all first, or they were renowned men of worship, both Sir Launcelot and all the remnant of them. But this knight, Sir Meliagrance, had espied the queen well and her purpose, and how Sir Launcelot was not with her, and how she had no men of arms with her but the ten noble knights all arrayed in green for maying. Then he provided him a twenty men of arms and an hundred archers, for to destroy the queen and her knights, for he thought that time was the best season to take the queen.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Meliagraunce took the queen and all her knights, which were sore hurt in fighting.

So as the queen had mayed and all her knights, all were bedashed with herbs, mosses, and flowers, in the best manner and freshest. Right so came out of a wood Sir Meliagrance with an eight score men well harnessed, as they should fight in a battle of arrest, and bad the queen and her knights abide, for maugre their heads they should abide. Traitor knight, said queen Guenever, what castest thou for to do? Wilt thou shame thyself? Bethink thee how thou art a king's son, and knight of the Table Round, and thou to be about to dishonour the noble king that made thee knight: thou shamest all knighthood and thyself, and me, I let thee wit, shalt thou never shame, for I had lever cut my throat in twain than thou shouldest dishonour me. As for all this language, said Sir Meliagrance, be it as it may, for wit you well, madam, I have loved you many a year, and never or now could I get you at such an advantage as I do now, and therefore I will take you as I find you. Then spake all the ten noble knights at once,

l, Sir Meliagrance, wit thou
are about to jeopard your wor-
dishonour, and also ye cast to
our persons; howbeit we be
, ye have us at a great avail,
meth by you that ye have laid
ipon us, but rather then ye
out the queen to shame, and
ve had as lief to depart from
, for and if we other ways did
shamed for ever. Then Sir
ince said, Dress you as well as
and keep the queen. Then the
hts of the Table Round drew
ords, and the other let run at
ith their spears, and the ten
manly abode them, and smote
eir spears, that no spear did
one harm. Then they lashed
with swords, and anon Sir Kay,
amor, Sir Agravaine, Sir Dodi-
Ladinas, and Sir Ozanna, were
o the earth with grimly wounds.
ir Brandiles, and Sir Persant,
side, Sir Pelleas, fought long,
were sore wounded: for these
hts, or ever they were laid to
nd, slew forty men of the boldest
best of them. So when the
aw her knights thus dolefully
l, and needs must be slain at
then for pity and sorrow she
ir Meliagrance, slay not my
ights, and I will go with thee
is covenant, that thou save
nd suffer them not to be no
irt, with this, that they be led
wheresoever thou leadest me;
l rather slay myself than I will
thee, unless that these my
ights may be in my presence.
said Meliagrance, for your sake
ll be led with you into mine
tle, with that ye will be ruled
with me. Then the queen
he four knights to leave their
and she and they would not
Madam, said Sir Pelleas, we will
do, for as for me I take no
my life nor death. For, as the
book saith, Sir Pelleas gave
ffets there that none armour
old him.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Launcelot had word how the queen was taken, and how Sir Meliagraunce laid a bushment for Launcelot.

THEN by the queen's commandment they left battle, and dressed the wounded knights on horseback, some sitting, some overthwart their horses, that it was pity to behold them. And then Sir Meliagrance charged the queen and all her knights that none of all her fellowship should depart from her; for full sore he drad Sir Launcelot du Lake, lest he should have any knowledging. All this espied the queen, and privily she called unto her a child of her chamber, that was swiftly horsed, to whom she said, Go thou, when thou seest thy time, and bear this ring unto Sir Launcelot du Lake, and pray him as he loveth me, that he will see me, and rescue me if ever he will have joy of me; and spare thou not thy horse, said the queen, neither for water, neither for land. So the child espied his time, and lightly he took his horse with the spurs, and departed as fast as he might. And when Sir Meliagrance saw him so flee, he understood that it was by the queen's commandment for to warn Sir Launcelot. Then they that were best horsed chased him, and shot at him, but from them all the child went suddenly; and then Sir Meliagrance said unto the queen, Madam, ye are about to betray me, but I shall ordain for Sir Launcelot that he shall not come lightly at you. And then he rode with her and they all to his castle in all the haste that he might. And by the way Sir Meliagrance laid in an enbushment the best archers that he might get in his country, to the number of a thirty, to await upon Sir Launcelot, charging them that if they saw such a manner of knight come by the way upon a white horse, that in any wise they slay his horse, but in no manner of wise have not ado with him bodily, for he is over hard to be overcome. So this was done, and they were come to his castle, but in no wise the

queen would never let none of the ten knights and her ladies out of her sight, but always they were in her presence, for the book saith Sir Meliagrance durst make no masteries for dread of Sir Launcelot, in so much he deemed that he had warning. So when the child was departed from the fellowship of Sir Meliagrance, within awhile he came to Westminster. And anon he found Sir Launcelot. And when he had told his message, and delivered him the queen's ring, Alas, said Sir Launcelot, now am I shamed for ever, unless that I may rescue that noble lady from dishonour. Then eagerly he asked his armour, and ever the child told Sir Launcelot how the ten knights fought marvellously, and how Sir Pelleas, and Sir Ironside, and Sir Brandiles, and Sir Persant of Inde, fought strongly, but namely Sir Pelleas, there might none withstand him, and how they all fought till at the last they were laid to the earth, and then the queen made appointment for to save their lives, and go with Sir Meliagrance. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that most noble lady, that she should be so destroyed! I had lever, said Sir Launcelot, than all France that I had been there well armed. So when Sir Launcelot was armed and upon his horse, he prayed the child of the queen's chamber to warn Sir Lavaine how suddenly he was departed, and for what cause,—And pray him, as he loveth me, that he will hie him after me, and that he stint not until he come to the castle where Sir Meliagrance abideth or dwelleth, for there, said Sir Launcelot, shall he hear of me and I am a man living, and rescue the queen and the ten knights the which he traitorously hath taken, and that shall I prove upon his head, and all them that hold with him.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Launcelot's horse was slain, and how Sir Launcelot rode in a cart for to rescue the queen.

THEN Sir Launcelot rode as fast as he might, and the book saith he took the water at Westminster bridge, and made his horse to swim over Thames to Lambeth. And then within a while he came to the place there as the ten knights had fought with Sir Meliagrance, and then Sir Launcelot followed that track until that he came to a wood, and there was a strait way, and there the thirty archers bad Sir Launcelot turn again, and follow no longer that track. What commandment have ye thereto, said Sir Launcelot, to cause me, that am a knight of the Round Table, to leave my right way? This way shalt thou leave, or else thou shalt go it on thy foot, for wit thou well thy horse shall be slain. That is little mastery, said Sir Launcelot, to slay my horse, but as for myself, when my horse is slain, I give right nought for you, not and ye were five hundred more. So then they shot Sir Launcelot's horse, and smote him with many arrows. And then Sir Launcelot avoided his horse, and went on foot: but there were so many ditches and hedges betwixt them and him, that he might not meddle with none of them. Alas, for shame, said Launcelot, that ever one knight should betray another knight, but it is an old saw, A good man is never in danger but when he is in the danger of a coward. Then Sir Launcelot went a while, and then he was foul cumbered of his armour, his shield, and his spear, and all that longed unto him. Wit ye well he was full sore annoyed, and full loth he was to leave any thing that longed unto him, for he drad sore the treason of Sir Meliagrance. And then by fortune there came by a chariot, that came thither for to fetch wood. Say me, carter, said Sir Launcelot, what shall I give thee for to suffer me to leap into thy chariot, and that thou bring me unto a castle within this two mile? Thou shalt not come within my chariot, said the carter, for I am sent for to fetch wood for my lord Sir Meliagrance.—With him would I speak.—Thou shalt not go with me, said the carter. Then Sir Launcelot lept to him, and gave him such a buffet that he fell to the earth stark dead.

other carter his fellow was
d wend to have gone the
and then he cried, Fair lord,
life, and I shall bring you
will. Then I charge thee,
auncelot, that thou drive me
hariot, even unto Sir Melia-
ate. Leap up into the cha-
the carter, and ye shall be
1. So the carter drove on
vallop, and Sir Launcelot's
wed the chariot, with more
ty arrows broad and rough
nd more than an hour and
ume Guenever was in a bay
ith her ladies, and espied an
ht standing in a chariot. See
id a lady, where rideth in a
goodly armed knight, I sup-
deth unto hanging. Where?
ieen. Then she espied by his
t he was there himself Sir
du Lake. And then she was
re came his horse ever after
ot, and ever he trod his en-
his paunch under his feet.
the queen, now I see well
that well is him that hath a
id. Ha, a, most noble knight,
thou art hard bestad when
t in a chariot. Then she re-
t lady that likened Sir Laun-
le in a chariot to hanging. It
nouthed, said the queen, and
d, so for to liken the most
ht of the world unto such a
leath. O Jesu defend him and
said the queen, from all mis-
nd! By this was Sir Launce-
to the gates of that castle,
he descended down, and cried,
he castle rang of it, Where
false traitor Sir Meliagrance,
t of the Table Round? Now
h here thou traitor knight,
thy fellowship with thee: for
, Sir Launcelot du Lake, that
with you. And therewithal
ie gate wide open upon the
d smote him under his ear
gauntlet that his neck brast

CHAP. V.

How Sir Meliagraunce required forgiveness of the queen, and how she appeased Sir Launcelot, and other matters.

When Sir Meliagrance heard that Sir Launcelot was there, he ran unto queen Guenever, and fell upon his knee, and said, Mercy, madam, now I put me wholly into your grace. What aileth you now? said queen Guenever. Forsooth I might well wit some good knight would revenge me, though my lord Arthur wist not of this your work. Madam, said Sir Meliagrance, all this that is amiss on my part shall be amended right as yourself will devise, and wholly I put me in your grace. What would ye that I did? said the queen. I would no more, said Meliagrance, but that ye would take all in your own hands, and that ye will rule my lord Sir Launcelot, and such cheer as may be made him in this poor castle ye and he shall have until to-morn, and then may ye and all they return unto Westminster, and my body and all that I have I shall put in your rule. Ye say well, said the queen, and better is peace than ever war, and the less noise the more is my worship. Then the queen and her ladies went down unto the knight Sir Launcelot, that stood wroth out of measure in the inner court, to abide battle; and ever he bade—Thou traitor knight, come forth! Then the queen came to him and said, Sir Launcelot, why be ye so moved? Ha, madam, said Sir Launcelot, why ask ye me that question? me seemeth, said Sir Launcelot, ye ought to be more wroth than I am, for ye have the hurt and the dishonour. For wit ye well, madam, my hurt is but little, for the killing of a mare's son; but the despite grieveth me much more than all my hurt. Truly, said the queen, ye say truth, but heartily I thank you, said the queen, but ye must come in with me peaceably, for all thing is put in my hand, and all that is evil shall be for the best, for the knight full sore repenteth him of the misadventure that is befallen him. Madam, said Sir

Launcelot, sith it is so that ye are accorded with him, as for me I may not be against it, howbeit Sir Meliagrance hath done full shamefully to me, and cowardly. Ah, madam, and I had wist ye would have been so soon accorded with him, I would not have made such haste unto you. Why say ye so? said the queen, do ye forthink yourself of your good deeds? Wit you well, said the queen, I accorded never unto him for favour nor love that I had unto him, but for to lay down every shameful noise. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, ye understand full well I was never willing nor glad of shameful slander, nor noise; and there is neither king, queen, nor knight, that beareth the life, except my lord king Arthur, and you, madam, that should let me, but I should make Sir Meliagrance's heart full cold or ever I departed from hence. That I wot well, said the queen, but what will ye more? ye shall have all thing ruled as ye list to have it. Madam, said Sir Launcelot, so ye be pleased I care not, as for my part ye shall soon please. Right so the queen took Sir Launcelot by the bare hand, for he had put off his gauntlet, and so she went with him till her chamber; and then she commanded him to be unarmed, and then Sir Launcelot asked where the ten knights were that were wounded sore. So she shewed them unto Sir Launcelot, and there they made great joy of the coming of him, and Sir Launcelot made great dole of their hurts, and bewailed them greatly; and there Sir Launcelot told them how cowardly and traitorly Meliagrance set archers to slay his horse, and how he was fain to put himself in a chariot. Thus they complained every each to other, and full fain they would have been revenged, but they peaced themself because of the queen. Then, as the French book saith, Sir Launcelot was called many a day after, Le Chevaler du Chariot, and did many deeds, and great adventures he had. And so leave we of this tale, Le Chevaler du Chariot, and turn we to this *tale.*

So Sir Launcelot had great cheer with the queen, and then Sir Launcelot made a promise with the queen, that the same night Sir Launcelot should come to a window outward toward a garden, and that window was y-barred with iron; and there Sir Launcelot promised to meet her when all folks were on sleep. So then came Sir Lavaine, driving to the gates, crying, Where is my lord Sir Launcelot du Lake? Then was he sent for, and when Sir Lavaine saw Sir Launcelot, he said: My lord, I found well how ye were hard bestad, for I have found your horse, that was slain with arrows. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, I pray you Sir Lavaine speak ye of other matters, and let ye this pass, and we shall right it another time, when we best may.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Launcelot came in the night to the queen, and how Sir Meliagrance appeached the queen of treason.

THEN the knights that were hurt were searched, and soft salves were laid to their wounds, and so it passed on till supper time; and all the cheer that might be made them there was done unto the queen and all her knights. Then when season was they went unto their chambers. But in no wise the queen would not suffer the wounded knights to be from her, but that they were laid within draughts by her chamber, upon beds and pillows, that she herself might see to them, that they wanted nothing. So when Launcelot was in his chamber that was assigned unto him, he called unto Sir Lavaine, and told him that he must go speak with his lady, dame Guenever. Sir, said Sir Lavaine, let me go with you, and it please you, for I dread me sore of the treason of Sir Meliagrance. Nay, said Sir Launcelot, I thank you, but I will have nobody with me. Then Sir Launcelot took his sword in his hand, and privily went unto a place whereas he had espied a ladder toforehand, and that he took under his arm and bare it through the

rden, and set it up to the window. nd there anon the queen was ready to eet him. And then they made either other their complaints of many divers ings. And then Sir Launcelot wished at he might have come in to her. Fit ye well, said the queen, I would as in as ye that ye might come in to me. Would ye, madam, said Sir Launcelot, ith your heart that I were with you? ea truly, said the queen. Now shall I rove my might, said Sir Launcelot, for our love. And then he set his hands pon the bars of iron, and pulled at hem with such a might that he brast hem clean out of the stone walls. And herewithal one of the bars of iron cut he brawn of his hands throughout to he bone, and then he lept into the hamber to the queen. Make ye no oise, said the queen, for my wounded nights lie here fast by me. And when e saw his time that he might tarry no onger, he took his leave and departed t the window, and put it together as vell as he might again, and so departed nto his own chamber; and there e told Sir Lavaine how he was hurt; hen Sir Lavaine dressed his hand, and launched it, and put upon it a glove, at it should not be espied. And so he queen lay long in her bed, until it as nine of the clock. Then Sir Melia- rance went to the queen's chamber, nd found her ladies there ready clothed. Mercy, said Sir Meliagrance, what aileth ou, madam, that ye sleep thus long? nd then was he ware of the blood of ir Launcelot's hurt hand. And when ir Meliagrance espied that blood, then e deemed in himself that she was false nto the king, and that it was the blood f some of the wounded knights. Ah, adam, said Sir Meliagrance, now I ave founden you a false traitress unto y lord Arthur; for now I prove well was not for nought that ye laid these ounded knights within the bounds of our chamber: therefore I will call you f treason before my lord king Arthur, nd now I have proved you, madam, ith a shameful deed, and that they e all false, or some of them, I will make good, for a wounded knight hath been here. That is false, said the queen, and that I will report me to them all. Then when the ten knights heard Sir Meliagrance's words, they spake all in one voice and said unto Sir Meliagrance, Thou sayest falsely, and wrongfully puttest upon us such a deed, and that we will make good any of us, choose which thou list of us, when we are whole of our wounds. Ye shall not, said Sir Meliagrance, away with your proud language, for here ye may all see that a wounded knight hath been here. Then were they all ashamed when they saw that blood, and wit you well Sir Meliagrance was passing glad that he had the queen at such an advantage, for he deemed by that to hide his trea- son. So with this rumour came in Sir Launcelot, and found them all at a great array.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Launcelot answered for the queen, and waged battle against Sir Melia- graunce. And how Sir Launcelot was taken in a trap.

WHAT array is this? said Sir Laun- celot. Then Sir Meliagrance told him what he had found, and shewed him the blood. Truly, said Sir Launcelot, ye did not your part nor knightly toward the queen, and therefore have ye done unworshipfully and shamefully to your- self. I wot not what ye mean, said Sir Meliagrance, but well I am sure there hath been one of her wounded knights here, and therefore I will prove with my hands that she is a traitress unto my lord Arthur. Beware what ye do, said Sir Launcelot, for and ye say so, and that ye will prove it, it will be taken at your hands. My lord Sir Launcelot, said Sir Meliagrance, I rede you beware what ye do, for though ye are never so good a knight, as ye wot well that ye are renowned the best knight of the world, yet should ye be advised to do battle in a wrong quarrel, for God will have a stroke in every battle. As for that, said Sir Launcelot, God is to be dread. But as to that

I say nay plainly, that this night none of these ten wounded knights was here with my lady queen Guenever, and that will I prove with my hands, that ye say untruly in that now. Hold, said Sir Meliagrance, here is my glove, that she is traitress unto my lord king Arthur, and that one of the wounded knights was here. And I receive your glove, said Sir Launcelot. And so they were sealed with their signets, and delivered unto the ten knights. At what day shall we do battle together? said Sir Launcelot. This day eight days, said Sir Meliagrance, in the field beside Westminster. I am agreed, said Sir Launcelot. But now, said Sir Meliagrance, sithen it is that we must fight together, I beseech you, as ye are a noble knight, await me with no treason, nor none villainy the meanwhile, nor none for you. So God me help, said Sir Launcelot, ye shall right well wit I was never of no such conditions, for I report me to all knights that ever have known me, I fared never with no treason, nor I loved never the fellowship of no man that fared with treason. Then let us go to dinner, said Meliagrance, and after dinner ye and the queen and ye may ride all to Westminster. I will well, said Sir Launcelot. And Sir Meliagrance said to Sir Launcelot, Pleaseth it you to see the eftures of this castle? With a good will, said Sir Launcelot. And then they went together from chamber to chamber, for Sir Launcelot dread no perils. For ever a man of worship and of prowess dreadeth least always perils: for they ween every man be as they be. But ever he that fareth with treason putteth oft a man in great danger. So it befell upon Sir Launcelot that no peril dread. As he went with Sir Meliagrance, he trod on a trap, and the board rolled, and therewith Sir Launcelot fell down more than ten fathom into a cave full of straw. And then Sir Meliagrance departed, and made no fare as that he nist where he was. And when Sir Launcelot was thus missed, they marvelled where he was become. And then queen Guenever and many of them deemed that he was departed as he was wont to do, suddenly. For Sir Meliagrance made suddenly to put away on side Sir Lavaine's horse, that they might all understand that Sir Launcelot was departed suddenly. So it past on till after dinner, and then Sir Lavaine would not stint until that he ordained litters for the wounded knights, that they might be laid in them, and so with the queen and them all, both ladies and gentlewomen and other, went unto Westminster, and there the knights told king Arthur how Meliagrance had appealed the queen of high treason, and how Sir Launcelot had received the glove of him, and this day eight days they shall do battle afore you. By my head, said king Arthur, I am afeard Sir Meliagrance hath taken upon him a great charge. But where is Sir Launcelot? said the king. Sir, said they all, we wot not where he is, but we deem he is ridden to some adventures, as he is ofttimes wont to do, for he hath Sir Lavaine's horse. Let him be, said the king, he will be founden, but if he be trapped with some treason.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Launcelot was delivered out of prison by a lady, and took a white courser, and came for to keep his day.

So leave we Sir Launcelot, lying within that cave in great pain, and every day there came a lady and brought him his meat and his drink, and wooed him to love her. And ever the noble knight Sir Launcelot said her nay. Sir Launcelot, said she, ye are not wise, for ye may never out of this prison but if ye have my help, and also your lady queen Guenever shall be burnt in your default, unless that ye be there at the day of battle. God defend, said Sir Launcelot, that she should be burnt in my default: and if it be so, said Sir Launcelot, that I may not be there, it shall be well understood both at the king and at the queen, and with all men of worship, that I am dead,

ı prison. For all men that will say for me that I am in case, and I be not there that vell I wot there is some good ther of my blood, or some loveth me, that will take my hand: and, therefore, said Sir , wit ye well ye shall not fear if there were no more women land but you, I would not say

Then art thou shamed, said and destroyed for ever. As ȝ shame, Jesu defend me; and distress, it is welcome, what- ȝe that God sendeth me. So to him the same day that the ıuld be, and said, Sir Laun- thinketh ye are too hard- ut wouldest thou but kiss me ıould deliver thee and thine ınd the best horse that is Meliagrance's stable. As for ıu, said Sir Launcelot, I may ınd lose no worship, and wit ınd I understood there were rship for to kiss you, I would

Then he kissed her, and then ıim and brought him to his And when he was armed, she ıim to a stable, where stood ȝod coursers, and bad him e best. Then Sir Launcelot ȝon a white courser, the which best, and anon he commanded rs fast to saddle him with the e of war that there was, and done as he bade. Then gat ar in his hand, and his sword le, and commanded the lady , and said, Lady, for this good ıall do you service if ever it power.

CHAP. IX.

Launcelot came the same time Meliagraunce abode him in the d dressed him to battle.

ave we Sir Launcelot gallop he might, and speak we of ıenever that was brought to be burnt, for Sir Meliagrance him thought, that Sir Launcelot should not be at that battle, therefore he ever cried upon king Arthur to do him justice, or else bring forth Sir Launcelot du Lake. Then was the king and all the court full sore abashed and shamed that the queen should be burnt in the default of Sir Launcelot. My lord Arthur, said Sir Lavaine, ye may understand that it is not well with my lord Sir Launcelot, for and he were on live, so that he be not sick or in prison, wit ye well he would be here, for never heard ye that ever he failed his part for whom he should do battle for. And therefore, said Sir Lavaine, my lord king Arthur, I beseech you give me licence to do battle here this day for my lord and master, and for to save my lady the queen. Gramercy, gentle knight, Sir Lavaine, said king Arthur, for I dare say all that Sir Meliagrance putteth upon my lady the queen is wrong, for I have spoken with all the ten wounded knights, and there is not one of them, and he were whole and able to do battle, but he would prove upon Sir Meliagrance's body that it is false that he putteth upon my queen. So shall I, said Sir Lavaine, in the defence of my lord Sir Launcelot, and ye will give me leave. Now I give you leave, said king Arthur, and do your best, for I dare well say there is some treason done to Sir Launcelot. Then was Sir Lavaine horsed, and suddenly at the list's end he rode to perform this battle. And right as the heralds should cry Lesses les aler, right so came in Sir Launcelot driving with all the force of his horse. And then Arthur cried, Ho! and Abide! Then was Sir Launcelot called on horseback tofore king Arthur, and there he told openly tofore the king and all, how Sir Meliagrance had served him first and last. And when the king and the queen and all the lords knew of the treason of Sir Meliagrance, they were all ashamed on his behalf. Then was queen Guenever sent for, and set by the king in great trust of her champion. And then there was no more else to say, but Sir Launcelot and Sir Meliagrance dressed them

unto battle, and took their spears, and so they came together as thunder, and there Sir Launcelot bare him down quite over his horse croup. And then Sir Launcelot alight, and dressed his shield on his shoulder with his sword in his hand, and Sir Meliagrance in the same wise dressed him unto him, and there they smote many great strokes together, and at the last Sir Launcelot smote him such a buffet upon the helmet, that he fell on the one side to the earth, and then he cried upon him aloud, Most noble knight, Sir Launcelot du Lake, save my life, for I yield me unto you, and I beseech you, as ye be a knight and fellow of the Table Round, slay me not, for I yield me as overcomen, and whether I shall live or die I put me in the king's hands and yours. Then Sir Launcelot wist not what to do, for he had lever than all the good of the world he might have been revenged upon Sir Meliagrance; and Sir Launcelot looked toward queen Guenever if he might espy by any sign or countenance what she would have done. And then the queen wagged her head upon Sir Launcelot, as though she would say slay him. Full well knew Sir Launcelot by the wagging of her head that she would have had him dead: then Sir Launcelot bad him rise for shame, and perform that battle to the utterance. Nay, said Sir Meliagrance, I will never arise until ye take me as yielden and recreant. I shall proffer you large proffers, said Sir Launcelot, that is to say, I shall unarm my head and my left quarter of my body, all that may be unarmed, and let bind my left hand behind me, so that it shall not help me, and right so I shall do battle with you. Then Sir Meliagrance start up upon his legs, and said on high, My lord Arthur, take heed to this proffer, for I will take it, and let him be disarmed and bounden according to his proffer. What say ye, said king Arthur unto Sir Launcelot, will ye abide by your proffer? Yea, my lord, said Sir Launcelot, I will never go from that I have once said. Then the knights parters of the field disarmed S celot, first his head, and sithen arm and his left side, and the his left arm behind his back, shield or anything, and then th put together. Wit you well th many a lady and knight marvel Sir Launcelot would jeopardy in such wise. Then Sir Mel came with his sword all on h Sir Launcelot shewed him op bare head and the bare left sid when he wend to have smit upon the bare head, then lig avoided the left leg and the l and put his right hand and his s that stroke, and so put it on s great sleight, and then with gr Sir Launcelot smote him on th such a buffet that the stroke ca head in two parts. Then there more to do but he was drawn o field. And at the great instanc knights of the Table Round t suffered him to be interred, mention made upon him who s and for what cause he was slai then the king and the queen ma of Sir Launcelot, and more cherished, than ever he was afo

CHAP. X.

How Sir Urre came into Arthu for to be healed of his wounds, king Arthur would begin to ba

THEN, as the French book mention, there was a good k the land of Hungary, his na Sir Urre, and he was an adv knight, and in all places wh might hear of any deeds of v there would he be. So it happ Spain there was an earl's son, h was Alphegus, and at a great ment in Spain this Sir Urre, k Hungary, and Sir Alphegus o encountered together for very e so either undertook other to th ance, and by fortune Sir Urre Alphegus, the earl's son of Spa this knight that was slain ha Sir Urre, or ever he was slai

nds, three on the head, and
ıis body and upon his left
ıd this Sir Alphegus had a
e which was a great sorceress,
for the despite of her son's
ought by her subtile crafts
Jrre should never be whole,
his wounds should one time
another time bleed, so that
never be whole, until the best
the world had searched his
nd thus she made her avaunt,
ough it was known that Sir
ld never be whole. Then his
t make an horse-litter, and
therein under two palfreys,
he took Sir Urre's sister with
ll fair damsel, whose name
ılie, and then she took a page
to keep their horses, and so
Sir Urre through many coun-
r, as the French book saith,
ım so seven year through all
stened, and never she could
ight that might ease her son.
ıme into Scotland, and into
of England, and by fortune
nigh the feast of Pentecost
ur's court, that at that time
n at Carlisle. And when she
e, then she made it openly
ɔwn how that she was come
and for to heal her son.
ing Arthur let call the lady,
d her the cause why she
ıat hurt knight into that land.
noble king, said that lady,
ell I brought him hither for
ıled of his wounds, that of
even year he might not be
ınd then she told the king
was wounded, and of whom,
ıis mother had discovered in
how she had wrought that
tment, so that he should never
until the best knight of the
searched his wounds:—And
passed through all the lands
to have him healed, except
and if I fail to heal him here
nd, I will never take more
me, and that is pity, for he
d knight, and of great noble-
ness. What is his name? said Arthur. My good and gracious lord, she said, his name is Sir Urre of the Mount. In good time, said the king, and sith ye are come into this land ye are right welcome. And wit you well here shall your son be healed, and ever any christian man may heal him. And for to give all other men of worship courage I myself will assay to handle your son, and so shall all the kings, dukes, and earls that be here present with me at this time; thereto will I command them, and well I wot they shall obey and do after my commandment. And wit you well, said king Arthur unto Urre's sister, I shall begin to handle him and search unto my power, not presuming upon me that I am so worthy to heal your son by my deeds, but I will encourage other men of worship to do as I will do. And then the king commanded all the kings, dukes, and earls, and all noble knights of the Round Table that were there that time present, to come into the meadow of Carlisle. And so at that time there were but an hundred and ten of the Round Table, for forty knights were that time away. And so here we must begin at king Arthur, as is kindly to begin at him that was the most man of worship that was christened at that time.

CHAP. XI.

How king Arthur handled Sir Urre, and after him many other knights of the Round Table.

THEN king Arthur looked upon Sir Urre, and the king thought he was a full likely man when he was whole. And king Arthur made him to be taken down off the litter, and laid him upon the earth, and there was laid a cushion of gold that he should kneel upon. And then Arthur said, Noble fair knight, me repenteth of thy hurt, and for to courage all other noble knights I will pray thee softly to suffer me to handle your wounds. Most noble christened king, said Urre, do as ye list, for I am at the mercy of God, and

at your commandment. So then Arthur softly handled him, and then some of his wounds renewed upon bleeding. Then the king Clariance of Northumberland searched, and it would not be. And then Sir Barant le Apres, that was called the king with the hundred knights, he assayed, and failed; and so did king Urience, of the land of Gore. So did king Anguissance of Ireland; so did king Nentres of Garloth; so did king Carados of Scotland; so did the duke Galahalt, the haut prince; so did Constantine, that was Sir Carados's son, of Cornwall; so did duke Chalance of Clarance; so did the earl Ulbause; so did the earl Lambaile; so did the earl Aristause. Then came in Sir Gawaine, with his three sons, Sir Gingalin, Sir Florence, and Sir Lovel; these two were begotten upon Sir Brandiles's sister; and all they failed. Then came in Sir Agravaine, Sir Gaheris, Sir Mordred, and the good knight Sir Gareth, which was of very knighthood worth all the brethren. So came knights of Launcelot's kin, but Sir Launcelot was not that time in the court, for he was that time upon his adventures. Then Sir Lionel, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, Sir Gahalantine, Sir Galihodin, Sir Menadeuke, Sir Villiars the valiant, Sir Hebes le Renoumes. All these were of Sir Launcelot's kin, and all they failed. Then came in Sir Sagramor le Desirous, Sir Dodinas le Savage, Sir Dinadan, Sir Bruin le Noire, that Sir Kay named la Cote Male Taile, and Sir Kay the seneschal, Sir Kay de Stranges, Sir Meliot de Logris, Sir Petipase of Winchelsea, Sir Galleron of Galway, Sir Melion of the mountain, Sir Cardok, Sir Uwaine les Avoutres, and Sir Ozanna le Cure Hardy. Then came in Sir Astamore, and Sir Gromere, Grummor's son, Sir Crosselme, Sir Servause le Breuse, that was called a passing strong knight. For, as the book saith, the chief Lady of the lake feasted this Sir Launcelot, and Sir Servause le Breuse, and when she had feasted them both at sundry times, she prayed them to give her a boon, and they granted it her, and then she prayed Sir Servause that he would promise her never to do battle against Sir Launcelot du Lake; and in the same wise she prayed Sir Launcelot never to do battle against Sir Servause; and so either promised her. For the French book saith that Sir Servause had never courage nor lust to do battle against no man, but if it were against giants, and against dragons, and wild beasts. So we pass unto them that, at the king's request, made them all that were there at that high feast, as of the knights of the Table Round, for to search Sir Urre: to that intent the king did it, to wit which was the noblest knight among them.

Then there came Sir Aglovale, Sir Durnore, Sir Tor, and king Pellinore begat them all, first, Sir Tor, Sir Aglovale, Sir Durnore, Sir Lamorak, the most noblest knight, one that ever was in Arthur's days as for a worldly knight, and Sir Percivale that was peerless, except Sir Galahad, in holy deeds, but they died in the quest of the Sancgreal. Then came Sir Griflet le Fise de Dieu, Sir Luca the botteler, Sir Bedivere his brother, Sir Brandiles, Sir Constantine, Sir Cador's son of Cornwall, that was king after Arthur's days, and Sir Clegis, Sir Sadok, Sir Dinas le seneschal of Cornwall, Sir Fergus, Sir Driant, Sir Lambegus, Sir Clarrus of Cleremont, Sir Cloddrus, Sir Hectimere, Sir Edward of Carnarvan, Sir Dinas, Sir Priamus, that was christened by Sir Tristram the the noble knight, and these three were brethren; Sir Hellaine le Blank, that was son unto Sir Bors and king Brandegoris's daughter, and Sir Brian de Listinoise; Sir Gautere, Sir Reynold, Sir Gillemere, were three brethren that Sir Launcelot won upon a bridge in Sir Kay's arms. Sir Guiart le Petite, Sir Bellangere le Beuse, that was son to the good knight Sir Alisander le Orphelin, that was slain by the treason of king Mark. Also that traitor king slew the noble knight Sir Tristram, as he sat harping afore his lady La Beale

ud, with a trenchant glaive, for
ne death was much bewailing of
y knight that ever were in Arthur's
s: there were never none so be-
led as was Sir Tristram and Sir
morak, for they were traitorously
n, Sir Tristram by king Mark, and
Lamorak by Sir Gawaine and his
thren. And this Sir Bellangere re-
ged the death of his father Ali-
der, and Sir Tristram, slew king
ark, and La Beale Isoud died, swoon-
g upon the cross of Sir Tristram,
ereof was great pity. And all that
re with king Mark, that were con-
ting to the death of Sir Tristram,
re slain, as Sir Andred, and many
her. Then came Sir Hebes, Sir Mor-
more, Sir Sentraile, Sir Suppinabiles,
r Bellangere le Orgulous, that the
od knight Sir Lamorak wan in plain
ttle; Sir Nerovens, and Sir Ple-
tius, two good knights that Sir Laun-
lot wan; Sir Darras, Sir Harry le
e Lake, Sir Erminide, brother to
g Hermance for whom Sir Pala-
des fought at the red city with two
thren; and Sir Selises of the dolorous
wer, Sir Edward of Orkney, and Sir
nside, that was called the noble
ight of the red lawns, that Sir Ga-
h wan for the love of dame Liones;
Arrok de Grevant, Sir Degrane
nce Vilany, that fought with the
nt of the black lowe; Sir Epinogris,
at was the king's son of Northumber-
nd; Sir Pelleas, that loved the lady
tard, and he had died for her love,
d not been one of the ladies of the
ke, her name was dame Nimue, and
e wedded Sir Pelleas, and she saved
m that he was never slain, and he
s a full noble knight; and Sir Lamiel
Cardiff, that was a great lover; Sir
laine de Force, Sir Meleaus de Lile,
r Bobart le Cure Hardy, that was
ng Arthur's son, Sir Mador de la
rte, Sir Colgrevance, Sir Hervise de
Forest Savage, Sir Marrok, the good
ight that was betrayed with his wife,
r she made him seven year a werwolf;
r Persant, Sir Pertilope his brother,
at was called the green knight, and
Sir Perimones, brother to them both, that was called the red knight, that Sir Gareth wan when he was called Beaumains. All these hundred knights and ten searched Sir Urre's wounds, by the commandment of king Arthur.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Launcelot was commanded by Arthur to handle his wounds, and anon he was all whole, and how they thanked God.

MERCY, said king Arthur, where is Sir Launcelot du Lake, that he is not here at this time? Thus as they stood and spake of many things, there was espied Sir Launcelot, that came riding toward them, and told the king. Peace, said the king, let no manner thing be said until he be come to us. So when Sir Launcelot espied king Arthur he descended from his horse, and came to the king, and saluted him, and them all. Anon as the maid, Sir Urre's sister, saw Sir Launcelot, she ran to her brother there as he lay in his litter, and said, Brother, here is come a knight that my heart giveth greatly unto. Fair sister, said Sir Urre, so doth my heart light against him, and certainly I hope now to be healed, for my heart giveth unto him more than to all these that have searched me. Then said king Arthur unto Sir Launcelot, Ye must do as we have done; and told Sir Launcelot what they had done, and shewed him them all that had searched him. Heaven defend me, said Sir Launcelot, when so many kings and knights have assayed and failed, that I should presume upon me to achieve that all ye my lords might not achieve. Ye shall not choose, said king Arthur, for I will command you for to do as we all have done. My most renowned lord, said Sir Launcelot, ye know well I dare not nor may not disobey your commandment, but and I might or durst, wit you well I would not take upon me to touch that wounded knight, to that intent that I should pass all other knights; heaven defend me from that shame. Ye take it wrong,

said king Arthur, ye shall not do it for no presumption, but for to bear us fellowship, insomuch ye be a fellow of the Table Round, and wit you well, said king Arthur, and ye prevail not and heal him, I dare say there is no knight in this land may heal him, and therefore I pray you do as we have done. And then all the kings and knights for the most part prayed Sir Launcelot to search him, and then the wounded knight Sir Urre set him up weakly, and prayed Sir Launcelot heartily, saying, Courteous knight, I require thee for God's sake heal my wounds, for me thinketh, ever sithen ye came here my wounds grieve me not. Ah my fair lord, said Sir Launcelot, Jesu would that I might help you, I shame me sore that I should be thus rebuked, for never was I able in worthiness to do so high a thing. Then Sir Launcelot kneeled down by the wounded knight, saying, My lord Arthur, I must do your commandment, the which is sore against my heart. And then he held up his hands, and looked into the east, saying secretly unto himself, Thou blessed Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, I beseech thee of thy mercy, that my simple worship and honesty be saved, and thou, blessed Trinity, thou mayest give power to heal this sick knight, by thy great virtue and grace of thee, but, good Lord, never of myself. And then Sir Launcelot prayed Sir Urre to let him see his head; and then, devoutly kneeling, he ransacked the three wounds, that they bled a little, and forthwith all the wounds fair healed, and seemed as they had been whole a seven year. And in likewise he searched his body of other three wounds, and they healed in likewise. And then the last of all he searched the which was in his hand, and, anon, it healed fair. Then king Arthur, and all the kings and knights, kneeled down, and gave thanks and lovings unto God, and to his blessed mother, and ever Sir Launcelot wept as he had been a child that had been beaten. Then king Arthur let array priests and clerks in the most devoutest manner, to bring in Sir Urre within Carlisle, with singing and loving to God. And when this was done, the king let clothe him in the richest manner that could be thought; and then were but few better made knights in all the court, for he was passingly well made and bigly: and Arthur asked Sir Urre how he felt himself. My good lord, he said, I felt myself never so lusty. Will ye just, and do deeds of arms? said king Arthur. Sir, said Sir Urre, and I had all that longed unto justs, I would soon be ready.

CHAP. XIII.

How there was a party made of an hundred knights against an hundred knights, and of other matters.

THEN king Arthur made a party of hundred knights to be against an hundred knights. And so, upon the morn, they justed for a diamond; but there justed none of the dangerous knights; and so, for to shorten this tale, Sir Urre and Sir Lavaine justed best that day, for there was none of them but he overthrew and pulled down thirty knights; and then, by the assent of all the kings and lords, Sir Urre and Sir Lavaine were made knights of the Table Round. And Sir Lavaine cast his love to dame Felolie, Sir Urre's sister, and then they were wedded together with great joy, and king Arthur gave to every each of them a barony of lands. And this Sir Urre would never go from Sir Launcelot, but he, and Sir Lavaine, awaited evermore upon him; and they were in all the court accounted for good knights, and full desirous in arms; and many noble deeds they did, for they would have no rest, but ever sought adventures. Thus they lived in the court, with great nobleness and joy, long time. But every night and day Sir Agravaine, Sir Gawaine's brother, awaited queen Guenever and Sir Launcelot du Lake, to put them to a rebuke and shame. And so leave I here of this tale, and overskip great books of Sir Launcelot du Lake, what great adventures he did when he was called Le Chevaler du Chariot. For, as the French book saith, because of despite that knights and ladies called

knight that rode in the chariot, re judged to the gallows; there- despite of all them that named he was carried in a chariot a ıonth, for but little after that he ı Sir Meliagrance in the queen's he never in a twelve month horseback. And, as the French book saith, he did that twelve month more than forty battles. And because I have lost the very matter of Le Chevaler du Chariot, I depart from the tale of Sir Launcelot, and here I go unto the Morte of king Arthur, and that caused Sir Agravaine.

Explicit liber xix.

here after foloweth the moost pytous history of the morte of kynge Arthur, the whiche is the xx. book.

The Twentieth Book.

CHAP. I.

Agravaine and Sir Mordred were pon Sir Gawaine for to disclose ı between Sir Launcelot and queen ıer.

y, when every lusty heart flou- nd burgeneth; for as the season :o behold and comfortable, so woman rejoice and gladden of coming with his fresh flowers: er, with his rough winds and ıuseth a lusty man and woman r and sit fast by the fire. So ıason, as in the month of May, a great anger and unhap that ot till the flower of chivalry of vorld was destroyed and slain: was long upon two unhappy the which were named Sir ıe and Sir Mordred that were unto Sir Gawaine. For this vaine and Sir Mordred had ever ıate unto the queen dame Gue- ıd to Sir Launcelot, and daily ıtly they ever watched upon Sir ıt. So it mis-happed Sir Ga- ıd all his brethren were in king chamber, and then Sir Agra- id thus openly, and not in no that many knights might hear vel that we all be not ashamed ıce and to know how Sir Launcelot goeth with the queen, and all we know it so, and it is shamefully suffered of us all, that we all should suffer so noble a king as king Arthur is so to be shamed. Then spake Sir Gawaine, and said, Brother, Sir Agravaine, I pray you, and charge you, move no such matters no more afore me; for wit ye well, said Sir Gawaine, I will not be of your counsel. Truly, said Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareth, we will not be knowing, brother Agravaine, of your deeds. Then will I, said Sir Mordred. I believe well that, said Sir Gawaine, for ever, unto all unhappiness, brother Sir Mordred, thereto will ye grant, and I would that ye left all this, and made you not so busy, for I know, said Sir Gawaine, what will fall of it. Fall of it what fall may, said Sir Agravaine, I will disclose it to the king. Not by my counsel, said Sir Gawaine, for and there rise war and wrake betwixt Sir Launcelot and us, wit you well, brother, there will many kings and great lords hold with Sir Launcelot. Also, brother Sir Agravaine, said Sir Gawaine, ye must remember how ofttimes Sir Launcelot hath rescued the king and the queen, and the best of us all had been full cold at the heart-root, had not Sir Launcelot been better than we; and that hath he proved himself full oft. And as for my part,

said Sir Gawaine, I will never be against Sir Launcelot, for one day's deed, when he rescued me from king Carados of the dolorous tower, and slew him, and saved my life. Also, brother Sir Agravaine, and Sir Mordred, in likewise Sir Launcelot rescued you both, and three-score and two, from Sir Turquin. Me thinketh, brother, such kind deeds and kindness should be remembered. Do as ye list, said Sir Agravaine, for I will hide it no longer. With these words came to them king Arthur. Now, brother, stint your noise, said Sir Gawaine. We will not, said Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred. Will ye so? said Sir Gawaine, then God speed you, for I will not hear your tales, nor be of your counsel. No more will I, said Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris, for we will never say evil by that man: for because, said Sir Gareth, Sir Launcelot made me knight, by no manner ought I to say ill of him. And therewithal they three departed, making great dole. Alas, said Sir Gawaine and Sir Gareth, now is this realm wholly mischieved, and the noble fellowship of the Round Table shall be dispersed. So they departed.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Agravaine disclosed their love to king Arthur, and how king Arthur gave them licence to take him.

And then Sir Arthur asked them what noise they made. My lord, said Agravaine, I shall tell you that I may keep no longer. Here is I and my brother, Sir Mordred, brake unto my brother Sir Gawaine, Sir Gaheris, and to Sir Gareth, how this we know all, that Sir Launcelot holdeth your queen, and hath done long, and we be your sister's sons, and we may suffer it no longer; and all we wot that ye should be above Sir Launcelot, and ye are the king that made him knight, and. therefore, we will prove it that he is a traitor to your person. If it be so, said Sir Arthur, wit you well he is none other, but I would be loth to begin such a thing, but I might have proofs upon it; for Sir Launcelot is an hardy knight, and all ye know he is the best knight among us all, and, but if he be taken with the deed, he will fight with him that bringeth up the noise, and I know no knight that is able to match him. Therefore, and it be sooth as ye say, I would he were taken with the deed. For, as the French book saith, the king was full loth thereto, that any noise should be upon Sir Launcelot and his queen; for the king had a deeming, but he would not hear of it, for Sir Launcelot had done so much for him and for the queen so many times, that, wit ye well, the king loved him passingly well. My lord, said Sir Agravaine, ye shall ride to-morrow on hunting, and doubt ye not, Sir Launcelot will not go with you. Then when it draweth toward night, ye may send the queen word that ye will lie out all that night, and so may ye send for your cooks; and then, upon pain of death, we shall take him with the queen, and either we shall bring him to you dead or quick. I will well, said the king, then I counsel you, said the king, take with you sure fellowship. Sir, said Agravaine, my brother, Sir Mordred, and I will take with us twelve knights of the Round Table. Beware, said king Arthur, for I warn you ye shall find him wight. Let us deal, said Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred. So on the morn, king Arthur rode on hunting, and sent word to the queen that he would be out all that night. Then Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred gat to them twelve knights, and did themselves in a chamber, in the castle of Carlisle, and these were their names: Sir Colgrevance, Sir Mador de la Porte, Sir Gingaline, Sir Meliot de Logris, Sir Petipase of Winchelsea, Sir Galleron of Galway, Sir Melion of the mountain, Sir Astamore, Sir Gromore Somir Joure, Sir Curselaine, Sir Florence, Sir Lovel. So these twelve knights were with Sir Mordred and Sir Agravaine. And all they were of Scotland, either of Sir Gawaine's kin, either well willers to his brethren. So when the night came, Sir Launcelot told Sir Bors how he would go that night, and speak with the queen. Sir,

s, ye shall not go this night,
sel. Why? said Sir Laun-
said Sir Bors, I dread me
Agravaine, that waiteth you
you shame, and us all, and
my heart against no going
went to the queen, so much
I mistrust that the king is
ht from the queen, because,
e, he hath lain some watch
l the queen, and therefore I
re of treason. Have ye no
ir Launcelot, for I shall go,
ain, and make no tarrying.
Bors, that me sore repent-
ead me sore that your going
ht shall wrath us all. Fair
d Sir Launcelot, I marvel
hy ye say thus, sithen the
sent for me, and wit ye well
not be so much a coward,
ll understand I will see her
God speed you well, said
d send you sound and safe

CHAP. III.

auncelot was espied in the amber, and how Sir Agra- d Sir Mordred came with ghts to slay him.

uncelot departed, and took
nder his arm, and so in his
noble knight put himself
opardy, and so he passed
e to the queen's chamber.
as the French book saith,
Sir Agravaine, and Sir
with twelve knights with
e Round Table, and they
rying voice, Traitor knight,
lot du Lake, now art thou
d thus they cried with a
that all the court might
nd they all fourteen were
l points as they should fight
Alas, said queen Guenever,
mischieved both. Madam,
auncelot, is there here any
hin your chamber that I
r my poor body withal, and
any, give it me, and I shall
their malice. Truly, said the queen, I have none armour, shield, sword, nor spear, wherefore I dread me sore our long love is come to a mischievous end; for, I hear by their noise, there be many noble knights, and well I wot they be surely armed, against them ye may make no resistance; wherefore ye are likely to be slain, and then shall I be burnt. For, and ye might escape them, said the queen, I would not doubt but that ye would rescue me in what danger that ever I stood in. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, in all my life was I never bested that I should be thus shamefully slain for lack of mine armour. But ever in one Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred cried, Traitor knight, come out of the queen's chamber, for wit thou well thou art so beset that thou shalt not escape. Oh mercy, said Sir Launcelot, this shameful cry and noise I may not suffer, for better were death at once, than thus to endure this pain. Then he took the queen in his arms, and kissed her, and said, Most noble christian queen, I beseech you, as ye have ever been my special good lady, and I at all times your true poor knight unto my power, and as I never failed you in right nor in wrong, since the first day that king Arthur made me knight, that ye will pray for my soul if that I here be slain. For well I am well assured that Sir Bors my nephew and all the remnant of my kin, with Sir Lavaine and Sir Urre, that they will not fail you to rescue you from the fire, and therefore, mine own lady, recomfort yourself whatsoever come of me, that ye go with Sir Bors my nephew, and Sir Urre, and they all will do you all the pleasure that they can or may, that ye shall live like a queen upon my lands. Nay, Launcelot, said the queen, wit thou well I will never live after thy days, but, and thou be slain, I will take my death as meekly for Jesu Christ's sake, as ever did any Christian queen. Well, madam, said Launcelot, sith it is so that the day is come that our love must depart, wit you well I shall sell my life as dear as I may, and a thousand fold, said Sir Launcelot, I am more

heavier for you than for myself. And now I had lever than to be lord of all Christendom, that I had sure armour upon me, that men might speak of my deeds or ever I were slain. Truly, said the queen, I would and it might please God that they would take me and slay me, and suffer you to escape. That shall never be, said Sir Launcelot. God defend me from such a shame, but Jesu be thou my shield and mine armour.

CHAP. IV.

How Sir Launcelot slew Sir Colgrevance, and armed him in his harness, and after slew Sir Agravaine and twelve of his fellows.

And therewith Sir Launcelot wrapped his mantle about his arm well and surely; and by then they had gotten a great form out of the hall, and therewithal they rashed at the door. Fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, leave your noise and your rashing, and I shall set open this door, and then may ye do with me what it liketh you. Come off then, said they all, and do it, for it availeth thee not to strive against us all, and therefore let us into this chamber, and we shall save thy life until thou come to king Arthur. Then Launcelot unbarred the door, and with his left hand he held it open a little so that but one man might come in at once. And so anon, there came striding a good knight, a much man and large, and his name was Colgrevance of Gore, and he with a sword strake at Sir Launcelot mightily, and he put aside the stroke, and gave him such a buffet upon the helmet that he fell groveling dead within the chamber door, and then Sir Launcelot with great might drew that dead knight within the chamber door; and then Sir Launcelot with the help of the queen and her ladies was lightly armed in Sir Colgrevance's armour. And ever stood Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred, crying, Traitor knight, come out of the queen's chamber. Leave your noise, said Sir Launcelot unto Sir Agravaine, for wit ye well, Sir Agravaine, ye shall not prison me this night, and therefore an by my counsel, go ye all fr chamber door, and make not si ing and such manner of slandı do, for I promise you by my hood, and ye will depart and n more noise, I shall as to-morn before you all, before the ki then let it be seen which of and either else ye all, will accus treason, and there I shall answ as a knight should, that hither to the queen for no manner engine, and that will I prove an it good upon you with mine Fie on thee traitor, said Sir Ag and Sir Mordred, we will hav maugre thy head, and slay the list, for we let thee wit, w the choice of king Arthur, t thee or to slay thee. Ah sirs, Launcelot, is there none othe with you? then keep yourself. Sir Launcelot set all open the c door, and mightily and knigl strode in amongst them, and a the first buffet he slew Sir Ag and twelve of his fellows within while after he laid them cold earth, for there was none of the that might stand Sir Launcel buffet. Also Sir Launcelot w Sir Mordred, and he fled with might. And then Sir Launce turned again unto the queen, an Madam, now wit you well true love is brought to an end, will king Arthur ever be my f therefore, madam, and it like yo may have you with me, I shall s from all manner adventures dan That is not best, said the que seemeth now ye have done s harm, it will be best ye hold y with this. And if ye see that as t they will put me unto the deat may ye rescue me as ye think l will well, said Sir Launcelot, f ye no doubt while I am living rescue you. And then he kiss and either gave other a ring, there he left the queen and we his lodging.

CHAP. V.

Launcelot came to Sir Bors and im how he had sped, and in what ure he had been, and how he d.

Sir Bors saw Sir Launcelot, he er so glad of his home coming is then. Mercy, said Sir Laun- hy be ye all armed? What this? Sir, said Sir Bors, after were departed from us, we all of your blood, and your well were so troubled, that some of ut of our beds naked, and some dreams caught naked swords in ds, therefore, said Sir Bors, we re is some great strife at hand; n we all deemed that ye were d with some treason, and there- made us thus ready, what need r ye were in. My fair nephew, Launcelot unto Sir Bors, now wit all, that this night I was rder bested than ever I was in and yet I escaped. And so he n all how, and in what manner, ve heard tofore. And therefore ws, said Sir Launcelot, I pray hat ye will be of good heart in ed soever I stand, for now is e to us all. Sir, said Sir Bors, lcome that God sendeth us, and had much weal with you and orship, and therefore we will woe with you as we have taken . And therefore they said all, re many good knights, Look ye discomfort, for there nis no knights under heaven but that be able to grieve them as much nay us. And therefore discom- yourself by no manner, and ye her together that we love, and eth us, and what that ye will ne shall be done. And there- Launcelot, said they, we will woe with the weal. Gramercy, Launcelot, of your good com- in my great distress, my fair ye comfort me greatly, and am beholden unto you. But fair nephew, I would that ye did in all haste that ye may, or it be forth-days, that ye will look in their lodging that been lodged here nigh about the king, which will hold with me, and which will not, for now I would know which were my friends from my foes. Sir, said Sir Bors, I shall do my pain, and, or it be seven of the clock, I shall wit of such as ye have said before, who will hold with you.

Then Sir Bors called unto him Sir Lionel, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, Sir Gahalantine, Sir Galihodin, Sir Galihud, Sir Menadeuke, with Sir Villiers the Valiant, Sir Hebes le Renoumes, Sir Lavaine, Sir Urre of Hungary, Sir Nerouneus, Sir Plenorius: these two knights Sir Launcelot made, and the one he wan upon a bridge, and therefore they would never be against him. And Sir Harry le Fise du Lake and Sir Selises of the dolorous tower, and Sir Melias de Lile, and Sir Bellangere le Beuse, which was Sir Alisaunder's le Orphelin's son, because his mother, dame Alis le Beale Pilgrim, and she was kin unto Sir Launcelot, and he held with him. So there came Sir Palamides, and Sir Safere his brother, to hold with Sir Launcelot, and Sir Clegis of Sadok, and Sir Dinas, Sir Clarius of Cleremont. So these two and twenty knights drew them together; and by then they were armed on horseback, and promised Sir Launcelot to do what he would. Then there fell to them, what of Northgalis and of Cornwall, for Sir Lamorak's sake and for Sir Tristram's sake, to the number of a fourscore knights.

My lords, said Sir Launcelot, wit you well I have been, ever since I came into this country, well willed unto my lord king Arthur, and unto my lady queen Guenever, unto my power, and this night, because my lady the queen sent for me to speak with her, I suppose it was made by treason, howbeit I dare largely excuse her person, notwithstanding I was there by a forecast nigh slain, but, as God provided me, I escaped all their malice and treason. And then that noble knight, Sir Launcelot, told

them all how he was hard bested in the queen's chamber, and how and in what manner he escaped from them. And therefore, said Sir Launcelot, wit you well, my fair lords, I am sure there nis but war unto me and mine. And for because I have slain this night these knights, I wot well as is Sir Agravaine Sir Gawaine's brother, and at the least twelve of his fellows, for this cause now I am sure of mortal war, for these knights were sent and ordained by king Arthur to betray me, and therefore the king will in this heat and malice judge the queen to the fire, and that may I not suffer, that she should be burnt for my sake. For, and I may be heard and suffered, and so taken, I will fight for the queen, that she is a true lady unto her lord. But the king in his heat I dread me will not take me as I ought to be taken.

CHAP. VI.

Of the counsel and advice which was taken by Sir Launcelot and by his friends for to save the queen.

My lord Sir Launcelot, said Sir Bors, by mine advice ye shall take the woe with the weal, and take it in patience, and thank God of it. And sithen it is fallen as it is, I counsel you keep yourself, for, and ye will yourself, there is no fellowship of knights christened that shall do you wrong. Also I will counsel you, my lord Sir Launcelot, that and my lady queen Guenever be in distress, insomuch as she is in pain for your sake, that ye knightly rescue her: and ye did other ways, all the world will speak of you shame to the world's end, insomuch as ye were taken with her, whether ye did right or wrong. It is now your part to hold with the queen, that she be not slain and put to a mischievous death, for, and she so die, the shame shall be yours. Jesu defend me from shame, said Sir Launcelot, and keep and save my lady the queen from villainy and shameful death, and that she never be destroyed in my default: wherefore, my fair lords, my kin and my friends, what will ye do? Then they said all, We will do

I put this to you, said S
that if my lord Arthur b
will to-morn in his heat
the queen to the fire, ther
—now, I pray you, couns
best to do? Then they sa
with one voice, Sir, us
that ye knightly rescue t
somuch as she shall be b
your sake, and it is to su
might be handled, ye sh
same death, or a mor
death; and, sir, we say
have many times rescued h
for other men's quarrels,
is more your worship that
queen from this peril, i
hath it for your sake.

Then Sir Launcelot st
said, My fair lords, wit
would be loth to do th
should dishonour you or
wit you well, I would be
lady the queen should d
death, but and it be so
counsel me to rescue he
much harm or I rescue h
venture I shall there des
my best friends, that sho
pent me: and peradvent
some, and they could
about, or disobey my lord
they would soon come to
I were loth to hurt: and
I rescue her, where shall
That shall be the least c
said Sir Bors: how di
knight Sir Tristram by yo
Kept not he with him La
near three year in Joyo
which was done by your
and that same place is y
in likewise may ye do, an
take the queen lightly aw
the king will judge her to
in Joyous Gard ye may k
enough, until the heat of
past. And then shall ye
the queen to the king wi
ship, and then, peradvent
have thank for her bringi
love and thank where oth

hat is hard to do, said Sir
for by Sir Tristram I may
ning. For when by means
Sir Tristram brought again
soud unto king Mark from
d, look what befell on the
hamefully that false traitor
slew him as he sat harping
dy La Beale Isoud, with a
laive he thrust him in behind
t. It grieveth me, said Sir
to speak of his death, for all
nay not find such a knight.
ruth, said Sir Bors, but there
shall courage you and us all:
ll that king Arthur and king
never like of conditions, for
ver yet man that could prove
untrue of his promise. So,
ort tale, they were all con-
for better or for worse, if so
ıe queen were on that morn
the fire, shortly they all
ıe her. And so by the ad-
Launcelot they put them all
shment in a wood as nigh
they might. And there they
to wit what the king would

CHAP. VII.

ordred rode hastily to the king
n of the affray and death of
vaine and the other knights.

ı we again unto Sir Mordred,
he was escaped from the
ıt Sir Launcelot, he anon gat
nd mounted upon him, and
king Arthur, sore wounded
n, and all for-bled. And
ld the king all how it was,
ıey were all slain save him-
ly. Mercy, how may this
ɛ king; took ye him in the
mber? Yea, truly, said Sir
ıere we found him unarmed,
he slew Colgrevance, and
in his armour. And all this
king, from the beginning
ing. Ah, mercy, said the
s a marvellous knight of
Alas, me sore repenteth,
ng, that ever Sir Launcelot
should be against me. Now I am sure the noble fellowship of the Round Table is broken for ever, for with him will many a noble knight hold: and now it is fallen so, said the king, that I may not with my worship but the queen must suffer the death. So then there was made great ordinance in this heat, that the queen must be judged to the death. And the law was such in those days, that whatsoever they were, of what estate or degree, if they were found guilty of treason, there should be none other remedy but death, and either the men or the taking with the deed should be causer of their hasty judgment. And right so was it ordained for queen Guenever, because Sir Mordred was escaped sore wounded, and the death of thirteen knights of the Round Table:—these proofs and experiences caused king Arthur to command the queen to the fire, there to be burnt. Then spake Sir Gawaine and said: My lord Arthur, I would counsel you not to be over hasty, but that ye would put it in respite, this judgment of my lady the queen, for many causes. One it is, though it were so that Sir Launcelot were found in the queen's chamber, yet it might be that he came thither for none evil, for ye know, my lord, said Sir Gawaine, that the queen is much beholden unto Sir Launcelot, more than unto any other knight, for oft-times he hath saved her life, and done battle for her when all the court refused the queen, and, peradventure, she sent for him for goodness and for none evil, to reward him for his good deeds that he had done to her in time past. And, peradventure, my lady the queen sent for him to that intent that Sir Launcelot should come to her good grace privily and secretly, weening to her that it was best so to do, in eschewing and dreading of slander. For oft-times we do many things that we ween it be for the best, and yet, peradventure, it turneth to the worst. For I dare say, said Sir Gawaine, that my lady your queen is to you both good and true. And as for Sir Launcelot, said Sir

Gawaine, I dare say he will make it good upon any knight living that will put upon himself villainy or shame, and in likewise he will make good for my lady dame Guenever. That I believe well, said king Arthur, but I will not that way with Sir Launcelot, for he trusteth so much upon his hands and his might that he doubteth no man, and therefore for my queen he shall never fight more, for she shall have the law. And if I may get Sir Launcelot, wit ye well he shall have a shameful death. Jesu defend, said Sir Gawaine, that I may never see it. Why say ye so? said king Arthur, for sooth ye have no cause to love Sir Launcelot, for this night last past he slew your brother Sir Agravaine, a full good knight, and also almost he had slain your other brother Sir Mordred; and also there he slew thirteen noble knights; and also, Sir Gawaine, remember ye he slew two sons of yours, Sir Florence and Sir Lovel. My lord, said Sir Gawaine, of all this I have knowledge, of whose deaths I repent me sore, but insomuch I gave them warning, and told my brethren and my sons aforehand, what would fall in the end, insomuch they would not do by my counsel I will not meddle me thereof, nor revenge me nothing of their deaths, for I told them it was no bote to strive with Sir Launcelot; howbeit I am sorry of the death of my brethren and of my sons, for they are the causers of their own death. For oft-times I warned my brother Sir Agravaine, and I told him the perils the which be now fallen.

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Launcelot and his kinsmen rescued the queen from the fire, and how he slew many knights.

THEN said the noble king Arthur to Sir Gawaine, Dear nephew, I pray you make you ready in your best armour, with your brethren Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareth, to bring my queen to the fire, there to have her judgment, and receive the death. Nay, my most noble lord, said Sir Gawaine, that will I never do, for, wit you well, I will never be in that place where so noble a queen as is my lady dame Guenever shall take a shameful end. For wit you well, said Sir Gawaine, my heart will never serve me to see her die, and it shall never be said that even I was of your counsel of her death. Then, said the king to Sir Gawaine, suffer your brothers Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareth to be there. My lord, said Sir Gawaine, wit you well they will be loth to be there present, because of many adventures the which be like there to fall, but they are young and full unable to say you nay. Then spake Sir Gaheris and the good knight Sir Gareth unto Sir Arthur, Sir, ye may well command us to be there, but wit you well it shall be sore against our will; but and we be there by your strait commandment, ye shall plainly hold us there excused, we will be there in peaceable wise, and bear none harness of war upon us. In the name of God, said the king, then make you ready, for she shall soon have her judgment anon. Alas, said Sir Gawaine, that ever I should endure to see this woefull day. So Sir Gawaine turned him, and wept heartily, and so he went into his chamber, and then the queen was led forth without Carlisle, and there she was despoiled into her smock. And so then her ghostly father was brought to her, to be shriven of her misdeeds. Then was there weeping, and wailing, and wringing of hands, of many lords and ladies. But there were but few in comparison that would bear any armour for to strength the death of the queen. Then was there one that Sir Launcelot had sent unto that place for to espy what time the queen should go unto her death. And anon, as he saw the queen despoiled into her smock, and so shriven, then he gave Sir Launcelot warning. Then was there but spurring and plucking up of horses, and right so they came to the fire, and who that stood against them, there they were slain, there might none withstand Sir Launcelot, so all that bare arms and withstood them, there were they slain—full many a noble knight. For there

ı Sir Belias le Orgulous, Sir
es, Sir Griflet, Sir Brandiles,
/ale, Sir Tor, Sir Gauter, Sir
Sir Reynold's three brethren,
as, Sir Priamus, Sir Kay the
Sir Driant, Sir Lambegus, Sir
e, Sir Pertilope, Sir Perimones,
ıren, that were called the green
ıd the red knight. And so in
ing and hurling as Sir Laun-
aıg here and there, it mis-
ıim to slay Gaheris and Sir
he noble knight, for they were
and unaware, for, as the French
th, Sir Launcelot smote Sir
nd Sir Gaheris upon the brain
ere through they were slain in
howbeit in very truth Sir Laun-
/ them not, and so were they
ad among the thickest of the
Then when Sir Launcelot had
e and slain, and put to flight
would withstand him, then he
ght unto dame Guenever, and
irtle and a gown to be cast upon
then he made her to be set
ım, and prayed her to be of
:er. Wit you well the queen
that she was escaped from the
ıd then she thanked God and
:elot. And so he rode his way
queen, as the French book
to Joyous Gard, and there he
as a noble knight should do,
y great lords and some kings
Launcelot many good knights,
ıy noble knights drew unto
celot. When this was known
hat king Arthur and Sir Laun-
re at debate, and many were
y of their debate.

CHAP. IX.

ırrow and lamentation of king for the death of his nephews and ;ood knights, and also for the ıis wife.

n we again unto king Arthur,
n it was told him how, and in
ınner of wise the queen was
ay from the fire, and when he
the death of his noble knights,
and in especial for Sir Gaheris' and Sir Gareth's death, then the king swooned for pure sorrow. And when he awoke of his swoon, then he said, Alas that ever I bare crown upon my head, for now have I lost the fairest fellowship of noble knights that ever held christian king together. Alas, my good knights be slain away from me, now within these two days I have lost forty knights, and also the noble fellowship of Sir Launcelot and his blood, for now I may never hold them together no more with my worship. Alas, that ever this war began. Now, fair fellows, said the king, I charge you that no man tell Sir Gawaine of the death of his two brethren, for I am sure, said the king, when Sir Gawaine heareth tell that Sir Gareth is dead, he will go nigh out of his mind. Mercy, said the king, why slew he Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris! for I dare say as for Sir Gareth he loved Sir Launcelot above all men earthly. That is truth, said some knights, but they were slain in the hurtling, as Sir Launcelot thrang in the thick of the press, and as they were unarmed he smote them, and wist not whom that he smote, and so unhappily they were slain. The death of them, said Arthur, will cause the greatest mortal war that ever was. I am sure, wist Sir Gawaine that Sir Gareth were slain, I should never have rest of him till I had destroyed Sir Launcelot's kin and himself both, or else he to destroy me; and therefore, said the king, wit you well my heart was never so heavy as it is now, and much more I am sorrier for my good knights' loss, than for the loss of my fair queen, for queens I might have enow, but such a fellowship of good knights shall never be together in no company; and now I dare say, said king Arthur, that there was never christian king held such a fellowship together, and alas that ever Sir Launcelot and I should be at debate. Ah, Agravaine, Agravaine, said the king, Jesu forgive it thy soul, for thine evil will, that thou and thy brother Sir Mordred haddest unto Sir Launcelot, hath caused all this sorrow. And ever

among these complaints the king wept and swooned.

Then there came one unto Sir Gawaine, and told him how the queen was led away with Sir Launcelot, and nigh a twentyfour knights slain. O Jesu defend my brethren, said Sir Gawaine, for full well wist I that Sir Launcelot would rescue her, or else he would die in that field; and to say the truth he had not been a man of worship, had he not rescued the queen that day, in so much she should have been burnt for his sake: and as in that, said Sir Gawaine, he hath done but knightly, and as I would have done myself, and I had stood in like case. But where are my brethren? said Sir Gawaine, I marvel I hear not of them. Truly, said that man, Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris be slain. Jesu defend, said Sir Gawaine, for all the world I would not that they were slain, and in especial my good brother Sir Gareth. Sir, said the man, he is slain, and that is great pity. Who slew him? said Sir Gawaine. Sir, said the man, Launcelot slew them both. That may I not believe said Sir Gawaine, that he slew my brother Sir Gareth, for I dare say my brother Gareth loved him better than me and all his brethren, and the king both. Also I dare say, and Sir Launcelot had desired my brother Sir Gareth with him, he would have been with him against the king and us all, and therefore I may never believe that Sir Launcelot slew my brother. Sir, said this man, it is noised that he slew him.

CHAP. X.

How king Arthur at the request of Sir Gawaine concluded to make war against Sir Launcelot, and laid siege to his castle called Joyous Gard.

Alas, said Sir Gawaine, now is my joy gone. And then he fell down and swooned, and long he lay there as he had been dead. And then when he arose of his swoon, he cried out sorrowfully and said, Alas! And right so Sir Gawaine ran to the king crying and weeping, O king Arthur, mine uncle, my good brother Sir Gareth is sla
is my brother Sir Gaheris, t
were two noble knights. The
wept and he both, and so th
swooning. And when they
vived, then spake Sir Gawai
will go see my brother Sir Ga
may not see him, said the k
caused him to be interred, an
heris both; for I well unders
ye would make over much so
the sight of Sir Gareth sh
caused your double sorrow.
lord, said Sir Gawaine, how sl
brother Sir Gareth? mine c
lord, I pray you tell me. T
the king, I shall tell you as
me, Sir Launcelot slew him ar
heris both. Alas, said Sir
they bare none arms agai
neither of them both. I wot
was, said the king, but, as it i
Launcelot slew them both in th
of the press, and knew them
therefore let us shape a reme
revenge their deaths. My king
and mine uncle, said Sir Gav
you well, now I shall mak
promise that I shall hold by n
hood, that from this day I sh
fail Sir Launcelot, until the
have slain the other: and then
quire you, my lord and king,
to the war, for wit you well
revenged upon Sir Launcelot, a
fore, as ye will have my servic
love, now haste you thereto,
your friends. For I promise
said Sir Gawaine, for the dea
brother Sir Gareth I shall
Launcelot throughout seve
realms but I shall slay him,
shall slay me. Ye shall not ne
him so far, said the king, for,
say, Sir Launcelot will abide
you in the Joyous Gard, a
people draweth unto him as I
That may I believe, said Sir
but my lord, he said, assay yo
and I will assay mine. It shal
said the king, and, as I suppo
be big enough to draw him
biggest tower of his castle.

letters and writs through-
nd, both in the length and
for to assummon all his
d so unto Arthur drew
, dukes, and earls, so that he
ost. And when they were
ıe king informed them all
ncelot had bereft him his
ı the king and all his host
:ady to lay siege about Sir
here he lay within Joyous
:of heard Sir Launcelot,
him of many good knights,
held many knights, and
own sake, and some for the
Thus they were on both par-
ished and garnished of all
ngs that longed to the war.
hur's host was so big that
would not abide him in
r he was full loth to do
t the king; but Sir Laun-
m to his strong castle with
victual, and as many noble
ght suffice within the town
:. Then came king Arthur
vaine, with an huge host,
ge all about Joyous Gard,
own and at the castle, and
nade strong war on both
in no wise Sir Launcelot
ıt nor go out of his castle
neither he would none of
ghts to issue out, neither
town nor of the castle,
reeks were past.

CHAP. XI.

nication between king Arthur ıncelot, and how king Arthur n.

fell upon a day in harvest
.uncelot looked over the
pake on high unto king
ir Gawaine, My lords both,
ıll is in vain that ye make
for here win ye no worship,
and dishonour, for and
come myself out, and my
ı, I should full soon make
ıis war. Come forth, said
Launcelot, and thou darest,
and I promise thee I shall meet thee in midst of the field. God defend me, said Sir Launcelot, that ever I should encounter with the most noble king that made me knight. Fie upon thy fair language, said the king, for wit you well, and trust it, I am thy mortal foe, and ever will to my death day, for thou hast slain my good knights and full noble men of my blood, that I shall never recover again: also thou hast dishonoured my queen, and holden her many winters, and sithen like a traitor taken her from me by force. My most noble lord and king, said Sir Launcelot, ye may say what ye will, for ye wot well with yourself I will not strive, but there as ye say I have slain your good knights, I wot well that I have done so, and that me sore repenteth, but I was enforced to do battle with them, in saving of my life, or else I must have suffered them to have slain me. And as for my lady queen Guenever, except your person of your highness, and my lord Sir Gawaine, there is no knight under heaven that dare make it good upon me, that ever I was traitor unto your person. And where it pleaseth you to say that I have holden my lady your queen years and winters, unto that I shall make a large answer, and prove it upon any knight that beareth the life, except your person and Sir Gawaine, that my lady queen Guenever is a true lady unto your person, as any is living unto her lord, and that will I make good with my hands; howbeit, it hath liked her good grace to have me in charity, and to cherish me more than any other knight, and unto my power I again have deserved her love, for oft-times, my lord, ye have consented that she should be burnt and destroyed in your heat, and then it fortuned me to do battle for her, and or I departed from her adversary they confessed their untruth, and she full worshipfully excused. And at such times, my lord Arthur, said Sir Launcelot, ye loved me, and thanked me when I saved your queen from the fire, and then ye promised me for ever to be my good lord, and now me thinketh ye reward me full ill

for my good service: and, my good lord, me seemeth I had lost a great part of my worship in my knighthood, and I had suffered my lady your queen to have been burnt, and insomuch she should have been burnt for my sake. For sithen I have done battles for your queen in other quarrels than in mine own, me seemeth now I had more right to do battle for her in right quarrel, and therefore my good and gracious lord, said Sir Launcelot, take your queen unto your good grace, for she is both fair, true, and good. Fie on thee, false recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, I let thee wit my lord mine uncle king Arthur shall have his queen and thee, maugre thy visage, and slay you both whether it please him. It may well be, said Sir Launcelot, but wit ye well, my lord Sir Gawaine, and me list to come out of this castle, ye should win me and the queen more harder than ever ye wan a strong battle. Fie on thy proud words, said Sir Gawaine; as for my lady the queen, I will never say of her shame, but thou false and recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, what cause hadst thou to slay my good brother Sir Gareth, that loved thee more than all my kin? Alas, thou madest him knight with thine own hands; why slewest thou him that loved thee so well? For to excuse me, said Sir Launcelot, it helpeth me not, but by the faith that I owe to the high order of knighthood, I should with as good will have slain my nephew Sir Bors de Ganis at that time: but alas, that ever I was so unhappy, said Launcelot, that I had not seen Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris. Thou liest, recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, thou slewest him in despite of me: and therefore wit thou well I shall make war to thee, and all the while that I may live. That me repenteth, said Sir Launcelot, for well I understand it helpeth me not to seek none accordment, while ye Sir Gawaine are so mischievously set. And if ye were not, I would not doubt to have the good grace of my lord Arthur. I believe it well, false recreant knight, said Sir Gawaine, for thou hast many long days overled me, and us all, and destroyed many of our good knights. Ye say as it pleaseth you, said Sir Launcelot, and yet may it never be said on me and openly proved, that ever I before cast of treason, slew no good knight, as, my lord Sir Gawaine, ye have done. And so did I never, but in my defence, that I was driven thereto, in saving of my life. Ah, false knight, said Sir Gawaine, that thou meanest by Sir Lamorak: wit thou well I slew him. Ye slew him not yourself, said Sir Launcelot, it had been over much on hand for you to have slain him, for he was one of the best knights christened of his age, and it was great pity of his death.

CHAP. XII.

How the cousins and kinsmen of Sir Launcelot excited him to go out to battle, and how they made them ready.

WELL, well, said Sir Gawaine to Sir Launcelot, sithen thou upbraidest me of Sir Lamorak, wit thou well I shall never leave thee till I have thee at such avail that thou shalt not escape my hands. I trust you well enough, said Sir Launcelot, and ye may get me I shall get but little mercy. But, as the French book saith, the noble king Arthur would have taken his queen again, and have been accorded with Sir Launcelot, but Sir Gawaine would not suffer him by no manner of mean. And then Sir Gawaine made many men to blow upon Sir Launcelot, and all at once they called him False recreant knight! Then when Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Lionel heard this outcry, they called to them Sir Palamides, Sir Safere's brother, and Sir Lavaine, with many more of their blood, and all they went unto Sir Launcelot, and said thus, My lord Sir Launcelot, wit ye well we have great scorn of the great rebukes that we heard Gawaine say to you; wherefore we pray you and charge you, as ye will have our service, keep us no longer within these walls, for wit you well, plainly, we will ride into the field, and do battle with them. For ye fare as a man that were afeard, and for all your

it will not avail you. For
l, Sir Gawaine will not suffer
ıccorded with king Arthur;
re fight for your life, and
ınd ye dare. Alas, said Sir
or to ride out of this castle
attle, I am full loth. Then
)t spake on high unto Sir Ar-
Gawaine, My lords, I require
:eech you, sithen that I am
d and conjured to ride into
ıt neither you my lord king
you Sir Gawaine, come not
d. What shall we do then?
vaine, is this the king's quar-
: to fight? and it is my quarrel
ı thee Sir Launcelot, because
ı of my brother Sir Gareth.
I needs unto battle, said Sir
now wit you well, my lord
Sir Gawaine, ye will repent
er I do battle with you. And
/ departed either from other,
:her party made them ready
)rn for to do battle, and
:yance was made on both
d Sir Gawaine let purvey
ts for to wait upon Sir Laun-
) overset him, and to slay
on the morn at undorne
was ready in the field with
hosts, and then Sir Laun-
)wship came out at three
full good array. And Sir
e in the foremost battle, and
ot came in the middle, and
ame out at the third gate.
:ame in order and rule as full
ıts. And always Sir Laun-
:d all his knights in any wise
ʒ Arthur and Sir Gawaine.

CHAP. XIII.

*rwaine justed and smote down
:l, and how Sir Launcelot
ʒg Arthur.*

me forth Sir Gawaine from
ıost, and he came before and
) just. and Sir Lionel was a
ıt, and lightly he encountered
waine, and there Sir Gawaine
.ionel throughout the body,
that he dashed to the earth like as he had been dead. And then Sir Ector de Maris and other more bare him into the castle. Then began a great stoure, and much people was slain, and ever Sir Launcelot did what he might to save the people on king Arthur's party. For Sir Palamides, and Sir Bors, and Sir Safere overthrew many knights, for they were deadly knights, and Sir Blamor de Ganis, and Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, with Sir Bellangere le Beuse, these six knights did much harm. And ever king Arthur was nigh about Sir Launcelot to have slain him, and Sir Launcelot suffered him, and would not strike again. So Sir Bors encountered with king Arthur, and there with a spear Sir Bors smote him down; and so he alight and drew his sword, and said to Sir Launcelot, Shall I make an end of this war? and that he meant to have slain king Arthur. Not so hardy, said Sir Launcelot, upon pain of thy head, that thou touch him no more: for I will never see that most noble king, that made me knight, neither slain ne shamed. And therewithal Sir Launcelot alight off his horse, and took up the king, and horsed him again, and said thus, My lord Arthur, for God's love stint this strife, for ye get here no worship and I would do mine utterance, but always I forbear you, and ye, nor none of yours, forbeareth me: my lord remember what I have done in many places, and now I am evil rewarded.

Then when king Arthur was on horseback, he looked upon Sir Launcelot, and then the tears brast out of his eyes, thinking on the great courtesy that was in Sir Launcelot, more than in any other man. And therewith the king rode his way, and might no longer behold him, and said, Alas, that ever this war began! And then either parties of the battles withdrew them to repose them, and buried the dead, and to the wounded men they laid soft salves, and thus they endured that night till on the morn, and on the morn by undorne they made them ready to do battle. And then Sir Bors led the forward. So

upon the morn there came Sir Gawaine as brim as any boar, with a great spear in his hand, and when Sir Bors saw him, he thought to revenge his brother Sir Lionel of the despite that Sir Gawaine did him the other day. And so they that knew either other feutered their spears, and with all their mights of their horses and themselves they met together so felonously that either bare other through, and so they fell both to the earth; and then the battles joined, and there was much slaughter on both parties. Then Sir Launcelot rescued Sir Bors, and sent him into the castle. But neither Sir Gawaine nor Sir Bors died not of their wounds; for they were all holpen. Then Sir Lavaine and Sir Urre prayed Sir Launcelot to do his pain, and fight as they had done:—For we see ye forbear and spare, and that doth much harm, therefore we pray you spare not your enemies no more than they do you. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, I have no heart to fight against my lord Arthur, for ever me seemeth I do not as I ought to do. My lord, said Sir Palamides, though ye spare them all this day they will never give you thank; and if they may get you at avail ye are but dead. So then Sir Launcelot understood that they said him truth, and then he strained himself more than he did afo.ehand, and because his nephew Sir Bors was sore wounded. And then within a little while, by even-song time, Sir Launcelot and his party better stood, for their horses went in blood past the fetlocks, there was so much people slain. And then, for pity, Sir Launcelot withheld his knights, and suffered king Arthur's party for to withdraw them on side. And then Sir Launcelot's party withdrew them into his castle, and either party buried the dead bodies and put salve unto the wounded men. So when Sir Gawaine was hurt, they on king Arthur's party were not so orgulous as they were toforehand to do battle. Of this war was noised through all Christendom, and at the last it was noised afore the Pope; and he considering the great goodness of king Arthur and of Sir Launcelot, that was the most noblest knights of the wherefore the Pope called unto noble clerk, that at that time wa present,—the French book saith the bishop of Rochester—and th gave him bulls under lead unt Arthur of England, charging hi pain of interdicting of all Engla he take his queen dame Guenev him again, and accord with Si celot.

CHAP. XIV.

How the pope sent down his bulls peace, and how Sir Launcelot the queen to king Arthur.

So when this bishop was c Carlisle he shewed the king thes And when the king understoo bulls, he nist what to do: full would have been accorded w Launcelot, but Sir Gawaine wo suffer him; but as for to have the thereto he agreed. But in no Gawaine would not suffer the accord with Sir Launcelot, but the queen he consented. And th bishop had of the king his gre and his assurance, as he was anointed king, that Sir La should come safe and go sa that the queen should not be unto, of the king, nor of none for no thing done afore time pas of all these appointments the brought with him sure assuran writing, to shew Sir Launcelo when the bishop was come to Gard, there he shewed Sir La how the Pope had written to and unto him, and there he to the perils if he withheld the quee the king. It was never in my th said Launcelot, to withhold the from my lord Arthur; but in so m should have been dead for my sa seemeth it was my part to save h and put her from that danger till recover might come. And now I God, said Sir Launcelot, that th hath made her peace; for God kn said Sir Launcelot, I will be a th

more gladder to bring her again ever I was of her taking away,— this, I may be sure to come safe go safe, and that the queen shall her liberty as she had before, and for no thing that hath been surd afore this time, she never from day stand in no peril; for else, said Launcelot, I dare adventure me to p her from an harder shower than I kept her. It shall not need you, d the bishop, to dread so much: for you well the Pope must be obeyed; d it were not the Pope's worship nor poor honesty to wit you distressed, ther the queen, neither in peril nor med. And then he shewed Sir ncelot all his writing, both from Pope and from king Arthur. This sure enough, said Sir Launcelot, for ll well I dare trust my lord's own iting and his seal, for he was never med of his promise.

Therefore, said Sir Launcelot unto e bishop, ye shall ride unto the king fore, and recommand me unto his good ace, and let him have knowledging at this same day eight days, by the ace of God, I myself shall bring my dy queen Guenever unto him. And en say ye unto my most redoubted ing, that I will say largely for the ueen, that I shall none except for dread, or fear, but the king himself, and my rd Sir Gawaine, and that is more for e king's love than for himself. So e bishop departed, and came to the ing at Carlisle, and told him all how ir Launcelot answered him: and then e tears brast out of the king's eyes. Then Sir Launcelot purveyed him an undred knights, and all were clothed n green velvet, and their horses trapped o their heels, and every knight held a anch of olive in his hand in tokening f peace, and the queen had four and enty gentlewomen following her in e same wise, and Sir Launcelot had elve coursers following him, and on ery courser sat a young gentleman, nd all they were arrayed in green elvet, with sarpis of gold about their uarters, and the horse trapped in the same wise down to the heels with many ouches, set with stones and pearls in gold, to the number of a thousand; and she and Sir Launcelot were clothed in white cloth of gold tissue, and right so as ye have heard, as the French book maketh mention, he rode with the queen from Joyous Gard to Carlisle, and so Sir Launcelot rode throughout Carlisle, and so in the castle, that all men might behold and wit you well there was many a weeping eye. And then Sir Launcelot himself alight, and avoided his horse, and took the queen, and so led her where king Arthur was in his seat, and Sir Gawaine sat afore him, and many other great lords. So when Sir Launcelot saw the king and Sir Gawaine, then he led the queen by the arm, and then he kneeled down, and the queen both. Wit you well, then was there many bold knights there with king Arthur that wept as tenderly as though they had seen all their kin afore them. So the king sat still, and said no word. And when Sir Launcelot saw his countenance, he arose and pulled up the queen with him, and thus he spake full knightly:—

CHAP. XV.

Of the deliverance of the queen to the king by Sir Launcelot, and what language Sir Gawaine bad to Sir Launcelot.

My most redoubted king, ye shall understand, by the Pope's commandment, and yours, I have brought to you my lady the queen, as right requireth; and if there be any knight, of whatsoever degree that he be, except your person, that will say or dare say but that she is true to you, I here myself, Sir Launcelot du Lake, will make it good upon his body that she is a true lady unto you: but liars ye have listened, and that has caused debate betwixt you and me. For time hath been, my lord Arthur, that ye have been greatly pleased with me, when I did battle for my lady your queen; and full well ye know my most noble king, that she hath been put to great wrong or this time, and sithen it pleased you at many

times that I should fight for her, me seemeth, my good lord, I had more cause to rescue her from the fire, insomuch she should have been burnt for my sake. For they that told you those tales were liars, and so it fell upon them. For, by likelihood, had not the might of God been with me, I might never have endured fourteen knights, and they armed and afore purposed, and I unarmed and not purposed; for I was sent for unto my lady your queen, I wot not for what cause, but I was not so soon within the chamber door, but anon Sir Agravaine and Sir Mordred called me traitor and recreant knight. They called thee right, said Sir Gawaine. My lord Sir Gawaine, said Sir Launcelot, in their quarrel they proved themselves not in the right. Well, well, Sir Launcelot, said king Arthur, I have given thee no cause to do to me as thou hast done, for I have worshipped thee and thine more than any of all my knights. My good lord, said Sir Launcelot, so ye be not displeased, ye shall understand I and mine have done you oft better service than any other knights have done in many divers places; and where ye have been full hard bested divers times, I have myself rescued you from many dangers, and ever unto my power I was glad to please you, and my lord Sir Gawaine both, in justs and tournaments, and in battles set, both on horseback and on foot, I have often rescued you, and my lord Sir Gawaine, and many more of your knights in many divers places. For now I will make avaunt, said Sir Launcelot, I will that ye all wit that yet I found never no manner of knight, but that I was over-hard for him, and I had done my utterance, thanked be God; howbeit I have been matched with good knights, as Sir Tristram and Sir Lamorak, but ever I had a favour unto them, and a deeming what they were; and I take God to record, said Sir Launcelot, I never was wroth nor greatly heavy with no good knight, and I saw him busy about to win worship: and full glad I was ever when I found any knight that might endure me on horseback and on foot. Sir Carados of the dolorous a full noble knight, and a pas man, and that wot ye, my l waine; for he might well l noble knight, when he by pulled you out of your s bound you overthwart afore saddle bow; and there, m Gawaine, I rescued you, an afore your sight. Also I brother, Sir Turquin, in like ing Sir Gaheris your broth afore him, and there I re brother, and slew that Sir T delivered threescore and f lord Arthur's knights out of And now I dare say, said Sir I met never with so strong k so well fighting, as was Sir C Sir Turquin, for I fought wi the uttermost; and therefo Launcelot unto Sir Gawaine, ye ought of right for to reme for and I might have your g would trust to God to hav Arthur's good grace.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the communication betwee waine and Sir Launcelot, other language.

The king may do as he wi Gawaine, but wit thou well, celot, thou and I shall never b while we live, for thou hast of my brethren, and twain slew traitorly and piteously bare none harness against the would bear. God would the armed, said Sir Launcelot, fo they been on live. And w Sir Gawaine, as for Sir Gar none of my kinsmen so muc him, and ever while I live Launcelot, I will bewail Si death, not all only for the that I have of you, but m causen me to be sorrowful. I made him knight; anothe well he loved me above all oth and the third is, he was pass

eous, and gentle, and well con-
the fourth is, I wist well, anon
that Sir Gareth was dead, I
ver after have your love, but
war betwixt us; and also I
hat ye would cause my noble
ır for ever to be my mortal
s Jesu be my help, said Sir
I slew never Sir Gareth
Gaheris by my will, but
ever they were unarmed that
lay. But thus much I shall
said Sir Launcelot, if it may
king's good grace, and you,
r Gawaine: I shall first begin
:h, and there I shall go in my
foot, and at every ten miles
found, and cause to make an
eligion, of what order that ye
ı me, with an whole convent
ınd read day and night in
ır Sir Gareth's sake and Sir
And this shall I perform from
ınto Carlisle; and every house
sufficient livelihood, and this
form while I have any liveli-
hristendom, and there is none
se religious places, but they
erformed, furnished and gar-
all things as an holy place
be, I promise you faithfully.
Sir Gawaine, me thinketh
fairer, holier, and more better
ouls, than ye my most noble
you, Sir Gawaine, to war
for thereby shall ye get none
en all knights and ladies that
wept as they were mad, and
fell on king Arthur's cheeks.
:lot, said Sir Gawaine, I have
heard thy speech, and thy
fers, but wit thou well, let
lo as it pleaseth him, I will
ive my brothers' death, and in
ıe death of my brother Sir
nd if mine uncle, king Arthur,
l with thee, he shall lose my
ır wit thou well, thou art both
e king and to me. Sir, said
elot, he beareth not the life
make that good, and if that
waine, will charge me with so
ing, ye must pardon me, for
then needs must I answer you. Nay, said Sir Gawaine, we are past that at this time, and that caused the Pope, for he hath charged mine uncle the king, that he shall take his queen again, and to accord with thee, Sir Launcelot, as for this season, and therefore thou shalt go safe, as thou camest. But in this land thou shalt not abide past fifteen days, such summons I give you;—so the king and we were consented and accorded, or thou camest hither; and else, said Sir Gawaine, wit thou well, that thou shouldest not have come here, but if it were maugre thy head. And if it were not for the Pope's commandment, said Sir Gawaine, I should do battle with mine own body against thy body, and prove it upon thee that thou hast been both false unto mine uncle king Arthur, and to me both, and that shall I prove upon thy body when thou art departed from hence, wheresoever I find thee.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Launcelot departed from the king and from Joyous Gard over seaward, and what knights went with him.

THEN Sir Launcelot sighed, and therewith the tears fell on his cheeks, and then he said thus: Alas, most noble christian realm, whom I have loved above all other realms, and in thee have I gotten a great part of my worship, and now I shall depart in this wise. Truly me repenteth that ever I came in this realm that should be thus shamefully banished, undeserved and causeless. But fortune is so variant, and the wheel so movable, there is no constant abiding, and that may be proved by many old chronicles of noble Hector, and Troilus, and Alisander the mighty conqueror, and many other more. When they were most in their royalty, they alight lowest; and so fareth by me, said Sir Launcelot, for in this realm I had worship, and by me and mine all the whole Round Table hath been increased more in worship by me and my blood than by any other. And therefore wit thou well, Sir Gawaine, I may live upon my lands as

well as any knight that here is. And if ye, most redoubted king, will come upon my lands with Sir Gawaine, to war upon me, I must endure you as well as I may. But as to you, Sir Gawaine, if that ye come there, I pray you charge me not with treason nor felony, for, and ye do, I must answer you. Do thou thy best, said Sir Gawaine, therefore hie thee fast that thou were gone, and wit thou well we shall soon come after, and break the strongest castle that thou hast upon thy head. That shall not need, said Sir Launcelot, for and I were as orgulous set as ye are, wit ye well I should meet with you in midst of the field. Make thou no more language, said Sir Gawaine, but deliver the queen from thee, and pike thee lightly out of this court. Well, said Sir Launcelot, and I had wist of this short coming, I would have advised me twice or that I had come hither; for and the queen had been so dear to me as ye noise her, I durst have kept her from the fellowship of the best knights under heaven. And then Sir Launcelot said unto Guenever, in hearing of the king and them all, Madam, now I must depart from you and this noble fellowship for ever; and sithen it is so, I beseech you to pray for me, and say me well, and if ye be hard bestad by any false tongues, lightly, my lady, let send me word, and if any knight's hands may deliver you by battle, I shall deliver you. And therewithal Sir Launcelot kissed the queen, and then he said all openly, Now let see what he be in this place, that dare say the queen is not true unto my lord Arthur: let see who will speak, and he dare speak. And therewith he brought the queen to the king, and then Sir Launcelot took his leave and departed; and there was neither king, duke ne earl, baron ne knight, lady nor gentlewoman, but all they wept as people out of their mind, except Sir Gawaine; and when the noble Sir Launcelot took his horse, to ride out of Carlisle, there was sobbing and weeping for pure dole of his departing; and so he took his way unto Joyous Gard, and then ever after he called it the Dolorous Gard. And thus departed Sir Launcelot from the court for ever. And so when he came to Joyous Gard, he called his fellowship unto him, and asked them what they would do. Then they answered all wholly together with one voice, they would as he would do. My fair fellows, said Sir Launcelot, I must depart out of this most noble realm, and now I shall depart it grieveth me sore, for I shall depart with no worship. For a banished man departed never out of no realm with no worship, and that is my heaviness, for ever I fear after my days that they shall chronicle upon me that I was banished out of this land; and else, my fair lords, be ye sure, and I had not dread shame, my lady queen Guenever and I should never have departed. Then spake many noble knights, as Sir Palamides, Sir Safir his brother, and Sir Bellangere le Beuse, and Sir Urre with Sir Lavaine, with many other, Sir, and ye be so disposed to abide in this country, we will never fail you; and if ye list not to abide in this land, there is none of the good knights that here be will fail you, for many causes. One is, all we that be not of your blood shall never be welcome to the court. And sithen it liked us to take a part with you in your distress and heaviness in this realm, wit you well it shall like us as well to go in other countries with you, and there to take such part as ye do. My fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, I well understand you, and, as I can, thank you: and ye shall understand such livelihood as I am born unto I shall depart with you, in this manner of wise, that is for to say, I shall depart all my livelihood and all my lands freely among you, and I myself will have as little as any of you, for have I sufficient that may long to my person, I will ask none other rich array; and I trust to God to maintain you on my lands as well as ever were maintained any knights. Then spake all the knights at once, He have shame that will leave you; for we all understand in this realm will be

now no quiet, but ever strife and debate, how the fellowship of the Round Table is broken; for by the noble fellowship of the Round Table was king Arthur upborne, and by their nobleness the king and all his realm was in quiet and in rest. And a great part, they said all, was because of your nobleness.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Launcelot passed over the sea, and how he made great lords of the knights that went with him.

TRULY, said Sir Launcelot, I thank you all of your good saying, howbeit, I wot well, in me was not all the stability of this realm. But in that I might I did my devoir, and well, I am sure, I knew many rebellions in my days that by me were appeased; and I trow we all shall hear of them in short space, and that me sore repenteth. For ever I dread me, said Sir Launcelot, that Sir Mordred will make trouble, for he is passing envious, and applieth him to trouble. So they were accorded to go with Sir Launcelot to his lands. And to make short tale, they trussed, and paid all that would ask them. And wholly an hundred knights departed with Sir Launcelot at once, and made their avows they would never leave him for weal nor for woe; and so they shipped at Cardiff, and sailed unto Benwick: some men call it Bayonne, and some men call it Beaume, where the wine of Beaume is. But to say the sooth, Sir Launcelot and his nephews were lords of all France, and of all the lands that longed unto France, he and his kindred rejoiced it all through Sir Launcelot's noble prowess. And then Sir Launcelot stuffed and furnished and garnished all his noble towns and castles. Then all the people of those lands came unto Sir Launcelot on foot and hands. And so when he had established all these countries, he shortly called a parliament; and there he crowned Sir Lionel king of France; and Sir Bors he crowned him king of all king Claudas' lands; and Sir Ector de Maris, that was Sir Launcelot's youngest brother, he crowned him king of Benwick, and also king of all Guienne, that was Sir Launcelot's own land. And he made Sir Ector prince of them all, and thus he departed. Then Sir Launcelot advanced all his noble knights, and first he advanced them of his blood; that was Sir Blamor he made him duke of Limosin in Guienne, and Sir Bleoberis he made him duke of Poictiers, and Sir Gahalantin he made him duke of Querne, and Sir Galihodin he made him duke of Sentonge, and Sir Galihud he made him earl of Perigot, and Sir Menadeuke he made him earl of Roerge, and Sir Villiers the valiant he made him earl of Bearn, and Sir Hebes le Renoumes he made him earl of Comange, and Sir Lavaine he made him earl of Arminak, and Sir Urre he made him earl of Estrake, and Sir Neroneus he made him earl of Pardiak, and Sir Plenorius he made him earl of Foise, and Sir Selises of the dolorous tower he made him earl of Masauke, and Sir Melias de Lile he made him earl of Tursauk, and Sir Bellangere le Bewse he made him earl of the Landes, and Sir Palamides he made him duke of the Provence, and Sir Safir he made him duke of Langedok, and Sir Clegis he gave him the earldom of Agente, and Sir Sadok he gave him the earldom of Surlat, and Sir Dinas le seneschal he made him duke of Anjou, and Sir Clarrus he made him duke of Normandy. Thus Sir Launcelot rewarded his noble knights, and many more, that me seemeth it were too long to rehearse.

CHAP. XIX.

How king Arthur and Sir Gawaine made a great host ready to go over sea to make war on Sir Launcelot.

So leave we Sir Launcelot in his lands, and his noble knights with him, and return we again unto king Arthur and to Sir Gawaine, that made a great host ready, to the number of threescore thousand, and all thing was made ready for their shipping to pass over the sea;

and so they shipped at Cardiff. And there king Arthur made Sir Mordred chief ruler of all England, and also he put queen Guenever under his governance; because Sir Mordred was king Arthur's son, he gave him the rule of his land, and of his wife, and so king Arthur passed over the sea and landed upon Sir Launcelot's lands, and there he burnt and wasted, through the vengeance of Sir Gawaine, all that they might overrun. When this word came to Sir Launcelot, that king Arthur and Sir Gawaine were landed upon his lands, and made a full destruction and waste, then spake Sir Bors and said, My lord Sir Launcelot, it is shame that we suffer them thus to ride over our lands, for wit you well, suffer ye them as long as ye will, they will do you no favour, and they may handle you. Then said Sir Lionel, that was ware and wise, My lord Sir Launcelot, I will give you this counsel, let us keep our strong walled towns until they have hunger and cold, and blow on their nails, and then let us freshly set upon them, and shred them down as sheep in a field, that aliens may take ensample for ever how they land upon our lands. Then spake king Bagdemagus to Sir Launcelot, Sir, your courtesy will shend us all, and thy courtesy hath waked all this sorrow: for, and they thus over our lands ride, they shall by process bring us all to nought, whilst we thus in holes us hide. Then said Sir Galihud unto Sir Launcelot, Sir, here be knights come of kings' blood that will not long droop, and they are within these walls, therefore give us leave, like as we be knights, to meet them in the field, and we shall slay them, that they shall curse the time that ever they came into this country. Then spake seven brethren of North Wales, and they were seven noble knights, a man might seek in seven lands or he might find such seven knights: then they all said at once, Sir Launcelot, let us out ride with Sir Galihud, for we be never wont to cower in castles nor in noble towns. Then spake Sir Launcelot, that was master and governor of them all, My fair lords, wit you well I am full loth to ride out with my knights, for shedding of christian blood; and yet my lands I understand be full bare to sustain any host a while, for the mighty wars that whilom made king Claudus upon this country, upon my father king Ban, and on mine uncle king Bors; howbeit we will as at this time keep our strong walls, and I shall send a messager unto my lord Arthur, a treaty for to take, for better is peace than always war. So Sir Launcelot sent forth a damsel, and a dwarf with her, requiring king Arthur to leave his warring upon his lands, and so she start upon a palfrey, and the dwarf ran by her side. And when she came to the pavilion of king Arthur, there she alight, and there met her a gentle knight Sir Lucan the butler, and said, Fair damsel, come ye from Sir Launcelot du Lake? Yea, sir, she said, therefore I come hither to speak with my lord the king. Alas, said Sir Lucan, my lord Arthur would love Launcelot, but Sir Gawaine will not suffer him. And then he said, I pray to God, damsel, ye may speed well, for all we that be about the king would that Sir Launcelot did best of any knight living. And so with this Lucan led the damsel unto the king, where he sat with Sir Gawaine for to hear what she would say. So when she had told her tale, the water ran out of the king's eyes, and all the lords were full glad for to advise the king as to be accorded with Sir Launcelot, save all only Sir Gawaine, and he said, My lord, mine uncle, what will ye do? will ye now turn again, now ye are past thus far upon this journey? all the world will speak of you villainy. Nay, said Arthur, wit thou well, Sir Gawaine, I will do as ye will advise me; and yet me seemeth, said Arthur, his fair proffers were not good to be refused: but sithen I am comen so far upon this journey, I will that ye give the damsel her answer, for I may not speak to her for pity, for her proffers be so large.

CHAP. XX.

What message Sir Gawaine sent to Sir Launcelot, and king Arthur laid siege to Benwick, and other matters.

THEN Sir Gawaine said to the damsel thus: Damsel, say ye to Sir Launcelot, that it is waste labour, now to sue to mine uncle. For tell him, and he would have made any labour for peace, he should have made it or this time: for tell him now it is too late. And say, that I, Sir Gawaine, so send him word, that I promise him, by the faith I owe unto God, and to knighthood, I shall never leave him till he have slain me, or I him. So the damsel wept and departed, and there were many weeping eyes: and so Sir Lucan brought the damsel to her palfrey, and so she came to Sir Launcelot, where he was among all his knights; and when Sir Launcelot had heard this answer, then the tears ran down by his cheeks. And then his noble knights strode about him, and said, Sir Launcelot, wherefore make ye such cheer: think what ye are, and what men we are, and let us noble knights match them in midst of the field. That may be lightly done, said Sir Launcelot, but I was never so loth to do battle, and therefore, I pray you, fair sirs, as ye love me, be ruled as I will have you, for I will always flee that noble king that made me knight. And when I may no farther, I must needs defend me, and that will be more worship for me, and us all, than to compare with that noble king whom we have all served. Then they held their language, and as that night they took their rest. And upon the morn, early, in the dawning of the day, as knights looked out, they saw the city of Benwick besieged round about, and fast they began to set up ladders. And then they defied them out of the town, and beat them from the walls mightily. Then came forth Sir Gawaine, well armed, upon a stiff steed, and he came before the chief gate with his spear in his hand, crying, Sir Launcelot, where art thou, is there none of you proud knights dare break a spear with me? Then Sir Bors made him ready, and came forth out of the town, and there Sir Gawaine encountered with Sir Bors; and at that time he smote Sir Bors down from his horse, and almost he had slain him, and so Sir Bors was rescued, and borne into the town. Then came forth Sir Lionel, brother to Sir Bors, and thought to revenge him, and either feutred their spears, and ran together, and there they met spitefully, but Sir Gawaine had such grace that he smote Sir Lionel down, and wounded him there passing sore, and then Sir Lionel was rescued, and borne into the town. And this Sir Gawaine came every day, and he failed not, but that he smote down one knight or other. So thus they endured half a year, and much slaughter was of people on both parties. Then it befell upon a day, Sir Gawaine came before the gates armed at all pieces, on a noble horse, with a great spear in his hand, and then he cried with a loud voice, Where art thou now, thou false traitor, Sir Launcelot? Why hidest thou thyself within holes and walls like a coward? Look out now, thou false traitor knight, and here I shall revenge upon thy body the death of my three brethren. All this language heard Sir Launcelot every deal, and his kin and his knights drew about him, and all they said at once to Sir Launcelot, Sir Launcelot, now must ye defend you like a knight, or else ye be shamed for ever: for now ye be called upon treason, it is time for you to stir, for ye have slept over long, and suffered over much. So God me help, said Sir Launcelot, I am right heavy of Sir Gawaine's words, for now he charged me with a great charge; and therefore I wot it as well as ye, that I must defend me, or else to be recreant. Then Sir Launcelot bade saddle his strongest horse, and bad let fetch his arms, and bring all unto the gate of the tower. And then Sir Launcelot spake on high unto king Arthur, and said, My lord Arthur, and noble king that made me knight, wit you well I am right heavy for your sake, that ye thus sue upon me, and

always I forbear you, for, and I would have been vengeable, I might have met you in midst of the field, and there to have made your boldest knights full tame: and now I have forborne half a year, and suffered you and Sir Gawaine to do what ye would do, and now I may endure it no longer, now must I needs defend myself, insomuch Sir Gawaine hath appealed me of treason,—the which is greatly against my will, that ever I should fight against any of your blood; but now I may not forsake it, I am driven thereto as a beast till a bay. Then Sir Gawaine said, Sir Launcelot, and thou darest do battle, leave thy babbling and come off, and let us ease our hearts. Then Sir Launcelot armed him lightly, and mounted upon his horse. And either of the knights gat great spears in their hands, and the host without stood still all apart, and the noble knights came out of the city by a great number, insomuch that when Arthur saw the number of men and knights he marvelled, and said to himself, Alas, that ever Sir Launcelot was against me, for now I see he hath forborne me. And so the covenant was made, there should no man nigh them, nor deal with them, till the one were dead or yielden.

CHAP. XXI.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot did battle together, and how Sir Gawaine was overthrown and hurt.

Then Sir Gawaine and Sir Launcelot departed a great way in sunder, and then they came together with all their horses' might as they might run, and either smote other in midst of their shields, but the knights were so strong, and their spears so big, that their horses might not endure their buffets, and so the horses fell to the earth. And then they avoided their horses, and dressed their shields afore them. Then they stood together, and gave many sad strokes on divers places of their bodies, that the blood brast out on many sides and places. Then had Sir Gawaine such a grace and gift that an holy man had given to him, that every day in the year, from underne till high noon, his might increased those three hours, as much as thrice his strength, and that caused Sir Gawaine to win great honour. And for his sake king Arthur made an ordinance that all manner of battles for any quarrels that should be done before king Arthur, should begin at underne, and all was done for Sir Gawaine's love, that by likelihood if that Sir Gawaine were on the one part he should have the better in battle, while his strength endured three hours, but there were but few knights that time living that knew this advantage that Sir Gawaine had, but king Arthur all only. Thus Sir Launcelot fought with Sir Gawaine, and when Sir Launcelot felt his might evermore increase, Sir Launcelot wondered, and dread him sore to be shamed. For, as the French book saith, Sir Launcelot wend, when he felt Sir Gawaine double his strength, that he had been a fiend and no earthly man, wherefore Sir Launcelot traced and traversed, and covered himself with his shield, and kept his might and his braid during three hours: and that while Sir Gawaine gave him many sad brunts and many sad strokes, that all the knights that beheld Sir Launcelot marvelled how he might endure him, but full little understood they that travail that Sir Launcelot had for to endure him. And then when it was past noon, Sir Gawaine had no more but his own might. Then Sir Launcelot felt him so come down; then he stretched him up, and stood near Sir Gawaine, and said thus, My lord Sir Gawaine, now I feel ye have done, now my lord Sir Gawaine I must do my part, for many great and grievous strokes I have endured you this day with great pain. Then Sir Launcelot doubled his strokes, and gave Sir Gawaine such a buffet on the helmet, that he fell down on his side, and Sir Launcelot withdrew him from him. Why withdrawest thou thee? said Sir Gawaine; now turn again, false traitor knight, and slay me; for and thou

ıus, when I am whole I shall vith thee again.—I shall en- sir, by God's grace, but wit Sir Gawaine, I will never elled knight. And so Sir went into the city, and Sir vas borne into one of king pavilions, and leeches were) him, and searched and ı soft ointments. And then ot said, Now have good day, e king, for, wit you well, ye rship at these walls; and if ıy knights out bring, there ny a man die. Therefore, rthur, remember you of old ınd however I fare Jesu be in all places.

CHAP. XXII.

ow that king Arthur made for and of another battle where Gawaine had the worse.

id the king, that ever this var was begun, for ever Sir forbeareth me in all places, wise my kin, and that is seen lay by my nephew Sir Ga- ıen king Arthur fell sick for ir Gawaine, that he was sore because of the war betwixt ir Launcelot. So then they rthur's party kept the siege war withoutforth, and they kept their walls, and de- n when need was. Thus Sir ıy sick about three weeks in vith all manner of leech-craft be had: and as soon as Sir ıight go and ride, he armed l points, and start upon a ıd gat a spear in his hand, came riding afore the chief ıwick, and there he cried on 'e art thou, Sir Launcelot? ı thou false traitor knight, ıt, for I am here, Sir Gawaine, this that I say on thee. nguage Sir Launcelot heard, e said thus, Sir Gawaine, me of your foul saying, that ye ıse of your language, for you wot well, Sir Gawaine, I know your might, and all that ye may do, and well ye wot, Sir Gawaine, ye may not greatly hurt me. Come down, traitor knight, said he, and make it good the contrary with thy hands: for it mishapped me the last battle to be hurt of thy hands, therefore, wit thou well, that I am come this day to make amends, for I ween this day to lay thee as low as thou laidest me. Defend me, said Sir Launcelot, that ever I be so far in your danger as ye have been in mine, for then my days were done. But Sir Gawaine, said Sir Launcelot, ye shall not think that I tarry long, but sithen that ye so unknightly call me of treason, ye shall have both your hands full of me. And then Sir Launcelot armed him at all points, and mounted upon his horse, and gat a great spear in his hand, and rode out at the gate. And both the hosts were assembled, of them without, and of them within, and stood in array full manly. And both parties were charged to hold them still, to see and behold the battle of these two noble knights. And then they laid their spears in their rests, and they came together as thunder. And Sir Gawaine brake his spear upon Sir Launcelot in an hundred pieces unto his hand, and Sir Launcelot smote him with a greater might, that Sir Gawaine's horse feet raised, and so the horse and he fell to the earth. Then Sir Gawaine deliverly avoided his horse, and put his shield afore him, and eagerly drew his sword, and bad Sir Launcelot, Alight, traitor knight, for if this mare's son hath failed me, wit thou well a king's son and a queen's son shall not fail thee.

Then Sir Launcelot avoided his horse, and dressed his shield afore him, and drew his sword, and so stood they together, and gave many sad strokes, that all men on both parties had thereof passing great wonder. But when Sir Launcelot felt Sir Gawaine's might so marvellously increase, he then withheld his courage and his wind, and kept himself wonder covert of his might, and under his shield he traced and traversed here and there, to break

Sir Gawaine's strokes and his courage; and Sir Gawaine enforced himself with all his might and power to destroy Sir Launcelot, for, as the French book saith, ever as Sir Gawaine's might increased, right so increased his wind and his evil will. Thus Sir Gawaine did great pain unto Sir Launcelot three hours, that he had great pain for to defend him. And when the three hours were passed, that Sir Launcelot felt that Sir Gawaine was come to his own proper strength, then Sir Launcelot said unto Sir Gawaine, Now have I proved you twice, that ye are a full dangerous knight, and a wonderful man of your might, and many wonderful deeds have you done in your days: for by your might increasing you have deceived many a full noble and valiant knight; and now I feel that ye have done your mighty deeds. Now wit you well I must do my deeds. And then Sir Launcelot stood near Sir Gawaine, and then Sir Launcelot doubled his strokes, and Sir Gawaine defended him mightily. But nevertheless Sir Launcelot smote such a stroke upon Sir Gawaine's helm, and upon the old wound, that Sir Gawaine sinked down upon his one side in a swoon. And anon as he did awake, he waved and foined at Sir Launcelot as he lay, and said, Traitor knight, wit thou well I am not yet slain: come thou near me, and perform this battle unto the uttermost. I will no more do than I have done, said Sir Launcelot; for when I see you on foot I will do battle upon you all the while I see you stand on your feet; but for to smite a wounded man, that may not stand, God defend me from such a shame. And then he turned him and went his way toward the city, and Sir Gawaine evermore calling him traitor knight, and said, Wit thou well, Sir Launcelot, when I am whole, I shall do battle with thee again; for I shall never leave thee till that one of us be slain. Thus as this siege endured, and as Sir Gawaine lay sick near a month, and when he was well recovered, and ready within three days to do battle again with Sir Launcelot, right so came tidings unto Arthur from England, that made king Arthur and all his host to remove.

Here foloweth the xxi book.

The Twenty-first Book.

CHAP. I.

How Sir Mordred presumed and took on him to be king of England, and would have married the queen, his uncle's wife.

As Sir Mordred was ruler of all England, he did do make letters as though that they came from beyond the sea, and the letters specified that king Arthur was slain in battle with Sir Launcelot. Wherefore Sir Mordred made a Parliament, and called the lords together, and there he made them to choose him king, and so was he crowned at Canterbury, and held a feast there fifteen days, and afterward he drew him unto Winchester, and there he took the queen Guenever, and said plainly, that he would wed her which was his uncle's wife, and his father's wife. And so he made ready for the feast, and a day prefixed that they should be wedded; wherefore queen Guenever was passing heavy. But she durst not discover her heart, but spake fair, and agreed to Sir Mordred's will. Then she desired of Sir Mordred for to go to London, to buy all manner of things that longed unto the wedding. And because of her fair speech Sir Mordred trusted her well enough, and gave her leave to go. And so when she came to London, she took the tower of London, and suddenly, in all haste possible, she stuffed it with all manner of victual, and well garnished it with men, and so kept it.

when Sir Mordred wist and un-
d how he was beguiled, he was
wroth out of measure. And
t tale for to make, he went and
nighty siege about the tower of
n, and made many great assaults
, and threw many great engines
nem, and shot great guns. But
ht not prevail Sir Mordred, for
Guenever would never, for fair
nor for foul, would never trust
e in his hands again. And then
the bishop of Canterbury, the
was a noble clerk and an holy
nd thus he said to Sir Mordred:
at will ye do, will ye first dis-
God, and sithen shame yourself
knighthood? Is not king Arthur
ncle, no further but your mother's
, and are ye not his son, there-
ow may ye wed your father's
Sir, said the noble clerk, leave
inion, or else I shall curse you
ook, and bell, and candle. Do
ay worst, said Sir Mordred, wit
ell I shall defy thee. Sir, said
hop, and wit you well I shall
r me to do that me ought to do.
vhere ye noise where my lord
is slain, and that is not so, and
re ye will make a foul work in
nd. Peace, thou false priest, said
rdred, for, and thou chafe me any
I shall make strike off thy head.
bishop departed, and did the
n the most orgulous wise that
be done. And then Sir Mordred
the bishop of Canterbury for to
ain him. Then the bishop fled,
ok part of his goods with him,
ent nigh unto Glastonbury, and
he was as priest hermit in a
and lived in poverty and in holy
: for well he understood that
evous war was at hand. Then
ordred sought on queen Gue-
ay letters and sondes, and by fair
and foul means, for to have her
e out of the tower of London, but
s availed not, for she answered
ortly, openly and privily, that she
ver slay herself than to be mar-
th him. Then came word to Sir
Mordred that king Arthur had raised the siege from Sir Launcelot, and he was coming homeward with a great host, to be avenged upon Sir Mordred. Wherefore Sir Mordred made write writs to all the barony of this land, and much people drew to him. For then was the common voice among them, that with Arthur was none other life but war and strife, and with Sir Mordred was great joy and bliss. Thus was Sir Arthur depraved and evil said of. And many there were that king Arthur had made up of nought, and given them lands, might not then say of him a good word.

Lo ye, all Englishmen, see ye not what a mischief here was, for he that was the most king and knight of the world, and most loved the fellowship of noble knights, and by him they were all upholden. Now might not these Englishmen hold us content with him. Lo, thus was the old custom and usage of this land. And also men say, that we of this land have not yet lost nor forgotten that custom and usage. Alas, this is a great default of all Englishmen, for there may no thing please us no term. And so fared the people at that time; they were better pleased with Sir Mordred than they were with king Arthur, and much people drew unto Sir Mordred, and said they would abide with him for better and for worse. And so Sir Mordred drew with a great host to Dover, for there he heard say that Sir Arthur would arrive, and so he thought to beat his own father from his lands. And the most party of all England held with Sir Mordred, the people were so new fangle.

CHAP. II.

How after that king Arthur had tidings he returned and came to Dover, where Sir Mordred met him to let his landing, and of the death of Sir Gawaine.

And so as Sir Mordred was at Dover with his host, there came king Arthur with a great navy of ships, galleys, and carracks. And there was Sir Mordred ready awaiting upon his landage, to let

his own father to land upon the land that he was king over. Then there was launching of great boats and small, and full of noble men of arms, and there was much slaughter of gentle knights, and many a full bold baron was laid full low on both parties. But king Arthur was so courageous, that there might no manner of knights let him to land, and his knights fiercely followed him. And so they landed, maugre Sir Mordred and all his power, and put Sir Mordred aback, that he fled and all his people. So when this battle was done, king Arthur let bury his people that were dead, and then was the noble knight Sir Gawaine found in a great boat lying more than half dead. When Sir Arthur wist that Sir Gawaine was laid so low, he went unto him, and there the king made sorrow out of measure, and took Sir Gawaine in his arms, and thrice he there swooned. And when he awaked he said, Alas, Sir Gawaine, my sister's son, here now thou liest, the man in the world that I loved most, and now is my joy gone: for now, my nephew Sir Gawaine, I will discover me unto your person; in Sir Launcelot and you I most had my joy, and mine affiance, and now have I lost my joy of you both, wherefore all mine earthly joy is gone from me. Mine uncle king Arthur, said Sir Gawaine, wit you well, my death day is come, and all is through mine own hastiness and wilfulness, for I am smitten upon the old wound the which Sir Launcelot gave me, on the which I feel well I must die, and had Sir Launcelot been with you as he was, this unhappy war had never begun, and of all this am I causer, for Sir Launcelot and his blood through their prowess held all your cankered enemies in subjection and danger: and now, said Sir Gawaine, ye shall miss Sir Launcelot. But, alas, I would not accord with him, and therefore, said Sir Gawaine, I pray you, fair uncle, that I may have paper, pen, and ink, that I may write to Sir Launcelot a schedule with mine own hands. And then when paper and ink was brought, then Gawaine was set up weakly by king Arthur, for l
shriven a little tofore, and then h
thus, as the French book maket
tion,—Unto Sir Launcelot, flowe
noble knights that ever I heard
saw by my days, I Sir Gawain
Lot's son, of Orkney, sister's son u
noble king Arthur, send thee g
and let thee have knowledge, t
tenth day of May I was smitte
the old wound that thou gavest n
the city of Benwick, and throu
same wound that thou gavest n
come to my death-day. And I w
all the world wit that I, Sir G
knight of the Table Round, sou
death, and not through thy de
but it was mine own seeking, wl
I beseech thee, Sir Launcelot, tc
again unto this realm, and see m
and pray some prayer, more or l
my soul. And this same day
wrote this schedule, I was hurt
death in the same wound, the v
had of thy hand, Sir Launcelot.
a more nobler man might I not l
Also, Sir Launcelot, for all the l
ever was betwixt us, make no t
but come over the sea in all has
thou mayest with thy noble
rescue that noble king that ma
knight, that is my lord Arthur, f
full straitly bestad with a false
that is my half brother Sir M
and he hath let crown him ki
would have wedded my lady
Guenever, and so had he done,
not put herself in the tower of I
And so the tenth day of May la
my lord Arthur and we all lande
them at Dover, and there we p
false traitor Sir Mordred to flig
there it misfortuned me to be s
upon thy stroke, and at the date
letter was written but two hours
half afore my death, written wit
own hand, and so subscribed wi
of my heart's blood. And I
thee, most famous knight of the
that thou wilt see my tomb.—A
Sir Gawaine wept, and king
wept, and then they swooned
And when they awaked both, th

r Gawaine to receive his Saviour. n Sir Gawaine prayed the king for Sir Launcelot, and to cherish ve all other knights. And so at r of noon, Sir Gawaine yielded spirit. And then the king let m in a chapel within Dover and there yet all men may see l of him, and the same wound hat Sir Launcelot gave him in Then was it told king Arthur Mordred had pitched a new on Barham Down. And upon n the king rode thither to him, re was a great battle betwixt id much people were slain on rties. But at the last Sir Arrty stood best, and Sir Mordred party fled unto Canterbury.

CHAP. III.

er Sir Gawaine's ghost appeared g Arthur, and warned him that uld not fight that day.

hen the king let search all the or his knights that were slain, rred them; and salved them with es that so sore were wounded. uch people drew unto king Arnd then they said that Sir l warred upon king Arthur with And then king Arthur drew n his host down by the sea side, d toward Salisbury, and there ty assigned between king Arthur Mordred, and they should meet lown beside Salisbury, and not the sea side, and this day was on a Monday after Trinity whereof king Arthur was pass-, that he might be avenged upon lred. Then Sir Mordred araised ople about London, for they of uthsex, and Surrey, Estsex, and k, and of Northfolk, held the rty with Sir Mordred, and many ble knight drew unto Sir Mor- to the king; but they that loved ncelot drew unto Sir Mordred. n Trinity Sunday at night king lreamed a wonderful dream, and s this, that him seemed he sat upon a chaflet in a chair, and the chair was fast to a wheel, and thereupon sat king Arthur in the richest cloth of gold that might be made: and the king thought there was under him, far from him, an hideous deep black water, and therein were all manner of serpents, and worms, and wild beasts, foul and horrible: and suddenly the king thought the wheel turned up so down, and he fell among the serpents, and every beast took him by a limb. And then the king cried as he lay in his bed and slept, Help! And then knights, squires, and yeomen awaked the king; and then he was so amazed that he wist not where he was. And then he fell on slumbering again, not sleeping nor thoroughly waking. So the king seemed verily that there came Sir Gawaine unto him with a number of fair ladies with him. And when king Arthur saw him, then he said, Welcome, my sister's son, I wend thou hadst been dead, and now I see thee on live, much am I beholding unto Almighty Jesu. Oh, fair nephew, and my sister's son, what be these ladies that hither be come with you? Sir, said Sir Gawaine, all these be ladies for whom I have foughten when I was man living: and all these are those that I did battle for in righteous quarrel. And God hath given them that grace at their great prayer, because I did battle for them, that they should bring me hither unto you, thus much had God given me leave, for to warn you of your death; for and ye fight as to-morn with Sir Mordred, as ye both have assigned, doubt ye not ye must be slain, and the most part of your people on both parties. And for the great grace and goodness that Almighty Jesu hath unto you, and for pity of you and many more other good men there shall be slain, God hath sent me to you, of his special grace, to give you warning, that in no wise ye do battle as to-morn, but that ye take a treaty for a month day; and proffer you largely, so as to-morn to be put in a delay. For within a month shall come Sir Launcelot, with all his noble knights, and rescue you worshipfully, and slay Sir Mordred and

all that ever will hold with him. Then Sir Gawaine and all the ladies vanished. And anon the king called upon his knights, squires, and yeomen, and charged them wightly to fetch his noble lords and wise bishops unto him. And when they were come, the king told them his vision, what Sir Gawaine had told him, and warned him that if he fought on the morn he should be slain. Then the king commanded Sir Lucan de butlere, and his brother Sir Bedivere, with two bishops with them, and charged them in any wise and they might take a treaty for a month day with Sir Mordred;—And spare not, proffer him lands and goods, as much as ye think best. So then they departed, and came to Sir Mordred, where he had a grim host of an hundred thousand men. And there they intreated Sir Mordred long time, and at the last Sir Mordred was agreed for to have Cornwall and Kent, by king Arthur's days:—after, all England, after the days of king Arthur.

CHAP. IV.

How by misadventure of an adder the battle began, where Mordred was slain, and Arthur hurt to the death.

THEN were they condescended that king Arthur and Sir Mordred should meet betwixt both their hosts, and every each of them should bring fourteen persons. And they came with this word unto king Arthur. Then said he, I am glad that this is done. And so he went into the field. And when Arthur should depart, he warned all his host that and they see any sword drawn, Look ye come on fiercely, and slay that traitor Sir Mordred, for I in no wise trust him. In like wise Sir Mordred warned his host that,—And ye see any sword drawn, look that ye come on fiercely, and so slay all that ever before you standeth: for in no wise I will not trust for this treaty: for I know well my father will be avenged upon me. And so they met as their pointment was, and so they were agreed and accorded thoroughly: and wine was fetched, and they drank. Right so came an adder out of a little heath bush, and it stung a knight on the foot. And when the knight felt him stungen, he looked down and saw the adder, and then he drew his sword to slay the adder, and thought of none other harm. And when the host on both parties saw that sword drawn, then they blew beames, trumpets, and horns, and shouted grimly. And so both hosts dressed them together. And king Arthur took his horse, and said, Alas this unhappy day, and so rode to his party: and Sir Mordred in likewise. And never was there seen a more dolefuller battle in no christian land. For there was but rushing and riding, foining and striking, and many a grim word was there spoken either to other, and many a deadly stroke. But ever king Arthur rode throughout the battle of Sir Mordred many times, and did full nobly as a noble king should; and at all times he fainted never. And Sir Mordred that day put him in devoir, and in great peril. And thus they fought all the long day, and never stinted, till the noble knights were laid to the cold ground, and ever they fought still, till it was near night, and by that time was there an hundred thousand laid dead upon the down. Then was Arthur wroth out of measure, when he saw his people so slain from him. Then the king looked about him, and then was he ware of all his host, and of all his good knights, were left no more on live but two knights, that was Sir Lucan de butlere, and his brother Sir Bedivere: and they full were sore wounded. Jesu mercy, said the king, where are all my noble knights becomen. Alas that ever I should see this doleful day. For now, said Arthur, I am come to mine end. But would to God that I wist where were that traitor Sir Mordred, that hath caused all this mischief. Then was king Arthur ware where Sir Mordred leaned upon his sword among a great heap of dead men. Now give me my spear, said Arthur unto Sir Lucan, for yonder I have espied the traitor that all this woe hath wrought. Sir, let him be,

ir Lucan, for he is unhappy: and
ass this unhappy day, ye shall be
well revenged upon him. Good
emember ye of your night's dream,
hat the spirit of Sir Gawaine told
iis night, yet God of his great
ess hath preserved you hitherto.
fore, for God's sake, my lord,
off by this. For blessed be God
'e won the field: for here we be
on live, and with Sir Mordred is
n live. And if ye leave off now,
icked day of destiny is past. Tide
ath, betide me life, saith the king,
see him yonder alone, he shall
escape mine hands, for at a better
hall I never have him. God speed
ell, said Sir Bedivere. Then the
;at his spear in both his hands,
an toward Sir Mordred, crying,
r, now is thy death day come.
vhen Sir Mordred heard Sir Ar-
he ran until him with his sword
in his hand. And then king
r smote Sir Mordred under the
with a foin of his spear through-
e body more than a fathom. And
Sir Mordred felt that he had his
s wound, he thrust himself, with
ight that he had, up to the bur of
Arthur's spear. And right so he
his father Arthur with his sword
ı in both his hands, on the side of
ead, that the sword pierced the
t and the brain-pan, and there-
Sir Mordred fell stark dead to
rth. And the noble Arthur fell
woon to the earth, and there he
ed oft-times. And Sir Lucan
tlere and Sir Bedivere oft-times
l him up, and so weakly they led
etwixt them both to a little chapel
r from the sea side. And when
ıg was there, he thought him well

Then heard they people cry in
eld. Now go thou, Sir Lucan,
ıe king, and do me to wit what
ms that noise in the field. So
ıcan departed, for he was griev-
wounded in many places. And so
went, he saw and hearkened by
oon-light, how the pillers and rob-
ere come into the field to pill and
to rob many a full noble knigh
broaches and beads, of many a g
ring, and of many a rich jewel;
who that were not dead all out, t
they slew them for their harness
their riches. When Sir Lucan ur
stood this work, he came to the kir
soon as he might, and told him all
he had heard and seen. Therefor
mine advice, said Sir Lucan, it is
that we bring you to some town. I w
it were so, said the king,—

CHAP. V.

How king Arthur commanded to cas sword Excalibur into the water, and be was delivered to ladies in a barg

But I may not stand, my head w
so. Ah, Sir Launcelot, said king
thur, this day have I sore missed
Alas, that ever I was against thee
now have I my death, whereof
Gawaine me warned in my dr
Then Sir Lucan took up the king
one part, and Sir Bedivere the c
part, and in the lifting, the
swooned, and Sir Lucan fell in a sv
with the lift, that the part of his bo
fell out of his body, and therewith
noble knight's heart brast. And v
king Arthur came to himself again
beheld Sir Lucan how he lay foar
at the mouth, and part of his bo
lay at his feet. Alas, said the king,
is unto me a full heavy sight to see
noble duke so die for my sake, fo
would have holpen me that had r
need of help than I. Alas, he w
not complain him, his heart was sc
to help me. Now Jesu have m
upon his soul. Then Sir Bedivere
for the death of his brother. Leave
mourning and weeping, said the l
for all this will not avail me:
wit thou well, and I might live m
the death of Sir Lucan would griev
evermore; but my time hieth fast,
the king. Therefore, said Arthur,
thou Excalibur, my good sword, an
with it to yonder water side, and v
thou comest there, I charge thee th
my sword in that water, and c
again, and tell me what thou t

seest. My lord, said Bedivere, your commandment shall be done, and lightly bring you word again. So Sir Bedivere departed, and by the way he beheld that noble sword, that the pommel and haft were all of precious stones, and then he said to himself, If I throw this rich sword in the water, thereof shall never come good, but harm and loss. And then Sir Bedivere hid Excalibur under a tree. And as soon as he might he came again unto the king, and said he had been at the water, and had thrown the sword into the water. What sawest thou there? said the king. Sir, he said, I saw nothing but waves and winds. That is untruly said of thee, said the king; therefore go thou lightly again, and do my command as thou art to me lief and dear, spare not, but throw it in. Then Sir Bedivere returned again, and took the sword in his hand; and then him thought sin and shame to throw away that noble sword; and so eft he hid the sword, and returned again, and told to the king that he had been at the water, and done his commandment. What saw thou there? said the king. Sir, he said, I saw nothing but the waters wap and the waves wan. Ah traitor, untrue, said king Arthur, now hast thou betrayed me twice. Who would have wend that thou that hast been to me so lief and dear, and thou art named a noble knight, and would betray me for the riches of the sword. But now go again lightly, for thy long tarrying putteth me in great jeopardy of my life, for I have taken cold. And but if thou do now as I bid thee, if ever I may see thee, I shall slay thee with mine own hands, for thou wouldest for my rich sword see me dead. Then Sir Bedivere departed, and went to the sword, and lightly took it up, and went to the water side, and there he bound the girdle about the hilts, and then he threw the sword as far into the water as he might, and there came an arm and an hand above the water, and met it, and caught it, and so shook it thrice and brandished, and then vanished away the hand with the sword in the water. So Sir Bedivere came again to the king, and told him what he saw. Alas, said the king, help me hence, for I dread me I have tarried over long. Then Sir Bedivere took the king upon his back, and so went with him to that water side. And when they were at the water side, even fast by the bank hoved a little barge, with many fair ladies in it, and among them all was a queen, and all they had black hoods, and all they wept and shrieked when they saw king Arthur. Now put me into the barge, said the king: and so he did softly. And there received him three queens with great mourning, and so they set him down, and in one of their laps king Arthur laid his head, and then that queen said, Ah, dear brother, why have ye tarried so long from me? Alas, this wound on your head hath caught over much cold. And so then they rowed from the land; and Sir Bedivere beheld all those ladies go from him. Then Sir Bedivere cried, Ah, my lord Arthur, what shall become of me now ye go from me, and leave me here alone among mine enemies. Comfort thyself, said the king, and do as well as thou mayest, for in me is no trust for to trust in. For I will into the vale of Avilion, to heal me of my grievous wound. And if thou hear never more of me, pray for my soul. But ever the queens and the ladies wept and shrieked, that it was pity to hear. And as soon as Sir Bedivere had lost the sight of the barge, he wept and wailed, and so took the forest, and so he went all that night, and in the morning he was ware betwixt two holts hoar of a chapel and an hermitage.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Bedivere found him on the morrow dead in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit.

THEN was Sir Bedivere glad, and thither he went; and when he came into the chapel, he saw where lay an hermit groveling on all four, there fast by a tomb was new graven. When the hermit saw Sir Bedivere, he knew him well, for he was but a little before

bishop of Canterbury, that Sir Mordred banished. Sir, said Sir Bedivere, what man is there interred that ye pray so fast for? Fair son, said the hermit, I wot not verily, but by deeming. But this night, at midnight, here came a number of ladies, and brought hither a dead corpse, and prayed me to bury him; and here they offered an hundred tapers, and gave me an hundred besants. Alas, said Sir Bedivere, that was my lord king Arthur, that here lieth buried in this chapel! Then Sir Bedivere swooned, and when he awoke he prayed the hermit he might abide with him still there, to live with fasting and prayers. For from hence will I never go, said Sir Bedivere, by my will, but all the days of my life here to pray for my lord Arthur. Ye are welcome to me, said the hermit, for I know you better than ye ween that I do. Ye are the bold Bedivere, and the full noble duke Sir Lucan de butlere was your brother. Then Sir Bedivere told the hermit all as ye have heard tofore. So there bode Sir Bedivere with the hermit, that was tofore bishop of Canterbury, and there Sir Bedivere put upon him poor clothes, and served the hermit full lowly in fasting and in prayers.

Thus of Arthur I find never more written in books that be authorized, nor more of the certainty of his death heard I never tell, but thus was he led away in a ship wherein were three queens; that one was king Arthur's sister queen Morgan le Fay; the other was the queen of Northgalis; the third was the queen of the Waste Lands. Also there was Nimue, the chief Lady of the lake, that had wedded Pelleas the good knight; and this lady had done much for king Arthur; for she would never suffer Sir Pelleas to be in no place where he should be in danger of his life, and so he lived to the uttermost of his days with her in great rest. More of the death of king Arthur could I never find, but that ladies brought him to his burials; and such one was buried there, that the hermit bare witness that some time was bishop of Canterbury, but yet the hermit knew not in certain that he was verily the body of king Arthur;—for this tale Sir Bedivere, knight of the Round Table, made it to be written.

CHAP. VII.

Of the opinion of some men of the death of king Arthur; and how queen Guenever made her a nun in Almesbury.

YET some men yet say in many parts of England that king Arthur is not dead, but had by the will of our Lord Jesu in another place. And men say that he shall come again, and he shall win the holy cross. I will not say it shall be so, but rather I will say, here in this world he changed his life. But many men say that there is written upon his tomb this verse,

Hic iacet Arthurus Rex quondam Rex que futurus.

Thus leave I here Sir Bedivere with the hermit, that dwelled that time in a chapel beside Glastonbury, and there was his hermitage. And so they lived in their prayers and fastings and great abstinence. And when queen Guenever understood that king Arthur was slain, and all the noble knights, Sir Mordred and all the remnant, then the queen stole away, and five ladies with her, and so she went to Almesbury, and there she let make herself a nun, and wore white clothes and black, and great penance she took, as ever did sinful lady in this land, and never creature could make her merry, but lived in fasting, prayers, and alms-deeds, that all manner of people marvelled how virtuously she was changed. Now leave we queen Guenever in Almesbury a nun in white clothes and black, and there she was abbess and ruler, as reason would; and turn we from her, and speak we of Sir Launcelot du Lake.

CHAP. VIII.

How when Sir Launcelot heard of the death of king Arthur, and of Sir Gawaine, and other matters, he came into England.

AND when he heard in his country that Sir Mordred was crowned king in

England, and made war against king Arthur his own father, and would let him to land in his own land; also it was told Sir Launcelot how that Sir Mordred had laid siege about the tower of London, because the queen would not wed him; then was Sir Launcelot wroth out of measure, and said to his kinsmen, Alas, that double traitor Sir Mordred, now me repenteth that ever he escaped my hands, for much shame hath he done unto my lord Arthur. For all I feel by the doleful letter that my lord Gawaine sent me, on whose soul Jesu have mercy, that my lord Arthur is right hard bested. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, that ever I should live to hear that most noble king, that made me knight, thus to be overset with his subject in his own realm. And this doleful letter that my lord Sir Gawaine hath sent me afore his death, praying me to see his tomb, wit you well his doleful words shall never go from mine heart. For he was a full noble knight as ever was born, and in an unhappy hour was I born, that ever I should have that unhap to slay first Sir Gawaine, Sir Gaheris the good knight, and mine own friend Sir Gareth, that full noble knight. Alas, I may say I am unhappy, said Sir Launcelot, that ever I should do thus unhappily; and, alas, yet might I never have hap to slay that traitor Sir Mordred. Leave your complaints, said Sir Bors, and first revenge you of the death of Sir Gawaine, and it will be well done that ye see Sir Gawaine's tomb, and secondly that ye revenge my lord Arthur and my lady queen Guenever. I thank you, said Sir Launcelot, for ever ye will my worship. Then they made them ready in all the haste that might be, with ships and galleys with Sir Launcelot and his host, to pass into England. And so he passed over the sea till he came to Dover: and there he landed with seven kings, and the number was hideous to behold. Then Sir Launcelot enquired of men of Dover where was king Arthur become? Then the people told him how that he was slain, and Sir Mordred and an hundred thousand died on a day, and how Sir Mordred gave king Arthur there the first battle at his landing, and there was good Sir Gawaine slain, and on the morn Sir Mordred fought with the king upon Barham Down, and there the king put Sir Mordred to the worse. Alas, said Sir Launcelot, this is the heaviest tidings that ever came to me. Now, fair sirs, said Sir Launcelot, shew me the tomb of Sir Gawaine. And then certain people of the town brought him into the castle of Dover, and showed him the tomb. Then Sir Launcelot kneeled down and wept and prayed heartily for his soul. And that night he made a dole, and all they that would come had as much flesh, fish, wine, and ale, and every man and woman had twelve pence, come who would. Thus with his own hand dealt he his money in a mourning gown; and ever he wept, and prayed them to pray for the soul of Sir Gawaine. And on the morn all the priests and clerks that might be gotten in the country were there, and sung mass of Requiem. And there offered first Sir Launcelot, and he offered an hundred pound, and then the seven kings offered forty pound a piece, and also there was a thousand knights, and each of them offered a pound, and the offering dured from morn till night. And Sir Launcelot lay two nights on his tomb in prayers and in weeping. Then on the third day Sir Launcelot called the kings, dukes, earls, barons and knights, and said thus: My fair lords, I thank you all of your coming into this country with me: but we come too late, and that shall repent me while I live, but against death may no man rebel. But sithen it is so, said Sir Launcelot, I will myself ride and seek my lady queen Guenever, for as I hear say, she hath great pain and much disease, and I heard say that she is fled into the west country, therefore ye all that abide me here, and but if I come again within fifteen days, then take your ships, and your fellowship, and depart into your country. For I will do as I say to you.

CHAP. IX.

'ir Launcelot departed to seek the ı Guenever, and how he found her lmesbury.

ı came Sir Bors de Ganis, and [y lord Sir Launcelot, what think ıo do, now to ride in this realm? ıu well ye shall find few friends. ɔe may, said Sir Launcelot, keep ill here, for I will forth on my ', and no man nor child shall go ıe. So it was no boot to strive, departed and rode westerly, and ıe sought a seven or eight days, the last he came to a nunnery, en was queen Guenever ware of .uncelot as he walked in the ', and when she saw him there ooned thrice, that all the ladies ıntlewomen had work enough to ıe queen up. So when she might she called ladies and gentle- ı to her, and said, Ye marvel, fair why I make this fare. Truly, she is for the sight of yonder knight ınder standeth: wherefore, I pray l, call him to me. When Sir ɛlot was brought to her, then she all the ladies, Through this man ɔ hath all this war been wrought, ıe death of the most noblest ɔ of the world; for through our at we have loved together is my ıoble lord slain. Therefore, Sir ɛlot, wit thou well I am set in plight to get my soul's health; ɛt I trust, through God's grace, fter my death to have a sight blessed face of Christ, and at day to sit on his right side, for as ıs ever I was are saints in heaven. ore, Sir Launcelot, I require thee ɜeech thee heartily, for all the love er was betwixt us, that thou never more in the visage; and I com- thee on God's behalf, that thou ɔ my company, and to thy king- ıou turn again and keep well thy rom war and wrack. For as well ıave loved thee, mine heart will rve me to see thee; for through ıd me is the flower of kings and knights destroyed. Therefore, Sir Launcelot, go to thy realm, and there take thee a wife, and live with her with joy and bliss, and I pray thee heartily pray for me to our Lord, that I may amend my mis-living. Now, sweet madam, said Sir Launcelot, would ye that I should return again unto my country, and there to wed a lady? Nay, madam, wit you well that shall I never do: for I shall never be so false to you of that I have promised, but the same destiny that ye have taken you to, I will take me unto, for to please Jesu, and ever for you I cast me specially to pray. If thou wilt do so, said the queen, hold thy promise; but I may never believe but that thou wilt turn to the world again. Well, madam, said he, ye say as pleaseth you, yet wist you me never false of my promise, and God defend but I should forsake the world as ye have done. For in the quest of the Sancgreal I had forsaken the vanities of the world, had not your lord been. And if I had done so at that time with my heart, will, and thought, I had passed all the knights that were in the Sancgreal, except Sir Galahad my son. And therefore, lady, sithen ye have taken you to perfection, I must needs take me to perfection of right. For I take record of God, in you I have had mine earthly joy. And if I had found you now so disposed, I had cast me to have had you into mine own realm.

CHAP. X.

How Sir Launcelot came to the hermitage where the archbishop of Canterbury was, and how he took the habit on him.

But sithen I find you thus disposed, I insure you faithfully I will ever take me to penance, and pray while my life lasteth, if that I may find any hermit either grey or white that will receive me. Wherefore, madam, I pray you kiss me, and never no more. Nay, said the queen, that shall I never do, but abstain you from such works. And they departed. But there was never so hard an hearted man, but he would have wept to see the dolour that they made. For there

was lamentation as they had been stung with spears, and many times they swooned. And the ladies bare the queen to her chamber, and Sir Launcelot awoke, and went and took his horse, and rode all that day and all that night in a forest, weeping. And at the last he was ware of an hermitage and a chapel stood betwixt two cliffs, and then he heard a little bell ring to mass, and thither he rode and alight, and tied his horse to the gate, and heard mass. And he that sang mass was the bishop of Canterbury. Both the bishop and Sir Bedivere knew Sir Launcelot, and they spake together after mass. But when Sir Bedivere had told his tale all whole, Sir Launcelot's heart almost brast for sorrow, and Sir Launcelot threw his arms abroad, and said, Alas, who may trust this world! And then he kneeled down on his knees, and prayed the bishop to shrive him and assoil him. And then he besought the bishop that he might be his brother. Then the bishop said, I will gladly: and there he put an habit upon Sir Launcelot, and there he served God day and night with prayers and fastings.

Thus the great host abode at Dover. And then Sir Lionel took fifteen lords with him, and rode to London to seek Sir Launcelot. And there Sir Lionel was slain and many of his lords. Then Sir Bors de Ganis made the great host for to go home again. And Sir Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Blamor, Sir Bleoberis, with more other of Sir Launcelot's kin, took on them to ride all England overthwart and endlong, to seek Sir Launcelot. So Sir Bors by fortune rode so long till he came to the same chapel where Sir Launcelot was. And so Sir Bors heard a little bell knell that rang to mass, and there he alight, and heard mass. And when mass was done, the bishop, Sir Launcelot, and Sir Bedivere came to Sir Bors. And when Sir Bors saw Sir Launcelot in that manner clothing, then he prayed the bishop that he might be in the same suit. And so there was an habit put upon him, and there he lived in prayers and fasting. And within half a year there wa Sir Galihud, Sir Galihodin, Sir I Sir Bleoberis, Sir Williars, Sir (and Sir Gahalantine. So all thes noble knights there abode still when they saw Sir Launcelot ha him unto such perfection, they l list to depart, but took such an h he had. Thus they endured ir penance six year, and then Sir La took the habit of priesthood, twelvemonth he sang mass. An was none of these other knigl they read in books, and holp mass, and rang bells, and did ho manner of service. And so their went where they would, for the no regard of no worldly riches when they saw Sir Launcelot such penance, in prayers and they took no force what pai endured, for to see the noblest of the world take such abstinen he waxed full lean. And thus night there came a vision to Sir celot, and charged him, in remis his sins, to haste him unto Almes And by then thou come there, th find queen Guenever dead: and fore take thy fellows with the purvey them of an horse bier, an thou the corpse of her, and bury her husband the noble king Arth this vision came to Launcelot th one night.

CHAP. XI.

How Sir Launcelot went with hi fellows to Almesbury, and foun queen Guenever dead, whom they to Glastonbury.

Then Sir Launcelot rose up and told the hermit. It were wel said the hermit, that ye made you and that ye disobey not the Then Sir Launcelot took his se lows with him, and on foot the from Glastonbury to Almesbu which is little more than thirty And thither they came within tw for they were weak and feeble And when Sir Launcelot was c Almesbury, within the nunnery

er died but half an hour before. e ladies told Sir Launcelot that Guenever told them all, or she that Sir Launcelot had been ear a twelvemonth,—And hither eth as fast as he may to fetch pse: and beside my lord king he shall bury me. Wherefore en said in hearing of them all, ch Almighty God that I may ave power to see Sir Launcelot y worldly eyes. And thus, said adies, was ever her prayer these ys, till she was dead. Then Sir ot saw her visage, but he wept ıtly, but sighed. And so he did)bservance of the service himself, ıe Dirige, and on the morn he ıss. And there was ordained an ıier; and so with an hundred ever burning about the corpse of en, and ever Sir Launcelot with t fellows went about the horse ging and reading many an holy ınd frankincense upon the corpse l. Thus Sir Launcelot and his llows went on foot from Almes- to Glastonbury; and when they)me to the chapel and the her- there she had a Dirige with evotion. And on the morn the that sometime was bishop of ıury, sang the mass of Requiem eat devotion: and Sir Launcelot : first that offered, and then all ıt fellows. And then she was d in cered cloth of Raines, ıe top to the toe in thirty fold, :r she was put in a web of lead, :n in a coffin of marble. And he was put in the earth, Sir lot swooned, and lay long still, ıe hermit came out and awaked d said, Ye be to blame, for ye ıe God with such manner of making. Truly, said Sir Laun- trust I do not displease God, knoweth mine intent, for my was not, nor is not, for any g of sin, but my sorrow may have end. For when I re- r of her beauty, and of her e, that was both with her king and with her; so when I saw his corpse and her corpse so lie together, truly mine heart would not serve to sustain my careful body. Also when I remember me, how by my default, mine orgule, and my pride, that they were both laid full low, that were peerless that ever was living of christian people, wit you well, said Sir Launcelot, this remembered, of their kindness and mine unkindness, sank so to my heart, that I might not sustain myself. So the French book maketh mention.

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Launcelot began to sicken, and after died, whose body was borne to Joyous Gard for to be buried.

THEN Sir Launcelot never after eat but little meat, nor drank, till he was dead; for then he sickened more and more, and dried and dwined away; for the bishop nor none of his fellows might not make him to eat, and little he drank, that he was waxen by a cubit shorter than he was, that the people could not know him; for evermore day and night he prayed, but sometime he slumbered a broken sleep, and ever he was lying groveling on the tomb of king Arthur and queen Guenever. And there was no comfort that the bishop, nor Sir Bors, nor none of his fellows could make him, it availed not. So within six weeks after, Sir Launcelot fell sick, and lay in his bed; and then he sent for the bishop that there was hermit, and all his true fellows. Then Sir Launcelot said with dreary voice, Sir bishop, I pray you give to me all my rights that longeth to a christian man. It shall not need you, said the hermit and all his fellows, it is but heaviness of your blood: ye shall be well amended by the grace of God to-morn. My fair lords, said Sir Launcelot, wit you well, my careful body will into the earth. I have warning more then now I will say, therefore give me my rights. So when he was houseled and eneled, and had all that a christian man ought to have, he prayed the bishop that his fellows

might bear his body to Joyous Gard. Some men say it was Anwick, and some men say it was Bamborow. Howbeit, said Sir Launcelot, me repenteth sore, but I made mine avow sometime that in Joyous Gard I would be buried, and because of breaking of mine avow, I pray you all lead me thither. Then there was weeping and wringing of hands among his fellows. So at a season of the night they went all to their beds, for they all lay in one chamber. And so after midnight, against day, the bishop that was hermit, as he lay in his bed asleep, he fell upon a great laughter; and therewith all the fellowship awoke, and came unto the bishop, and asked him what he ailed. Alas, said the bishop, why did ye awake me, I was never in all my life so merry and so well at ease. Wherefore? said Sir Bors. Truly, said the bishop, here was Sir Launcelot with me, with more angels than ever I saw men upon one day; and I saw the angels heave Sir Launcelot unto heaven, and the gates of heaven opened against him. It is but the vexing of dreams, said Sir Bors, for I doubt not Sir Launcelot aileth nothing but good. It may well be, said the bishop, go ye to his bed, and then shall ye prove the sooth. So when Sir Bors and his fellows came to his bed they found him stark dead, and he lay as he had smiled, and the sweetest savour about him that ever they felt. Then was there weeping and wringing of hands, and the greatest dole they made that ever made men. And on the morn the bishop did his mass of Requiem; and after the bishop and all the nine knights put Sir Launcelot in the same horse bier that queen Guenever was laid in tofore that she was buried: and so the bishop and they altogether went with the corpse of Sir Launcelot daily, till they came to Joyous Gard, and ever they had an hundred torches burning about him; and so within fifteen days they came to Joyous Gard. And there they laid his corpse in the body of the quire, and sang and read many psalters and prayers over him and about him; and ever his visage was laid open and naked, that all folk might behold him; for such was the custom in those days, that all men of worship should so lie with open visage till that they were buried. And right thus as they were at their service, there came Sir Ector de Maris, that had seven year sought all England, Scotland, and Wales, seeking his brother Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Ector found Sir Launcelot his brother dead. And how Constantine reigned next after Arthur, and of the end of this book.

And when Sir Ector heard such noise and light in the quire of Joyous Gard, he alight and put his horse from him, and came into the quire, and there he saw men sing and weep. And all they knew Sir Ector, but he knew not them. Then went Sir Bors unto Sir Ector, and told him how there lay his brother Sir Launcelot dead. And then Sir Ector threw his shield, sword, and helm from him; and when he beheld Sir Launcelot's visage he fell down in a swoon. And when he awaked it were hard any tongue to tell the doleful complaints that he made for his brother. Ah, Launcelot, he said, thou were head of all christian knights; and now I dare say, said Sir Ector, thou Sir Launcelot, there thou liest, that thou were never matched of earthly knight's hand; and thou were the courtiest knight that ever bare shield; and thou were the truest friend to thy lover that ever bestrode horse; and thou were the truest lover of a sinful man that ever loved woman; and thou were the kindest man that ever strake with sword; and thou were the goodliest person ever came among press of knights; and thou was the meekest man and the gentlest that ever ate in hall among ladies; and thou were the sternest knight to thy mortal foe that ever put spear in the rest.

Then there was weeping and dolour out of measure. Thus they kept Sir

auncelot's corpse on loft fifteen days, nd then they buried it with great devo-on. And then at leisure they went all ith the bishop of Canterbury to his rmitage, and there they were together ore than a month. Then Sir Con-ntine, that was Sir Cador's son, of rnwall, was chosen king of England; d he was a full noble knight, and orshipfully he ruled this realm. And en this king Constantine sent for the shop of Canterbury, for he heard say here he was; and so he was re-ored unto his bishopric, and left that rmitage; and Sir Bedivere was there er still hermit to his life's end. Then r Bors de Ganis, Sir Ector de Maris, r Gahalantine, Sir Galihud, Sir Gali-odin, Sir Blamor, Sir Bleoberis, Sir illiars le Valiant, Sir Clarrus of Clere-ont; all these knights drew them to eir countries. Howbeit king Con-antine would have had them with m, but they would not abide in this alm; and there they lived in their untries as holy men. And some nglish books make mention that they ent never out of England after the eath of Sir Launcelot, but that was ut favour of makers. For the French book maketh mention, and is authorised, that Sir Bors, Sir Ector, Sir Blamor, and Sir Bleoberis, went into the holy land, there as Jesu Christ was quick and dead, and anon as they had sta-blished their lands; for the book saith so Sir Launcelot commanded them for to do, or ever he passed out of this world. And these four knights did many battles upon the miscreants or Turks. And there they died upon a Good Friday, for God's sake.

Here is the end of the whole book of king Arthur, and of his noble knights of the Round Table, that when they were whole together there was ever an hundred and forty. And here is the end of the Death of Arthur. I pray you all gentlemen and gentlewomen that read this book of Arthur and his knights from the beginning to the end-ing, pray for me while I am on live that God send me good deliverance, and when I am dead, I pray you all pray for my soul; for this book was ended the ninth year of the reign of king Edward the Fourth by Sir Thomas Maleore, knight, as Jesu help him for his great might, as he is the servant of Jesu both day and night.

¶ Thus endeth thys noble and Ioyous book entytled le morte Dar-thur / Notwithstondyng it treateth of the byrth / lyf / and actes of the syd kynge Arthur / of his noble knyghtes of the rounde table / theyr meruaylous enquestes and aduentures / thachyeuyng of the sangreal / & in thende the dolourous deth & departyng out of thys world of them all / Whiche book was reduced in to englysshe by syr Thomas Malory knyght as afore is sayd / and by me deuyded in to xxi bookes chapytred and enprynted / and fynysshed in thabbey westmestre the last day of thyl the yere of our lord M / CCCC / lxxx / V /

¶ Caxton me fieri fecit.

NOTE A.

See Introduction, page xiv. *note* 3.

'Oh ye mighty and pompous lords, shining in the glory transitory of this unstable life, as in reigning over realms great, and mighty countries, fortified with strong castles and towers, edified with many a rich city. Ye also, ye fierce and mighty chivalers, so valiant in adventurous deeds of arms, behold, behold, see how this mighty conqueror Arthur, whom in his human life all the world doubted—ye also, the noble queen Guenever, that sometime sat in her chair adorned with gold, pearls, and precious stones, now lie full low in obscure foss or pit covered with clods of earth and clay. Behold also this mighty champion Launcelot, peerless of knighthood, see now how he lieth groveling on the cold mould, now being so feeble and faint that sometime was so terrible, how and in what manner ought ye to be so desirous of the mundane honour so dangerous. Therefore me thinketh this present book called La Morte Darthur is right necessary often to be read, for in it shall ye find the gracious, knightly, and virtuous war of most noble knights of the world, whereby they gat praising continual. Also me seemeth by the oft reading thereof ye shall greatly desire to accustom yourself in following of those gracious knightly deeds, that is to say, to dread God, and to love rightwiseness, faithfully and courageously to serve your sovereign prince. And the more that God hath given you the triumphal honour the meeker ye ought to be, ever fearing the unstableness of this deceivable world. And so I pass over, and turn again to my matter.'

NOTE B.

See Introduction, page xvii. *note* 3.

For those who may care to see more of the manner in which the text of the interpolated passages has been formed, I give the following specimens in detail.

The first is from the beginning of the 11th Chapter of Book XXI.

CAXTON.

'Than syr Launcelot rose vp or day/& tolde the heremyte/It were wel done sayd the heremyte that ye made you redy/& that ye dyshobeye not the auysyon/ Than syr Launcelot toke his vii felowes with hym/& on fote they yede from glastynburye to almysburye the whyche is lytel more than xxx myle/& thyder they came within two dayes for they were wayke and feble to goo/& whan syr Launcelot was come to almysburye within the Nunerye quene gweneuer deyed but halfe an oure afore/and the ladyes tolde syr Launcelot that quene Gueneuer tolde hem al or she passyd/that syr Launcelot had been preest nere a twelue monthe/& hyder he cometh as faste as he may to fetch my cors/& besyde my lord kyng Arthur he shal berye me/'

WYNKYN DE WORDE, 1498.

'Thenne syre Launcelot rose vp or day. And tolde the heremyte. It were well doon sayd the heremyte/that ye made ye redy/and that ye dysobeye not the aduysyon. Thenē syr Launcelot toke his .vij. felowes wᵗ hym/& on fote they yede from Glastynbury to Almesbury. the whyche is lytyl more than .xxx. myle. And thyder they came wythin two dayes for they were weyke & feble to go. And whan syr Launcelot was come to Almesbury wythin the Nunnery/quene Gweneuer deyed but halfe an houre afore/And the ladyes tolde syr Launcelot/that quene Gweneuer tolde them all or she passyd/that syr Launcelot had be preest nere a twelue month and hither he cometh as fast as he may/to fetche my corps. And besyde my lorde kyng Arthur/he shal bury me.'

UPCOTT.

'Than syr Launcelot rose vp or it was day, and tolde the heremyte therof. It were well done sayd the heremyte that ye made you redy, and that ye dysobeye not thys aduysyon. Theñe syr Launcelot toke his .vii. felawes with hym, & on foote they yede from Glastynbury to Almesbury, the whyche is lytyl more than xxx myle. And thyder they came wythin two dayes for they were weyke and feble to go. And whan syr Launcelot was come to Almesbury wythin the Nonnery, quene Gweneuer deyed but halfe an houre afore. And the ladyes tolde syre Launcelot that quene Gueneuer tolde them all or she passyd, that syr Launcelot had been preest nere a twelue moneth, and hither he cometh as faste as he may for to fetche my corps. And besyde my lorde kynge Arthur he shal burye me.'

The last lines of the same Chapter are as follows:—

CAXTON.

'For whan I remembre of hir beaulte and of hir noblesse that was bothe with hyr king & with hyr/So whan I sawe his corps and hir corps so lye togyders/truly myn herte wold not serue to susteyne my careful body/Also whan I remēbre me how by my defaut & myn orgule and my pryde/that they were bothe layed ful lowe that were pereles that euer was lyuyng of cristen people, wyt you wel sayd syr Launcelot/this remembred of there kyndnes and myn vnkyndnes sanke so to myn herte that I mi3t not susteyne myself so the frensshe book maketh mencyon.'

UPCOTT,

(Who follows Wynkyn de Worde exactly, except in the spelling, and in the insertion of 'me' after 'wold not serue.')

'For whan I remembre *& calle to mynde* her beaute, *bountee &* noblesse, that was *as wel* wyth her kyng *my lord Arthur* as wyth her. *And also* whanne I saw *the corses of that noble kinge & noble quene* so lye to gyder *in that colde graue made of erthe, that somtyme were so hygbly sette in moost honourable places*, truly myn herte wolde not serue *me* to susteyne my *wretchyd &* carefull body. Also whan I remembre me how by my defawte myn orgulyte and my pride, that they were both layed full lowe whyche were pereles that euer were lyuenge of crysten peple, wyte yow wel sayd syr Launcelot, this remembred, of ther kyndnesse & *of* myn vnkyndnesse, sanke *and enprest* soo *in* to my herte that *all my natural strengthe fayled me, so that* I myghte not susteyne my selfe. Soo the frensshe boke makyth mencyon.'

The several colophons are as follows:—

CAXTON.

'Thus endeth thys noble and Ioyous book entytled le morte Darthur/Notwithstondyng it treateth of the byrth/lyf/and actes of the sayd kynge Arthur/of his noble knyghtes of the rounde table/theyr meruayllous enquestes and aduentures/thachyeuyng of the sangreal/& in thende the dolourous deth & departyng out of thys world of them al/Whiche book was reduced in to englysshe by syr Thomas Malory knyght as afore is sayd/and by me deuyded in to xxi bookes chapytred and enprynted/and fynysshed in thabbey westmestre the last day of Iuyl the yere of our lord M/CCCC/lxxx/V/ Caxton me fieri fecit.'/

WYNKYN DE WORDE, 1498.

'Thus endyth this noble and Ioyous boke entytled Le morte dathur. Notwythstondyng it treateth of the byrth lyf & actes of the sayd kynge Arthur of his noble knyghtes of the rounde table. theyr merueyllous enquestes & aduentures. thachyeuynge of the Sancgreall. And in the ende the dolorous deth. & depaytynge out of this worlde of them al. Whyche boke was reduced in to Englysshe by the well dysposyd knyghte afore namyd. And deuyde[d] into .xxi. bokes chapitred. & enprynt[ed] fyrst by Wylliam Caxton/on who[se] soule god haue mercy. And newel[ye] prynted. and chapitres of the sam[e ru-]brisshed at Westmestre, by Wynk[yn de] Worde y^e^ yere of our lord. M.C[CCC].lxxxxviij. and ended the .xxv [daye of] Marche. the same yere.'

AMES.

'Thus endeth this noble and joyous boke, entytled La morte d'Arthur. Notwithstondyng it treateth of the byrth, lyf, and actes of the sayd Kynge Arthur, of his noble knyghts of the rounde table, theyr merueylous enquestes and aduentures, thacheuynge of the Sancgreal, and in the ende the dolourous deth and depaytynge out of this worlde of them al; whyche boke was reduced into Englysshe by syr Thomas Malory, Knight, as afore is sayd, and by me devyded into xxi. bookes, chapitred and enprynted, and fynisshed in thabbey, Westmestre, the last day of Juyl, the yere of our Lord MCCCCLXXXV. Caxton me fieri fecit.'

HARLEIAN CATALOGUE.

'The Byrth, Lyf, and Actes of Kyng Arthur; of his noble Knyghtes of the Rounde Table, theyr marvayllous Enquestes and Adventures; the Achyeviyng of the Sang real; and in the end le Morte d'Arthur, with the dolourous Deth and Departyng out of thys world of them Al. Whiche Book was reduced to the Englysshe, by Syr Thomas Malory Knyght, and by me (*W. Caxton*) devyded into 21 bookes, chaptyred and emprynted, and fynyshed in th' Abbey Westmestre, the last day of July, the yere of our Lord 1485.'

UPCOTT.

'Thus endeth this noble & joyous booke entytled *La* Mort *dathur*. Notwythstanding it treateth of the byrth, lyf & actes of the sayd Kynge Arthur, *&* of his noble knyghtes of the Rounde Table, theyr marueyllous Enquestes & aduentures, lyke wyse of the *Sang real*, and in the ende *le Morte darthur with* the dolourous deth and departyng out of thys worlde of them al. Whiche booke was reduced in to Englysshe by Syr Thomas Malory knyght *as afore is sayd*, and by me deuyded in to xxi bookes chaptyred and emprynted and fynysshed in thabbey Westmestre the last day of July the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV. *Caxton me fieri fecit.*'

On a comparison of these colophons we see that the article *La* is only in Ames: the spelling of *dathur* is peculiar to Wynkyn de Worde, who has it also in another passage; the words *le Morte darthur with* are in the Harleian Catalogue only: *as afore is said* is in neither of these, but it is in Ames: the peculiar mode of writing *Sang real*[1], and the spelling of *chaptyred, emprynted, July*, are those of the Harleian Catalogue: the *&* introduced after *Arthur* in the second line is only in Upcott. *Caxton me fieri fecit* is in Ames, but not in the Harleian Catalogue.

When I say in Ames or the Harleian Catalogue only, it will be understood that I include with the colophon of the former its modernised copy in Dibdin; and with that of the latter its copies in Herbert and the Biographia Britannica; the references to all which I have given in the passage of the Introduction to which this is a Note. The first words of the colophon are omitted in the Harleian Catalogue, which gives it as the title of the book, as do the Biographia Britannica and Herbert. The framer of the Catalogue probably quotes directly, though inaccurately, from the Harleian (now the Osterley) Morte Darthur: and Ames must have made his extract independently from the same volume. Dibdin attributes both the Harleian Catalogue and the article in the Biographia Britannica to Oldys.

[1] The division of the word indicates that the writer adopts the plausible notion that Sangreal means Real (or Royal) Blood; and no doubt in ancient as well as modern times the spelling and sound would suggest this meaning: but Roquefort shows clearly that the other is the proper explanation, both in etymology and (so to speak) historically. And Helinand, a monk of Fromont (A.D. 717), gives the Latin *Gradale*, which supplies the link between *Graal* and *Crater* from which Roquefort derives the former. Helinand's words are,—'Hoc tempore, in Britannia, cuidam eremitae monstrata est mirabilis quaedam visio per angelum de sancto Josepho decurione nobili qui corpus Domini deposuit de cruce, et de catino illo vel paropside in quo Dominus coenavit cum discipulis suis; de quâ ab eodem eremita descripta est historia quae dicitur *de Gradal*. *Gradalis* autem vel *Gradale* dicitur Gallicè scutella lata et aliquantulum profunda in qua pretiosae dapes, cum suo jure, divitibus solent apponi, et dicitur nomine *Graal*.... Hanc historiam latine scriptam invenire non potui, sed tantum Gallicè scripta habetur a quibusdam proceribus, nec facile ut aiunt tota inveniri potest.' Helinandi Historia, quoted in L'Essai Historique et Literaire sur l'Abbaye de Fécamp par Leroux de Lincy, Rouen, 1840.

GLOSSARY.

ɔnt, alleviation. 390.
ıce, alleviation. 431.
:, cupboard. 411.
ury, 481. See Introduction,

of us all. 84.
, reckoned. 1.
absolve. 365.
l, besotted, doting. 75.
d, stunned. 117.
fatigued, exhausted. 384.
ɔwer. 110.
boast. 447.
, Avalon, the Isle of Apples, ıich Glastonbury stood. 49.
, couch spear. 62.
ıckward. 182.

ı, an outwork to defend the ɔf a castle. 156.
Down, near Canterbury. 477. Wright says it is the site of an ɔ-Saxon cemetery, which, no , suggested that a battle had fought there.
armies, battalions. 105, 265.
trumpet. 478.
g, bracelet, or other ornament.

promise. 209.
, promise. 411.
promise. 168.
:. See p. 469.
ɔparently meant for Bere, bier, ır. 385.
, a gold coin first coined at By- ım. 95.
adorned, clothed. 51.
Bested, beset. 476.
t, recommended. 359.
Betid, happened, was; or, beat. 141, 332.
Board, deck. 370.
Bole, trunk of a tree. 126.
Boot, help. 162.
Brachet, a small scenting dog. 66.
Braid, hastiness. 472.
Brast, brake. 117.
Brim, furious. 464.
Broche, spit, pierce. 39.
Browis, broth, pottage. 129.
Bur, an iron ring on the spear, to prevent the hand slipping. 479.
Burbling, bubbling. 240.
Burgen, bud, blossom. 451.

Camelot, see Introduction, p. v.
Cardoile, the Anglo-Norman form of Carlisle. 76. See Introduction, p. v.
Carrack, ship. 476.
Cast, a portion or set of loaves baked together. 140.
Cered, waxed. 485.
Chafe, heat. 106.
Chaflet, platform. 477.
Child, squire, or young knight. 109, 392.
Churl, peasant, boor. 120.
Cleped, called. 409.
Coasted, kept at the side, in a parallel course. 433.
Cogge, cock, i.e. cock-boat. 101.
Courtelage, court-yard, or garden. 94, 121, 379.
Covin, deceit, plot. 360.
Croft, vault. 406.

Daffish, foolish. 236.
Debonair, courteous. 394.
Defoil, trample underfoot, overcome. 200.

Deliverly, actively. 473.
Depart, part. 483.
Devise, look carefully at. 402.
Devoir, knightly duty. 149, 469.
Dight, dressed. 79.
Dole, grief. 45.
Draughts, apparently recesses parted off from the main room. 442.
Dress, turn towards, address. 402.
Dromon, a vessel of war. 101.
Duresse, bondage. 357.
Dwine, dwindle. 485.

Enchafe, heat. 372.
Eneled, anointed (with extreme unction). 486.
Eft, again. 480.
Eftures, passages. 444.
Erst, before. 254.

Fewter, put spear in the rest. 107.
Flacket, flask. 181.
Foin, push in fencing. 142.
Fordo, undo. 74.
Forthdays, late in the day. 455.
Forthink, grieve, 379; repent, 74.
Foster, forester. 381.

Gad, spike or knob of iron or steel. 373.
Gainest, readiest. 145.
Gerfalcon, the finest kind of hawk. 96.
Gest, deed, story. 123.
Gisarm, two-edged battle-axe. 96.
Glaive, a long blade at the end of a lance, a sword. 70.
Glasting. 287. See Questing.
Graale, Grail. 327. See Sancgreal.
Gramercy (written Grant mercy, 418), great thanks. 71.
Gree, degree, prize. 226.
Greece, Hart of, a fat deer. 323.
Guerdonless. 323.

Haberjon, see Hauberk. When the 'chausses' or mail leggings were united with the Hauberk the whole was called an Haberjon. 385.
Hair, hair-shirt. 373.
Hale and how! pull ho! the cry of sailors. 141.
Halp, Holp, helped. 95.
Halse, embrace. 178.
Handfast, betrothed. 272.
Handsel, payment, earnest-money. 174.
Harness, armour. 111.
Harnessed, furnished, set. 189.
Hauberk, coat or frock of mail, made of plates or chain-links sewn upon leather. 39.
Haut, high, noble. 183.
Hight, was called. 25.
Ho! halt! the word for stopping a tournament. 40, 278.
Holt, a hill with a grove on it. 480. The 'two holts hoar' are described as 'two cliffs,' 484.
Houselled, To be, to receive the sacrament. 260.
Hove, hover, stand. 97.
Hurtle, dash. 138.

Inde, dark blue. 137.
Intermeddle, intermix. 404.

Jesseraunt, a sort of cuirass, of back and breast plates. 31.
Journey, day's work. 268.
Joyous Gard. 486. See Introduction, p. vi.

Largesse, bounty. 308.
Laton, a mixed metal, like brass. 57.
Lawn, an open space in a forest. 90.
Lazar-cote, a hut for keeping lepers in. 190.
Leech, physician, surgeon. 45.
Let to, hinder from. 476.
Lever, rather. 102.
Libbard, leopard. 207.
Lief, dear. 480.
Liones, sometimes said to be a supposed tract of country called Lionesse, between the Land's End and the Scilly Isles, now submerged. But more probably St. Pol de Leon in Brittany is meant.
Logris, Loegria, Saxon Britain. 213.
Loth, hateful. 179.
Lotless, without a share. 242.
Lowe, hillock or tumulus. 449.

Maker, author, poet. 487.
Mal-ease, bad plight. 196.
Mal-engine, evil design. 416.

d, having holes within the
t of the walls for pouring
or molten lead through. 135.
in spite of, 72; misfortune,

nix. 294.
ıuch. 26.
t, misbeliever. 487.

99.
ıplendour. 244.
on his nose. 395.
ınjurious. 398.

ıride. 485.
, haughty. 475.
welled ornament. 465.
ırt, across. 134.

'paletot), a coat with sleeves.

Pillers, men who fight for
. 281.
nall flag. 280.
erce. 184.
enclosure. 367.
:r Dieu), truly. 144, 155.
'peregrine), a kind of falcon.

mbstone. 239.
:ched. 25.
e away. 237, 468.
ınderer. 479.
lump of trees. 40.
ight rider. 108.
riding. 368.
note blown on the death of
g. 79.
ırovide. 28, 49.

bolt from a crossbow. 330.
baying, giving tongue, as
do. 43, 207, 250.

town in Brittany, famous for
ıth. 485.
examine. 104.
ar off (arracher). 118. Also

recal. 286.
ıtle, 96. Powys Castle, so
in Welsh.
ınsel. 157, 443.

Rivage, shore. 409.
Rome, growl, roar. 101.
Roted, practised. 271.
Rounspik, a branch with other branches growing out of it. 126.

Sacring, consecrating. 367.
Sad, heavy: Sadly, steadily. 435.
Saint Michael's Mount, a famous place of pilgrimage in Normandy. 102.
Samite, rich silk, sometimes interwoven with gold or silver. 47, 370.
Sancgreal, Sangreal, the holy greal, graale, or grail. 60, 337. See Introduction, p. v.
Sarpi, girdle. 465.
Schedule, letter. 476.
Search, examine by a surgeon. 167.
Sendal, a thin silk. 106, 114.
Seneschal, the chief officer, whether of the household or of the dominions of a sovereign. 29.
Sessoin, Saxony, 264: but, 105, perhaps Soissons.
Sewer, the officer who set on the dishes and tasted them. 160.
Shaftmon, a measure from the top of the extended thumb to the other end of the fist or palm, about six inches. 147.
Shawe, thicket. 233.
Shend, damage. 470.
Shent, confounded, disgraced. 141.
Shrewd, evil. 217.
Siege, seat. 65.
Sith, since. 361.
Sithen, since. 118.
Slake, ditch, ravine. 114.
Soil, To go to, hunting term for taking to the water. 433.
Sondes, sendings, messages. 475.
Spere, ask.
Stole, part of a priest's dress, worn round the neck. 373.
Stonied, stunned. 132.
Stour, battle. 383.
Straked, blew a horn. 215.
Sue, follow. 361.
Swough, sound. 100.

Taches, qualities, disposition. 163.
Tallages, taxes. 99.
Teen, grief. 107.

Thrull, pierce. 200.
Tintagil, a castle in Cornwall, the ruins of which still exist. 25.
To-brast, To-shiver, &c., break to pieces. 331.
Trasing and rasing, dodging and striking. 117.
Travers, At, coming across them. 407.
Trest, 433, a term of hunting, the technical meaning of which I cannot find: but the word is in Romance the participle of Trere, tirer, trahere.
Truage, tribute. 98.
Truss, take up, pack up, make ready. 369, 469.

Ubbley, sacramental bread. 408.
Umbecast, cast about. 433.
Umberere, the part of the helmet which shaded the eyes. 197.
Underne, Undorne, nine in the morning. 144, 463.
Unhappy, causing ill luck. 479.
Unnethe, scarcely. 92.
Unwrast, untwisted, unbound. 190.
Utas, eighth day of a festival. 1(
Utterance, uttermost (outrance).

Varlet, servant. 290.
Venery, hunting. 163.
Ventails, breathing holes. 295.

Waits, watchmen. 156.
Wallop, gallop. 45.
Wan, go, ebb. 480.
Wap, strike, move quickly. 48(
Tennyson renders 'Wap and v
'lapping on the crag.'
Warison, reward. 216.
Weld, possess. 151.
Wend, thought. 97.
Werwolf, a man turned into a v
magic. 449.
Wight, active. 200.
Wood, mad. 332.
Worship, honour. 197, 415.
Worts, herbs. 379.
Wrake, wrack, destruction. 451.

Yule, Christmas. 108.

BOOKS FOR ALL READERS.

FICTION.

BY PROFESSOR KINGSLEY.

Two Years Ago. 6*s.*
Westward Ho. 6*s.*
Alton Locke. 4*s.* 6*d.*
Hereward the Wake. 6*s.*
Hypatia. 6*s.*
Yeast. 5*s.*

BY MISS YONGE.

The Heir of Redclyffe. 6*s.*
Dynevor Terrace. 6*s.*
The Daisy Chain. 6*s.*
The Trial; or, More Links of the Daisy Chain. 6*s.*
The Clever Woman of the Family. 6*s.*
Heartsease. 6*s.*
Hopes and Fears. 6*s.*
The Young Stepmother. 6*s.*
The Danvers Papers. 4*s.* 6*d.*
The Dove in the Eagle's Nest. 2 *Vols.* 12*s.*
The Chaplet of Pearls. 2 *Vols.* 12*s.*

BY HENRY KINGSLEY.

Ravenshoe. 6*s.*
Silcote of Silcotes. 6*s.*
Geoffry Hamlyn. 6*s.*
Austin Elliot. 6*s.*
Leighton Court. 6*s.*

Janet's Home. 6*s.*
A Son of the Soil. 6*s.*
Tom Brown at Oxford. 6*s.*
The Connells of Castle Connell. 2 *Vols.* 21*s.*
The New Landlord. 2 *Vols.* 21*s.*
Oldbury. 3 *Vols.* 31*s.* 6*d.*
The Lily of Lumley. 7*s.* 6*d.*

POETRY.

Poems. *By* MATTHEW ARNOLD. 2 Vols. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*s.* each.

Poems of Rural Life in Common English. By the Rev. W. BARNES. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

St. Paul. *By* F. W. H. MYERS. *Extra* fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Goblin Market, and other Poems. *By* CHRISTINA ROSSETTI. Second Edition, fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

The Prince's Progress, and other Poems. By CHRISTINA ROSSETTI. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

Phantasmagoria, and other Poems. *By* LEWIS CARROLL. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

Idylls and Epigrams. *Chiefly from the* Greek Anthology. By R. GARNETT. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Beatrice, and other Poems. *By the* Hon. RODEN NOEL. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

Poems. *By* CATHERINE BARNARD SMITH. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Under the Willows, and other Poems. By Professor LOWELL. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

Poems. *By the* ARCHBISHOP OF DUBLIN. Collected and Arranged anew. Fcap. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

My Beautiful Lady. *By* THOMAS WOOLNER. Third Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Poems. *By* A. H. CLOUGH. *With* Memoir by F. T. PALGRAVE. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

Andromeda, and other Poems. *By* Professor KINGSLEY. Third Edition. 5*s.*

The Saint's Tragedy. *By Professor* KINGSLEY. Third Edition. 5*s.*

The Angel in the House. *By* COVENTRY PATMORE. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Lady of La Garaye. *By the Hon.* MRS. NORTON. With Vignette and Frontispiece. Third Edition. Fcap 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Edwin of Deira. *By* ALEXANDER SMITH. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

City Poems. *By* ALEXANDER SMITH. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

A Life Drama, and other Poems. *By* ALEXANDER SMITH Fourth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

ESSAYS.

Essays on a Liberal Education. By Various Writers. Edited by the Rev. F. W. FARRAR, M.A. Second Edition. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Habit and Intelligence in their Connexion with the Laws of Matter and Force. A Series of Scientific Essays. By J. J. MURPHY. 2 Vols. 8vo. 16*s.*

Biographical Sketches, 1852—1868. By HARRIET MARTINEAU. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Essays on Robert Browning's Poetry. By J. T. NETTLESHIP. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Essays in Criticism. By MATTHEW ARNOLD. Second Edition. Fcap. cloth, 6*s.*

The Mad Folk of Shakespeare. Psychological Essays. By J. E. BUCKNILL, M.D. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Essays. By GEORGE BRIMLEY, *edited* by W. G. CLARK. Second Edition. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Essays, Biographical and Critical; chiefly on the English Poets. By DAVID MASSON, LL.D. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Essays on Art. By F. T. PALGRAVE. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

BOOKS OF TRAVEL.

The Nile Tributaries of Abyssinia, and the Sword Hunters of the Hamran Arabs. By Sir S. W. BAKER. With Portraits, Maps, and Illustrations. Sixth Thousand. 8vo. 21*s.*

Albert N'yanza Great Basin of the Nile, and Exploration of the Nile Sources. By Sir S. W. BAKER. 2 Vols. Crown 8vo. 16*s.*

Greater Britain. By SIR C. W. DILKE, M.P. Third and Cheap Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Malay Archipelago: The Land of the Orang-Utan and the Bird of Paradise. By A. R. WALLACE. 2 Vols. Crown 8vo. with Maps and Illustrations. 24*s.*

Travels in Central and Eastern Arabia. By W. G. PALGRAVE. Fourth and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Black and White. A Three Months' Tour in the United States. By H. LATHAM 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

HISTORICAL WORKS.

The Seven Weeks' War. Its Antecedents and Incidents. By H. M. HOZIER. 2 Vols. 8vo. 28*s.*

The Holy Roman Empire. By J. BRYCE. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 9*s.*

Three English Statesmen—Pym, Cromwell, and Pitt. Lectures on the Political History of England. By GOLDWIN SMITH. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

The Statesman's Year-Book for 1869. A Statistical, Mercantile, and Historical Account of the Civilized World, forming a Manual for Politicians and Merchants. By FREDERICK MARTIN. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Sir Francis Palgrave's History of Normandy and England to the Death of William Rufus. 4 Vols. 8vo. 4*l.* 4*s.*

Prehistoric Annals of Scotland. By DANIEL WILSON, LL.D. With Numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. 2 Vols. 32*s.*

Prehistoric Man: Researches into the Origin of Civilization in the Old and New World. By DANIEL WILSON, LL.D. Second Edition. With Illustrations. 1 Vol. 8vo. 21*s.*

Cawnpore. By G. O. TREVELYAN, M.P. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

*Words and Places, Etymological Illus*trations of History, Ethnology, and Geography. By the Rev. ISAAC TAYLOR. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

History of the Christian Church during the Middle Ages and the Reformation. By ARCHDEACON HARDWICK. 2 Vols. 21*s.*

History of Christian Missions during the Middle Ages. By G. F. MACLEAR, M.A. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

History of the Book of Common Prayer. By FRANCIS PROCTER, M.A. Eighth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

History of Christian Names. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." 2 Vols. Crown 8vo. 21*s.*

The House of Austria in the Thirty Years' War. Two Lectures by Professor WARD. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The House of Commons. Illustrations of its History and Practice. By REGINALD F. D. PALGRAVE. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Annals of our Time. A Diurnal of Events during the Reign of Queen Victoria. By JOSEPH IRVING. 8vo. half-bound, 18*s.*

BIOGRAPHY.

Henry Crabb Robinson's Diary, Reminiscences, and Correspondence. Selected and Edited by Dr. T. SADLER. 3 Vols. 8vo. 36*s.*

Vittoria Colonna: Her Life and Poems. By Mrs. HENRY ROSCOE. With Photographic Portraits. Crown 8vo. 9*s.*

Biography of M. de Barante. By M. GUIZOT. Translated by the Author of "John Halifax." Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

William Blake, the Artist. By ALEXANDER GILCHRIST. With numerous Illustrations from Blake's Designs, and Photolithographic Facsimiles of his "Studies of the Book of Job." 2 Vols. 8vo. 32*s.*

The Life of John Milton, Narrated in Connexion with the Political, Historical, and Literary History of his Time. By DAVID MASSON, LL.D. Vol I. 8vo. 18*s.*

Edward Forbes, the Naturalist. By GEORGE WILSON, M.D. F.R.S.E. 8vo. 14*s.*

George Wilson, Regius Professor of Technology in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

R. A. Vaughan, Author of "Hours with the Mystics." Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

A Brief Biographical Dictionary. By C. HOLE. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

NATURAL HISTORY, ETC.

Holidays on High Lands; or, Rambles and Incidents in Search of Alpine Plants. By the Rev. HUGH MACMILLAN. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Bible Teachings in Nature. By the Rev. HUGH MACMILLAN. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Foot-Notes from the Page of Nature; or, First Forms of Vegetation. By HUGH MACMILLAN, F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Lessons in Elementary Botany. By D. OLIVER, F.R.S. With Illustrations. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Scenery of Scotland: in Connexion with its Physical Geology. By A. GEIKIE. With Illustrations and Maps. 10*s* 6*d.*

The Story of a Boulder: Gleanings by a Field Geologist. By A. GEIKIE. With Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Lessons in Elementary Physiology. By T. H. HUXLEY, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

SERMONS, ETC.

Ecce Homo: a Survey of the Life and Work of Jesus Christ. Tenth Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

BY PROFESSOR MAURICE.

The Ground and Object of Hope for Mankind. Four Sermons preached at Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Patriarchs and Lawgivers of the Old Testament. Third and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

The Gospel of St. John. A Series of Discourses. Third and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Epistles of St. John. A Series of Lectures on Christian Ethics. Second and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

BY C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D.

Twelve Discourses on Subjects connected with the Liturgy and Worship of the Church of England. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

The Church of the First Days. Series I. The Church of Jerusalem.—Series II. The Church of the Gentiles.—Series III. The Church of the World. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* each

Life's Work and God's Discipline. Three Sermons. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Wholesome Words of Jesus Christ. Four Sermons preached before the University of Cambridge in November, 1866. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

*Memorials of Harrow Sundays. A Se*lection of Sermons preached in Harrow School Chapel. With a View of the Chapel. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Book and the Life, and other Sermons preached before the University of Cambridge. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

*Lessons of Life and Godliness. A Selec*tion of Sermons preached in the Parish Church of Doncaster. Third Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Words from the Gospels. A Second Selection of Sermons preached in the Parish Church of Doncaster. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Lessons of the Cross and Passion. Lectures in Hereford Cathedral, Easter, 1869. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Foes of Faith. University Sermons. November, 1868. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE GOLDEN TREASURY SERIES.

18mo. Cloth, 4*s.* 6*d.* each volume.

A Book of Worthies, Gathered from the Old Histories, and written anew by the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe."

Tom Brown's School Days. By an Old Boy.

A Book of Golden Deeds of all Lands, and all Times. Gathered and Narrated anew by the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe."

The Sunday Book of Poetry for the Young. Selected and arranged by C. F. Alexander, Author of "Hymns for Little Children."

The Book of Praise from the best English Hymn Writers. Selected and arranged by Sir Roundell Palmer.

The Golden Treasury of the best Songs and Lyrical Poems in the English Language. Selected and arranged by F. T. Palgrave.

La Lyre Française. Selected and arranged by Gustave Masson. With Portrait of Béranger.

The Children's Garland from the best Poets. Selected and arranged by Coventry Patmore.

The Ballad Book. A Collection of the Choicest British Ballads. Selected and arranged by William Allingham.

The Fairy Book: the best Popular Fairy Stories. Selected and rendered anew by the Author of "John Halifax"

The Jest Book: the Choicest Anecdotes and Sayings. Selected and arranged by Mark Lemon.

The Poems of Robert Burns. Edited, with Prefatory Memoir, by Alexander Smith. 2 Vols.

Bacon's Essays and Colours of Good and Evil. With Notes and Glossarial Index, by W. Aldis Wright.

The Pilgrim's Progress. By John Bunyan.

The Adventures of Robinson Crusoe. Edited by J. W. Clark.

The Republic of Plato. Translated by J. Ll. Davies and D. J. Vaughan.

The Song Book. Words and Tunes. By John Hullah.

WORKS FOR THE YOUNG.

Ridicula Rediviva. Old Nursery Rhymes Illustrated in Colours. By J. E. Rogers. Folio. 9*s.*

*The Five Days' Entertainment at Went*worth Grange. By F. T. Palgrave. Illustrated. Square. 9*s.*

The Water-Babies. By Professor Kingsley. New Edition. With Illustrations. 6*s.*

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. With Forty-two Illustrations by Tenniel. Sixteenth Thousand. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

The Prince and the Page. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." 18mo. Cloth extra. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Heroes: Greek Fairy Tales for my Children. By Charles Kingsley. With Illustrations. Cloth extra. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Tom Brown's School Days. People's Edition, 2*s.*

Little Wanderlin, and other Fairy Tales. By A. and E. Keary. Cloth extra. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Early Egyptian History for the Young. By A. and E. Keary. Cloth extra. 5*s.*

The Lances of Lynwood. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." With Illustrations. Cloth extra. 4*s.* 6*d.*

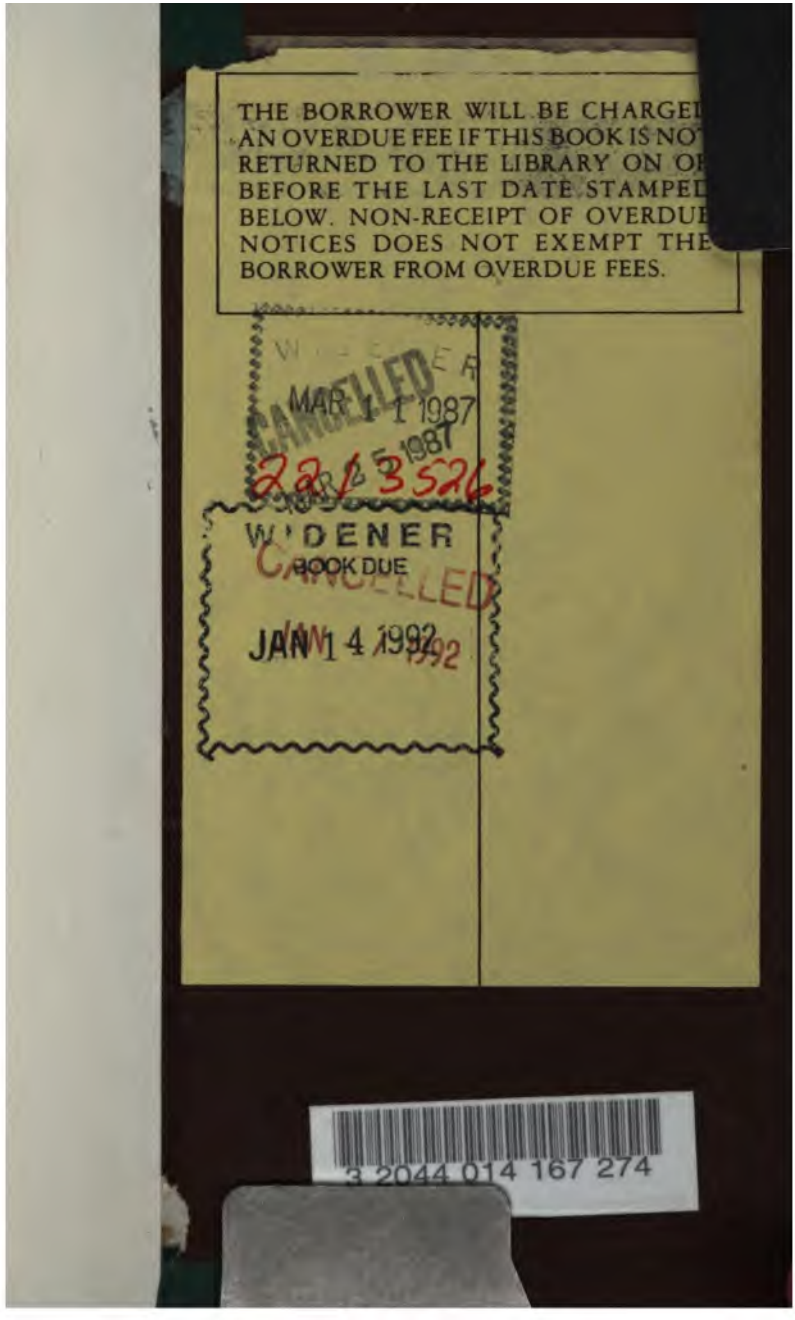
The Little Duke. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." With Illustrations by R. Farren. Cloth extra. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Our Year. By the Author of "John Halifax." With Illustrations. Cloth extra. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Ruth and her Friends. Fourth Edition. Cloth extra. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Days of Old: Stories of English History. Cloth extra. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Little Estella, and other Fairy Tales. Cloth extra. 3*s.* 6*d.*


THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED
AN OVERDUE FEE IF THIS BOOK IS NOT
RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON OR
BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED
BELOW. NON-RECEIPT OF OVERDUE
NOTICES DOES NOT EXEMPT THE
BORROWER FROM OVERDUE FEES.

CANCELLED
MAR 11 1987
2213526
WIDENER
BOOK DUE
CANCELLED
JAN 14 1992
3 2044 014 167 274